THE DISSECTION OF VERTEBRATES

SECOND EDITION

A Laboratory Manual

Gerardo De Iuliis, PhD,
George Brown College of Art and Technology, University of Toronto, and Royal Ontario Museum

Dino Pulerà, MScBMC, CMI

AMSTERDAM • BOSTON • HEIDELBERG • LONDON
NEW YORK • OXFORD • PARIS • SAN DIEGO
SAN FRANCISCO • SINGAPORE • SYDNEY • TOKYO
Academic Press is an imprint of Elsevier

Academic Press is an imprint of Elsevier

30 Corporate Drive, Suite 400, Burlington, MA 01803, USA
Elsevier, The Boulevard, Langford Lane, Kidlington, Oxford, OX5 1GB, UK

© 2011 Elsevier Inc. All rights reserved.

Exceptions:
(a) Except as otherwise provided in Paragraph 2(b) below, the Author hereby grants and transfers to the Publisher the Work (including any prior unpublished versions of the Work) and all rights in the Work, including the entire copyright (and any renewals and extensions of the copyright) throughout the world, and all rights under copyright, including the exclusive right to publish, perform, reproduce, distribute, and sell the Work and to create derivative works, in all forms or media now known or later developed, in all languages, throughout the world, and the right to license or authorize others to do all of the foregoing.
(b) With respect to original illustrations created by the Author for the Work (herein the "Illustrations"), copyright for which is retained by the Author, the Author grants to the Publisher the non-exclusive right to publish the Illustrations in all editions and versions of the Work, including derivative works based on the Work, for sales throughout the world in all forms or media now known or hereafter developed, and in all languages. The Author further agrees that the Publisher may grant to third parties permission to include the Illustrations in other works, and any copies of display of the Illustrations, will include proper credit to the Work as the sources of first publication of the Illustrations. However, the Author further agrees that the Author will not permit publication of the Illustrations in any competing works.

No part of this publication may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic or mechanical, including photocopying, recording, or any information storage and retrieval system, without permission in writing from the publisher. Details on how to seek permission, further information about the Publisher's permissions policies and our arrangements with organizations such as the Copyright Clearance Center and the Copyright Licensing Agency, can be found at our website: www.elsevier.com/permissions.

This book and the individual contributions contained in it are protected under copyright by the Publisher (other than as may be noted herein).

Notices
Knowledge and best practice in this field are constantly changing. As new research and experience broaden our understanding, changes in research methods, professional practices, or medical treatment may become necessary.

Practitioners and researchers must always rely on their own experience and knowledge in evaluating and using any information, methods, compounds, or experiments described herein. In using such information or methods they should be mindful of their own safety and the safety of others, including parties for whom they have a professional responsibility.

To the fullest extent of the law, neither the Publisher nor the authors, contributors, or editors, assume any liability for any injury and/or damage to persons or property as a matter of products liability, negligence or otherwise, or from any use or operation of any methods, products, instructions, or ideas contained in the material herein.

Library of Congress Cataloging-in-Publication Data
De Iuliis, Gerardo.
The dissection of vertebrates : a laboratory manual / Gerardo De Iuliis.
p. cm.
Rev. ed. of: c2007.
ISBN 978-0-12-375060-0
1. Vertebrates–Dissection–Laboratory manuals. 2. Vertebrates–Anatomy–Laboratory manuals. I. Title.
QL812.5.D45 2011
571.3'16078—dc22

2010019351

British Library Cataloguing-in-Publication Data
A catalogue record for this book is available from the British Library.

For information on all Academic Press publications
visit our Web site at www.elsevierdirect.com

Working together to grow
libraries in developing countries
www.elsevier.com | www.bookaid.org | www.sabre.org
ELSEVIER BOOK AID International Sabre Foundation

Printed in China
10 11 12 13 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1

This book is for our spouses,
Virginia and Cinzia,
and children,
Daniel, Theodore, and Jacob,
who are our loves and our lives;
and our parents,
Italo, Maria, Vittorio, and Pina

With deep respect, admiration, and gratitude, we dedicate this book to three teachers at the University of Toronto that early on in our academic careers instilled in us a passion for anatomy, paleontology, and art, as well as the intellectual discipline required to make them our careers. Their contributions are to be seen throughout the following pages.

Charles S. (Rufus) Churcher
Stephen G. Gilbert
Thomas S. Parsons

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

To our readers:

Despite our best efforts, there are bound to be errors that escaped our notice, and we would appreciate being informed of these. We encourage you to contact us directly with your comments, suggestions, and possible ideas of text and illustrations for future editions of this book.
We look forward to hearing from you.

Sincerely,

Dr. Gerry De Iuliis
gerry.deiuliis@utoronto.ca

Dino Pulerà
dino.pulera@utoronto.ca

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

Preface

The past two decades have witnessed a rediscovery among researchers of the value of comparative vertebrate anatomy. In large part this has been due to the establishment of phylogenetic systematics and the renewed awareness of the vast contribution that morphology can make to our understanding of the history of vertebrates. This is perhaps even more apparent now than just a few years ago, when the first edition of this manual was in preparation. Indeed, as noted by Budd and Olsson (2007:1), there "has never been a better time to study morphology." However, the study of anatomy at the introductory and intermediate college levels has suffered and continues to do so, as both its stature and perceived importance have diminished. There are several reasons for this. Certainly, and regrettably, the trend at most major academic institutions has followed a path away from whole organism biology, as genetics and molecular biology, for good reason, have become popular. Despite the intense focus on genetics over the last several decades, it remains "clear that morphology still stands at the heart of comparative biology. From functional morphology to ultrastructure, morphological topics link into ecology and physiology, developmental genetics and the fossil record; they connect them all" (Budd and Olsson, 2007:1). A further hindrance to introductory study in this field is that there has been increased resistance from some quarters to the use of animals in various scientific endeavors. As well, the development of easily accessible computer software allows convenient visual journeys through vertebrate bodies without the effort, expense, and "mess" of actual dissection.

The study of anatomy and morphology has much to offer the student wishing to pursue a career in biological or medical fields. Proper training in vertebrate anatomy must include a practical component that involves dissection, in addition to lectures. No other method, regardless of how intricate in presentation and scope, can replace the actual hands-on experience. It is only through a careful, patient, and repeated practical approach that we gain the expertise and practice required for understanding the spatial relationships that are essential to learning how a vertebrate body is constructed, how its component structures are related to each other, and how form and function interact.

There are those who would suggest that such a course of study is unnecessary and that anatomy can be learned through texts or software. While such materials (this text among them) may prove to be invaluable as aids or tools for learning, we ought not to substitute these adjuncts for the means through which we *must* come to know the vertebrate body. To do so would be akin to preparing for an acting career by watching films, rather than through rehearsing and acting workshops. Few of us would feel comfortable with mechanics trained solely through the Internet, trust a surgeon who has learned the craft strictly through instructional videos, or fly with a pilot who has only flown missions on a flight simulator. It is not because such instructional methods are not useful that we would be suspicious. Rather, we recognize that, for fields whose subject matter includes components arranged in complex spatial relationships, these media are meant to be used as tools that supplement and guide the trainee through a methodical, first-hand experience with the subject matter itself. And science, of course, is an empirical endeavor. When practiced, science is based on observation and experience. If we are to train students to become scientists, it is not sufficient merely to present them with the products of science, but we must engage students in actual scientific practice.

The debate on the value of dissection is particularly lively for human medical anatomy (see, for example, Rizzolo, 2002; Pawlina and Lachman, 2004; and Elizondo-Omaña et al., 2005). Many researchers are clearly in favor of dissection, but also see the need to incorporate the advanced imaging technologies currently available. Indeed, a combination of the two techniques apparently leads to superior results (see Biasutto et al., 2006). The same logic should apply for any vertebrate, but similarly advanced technologies are unlikely to be applied to a broad range of vertebrates in the foreseeable future.

The central theme of most previous dissection manuals has been the structural changes in vertebrates through their evolution from fish to mammals, with the ultimate goal being to place mammalian anatomy in context. This is certainly a necessary prerequisite for anyone interested principally in mammalian systematics or medicine. However, not all students or instructors are

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

interested primarily in mammals. Two of the important lessons emphasised by phylogenetics are that all living vertebrates have as long an independent evolutionary history as mammals have, and that their anatomy has as much to tell us about evolution, function, and morphology. Indeed, a common complaint among academic faculty is that comparative vertebrate anatomy courses have become courses on the anatomy of the cat. Be that as it may, it is important to remember that negative perceptions can often be detrimental to the well-being of a field of study and may sway departmental decisions on whether the continuation of some courses is worth the effort and expense. It is up to those of us who teach comparative anatomy to push forward and maintain its vigour and centrality, in part by relating its wide applicability to related fields, such as systematics, evolutionary biology, paleontology, paleobiology, and functional morphology; and as a prerequisite for higher level zoology courses, such as mammalogy, herpetology, ornithology, developmental biology, and vertebrate paleontology.

Our format and coverage is aimed at striking a balance between presenting an evolutionary sequence to "higher" vertebrates and the anatomy of each representative vertebrate as inherently important. The sequence of vertebrates is similar to those presented by other authors, but we must remember that the living vertebrates are not and cannot be used as intermediates. For this reason, we provide discussions of the important features of each group based on the derived features that diagnose a particular phylogenetic grouping. We thus do not treat vertebrates by traditional grouping methods; we would rather, from the beginning, present the student with information that reflects our formal thinking and classification.

The main goal of this text is to provide today's visually oriented student population with a manual that links succinct and pedagogically effective textual direction with relevant, high quality, accurate, and attractive visual references to promote efficient learning of the complex, spatially abstract subject matter in the limited time available in a laboratory setting. Thus, a critical feature of *The Dissection of Vertebrates* is the inclusion of numerous high-quality, didactic, color illustrations. Each depicts the vertebrate approximately as it would appear in a particular stage of dissection, rather than presenting an idealized figure or photographs, as is the case for most other manuals. This in itself facilitates the use of these illustrations, both in learning and later during recall for studying purposes. Photographs are used sparingly. We have chosen illustration over photography in the vast majority of cases because illustration is the method that affords the most control in communicating the pertinent features of a particular dissection. Photographs are indiscriminate, whereas illustration in combination with color allows minimization of unnecessary and distracting background anatomical detail, while still maintaining it. Indeed, we have taken great care to ensure that the background anatomy in the illustrations is accurate. This is important because it gives the users (instructor and student) a context for the anatomical structures under study.

Although students aspiring to careers in systematics, vertebrate paleontology or functional morphology are the primary intended audience of this manual, *The Dissection of Vertebrates* is sufficiently flexible in scope and organization that it may be used in any course on vertebrate anatomy. We present a wide-ranging and encompassing reference manual that will both help students learn the basic anatomy of vertebrates and function as a guide once they are ready to venture into the primary literature.

The Dissection of Vertebrates presents dissection instructions on more vertebrates than is normally the case. The primary focus is on the shark, mudpuppy, and cat, as is usual, but it also provides detailed information on vertebrates either not usually considered or treated very superficially by most other manuals that include multiple vertebrates. It is ironic that the two most speciose groups of vertebrates, the birds and ray-finned fishes, are not adequately covered (if covered at all) in other dissection manuals. We hope that by providing reasonably detailed guides for these vertebrates, instructors will feel more inclined to include these readily available and inexpensive vertebrates in their courses.

This manual is organized by vertebrate. The anatomy of each is then presented systemically. This approach allows all the information on a particular vertebrate to be studied at one time and in sequence. We believe, based on years of instruction, that this method provides a more straightforward integration of the systems. The inclusion of many vertebrates and the organization by vertebrate makes *The Dissection of Vertebrates* more flexible for use in a broad-based full or half-year course at the introductory college level, and allows more convenient organization of course content, depending on time and availability of specimens and the instructor's preferences.

At the same time, we omit many topics that are often covered in most other manuals. Sections on vertebrates or structures that students are unlikely ever to dissect at the intended level of study are not included. Instead, we have focused the material on examples that are likely to be encountered in an introductory lab course, leaving those topics best presented in texts that accompany the lecture portion of a course.

Much of the required background information is presented in the Introduction and Chapter 1. This includes sections on planes of dissection and orientational terminology (see later), as well as an introduction to vertebrates and their relatives (Chapter 1). We suggest

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

that these sections be included as part of the assigned readings for a particular laboratory for each vertebrate. This method will expose students repeatedly to the broad evolutionary development of each system. Terms that are required learning are placed in boldface print throughout the manual. Boldfaced terms are listed in a Key Terms section (which also provides common synonyms in parentheses) following each major component. Students will know at a glance the structures for which they are responsible. We suggest that students use this section as a key to learning the structures by writing a short description for each. The Key Terms sections also allow instructors to adapt this manual to their personal preferences in running their course. Structures that are not required can be identified and crossed out, so that students know they are not responsible for them. This method effectively allows an instructor to limit the detail of the dissection.

We believe that the concise presentation of dissection instructions combined with minimal background information results in a straightforward text that will facilitate and focus the student's learning of anatomy in laboratory. In contrast to most other manuals, much of the background material presented in lecture is omitted here, so *The Dissection of Vertebrates* is less cumbersome to use even though it covers more vertebrates than do other manuals. All the information is relevant for laboratory purposes. This should facilitate matters for the instructor as well. Among other things, it will allow a clear answer to the often-asked question "What am I responsible for reading?" The response can be, without too much exaggeration, "All of it."

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

Acknowledgments

Many colleagues, students, friends, and members of our families have contributed to the publication of both the first and second editions of this book, from carrying out simple tasks, to proofreading, to providing emotional encouragement and support. We are grateful to them all, although we can directly acknowledge only a few of them here: Drs. Thomas Carr (Carthage College) for preparing selected dissections, providing valuable input on text and illustrations, and reviewing sections of the manuscript; and Hans-Dieter Sues (Smithsonian Institution) and Jeff Thomason (University of Guelph) for providing particularly comprehensive reviews of earlier versions of the manuscript. We thank several anonymous reviewers for their helpful comments, suggestions, and corrections; and we are especially grateful to Drs. Matthew F. Bonnan (Western Illinois University), Randy Lauff (St. Francis Xavier University), and Sergio F. Vizcaíno (Museo de La Plata) for their thorough, methodical, and thoughtful review of the entire book.

We appreciate the efforts of Corey Goldman (University of Toronto) and Rivie Seaberg (formerly of George Brown College of Applied Arts and Technology) for academic and institutional support; Stephen Mader (Artery Studios Inc.) for his encouragement and support; Peter von Bitter, Kathy David, Brian Iwama, and Peter Reali for help with photography; Celestino De Iuliis for reading earlier drafts of the manuscript; Dr. Marco Zimmer-De Iuliis for preparation of specimens; Dr. Kevin Seymour for access to the collections of the Royal Ontario Museum; Dr. Hans-Rainer Duncker (Institut für Anatomie und Zellbiologie der Justus-Liebig-Universität Giessen) for providing specimens of the avian air sac system and reviewing our illustrations (Figure 9.13); Dr. Walter Joyce (Universität Tübingen) for help with turtle skulls; Dr. Steven Huskey (Western Kentucky University) for providing skeletal specimens; Dr. Mathew J. Wedel (University of California Berkeley) for photographs of the pigeon air sac system and reprint of a rare paper; Dr. Philip J. Motta (University of South Florida) and students for their suggestions for the second edition; Dr. Barry Bruce (CSIRO Division of Marine Research, Tasmania), Mark McGrouther and Elizabeth Cameron (Australian Museum), and Andrew and Silvy Fox (Rodney Fox Shark Museum, Australia) for providing shark dissection photos; a special thank you to Dr. Steven E. Campana (Bedford Institute of Oceanography, Canada; http://www.marinebiodiversity.ca/shark/english/index.htm) for also providing digital and labeled shark dissection photos, and very kindly allowing us to reprint the SEM photo of the spiny dogfish skin (See Figure 3.12f).

We thank our editors Katie Fawkes and Janice Audet and production manager Sarah Binns of Elsevier for their patience, skill, guidance, and for keeping us on target. We also thank Lisa Tickner and Andrea Cowan of Elsevier for their commitment to the project. We are indebted to David Cella (formerly of Elsevier) for initial consideration of our proposal and recognizing the potential for this book, and to Stephen G. Gilbert for showing us how to get started on creating our own book, and for his encouragement, support, advice, and continued inspiration. Lastly, we thank Virginia and Cinzia for being there beside us every step of the way in seeing the second edition of this book through to the end—it has been yet another long and challenging journey.

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

Introduction

The study of vertebrate anatomy is an interesting and valid field of study for gaining insight into the structure and function of vertebrates. But why should this be important? Of the numerous reasons, we mention only a few.

- It provides us with knowledge of the structures of different organisms and the great variety of form among vertebrates.
- It allows us to examine how the form of these structures is related to their function and thus how morphology is suited to a particular mode of life.
- The characteristics or features of vertebrates preserve information on their ancestry: The features are modified and passed on through the course of generations, and we may use such knowledge to discover the genealogical relationships among vertebrates.
- Comparative anatomical studies help us to understand how the major transitions in vertebrate design might have occurred. Soft tissues do not fossilize, meaning that (with rare exceptions) only transformations of the hard parts of the vertebrate body are preserved in the fossil record. For other parts of the body, we must rely on a sequence of living forms. There are problems with this approach, but if we begin with a robust phylogenetic hypothesis and keep in mind that the living members of some groups are highly derived, then we may be confident in this method as a reasonable approach for deducing the major steps in the evolution of different vertebrate groups.

We will consider all of these aspects in the following course on comparative vertebrate anatomy. Before beginning this study, however, there are several important terms that unambiguously describe position and direction. These indispensable terms greatly facilitate navigating through the complex three-dimensional structure of vertebrate bodies.

DIRECTIONAL TERMINOLOGY AND PLANES OF SECTION

As with all advanced fields of research, anatomical study requires the use of specialized terminology. Such terminology includes not only special words for the anatomical structures themselves and concepts or processes (such as homology, for example), but also terms to designate unambiguously the orientation and direction of structures of the vertebrate body. These terms may at first seem superfluous, but that is because most people have never dealt with anatomy in a comprehensive and detailed manner. It is perfectly adequate in every day life to say that the stomach is lower than the heart or the appendix is in the lower right part of the belly. But this is not anatomy. You will quickly come to realize the importance of the terms presented in this section, and you are urged to learn, become familiar with, and use them.

There are two main sets of terms. One is used in medicine and by some anthropologists, the other by comparative anatomists, paleontologists, and veterinarians. To compound the problem, various synonyms exist for some terms in each set. These circumstances may be cause for confusion, but we may simplify matters by adhering to one set of terms. As we are studying comparative anatomy we will use the system commonly used for nonhuman vertebrates.

Unlike humans, the vast majority of vertebrates go through life with the long axis of the body oriented horizontally, parallel to the substrate. It is with reference to this position that the main directional terms are defined. Most of these terms are coupled; that is, there are two terms that describe opposite directions along a single axis. Refer to Figure 1 while reading through the following explanations. **Anterior** and **posterior** refer to the horizontal longitudinal axis and respectively designate the directions toward the head and tail. Synonyms for these terms that you may encounter are *cranial* or *rostral* for anterior, and *caudal* for posterior. The vertical direction toward the belly or the ground is **ventral**; toward the back or up is **dorsal**. **Medial** refers to the horizontal direction toward the sagittal midline (see later) of the body, whereas **lateral** refers to the direction away from the midline. These are the main terms, but there is another set that is useful. **Proximal** and **distal** are terms often used with a particular reference. At times this reference may be the trunk of the body; at other times a particular structure, such as the heart, may be the reference point. Proximal designates a position closer to the trunk or structure of reference, and distal farther

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

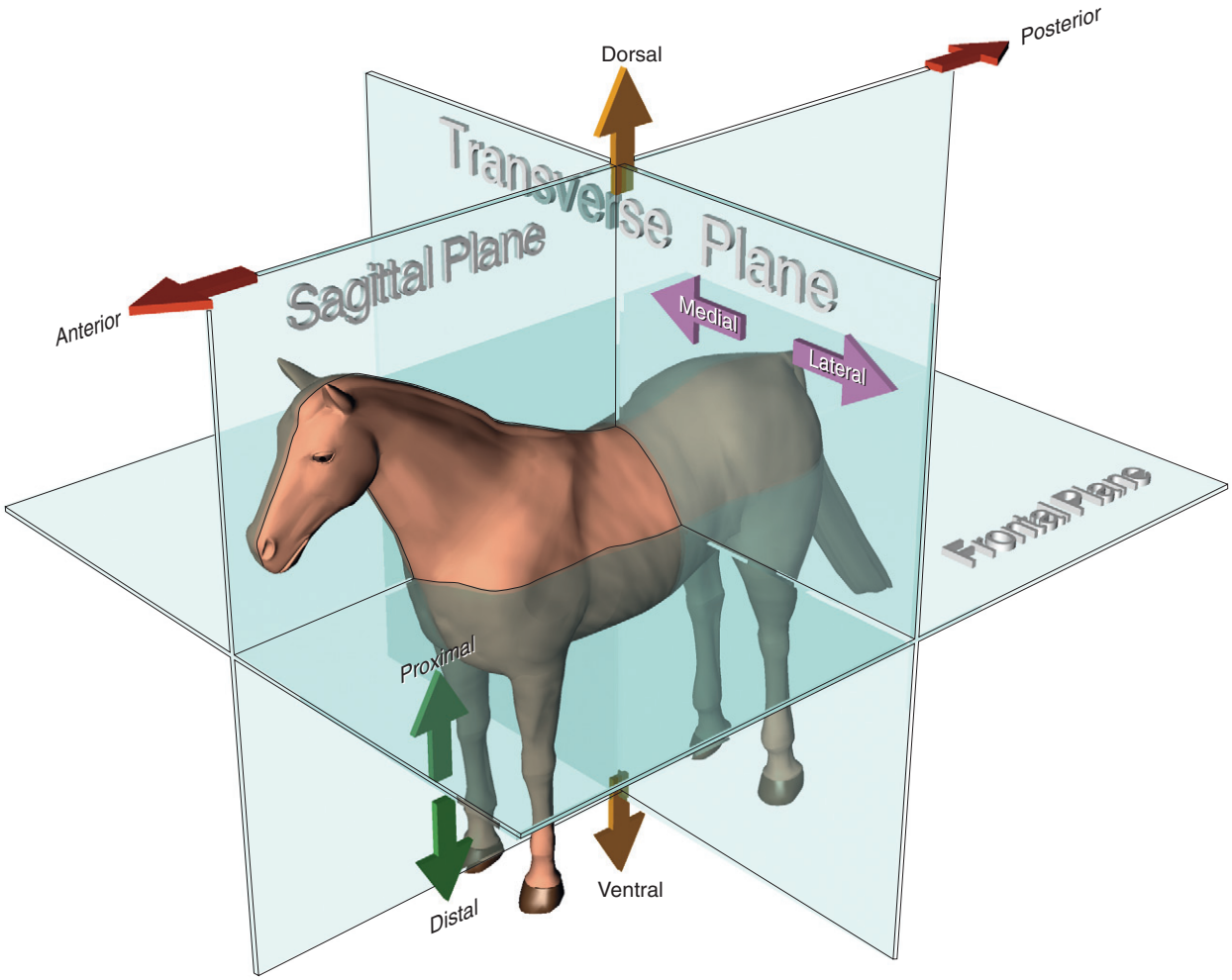


FIGURE 1 Directional terms and main planes or sections through the body shown on a horse.

from the trunk or structure of reference. Thus, for example, the fingers (phalanges) are distal to the upper arm (brachium); and the proximal end of the brachium is that end closest to the trunk. If the reference point is another structure, say the heart, then the proximal part of a blood vessel is the part closer to the heart, and the distal end that part farther away. Two other useful directional terms are **deep** and **superficial**. Deep refers to a position farther from the body surface, and superficial refers to a position closer to the body surface. For example, the skin is superficial to the muscles, and the bones are deep to the muscles.

Combinations of these terms may be used, and indeed are used often in this manual, to describe directions that are oblique to the main axes. For example, anterolateral combines anterior and lateral, and indicates a simultaneous direction toward the head and to the side. Thus, taking the umbilicus (navel or belly button) as a reference, we may describe the shoulder as anterolateral to the umbilicus. Figure 2 provides examples of these terms.

Dissection often involves cutting the body in various planes to obtain internal or sectional views, which are extremely useful for comprehending the spatial arrangement of structures. There are three main sections or planes that pass through the body (Figure 1). The **sagittal** section is vertical and lies along the longitudinal axis of the body. It separates the body into right and left parts. We often consider this the **midsagittal** section or plane. Sections that are parallel to and on one side of the sagittal plane are termed **parasagittal**. A second major section is in the transverse plane, which is also vertical but is perpendicular to the sagittal plane. A **transverse** section cuts across the main longitudinal axis and subdivides the body into anterior and posterior parts. This is what is usually meant if someone asks you to make a cross-section. The last major section is in the frontal plane, which is horizontal and perpendicular to the

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

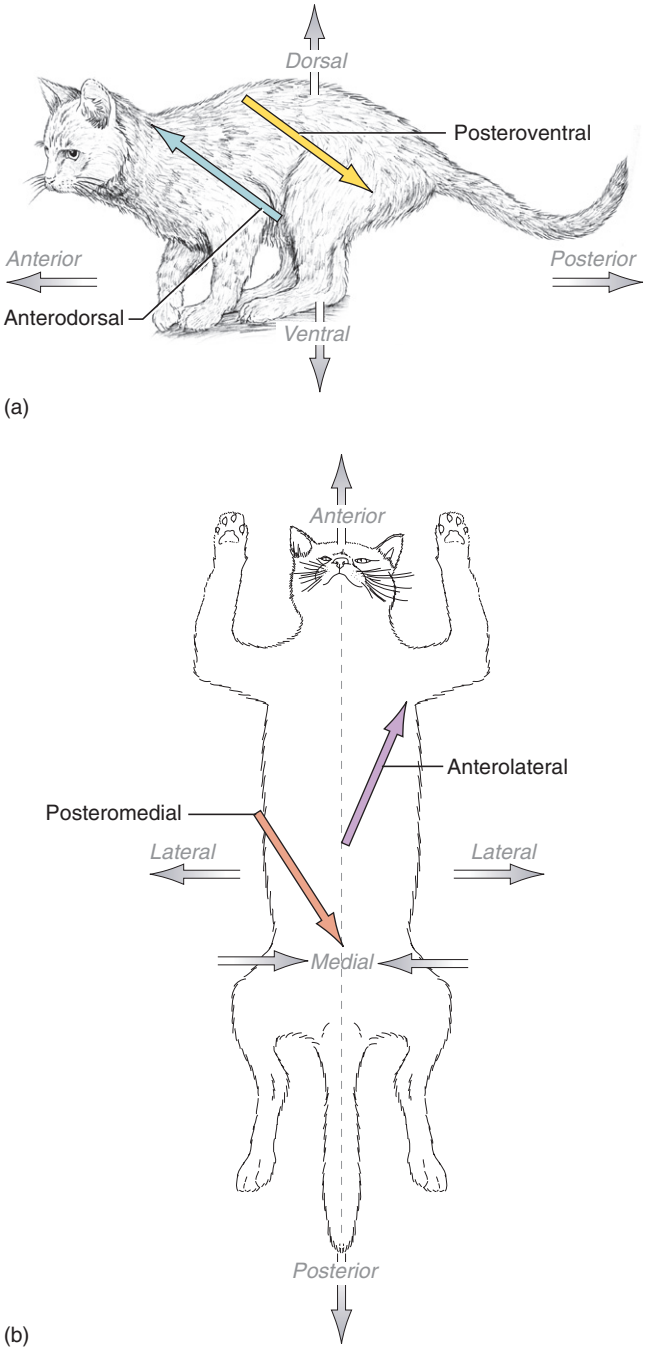


FIGURE 2a, b Combined directional terms shown on a cat.

sagittal and transverse planes. A **frontal** section separates the body into dorsal and ventral parts.

Key Terms: Introduction

anterior (cranial, rostral)
deep
distal
dorsal
frontal
lateral
medial
midsagittal
parasagittal
posterior (caudal)
proximal
sagittal
superficial
transverse
ventral

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

CHAPTER

1

Craniata and Vertebrata

The vertebrates or Vertebrata form an ancient group with a history spanning some 545 million years. On the one hand, they include the organisms most familiar to us, such as fish, birds, cats and dogs, as well as humans; on the other, few people are aware of the great diversity in their form, structure, and habits. Indeed, they include some of the largest and more complex organisms ever evolved. But vertebrates are part of a larger grouping of animals, and to understand their history and the development of their structure, they must be placed in phylogenetic context.

In discussing vertebrates, several other groups of organisms are usually considered. A *monophyletic* or natural group (see later) of organisms is referred to as a *taxon* (plur., *taxa*). The taxa related (in terms of recent common ancestry) to vertebrates include Echinodermata (sand dollars, sea lilies, star fish, sea cucumbers, urchins), Hemichordata (acorn worms and pterobranchs), Urochordata (tunicates or sea squirts), and Cephalochordata (amphioxus). These are the typical nonvertebrate (or "invertebrate") relatives of the group in which we are mainly interested. The vertebrates themselves, or Vertebrata, are included in a larger taxon termed Craniata. Within Craniata and Vertebrata are many taxa. These taxa and the evolutionary relationships among them (see Figure 1.1) are briefly outlined here to provide an organizational framework for undertaking the dissection of the vertebrates discussed in this manual. Before this, however, it is necessary to present an explanation of several important terms used in discussions of *phylogeny*. Phylogeny refers to the pattern of descent among taxa. It describes, in other words, the evolutionary or genealogical relationships among them. Evolution is a historical (and on-going) process. Therefore, the evolution of organisms occurred in only one way—for example, humans and chimpanzees are, among living creatures, either each other's closest relatives (they share a common ancestor not shared by other organisms) or they are not. Only one of these possibilities is correct. Evolutionary biologists try to recover the pattern of descent based on the data they have available to them. Phylogenies are therefore hypotheses that approximate the true pattern of descent. As hypotheses, they are testable and thus open to falsification when new data become available. If a hypothesis is falsified, then another one may be proposed—for example, new evidence might show that humans share a recent common ancestor with a different great ape than chimpanzees, such as orangutans.

PHYLOGENY AND CLASSIFICATION

For most of the past 250 years, the classification of organisms has followed the Linnean system, which uses ranks to designate levels of organization of the organisms being classified. Most readers will be familiar with the main formal Linnean ranks, ordered hierarchically from most to least inclusive: Kingdom, Phylum, Class, Order, Family, Genus, and Species. Researchers have differed in assigning rank to the vertebrates and their relatives. For example, some authors have recognized three phyla: Phylum Echinodermata, Phylum Hemichordata, and Phylum Chordata. Others consider Urochordata and Cephalochordata as phyla on their own, separate from Chordata. Still others have viewed Urochordata as a separate phylum, but Cephalochordata as a subphylum of the Phylum Chordata. If you find this confusing, you're not alone! The different designations did—or at any rate were meant to—have some grounding in biological reality. They reflected a particular researcher's perception of the magnitude of the difference in the levels of organization (a quality that may be referred to as a *grade*) among the taxa under consideration. Thus, if a taxon was considered a phylum, it mainly implied that its members had a fundamentally different basic body plan than if it was considered only a subphylum of a larger taxon. As you have probably already realized, researchers' perceptions along these lines are subjective.

In recent years, however, the formal Linnean ranking system has fallen increasingly into disuse as systematists have become aware that there is no intrinsic or special value of any particular taxon that would justify its recognition as a higher or lower rank, compared to other taxa. In other words, there is no special reason for "elevating"

© 2010 Elsevier Inc.

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

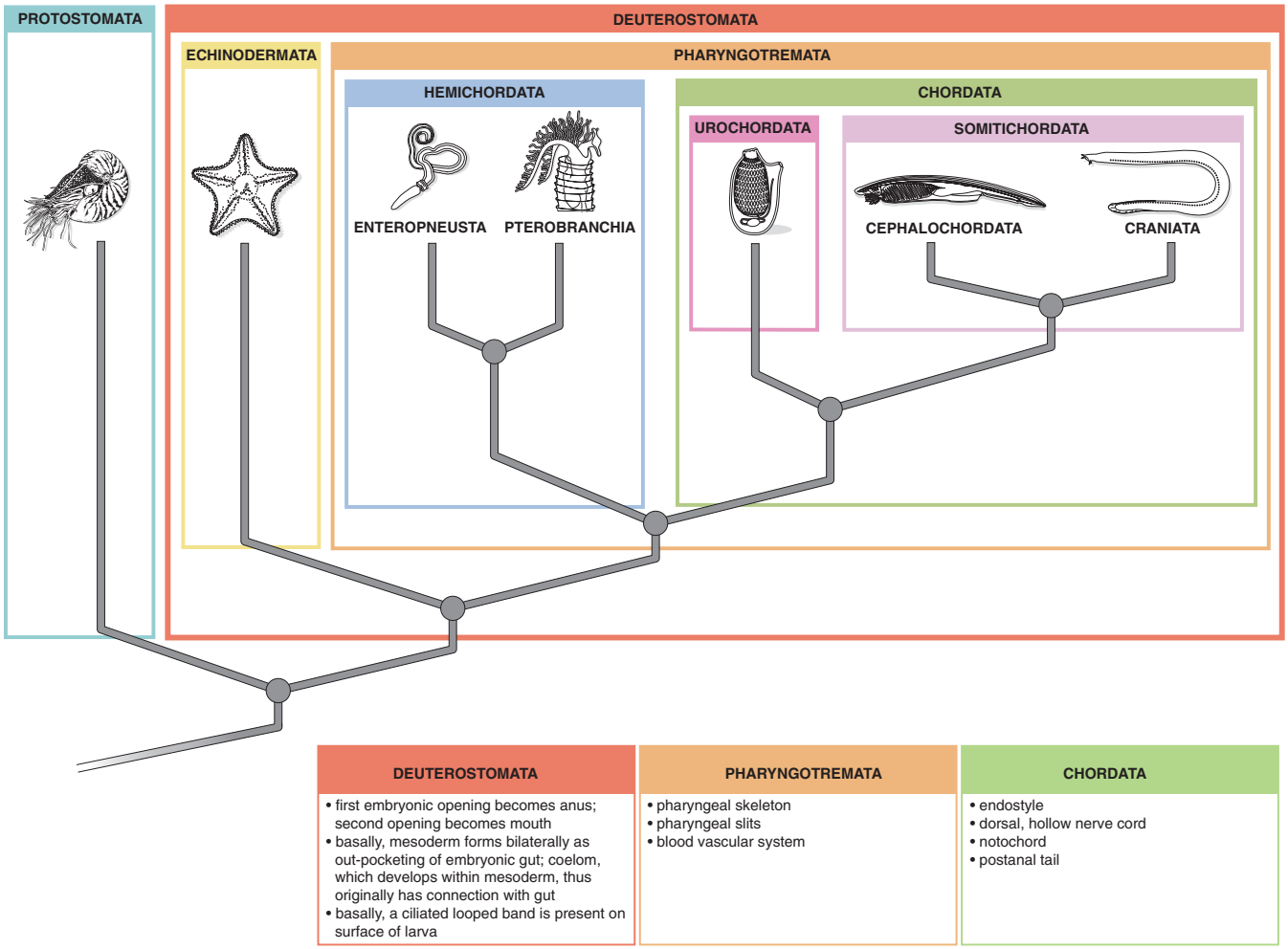


FIGURE 1.1 Cladogram showing phylogeny of Deuterostomata. Some synapomorphies of the main groups are provided in the boxes below the cladogram.

birds or Aves to the rank of Class, equal and thereby excluded from, the Class Reptilia. In fact, it is improper to do so, because the birds are properly part of the taxon named Reptilia. Here, formal ranks are not used, and taxa are referred to simply by their name (except for the preceding paragraph, in which ranks were used to reflect the historical understanding of the groups).

Formal names are applied to natural or monophyletic groups. A monophyletic group includes an ancestor and all of its descendants (provided that the phylogeny has been carefully reconstructed). Such groups are termed *clades*. Clades are recognized based on common ancestry. If two taxa are in a clade, it is because they are linked by a common ancestor. Biologists infer such ancestral relationships through the presence of shared derived characters or synapomorphies (see later). If two (or more) taxa share a character that is exclusive to them, then we assume that they share this feature because they have inherited it from a common ancestor, rather than each having evolved the character independently, and so infer that the taxa are descendants of the same ancestor (which we are not able to actually recognize, and thus refer to as hypothetical). Biologists use many characters in trying to reconstruct phylogeny. The practice is complicated by the fact that organisms can and do evolve very similar characters independently of each other, an occurrence referred to as *homoplasy*. In reconstructing phylogeny, a researcher considers the totality of evidence. It is rare that only a single character can be used to reconstruct phylogeny.

The pattern of relationships among taxa is depicted visually by a *cladogram*, which is essentially a diagram of nodes and branches, with the nodes representing ancestors and the branches that diverge from a node representing the descendant taxa of the ancestor.[1] The

[1]Technically, nodes are speciation events of one ancestor into two or more descendant or daughter species. The root and internodes (segments between the nodes) represent the common ancestors and loci of character transformations.

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

node, then, may be thought of as representing the hypothetical ancestor of the two taxa that diverge from it. The pattern of branching represents the pattern of relationship. Examine the cladogram in Figure 1.1. Note the node from which the Hemichordata and Chordata diverge. This node represents ancestor species that split to produce two lineages, one that evolved into Chordata and the other into Hemichordata. The two branches that diverge from this ancestor represent the evolutionary paths to the divergent taxa.

Only the branching pattern is of concern. The length of the branches is immaterial in terms of absolute time, but relative time is implied by branching sequence. Clearly, the divergence of Cephalochordata and Craniata occurred after the divergence of Hemichordata and Somitichordata.

Informal names, set between quotation marks, are used to designate a group of organisms that do not descend from the same common ancestor, but that do possess (or lack) some of the features of the taxon in which we are interested. Many of these terms were considered formal names in earlier classifications. For example, the term "protochordates" is commonly used to refer to the hemichordates, urochordates, and cephalochordates. Grouping them together is a shorthand way of referring to them as close relatives of chordates (no quotation marks here, so this is the vernacular form of the formal name Chordata), and that they lack various characters that chordates possess. We must be clear that informal groups, though convenient, do not reflect phylogeny; they are not monophyletic.

In discussing how biologists reconstruct phylogeny, the nature of the similarity among organisms must be considered, because it is necessary to differentiate between those similarities that are useful in reconstructing phylogeny and those that are not. One kind, termed *plesiomorphic*, refers to similarity based on presence of ancestral conditions or states. Consider the Vertebrata, in which the presence of vertebrae is an ancestral feature—in other words, it was present in the common ancestor of all vertebrates. These structures may inform us that all vertebrates share a common ancestor, but their presence per se cannot be used to decipher the relationships *among* vertebrates. As a practical example, let us consider a turtle, a bird, and a mammal. All possess vertebrae, and are therefore vertebrates, but the presence of these structures does not allow us to say which two of these forms are more closely related to each other than either would be to the third. This similarity, therefore, is due to the retention of a trait that is ancestral for vertebrates. When an ancestral character is shared by various forms, it is described as *symplesiomorphic*.

A second kind of similarity is due to the inheritance of a *modified* character state. Such modification is considered derived or *apomorphic*. When organisms share a derived trait, it is described as *synapomorphic*. Synapomorphies do indicate phylogenetic relationship. In the most basic sense, sharing a derived trait is a shorthand way of saying that the organisms under consideration possess a modified trait because it was inherited from an ancestor that first acquired or evolved the modification. An assortment of organisms united by synapomorphies forms a natural group or clade; that is, the clade is a real entity in evolutionary terms. It means that all the organisms included within the clade were ultimately derived from the same ancestor. All vertebrates that possess jaws do so because this character was inherited from an ancestor that had evolved jaws as a modification of the mandibular arch (see later). If we wish to understand the relationships among a lamprey, a fish, and a dog, the presence of jaws is a character state that indicates that the dog and fish are more closely related to each other than either is to a lamprey. When two groups are each other's closest relatives, they are said to be *sister groups*.

A natural or monophyletic group may be recognized formally by a name. The only restriction imposed is that a monophyletic group include the ancestor and all descendants of the ancestor, even though the ancestor cannot be identified. A monophyletic group may also be termed a clade, from which is derived the term *cladistics*. An alternate name for cladistics is phylogenetic systematics. Cladistics is the methodology that recognizes shared derived traits as the only valid indicators for inferring phylogenetic relationships.

The third type of similarity is termed *homoplasic* and results from morphologically similar solutions to particular selection pressures. For example, the fusiform body shape of fishes and of porpoises, which are mammals, is not due to inheritance from a common ancestor, but to selection pressure to adopt a form suitable for moving efficiently through water. Such similarity does not indicate phylogenetic relationship, although in some cases the similarity may be so profound that it may lead us inaccurately to attribute its cause to phylogenetic proximity (i.e., recent common ancestry). The reliable method of recognizing homoplasy is to identify it as similarity in different monophyletic groups, following, of course, a phylogenetic analysis.

In addition to clades or monophyletic groups, we may speak of *grades*, which are not natural groups. A grade recognizes a group of organisms based on a comparable level of organization or complexity. A new grade may be achieved through the accumulation of a number of derived characters so that a new mode of living is made possible. In the past, some groups were formally recognized, but they were united essentially because their members shared a particular grade of evolution. We now recognize such groups as artificial rather than natural. An artificial group is one that does not include an ancestor and all of its descendants or combines two

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

or more groups while excluding one or more ancestors (e.g., "Haemothermia" = mammals + birds).

Probably the most familiar example is the case of Reptilia. Formerly, Reptilia included living and fossil crocodiles, turtles, snakes, lizards, as well as their extinct relatives, such as dinosaurs, pterosaurs, and plesiosaurs. The Class Reptilia was given a rank equivalent to that of Aves (birds) and Mammalia (mammals), even though the ancestors (and early relatives) of these two groups were considered reptiles. As so defined, however, Reptilia is not a natural group because it does not include all of its descendants, as the birds and mammals are excluded (and each placed in a group of equal rank). Current usage of Reptilia varies. As its traditional concept is so embedded in our thinking, some authors have preferred to abandon it entirely for formal purposes (and prefer to use Sauropsida) but retain it in its colloquial sense. In this latter meaning, "reptile" represents a grade that includes cold-blooded amniote tetrapods, with scales (lacking hair or feathers); that is, the features we usually associate with living reptiles such as turtles, crocodiles, snakes, and lizards. Other authors redefine Reptilia as a formal group that includes the typical reptiles and birds. The more basal fossil allies of mammals, termed mammal-like reptiles, are excluded from the Reptilia and properly united with their mammalian descendants in Synapsida.

The discussion given here provides the basic background information required to interpret cladograms and how they are constructed. For more detailed discussions on cladistics and classification, consult a text in comparative anatomy that provides more detailed explanations of these concepts. Liem et al. (2001) provide a particularly thorough discussion.

VERTEBRATE RELATIVES

All the taxa mentioned so far belong to Deuterostomata, a major clade of coelomate triploblastic metazoans, multicellular animals that possess three primary body layers (ectoderm, mesoderm, and endoderm) and have a true body cavity that houses the viscera. The other major clade is Protostomata, which includes annelids, arthropods, mollusks, and many other groups.

The synapomorphies (shared derived characters) of deuterostomes that indicate they are a clade are mainly similarities of early embryonic development (see Figure 1.1). They include type of cleavage of the fertilized egg, pattern of mouth and anus formation, and formation of the mesoderm and coelom (body cavity). The clades within Deuterostomata share these features, but several of them have become modified in some derived members.

Next, we must consider the pattern of relationships, or phylogeny, among deuterostomes. For the most part, the phylogeny outlined here follows the traditionally recognized scheme based primarily on morphology. Be aware, however, that several recent analyses based mainly on mitochondrial or ribosomal gene sequences do not corroborate this scheme. Such discrepancies are noted appropriately later.

To review, the main clades of deuterostomes are the echinoderms, hemichordates, urochordates, cephalochordates, and craniates (see Figure 1.1). It may seem surprising that the echinoderms, seemingly so different from what we usually think of as vertebrates, are closely related to vertebrates and are included with them in Deuterostomata. As noted earlier, however, they are clearly united by strong similarities in early developmental patterns.

One group traditionally recognized in vertebrate history is Chordata, which includes Urochordata, Cephalochordata, and Craniata. One reason Chordata has been considered particularly important is that there are several easily recognizable characters that are clearly shared by chordates. Without belaboring the point, such distinctions as "important" or "major" often imply a status that may not be justified. There is no real reason why the chordates should be considered more "important" than the next most inclusive group, for example. It is more a matter of convenience and tradition and, perhaps, that we have only recently begun to fully comprehend that all branches in the tree of life may be considered equally important.

In any event, beginning with Chordata is convenient. The chordates are united by the presence of the following synapomorphies: an endostyle; a dorsal, hollow nerve cord; a notochord; and a postanal tail. Another feature important in chordates is the presence of pharyngeal slits, although this feature is not exclusive to them (see Figure 1.1). These features are present at some point during the lives of all chordates, although they may be expressed to varying degrees and restricted to part of the life cycle in different vertebrate groups, or modified in derived members. Humans, for example, do not possess a tail (an obvious one, at any rate), notochord and pharyngeal slits; but pharyngeal pouches, a notochord, and a tail are transient features that are present during embryonic development. The endostyle is represented by its homologue, the thyroid gland.

Pharyngeal slits are bilateral apertures that connect the pharynx (essentially the "neck" of the animal), which is the anterior part of the gut, with the outside. In forms that are familiar to us, such as fish, the slits are part of the respiratory, or gas exchange, system: The gills reside on the walls of the slits and perform gas exchange as water passes over them. In some fishes, like sharks, the slits open individually onto the surface of the body; in most other fishes, the slits open into a common chamber that then leads out to the surface of the body by a common

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

opening. Originally the slits did not function in gas exchange. Ancestral vertebrates were suspension or filter feeders (as are urochordates and cephalochordates) and the slits were the means for allowing water to exit the oral cavity and pharynx. As water passed out of the pharynx through the slits, food particles were filtered out and directed toward the rest of the digestive system. The endostyle, a midventral groove (on the floor of the pharynx), has ciliated cells that secrete mucus, which is spread around the walls of the pharynx. Food particles suspended in the water are trapped by the mucus, and the water then leaves the pharynx through the slits. The mucus and entrapped food particles are then passed back into the digestive system. The slits and endostyle were thus originally part of the feeding mechanism.

The notochord is a relatively thin, rod-like structure extending dorsally along the length of the trunk and tail in less derived chordates. It is an important support structure, and the name Chordata is derived from notochord. It is a hydrostatic structure, consisting of a fibrous sheath that encloses a fluid-filled central core. It is flexible along is length, but, as it is filled with fluid, cannot easily be compressed anteroposteriorly (or telescoped). The notochord provides support for the body and allows the side-to-side locomotory movements characteristic of less derived vertebrates. In derived vertebrates, the notochord is largely replaced functionally by the bone of the vertebral column. It is present embryologically; and in adult humans, notochordal tissue may persist as part of the intervertebral disks that lie between successive vertebrae.

The presence of a tubular nerve cord enclosing a fluid-filled central canal occurs only in chordates. There are additional distinctive features about the chordate nerve cord. It is formed by an embryological process called *invagination*, a rolling and sinking into the body of ectodermal tissue. Further, it is dorsal to the digestive tract, whereas in most nonchordates the nerve cord is solid and ventral.

The postanal tail is a continuation past the anus of the trunk musculature and notochord. This extension is an important development that allows the locomotion particular to vertebrates. A few chordates do not possess a postanal tail as adults (e.g., frogs), but a tail is present in nearly all chordate larvae.

Cephalochordata is usually considered the sister group to the craniates, a phylogenetic arrangement reflecting the idea that vertebrates and cephalochordates share a common ancestor. All four chordate characters, plus the presence of pharyngeal slits, are clearly present during the life of a cephalochordate. The name Cephalochordata is derived from the presence of a notochord extending from the tail nearly to the tip of the head (from the ancient Greek *kephalos*, head). The commonly studied cephalochordate is *Branchiostoma lanceolatum*. Cephalochordate species commonly are referred to as amphioxus (which means sharp at both ends) or lancelet (little spear). Given the fact that these little creatures essentially lack a head and so are pointed at both ends, amphioxus is an especially appropriate designation. Although amphioxus has a fish-like body (see later), it is not an active swimmer as an adult. Instead, it burrows into the substrate, usually just out from sandy beaches, and assumes a position with only its mouth exposed. Its filter-feeding lifestyle is similar to that described earlier for ancestral vertebrates. Intake of water and its movement through the pharynx is accomplished by ciliary action. The pharynx has numerous slits that collectively empty into a surrounding chamber, the atrium, before leaving the body through a common opening. The endostyle secretes mucus, which traps food particles suspended in the water.

Taxon including Cephalochordata and Craniata is termed the Somitichordata (Figures 1.1 and 1.2). Although there are several differences between these sister groups, we are interested in their synapomorphies, for these features provide evidence of their shared ancestry. Among these characters are similarity in development of mesoderm, including the hypomere (or lateral plate mesoderm) and mesodermal somites, which develop into myomeres (segmented blocks of trunk musculature, which in amphioxus extends through to the anterior tip of the body); arrangement of the circulatory system, with dorsal and ventral aortae; and segmentally arranged spinal nerves. Some researchers also recognize the retention of larval features—the notochord, the nerve cord, and the postanal tail—as synapomorphies. Others, however, consider these as retention of ancestral features rather than a novel development, and that the loss of these features in Urochordata, the sister group of the somitichordates (see later), is derived.

The urochordates are the next most related group, sharing a common ancestor with Somitichordata. Urochordates include sea squirts or tunicates, which are sessile, sac-like organisms as adults. In the larval stage, however, all four chordate characters, plus the pharyngeal slits, are present. Predictably, the three characters lost in adults—the tail, notochord, and nerve cord—are used in locomotion by the free-swimming larva as it searches for a suitable place to anchor itself to metamorphose into the adult form. During this transformation, the tail is absorbed, along with the nerve cord and notochord, of which only small remnants remain in the adult. The name Urochordata is derived from the fact that the notochord is present in the tail (from the ancient Greek *uron*, tail). Conversely, the pharyngeal region expands dramatically into a barrel-shaped structure with numerous slits. Water and suspended food particles are drawn into this "barrel," which is lined with mucus from the endostyle. Food particles are trapped by the mucus, and

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

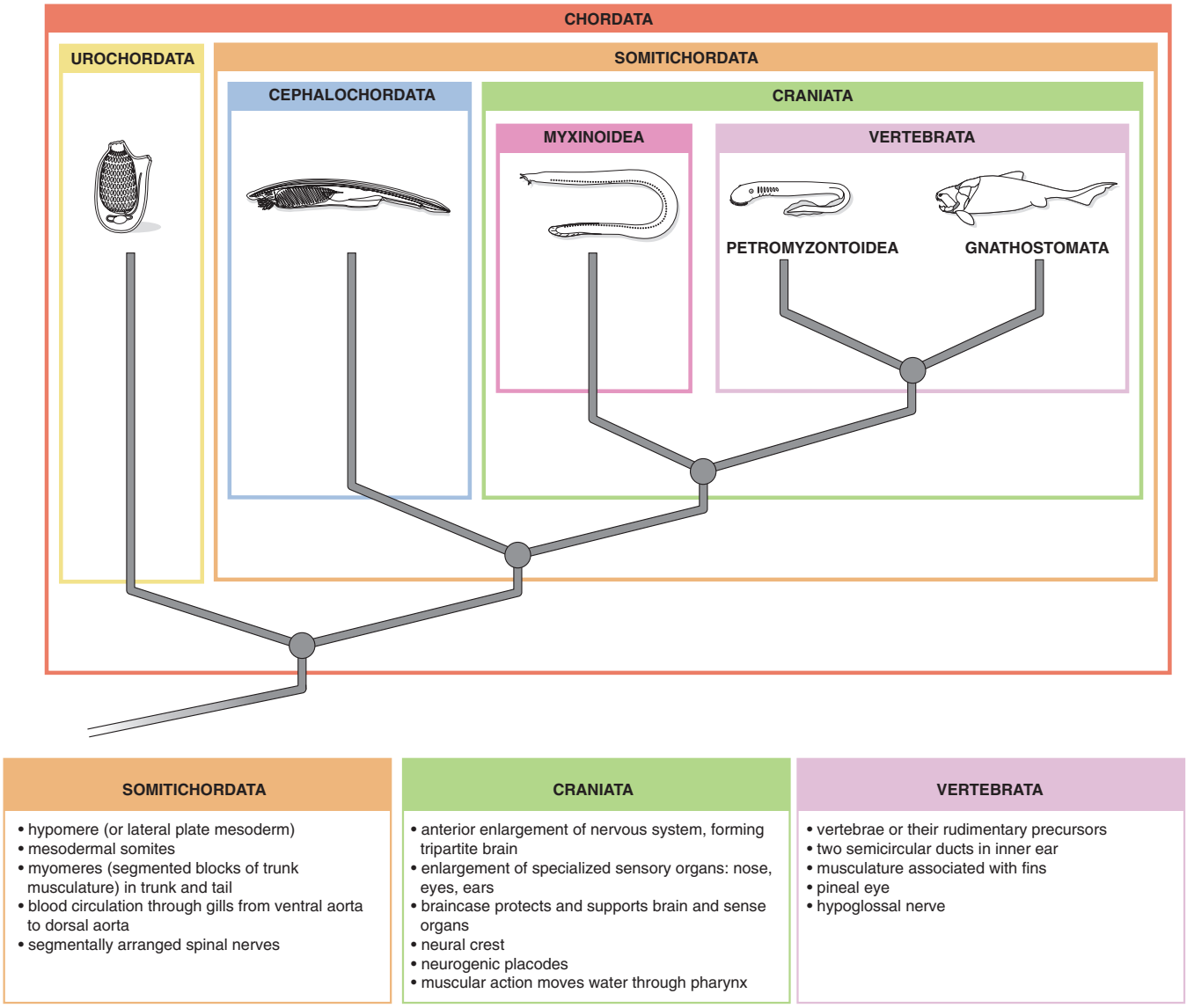


FIGURE 1.2 Cladogram showing phylogeny of Chordata. Some synapomorphies of the main groups are provided in the boxes below the cladogram.

water leaves through the slits into the atrium, the chamber surrounding the pharynx.

This arrangement is the traditionally accepted phylogenetic scheme and finds recent support in the work of Stach (2008). Some, however, reverse the positions of Urochordata and Cephalochordata, with the former considered the sister group to Craniata. One recent study removed cephalochordates from Chordata, and considered them as a sister group to Echinodermata. Compare, for example, Beaster-Jones et al. (2006) with Delsuc et al. (2006).

The phylogenetic position of Hemichordata is particularly uncertain. They were traditionally grouped with the chordates; here, they are considered a sister group to the chordates, but this arrangement is far from stable. Molecular evidence has been mounting over the last decade that points to a monophyletic relationship of hemichordates with echinoderms; as well, morphological evidence suggests monophyly. Hemichordates comprise two clades, Enteropneusta (acorn worms) and Pterobranchia, both of which are marine animals. The acorn worms are reasonably diversified and well known, but the pterobranchs are not as well understood. Some but not all pterobranchs have a single pair of pharyngeal apertures, whereas all acorn worms have several such openings. The presence of these slits and embryonic invagination of the nerve cord are about the only definitive evidence of a relationship with the chordates. On the other hand, evidence suggests that echinoderms originally had slits as well, although no living

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

echinoderm possesses them. If this is true, then a monophyletic relationship between Hemichordata and Chordata becomes tenuous indeed.

CRANIATES AND VERTEBRATES

Difference of opinion exists in precisely which chordates are to be regarded formally as Vertebrata (Figure 1.2). In part this is because one of the main characters of vertebrates is, of course, the presence of vertebrae, a repeating series of articulating cartilaginous or bony elements forming the spinal column, which provides support for the body, muscular attachment, and protection for the nerve or spinal cord. Vertebrae form around the notochord during embryonic development and enclose the spinal cord.

However, not all chordates traditionally included in Vertebrata have complete vertebrae, as just noted; and some have no trace of vertebrae at all. In large part, which chordates are actually recognized as vertebrates depends largely on the relationships of the most basal living craniates, the hagfishes (Myxinoidea) and lampreys (Petromyzontoidea), both to each other and to unquestioned vertebrates. The hagfishes and lampreys are clearly more derived than cephalochordates, sharing various characteristics with unquestioned vertebrates (see later). However, they are undoubtedly less derived than the latter in the absence of jaws, the feature to which they owe their designation as "agnathans" (from the ancient Greek *a*, without; and *gnathos*, jaw). Their mouths are circular, so they are also known as "cyclostomes" (round mouth). The undoubted vertebrates, united by the fact that they possess jaws, are grouped together as Gnathostomata (jaw-mouthed). Traditionally, the hagfish and lamprey were considered to be each other's closest relative, and so grouped in "Cyclostomata" as a formal taxon. As well, several groups of jawless extinct forms were considered more closely related to cyclostomes than to gnathostomes, and the whole lot of these jawless forms were included in "Agnatha," again, as a formal taxon. At this stage of research, the "cyclostomes" (and other "agnathans") were usually all included in Vertebrata.

"Agnathans" diversified into many different forms early in craniate history, but only two forms, the hagfish and the lamprey, represent the jawless condition among living craniates. Many of the early agnathans were excessively bony, but most of this bone was dermal and formed shields or plates that covered and protected the body. These forms are informally termed "ostracoderms," and are not considered in the phylogenies presented here.

About 20 years ago, morphological analyses began to suggest that lampreys (and some extinct "agnathans") are more closely related to gnathostomes than to hagfishes. Following cladistic procedure, the lampreys were then grouped together with the gnathostomes. Because lampreys possess rudimentary vertebrae (or, at least, precursors of true vertebrae), termed *arcualia*, which are essentially cartilaginous blocks on either side of the nerve cord, most researchers began to restrict the Vertebrata to the lamprey + gnathostome assemblage, with the hagfishes considered the sister group to this Vertebrata. An important set of features shared by both hagfishes and Vertebrata (lampreys + gnathostomes) is the development of a true head (see later), and so the name Craniata was applied to this clade. We note in passing that some researchers have continued to consider the Vertebrata as including the hagfishes (while recognizing the sister group relationship between lampreys and gnathostomes), and so consider Craniata and Vertebrata as synonyms. Most recently, however, molecular studies have not corroborated the morphological evidence. Instead, these studies suggest that the hagfishes and lampreys may indeed be each other's closest relative, in which case the "Cyclostomata" would be monophyletic. The scheme followed here is based mainly on morphological evidence and recognizes the Craniata and Vertebrata as successive clades (Figure 1.2).

As noted earlier, a major feature of craniates is the development of a true head. A distinct anterior enlargement of the nervous system, forming a brain, and of sensory organs occurs in craniates. The brain of craniates is tripartite, with three main primary subdivisions; the specialized sense organs—eyes, ears, and nose—are complex. These structures are protected and supported by a bony or cartilaginous cranium or braincase. Closely associated with a head is the neural crest, a unique feature of craniates. This comprises embryonic tissue formed of cells assembled near the developing neural tube that migrate through the embryo to give rise to a great variety of structures. In the head region, neural crest cells initiate and largely form the vast array of cranial structures characteristic of craniates. Another unique feature associated with the head are neurogenic placodes. Placodes are thickenings of the ectoderm occurring early in embryonic development that differentiate and help form a variety of structures of the body. Neurogenic placodes occur only on the head and are involved in forming sensory receptors and neurons, and contribute to the cranial nerves. Thus, the neural crest and neurogenic placodes, transitory though they may be, are distinguishing features of craniates. Pharyngeal slits are still present, of course, but in craniates they are associated with gills and are thus used for gas exchange rather than feeding. Yet another innovation of craniates is that moving water into the pharynx and out through the pharyngeal slits is accomplished by muscular, rather than ciliary, action (see Figure 1.2).

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

EARLY STAGES IN VERTEBRATE EVOLUTION

Before continuing with the phylogenetic story of vertebrates, it is useful to examine the feeding habits of the earliest vertebrates, as evolutionary innovations of the feeding apparatus reflect the major transitions in vertebrate evolution. It is generally hypothesized that the earliest step in becoming a vertebrate occurred in creatures considered to represent a prevertebrate stage, although such forms may have qualified as true vertebrates. Their precise phylogenetic position, in any event, is not of concern here, because we are interested in feeding mode. The prevertebrate was probably a suspension or filter feeder (that is, it filtered food material that was suspended in water) and used ciliary action to generate a current of water into its mouth and out of the pharyngeal slits; in other words, a creature very much like amphioxus. It did not have jaws, and its pharyngeal bars were probably collagenous. The ciliary pump imposed limits on size, as it restricted the amount and type of food the animal was capable of ingesting.

The next step involved a change from the ciliary pump with collagenous bars to a muscular pump with cartilaginous bars. This is the agnathan stage. The combination of these characteristics meant that the intake of water, and thus food, was controlled by active expansion and compression of the pharyngeal region, which allowed a diversification in size and type of food, and thus of the vertebrates themselves. The cartilaginous, rather than collagenous, bars were instrumental in this. Musculature could be used to compress the pharynx, including the bars, but once the muscles relaxed, the cartilaginous bars could spring back into shape, expanding the pharynx.

The third level of development is the gnathostome stage, which involved the development of jaws. Jaws conferred the ability to grasp prey and close the mouth to prevent its escape; hence to seek and capture food. These features set the stage for the predaceous, active lifestyle of vertebrates, in sharp contrast to the sedentary lifestyles of protochordates.

VERTEBRATA

As noted earlier, the lampreys, or Petromyzontoidea, represent the most basal living vertebrates. Several important synapomorphies mark this group. All vertebrates have at least two semicircular ducts in the inner ear, structures concerned with improving balance and position of the organism (the single duct in hagfishes possibly represents a secondary simplification of the two present in vertebrates, rather than being the ancestral condition). Also, vertebrates have musculature associated with the fins, allowing better control of the fins and thus of their locomotion through water.

Several extinct early vertebrates have extensive fossil records, and were clearly the dominant forms during early vertebrate history. Several of these groups are recognized as being more closely related to more derived vertebrates. One particularly interesting group is the conodonts, which for nearly 200 years were considered "invertebrates." Recent fossil evidence clearly indicates that not only are they vertebrates, but according to some authors, they are more derived than lampreys. Several other extinct groups possessed excessive dermal bone arranged as protective broad plates or shields, particularly around the head, and so are termed "ostracoderms." These, mentioned only in passing here and excluded from Figure 1.2, include Heterostraci, Anaspida, Osteostraci, and various others. A textbook will provide further discussion of their anatomy and phylogenetic relationships.

The remaining vertebrates form the clade Gnathostomata (Figure 1.3; Ancient Greek, *gnathos*, jaw, and *stoma*, mouth). As their name implies, gnathostomes have jaws, structures that are modifications of an anterior pharyngeal arch (see later). Their development was a significant evolutionary advancement, perhaps the most important in vertebrate history, because jaws controlled by muscles allow animals to grasp objects firmly. The development of teeth confer a more certain hold and further allow the reduction of food to smaller pieces. These abilities allowed the exploitation of many feeding opportunities. A second innovation was necessary before vertebrates could fully exploit potential new food sources, because the mouth, hence body, must be guided toward an object. The control of the body in three dimensions is allowed by the presence of paired fins with internal skeletal and muscular support that permitted control of the body in locomotion. A horizontal semicircular duct is added, so gnathostomes have three semicircular ducts. Other synapomorphies include the presence of five pharyngeal slits and jointed visceral arches. In gnathostomes the arches are embedded deep in the body, adjacent to the pharyngeal wall, whereas in "agnathans" they are not articulated structures and lie superficially, just beneath the skin toward the outside of the body. The traditional hypothesis on jaw origins considers jaws as an anterior visceral arch (located close to the original mouth) that was modified to form upper and lower jaws. This arch is termed the *mandibular arch*.

The familiar group of vertebrates that possess these features, at least initially, are the fishes, which are also the earliest gnathostomes. Most people know what a fish is, but few recognize that not all fishes are the same with respect to their relationships to other vertebrates. Although they were once all included as "Pisces," they do not form a natural group because some possess

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

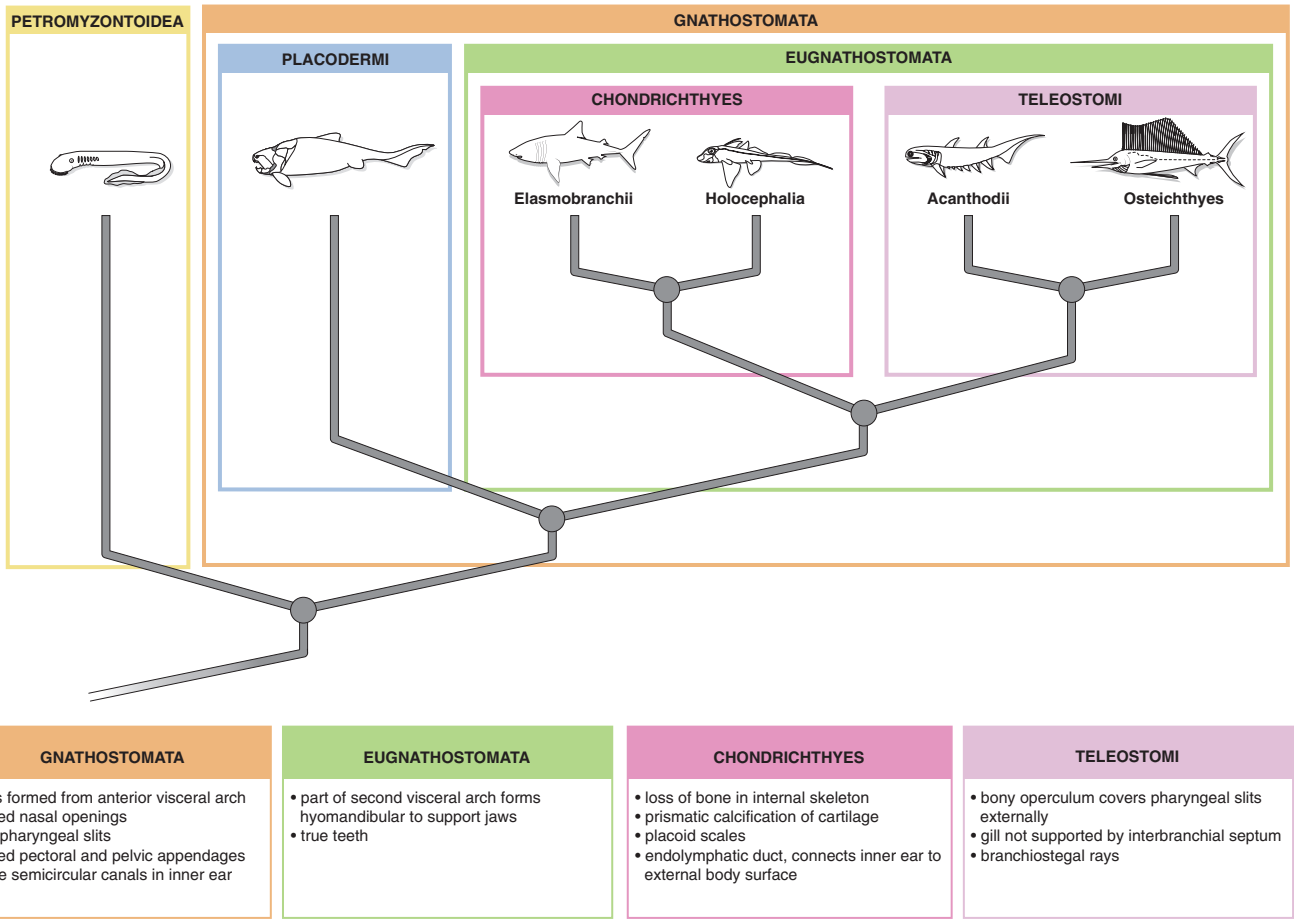


FIGURE 1.3 Cladogram showing phylogeny of Vertebrata. Some synapomorphies of the main groups are provided in the boxes below the cladogram.

features that indicate a common ancestry with tetrapods. Therefore, if "Pisces" were to be retained as a formal term, then the tetrapods would have to be included in the taxon, but it would then be equivalent of Gnathostomata (however, see later).

Fish, by and large, all have a similar way of getting on in the world, and it should thus be clear that our everyday concept of fish represents a grade rather than a clade. That they are fish conveys the general idea that locomotion is accomplished essentially through lateral undulations of the trunk and tail with guidance supplied by paired pectoral and pelvic fins; gas exchange occurs primarily through gills located in the pharyngeal slits; the heart is a simple, tubular, single-barrelled pump; and so on. However, as some fish are more closely related to other types of vertebrates, including birds and mammals, our classification must reflect this.

The most basal fishes are the extinct Placodermi. Placoderms (from the Ancient Greek *placo*, plate, and *derma*, skin) had several large plates covering the head and anterior part of the trunk. These armored head and trunk sections were linked by a movable joint. Placoderms were generally small (though some were giants, reaching 6 m in length) and possessed extensive dermal coverings, as did the "ostracoderms," but they share numerous features that unite them with all other gnathostomes, including jaws and paired fins. There is, however, considerable question as to the homology of their jaws with those of other jaw-bearing vertebrates. Various differences in the masticatory apparatus, such as an internal rather than external position for the jaw muscles, may indicate that jaws were independently derived in placoderms and other gnathostomes. If so, the immediate common ancestor of these two groups may have lacked functional jaws. Placoderms had numerous shared derived characters that indicate that they form a monophyletic group, such as a unique joint in the neck that allowed the head to be lifted and a distinctive upper jaw articulation. Most authors consider placoderms as the sister group to all remaining gnathostomes, as is done here, but some regard them as united with the cartilaginous fishes, Chondrichthyes (see later), in a monophyletic group.

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

In the remaining gnathostomes, Eugnathostomata, the second visceral arch is modified into a hyoid arch, a supporting element for the jaw (Figure 1.3). In addition, eugnathostomes possess true teeth. They include the remaining fishes and the terrestrial vertebrates. Among fishes, three major radiations may be recognized, the most basal being the Chondrichthyes (Figure 1.3). This clade includes the sharks (Elasmobranchii) and chimaeras (Holocephali), and is united by various derived features, such as placoid scales, a cartilaginous skeleton with prismatic calcification, an endolymphatic duct connecting the inner ear with the exterior, and the presence of claspers in males. Despite these and other specializations, chondrichthyeans retain numerous plesiomorphic features in their basic anatomy. The near absence of bone, however, is not ancestral, but a secondary loss. The combination of this condition and of ancestral features is a main reason why the shark is used so extensively for dissection: The ancestral features allow an understanding of the basic vertebrate systems, and the specialized absence of bone facilitates the dissection of these systems.

Elasmobranchii includes the sharks and rays. Traditionally these were considered monophyletic groups, with Squalomorpha including sharks and Batoidea including skates and rays. However, the former may not be monophyletic, with some being more closely related to batoids than to other sharks. Elasmobranchs (from the Ancient Greek *elasmos*, thin plate, and *branchia*, gills) have partitions between the pharyngeal slits that bear the gills. The holocephalians (chimaeras or ratfishes) differ in having a fleshy operculum covering the slits. Also, the upper jaw is fused to the braincase, a feature from which the group gets its name (holocephalian: from the Ancient Greek, *holos*, whole, and *kephale*, head), whereas in elasmobranchs the upper jaw is separate from the braincase.

Teleostomi includes the bony fishes and tetrapods (Figure 1.3). The bony fishes, as their name implies, retained and improved on a bony skeleton. The acanthodians are a relatively minor group of very early, extinct bony fishes, characterized by long stout spines associated with their paired fins, of which more than two were often present. The other two major radiations of bony fishes form a clade (including the tetrapods) termed Osteichthyes, and include Actinopterygii and Sarcopterygii (Figures 1.3 and 1.4). A lung or air sac is considered an ancestral trait for this group. From it a swim bladder evolved in some derived bony fishes.

Actinopterygii (Figure 1.4) or ray-finned fishes are the most diverse and numerous vertebrates (about half of all living vertebrates are actinopterygians) and inhabit nearly all aquatic habitats. Their fins are supported internally mainly by fibrous rays (rather than an endoskeletal support) and are controlled by muscles that lie mainly within the body wall. Actinopterygians include a staggering diversity of fossil and living forms, and only the most general of evolutionary outlines of living actinopterygians is possible here, with additional detail provided in Figure 1.4. Several major groupings may be recognized. The most basal is Polypteriformes (= Cladista), a clade which includes *Polypterus* (bichir). Polypteriformes retain several of the early features of early actinopterygians, such as ganoid scales, a well-ossified skeleton, and paired ventral lungs (air sacs) connected to the pharynx for aerial respiration. Many students are surprised that lungs would be important in fishes, but aerial respiration is so important that bichirs drown if deprived of it.

Actinopteri includes more derived actinopterygians, with the Chondrostei—sturgeons and paddlefishes, as well as extinct relatives—representing the basal forms of this clade. Neopterygii are the sister group to chondrosteans. Lepisosteidae (gars) are basal neopterygians. The sister clade to lepisosteids is composed of a relatively small group, Amiidae, which includes the bowfins, and Teleostei, which includes the most derived actinopterygians.

Earlier classifications recognized three groups of actinopterygians—the chondrosteans, holosteans, and teleosteans—as reflecting a sequence of basal, intermediate, and derived actinopterygians. These categories were more properly evolutionary grades, with "holosteans" including the lepisosteids and amiids (see Figure 1.4), and are useful in following, in broad outline, some of the main trends in actinopterygian evolution. These include changes in the feeding apparatus, fin form and position, and body shape.

The feeding apparatus of bony fishes is structured so that the lowering jaw was ancestrally capable only of simple lowered and closing. In this system, the upper jaw was fused to the braincase. The upper and lower jaws were long, with the articulation far back under the skull, permitting a wide gape. These features are reflected by the orientation of the hyomandibular, which sloped posteroventrally. The feeding apparatus underwent modifications, resulting in a complex kinetic system in which the jaws are protruded and allow inertial suction feeding. The main anatomical changes are that the jaws shortened, so the hyomandibular swung forward to assume, in derived teleosts, an anteroventral orientation. The maxilla, a bone of the upper jaw, was freed from the jaw margin and functions as a lever in participating in movements of the premaxilla, the most anterior element of the upper jaw. Inertial suction feeding opened up numerous opportunities and is one of the main features cited in the success of actinopterygians. Associated changes occurred in the position and form of the fins and of the body. Ancestrally, the tail was heterocercal and the paired fins were in positions similar to that in the sharks: relatively ventral, with the pectoral fins lying

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

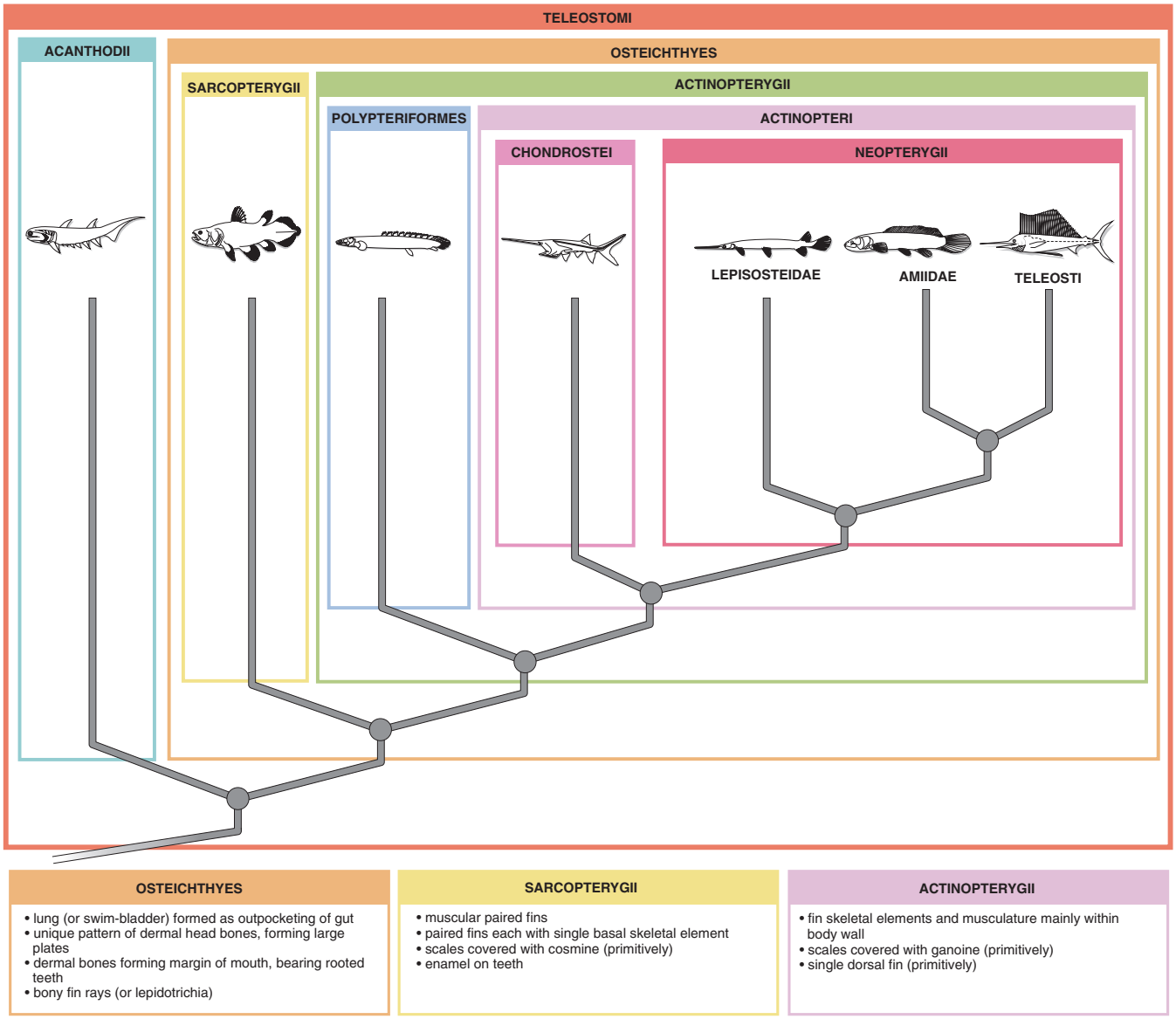


FIGURE 1.4 Cladogram showing phylogeny of Teleostomi. Some synapomorphies of the main groups are provided in the boxes below the cladogram.

anteriorly and pelvic fins posteriorly. Also, the body is, again as in sharks, fusiform, or torpedo-shaped. These features make for fast swimming. In teleosts the pectoral fins are moved dorsally and the pelvic fins anteriorly. The tail is homocercal (superficially symmetrical) and the body laterally compressed. These changes allowed for different swimming styles, with considerably more precision control (for example, the dorsal position of the pectoral fins allows them to function as "brakes"). These changes were also instrumental in the great radiation of actinopterygians.

The sister group of Actinopterygii is Sarcopterygii, the second group of bony fish (including tetrapods), which possess paired fins with internal skeletal support and muscles, and so are known as the lobe-finned fish (Figure 1.5). As fish, sarcopterygians are not as diverse or successful as the actinopterygians (although this was not always the case). As a clade, however, sarcopterygians are extremely successful, owing to the radiation of tetrapods. The fleshy fins of sarcopterygian fishes were not used for walking on terrestrial environments, but for maneuvering in shallow waters. Interestingly, a group of living sarcopterygian fishes, coelacanths (see later), swim by moving their fins the same way a terrestrial vertebrate uses its limbs to move on land.

Other sarcopterygian synapomorphies are provided in Figure 1.4. The most basal clade is Actinista or coelacanths, represented only by two living species. Its sister

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

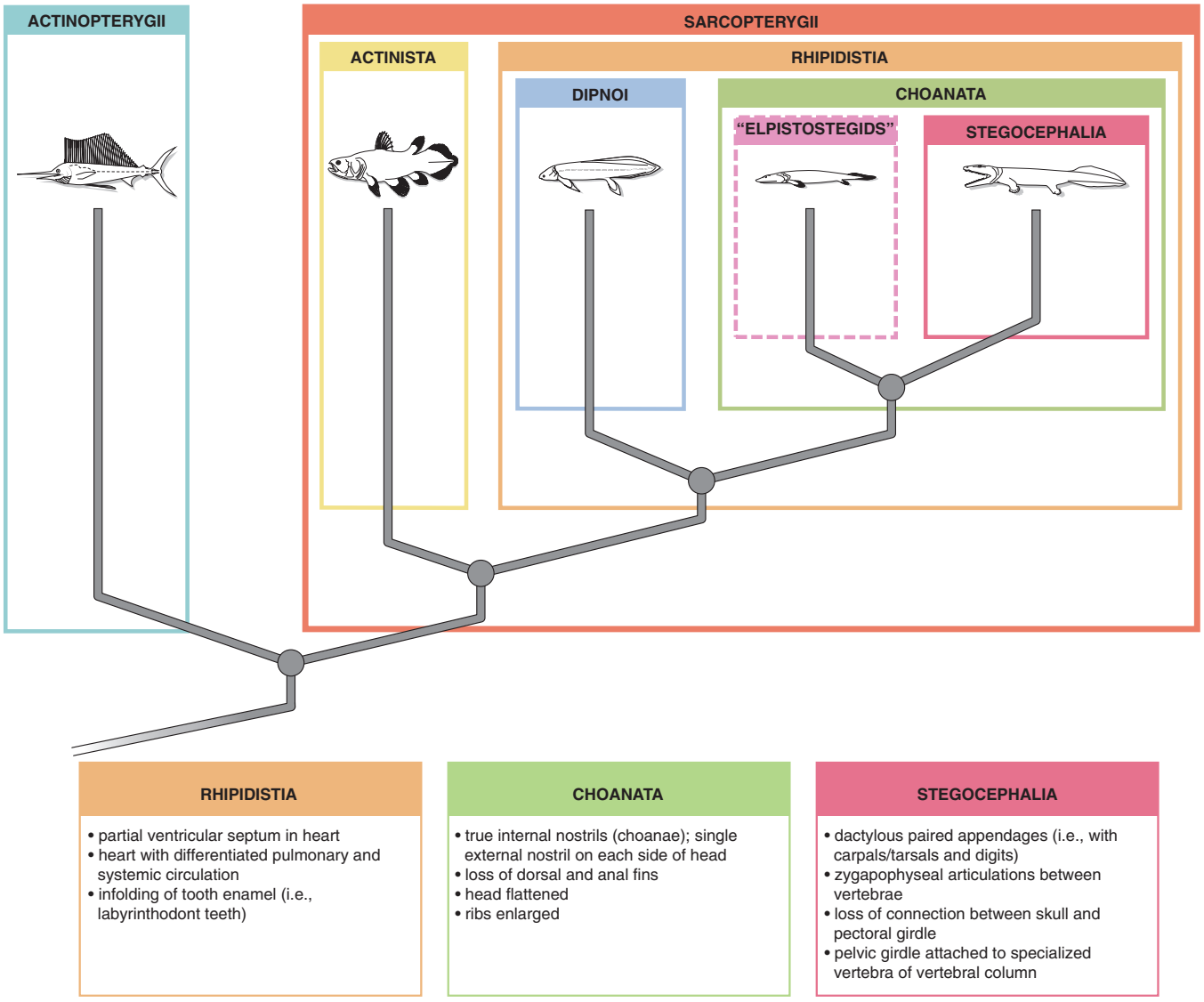


FIGURE 1.5 Cladogram showing phylogeny of Sarcopterygii. Some synapomorphies of the main groups are provided in the boxes below the cladogram. Dashed lines denote a paraphyletic group.

group, Rhipidistia, includes Dipnoi and Choanata (Figure 1.5). Dipnoans are the lungfishes, of which only three genera survive. The choanates include several fossil groups, which are not considered here, and Stegocephali, all marked by, among other features, true internal nostrils. Prestegocephalian choanates closely related to stegocephalians are fish such as *Panderichthys* and *Elpistostege*, which are grouped as (the paraphyletic) "elpistostegids" (Ahlberg et al., 2008). Among the notable features of "elpistostegids" are an elongated humerus and loss of the dorsal and anal fins. Until recently, the gap between such fish and the earliest stegocephalians such as Acantho-stegidae and Ichthyo-stegidae was rather pronounced—on the one hand, we had forms that were clearly fish and, on the other hand, forms with fully developed limbs with digits (fingers or toes). The recent discovery of *Tiktaalik*, an "elpistostegid" even more closely related to stegocephalians, has filled in a good deal of this gap (Ahlberg and Clack, 2006; Daeschler et al., 2006; Shubin et al., 2006). Its pectoral fin is morphologically and functionally transitional between a fin and a limb, bearing expanded skeletal elements with mobile joints and an array of distal segments similar to the distal limb pattern of basal tetrapods. The fin could assume a range of postures, including a position in which the shoulder and elbow were flexed and the distal elements extended to provide a limb-like supporting stance (Shubin et al., 2006). Our most recent understanding of these groups indicates that limbs first evolved in vertebrates that lived almost entirely in an

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

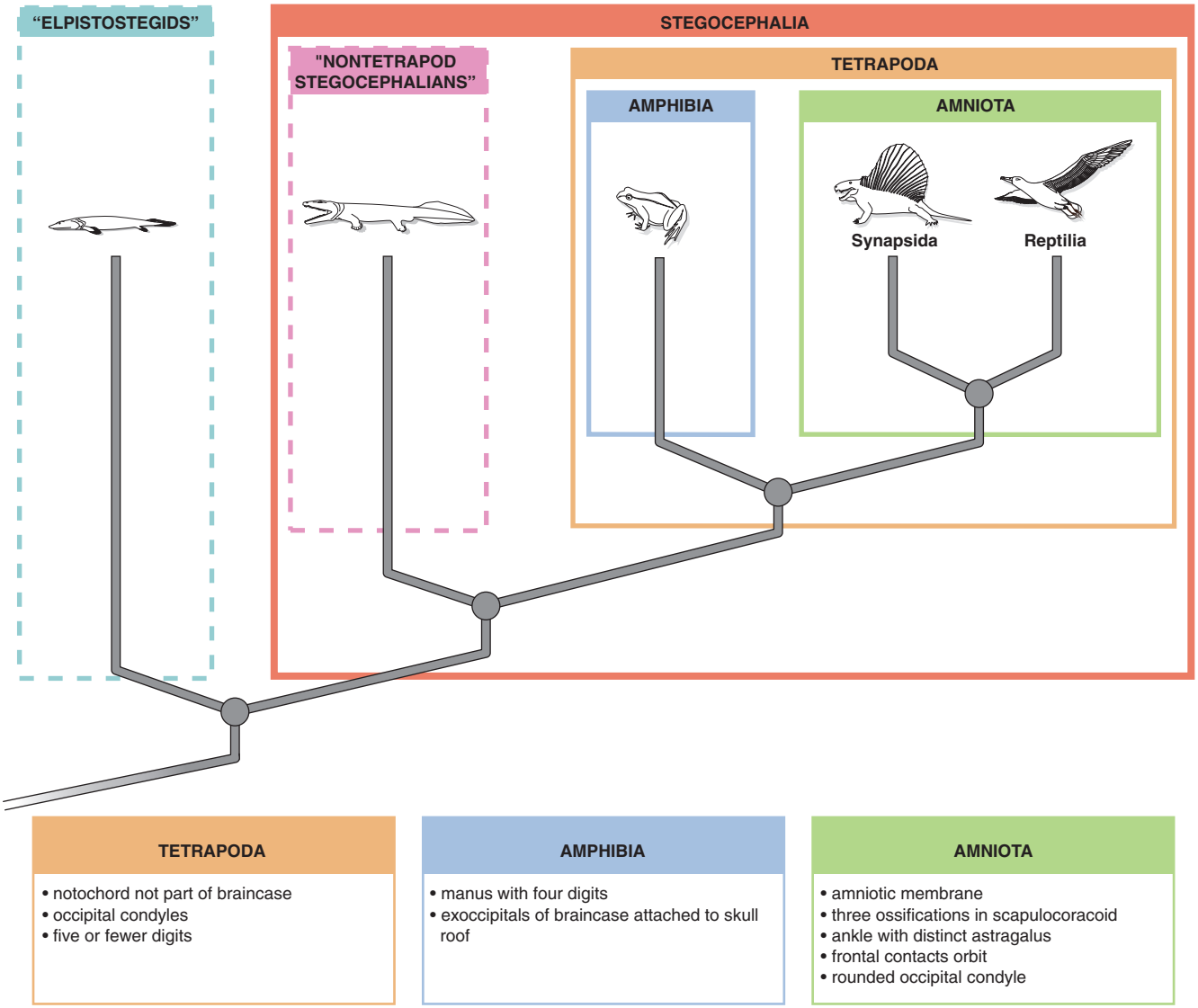


FIGURE 1.6 Cladogram showing phylogeny of Choanata. Some synapomorphies of the main groups are provided in the boxes below the cladogram. Dashed lines denote a paraphyletic group.

aquatic environment. It is thought that the limbs were useful particularly in shallow areas, helping maintain the animal's position so that it could wait for prey and allow it easy access to air. Perhaps these vertebrates could also clamber out of the water to escape predators. After all, the terrestrial environment would at that time have been relatively free of predators and competition.

A short digression on other phylogenetic schemes is warranted at this point. The phylogenetic arrangement of vertebrates just presented is the conventionally accepted hypothesis, particularly among palaeontologists and comparative anatomists. Several recent molecular analyses, however, are challenging this view. Some analyses among living forms indicate that Chondrichthyes do not occupy a basal position among gnathostomes. Some authors place Chondrichthyes and Placodermi in a single group as the sister clade to Teleostomi, thereby eliminating Eugnathostomata as a clade. Another study suggests that, among living gnathostomes, all fishes do indeed form a monophyletic group, to the exclusion of the tetrapods, and thus that the Pisces is a natural group. The interested student is urged to consult the Selected References for further information (e.g., Martin, 2001; Arnason et al., 2004; Goloboff et al., 2009).

We return to our discussion of stegocephalians (Figures 1.5 and 1.6). Omitting several fossil groups for simplicity, we may recognize a major stegocephalian clade, Tetrapoda, defined as the clade that includes the last common ancestor of living amphibians and amniotes (see later). Tetrapods were and have remained mainly amphibious or terrestrial, although derived

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

members of several lineages have reverted to a mainly or entirely aquatic existence (e.g., the extinct ichthyosaurs among reptiles and the whales among mammals), and others are capable of flight (e.g., birds and the extinct pterosaurs among reptiles, and bats among mammals). They share (together with several groups omitted here) five or fewer digits. Two tetrapod clades, Amphibia and Amniota, may be recognized.

Amphibians (from the Ancient Greek *amphi*, both, and *bios*, life) are so called owing to the duality of their lifestyle—often a larval aquatic stage and a terrestrial adult stage are present. This term was traditionally applied to living amphibians (frogs, salamanders, and caecilians) as well as to the many fossil groups between fishes and amniotes (see later), and in this sense, the living amphibians were generally viewed as living representatives of the stage between fishes and amniotes. This was due mainly to the fact that their reproductive strategy is still tied to an aquatic environment (though this is not true of all amphibians), whereas amniotes' reproduction is more nearly independent of water. This general impression is true in the sense that amphibians do tend to retain an ancestral reproductive strategy. From this it is a small step to the view that all amphibians, including the living forms, are therefore primitive tetrapods. However, this is both misleading and incorrect. On the one hand, it is wrong to think of any living organism as primitive. A creature may retain ancestral (or primitive, though this term is not correctly used in this sense; unfortunately, it is well-entrenched in our everyday mind-set) features, but that does not make the creature itself primitive. Each living organism is the product of a long evolutionary history and is a mosaic of both ancestral (primitive) and derived (advanced; this term too is inappropriate to describe organisms) features. For example, humans retain bone, an ancestral vertebrate character, whereas sharks are derived (advanced) in the loss of bone. The presence of this ancestral feature does not make humans "more primitive" or "less advanced" than sharks. Using the same logic, frogs are not more primitive than humans just because they retain an ancestral reproductive strategy.

The second misconception is that living amphibians are representative of the lifestyle of the earliest stegocephalians. In some ways these early forms were intermediate between fishes and more derived terrestrial vertebrates, and in the past we have lumped these forms together with living amphibians. But we must be careful. Living amphibians, while retaining an ancestral reproductive mode, are clearly very specialized. They are not like the early stegocephalians, and in fact are highly derived vertebrates.

As noted earlier, Amphibia has been commonly used to include several fossil groups as well as the living forms, with the latter forming the clade Lissamphibia, a term derived from the nature of their skin (*lissos*, smooth). The recent tendency, however, is to restrict Amphibia to the living forms (see Frost et al., 2006; although these authors consider Amphibia and Lissamphibia as interchangeable), including their fossil kin and their common ancestor, and we follow this usage of Amphibia. The three amphibian groups are quite distinct. They are Anura (frogs), Caudata (salamanders), and Gymnophiona (caecilians). Frogs and salamanders are reasonably familiar vertebrates, and are considered sister groups. Frogs are highly specialized for saltational locomotion, whereas salamanders retain a more general body form and locomotion. Caecilians are specialized in being legless burrowers or swimmers.

Amniota includes the remaining tetrapods (Figures 1.6 and 1.7). The main innovation of amniotes is the amniotic egg. Amniote embryos develop within extraembryonic membranes that are usually encased in a calcareous or leathery egg (the term "anamniotes" refers to vertebrates whose eggs do not have extraembryonic membranes). The membranes provide the embryo with a "watery" environment that is protected against desiccation, and thus amniotes' reproduction has become essentially independent of an aqueous environment in which vertebrates ancestrally reproduced (however, a relatively moist environment is still essential).

The amniotes (Figures 1.6 and 1.7) include two great lineages, Reptilia (ignoring some fossil members) and Synapsida, which have followed independent evolutionary paths since the early history of amniotes. The synapsids include mammal-like reptiles and mammals. The latter, Mammalia, are the living synapsids. One mammalian group is Monotremata, a relatively small clade, including the echidnas and platypus, that retains the ancestral reproductive strategy of laying eggs. The other group, Theria, includes the marsupials (Marsupialia) and the placental mammals (Eutheria). These mammals have evolved reproductive modes where embryos are retained in and nourished by the mother's body.

Reptilia consists of the typical living and fossil reptiles, such as turtles, lizards, snakes, and crocodiles, along with other familiar and mainly extinct groups, such as dinosaurs (including birds), pterosaurs, and ichthyosaurs. Several groups may be recognized. The turtles (Testudines) apparently compromise the sister group to all other living reptiles. They are generally placed, along with several fossil groups (such as milleretids and pareiasurs), in Parareptilia (Figure 1.7; see Benton, 2005, for slightly different usages of these terms). Several recent studies have suggested that turtles do not comprise the sister group to all other living reptiles (in other words, they are not basal reptiles to be included in Parareptilia) but are instead diapsids (see later) more closely related to either archosauromorphs

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

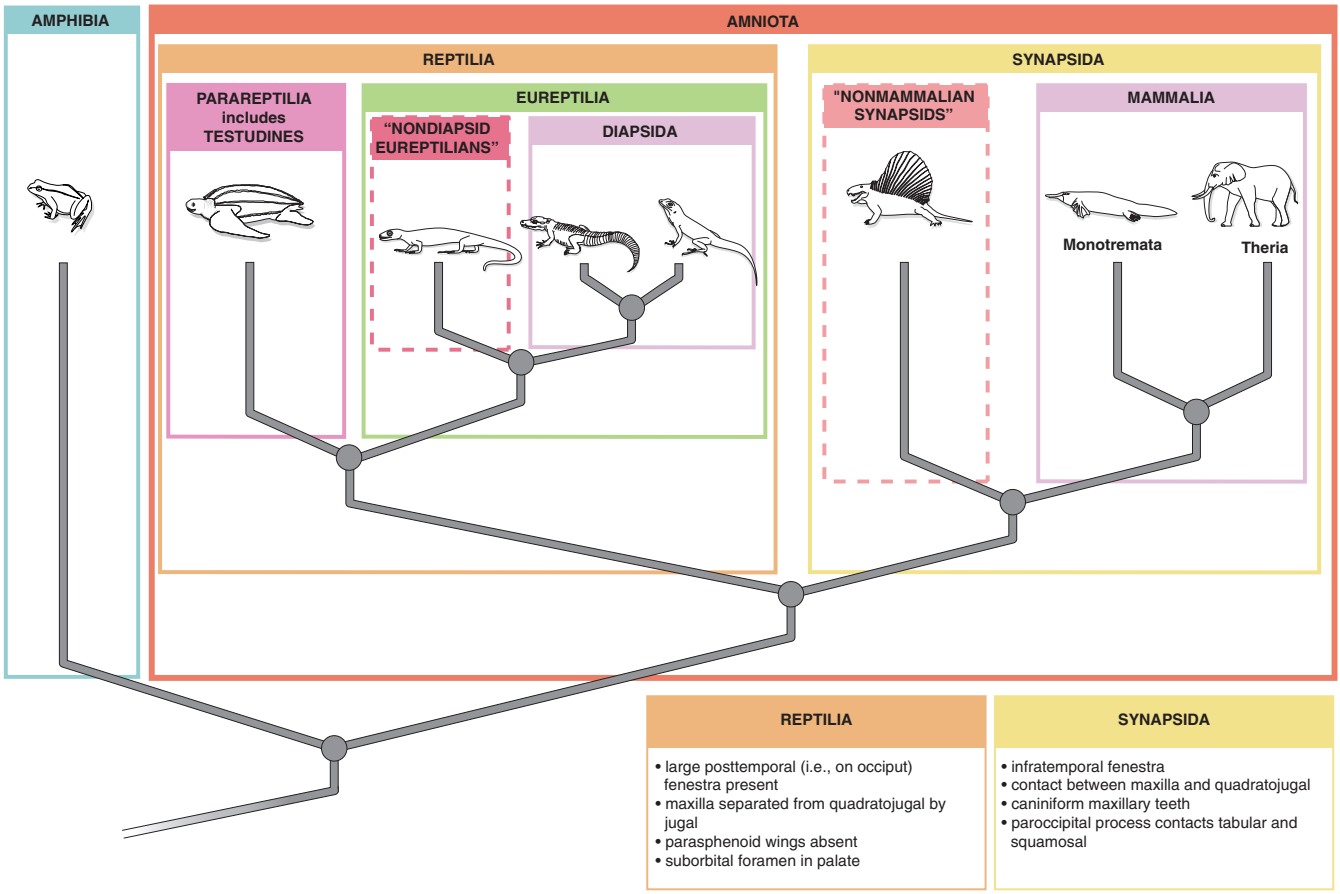


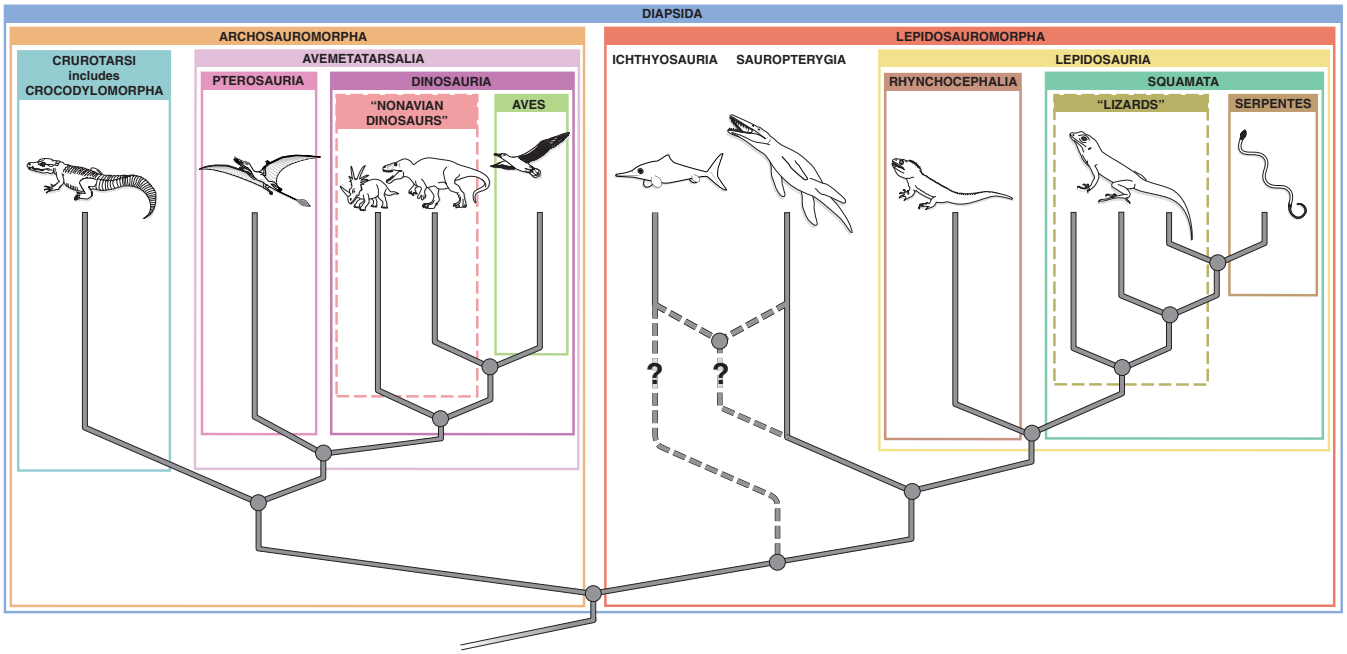
FIGURE 1.7 Cladogram showing phylogeny of Tetrapoda. Some synapomorphies of the main groups are provided in the boxes below the cladogram. Dashed lines denote a paraphyletic group.

or lepidosauromorphs. Indeed, the position of the turtles is perhaps the most disputed issue in studies of amniote phylogeny, and recent works defend both basal (e.g., Goloboff, 2009; Werneburg and Sánchez-Villagra, 2009) and more derived (e.g., Li et al., 2008; Reisz and Head, 2008) positions.

The remaining reptiles are usually classified as Eureptilia, which includes fossil stem groups and Diapsida (Figure 1.7). The diapsids consist of two main lineages, Archosauromorpha and Lepidosauromorpha (Figure 1.8). The living archosauromorphs are the crocodylians (Crocodylomorpha) and birds (Aves) (which belong respectively to the Crurotarsi and Avemetatarsalia; Figure 1.8), but the group also includes their many extinct kin. The extinct flying reptiles, the pterosaurs (Pterosauria), are a familiar example of archosauromorphs, as are the dinosaurs (Dinosauria), a clade to which the birds belong; so birds are dinosaurs. Dinosaurs other than birds are generally referred to as nonavian dinosaurs but this is an informal designation, as it is paraphyletic (because some nonavian dinosaurs are more closely related to birds than to other nonavian dinosaurs). More commonly, the term dinosaur is used to refer to nonavian dinosaurs. Though incorrect, this reflects our shared perception of what dinosaurs are. Such usage is fine, so long as we remember that it does not reflect formal classification, hence phylogeny.

The other main diapsid lineage, Lepidosauromorpha, includes the extinct Sauropterygia (plesiosaurs; see later) and Lepidosauria, which consists of Rhynchocephalia and Squamata (Figure 1.8). Rhynchocephalia is represented today by only two species of *Sphenodon* (tuatara). Its much more speciose sister group Squamata consists of the lizards and snakes. Within the squamates, lizards and snakes are not sister groups. This situation is rather like that of the Dinosauria mentioned earlier. The term lizard denotes, colloquially, the group of squamates other than snakes, but snakes are nested within this group. They are, in other words, a group of reduced-limbed or limbless lizards—snakes (Serpentes, which is a monophyletic group) are derived from a group of lizards (although there remains some debate over which particular group). However, the perception attached to the colloquial meanings of lizards and snakes is a convenient shortcut, so long as we remember that the term lizard does not refer to a monophyletic clade (unless, of course, we choose to

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com



DIAPSIDA

- supratemporal and infratemporal fenestrae
- suborbital fenestra
- ossified sternum
- complex tibio-astragalar joint
- paroccipital process reaches suspensorium

ARCHOSAUROMORPHA

- posterodorsal process on premaxilla
- sagittal crest on parietal
- slender and tapering cervical ribs
- dorsal margin of ilium composed of small anterior process and large posterior process
- medial centrale of carpus absent

LEPIDOSAUROMORPHA

- supratemporal absent
- teeth absent on transverse pterygoid flanges
- dorsal intercentra absent
- thyroid fenestra in pelvic girdle

FIGURE 1.8 Cladogram showing phylogeny of Reptilia. Some synapomorphies of the main groups are provided in the boxes below the cladogram. Dashed lines denote a paraphyletic group.

define the term so as to include snakes, but then it would be the equivalent of squamates).

Two other reasonably familiar clades of diapsid reptiles are the extinct aquatic ichthyosaurs (Ichthyosauria) and plesiosaurs (Sauropterygia). The former had a fish-like or porpoise-like body, whereas the plesiosaurs had wide bodies with paddle-like appendages to propel them through the water. Their positions within Diapsida are not entirely resolved. As shown in Figure 1.8, the plesiosaurs seem probably to fall among the lepidosauromorphs, as noted earlier, whereas the ichthyosaurs have been considered as basal diapsids or allied to sauropterygians within Lepidosauromorpha (see Benton, 2005; Kardong, 2009).

AMNIOTE SKULLS AND CLASSIFICATION

Amniotes have long been subdivided on the condition of the temporal region of the skull, that portion posterior to the orbit. This region can either be solid or have openings, termed temporal fenestrae (from the Latin, *fenestra*, window). Anapsid describes the condition where there are no temporal fenestrae and is characteristic of turtles and most basal amniotes (Figure 1.9a). Three basic patterns of fenestration are recognized. The diapsid condition has two temporal fenestrae, one above the other on either side of the skull (Figure 1.9b). These are the supratemporal (upper or dorsal) fenestra and the infratemporal (lower or ventral) fenestra. This is the condition present in most reptiles. A single fenestra occurs as two variants. The euryapsid skull, characteristic of two reptile groups (ichthyosaurs and plesiosaurs), bears a supratemporal fenestra (Figure 1.9c), whereas the synapsid skull bears an infratemporal fenestra and is characteristic of synapsids (Figure 1.9d).

The pattern of fenestration is defined by the typical configuration of bones that border the fenestra. The typical configurations of bones for the skull types are illustrated in Figure 1.9. In the synapsid condition the dorsal border of the fenestra is formed mainly by the squamosal and postorbital bones, although the parietal may occasionally participate, whereas the ventral border

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

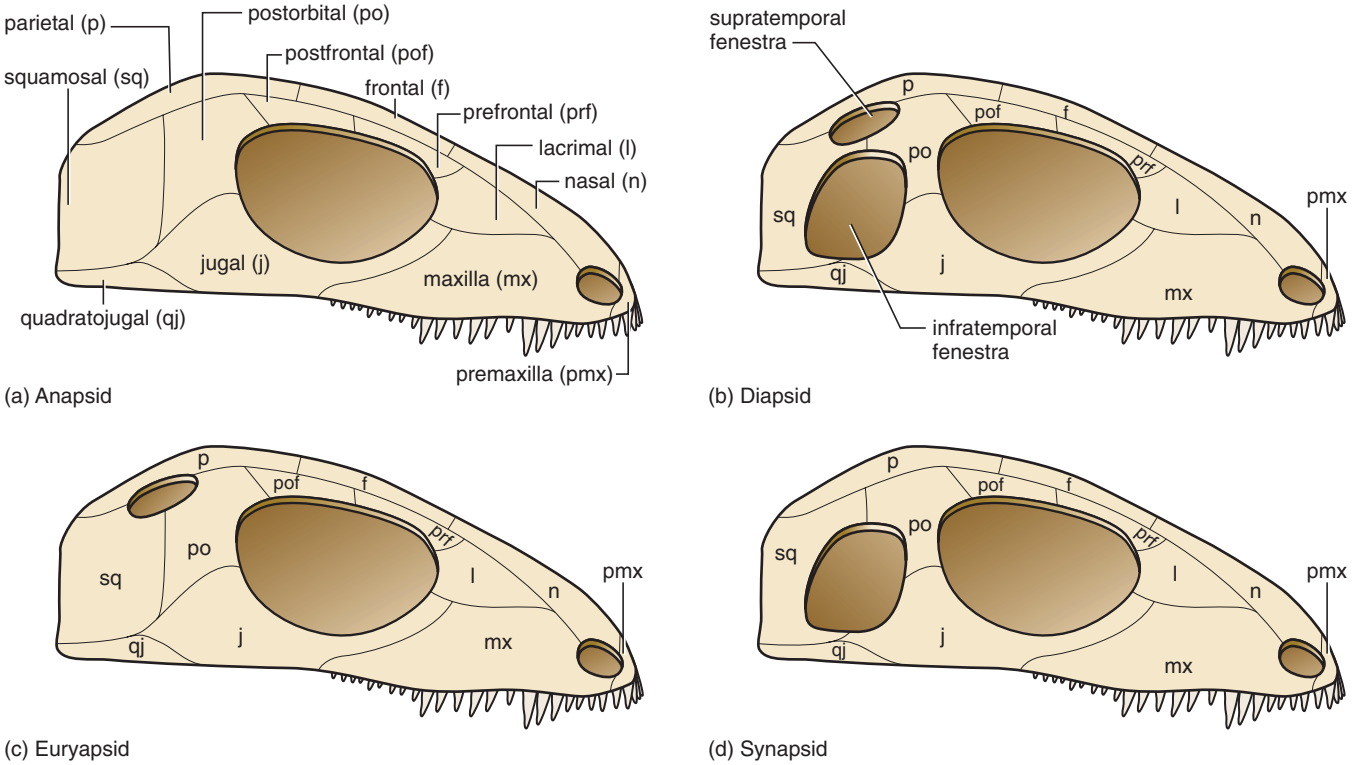


FIGURE 1.9 Diagrammatic illustrations of the four main amniote skull patterns.

is formed mainly by the squamosal and jugal bones, with the quadratojugal bone occasionally contributing. The infratemporal fenestra of the diapsid skull is bordered by the jugal, squamosal, and postorbital bones, with the quadratojugal occasionally participating. The supratemporal fenestra is bordered by the postorbital, squamosal, parietal, and, in many cases, the postfrontal bones. Two bony bars, temporal bars (or arcades), are clearly defined in the diapsid skull, a ventral bar formed mainly by the jugal and quadratojugal bones, and a dorsal bar, between the fenestrae, formed by the postorbital and squamosal bones. The fenestra of euryapsid skulls is bordered usually by the parietal, postfrontal, postorbital, and squamosal bones, with the last two meeting ventrally below the fenestra. From these basic patterns, several specializations have evolved, as discussed later.

For much of the past century, the classification of amniotes closely reflected fenestration; and hence Anapsida, Diapsida, Euryapsida, and Synapsida were used as formal names for amniote radiations. More recently, however, we have realized that while the pattern of fenestration does broadly reflect amniote evolution, it is not tied as strictly to phylogeny as was once presumed. At least two of these groups, Diapsida (includes archosauromorphs and lepidosauromorphs) and Synapsida (includes mammals), are still considered monophyletic, but for the former we recognize that at least the earliest basal members of the clade had anapsid skulls.

Within Diapsida a variety of specializations evolved. Among those that display a fully diapsid pattern are tuataras (*Sphenodon*) and crocodylians. Birds, lizards, and snakes, however, have tended to lose one or both temporal bars. This has decoupled the posterior part of the skull, allowing the potential for considerable flexibility among the functional regions of the skull. In general, lizards have lost the lower temporal bar and snakes both the lower and upper temporal bars. At this point, we must elaborate on the presence of the classic diapsid condition in *Sphenodon*. We noted earlier that *Sphenodon* possesses the lower temporal bar. For many years, this condition was interpreted as the retention of an ancestral diapsid condition, and so *Sphenodon* was long designated as a living fossil. However, recent work has demonstrated that all lepidosaurs (rhynchocephalians and squamates) inherited a skull without a lower temporal bar; that is, it is the ancestral condition for this clade. The presence of the lower temporal bar in *Sphenodon* is thus due to secondary redevelopment of this structure, rather than to retention of the ancestral diapsid condition (see Mo et al., 2010). Birds have lost the upper temporal bar so the infratemporal and supratemporal fenestrae have merged into a single large opening. Further, they have lost the bony bar posterior to the orbit, merging the orbit

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

and the fenestrae. Among synapsids, in mammals the fenestra increases in size and the bony bar behind the orbit generally disappeared so that orbit and fenestra merge. Although this resembles the condition in birds, the morphologies are convergent.

Euryapsida is no longer considered a valid name. It was applied to ichthyosaurs and plesiosaurs, but we now recognize that the euryapsid pattern evolved independently in these groups from the diapsid condition, and thus that these groups (and relatives, such as placodonts) are diapsids. The euryapsid condition apparently evolved from a secondary "filling in" of the lower temporal fenestra.

Anapsida was applied to the more basal amniotes, as the anapsid skull is the basal and nearly ubiquitous type among early tetrapods. Recent phylogenetic analyses have revealed, however, that some early amniotes with anapsid skulls are more closely related to Diapsida than to other anapsid-skulled early amniotes. Anapsida is still used by some authors (e.g., Benton, 2005) for the clade including turtles (but see pages 14–15) and many early anapsid amniotes, such as pareiasaurids, millerettids, and mesosaurids, although some members of this clade do exhibit temporal fenestration (see Modesto et al., 2009). More commonly, this clade is termed Parareptilia. As noted earlier, the phylogenetic position of turtles is controversial and the composition of Parareptilia (with or without turtles) varies accordingly. If turtles are diapsids, it implies that the anapsid condition in turtles is a secondary development produced by "filling in" of the fenestrae.

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

CHAPTER

2

The Lamprey

INTRODUCTION

As noted in Chapter 1, the earliest craniates lacked jaws, and so are termed "agnathans." Numerous extinct agnathans are known from the fossil record and most possessed a covering armor of dermal bone, from which is derived the term "ostracoderms." Living craniates retaining the absence of jaws are the hagfishes (Myxinoidea) and lampreys (Petromyzontoidea). A characteristic feature of these craniates is an anterior, rounded, sucker-like structure used to attach themselves to the body of their prey, from which the term "cyclostome" is derived. The relationship between these agnathans is not settled. They were for many years considered to be each other's closest relatives and classified as "Cyclostomata." About two decades ago, morphologists began to note that some characteristics of lampreys indicated they were more closely related to jawed vertebrates and classified with them in the Vertebrata. More recently, molecular evidence is again suggesting a close relationship between cyclostomes (see Chapter 1).

Of the approximately 50 lamprey species, the marine lamprey, *Petromyzon marinus*, of the Atlantic Ocean and North American Great Lakes, is the most commonly studied cyclostome. Hagfishes are about as diverse, with 60 species generally recognized, and are exclusively marine—indeed, they are the only vertebrates having their body fluids isosmotic with seawater. Though lampreys and hagfishes share several similarities, such as an eel-like body shape and a sucker-like mouth, there are important differences between them. Lampreys are generally parasitic, attaching themselves to their prey and relying mainly on a liquid diet, whereas hagfishes are scavengers and tear off pieces of dead or dying prey. These differences are reflected in several innovative modifications. The lamprey, for example, has a subdivided pharynx with the ventral part forming a respiratory tube that can be isolated from the mouth by a valve termed the velum. This ensures that its liquid diet neither escapes from the pharyngeal slits nor interferes with gas exchange through the gills. While the tube is isolated, the lamprey continues to ventilate its gills by pumping water in and out of the pharyngeal slits. The hagfish, on the other hand, has a more substantial diet and does not require a respiratory tube that can be isolated. It ventilates its gills by having a nasal opening that continues past the olfactory sac to communicate with the pharynx. A velum is also present in the hagfish. With the velum closed, muscular action compresses the pharynx and water moves over the gills.

SECTION I: SKELETON

The entirely cartilaginous skeleton of the lamprey is not particularly well developed (Figure 2.1). Study the skeletal elements in prepared specimens, which are usually embedded in acrylic. The head skeleton is complex and quite unlike that of other vertebrates. Endochondral elements forming a **chondrocranium** include large cartilages that partially enclose the brain and sense organs (nasal capsule, otic capsule), and others that extend anteriorly to support the **annular cartilage**, the ring-like structure that is the main skeletal element of the **oral funnel** (see later). Several of these cartilages are labeled in Figure 2.1. The median **lingual cartilage**, supporting the rasping **tongue**, extends posteriorly from the annular cartilage, ventral to the chondrocranium.

Extending posterior and connected to the chondrocranium is a network of cartilages forming the **branchial basket**, which supports the pharyngeal region. The somewhat hemispherical cartilage at the posterior end of the branchial basket is the **pericardial cartilage**, which lies on the posterior wall of the pericardial cavity, the space that contains the heart. There are three main differences between this pharyngeal skeleton and that found in more derived fishes. One is that the structure is a connected network, rather than relatively separate and articulated arches. Another difference is the connection to the pericardial cartilage. Yet another is that the branchial basket lies superficially, lateral to the gills and thus just beneath the skin. In contrast, in other fishes the branchial arches lie more deeply, medial to the gills, and thus in the medial wall of the pharynx. Because the

© 2010 Elsevier Inc.

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

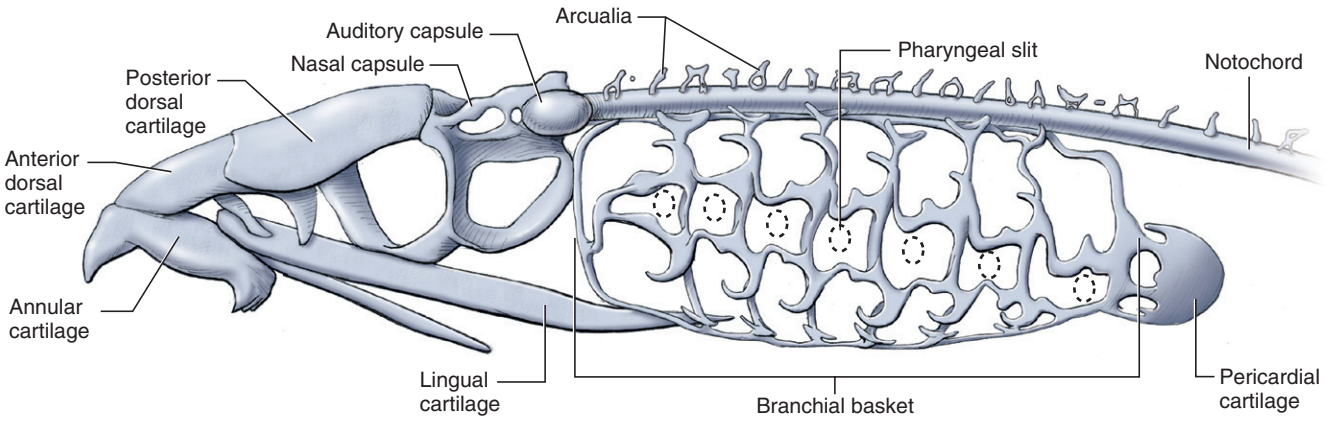


FIGURE 2.1 Skeletal elements of the lamprey in left lateral view.

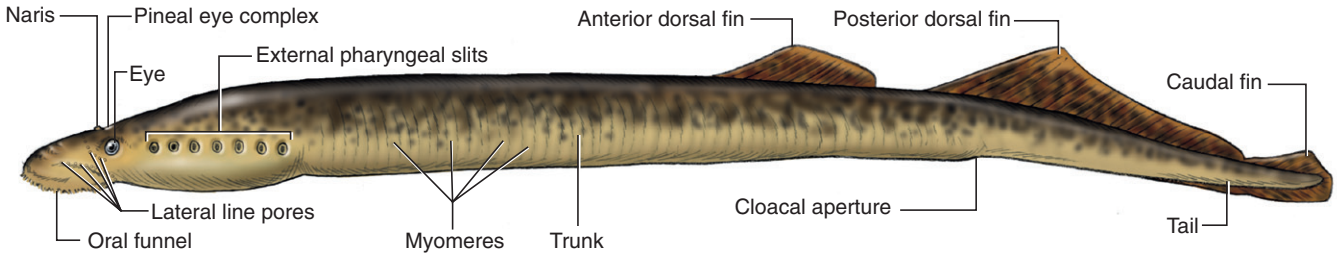


FIGURE 2.2 External features of the lamprey in left lateral view.

branchial basket lies just under the skin, it may be observed by carefully skinning one side of the head of your specimen. If you wish to do this, postpone your dissection until you have studied the structures described in the next section.

The large **notochord** is the axial support of the body. It is an elongated rod extending from beneath the posterior half of the brain to the tip of the tail. The vertebrae are represented by small, cartilaginous structures, termed **arcualia**, that lie dorsal to the notochord on either side of the spinal cord (see later). They are usually embedded in connective tissue or lost in prepared specimens, and are not particularly evident. Indeed, they are difficult to find, but may occasionally be observed in cross-sections.

SECTION II: EXTERNAL ANATOMY

The body of the lamprey is elongated and cylindrical, and covered by smooth, scaleless skin (Figure 2.2). The **head** extends posteriorly to include the slanted row of seven rounded or oval apertures, the **external pharyngeal slits**, which lie posterior to each of the laterally placed, lidless **eyes**. The eyes, of moderate size, are covered by transparent skin. In preservatives, however,

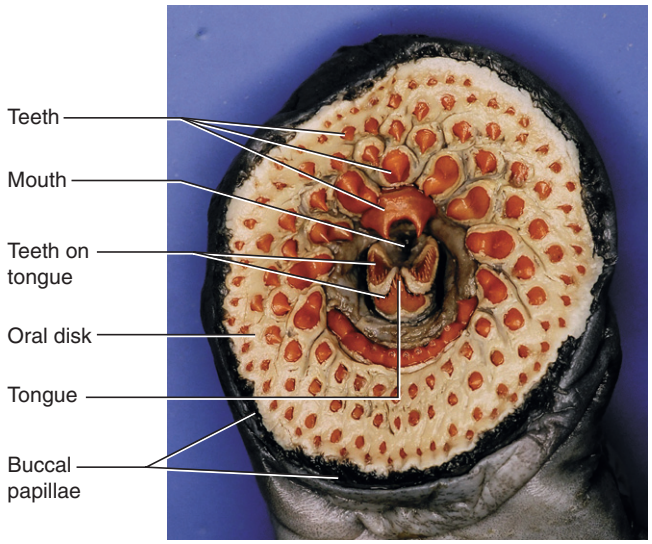


FIGURE 2.3 View of oral funnel of the lamprey showing mouth and oral disk with teeth.

this skin turns opaque. Anteriorly the **oral funnel** forms a wide, sucking disk that attaches to the body of the lamprey's prey (Figures 2.2 and 2.3). The funnel's margin bears small, soft projections, the **buccal papillae**, which are primarily sensory structures. The funnel's interior

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

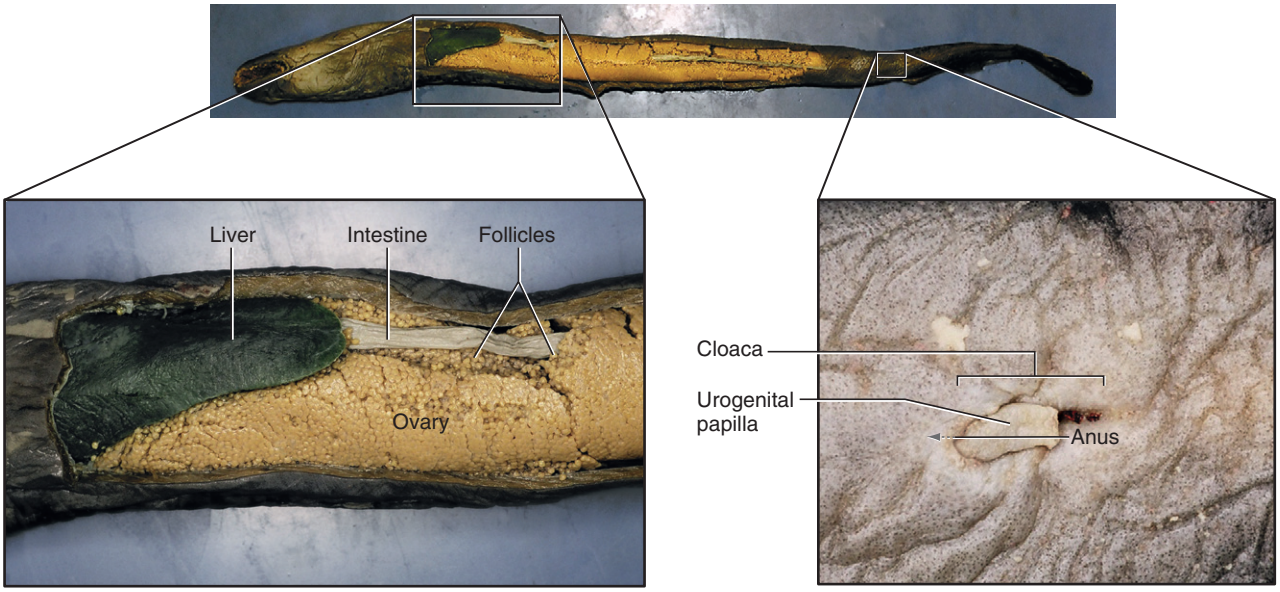


FIGURE 2.4 Ventral view of the lamprey, with pleuroperitoneal cavity exposed (top). Detail of anterior end of pleuroperitoneal cavity and contained structures (left). Detail of cloacal region (right).

surface is termed the **oral disk**, and it is lined with numerous horny **teeth**, which are cornified epidermal derivatives and thus not homologous with the teeth of more derived vertebrates. Remove a tooth with forceps to observe a replacement tooth immediately underneath it. At the pit of the funnel lies the rasping tongue, which also bears horny teeth and, like them, is not homologous with the structure of the same name in more derived vertebrates. The tongue is used to abrade the skin of prey, so that its blood and body fluids may be ingested. Dorsal to the tongue is the **mouth**. The lamprey, being an agnathan, lacks jaws.

A single, median **naris** lies middorsally between the eyes (Figures 2.2 and 2.8). A lighter patch of skin immediately posterior to the naris denotes the position of the **pineal eye complex**, which lies just below the skin and functions as a photoreceptor that detects changes in light. A **lateral line system**, which functions in detecting vibrations in the water, is present in the lamprey, but is not typically conspicuous. Usually, however, pores for the canals are noticeable in the head. These **lateral line pores** are arranged in rows. One occurs just posterior to each eye, and several others may be found between the eye and the anterior end of the oral funnel.

The **trunk** extends from the head to the **cloaca**, a rather shallow midventral depression (Figure 2.4). The intestine opens into the cloaca through a slit-like **anus**. Posterior to the latter, there is a small **urogenital papilla** with a terminal **urogenital pore** through which gametes and excretory products leave the body. The **tail** extends posteriorly to the tip of the body and becomes laterally compressed. The lamprey has no trace of paired fins, but there are three median fins (Figure 2.2), the **anterior dorsal** and **posterior dorsal fins** and the **caudal fin**. The fins are supported by **fin rays**, which can be seen if the specimen is held up against light. Examine the lateral surface of the trunk or tail to observe the outline of the segmented series of muscular blocks, the **myomeres**. These are composed of longitudinal fibers extending between successive connective tissue partitions, the **myosepta**. Contraction of the myomeres on one side of the body flexes the body toward that side, and alternating contraction of the myomeres on opposite sides of the body produces the characteristic side-to-side swimming motion of fishes.

SECTION III: PLEUROPERITONEAL CAVITY AND VISCERA

Open the **pleuroperitoneal cavity** by making an incision through the midventral body wall extending from about 1 cm posterior to the last pharyngeal slit to just anterior to the cloaca. Make several vertical cuts on one side of the body from the ventral incision so the body wall may be reflected. The wall, or portions of it, may be removed to facilitate exposing the contents of the cavity, but be careful not to injure the underlying organs.

The most notable feature of the lamprey viscera, as with much of the lamprey's anatomy, is its relative simplicity. This is often manifest in the apparent absence of structures, as noted later. Keep in mind, however, that an absence or apparent lack of complexity in a particular structure does not necessarily indicate primitiveness.

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

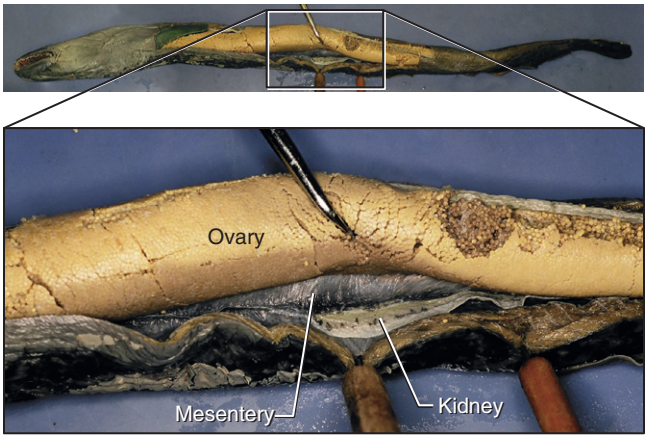


FIGURE 2.5 Ventral view of pleuroperitoneal cavity of the lamprey, showing detail of gonad, kidney, and mesentery.

On opening the cavity, the **gonad** may be the first structure visible (Figures 2.4 and 2.5). It is normally of moderate size but in breeding season it may be huge, occupying much of the pleuroperitoneal cavity. The **ovary** and **testis** are, secondarily, single median structures, supported by a mesentery from the middorsal line (Figure 2.5), and lying dorsal to the **liver** and **intestine**. The ovary and testis are difficult to distinguish from each other. Just before breeding, however, the ovary contains many follicles, giving it a granular appearance compared to the testis. Genital ducts are absent in the lamprey, and gametes are shed into the **coelom**. They must make their way to the posterior end of the pleuroperitoneal cavity, where they enter the urogenital sinus (the single median cavity within the urogenital papilla) and exit the body through the urogenital papilla.

The liver (Figure 2.4) is the large, greenish organ at the anterior end of the pleuroperitoneal cavity. If the ovary is very large, it may cover the posterior end of the liver. A gall bladder and bile duct are present in the larval stage, but absent in adult lampreys. The digestive system is relatively simple, and consists mainly of a long, narrow, tubular intestine (though it may be distended in some specimens) extending the length of the pleuroperitoneal cavity. There are none of the bends and folds so common in more derived vertebrates. The anterior part of the intestine extends from the "**esophagus**" (see later and Figure 2.8) and is dorsal to the liver, but more posteriorly it is easily seen in ventral view. Note the lack of any real regional specialization along the digestive tract. There is no stomach, for example. Given the mainly liquid diet of lampreys, there is no need for a separate stomach to temporarily store food and "feed" it to the intestine. Nor is there a distinct pylorus. A terminal swelling, sometimes present, may be recognized as a rectum. Make a longitudinal slit along a portion of the intestine and spread it open. Numerous longitudinal

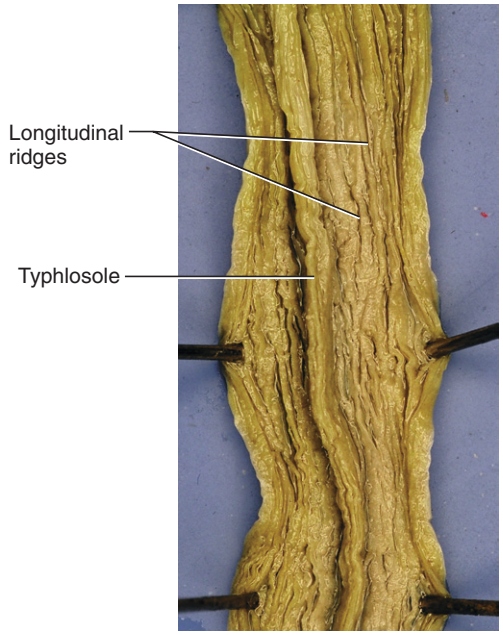


FIGURE 2.6 Intestine of the lamprey, cut to show its internal structure.

folds are present on its interior surface to increase surface area (Figure 2.6). One of these, the **typhlosole**, is notably larger than the others. It is also termed a spiral valve but its relationship to the spiral valve of other vertebrates is ambiguous.

Also note the virtual absence of either dorsal or ventral mesenteries. A few small mesenteric sheets of dorsal mesentery, carrying blood vessels to the gut, are present near the posterior end of the intestine. A spleen is absent, as is a distinct pancreas. Tissue performing pancreatic functions is present, however, and scattered through some viscera. Exocrine pancreas is present in parts of the intestinal wall and islet tissue (endocrine) occurs in the liver, but they are not visible grossly.

A long, thin, ribbon-like **kidney** lies on either side of the middorsal line and extends for much of the length of the pleuroperitoneal cavity (Figures 2.5 and 2.7). The **archinephric duct**, which drains the kidney, lies along its free lateral margin (Figure 2.7). Make a transverse cut through the kidney and examine the cut section to observe the duct. Posteriorly the archinephric ducts enter the urogenital sinus, but it is impractical to attempt tracing them.

SECTION IV: SAGITTAL SECTION

A sagittal section of the head and anterior part of the trunk reveals a number of interesting features and, in particular, allows the observation of the extreme specializations of the lamprey's digestive and respiratory

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

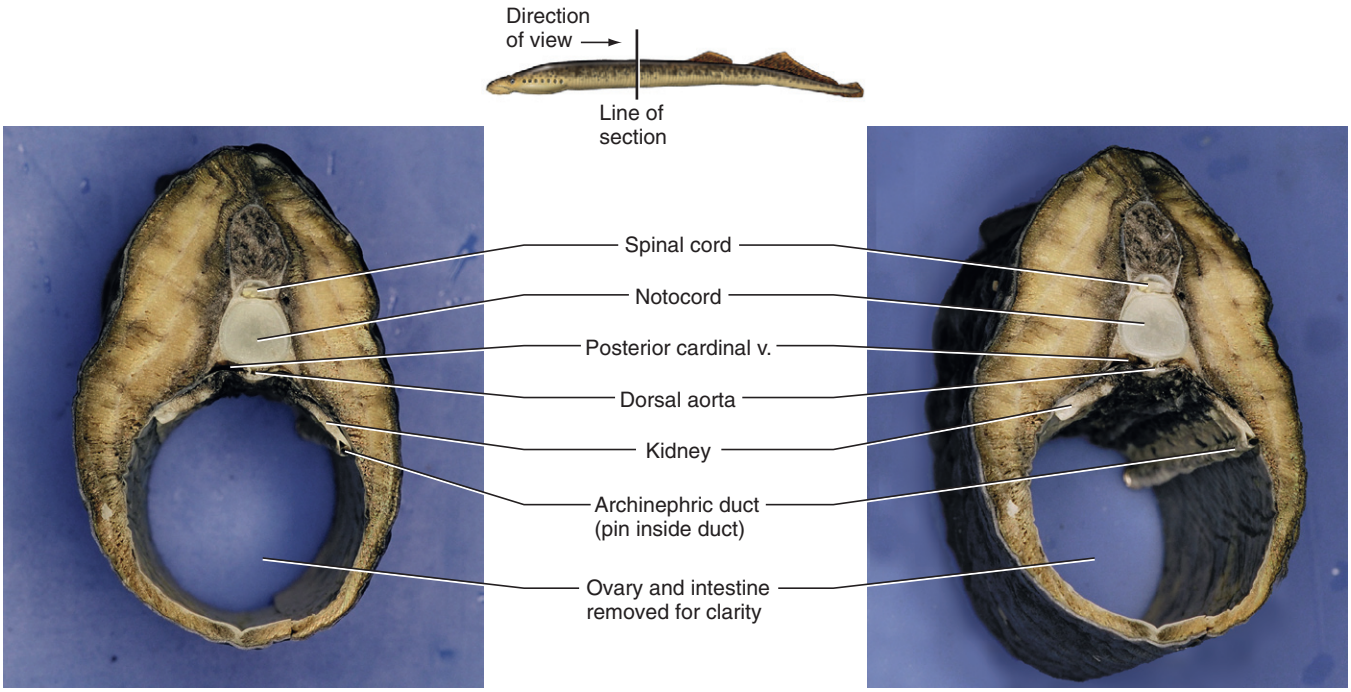


FIGURE 2.7 Cross-section through body of the lamprey, seen in anterior view. The left and right photographs are of the same section, viewed at slightly different angles.

systems. Using a large, sharp scalpel, make a clean sagittal section through the head of the lamprey. Maintain your cut as close to the midsagittal plane as possible and extend the section about 10 cm posterior to the level of the last external pharyngeal opening. Compare your specimen to Figure 2.8. If your section is not quite midsagittal, use a new scalpel blade and carefully shave tissue from the larger half until you reach the midsagittal plane.

Examine the anterior part of the head to reidentify structures already noted, such as the annular cartilage, oral funnel, horny teeth, mouth, and tongue. Trace posteriorly from the mouth, over the anterodorsal surface of the tongue, into the **oral cavity**, which has a short anterodorsal extension, the **oral cecum**. Posteriorly the oral cavity passes into the "esophagus" dorsally and the **respiratory tube** or "**pharynx**" ventrally. The terms set in quotation marks denote subdivisions of the embryonic pharynx, and so are not homologous with the esophagus and pharynx of other vertebrates (although, of course the "pharynx" is partly homologous with the pharynx). This anatomical condition in the lamprey reflects its highly specialized feeding mode. It would make little sense to feed on fluids if they could easily escape through pharyngeal openings. During metamorphosis from the larval stage, a horizontal partition develops that subdivides the originally single pharynx into dorsal and posterior portions. The dorsal subdivision, as indicated, is the "esophagus" and serves to conduct food to the intestine. It is thin-walled and usually collapsed, thus difficult to identify. The respiratory tube is the ventral subdivision. It ends blindly posteriorly. As noted earlier, the velum is a valve that can close the respiratory tube's anterior opening into the oral cavity, thereby isolating the tube. This system is necessary because the lamprey spends much of its time with the oral funnel attached to its prey, so that the mouth cannot function in ventilating the gills. With the respiratory system isolated from the ingestion mechanism, food is passed back into the intestine. The lamprey continues to ventilate its gills with respiratory water currents going both in and out through the pharyngeal openings.

The **tongue** is supported by the large **lingual cartilage**. Note the complex of muscles arranged around the lingual cartilage. This musculature is responsible for working the tongue. Protractor muscles extend anteriorly ventral to the cartilage, whereas the retractor muscles extend posteriorly from it.

The small **brain** lies dorsally. It is not particularly similar to that of more derived vertebrates, but it is tripartite, having the same major subdivisions. Trace it posteriorly as it passes into the **spinal cord**. Note the large **notochord**, which begins ventral to the posterior half of the brain and extends posteriorly, ventral to the spinal cord, to the end of the body. Note the slender sections of the cartilaginous elements that contribute to the chondrocranium. True vertebrae are absent, but cartilaginous blocks termed arcualia are present on either side of the spinal cord. As noted earlier, however, these

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

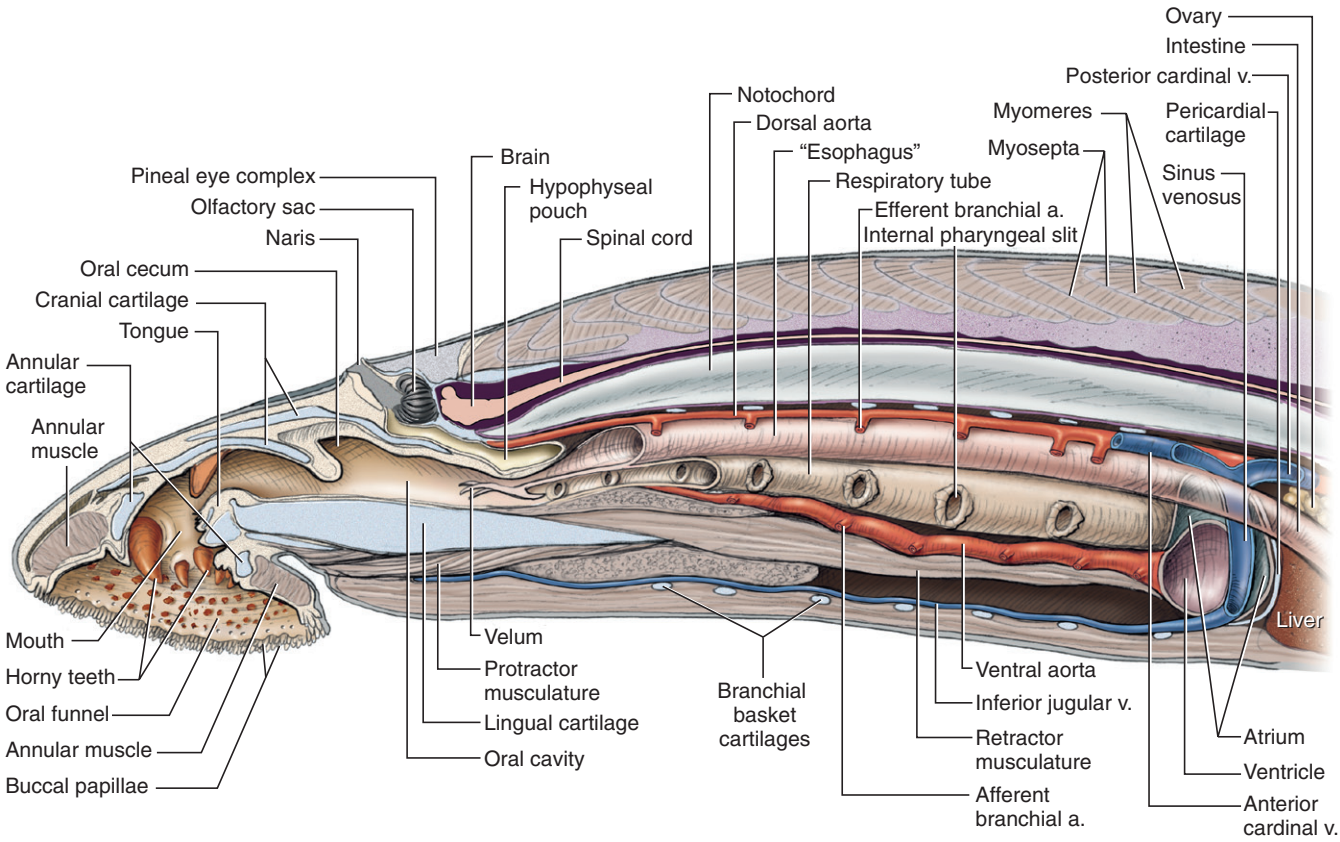


FIGURE 2.8 Schematic sagittal section through head and pharyngeal region of the lamprey. The vessels, "esophagus," respiratory tube, and parts of the heart are shown with portions cut away, rather than in sagittal section.

are difficult to find, and are lost in most prepared specimens.

Locate the naris. It opens into a short tube that leads to the dark-walled **olfactory sac**, directly anterior to the brain. The sac's interior surface has numerous folds to increase surface area. The tube continues past the opening of the olfactory sac as the **hypophyseal pouch**, which ends blindly ventral to the brain and anterior end of the notochord. Dorsal to the olfactory sac and anterior end of the brain is the pineal eye complex, a region specialized primarily for light detection.

The **heart** lies in the pericardial cavity, posterior to the respiratory tube. Posteriorly it is separated from the pleuroperitoneal cavity by the **transverse septum**, which is stiffened by the pericardial cartilage. The heart has three chambers, in contrast to the four present in more derived vertebrates. These are, in order of blood flow, the **sinus venosus**, **atrium**, and **ventricle**. The spatial positions of these chambers do not follow the sequential posterior-to-anterior progression typical of the heart of most fishes. Instead, the sinus venosus is a tubular structure, oriented dorsoventrally, that lies between the atrium and ventricle. The atrium mainly occupies the left side of the pericardial cavity and the ventricle mainly occupies the right side. The depiction of the heart in sagittal section (Figure 2.8) is somewhat idealized, as structures such as the intestine and inferior jugular vein are shown in their entirety, rather than as sectioned, as they would be in a true midsagittal section. Compare these structures with those shown in Figure 2.9, which shows the relationships of these and other structures in transverse view.

The flow of blood passes forward from the ventricle through the **ventral aorta**, which sends out seven **afferent branchial arteries** to the capillaries in the septa between the pharyngeal slits. The blood is recollected by the **efferent branchial arteries**, which channel it into the **dorsal aorta** for distribution to the body. It is easiest to observe the dorsal aorta in a transverse section. It is a median structure extending just ventral to the notochord (Figures 2.7 and 2.9). It continues in the tail as the **caudal artery**.

Blood from the head returns to the heart mainly through the paired **anterior cardinal veins** dorsally and the median **inferior jugular vein** ventrally. Much of the posterior part of the body is drained by the paired **posterior cardinal veins**, as well as the **hepatic portal vein**. The latter is difficult to identify and not considered

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

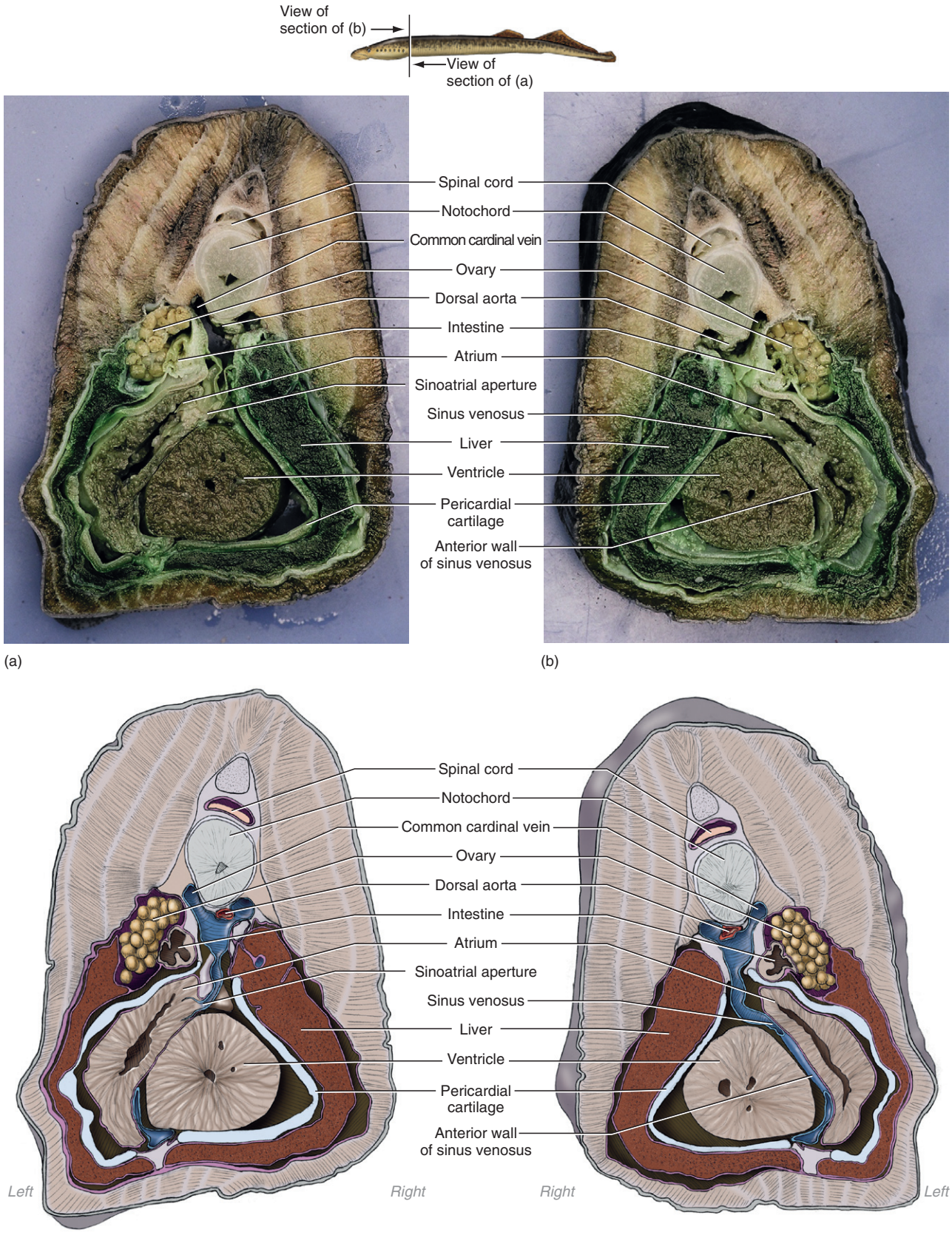


FIGURE 2.9 Cross-section through body of the lamprey to show the structure of the heart, with (a) showing the anterior portion of the section in posterior view, and (b) showing the posterior portion of the section in anterior view. Interpretative illustrations are below each photograph.

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

further here except to note that it comprises a system of veins that drains blood from the intestine and conducts it to the heart. Dorsal to the heart, the right anterior and posterior cardinal veins join to form a right **common cardinal vein**, which then enters the dorsal end of the sinus venosus (Figure 2.9). The left anterior and posterior cardinal veins join the right common cardinal vein. Note that this condition is distinct from that present in most jawed fishes, such as the shark, where the anterior and posterior cardinal veins of each side of the body unite to form their own common cardinal vein that enters the sinus venosus separately. The inferior jugular vein is a median structure and enters the ventral end of the sinus venosus. For most of its length, it is a median structure, but near the sinus venosus it veers slightly to the left.

In the tail, the **caudal vein** accompanies the caudal artery. The lamprey does not have a renal portal system, as do jawed fishes, so the caudal vein does not bifurcate into renal portal veins that then enter the kidneys. Instead the caudal vein bifurcates into the right and left posterior cardinal veins (Figure 2.7), which receive blood from the kidneys.

Key Terms: Lamprey

afferent branchial arteries
annular cartilage
anterior cardinal veins
anterior dorsal fin
anus
archinephric duct
arcualia
atrium
brain
branchial basket
buccal papillae
caudal artery
caudal fin
caudal vein
chondrocranium
cloaca
coelom
common cardinal vein
dorsal aorta
efferent branchial arteries
"esophagus"
external pharyngeal slits
eyes
fin rays
gonad
head
heart
hepatic portal vein
hypophyseal pouch (nasohypophyseal pouch)
inferior jugular vein
intestine
kidney
lateral line pores
lingual cartilage (piston cartilage)
liver
mouth
myomere
myoseptum (plur. **myosepta**)
naris (nostril)
notochord
olfactory sac
oral cavity
oral cecum
oral disk
oral funnel
ovary
pericardial cartilage
pineal eye complex
pleuroperitoneal cavity
posterior cardinal veins
posterior dorsal fin
respiratory tube ("**pharynx**")
sinus venosus
spinal cord
tail
teeth
testis
tongue (piston)
transverse septum
trunk
typhlosole
urogenital papilla
urogenital pore
velum
ventral aorta
ventricle

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

CHAPTER

3

The Shark

INTRODUCTION

The spiny dogfish shark, *Squalus acanthias*, belongs to Chondrichthyes, which first appeared in the Silurian Period and is among the earliest to branch off from the rest of the gnathostomes (jawed vertebrates). Living chondrichthyeans comprise the sharks and rays (Elasmobranchii, meaning plate-gilled) and the chimaeras (Holocephali, meaning whole or entire head). Among the specialized features that unite these groups are unique perichondral and endochondral mineralization, distinctive placoid scales, an inner ear that opens externally through the endolymphatic duct, pelvic claspers in males (an adaptation for the internal fertilization practiced by modern chondrichthyeans), and a cartilaginous skeleton. As the earliest agnathan vertebrates were bony, the cartilaginous condition of the chondrichthyean skeleton is apparently derived. In addition to these specialized features, they retain numerous ancestral characteristics, which is one reason why they are ideally suited as subjects for the study of a basic vertebrate. Chondrichthyeans lack the swim bladder or lung that evolved early among the bony fishes, and modern sharks all possess a large, oil-filled liver that dramatically reduces their specific density.

Modern chondrichthyeans are a fairly large and diverse group that includes sharks, skates, rays, sawfishes, and holocephalans. Sharks have fusiform bodies with well-developed paired fins and a powerful heterocercal tail. Five to seven pharyngeal slits and, usually, a spiracle are present. A row of serrated, triangular, and pointed teeth commonly line the upper and lower jaws and are followed by rows of teeth that can rapidly replace broken or worn teeth. Efficient swimmers with a well-armed mouth, sharks are formidable slashing predators. However, not all sharks fit this mold. Indeed, the largest of them, the basking and whale sharks, feed by straining food from the water.

The skates and rays are a subgroup of Squalea (which also includes the squalomorph sharks such as *Squalus acanthias*) and are placed in the Batoidea. Batoids are dorsoventrally flattened, largely due to greatly expanded pectoral fins. The pharyngeal slits open ventrally and the prominent spiracle opens dorsally. The tail and caudal fin are generally reduced and often whip-like. Locomotion is accomplished through wave-like flapping of the fins rather than lateral undulations of the trunk and tail. Some rays can generate electric shocks, produced by modified muscles, to repel an attack or capture prey. The flattened condition of the body is typical of bottom-dwelling forms. The teeth are modified into flattened plates for crushing bottom-dwelling small vertebrates, mollusks, and crustaceans. Like the largest sharks, however, the largest rays, such as the manta ray, tend to strain food from the water.

Holocephali, the other main chondrichthyean group, includes the chimaeras. Holocephalans (from the Ancient Greek *holos* = whole, and *kephale* = head) are so called because their upper jaw is fused to the cranium (unlike the condition in sharks). They possess an operculum that covers the gills (thus there is a single opening on either side of the head, as occurs in bony fishes). The peculiar globular head with dental plates and long, thin tail have inspired their alternate designation as *ratfish*. Additional features of chimaeras are that a spiracle is present only as a transitory structure during ontogeny, the anterior vertebrae form a synarcual that articulates with an anterior dorsal fin, and the male has, in addition to pelvic claspers, a cephalic clasper. They also lack scales except for the modified spine at the base of the dorsal fin.

SECTION I: SKELETON

Study a prepared specimen of the dogfish skeleton. It may be immersed in fluid, in a sealed glass jar, or set in clear acrylic blocks and available only for visual inspection. Separate specimens of the head skeleton may be available for closer inspection. Place such specimens in a tray and cover them with preservative fluid. As they are delicate and easily broken, handle them cautiously. Segments of the vertebral column and the fins are often set in acrylic blocks. Although these are not easily broken, handle them carefully. Do not, for example,

© 2010 Elsevier Inc.

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

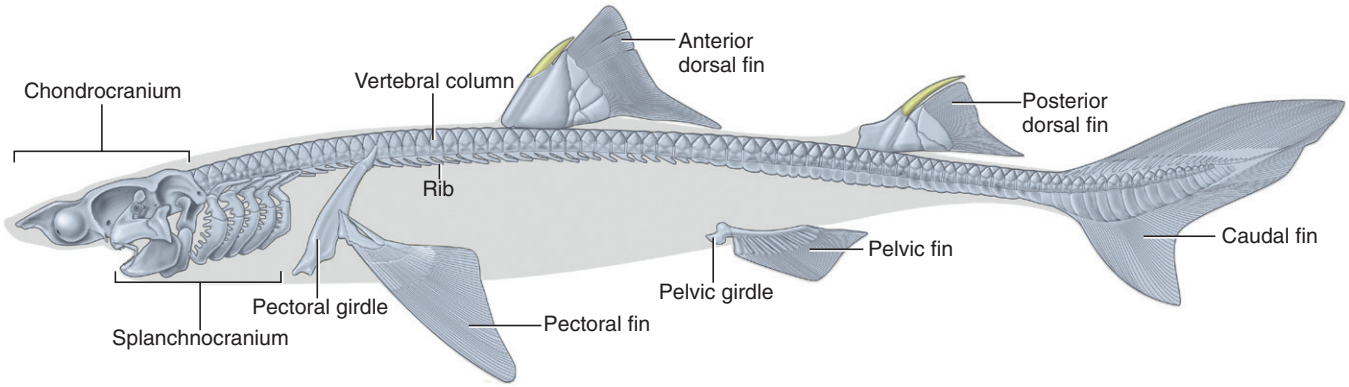


FIGURE 3.1 Skeleton of the shark in left lateral view.

slide them across a table or poke them with needles or pens.

Examine a specimen of a dogfish skeleton (Figure 3.1). Anteriorly, the skeleton of the head includes the **chondrocranium** and **splanchnocranium**. The **vertebral column** extends from the chondrocranium to within the tail and supports the **anterior dorsal fin**, **posterior dorsal fin**, and **caudal fin**. The **pectoral girdle**, supporting the **pectoral fins**, lies just posterior to the splanchnocranium; the **pelvic girdle**, supporting the **pelvic fins**, lies farther posteriorly. Note that the pectoral and pelvic girdles are isolated components, without direct attachment to the rest of the skeleton.

Chondrocranium

The chondrocranium is the large single element of the head skeleton (Figure 3.2). It surrounds and provides support for the brain and sense organs. The scoop-like **rostrum** projects anteriorly and contains the **precerebral cavity**. The cavity communicates posteriorly with the cranial cavity by way of the **precerebral fenestra**. The rostrum is supported ventrally by the **rostral carina**. Paired **rostral fenestrae** lie on either side of the carina. The paired **nasal capsules** lie laterally to the base of the rostrum. These are delicate structures and may be lost or damaged in some specimens. Paired openings, the **nares**, may be preserved on the surface of each capsule.

Posterior to the capsules lies the optic region of the chondrocranium. An orbit, the space occupied in life by the eyeball, lies on either side of this region. The **antorbital shelf** forms the anterior orbital wall. The orbit is defined dorsally by the **antorbital process**, **supraorbital crest**, and **postorbital process**. Posteriorly and ventrally the orbit expands into paired **basitrabecular processes**. Various openings into the chondrocranium are present in this region. On the dorsal surface between the antorbital processes is the median **epiphyseal foramen**. Several smaller openings, the **superficial ophthalmic foramina**, pierce each supraorbital crest. The medial wall of the orbit bears numerous openings, the largest being the **optic foramen** lying anteroventrally in the orbit. Another large opening, the **trigeminofacial foramen**, is located posteriorly in the orbit. The **optic pedicle**, which supports the eyeball, takes root from the orbit just anterior to the trigeminofacial foramen. Other openings such as the **trochlear**, **abducens,** and **oculomotor foramina** may be identified.

Behind the orbits is the squared otic region, which contains the **otic capsules** that house the inner ears. The **basal plate** is the wide, flattened ventral part. The **carotid foramen** lies at the anterior end of the basal plate. On the dorsal surface, near the junction of the postorbital processes and otic regions, the chondrocranium bears a large, median depression, the **endolymphatic fossa**. Within the fossa are two pairs of openings. The smaller, anterior two are the **endolymphatic foramina**, and the posterior pair are the **perilymphatic foramina**. The **hyomandibular foramen** pierces the chondrocranium at the anteroventral part of the otic region.

The occipital region forms the posterior part of the chondrocranium. The large median opening is the **foramen magnum**. An **occipital condyle** lies on either side and just below it. The paired condyles articulate with the first vertebra. A **vagus foramen** lies lateral to each condyle. A **glossopharyngeal foramen** lies at each ventrolateral corner of the occipital region.

Splanchnocranium

The splanchnocranium includes the seven visceral arches: the **mandibular arch**, **hyoid arch**, and five **branchial arches** (Figures 3.3 and 3.4). Each arch comprises various segments. The mandibular and hyoid arches are highly modified for their use as jaw elements and supports. The branchial arches support the interbranchial septa (see Figure 3.20) and lie between successive pharyngeal slits.

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

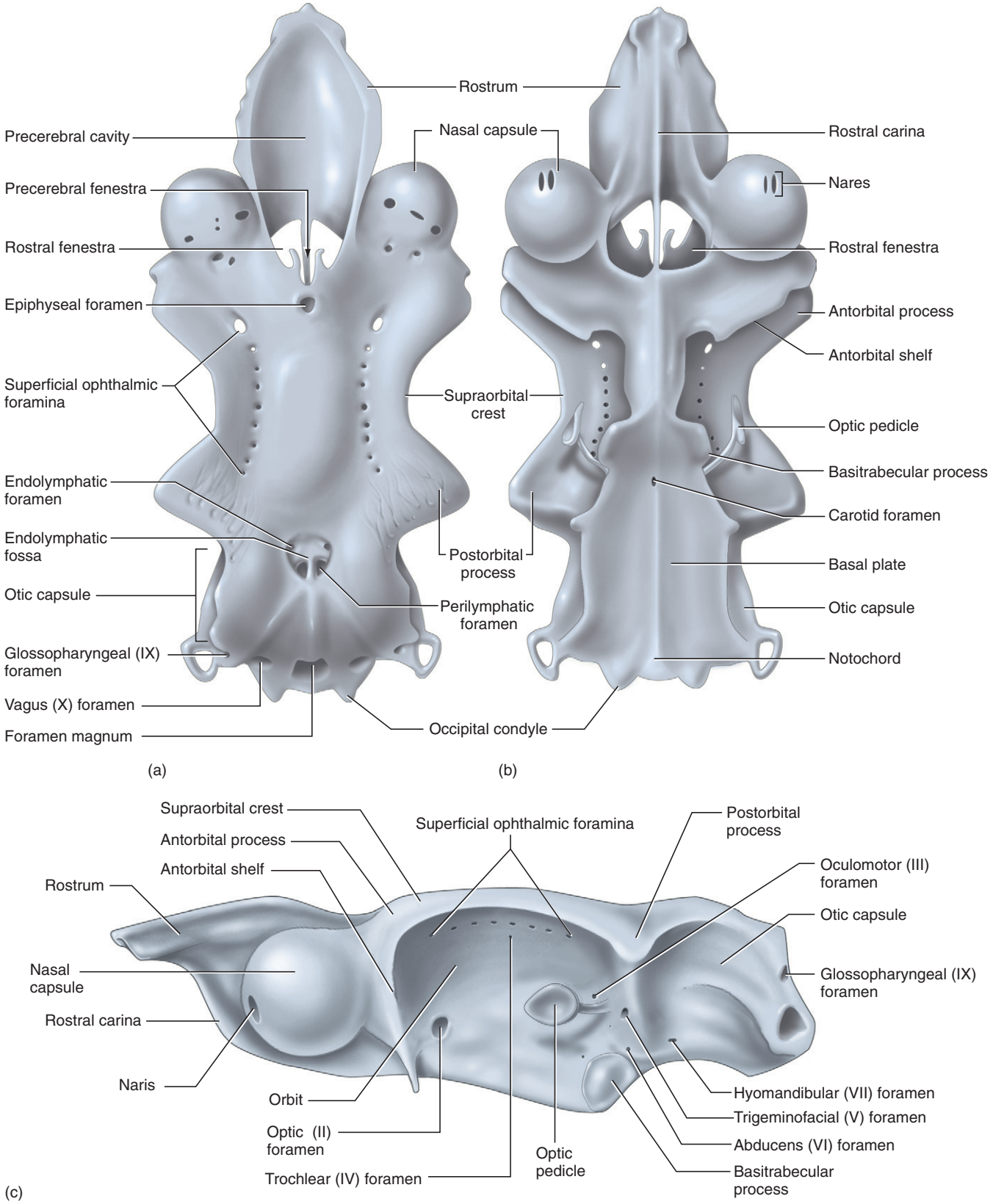


FIGURE 3.2 Chondrocranium of the shark in (a) dorsal view, (b) ventral view, and (c) left lateral view.

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

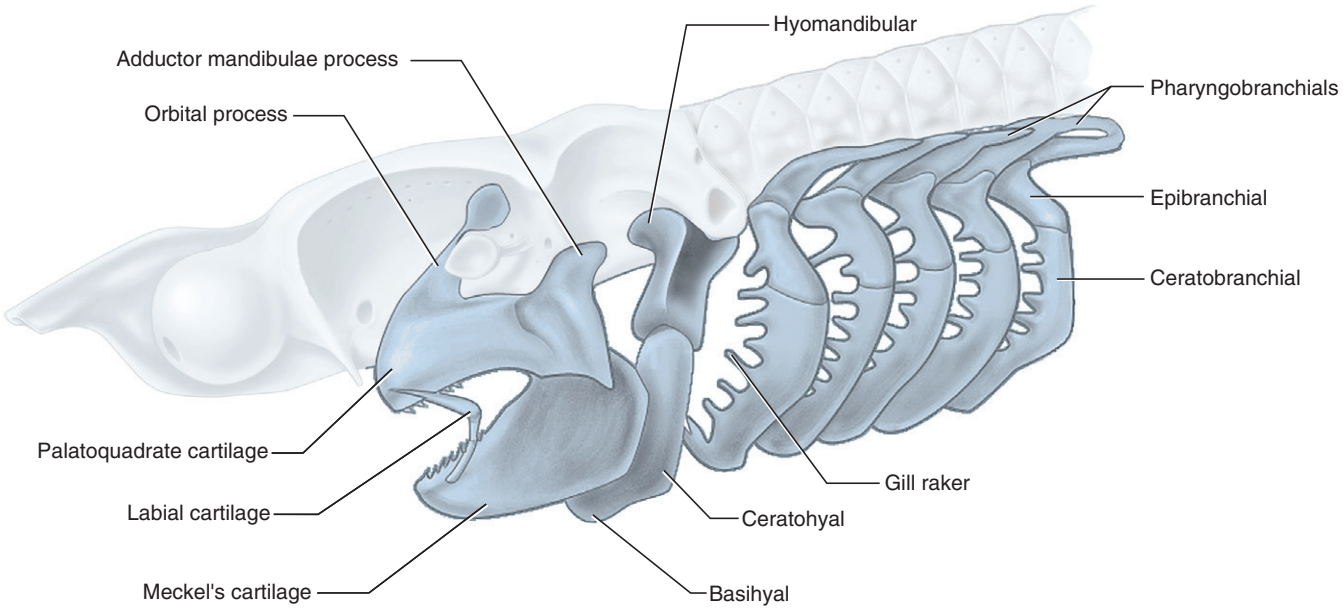


FIGURE 3.3 Visceral arches of the shark in left lateral view.

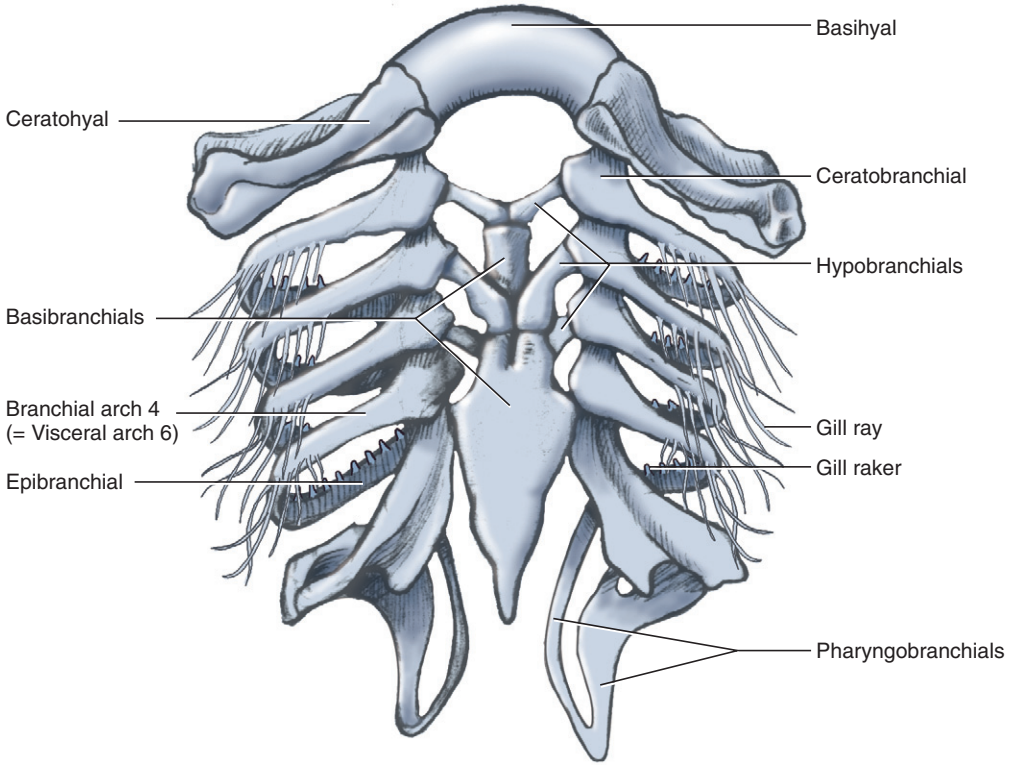


FIGURE 3.4 Hyoid arch and branchial arches of the shark in ventral view. Note that the mandibular arch, illustrated in Figure 3.3, is absent here.

The mandibular arch, the largest of the arches, forms the jaws. Paired **palatoquadrate cartilages** fuse anteriorly to form the upper jaw, which articulates with the chondrocranium. The palatoquadrate cartilage bears two prominent dorsal projections. Anteriorly, the **orbital process** contacts the medial wall of the orbit. Posteriorly, the **adductor mandibulae process** serves for the attachment of the jaw closing musculature, the adductor mandibulae, which is considered later. The ventral half of the mandibular arch forms the lower jaw, which consists of

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

paired **Meckel's cartilages** fused anteriorly. The slender **labial cartilage**, supporting the labial folds (see page 35), is attached to Meckel's cartilage, but may not be preserved in your specimen.

The hyoid arch is modified to support the jaws (or mandibular arch). The dorsal segment of the hyoid arch, on each side, is the **hyomandibular**, which abuts against the otic capsule. A **ceratohyal** articulates with the other end of the hyomandibular. The ceratohyals from either side articulate ventrally with the median **basihyal**. Ligamentous attachments exist between the mandibular arch and hyoid arch, which, through articulation with the otic regions, acts as a support or suspensor of the jaw.

The remaining arches are branchial arches. Each arch is formed, in dorsal to ventral order, from paired **pharyngobranchials**, **epibranchials**, and **ceratobranchials**. Ventrally the arches are completed by three paired **hypobranchials** and two median, unpaired **basibranchials**. The pharyngobranchials of visceral arches 6 and 7 are fused.

Vertebrae and Fins

There are two vertebral types: trunk and caudal (Figures 3.5 and 3.6). Sections of these types are usually set in acrylic blocks for examination. Although the vertebral column has a dorsal passageway in both the trunk and tail, a ventral passageway is present only in the tail.

Each segment of the vertebral column is formed largely from an hourglass-shaped vertebral body or **centrum**. The **notochord** can be observed within the centrum in sagittal section. Dorsal to each centrum is a triangular **neural plate**, the base of which sits on the centrum. The tips of the neural plates bear a low ridge termed the **neural spine**. Between successive neural plates are **intercalary plates**, also triangular but inverted so that neural and intercalary plates together form the **neural arch**. The arch helps form a passageway, the **neural canal** (for passage of the spinal cord), above the centra. Each plate is pierced by a foramen for the root of a spinal nerve. A **basapophysis** projects, on either side, from the ventrolateral surfaces of the centra of the trunk vertebrae. A slender **rib** (Figures 3.1 and 3.7) projects from the basapophysis.

Caudal vertebrae also bear a neural arch. In addition, the ventral surface of each centrum bears, on either side, a plate of cartilage that forms with its opposite member the **hemal arch**. The **hemal canal**, for the caudal artery and vein, passes within the arch. A thin horizontal partition, the **hemal plate**, may separate the passage for the artery dorsally and the vein ventrally. A **hemal spine** extends ventrally from the hemal arch.

The vertebral column helps support the anterior and posterior dorsal fins, and the caudal fin. The anterior (Figures 3.1 and 3.7) and posterior (Figure 3.1) dorsal fins are similar in structure. Each has a large proximal **basal pterygiophore**, to which the **fin spine** is anchored anteriorly. Spines are clipped by some suppliers prior to shipping. More distally are a series of **radial pterygiophores** and, finally, the **ceratotrichia**, which are fibrous dermal rays, rather than cartilaginous elements. The caudal fin (Figure 3.8) is of the heterocercal type-asymmetric, with the vertebral axis curving into the dorsal lobe of the fin. It is supported proximally by the hemal arches and radial pterygiophores.

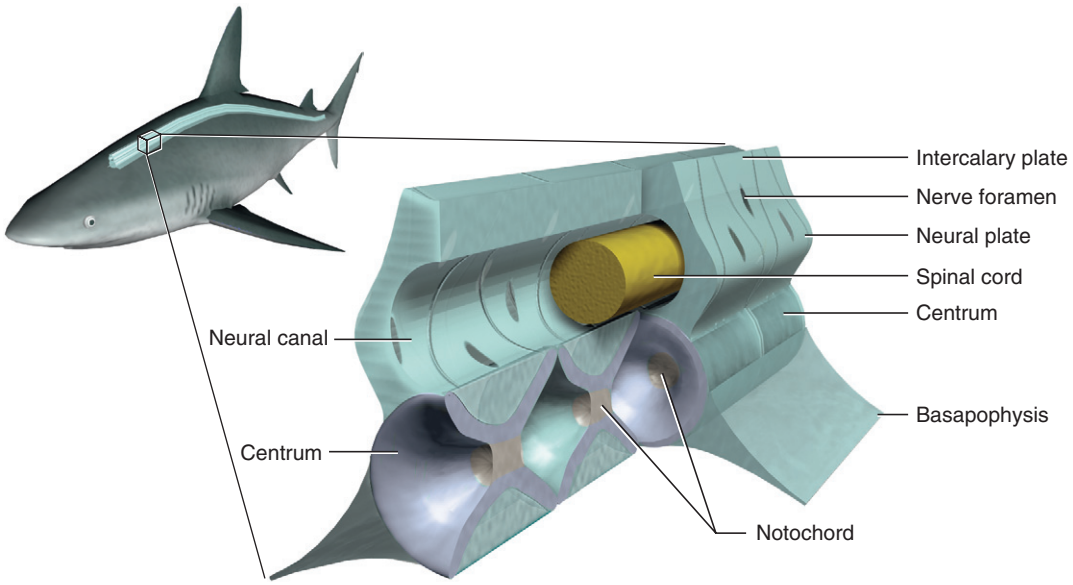


FIGURE 3.5 Anterolateral view of sagittally sectioned and whole articulated trunk vertebrae of the shark.

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

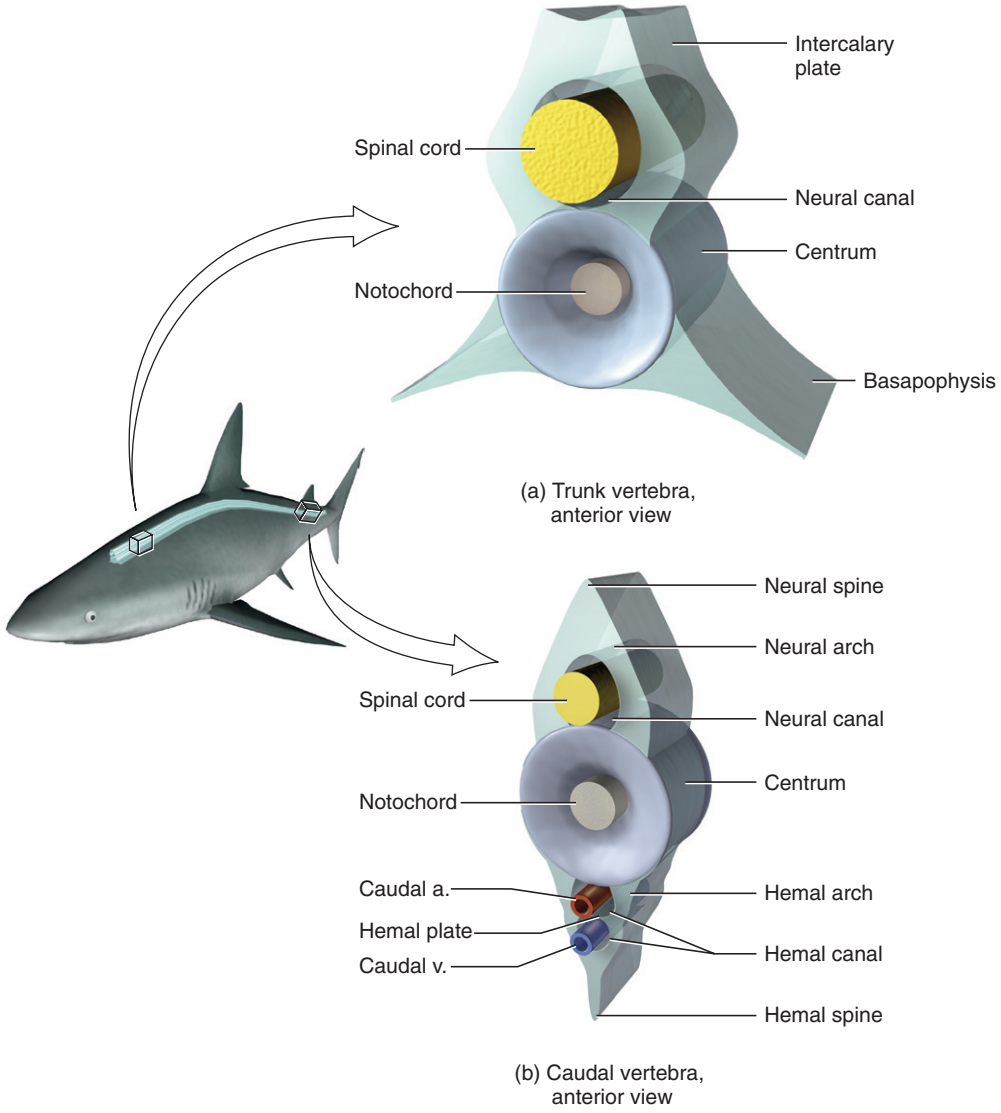


FIGURE 3.6 Vertebrae of the shark in anterolateral view; (a) trunk vertebra and (b) caudal vertebra.

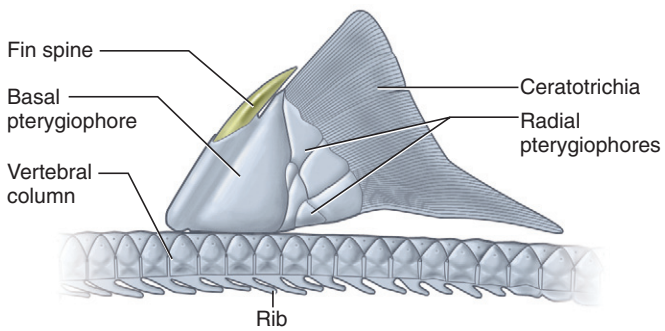


FIGURE 3.7 Skeletal elements of the anterior dorsal fin of the shark in left lateral view.

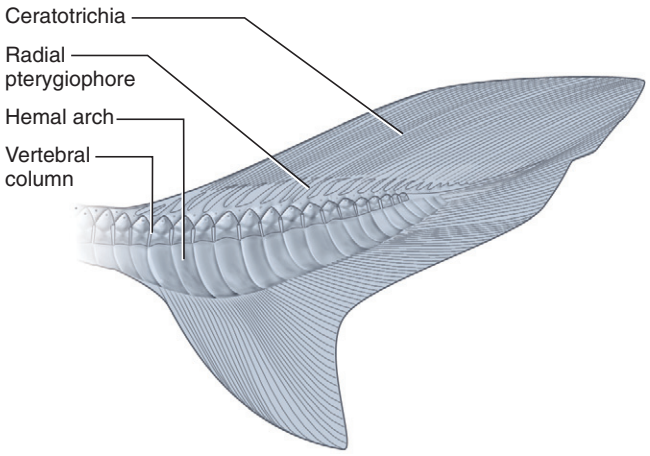


FIGURE 3.8 Skeletal elements of the caudal fin of the shark in left lateral view.

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

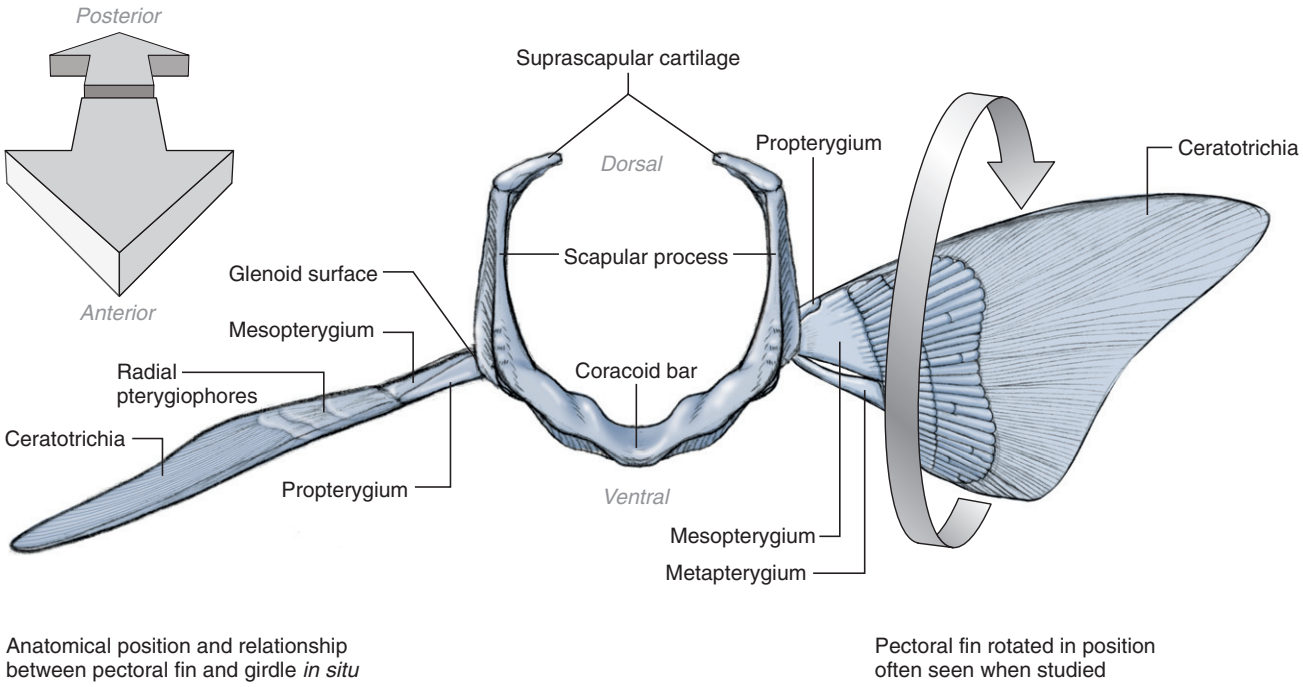


FIGURE 3.9 Pectoral girdle and skeletal elements of pectoral fins of the shark in anterior view.

The paired appendages, the pectoral and pelvic fins, are supported by cartilaginous girdles. The pectoral girdle (Figure 3.9) includes a stout, U-shaped cartilage to which the fins attach on either side. The portion between the fins is the **coracoid bar**, and the part extending dorsally past the attachment of each fin is the **scapular process**. A separate slender element, the **suprascapular cartilage**, attaches dorsally to each scapular process. The area that articulates with the fin is the **glenoid surface**. The pectoral fin (Figures 3.9 and 3.10) has basal and radial pterygiophores, followed by ceratotrichia. Three basals are recognized: the **propterygium**, **mesopterygium**, and **metapterygium**, in anterior to posterior order. The glenoid surface of the fin is borne mainly by the mesopterygium. The radials of the pectoral fin are rod-like structures, more regularly shaped than in the median dorsal fins, and are arranged in rows.

The pelvic girdle (Figure 3.11) consists of a single element, the **puboischiadic bar**. The pelvic fins articulate on either end of the bar at the **acetabular surfaces**. An **iliac process** lies near each acetabular surface. The pelvic fin of the female and male are similar in bearing a short propterygium and a stout, elongated metapterygium that extends posteriorly (Figure 3.11). A row of cylindrical radial pterygiophores articulates mainly with the metapterygium and supports the ceratotrichia. The pelvic fin of the male differs in bearing a **clasper**, formed from modified radials, that functions in the

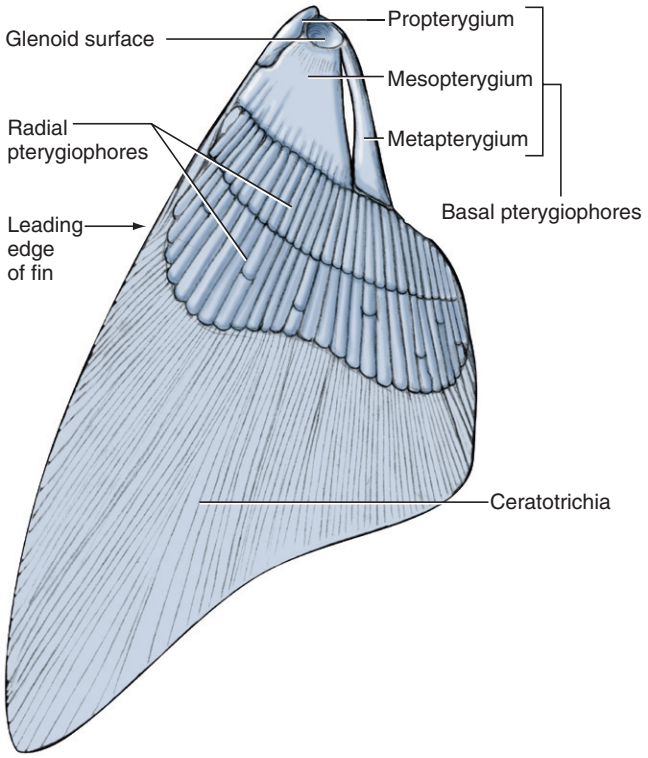


FIGURE 3.10 Skeletal elements of the left pectoral fin of the shark in dorsal view.

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

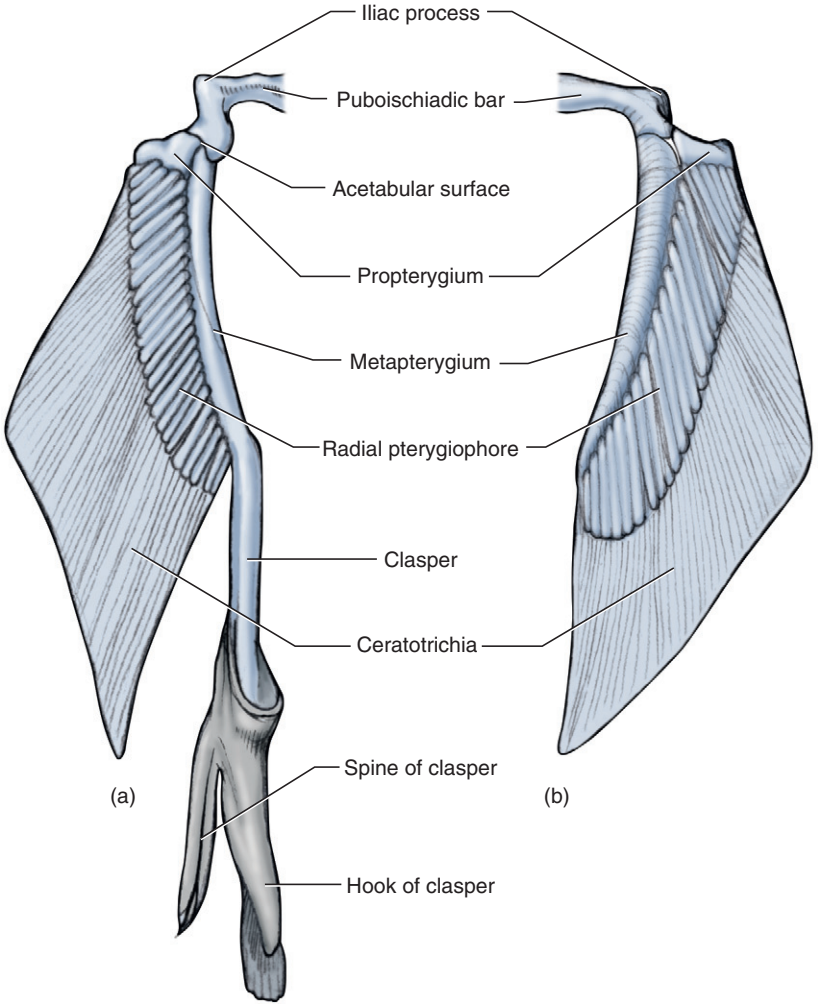


FIGURE 3.11 Skeletal elements of the pelvic fin of the shark in ventral view; (a) right fin of the male and (b) left fin of the female.

intromission of sperm into the cloaca of the female. The clasper extends posteriorly from the metapterygium and bears a **hook** and **spine** distally (Figure 3.11a).

Key Terms: Skeleton

abducens foramen
acetabular surface
adductor mandibulae process
anterior dorsal fin
antorbital process
antorbital shelf
basal plate
basal pterygiophore
basapophysis
basibranchials
basihyal
basitrabecular processes
branchial arches
carotid foramen
caudal fin
centrum (vertebral body)
ceratobranchials
ceratohyal
ceratotrichia
chondrocranium
clasper
coracoid bar
endolymphatic foramina (sing., **foramen**)
endolymphatic fossa (plur., **fossae**)
epibranchials
epiphyseal foramen
fin spine
foramen magnum
glenoid surface
glossopharyngeal foramen
hemal arch
hemal canal

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

hemal plate
hemal spine
hook of **clasper**
hyoid arch
hyomandibular
hyomandibular foramen
hypobranchials
iliac process
intercalary plates (interneural arch)
labial cartilage
mandibular arch
Meckel's cartilage (mandibular cartilage)
mesopterygium
metapterygium
nares (sing., **naris**)
nasal capsules
neural arch (vertebral arch)
neural canal (vertebral canal)
neural plate
neural spine
notochord
occipital condyle
oculomotor foramina (sing., **foramen**)
optic foramen
optic pedicle
orbital process
otic capsules
palatoquadrate cartilages
pectoral fins
pectoral girdle
pelvic fins
pelvic girdle
perilymphatic foramina
pharyngobranchials
posterior dorsal fin
postorbital process
precerebral cavity
precerebral fenestra
propterygium
puboischiadic bar
radial pterygiophores
rib
rostral carina
rostral fenestra (plur., **fenestrae**)
rostrum
scapular process
spine of **clasper**
splanchnocranium
superficial ophthalmic foramina
supraorbital crest
suprascapular cartilage
trigeminofacial foramen
trochlear foramen
vagus foramen
vertebral column

SECTION II: EXTERNAL ANATOMY

The integument of sharks is relatively thin. It is subdivided into **dermis** and **epidermis**, but the latter is not keratinized and comprises a layer of live cells, which, in life, is covered by mucus. As noted earlier, bone is almost entirely absent in sharks, and so they lack extensive bony coverings. However, **placoid scales** or denticles (Figure 3.12a–c) are embedded in the skin (Figure 3.12d). A scale is built like a tooth, formed from **dentine**, covered by **enamel**, and containing a **pulp cavity** (Figure 3.12e). Such scales, which reduce the drag of water passing over the skin during swimming, are uniformly distributed over the skin and can be seen under low magnification, but their presence can be felt by running your hand over the skin. The integument also contains various specialized cells, such as **melanophores** that control pigmentation of the skin and secretory cells, but these cannot be seen grossly.

The body regions (Figure 3.13) of the shark, and fishes in general, are not as neatly differentiated as in tetrapods. This is due to the elongated and fusiform body, which facilitates movement through the water. The **head** extends posteriorly to the end of the row of **external pharyngeal slits** and includes the laterally placed **eyes**. The **nares** (sing. **naris**) lie ventrolaterally on the tapered **snout**. Examine a naris closely, and note that it is incompletely subdivided by a flap of skin into incurrent and excurrent apertures (see Figure 3.18). The naris leads into the blind-ended **olfactory sac** (see Figure 3.36). The ventrally located **mouth** is supported by upper and lower jaws that have rows of sharp teeth. A **labial pocket** lies on either side of the mouth (Figures 3.13 and 3.18). Mouth and pocket are separated by a flap, the **labial fold**, which is supported by the labial cartilage.

The **spiracle** is a relatively large opening into the pharynx and lies posterior to each eye. Its anterior wall contains a fold of tissue, the **spiracular valve**, that can be folded over the opening to close the spiracle. The valve bears a **pseudobranch**, a reduced gill, on its posterior surface. A row of five external pharyngeal slits, separated by four **interbranchial septa** (Figure 3.13), lie on either side of the head and lead into the pharynx. The slits are the means by which water leaves the pharynx as the water passes over the respiratory structures or **gills**. Gills are made up of **gill lamellae**, which are injected with red latex. Manipulate the interbranchial septa and note that each septum carries gill lamellae on its anterior and posterior surfaces (see Figure 3.23). Note that lamellae are present on the anterior wall of the first slit, but not on the posterior wall of the last slit.

The **trunk** follows the head and extends posteriorly to the midventrally located **cloaca** (Figure 3.14), a chamber into which the urinary, reproductive, and digestive tracts exit. Pull the pelvic fins laterally to

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

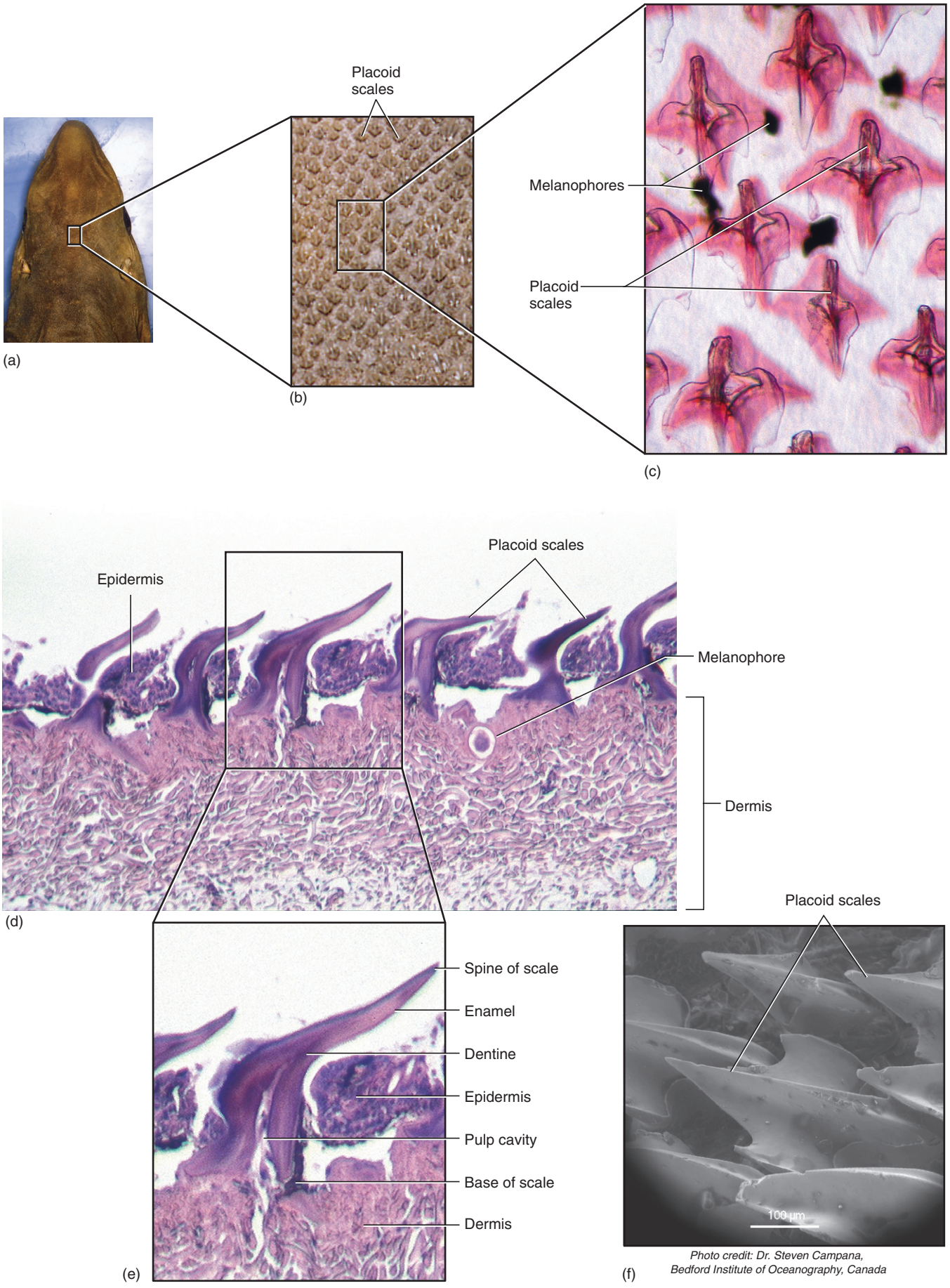


Photo credit: Dr. Steven Campana, Bedford Institute of Oceanography, Canada

FIGURE 3.12 Skin of the shark: (a)–(c) successive blowups of the surface of the skin to show structure of scales; (d, e) vertical section through skin and scales; (f) SEM image of skin showing scales. *Source: Dr. Steven Campana, Bedford Institute of Oceanography, Canada.*

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

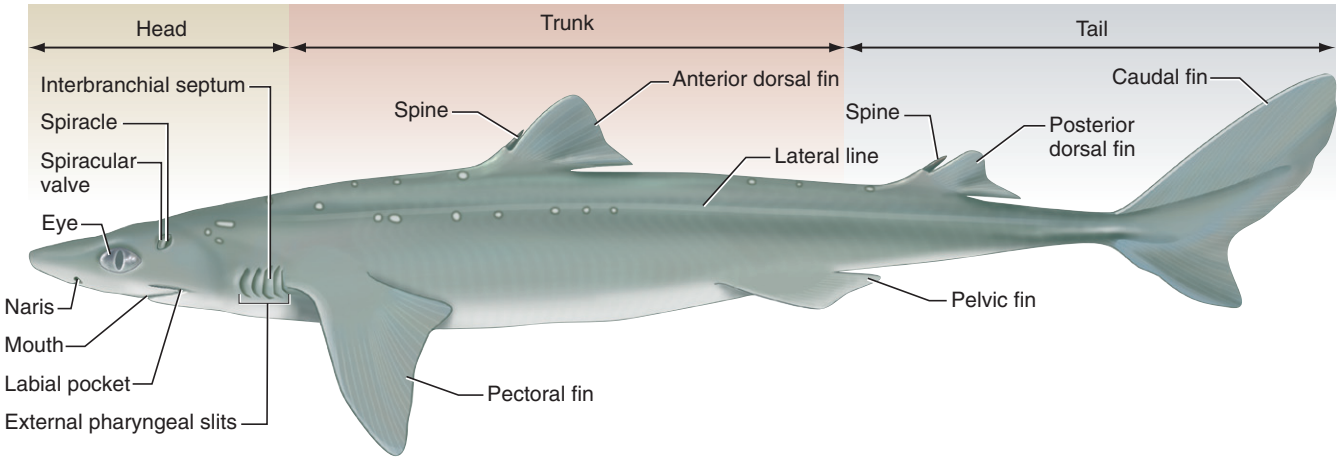


FIGURE 3.13 External features of the shark in left lateral view.

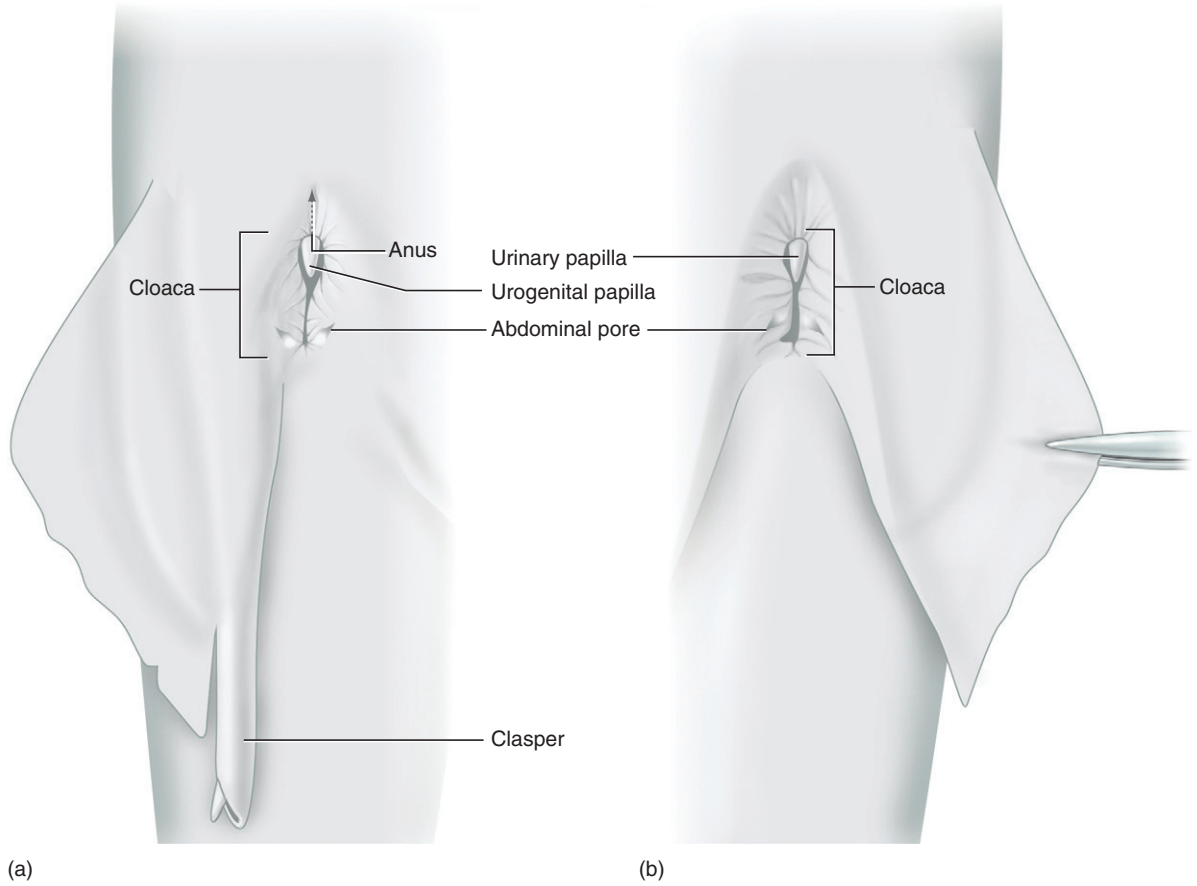


FIGURE 3.14 Ventral view of posterior portion of the shark to show cloaca and pelvic fin: (a) right side of the male and (b) left side of the female.

expose the cloaca more clearly. In the male (Figure 3.14a) the genital ducts and urinary ducts open at the tip of the **urogenital papilla**, a cone-like structure lying in the cloaca. A similar structure occurs in females (Figure 3.14b), but as only the urinary ducts open at its tip, it is termed the **urinary papilla**. The **anus**, the posterior opening of the digestive tract, opens into the cloaca anterior to the papilla. Locate the **abdominal pores**, one each on the posterolateral side of the cloaca (Figures 3.14 and 3.33). The pores extend into the pleuroperitoneal cavity and may allow removal of excess fluid from the cavity.

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

The **anterior dorsal fin** (Figure 3.13) lies middorsally on the trunk and carries a sharp spine anteriorly. The large, paired **pectoral fins** lie anteriorly, just behind the external pharyngeal slits, and the paired **pelvic fins** lie at the end of the trunk, one on either side of the cloaca. In the male an elongated, cylindrical, and dorsally grooved **clasper**, a copulatory organ, is a posterior extension of the medial aspect of the pelvic fin (Figure 3.14a).

The **tail** (Figure 3.13) extends posteriorly from the cloaca and carries the well-developed heterocercal **caudal fin**. Lateral undulations of the tail and caudal fin produce the propulsive force that moves the shark forward. The **posterior dorsal fin**, another medial fin, lies at the anterior part of the tail and also has an anterior spine. The spiny dogfish, the common name of *Squalus acanthias*, is derived from the presence of the spines on the anterior and posterior dorsal fins.

Examine the lateral surface of the body, just dorsal to the midlateral plane, and note the faint, pale **lateral line** extending anteroposteriorly. It marks the position of the **lateral line canal** (Figure 3.13), a cutaneous tube that contains sensory nerve endings and opens to the surface by way of tiny pores. The lateral line canal is the predominant part of the lateral line system, a system of sensory cells responsive to pressure changes caused by vibrations and movements in the water. The distribution of this system into the head and other parts of the body will be considered later. The lateral line system is modified to provide two other functions. The balancing apparatus is contained within the otic capsule of the chondrocranium. It is mentioned here because this system is connected to the surface by a pair of endolymphatic ducts (recall the endolymphatic foramina, page 28 and Figure 3.2) that open through the **endolymphatic pores** (Figure 3.15). These lie dorsally on the head between the spiracles. The second modification consists of the **ampullae of Lorenzini**, which function in electroreception. The ampullae open in numerous pores all around the head and may be noted by gently squeezing these regions to extrude a gel-like substance.

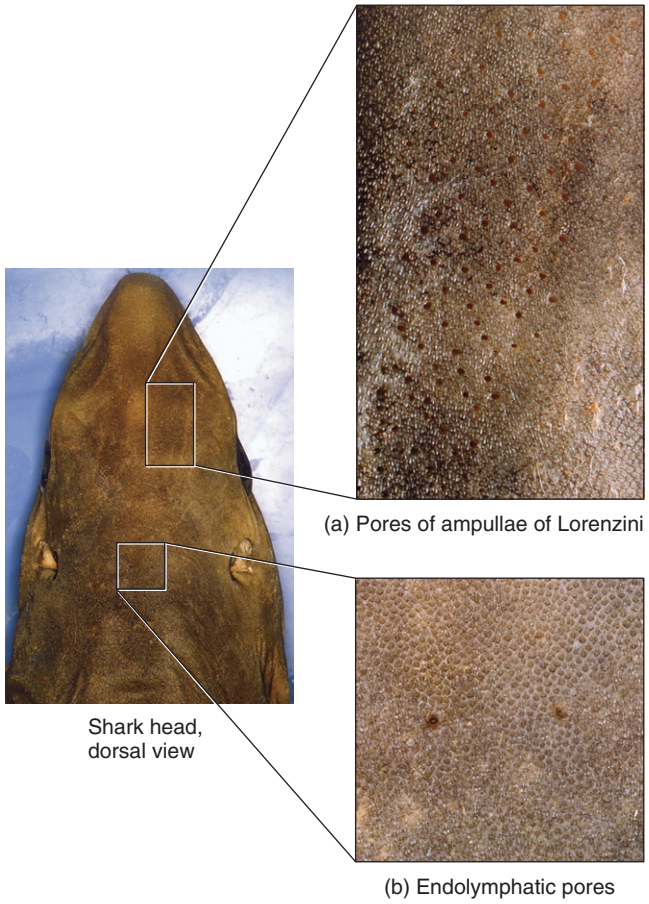


FIGURE 3.15 Enlarged views of the surface of the skin of the shark: (a) ampullae of Lorenzini and (b) endolymphatic pores.

Key Terms: External Anatomy

abdominal pores
ampullae of **Lorenzini**
anterior dorsal fin
anus
caudal fin
clasper
cloaca
dentine
dermis
enamel
endolymphatic pores
epidermis
external pharyngeal slits
eyes
gill
gill lamellae
head
interbranchial septa
labial fold
labial pocket
lateral line
lateral line canal
melanophores
mouth
naris (plur., **nares**)
olfactory sac
pectoral fins
pelvic fins
placoid scales
posterior dorsal fin
pseudobranch
pulp cavity
snout
spiracle

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

spiracular valve
tail
trunk
urinary papilla
urogenital papilla

SECTION III: MUSCULAR SYSTEM

Study of the musculature requires that the skin be removed. There are various techniques that allow efficient skinning. One of these is that a scalpel, in most cases, be used as little as possible. Remember that dissection does not have as its goal the frequent use of a scalpel, as many students would like to believe. Instead, we may recognize skill in dissection by selection of the proper implement for the task at hand. It may be used to cut the skin and then to help reflect it. In reflecting the skin, a blunt probe is also effective and easier. A scalpel may be used for areas where the skin adheres more strongly to the musculature. In such cases, the scalpel should be used in a sideways scraping motion. Turning the blade axially 180° and using its point as a pick can also be very effective. Its cutting edge should rarely be used in separating skin from underlying body structures.

Trunk and Appendicular Muscles

The trunk musculature is considered first for several reasons: It is relatively easy to examine as an introduction to the musculature; it comprises the bulk of the musculature of the body; and the procedure will give you practice in skinning a region where mistakes and inexperience will not produce serious damage.

Peel back a strip of skin, about 5 cm in width, from one side of the trunk region just posterior to the anterior dorsal fin (Figure 3.16, flap 1). Cut with a scalpel three sides of a rectangular section of skin. Begin the incisions middorsally and continue ventrally down the body to the midventral plane. The skin is thin, so cut carefully to avoid damaging underlying structures. Do not cut the fourth side. This will produce a flap of skin that can be wrapped around exposed tissues at the end of a lab period to help protect them. After cutting the edges of the flap, lift one corner and begin to pull the skin away from the trunk musculature. As the skin begins to pull away, scrape the connective tissue between skin and muscles. Use the noncutting edge of your scalpel, as described earlier. Skin will come off easily in some spots but will stick in others because muscle fibers attach directly to the dermis. Patiently scrape the muscle fibers from the inside of the skin toward the body with a scalpel. In some areas a probe or the ends of narrow forceps will suffice.

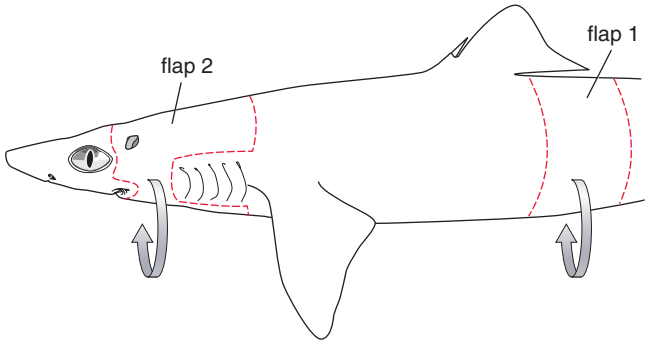


FIGURE 3.16 Diagram of the shark in left lateral view showing guidelines for cutting the skin.

Once flap 1 is reflected notice that the trunk musculature is divided into the dorsal **epaxial musculature** and the ventral **hypaxial musculature** by the **horizontal skeletogenous septum**, a connective tissue sheet lying in the frontal plane (Figure 3.17). Each of these primary divisions consists of segmented, Z-shaped **myomeres**, separated by connective tissue sheets termed **myosepta**. The **linea alba** is connective tissue separating left and right myomeres midventrally (Figure 3.18). The myomeres are complex internally, extending farther anteriorly and posteriorly than their margins at the surface of the body.

To examine the appendicular muscles, skin portions from the dorsal and ventral surfaces of a pectoral fin and note the musculature revealed. The **pectoral abductor** lies dorsally (Figure 3.17) and the **pectoral adductor** lies ventrally (Figure 3.18). *Abductor* and *adductor* are terms that describe the actions of muscles. Abductor muscles pull a structure away from the midventral line; adductor muscles pull toward the midventral line. The pelvic adductor and abductor may be found associated with the pelvic fin. However, be careful if you decide to remove the skin from the ventral surface of the pelvic fin of a male. The **siphon** (see Figure 3.33 and page 60 for further description), a structure associated with the reproductive system, lies on the ventral surface of the fin musculature.

Muscles of the Head and Branchial Region

Examine next the musculature of the head and branchial region. The head may be skinned from snout to the pectoral girdle, but this is not necessary. Instead, skin only half the head (as in Figure 3.16, flap 2). Make an incision through the skin middorsally between the eyes that extends posteriorly to the level of the pectoral fin. Continue the incision ventrally to the dorsal edge of the fifth pharyngeal slit. The skin may be removed from around the pharyngeal slits, but this is difficult and time-consuming, as the skin adheres tightly here. This effort

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

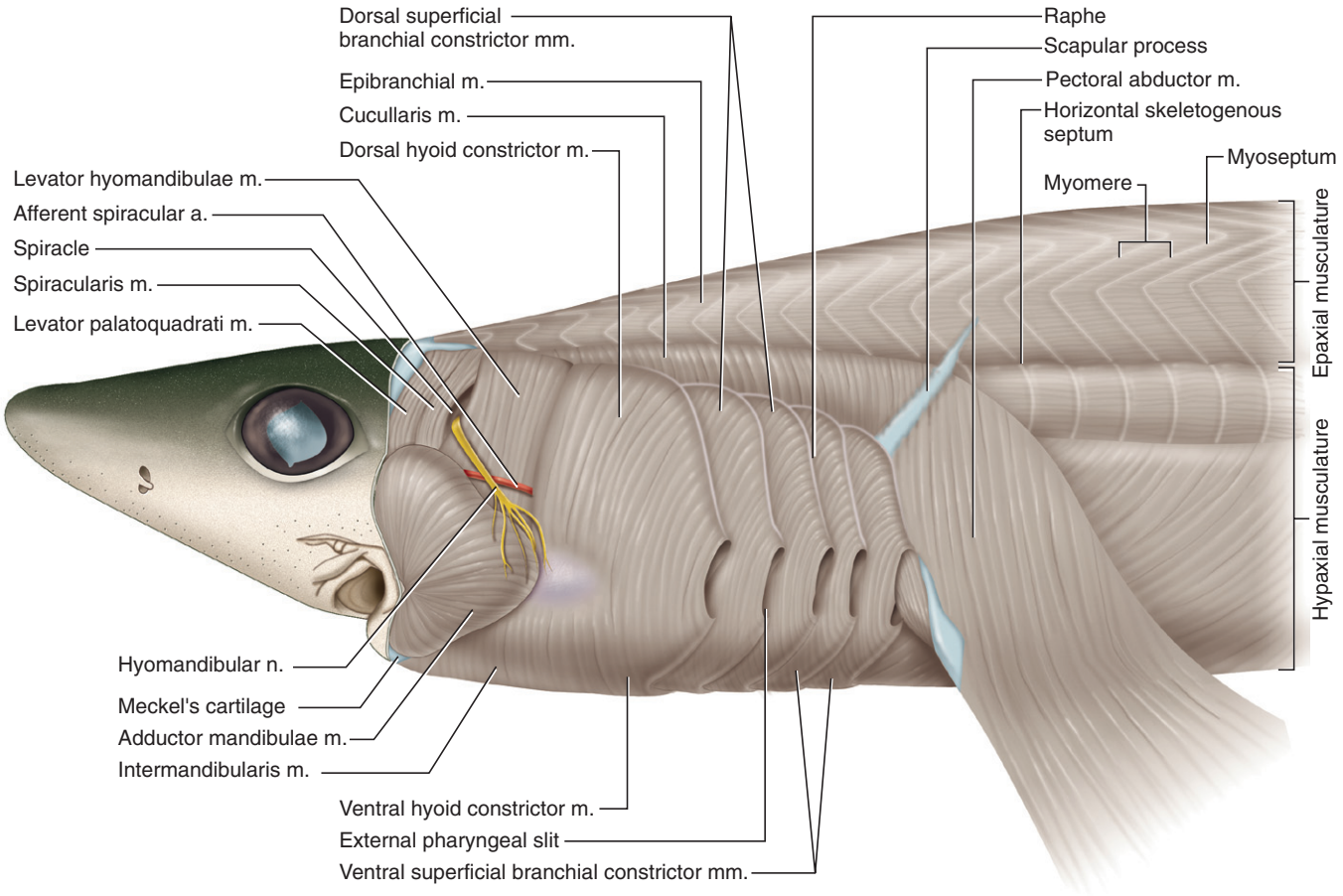


FIGURE 3.17 Head, branchial region, and anterior part of the trunk of the shark in left lateral view, skinned to reveal musculature.

can be avoided without missing much anatomical detail by leaving a rectangular flap around the slits, as follows (Figure 3.16, flap 2). From the fifth slit, cut anteriorly to the first slit, ventrally along the anterior margin of this slit, and then posteriorly to the ventral end of the fifth slit. Continue the incision ventrally around the body to about 2 cm past the midventral line. Do not cut midventrally. Return to the beginning of the incision between the eyes and cut posteroventrally around the eye to the angle of the mouth. Proceed along the edge of the jaw until you reach ventrally approximately to the same level as the posterior cut. Separate the skin from the body using the methods described earlier for the axial musculature.

Branchiomeric Musculature

On exposing the musculature, view the shark in lateral view (Figures 3.17 and 3.37) and locate the spiracle. There are two muscles anterior to it, but careful dissection is required to separate them, so proceed cautiously. The small **spiracularis** is on the anterior wall of the spiracular valve. The larger **levator palatoquadrati** lies anterior to it. The muscles pass from the otic capsule to the upper jaw and serve to lift or stabilize it. The **levator hyomandibulae** lies posterior to the spiracle (Figures 3.17 and 3.37). It extends between the otic capsule and the hyomandibular, and raises the hyomandibular during jaw closing. Ventral to these muscles and just posterior to the angle of the mouth is the large **adductor mandibulae**, which extends between upper and lower jaws and closes the mouth (Figures 3.17 and 3.18). Two other structures may be noted briefly at this time. The conspicuous **hyomandibular nerve** passes across the ventral part of the levator hyomandibulae from the spiracle. The **afferent spiracular artery** passes deep to the nerve, and should be injected with red latex.

Posterior to the muscles just discussed are the five superficial constrictors, comprising a block of muscles that surrounds the pharyngeal slits (Figures 3.17–3.19). The constrictors are subdivided into dorsal and ventral portions. They are arranged sequentially from front to back and separated by vertical connective tissue partitions termed **raphes**, which look like white lines on the muscle surface. The first constrictor, more complex than the others, includes the **dorsal** and **ventral hyoid**

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

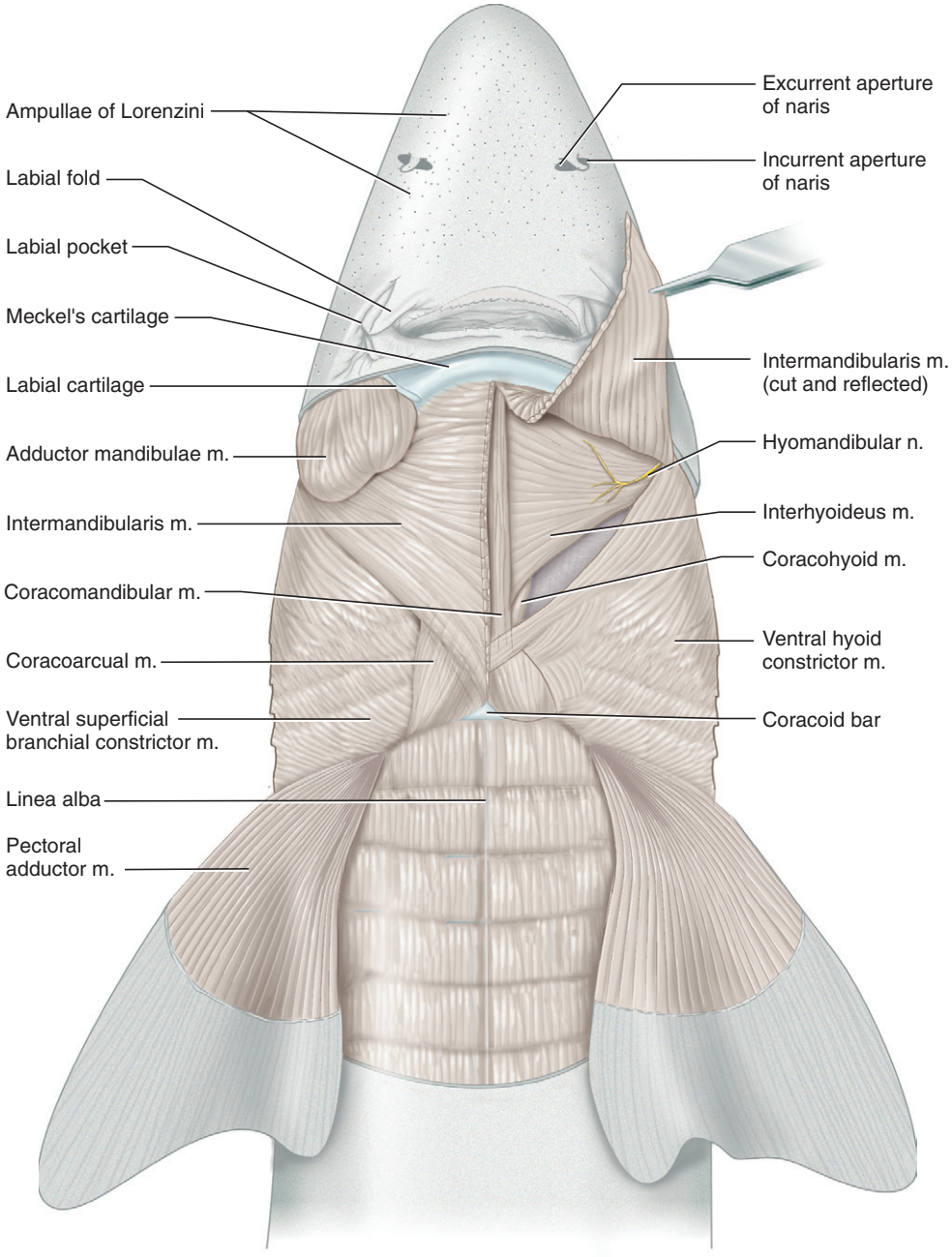


FIGURE 3.18 Branchial region and anterior part of the trunk of the shark in ventral view, skinned to reveal musculature.

constrictors, which lie between the adductor mandibulae and the first pharyngeal slit. Raphes extending dorsally and ventrally from the first slit separate the hyoid constrictors from the first of four superficial constrictors. The **dorsal** and **ventral superficial branchial constrictors**, properly constrictors 3–6, are similar in form and extend between the raphes associated with each slit. The branchial constrictors, which compress the branchial region, extend medially. Superficially, however, they overlap one another so that only their outermost portions are visible. The triangular **cucullaris** lies dorsal to the constrictors. Dorsal to the cucullaris are the dorsal longitudinal bundles of the **epibranchial** muscles, which attach anteriorly to the back of the chondrocranium and represent the anterior continuation of the epaxial musculature into the head. The cucullaris arises from fascia covering the longitudinal bundle and inserts on the epibranchial of each branchial arch and the scapular process of the pectoral girdle.

Examine the ventral surface of the shark (Figure 3.18). The **intermandibularis** lies between Meckel's cartilages. Composed of left and right halves separated

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

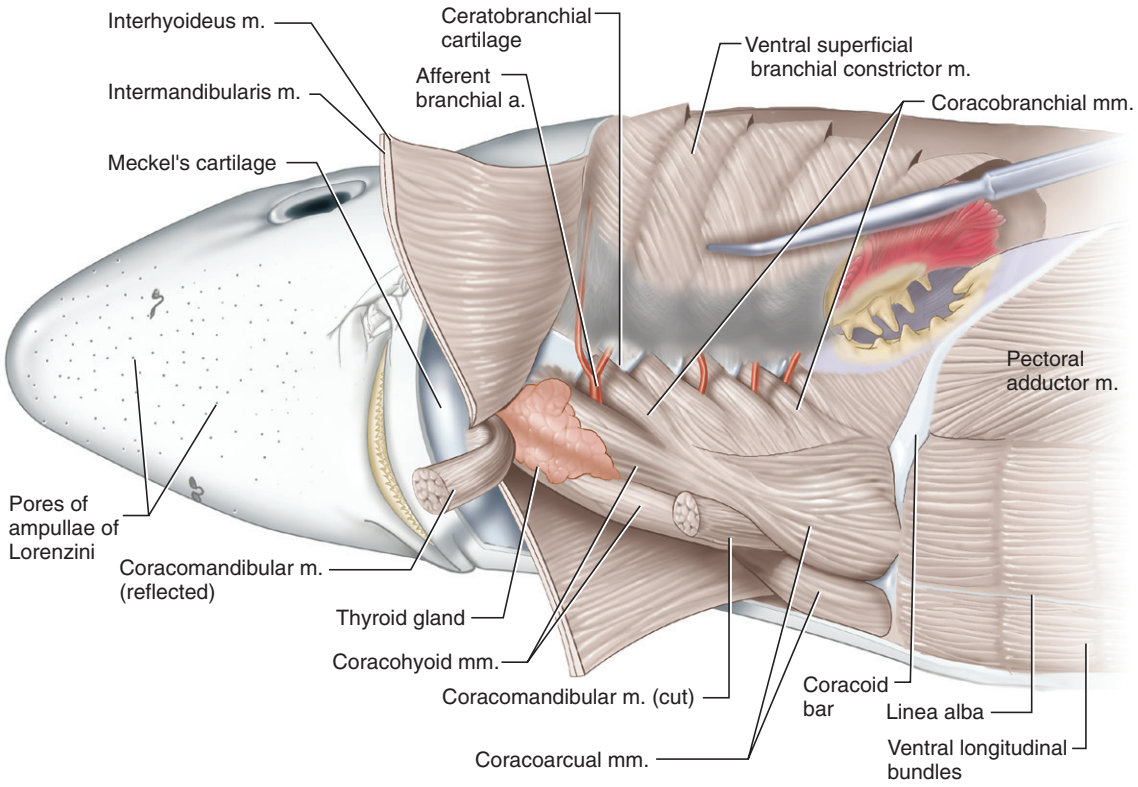


FIGURE 3.19 Branchial and hypobranchial musculature of the shark in ventrolateral view.

midventrally by a raphe, the fibers of the intermandibularis radiate fan-like from Meckel's cartilage toward the midline. The muscle is some 2 mm thick, but posteriorly it may be lifted from the underlying muscle. Carefully cut through the intermandibularis parallel to and about 2 to 3 mm to one side of the raphe. A second, thin, and less extensive muscular sheet lies deep to it. This is the **interhyoideus**, which, as its name implies, extends between the cartilages of the hyoid arch, specifically the ceratohyals. The muscle adheres tightly to the intermandibularis. It is difficult to separate them, but attempt to do so from the anterior end of the interhyoideus. The fibers of the interhyoideus are less obliquely oriented and do not extend as far anteriorly as the intermandibularis. The hyomandibular nerve may be seen lying ventrolaterally on the interhyoideus (Figure 3.18). If it becomes too difficult and time-consuming to separate the muscles, you may instead view the interhyoideus by cutting through it as well and reflecting the sheets (Figure 3.19).

The muscles discussed so far in this section are part of the branchiomeric musculature (there are others, but they lie more deeply and will be studied shortly). Now that their distribution has been noted, their relationships may be summarized. The muscles are each associated with particular visceral arches. Presumably in early vertebrates there were at least seven such arches, each supporting a muscular septum that lay between pharyngeal slits. The musculature was probably a repeating series of units, one for each arch, with each in the series resembling the relatively simple arrangement of a typical branchial arch in the shark. During the evolution of jawed vertebrates, the two most anterior arches were modified into the mandibular arch, which forms the upper and lower jaws, and behind it, the hyoid arch, which supported the jaws. The musculature associated with these arches was thus modified to meet the new functions of these arches. In the shark (see Figures 3.17 and 3.18), the muscles of the mandibular arch are the levator palatoquadrati, spiracularis, adductor mandibulae, and intermandibularis. The levator hyomandibulae, hyoid constrictors, and interhyoideus belong to the hyoid arch. Each of the branchial arches, except for the last, has the typical constrictor setup that has just been described. The constrictors are differentiated into various parts; only the more superficial portions have been examined so far.

The deeper portions require further dissection. Insert scissors into the third slit and cut vertically through the dorsal and ventral superficial branchial constrictors so the slit may be spread open. You will thus be able to view the interbranchial septa of the third and fourth branchial arches. Compare your specimen with Figures 3.20 and 3.23. Note that most of each septum is covered

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

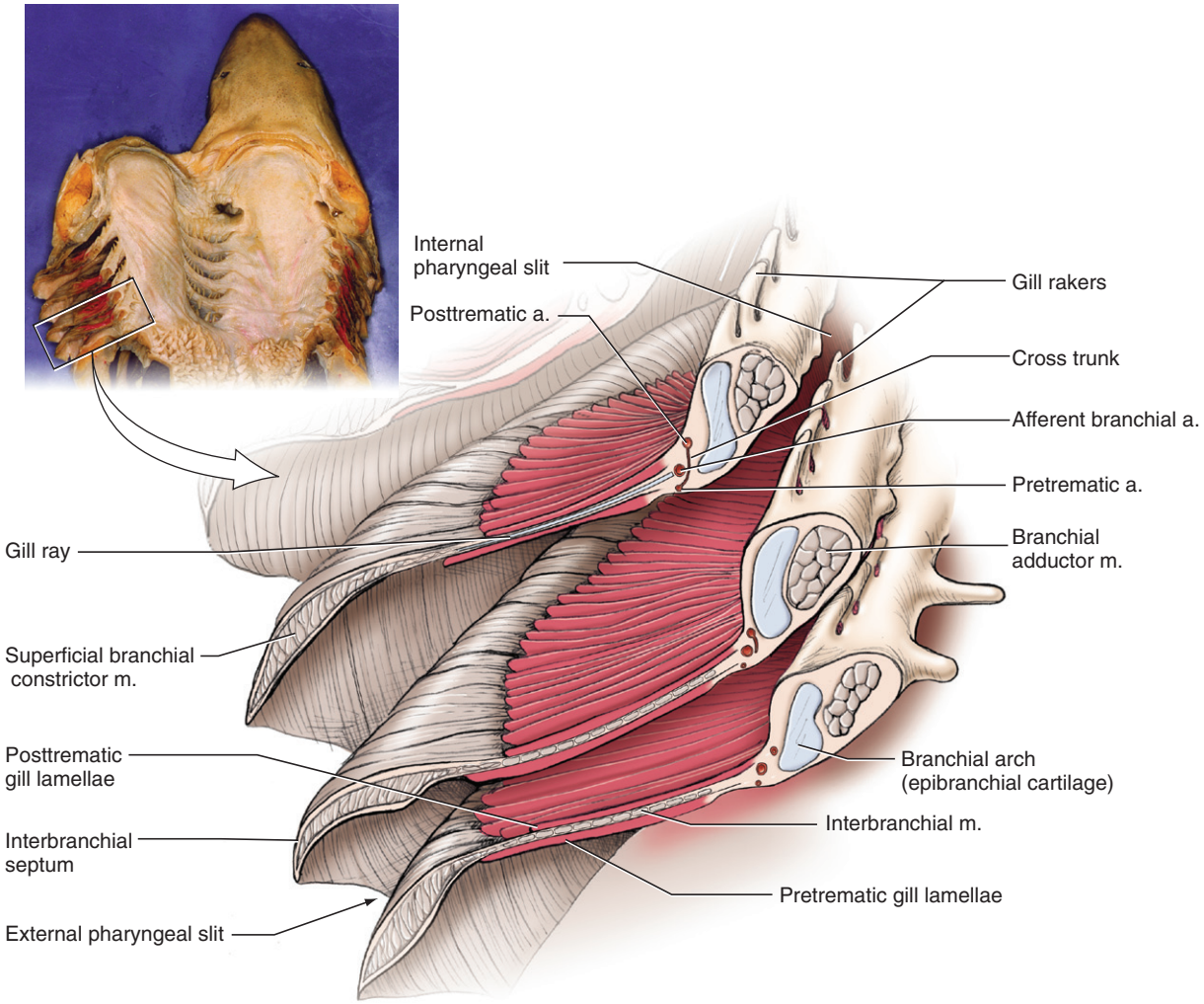


FIGURE 3.20 Section through interbranchial septa of the shark.

by gill lamellae. This portion of the septum is formed by the **interbranchial** muscle. Its fibers are curved. Carefully remove, by scraping, the lamellae from one septum to see them. The interbranchial is a deep portion of the constrictor musculature, and the superficial branchial constrictor lies lateral to it. Next snip frontally and completely through the middle of a septum and locate the cartilaginous arch. The small circular section of muscle that has been cut is the **branchial adductor**, a short muscle extending between the ceratobranchial and epibranchial that represents a deep derivative of the constrictor sheet (Figure 3.20).

Using a probe, separate the epibranchial musculature from the cucullaris and levator hyomandibulae and push these regions apart to expose the anterior cardinal sinus, which is part of the cardiovascular system (Figure 3.21). On the medial side of the sinus lie the dorsal surfaces of the branchial arches. Pick away connective tissue to expose the muscles, but do not injure the nerves that lie in this region. Find two sets of small, thin muscles. The strap-like and elongated **dorsal interarcuals** lie between successive pharyngobranchial cartilages of branchial arches 1–4. Lateroventral to these lie the shorter and wider **lateral interarcuals**, which extend between the epibranchial and pharyngobranchial cartilages of each of branchial arches 1–4.

Hypobranchial Musculature

Return to the ventral surface (Figures 3.18 and 3.19). If you have not already cut through the interhyoideus, do so now and reflect it. The muscles visible between the hypaxial muscles and the lower jaw constitute nearly all the hypobranchial musculature. They may be divided into a prehyoid group, including the **coracomandibular**, and posthyoid group (see later). The coracomandibular is the long, midventral, and nearly cylindrical muscle exposed on reflection of the intermandibularis and interhyoideus. It extends between the lower jaw and the muscles posterior to it, which attach to the coracoid bar.

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

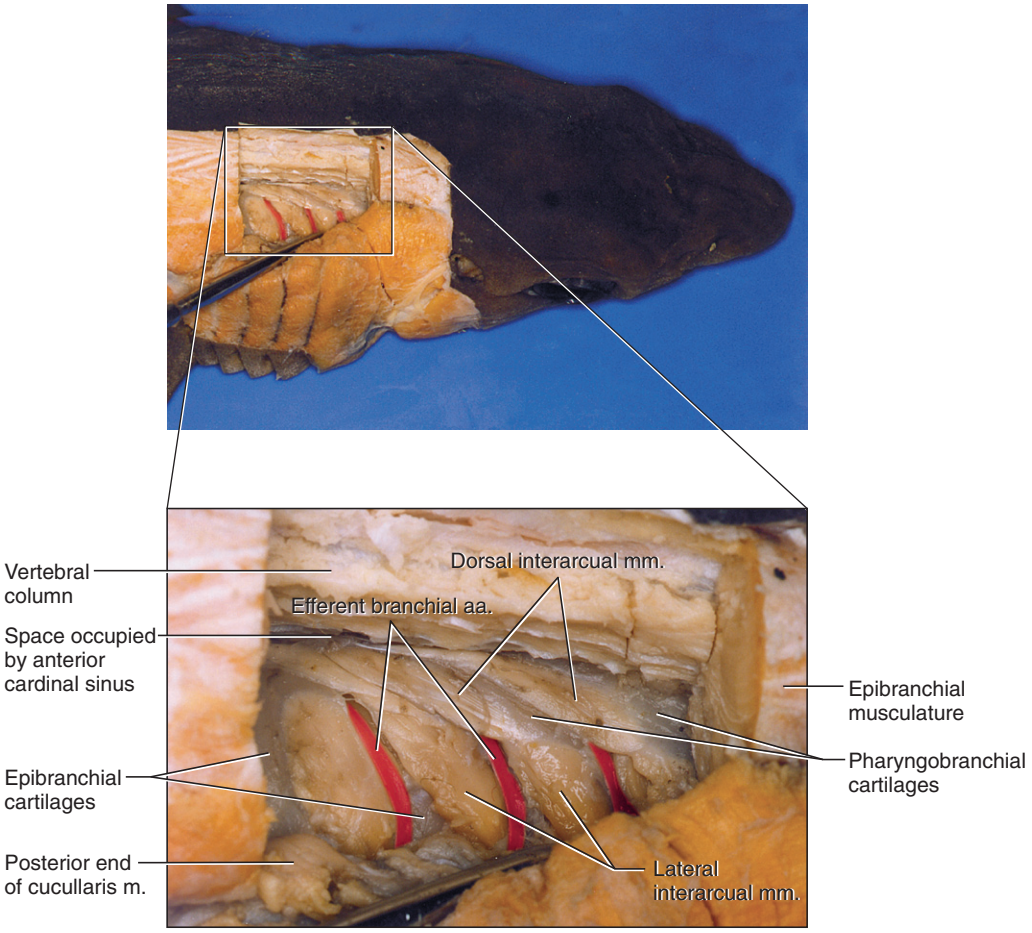


FIGURE 3.21 Blowup of branchiomeric and epibranchial musculature of the shark in right lateral view. The epibranchial musculature has been dissected to reveal the interarcual muscles.

Cut the coracomandibular near its posterior end, reflect it, and note the dark, pinkish **thyroid gland** deep to the muscle's anterior end (Figure 3.19).

The remaining muscles belong to the posthyoid group. Deep to the coracomandibular lie the elongated, paired **coracohyoids** (Figures 3.18 and 3.19), which insert anteriorly on the basihyal. Posteriorly the coracohyoids are continuous with the broader, nearly triangular **coracoarcuals**, which lie medially between the ventral superficial branchial constrictors and anterior to the hypaxial musculature. Cut the ventral superficial branchial constrictor by snipping, on the same side that is skinned, from the last pharyngeal slit to (but *not* through) the posterolateral end of the coracoarcual. Then dissect forward between the coracoarcual and ventral superficial constrictor to separate these muscular regions. Spread them apart to reveal the **coracobranchials** (Figure 3.19), a series of five muscles that fan out from the coracoid bar, coracoarcuals and the walls of the pericardial cavity to the ceratobranchial and basibranchial cartilages. Do not attempt to further dissect these muscles at this point; doing so would require the removal and destruction of structures that have yet to be seen.

The names of the hypobranchial muscles contain the common component "coraco-" which refers to the coracoid bar, but only the coracoarcuals and parts of the coracobranchials attach directly to this structure. The others gain an indirect attachment by way of the coracoarcuals.

Key Terms: Muscular System

adductor mandibulae
afferent spiracular artery
branchial adductor
coracoarcuals
coracobranchials
coracohyoids
coracomandibular
cucullaris
dorsal hyoid constrictor
dorsal interarcuals

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

dorsal superficial branchial constrictors
epaxial musculature
epibranchial
horizontal skeletogenous septum
hyomandibular nerve
hypaxial musculature
interbranchial
interhyoideus
intermandibularis
lateral interarcuals
levator hyomandibulae
levator palatoquadrati
linea alba
myomeres
myosepta
pectoral abductor
pectoral adductor
raphe
siphon
spiracularis
thyroid gland
ventral hyoid constrictor
ventral superficial branchial constrictors

SECTION IV: DIGESTIVE AND RESPIRATORY SYSTEMS

Anteriorly, the digestive system includes the **mouth**, **oral cavity**, and **pharynx**, but these structures also function in the respiratory system. To observe them, make a frontal cut, using scissors, through the gills on the side of the head that was skinned for the muscles. Insert the scissors into the angle of the mouth and cut posteriorly through the gills. Stop once you have cut into the last branchial slit. Swing open the floor of the mouth as far as you can. Refer to Figure 3.22 but do not make a transverse cut through the ventral body wall at this time.

The mouth is the opening into the oral cavity. The oral cavity is bounded anteriorly by the **teeth**. Its floor is formed by the **primary tongue**, which is not a true tongue as occurs in tetrapods. The boundary between the oral cavity and pharynx is not clearly defined in the adult, though the oral cavity is often considered to end at the posterior margin of the teeth. The pharynx is considered the region into which the pharyngeal slits lead. Posteriorly it narrows into the **esophagus**, which leads to the **stomach**. Observe the five **internal pharyngeal slits**. **Gill rakers** are the finger-like structures projecting across the slit that help keep food from escaping through the slits or damaging the **gills**, which are the organs of gas exchange. The **spiracle**, a smaller and dorsally placed opening, lies in front of the first pharyngeal slit. The spiracle, along with the mouth, allows water to enter the pharynx, from which it passes out through the pharyngeal slits. The spiracle is larger and more important as a passageway for water in bottom-dwelling skates and rays.

Examine the branchial region along the cut you made to open the mouth. Note the four **interbranchial septa**, the partitions that separate the five pharyngeal slits. The anterior and posterior surfaces of each septum bear a series of nearly parallel, ridge-like **primary gill lamellae** (Figures 3.20 and 3.22). A septum (with its associated supporting structures) that has lamellae on both anterior and posterior surfaces is a complete gill or **holobranch**. A **hemibranch** has lamellae on only one side of the septum, as occurs with the hyoid arch, which bears lamellae only on its posterior wall. Keep in mind that holobranch and hemibranch are used with reference to septa and not to pharyngeal slits.

Reexamine a septum in section (Figures 3.20 and 3.23). It consists of a medial cartilaginous support, the branchial arch. Review the cartilages of the arch if necessary. A **branchial adductor muscle** lies medial to the arch. Extending laterally is a muscular wall, the **interbranchial muscle**, supporting the interbranchial septum. Cartilaginous **gill rays** (see Figure 3.20) extend from the arch into, and help support, the interbranchial muscle. Farther laterally, the septum is completed by the superficial branchial constrictor muscles. A **pretrematic artery** lies at the base of the lamellae on the posterior surface of the septum, and a **posttrematic artery** lies anteriorly. These names are used with reference to a pharyngeal slit, *trema* being the Ancient Greek word for hole or slit. Probe the septum for **cross trunks** linking these arteries. An **afferent branchial artery** lies near the middle of the septum between the pretrematic and posttrematic arteries.

The **coelom** or body cavity includes the **pericardial cavity** anteriorly and the **pleuroperitoneal cavity** posteriorly. They are separated by the **transverse septum**, lying very near the pectoral girdle. The pericardial cavity, which contains the heart, will be considered later together with the cardiovascular system. The pleuroperitoneal cavity contains the viscera, mainly digestive organs, and other structures.

To gain access to the pleuroperitoneal cavity, make a longitudinal cut, slightly to one side of the midline, from the posterior aspect of the pectoral girdle to the base of the tail. In doing so, cut through the puboischiadic bar and to one side of the cloaca. Then make a transverse cut on either side to produce four flaps as shown in Figure 3.24.

Note that you have cut through several layers to open the pleuroperitoneal cavity: skin, musculature, and **parietal peritoneum**, the epithelium that lines the body cavity (Figure 3.24). The epithelium covering the organs within the cavity is the **visceral peritoneum**. The organs are suspended from the body wall or connected to each other via membranes termed **mesenteries**. Any

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

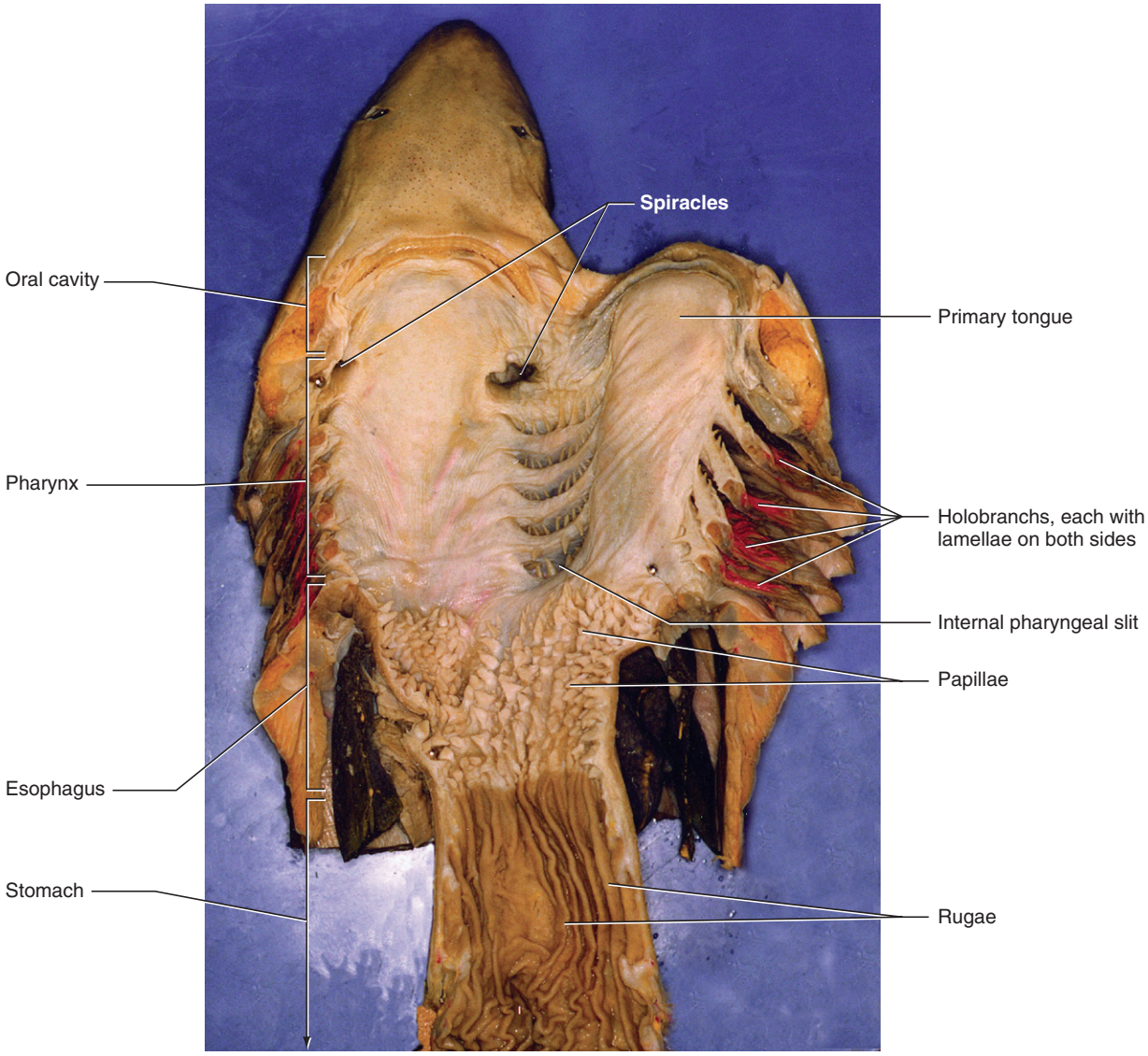


FIGURE 3.22 Anterior portion of the shark in ventral view. The right side visceral arches have been cut through to reflect the floor of the oral cavity and pharynx. The esophagus and stomach have also been cut and reflected.

membrane in the peritoneal cavity that supports an organ may be called a mesentery. One mesentery is simply called *the* **mesentery**, and you will meet that one later.

First, examine the viscera. The most conspicuous is the **liver**, which occupies most of the anterior part of the cavity. **Right** and **left lobes** extend posteriorly on either side. Do not cut off these lobes (otherwise, you will have to contend with a continuous leakage of the oil present in the liver that reduces the shark's specific gravity). A small **median lobe** extends for a short distance between them and contains an elongated **gall bladder** extending along the right margin.

Spread the lobes of the liver to expose the viscera completely. Entering the cavity dorsal to the liver is the esophagus. It continues posteriorly as the stomach, a large J-shaped organ. There is no external distinction between the stomach and esophagus. Internally, however, the esophagus bears finger-like projections or **papillae**, whereas the stomach bears longitudinal ridges termed **rugae** (Figures 3.22 and 3.25). Slit open a portion of the esophagus and stomach to observe these structures. Note the possible presence of stomach contents, which could range from krill to octopus to fish.

The main part of the stomach is the **body**. The smaller, narrower, posterior part is the **pyloric region**. It constricts at the **pylorus**, which marks the separation between the stomach and intestine. Two organs lie near the junction of the stomach and intestine. The triangular **spleen** is the large, dark organ at the posterior end of

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

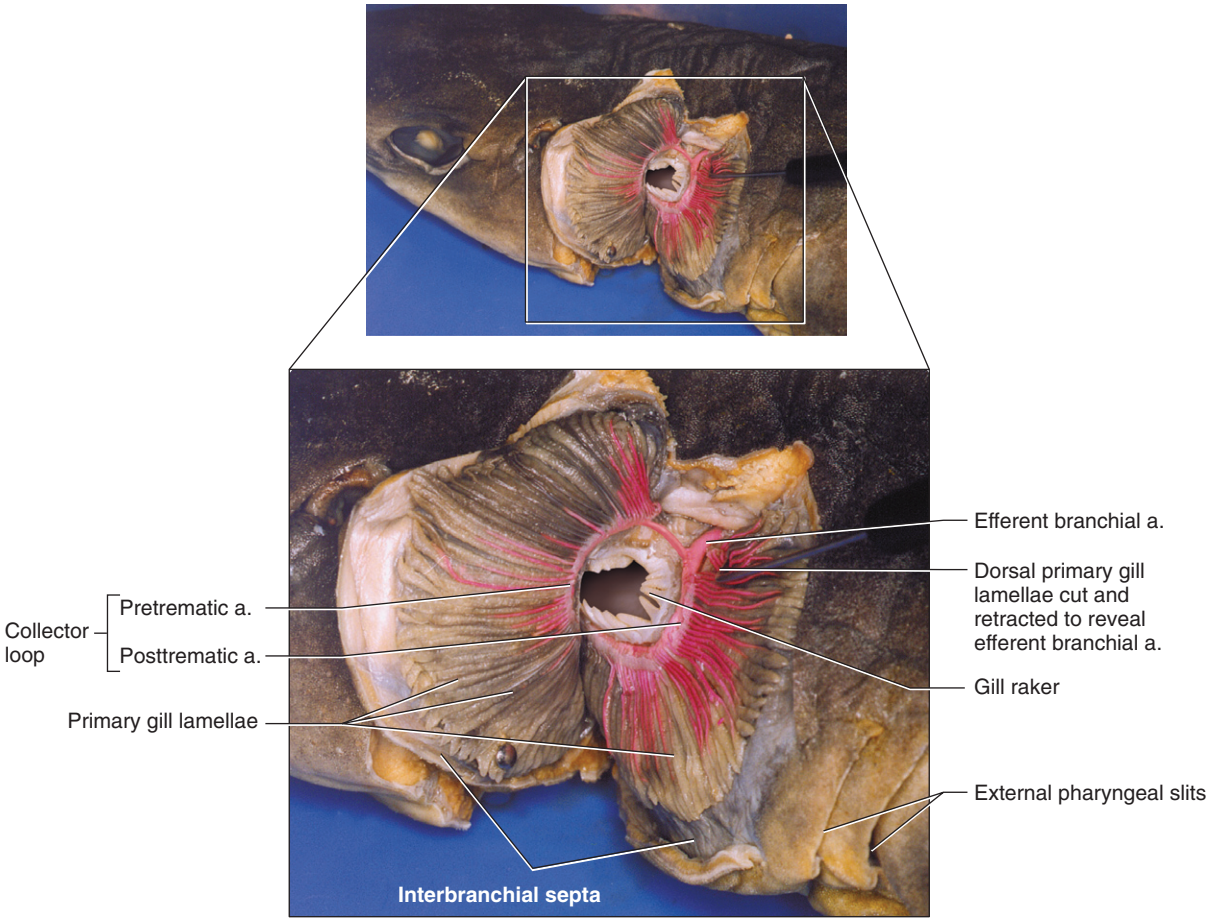


FIGURE 3.23 Branchial region of the shark in dorsolateral view, with blowup showing detail of pretrematic and posttrematic surfaces of successive interbranchial septa.

the stomach. It is not part of the digestive system, but belongs to the cardiovascular system. The **pancreas** consists of two parts linked by a narrow **isthmus**. A flattened, oval **ventral lobe** (Figure 3.24) adheres to and almost completely hides the ventral surface of the **duodenum**, the anterior segment of the intestine. The narrow, elongated **dorsal lobe** of the pancreas extends posteriorly.

The intestine of the shark is subdivided into a short **duodenum**, a **valvular intestine**, and a narrow **colon** (Figures 3.24 and 3.25). The valvular intestine bears a **spiral valve**, an internal subdivision that increases the effective length of the intestine. Slit open the intestine to see the valve (Figure 3.25). The colon, lacking a spiral valve, extends from the valvular intestine. It is joined by the salt-excreting **digitiform gland** (Figures 3.24 and 3.25) before continuing into the cloaca as the **rectum** (Figure 3.25).

Other structures in the pleuroperitoneal cavity should be noted only briefly at this time. The **gonads**, either paired **testes** or **ovaries**, lie anteriorly, dorsal to the liver (see Figures 3.33 and 3.34). The **kidneys** extend longitudinally along the dorsal wall of the cavity on either side of the midsagittal plane as two narrow strips. These organs, as well as various ducts associated with the urogenital system, will be considered later.

Next, consider the mesenteries. Pull the digestive tract ventrally and to the animal's left. Note the dorsal mesentery, the thin, translucent sheet that suspends the gut middorsally (Figure 3.26). It is subdivided into various parts. The **mesogaster** (or greater omentum) extends to the esophagus and stomach. The mesentery (in the limited sense of this word; as noted earlier, it can refer to any membrane that supports viscera) supports the anterior part of the intestine. Gently probe the mesentery and note that it arises from the mesogaster. Pull the digitiform gland ventrally to observe the **mesorectum**. Finally, gently pull the spleen posteriorly and note that it is attached to the stomach via the **gastrosplenic ligament**.

In the embryo a complete ventral mesentery is also present, but only portions of this membrane remain in

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

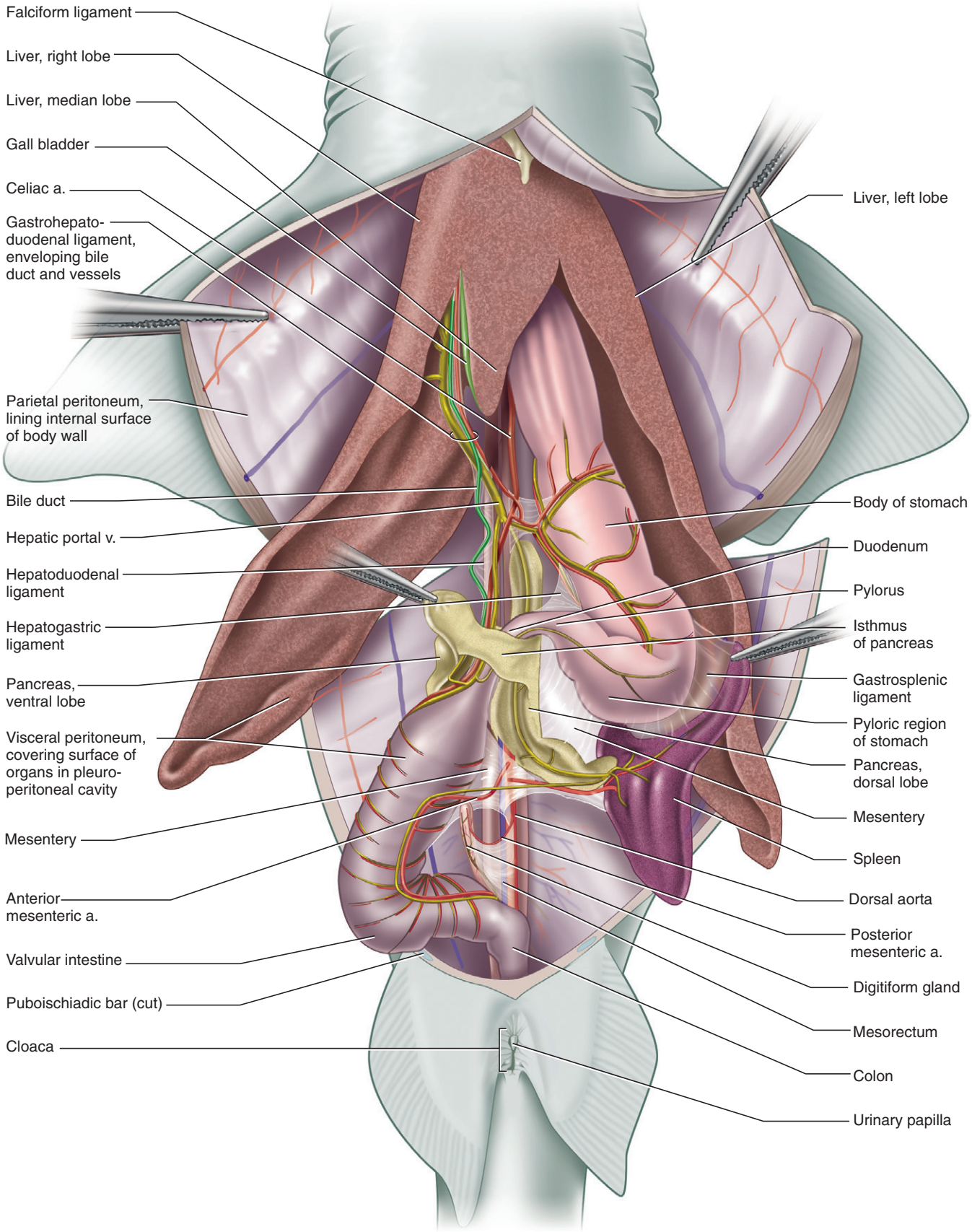


FIGURE 3.24 Pleuroperitoneal cavity of the shark in ventral view, showing viscera and vessels.

Downloaded From Vet-e-Books.com

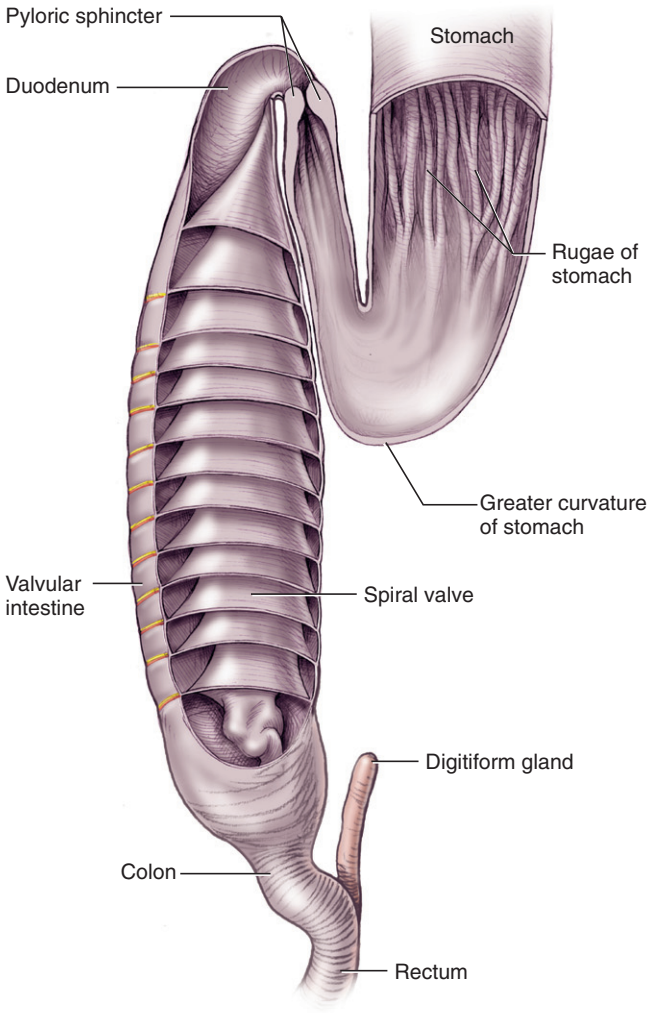


FIGURE 3.25 Cut away view of the valvular intestine and posterior end of stomach of the shark in ventral view, revealing the structure of the spiral valve.

the adult. Spread the median and right lobes of the liver. A ribbon-like strand, the **gastrohepatoduodenal ligament** (or lesser omentum) will be seen extending from the liver toward the gut. Near the liver it is a single bundle, carrying the **bile duct** and supporting blood vessels between the liver and gut. As it approaches the pyloric region, it divides into a **hepatoduodenal ligament** that carries the bile duct to the duodenum, and a **hepatogastric ligament** that passes into the adjacent portions of the body and pyloric region of the stomach. Look between these ligaments and note that the pancreas is supported by a part of the dorsal mesentery. The **falciform ligament** extends between the anteroventral surface of the liver and the midventral body wall. This short mesentery also supports the common openings of the oviducts, described later. Other mesenteries supporting the reproductive tract are discussed with the urogenital system.

Key Terms: Digestive and Respiratory Systems

afferent branchial artery
bile duct
body of **stomach**
branchial adductor muscle
coelom
colon
cross trunks between **pretrematic** and **posttrematic arteries**
digitiform gland (rectal gland)
duodenum
esophagus
falciform ligament
gall bladder
gastrohepatoduodenal ligament (lesser omentum)
gastrosplenic ligament (lienogastric ligament)
gill rakers
gill rays
gills
gonads
hemibranch
hepatoduodenal ligament
hepatogastric ligament
holobranch
interbranchial muscle
interbranchial septa
internal pharyngeal slits
isthmus of **pancreas**
kidneys
liver, left, median, and **right lobes**
mesenteries—general sense
mesentery—specific sense
mesogaster (greater omentum)
mesorectum
mouth
oral cavity
ovaries
pancreas, dorsal and **ventral lobes**
papillae (sing., **papilla**)
parietal peritoneum
pericardial cavity
pharynx
pleuroperitoneal cavity
posttrematic artery
pretrematic artery
primary gill lamellae
primary tongue
pyloric region of **stomach**
pylorus
rectum
rugae (sing., **ruga**)

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

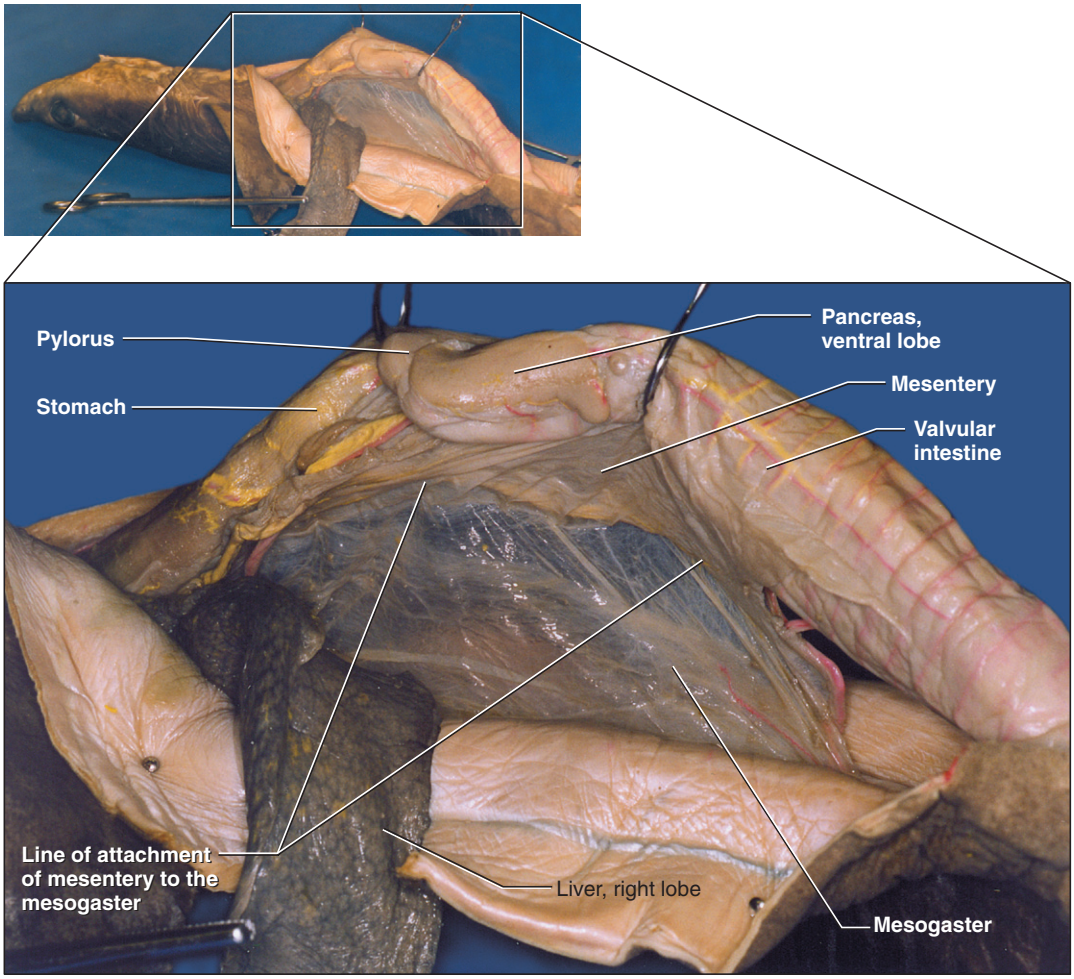


FIGURE 3.26 Pleuroperitoneal cavity of the shark in right lateral view, with intestine pulled ventrally and liver reflected to expose mesenteries.

spiracle
spiral valve
spleen
stomach
testes (sing., **testis**)
transverse septum
valvular intestine
visceral peritoneum

SECTION V: CARDIOVASCULAR SYSTEM

Heart and Arterial Circulation

Heart

The pericardial cavity contains the **heart**, the muscular pump that drives the blood around the cardiovascular system. To expose the pericardial cavity, continue the incision into the pleuroperitoneal cavity forward through the coracoid bar and the hypobranchial musculature. Spread the flaps to reveal the heart (Figure 3.27). Note the **parietal pericardium**, the shiny epithelium lining the cavity, and the **visceral pericardium**, covering the heart. The **transverse septum** separating the pleuroperitoneal and pericardial cavities is incomplete; they communicate through a small opening, the pericardioperitoneal canal, that lies ventral to the esophagus.

The **ventricle** is the most conspicuous structure of the heart. It is a large muscular chamber; coronary arteries, supplying the heart, will be seen on its surface. Lift the ventricle's posterior end to expose the **sinus venosus**. The sinus venosus is the thin, triangular, posterior, sac-like chamber attached to the transverse septum. It receives venous blood from the body and passes it anteriorly into the **atrium**. The atrium is large and appears to envelop the ventricle, often giving the impression that there are two. This single atrium passes its blood to the ventricle. Anteriorly the ventricle narrows into the fourth chamber of the heart, the muscular, tube-like **conus arteriosus**, through which blood leaves the heart

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

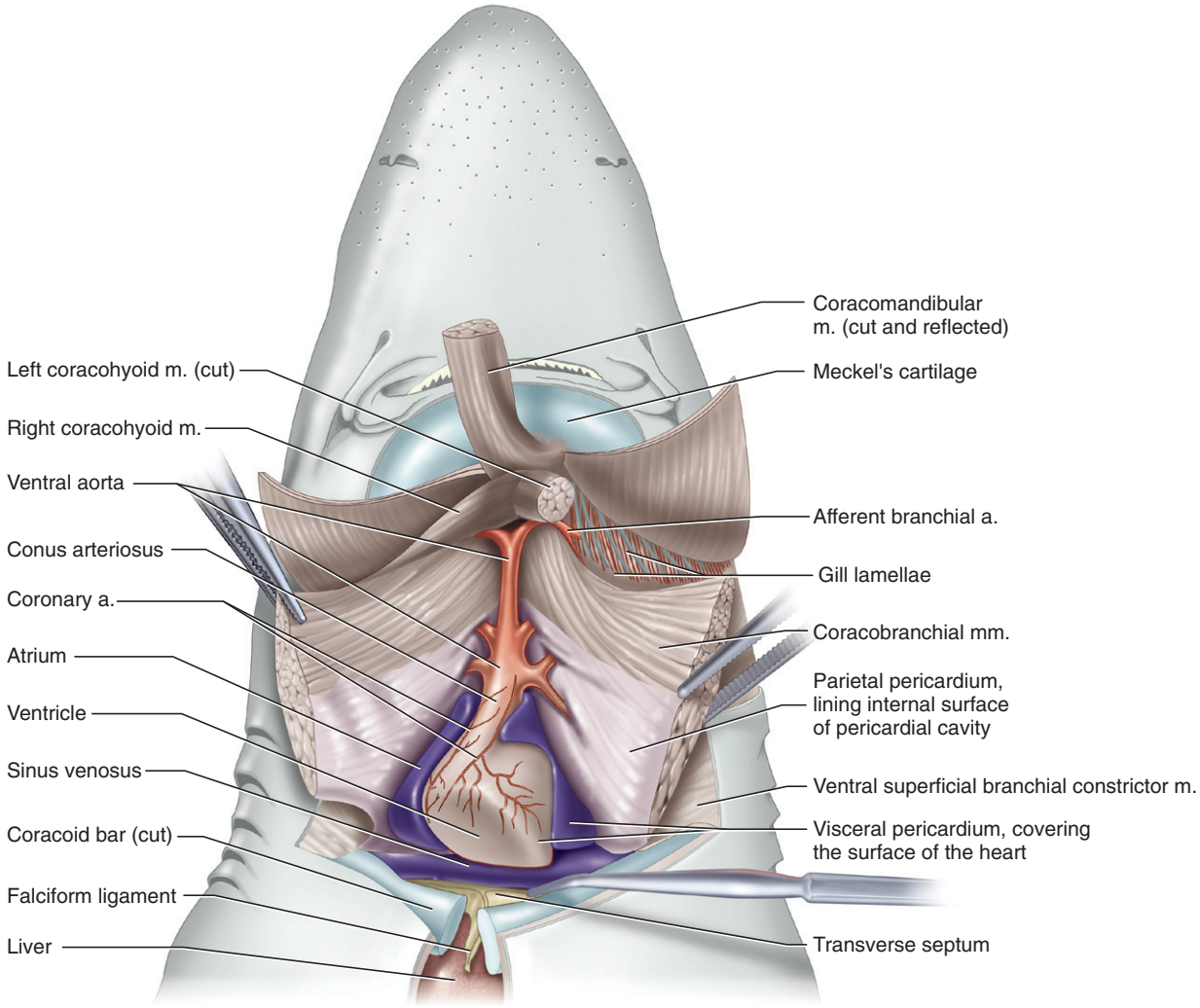


FIGURE 3.27 Head and branchial region of the shark in ventral view, with the hypobranchial musculature dissected and reflected to expose the heart and ventral aorta.

(but see Durán et al., 2008) and enters the **ventral aorta**. Note that the ventral aorta and its branches are not typically injected with colored latex.

Arteries of the Branchial Region

Once blood leaves the heart, it passes through the ventral aorta and the **afferent branchial arteries** on its way to being oxygenated in the gills. To trace this arterial route, continue dissecting forward from the conus arteriosus. The ventral aorta gives off five pairs of afferent branchial arteries. The most posterior are the fourth and fifth afferent branchial arteries, which may arise separately or by a short common trunk. The third afferent branchials arise farther anteriorly. Trace the ventral aorta anteriorly to its bifurcation. Each of the divisions divides again into the first and second afferent branchial arteries. Follow the arteries as far as possible without causing damage into the interbranchial septa. The arteries pass between bundles of the coracobranchial muscles (Figures 3.19 and 3.27).

Blood passing through the afferent branchial arteries enters the gill lamellae, where gas exchange occurs. The oxygenated blood is then collected again so it may be sent to the rest of the body. To view the system that recollects the blood, delicately remove the membrane lining the roof of the oral cavity and pharynx and the area around the uncut internal pharyngeal slits (Figures 3.28–3.30). Oxygenated blood is initially collected from the lamellae into the **pretrematic** and **posttrematic** arteries, where noted on page 45. These arteries join dorsally and ventrally to form a complete **collector loop** around a pharyngeal slit (Figures 3.23 and 3.30). Note that there are only four collector loops, as the last slit has only a pretrematic artery. From the dorsal end of each loop, an **efferent branchial artery** carries blood away from a gill (Figure 3.28). The four pairs of arteries pass

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

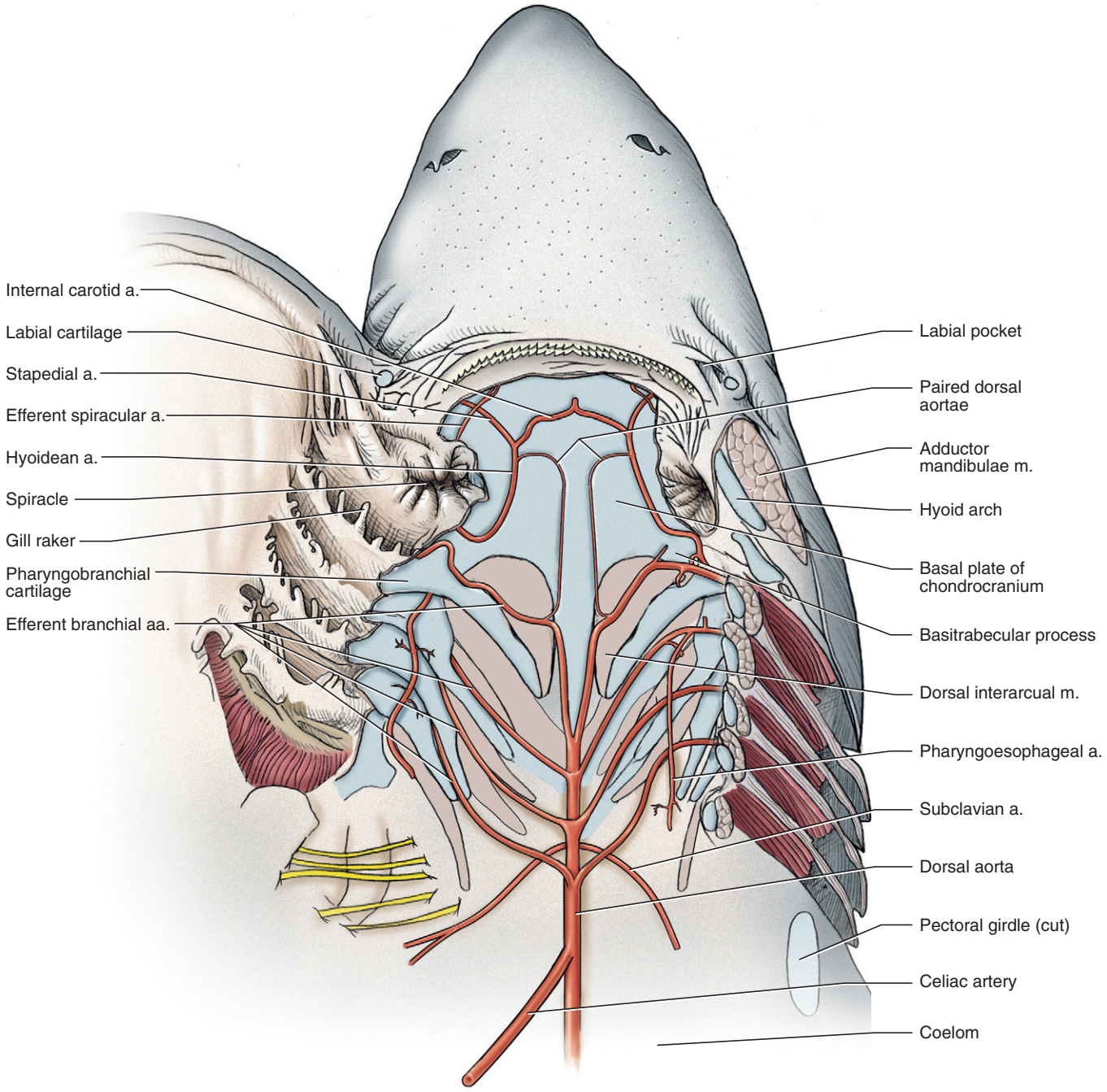


FIGURE 3.28 Roof of the oral cavity and pharynx in the shark in ventral view, showing the pattern of the arterial circulation. The left side visceral arches have been cut. The floor of the oral cavity and of the pharynx have been swung open.

posteromedially and empty into the **dorsal aorta** on the roof of the pharynx. The dorsal aorta passes posteriorly to supply most of the body with oxygenated blood. Its branches are considered below.

Examine first the vessels that supply the head. A **hyoidean artery** arises from the anterodorsal part of the first collector loop, just anterior to the first efferent branchial artery, and extends anteriorly (Figures 3.28 and 3.30). **Paired dorsal aortae** arise from the first efferent branchial arteries. They pass anteriorly and then veer laterally and join a hyoidean artery. The union of the hyoidean and a paired dorsal aorta forms the **internal carotid artery**. The internal carotid extends anteriorly a short distance and, near the level of the spiracle, gives rise to the **stapedial artery**, which extends anterolaterally a short distance before passing into the chondrocranium. Past the origin of the stapedial artery, the internal carotids from either side extend anteromedially and

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

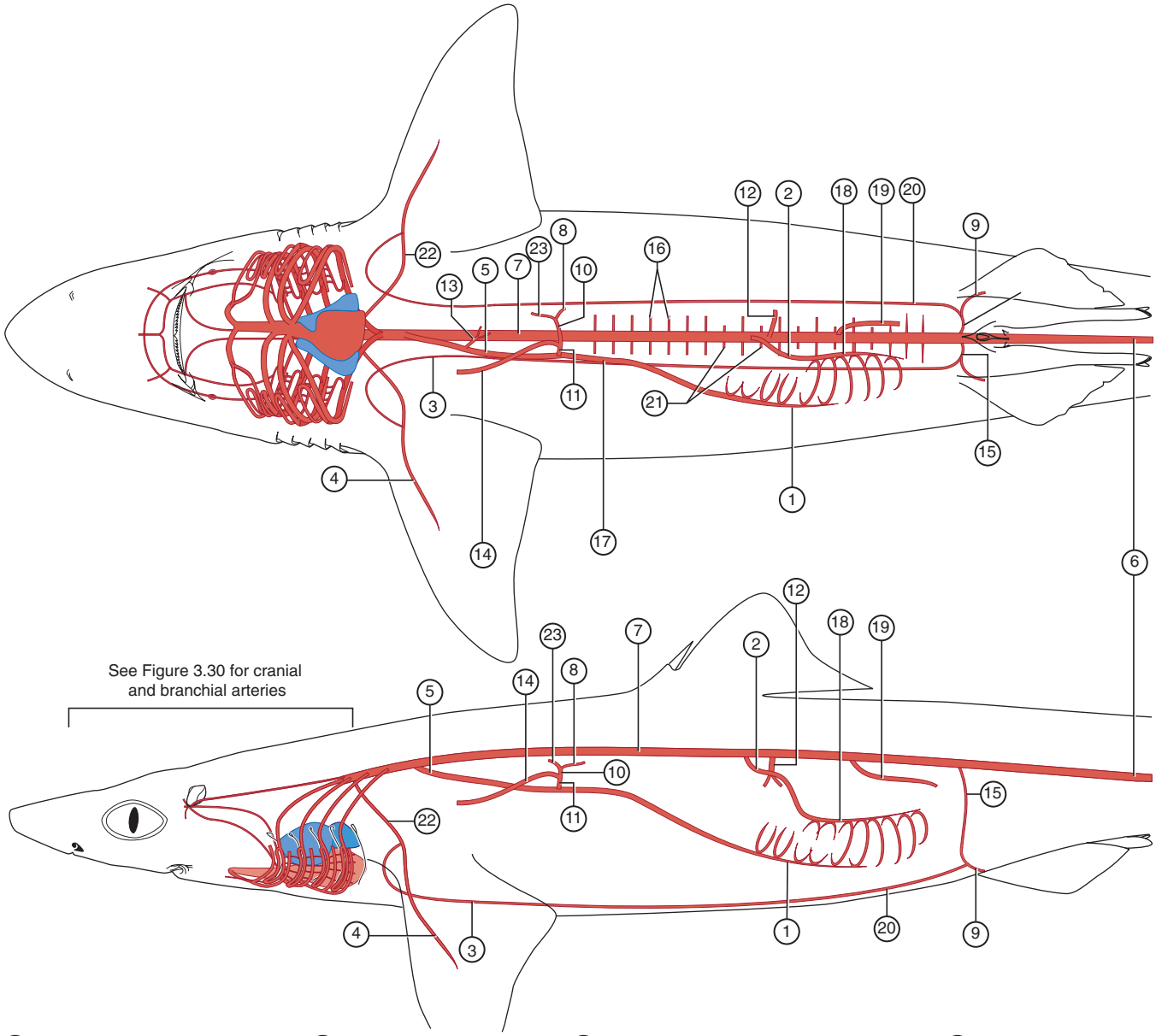


FIGURE 3.29 Schematic illustration showing the pattern of the arterial system of the shark superimposed on ventral (top figure) and left lateral (bottom figure) views of the body outline.

meet middorsally to form a single vessel that enters the chondrocranium.

The **afferent spiracular artery** arises from near the middle of the pretrematic artery of the first loop. Do not dissect for it here. It was noted earlier (page 40; Figure 3.17) as it passed deep to the hyomandibular nerve on the levator hyomandibulae muscle. Return to the dissection of the muscles, and trace the afferent spiracular artery anteriorly into the pseudobranch of the spiracle and posteriorly into the collector loop. The **efferent spiracular artery** collects blood from the pseudobranch. Find it on the roof of the oral cavity. It extends anteromedially,

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

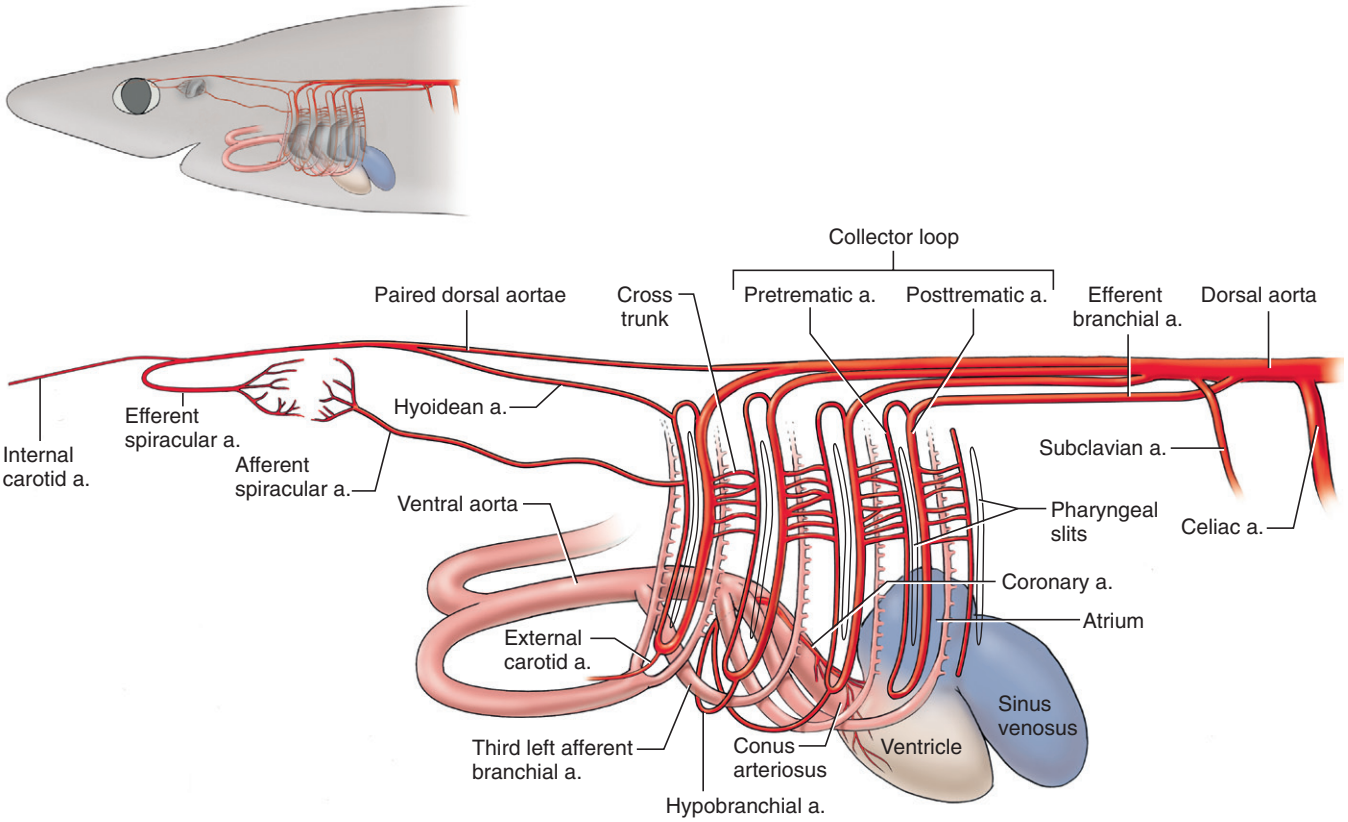


FIGURE 3.30 Schematic illustration showing the pattern of the arterial system in the head and branchial region of the shark in left lateral view.

passing ventral to the stapedial artery, and enters the chondrocranium. The lower jaw is supplied by the **external carotid artery**, which arises from the anteromedial corner of the first collector loop (Figure 3.30).

The **hypobranchial artery** (Figure 3.30) usually arises from the ventral end of the second collector loop, but branches from the other loops may contribute to it. The hypobranchial passes posteriorly to the conus arteriosus, where it divides into the **coronary** and the **pericardial arteries**. The former is clearly observed on the conus arteriosus and ventricle (Figures 3.27 and 3.30), the latter on the wall of the pericardial cavity. The narrow, sinuous **pharyngoesophageal artery** arises from the second efferent branchial artery and extends posteriorly to give off branches to the pharynx and esophagus (Figure 3.28). The rest of the blood flow passing back to the body goes through the dorsal aorta, which gives off several large branches.

Branches of the Dorsal Aorta

The paired **subclavian arteries** are the first major branches of the dorsal aorta (Figures 3.28–3.30). These arise usually between the third and fourth efferent branchial arteries. Initially they pass posterolaterally. At the pectoral girdle each subclavian veers lateroventrally, passing deep to the posterior cardinal sinus, along the scapular process. Follow the artery on the side for which the sinus was dissected. It gives rise to two main branches, the **brachial** and **anterior ventrolateral arteries**, but it is difficult to neatly dissect the origins of these vessels. The brachial supplies the pectoral fin (do not confuse its spelling with *branchial*: brachial = arm, branchial = gill). To find it, pull the pectoral fin away from the body and cut through the skin between the body and posteromedial surface of the fin. This will free the fin from the body. Picking away the connective tissue from the medial surface of the fin will soon reveal the brachial artery as it passes along the medial cartilaginous fin support. Trace the artery back toward the subclavian to note the position of its origin. After the origin of the brachial, the anterior ventrolateral artery continues, on the inside of the body wall, passing first slightly anteriorly and then curving markedly posteriorly, about midway between the lateral and midventral lines. Follow it as it continues back, giving off branches that supply the myomeres, and eventually anastomoses with the posterior ventrolateral artery (a branch of the iliac artery; see page 56).

After giving off the subclavian arteries, the dorsal aorta continues posteriorly into the pleuroperitoneal

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

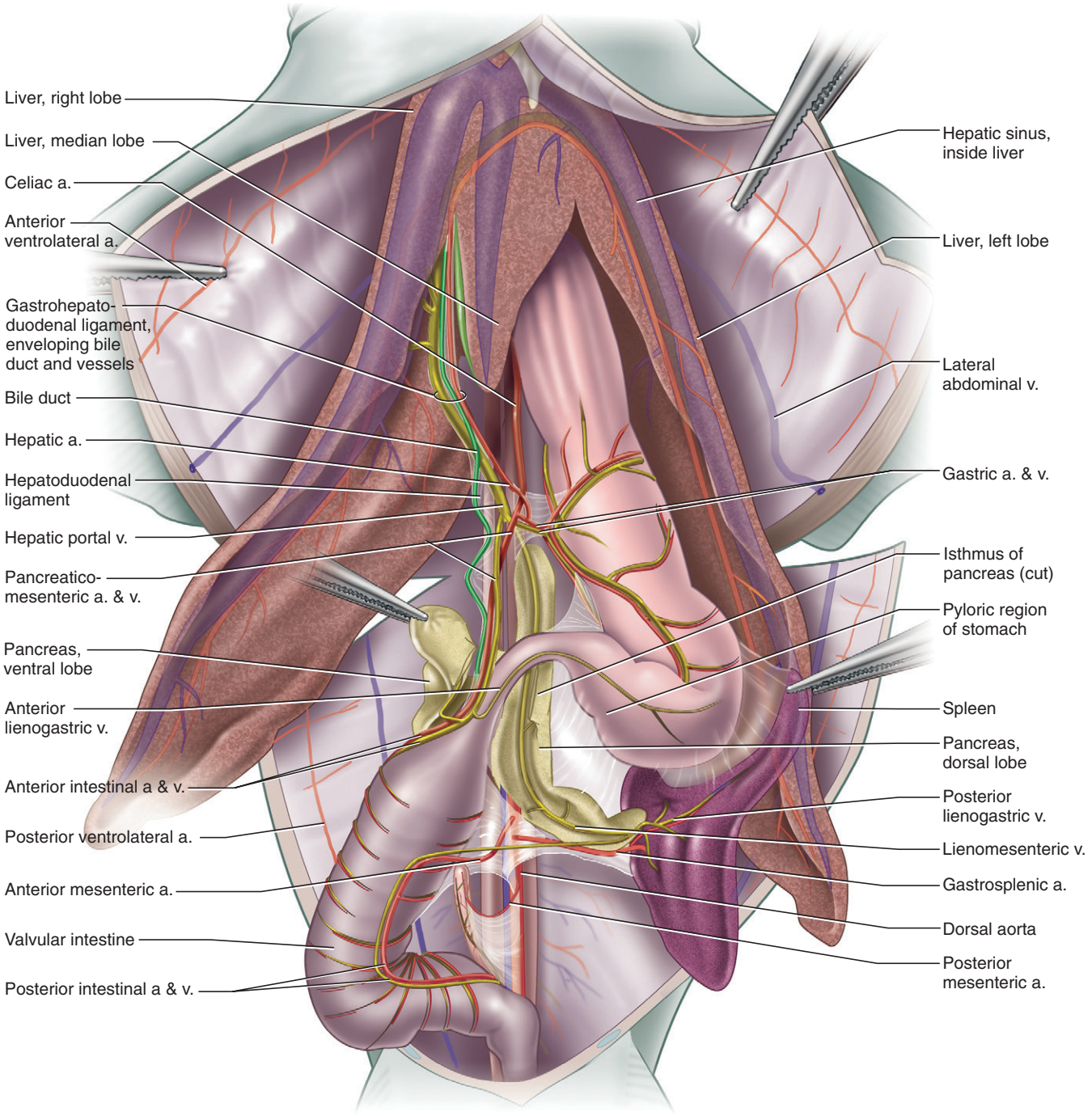


FIGURE 3.31 Pleuroperitoneal cavity of the shark in ventral view, showing the pattern of the arteries and veins.

cavity. Return to this cavity to examine the following vessels (Figures 3.29 and 3.31). The first branch of the dorsal aorta in the cavity is the **celiac artery**, a large, unpaired vessel that continues posteriorly along the right side of the stomach. Near its origin, it gives rise to a pair of **testicular** (in males) or **ovarian** (in females) **arteries** (Figure 3.29) to supply the gonads. The celiac artery continues to the anterior tip of the dorsal lobe of the pancreas, where it divides into the **pancreatico-mesenteric** and **gastrohepatic arteries**. The latter is a very short branch (sometimes altogether missing) that subdivides almost immediately into a long, narrow **hepatic artery** and a short, wider **gastric artery**. The hepatic artery turns anteriorly toward the liver, accompanied by the hepatic portal vein (considered later) and the anterior part of the bile duct. The gastric artery

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

passes to the stomach, where it branches into the **dorsal** and **ventral gastric arteries** to the dorsal and ventral parts of the stomach, respectively. Return to the pancreaticomesenteric artery and trace it posteriorly as it passes dorsal to the pylorus and onto the ventral side of the intestine as the **anterior intestinal artery**. Before doing so it gives off several smaller branches near the pylorus (which you do not need to name).

Trace the dorsal aorta farther posteriorly. At about the level of the spleen, two arteries arise close together. The anterior one is the **anterior mesenteric artery**, which extends onto the intestine as the **posterior intestinal artery**. The posterior artery is the **gastrosplenic artery**, which mainly supplies the spleen and the posterior part of the stomach. Note that the anterior mesenteric and gastrosplenic arteries lie in the posterior edge of the greater omentum. Sometimes these arteries come off in reverse order (i.e., the gastrosplenic is the more anterior); trace them to identify the arteries in your specimen. After a short distance the dorsal aorta gives off a **posterior mesenteric artery**, which passes along the anterior edge of the mesorectum and onto the digitiform gland.

The final branches of the dorsal aorta are the paired **iliac arteries** and the **caudal artery** (Figure 3.29). At about the level of the cloaca, the iliac arteries arise and pass posterolaterally dorsal to the kidneys. They emerge from under the kidneys and extend toward the pelvic fins. Before entering the fin, each iliac branches into the **femoral artery**, which enters the fin, and the **posterior ventrolateral artery**, which turns anteriorly along the body wall and eventually unites with the anterior ventrolateral artery, noted earlier. The caudal artery is the posterior continuation of the dorsal aorta into the tail. Finally, the dorsal aorta gives rise to numerous **intersegmental arteries** (Figures 3.29, 3.33, and 3.34) to the axial musculature. Free the lateral margin of a kidney and lift it to observe these arteries.

Venous Circulation

Hepatic Portal System

The hepatic portal system is the venous system that returns blood from the digestive tract and spleen to the liver (where raw nutrients in blood are processed before the blood returns to the heart). Essentially, it drains the structures supplied ultimately by the celiac (except for the gonads), anterior mesenteric, gastrosplenic, and posterior mesenteric arteries. Thus, the branches of the hepatic portal system closely follow many of the branches of these arteries, and it is convenient to study them following your identification of the arteries. In some specimens the hepatic portal system is injected with yellow latex, which greatly facilitates its study. You may follow its branches in an uninjected specimen, but also briefly examine a shark that has the system injected.

The main vessel of the hepatic portal system is the **hepatic portal vein** (Figures 3.31 and 3.32), a large vein that lies in the gastrohepatoduodenal ligament alongside the hepatic artery and anterior part of the bile duct. The hepatic portal vein is formed by the confluence of three main vessels, the **gastric**, **pancreaticomesenteric**, and **lienomesenteric veins**. They unite to form the hepatic portal vein near the anterior tip of the dorsal lobe of the pancreas. Recall that the celiac artery splits into its branches very near this point as well. Occasionally, the gastric and lienomesenteric veins join to form a very short vessel that then unites with the pancreaticomesenteric to form the hepatic portal vein.

The gastric vein accompanies the gastric artery onto the dorsal and ventral surfaces of the stomach. Follow the lienomesenteric vein as it extends along the dorsal lobe of the pancreas. Rotate the spleen toward the left to observe that the vein is formed by the confluence, near the posterior end of the dorsal lobe, of the quite short **posterior lienogastric vein** and the **posterior intestinal vein** (Figure 3.32). The former comes from the spleen and posterior part of the stomach (i.e., in parallel with the lienogastric artery), the latter from the posterior part of the intestine (recall that this region is supplied by the anterior mesenteric artery, which becomes the posterior intestinal artery). The pancreaticomesenteric vein accompanies the pancreaticomesenteric artery to the beginning of the intestine. Here it is formed by various tributaries. Among these are the **anterior intestinal** and the **anterior lienogastric veins** (Figure 3.32). As you might expect, the former vein extends parallel to the anterior intestinal artery. It is larger than the anterior lienogastric vein, which comes from the spleen and adjacent regions of the pyloric region of the stomach.

Renal Portal System

Blood from the tail passes through the kidneys via the renal portal system before returning, through the posterior cardinal veins and sinuses, to the heart. The main vessels of the renal portal system are the **caudal vein** and the **renal portal veins**. The latter arise through bifurcation of the caudal vein (Figure 3.32). The caudal vein passes anteriorly through the hemal arches of the vertebrae. Make a partial transverse section—deep enough to cut through the vertebrae—of the tail just posterior to the level of the cloaca. Note the caudal artery, which will be injected, lying in the dorsal part of the hemal arch. The caudal vein, which should not be injected, lies ventral to the artery (see Figure 3.6). Make additional partial sections, spaced about 1 cm apart, anterior to the first. As these sections are anterior to the cloaca, they will be at the level of the posterior end of the body cavity. Thus, cut deeply enough to go through the caudal artery and vein, but avoid cutting the kidneys,

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

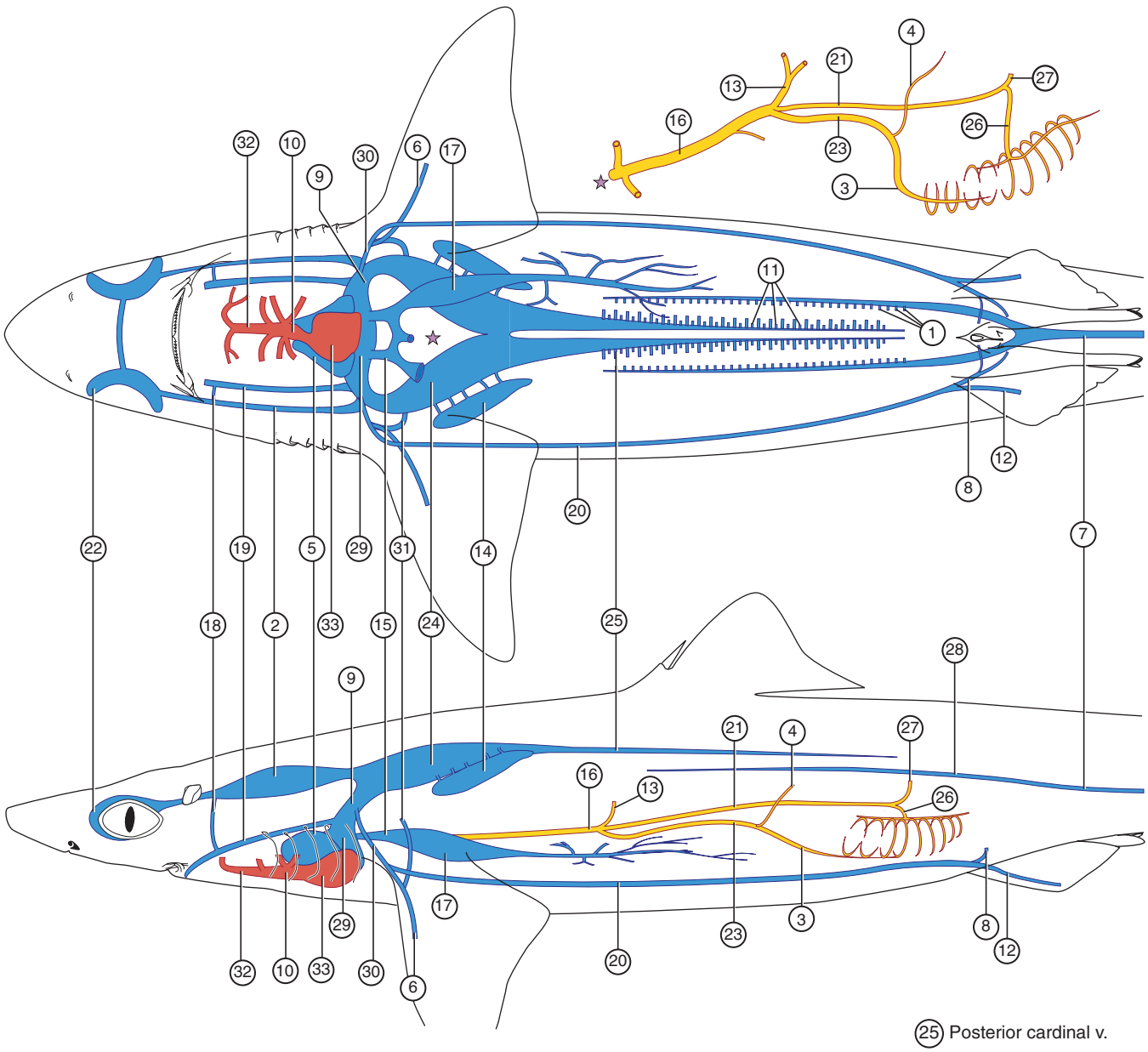


FIGURE 3.32 Schematic illustration showing the pattern of the venous system in the shark superimposed on ventral (top figure) and left lateral (bottom figure) views of the body outline. In the top figure, the hepatic portal system has been moved outside the body outline for clarity. The stars indicate the continuity between the hepatic portal system and the liver.

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

which lie ventral to and on either side of the vertebrae. You will thus be able to observe, near the posterior end of the kidneys, the bifurcation of the caudal vein into left and right renal portal veins. The latter continue anteriorly along the dorsolateral margins of the kidneys. **Afferent renal veins**, which you will not be able to observe (but see Fig. 3.32), branch from the renal portal veins and carry blood to the kidneys.

Systemic Veins

The systemic veins (Figure 3.32) are those that drain most of the body other than the viscera. Each side of the head and branchial region are drained mainly by the **anterior cardinal sinus** and **inferior jugular vein**. The anterior cardinal sinus, exposed earlier (see page 43 and Figure 3.21), is a relatively large space (compared with the diameter of most veins) lying dorsal to the pharyngobranchial cartilages. It was exposed during the dissection of the musculature to find the dorsal and lateral interarcual muscles (page 43). The sinus receives vessels that drain the eye, brain, and head, and leads blood posteriorly toward the heart. The **orbital sinus**, for example, surrounds the eye, but it is impractical to attempt to find it. The inferior jugular vein is a thin vessel draining the floor of the branchial region and you will not see it. On each side of the head, the anterior cardinal sinus and inferior jugular vein are connected via the **hyoidean sinus**. Pass a probe into the hyoidean sinus to determine its course. It lies along the posterior surface of the hyoid arch, and so it was sectioned during the cut made to open the oral cavity and pharynx.

Return to the heart, and slit the ventral wall of the sinus venosus from side to side. Gently probe its walls and note that there are a number of openings that lead into it. Probing its posterior wall just to either side of the midsagittal plane will lead into the opening of a **hepatic vein** and then into a **hepatic sinus,** which collects blood from the liver (Figures 3.31 and 3.32). Each posterolateral corner of the sinus venosus leads to a short though large vessel, the **common cardinal vein**, which receives the rest of the main vessels leading blood back to the heart (Figure 3.32). Pass a blunt, curved probe along the posterior wall of the common cardinal vein. It should lead, without much effort, into the posterior cardinal sinus (described later). The anterior cardinal sinus enters the common cardinal vein at about the same level, but it is much more difficult to probe for using this method. Here, merely note that the tip of the probe veers anteriorly and dorsally.

The other vessels that enter the common cardinal vein are the inferior jugular vein and the subclavian vein (Figure 3.32). Gently probing the anterior wall of the common cardinal vein will lead into the inferior jugular vein. You may follow its course by palpating for the probe in the hypobranchial region. The **subclavian vein** enters the common cardinal vein just lateral to the entrance of the inferior jugular.

Return to the pleuroperitoneal cavity. Lift the gonad and anterior part of the liver so the roof of the cavity may be observed. Lying dorsolateral to the esophagus is the posterior cardinal sinus (noted earlier), a large space bounded by a thin-walled membrane. It is filled with blue latex. Note that the sinus curves toward the dorsal midline. Slit open the sinus and carefully remove the latex. Probe gently to verify that this sinus is continuous with the sinus from the other side of the body. Veins from the gonads and esophagus empty into the sinus, but it is impractical to trace them.

Follow the sinus posteriorly, moving the viscera to one side as you do so (Figure 3.32). The sinus narrows into a **posterior cardinal vein**, which lies lateral to the dorsal aorta. The posterior cardinal veins appear as thin, translucent vessels because they are probably not injected, and may be difficult to discern. Do not confuse them with the oviducts of a female or the archinephric duct of immature males; these are thin, flattened, and straight structures that are easily identified because they continue anteriorly to lie on the posterior cardinal sinus. Note that the veins lie along the medial margins of the kidneys. They receive **efferent renal veins**, which collect blood from the kidneys and the segmentally arranged **intersegmental veins** (Figures 3.33 and 3.34) that drain blood from the body wall. These veins, however, may not be easily observable.

A **lateral abdominal vein** extends along the inside of the ventrolateral body wall on each side (Figures 3.31 and 3.32). Trace one of these veins posteriorly. It is formed, at about the level of the cloaca, by the confluence of the **cloacal vein** (from the cloaca) and the **femoral vein** (from the pelvic fin). Trace the lateral abdominal forward to the pectoral girdle. Here, you will observe a number of veins coming together. You will probably see a conspicuous **subscapular vein** (Figure 3.32), which essentially extends parallel to the subclavian artery (but does not share its name). Find the **brachial vein** on the medial surface of the fin, in company with the brachial artery. It will probably be uninjected. Trace the brachial vein toward the body. It unites with the lateral abdominal to form the subclavian vein, already noted as entering the common cardinal vein. The subscapular vein actually joins the brachial vein, but the brachial, subscapular, and lateral abdominal veins all come together very near each other in forming the subclavian vein, the vessel that continues the blood's journey toward the heart. Follow the subclavian vein as it arches dorsomedially.

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

Key Terms: Cardiovascular System

afferent branchial arteries
afferent renal veins
afferent spiracular artery
anterior cardinal sinus
anterior intestinal artery
anterior intestinal vein
anterior lienogastric artery
anterior mesenteric artery
anterior ventrolateral artery (anterior epigastric artery)
atrium
brachial artery
brachial vein
caudal artery
caudal vein
celiac artery
cloacal vein
collector loop
common cardinal vein
conus arteriosus
coronary artery
dorsal aorta
dorsal gastric artery
efferent branchial artery
efferent renal veins
efferent spiracular artery
external carotid artery
femoral artery
femoral vein
gastric artery
gastric vein
gastrohepatic arteries
gastrosplenic artery
heart
hepatic artery
hepatic portal vein
hepatic sinus
hepatic vein
hyoidean artery
hyoidean sinus
hypobranchial artery (commissural artery)
iliac arteries
inferior jugular vein
internal carotid artery
intersegmental arteries
intersegmental veins
lateral abdominal vein
lienomesenteric vein
orbital sinus
ovarian artery
paired dorsal aorta
pancreaticomesenteric artery
pancreaticomesenteric vein
parietal pericardium
pericardial artery
pharyngoesophageal artery
posterior cardinal vein
posterior intestinal artery
posterior intestinal vein
posterior lienogastric vein
posterior mesenteric artery
posterior ventrolateral artery (posterior epigastric artery)
posttrematic artery
pretrematic artery
renal portal veins
sinus venosus
stapedial artery
subclavian artery
subclavian vein
subscapular vein
testicular artery
transverse septum
ventral aorta
ventral gastric artery
ventricle
visceral pericardium

SECTION VI: UROGENITAL SYSTEM

As various ducts of the excretory and reproductive systems become associated during embryonic development, it is convenient to discuss these systems together. The kidneys and gonads, noted earlier (page 47), are the main organs of the excretory and reproductive systems, respectively. Manipulate the digestive tract and liver to observe them. The paired **kidneys** are long, narrow structures on either side of the dorsal aorta on the roof of the body cavity (Figures 3.33 and 3.34). They extend nearly the length of the cavity. As they lie dorsal to the parietal peritoneum lining the pleuroperitoneal cavity, the kidneys are retroperitoneal. The paired and elongated gonads, **testes** (sing., **testis**) in the male and **ovaries** (sing., **ovary**) in the female, lie dorsal to the liver in the pleuroperitoneal cavity. Note the **caudal ligament** between the posterior ends of the kidneys. It arises from the vertebrae and passes to the tail. The posterior mesenteric artery pierces the ligament on its way from the dorsal aorta to the **digitiform gland**.

Male Urogenital System

The kidney of the male (Figure 3.33) has two distinct functional parts. The anterior part is related to sperm transport. It includes tubules that help transport sperm in the most anterior part of the kidney, often referred to as the **epididymis**, and tubules that form secretions that

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

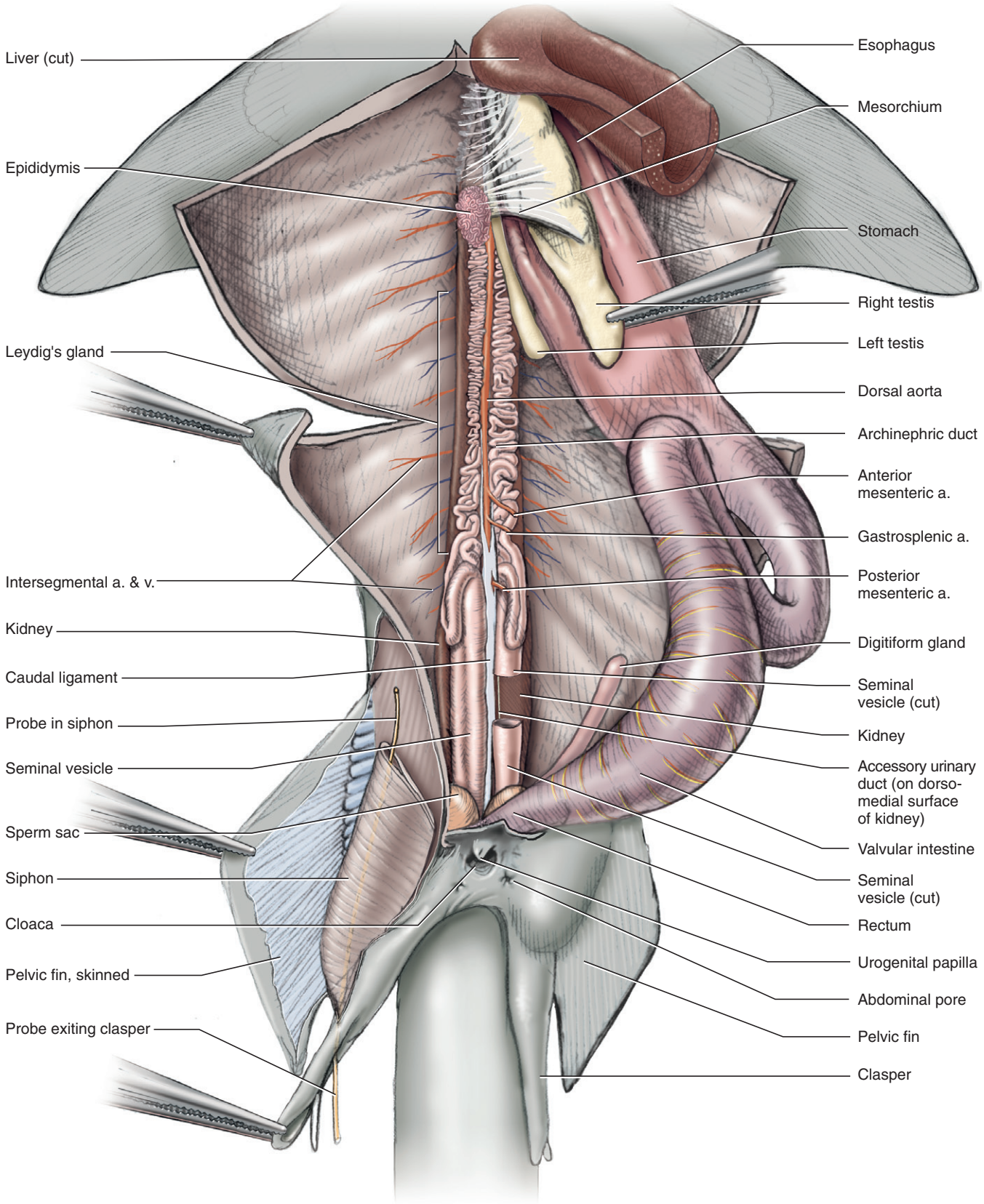


FIGURE 3.33 Pleuroperitoneal cavity in ventral view, showing the urogenital system of the male shark. Parts of the viscera have been removed. The right testis is reflected to the left. The anterior end of the right siphon has been cut away. The probe inserted into the siphon shows the path leading out of the siphon on the clasper.

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

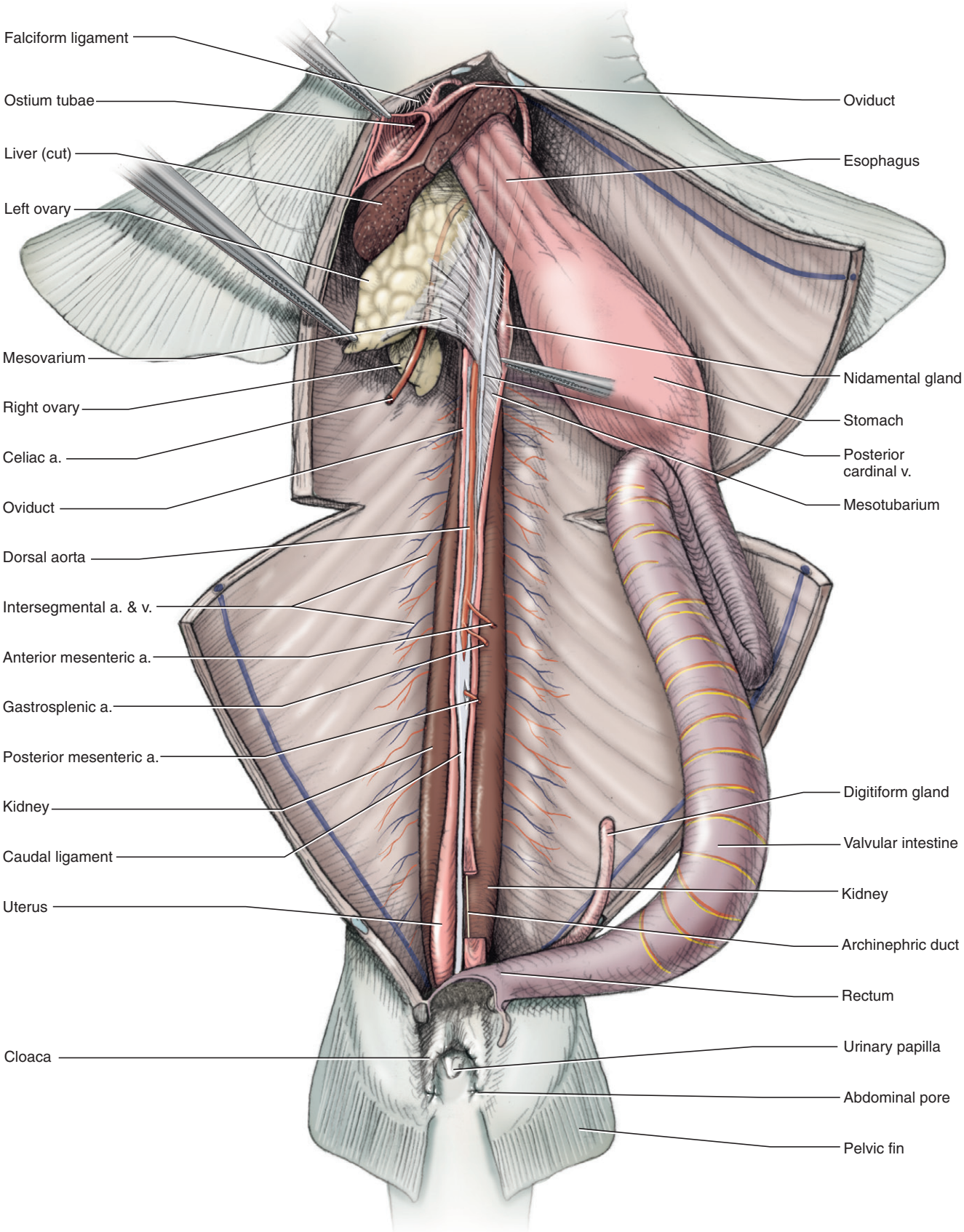


FIGURE 3.34 Pleuroperitoneal cavity in ventral view, showing the urogenital system of the female shark. Parts of the viscera have been removed. The left ovary is reflected to the right.

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

help transport sperm. The latter tubules lie in approximately the middle third of the kidney, a region known as **Leydig's gland**. The posterior thickened end of the kidney functions in excretion.

Each testis is supported by the **mesorchium**, a mesentery that suspends the organ from the middorsal wall of the body cavity. Within the anterior part of the mesorchium are small tubules (**ductuli efferentes**, which may be observed as strand-like structures) that extend from the testis to tubules in the epididymis of the kidney, which in turn are connected to the **archinephric duct**. Sperm take this route from the testes to reach the archinephric duct (originally a duct of the kidney) and then be transported posteriorly for eventual release from the body (see later). In a mature male the archinephric duct is tightly convoluted and embedded in the ventral surface of the kidney. In an immature male it is nearly straight and resembles the oviduct of the female (see later).

As the archinephric duct approaches the cloaca, it straightens and expands into the **seminal vesicle**. Trace it posteriorly into the **sperm sac**, a small, anteriorly blindly ending pouch that lies on the ventral surface of the seminal vesicle. Free the anterior end of the sperm sac from the seminal vesicle and slit the sperm sac ventrally. Probe its roof and note the entrance of the seminal vesicle. Probe the posterior part of the sperm sac. Left and right sperm sacs unite to form the **urogenital sinus**, a median space that continues posteriorly through the **urogenital papilla**, which is used for the passage of urine and sperm.

As noted earlier, urine is produced almost entirely (and probably exclusively in the adult male) by the posterior part of the kidney. However, it does not enter the archinephric duct or seminal vesicle. Instead, a thin, delicate **accessory urinary duct** carries urine to the urogenital sinus. The entrance of the duct is posterior to the entrance of the seminal vesicle into the sperm sac, but is difficult to locate. The accessory urinary duct extends along the medial margin of the kidney. Expose it by carefully lifting up the medial border of the kidney and delicately dissecting along it dorsomedial surface.

The remaining reproductive structures of the male are associated with the pelvic fin. The **clasper** is an intromittent organ inserted into the cloaca and oviduct of the female during copulation. A groove lies along the medial side of the clasper. Sperm is released from the urogenital papilla and travels along the groove to the cloaca of the female. Associated with each clasper is the elongated, sac-like **siphon**, which lies just deep to the skin on the ventral surface of the pelvic fin. Expose the siphon by removing the skin, and then cut open the siphon. Using a thin probe, search its posteromedial region for a passageway. Follow it as it passes along the groove of the clasper. The siphon expels fluid through this route that contributes to seminal fluid.

Key Terms: Male Urogenital System

accessory urinary duct
archinephric duct
caudal ligament
clasper
digitiform gland (rectal gland)
ductuli efferentes
epididymis
kidneys
Leydig's gland
mesorchium
ovary (plural, **ovaries**)
seminal vesicle
siphon
sperm sac
testis (plural, **testes**)
urogenital papilla
urogenital sinus

Female Reproductive System

The ovaries are suspended from the roof of the anterior pleuroperitoneal cavity by the **mesovarium** (Figure 3.34). The ovaries are smooth and oval in immature females, but in mature females their surfaces have swellings that represent ova in various stages of development. An **oviduct** lies on the ventral surface of each kidney. Each is a narrow tube unsupported by a mesentery in immature specimens, but more conspicuous and supported by a **mesotubarium** in mature individuals. Trace an oviduct anteriorly. It passes dorsal to the ovary and then curves ventrally around the anterior surface of the liver. The left and right oviducts pass within the falcifom ligament and join to form a common opening, the **ostium tubae**, in the free, posterior edge of the ligament. It is conspicuous in mature females and can easily be probed, but may be difficult to find in immature females. Note that there is no direct connection between the ovaries and the ostium: Eggs are shed into the pleuroperitoneal cavity and must make their way to the ostium, where they can enter an oviduct.

Trace the oviducts posteriorly and note that each eventually enters the cloaca through an opening on either side of the **urinary papilla**. An oviduct has two enlarged regions. The first, appearing as a slight anterior swelling dorsal to the ovary, is the **nidamental gland**, which secretes a thin membrane around groups of eggs as they pass through the oviduct. It is also the location where eggs are fertilized. The second enlargement, the **uterus**, occurs posteriorly. The uterus is greatly enlarged in pregnant specimens because it contains the developing pups. If you have a gravid female, cut open one of the uteri to observe the developing embryos. If not, observe embryos from another specimen. Depending on

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

the stage of gestation, the pups will vary in length. They are nourished mainly with yolk, much of it stored in the external yolk sac, which extends into the embryo via a stalk. Cut open the pleuroperitoneal cavity and observe that the stalk is continuous with the internal yolk sac. Yolk passes into the embryo by way of veins (vitelline veins), which adhere to the stalk.

The anterior part of the female kidney is greatly reduced and, unlike in the male, the kidney is not involved in the reproductive system. However, an archinephric duct, which is formed from the kidney, is present. In the female it is uncoiled, much smaller than in the male, and transports urine. Accessory urinary ducts are not present in female *Squalus*, but may be present in females of other sharks.

Key Terms: Female Reproductive System

mesotubarium
mesovarium
nidamental gland (shell gland)
ostium tubae
oviduct
urinary papilla
uterus

SECTION VII: SENSORY ORGANS

Ampullae of Lorenzini

The **ampullae of Lorenzini** (Figures 3.15 and 3.35) are modified parts of the lateral line system (see later) and primarily sensitive to electrical fields (they can help a shark sense prey by detecting the electrical fields generated by activities of the prey). They form a series of tube-like structures just beneath and parallel to the skin. The ampullae are concentrated on the head, particularly on the ventral and dorsal surfaces of the snout and posterior to the eye. Squeeze the snout. Thick fluid emerges from the ampullae through pores in the skin. Remove a

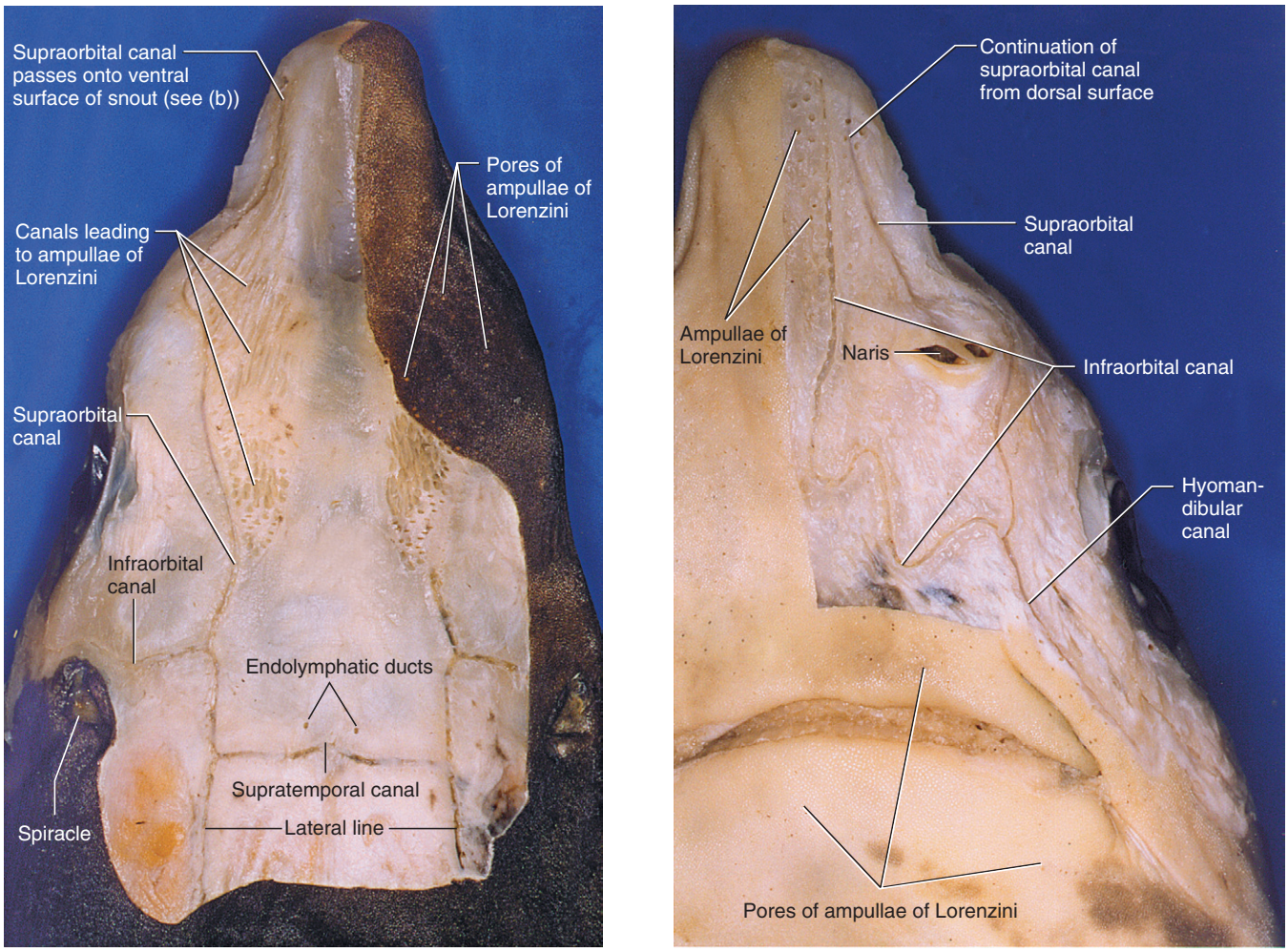


FIGURE 3.35 Head of the shark partially skinned in (a) dorsal and (b) ventral views to reveal the lateral line system.

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

portion of skin from the snout and top of the head between the eyes and observe the pattern formed by the ampullae.

Lateral Line System

The lateral line system is composed of a series of canals and sensory receptors that provide sensory information by detecting disturbances in water. The position of the **lateral line canal**, extending midlaterally along the length of the body and into the tail, was noted earlier (page 38). The canal lies within the skin. Make a cut in the skin, perpendicular to the canal, and examine the cut surface. The canal appears as a small hole. The canal leads to other canals in the head. If you skinned the head to find the ampullae of Lorenzini, you should be able to observe, about midway between the eye and the dorsal midline, a groove for one of these canals (the supraorbital) heading toward the snout (Figure 3.35). Another canal (the infraorbital) passes down behind the eye and then forward toward the snout. Trace the canals on the head, if time permits.

Nose

The **olfactory sacs** function in olfaction (Figures 3.36, 3.43, and 3.45). Reexamine the nares and note that each is subdivided into lateral incurrent and medial excurrent apertures that direct the flow of water into and out of the olfactory sac. Skin the region adjacent to one of the nares. Carefully pick away and remove the cartilaginous nasal capsule to expose the olfactory sac. It is a delicate, light-colored, spherical structure. Cut into the sac and note within it the parallel folds, or lamellae, on which the sensory receptors lie. The sac has no connection with the oral cavity.

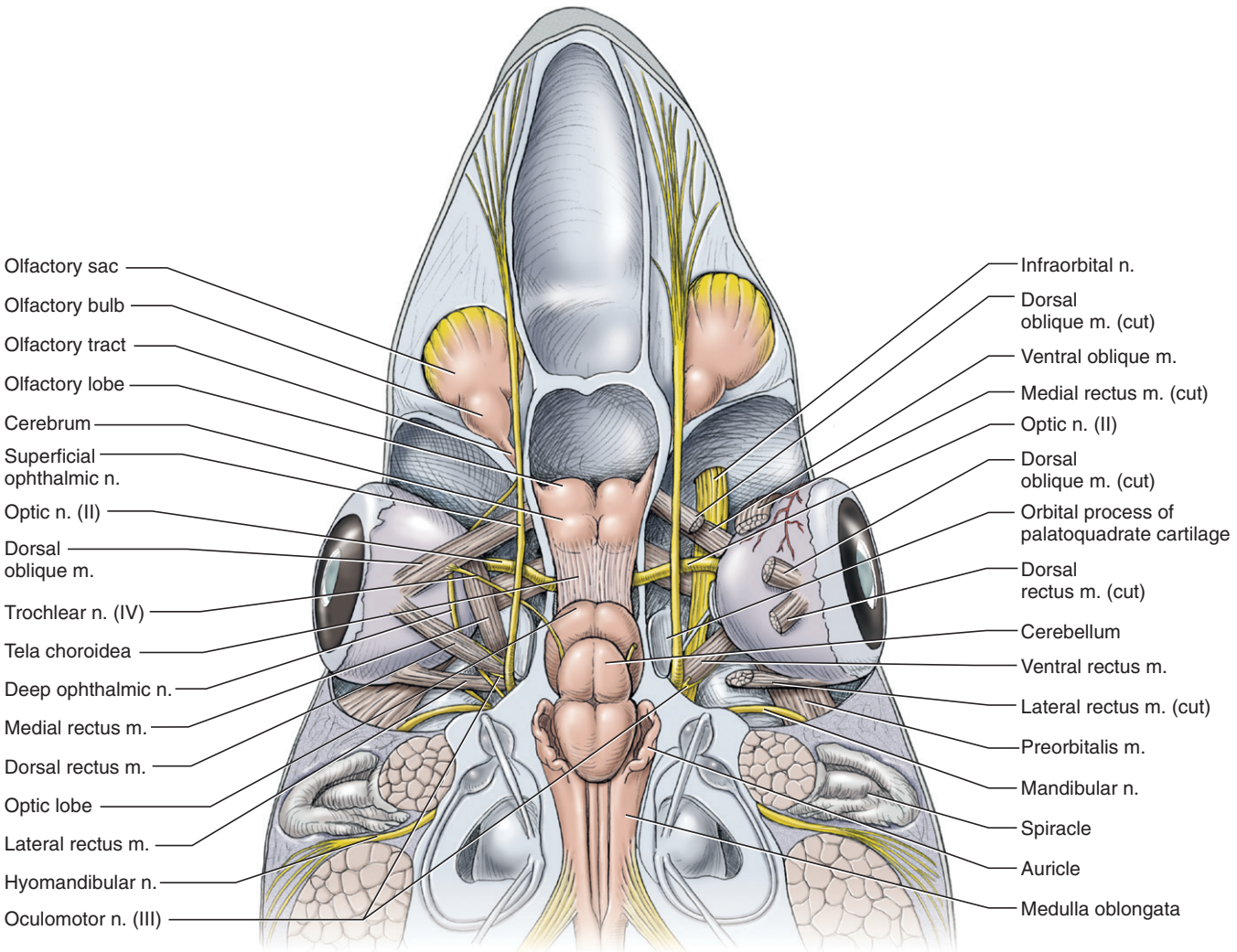


FIGURE 3.36 Head of the shark in dorsal view showing the chondrocranium shaved down to reveal the brain, sensory organs, and nerves.

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

Eye

Lift the edge of an eyelid and note its soft and thin inner surface, which consists of a portion of soft, modified skin. The skin folds over and fuses onto the surface of the eyeball as the transparent conjunctiva. Begin the exposure of the eye by removing the soft tissue of the upper eyelid. Then cut two or three very thin slices from the top of the supraorbital crest, holding the scalpel horizontal. This will clearly reveal the semicircular margin of the **orbit**, the space housing the **eyeball** and several other structures. Continue to remove the crest. Make a few vertical slices and follow the semicircular margin as you make your way toward (but not to) the medial wall of the orbit. Stop after you have removed a thickness of about 3 mm of cartilage. The eyeball is covered by a gelatinous connective tissue; carefully remove this.

Observe the eyeball's medial surface as well as some of the extrinsic muscles of the eyeball that extend between it and the orbital wall. Identify the **superficial ophthalmic nerve**, a strand about one-third the width of the muscles, which passes anteroposteriorly along the dorsomedial wall of the orbit. Once the nerve is located, continue to remove cartilage to expose the orbit more completely, but do not cut into the otic capsule. Remove any other connective tissue, but avoid injuring the nerves in the orbit. You now have a dorsal view of the orbit and its contents (Figure 3.36).

The two groups of extrinsic eye muscles are the oblique and rectus muscles. There are two obliques, which pass posterolaterally from the anteromedial wall of the orbit. In dorsal view the **dorsal oblique muscle** is clearly evident. To find the **ventral oblique muscle**, push the lateral part of the eyeball posteriorly and peer below the dorsal oblique.

The four rectus muscles radiate toward the eyeball from the posteromedial wall of the orbit. Three are clearly evident in dorsal view. The **lateral rectus muscle** extends almost directly laterally and attaches to the posterior surface of the eyeball. The **medial rectus muscle** passes anteriorly and attaches to the medial surface of the eyeball. The **dorsal rectus muscle** extends between the lateral and medial rectus muscles and attaches to the top of the eyeball. The fourth muscle, the **ventral rectus muscle**, will be seen more completely once the eyeball has been removed. For now, probe gently between the dorsal and lateral rectus muscles to find the ventral rectus. Avoid injuring the thin nerves that wind around the muscles.

By probing between the medial and dorsal rectus muscles, observe how the **optic pedicle** provides support for the eyeball (Figure 3.37). Tug the eyeball laterally and identify the **deep ophthalmic nerve**, a thin, whitish strand passing anteroposteriorly through the orbit and adhering to the medial surface of the eyeball. Using needle and forceps, separate the nerve from the eyeball. Next, look deep within the orbit, where the ventral oblique and medial rectus muscles converge toward the eyeball. Note the thick **optic nerve** extending from the medial wall of the orbit laterally to the eyeball.

Remove the eyeball by cutting the oblique and rectus muscles near their insertions. Be careful not to injure the thin, whitish strands that pass to or near the muscles. These are nerves that must still be identified. Separate the eyeball from the optic pedicle. Also, cut through the optic nerve and the tissue between the eyeball and lower eyelid. Finally, pick away connective tissue ventrally in the orbit.

Observe the orbit in lateral view and review the structures already identified: oblique and rectus muscles, superficial and deep ophthalmic nerves, optic nerve and optic pedicle (Figure 3.37). Lift the ventral rectus and observe the thick **infraorbital nerve** passing anteriorly and slightly ventrally (Figures 3.36 and 3.37). It is nearly as wide as any of the extrinsic muscles. Carefully picking away tissue where the nerve meets the anteroventral orbital wall reveals that the infraorbital nerve subdivides. As the nerve passes through the orbit, it crosses over the **preorbitalis muscle** (Figure 3.41). The preorbitalis muscle is about twice as wide as the extrinsic muscles and passes anteromedially across the floor of the orbit.

Trace the path of the superficial ophthalmic nerve and note the orbital process of the palatoquadrate (Figure 3.37; see also page 30 and Figure 3.3) that lies medial to the posterior half of the nerve. Next, follow the course of the deep ophthalmic nerve. It passes forward in the orbit, ventral to the dorsal rectus and dorsal oblique muscles. Lift the dorsal oblique muscle and observe the deep ophthalmic nerve and stalk of the optic pedicle. Just ventral to the deep ophthalmic is the **oculomotor nerve**. The latter passes almost immediately ventrally and around the margin of the ventral rectus. The lateral rectus muscle is innervated by the **abducens nerve**, which you will probably not see now (see page 74). Gently tug the dorsal oblique muscle anteriorly and note the thin strand-like **trochlear nerve** passing to it. Lastly, identify the **mandibular nerve**. It lies on the posterior wall of the orbit, almost directly posterior to the lateral rectus muscle, and extends laterally.

Examine the removed eyeball (Figure 3.38) and note the insertions of the extrinsic muscles. The outer surface of the eye is the fibrous tunic. Its lateral portion is modified into the transparent **cornea**. The remainder is the mainly cartilaginous **sclera**, which helps support the eyeball. The pigmented structure visible through the cornea is the **iris**, which has a circular opening, the **pupil**, at its center. Section the eyeball transversely and refer to Figure 3.39 to help identify the following structures. The **lens** is the hard spherical structure. Carefully cut through the pigmented tissue, the **ciliary body** (see

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

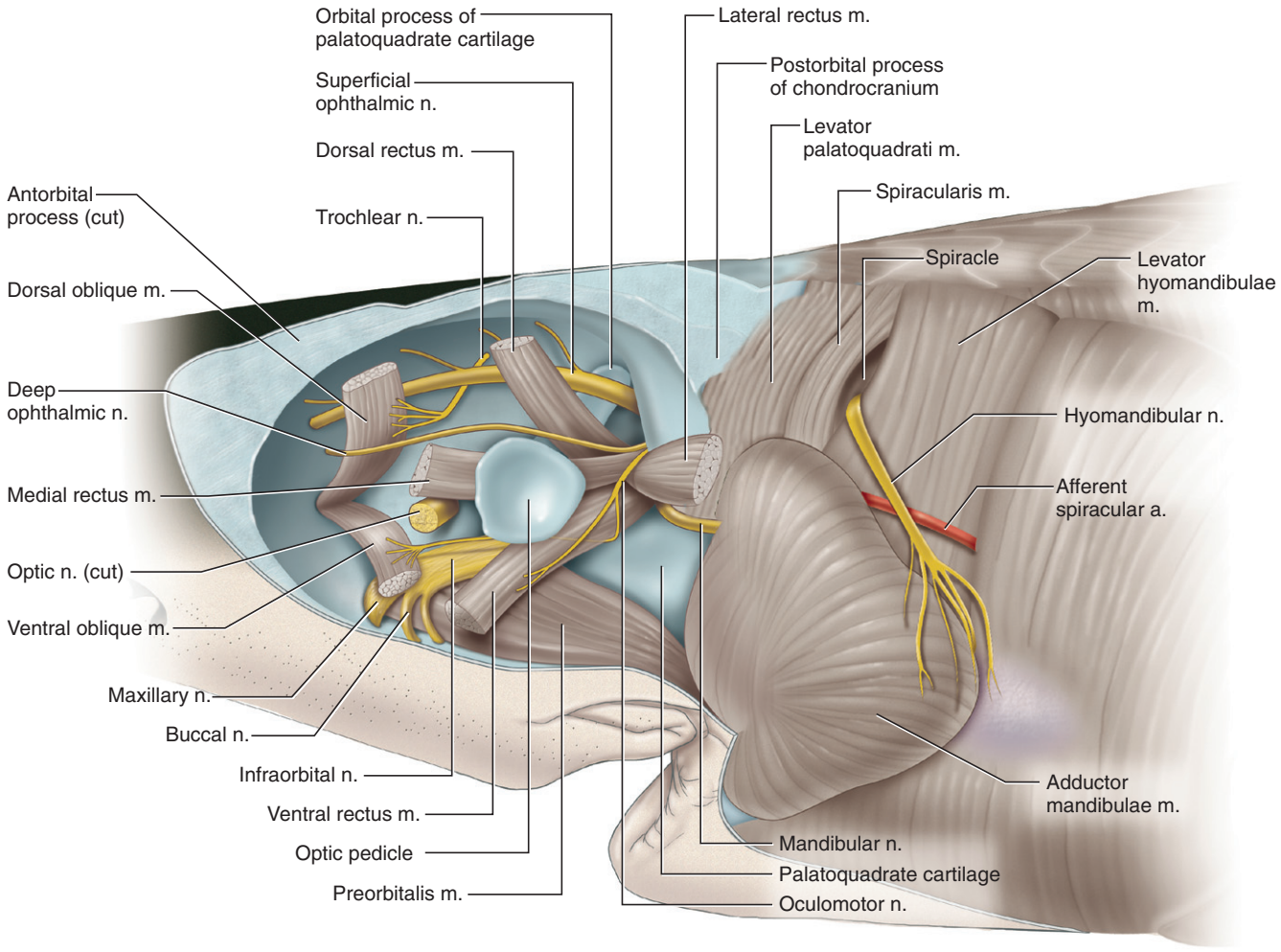


FIGURE 3.37 Head of the shark in left lateral view. The head has been skinned and the left eyeball removed to show muscles and nerves in the orbit.

later), that attaches to the lens, but cut around only half of the circumference of the lens so that it remains attached to the half of the eyeball that you will examine. The vascular tunic is the dark pigmented layer internal to the sclera, and most of it consists of the **choroid**. The medial wall of the eye, where the optic pedicle attaches, contains the **suprachoroidea**, a vascular tissue between the choroid and sclera.

The iris, noted just earlier, is a modified part of the vascular tunic. It extends between the cornea and the lens; the pupil is the opening in the iris. The iris contains some of the eyeball's intrinsic musculature. These smooth muscles act to control the size of the pupil, thus regulating the amount of light that enters the eyeball. Another modified part of the vascular tunic forms the ciliary body, which holds the lens in place. It is the tissue you cut through to free the lens from one half of the eyeball. The ciliary body also contains some of the eyeball's intrinsic musculature that here helps control the shape of the lens. The light-colored tissue internal to the choroid is the **retina**, the light sensitive layer that contains the photoreceptors responsible for absorbing light. Note that it is an incomplete layer, extending to about the base of the ciliary body. It is not tightly interconnected with the choroid, and when the eyeball is cut open the retina tends to become detached. The large cavity of the eyeball medial to the lens is the **vitreous chamber**. It is filled by a gelatinous mass, the **vitreous humor**, which helps maintain the eyeball's shape and holds the retina in place. The smaller cavity lateral to the lens is subdivided by the iris into the **anterior chamber** and the **posterior chamber**, and filled with the watery **aqueous humor**.

Ear

The paired inner ears of the dogfish are organs of balance or equilibrium and are embedded in the otic capsules of

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

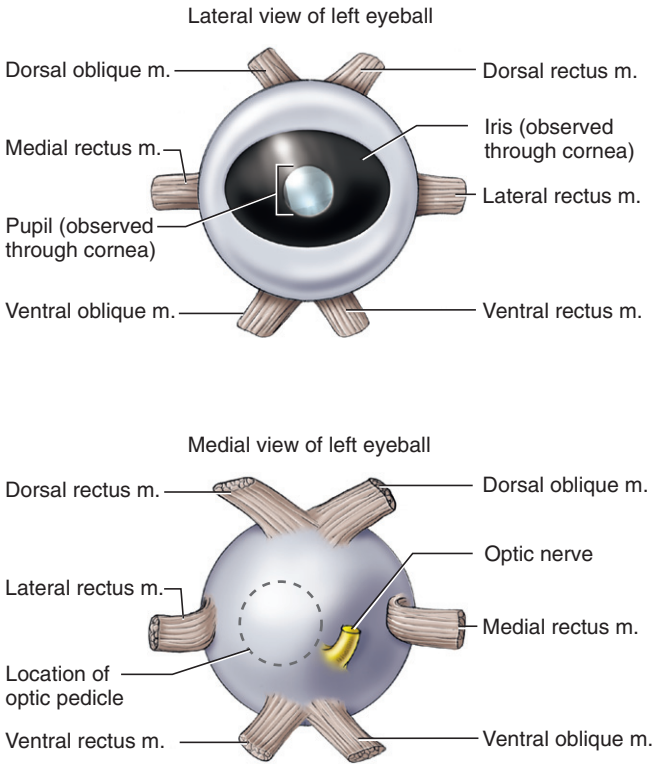


FIGURE 3.38 Left eyeball of the shark in lateral and medial views.

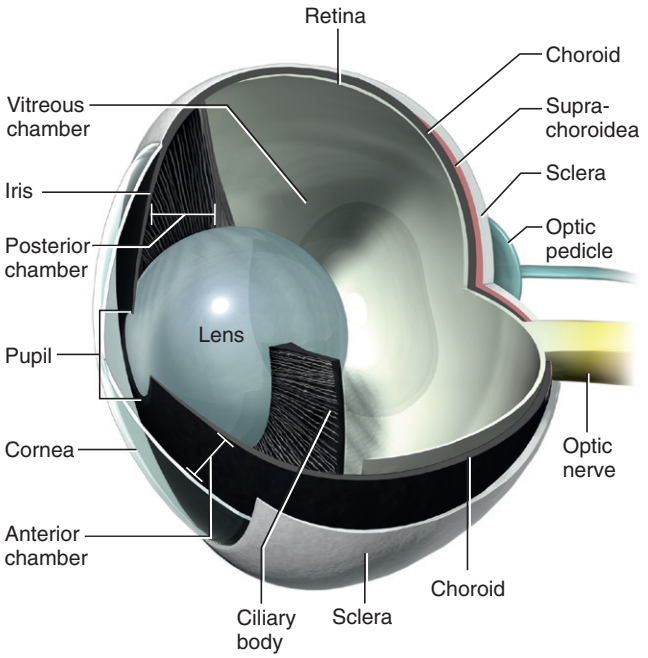


FIGURE 3.39 3D cutaway illustration of the left eyeball of the shark in posterolateral view revealing internal structures.

the chondrocranium. Each ear consists of a series of ducts and sacs, collectively termed the membranous labyrinth. The ducts and sacs are suspended in a series of canals and chambers, the cartilaginous labyrinth, within the otic capsule. The membranous labyrinth is filled with a fluid termed *endolymph*. Movement of the endolymph within the canals leads to perception of the orientation and position of the body.

The membranous labyrinth is formed of three thin, semicircular ducts and the sacculus (Figures 3.40 and 3.41). The **anterior** and **posterior semicircular ducts** are vertically oriented. The third duct, the **lateral semicircular duct**, lies mainly horizontally. The **sacculus**, a large, triangular, sac-like structure, extends between the vertical ducts and medial to the lateral duct. The **endolymphatic duct** extends dorsally from the sacculus and reaches the exterior surface of the head through the endolymphatic pores. Two cylindrical chambers, the **anterior** and **posterior utriculi**, are closely associated with the sacculus. Each utriculus communicates with the sacculus by way of small openings. The ends of each duct attach to one of the utriculi. Those of the anterior and lateral semicircular ducts attach to the anterior utriculus, those of the posterior semicircular duct to the posterior utriculus.

The ear may be examined by shaving away the cartilage of the otic capsule. Before beginning, study a preparation of the ears. Such preparations usually have the chondrocranium embedded in an acrylic block. The form and position of the canals and chambers, injected with red latex, are clearly discernable.

Start your dissection by removing skin and musculature from around an otic capsule. Using a fresh scalpel blade, shave away thin slices of cartilage from one of the otic capsules, beginning dorsally. The slices should be thin enough so that you clearly see the blade through the cartilage. As you progress ventrally, you will probably need to remove more musculature laterally, as well as the spiracle. The dorsal portions of the anterior and posterior semicircular canals will become apparent through the cartilage. Carefully continue to remove cartilage to cut into the canals. The thin, tube-like semicircular ducts of the membranous labyrinth will then be exposed. As you proceed ventrally, you will also uncover the large central cavity housing the sacculus. The cavity lies medial to the lateral semicircular canal and increases in size ventrally. Careful dissection will reveal the sacculus, but it is often collapsed in the floor of the cavity. The position of the **lagena**, a posteroventral extension of the sacculus, may be discerned by probing the floor of the sacculus.

Key Terms: Sensory Organs

abducens nerve
ampullae of Lorenzini

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

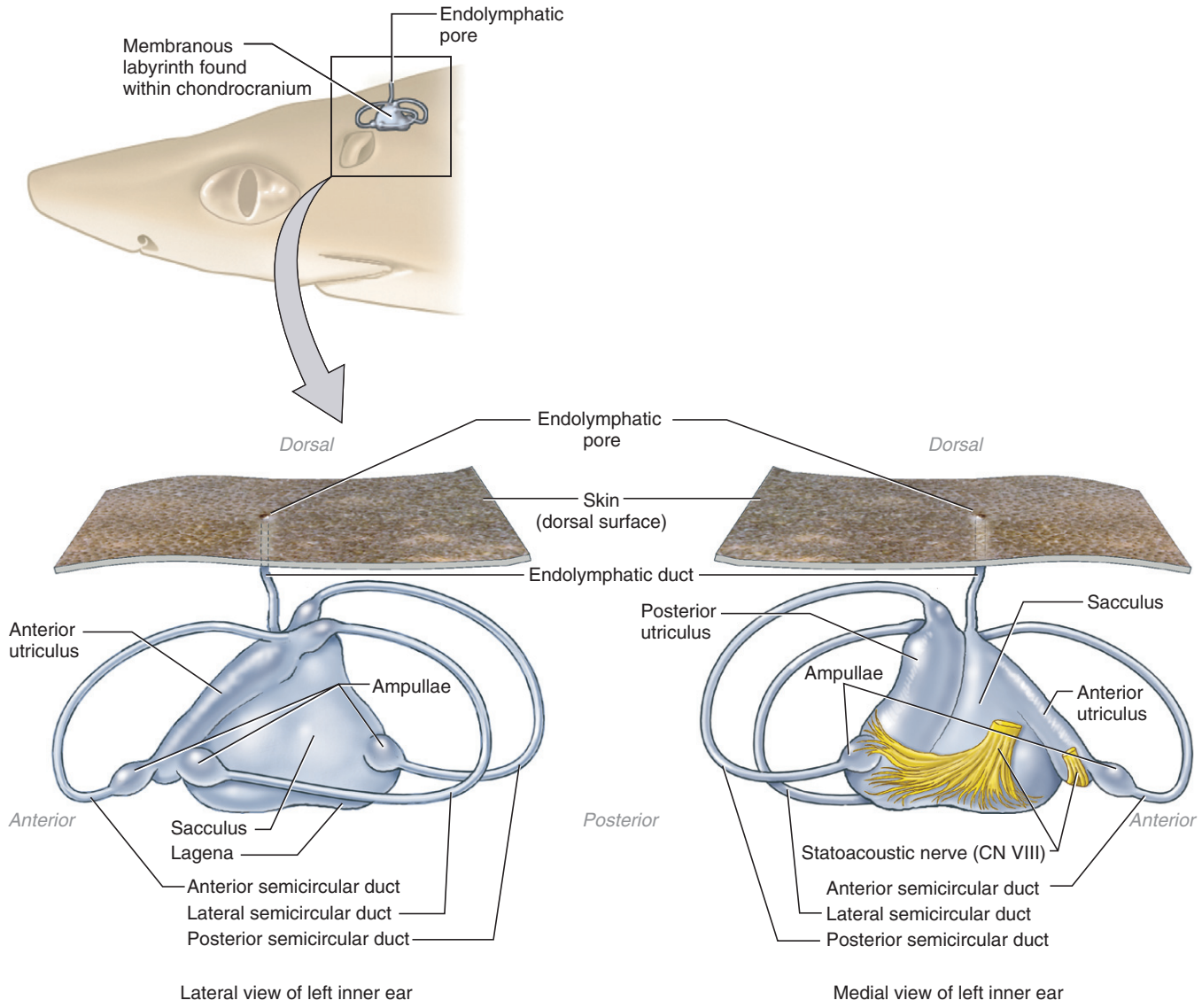


FIGURE 3.40 Membranous labyrinth of the left inner ear of the shark in lateral and medial views.

anterior semicircular duct
anterior utriculus
aqueous humor
choroid
ciliary body
cornea
deep ophthalmic nerve
dorsal oblique muscle
dorsal rectus muscle
endolymphatic duct
eyeball
infraorbital nerve
iris
lagena
lateral line canal
lateral rectus muscle
lateral semicircular duct
lens
mandibular nerve
medial rectus muscle
oculomotor nerve
olfactory sac
optic nerve
optic pedicle
orbit
posterior chamber
posterior semicircular duct
posterior utriculus
preorbitalis muscle
pupil
retina
sacculus

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

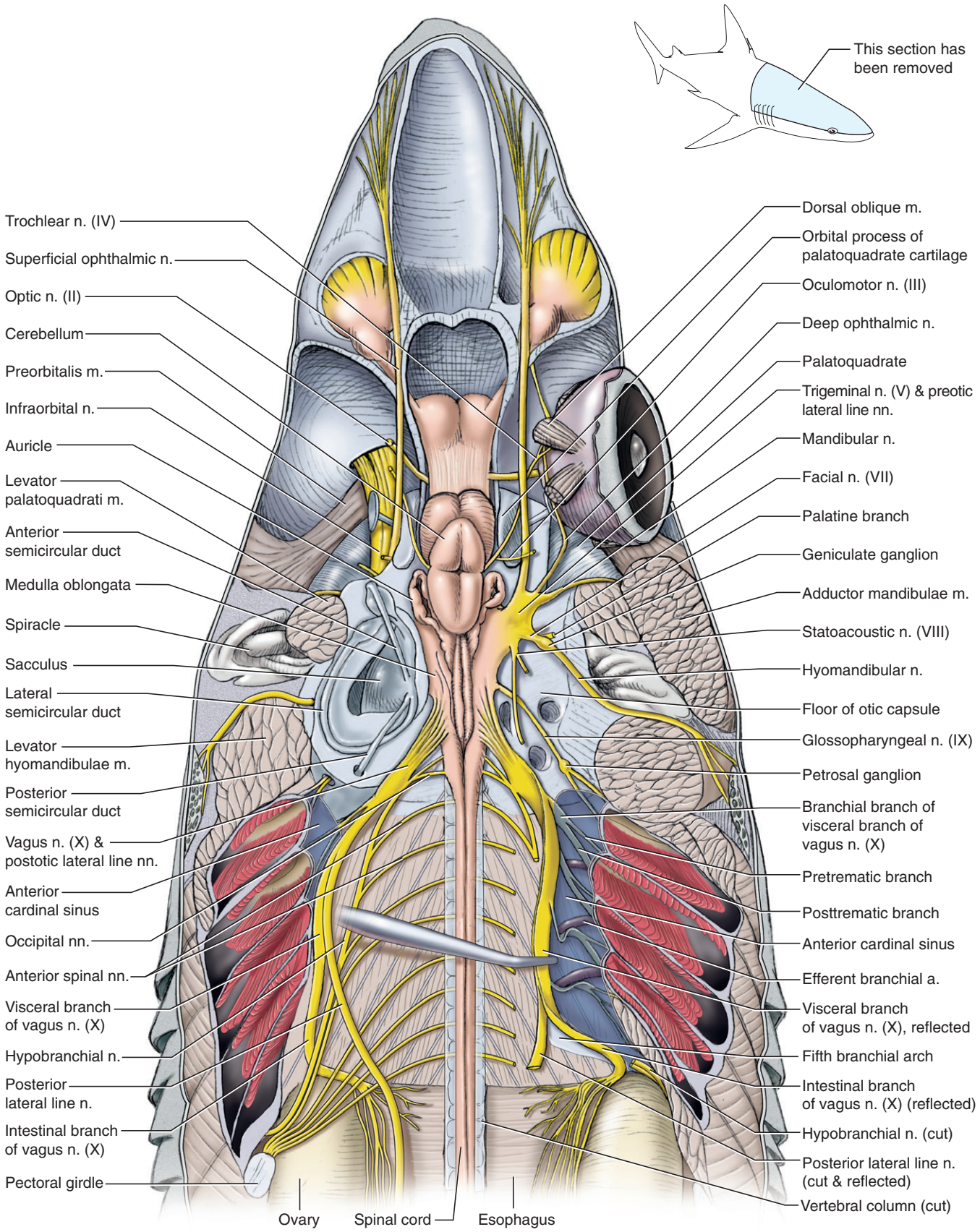


FIGURE 3.41 Head and branchial region of the shark in dorsal view. Cartilage and soft tissue have been shaved down to reveal brain, nerves, and sensory organs. The right side auditory region has been shaved down farther ventrally than the left side. The left eyeball has been removed.

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

sclera
superficial ophthalmic nerve
suprachoroidea
trochlear nerve
ventral oblique muscle
ventral rectus muscle
vitreous chamber
vitreous humor

SECTION VIII: BRAIN AND CRANIAL NERVES

The **brain** and **cranial nerves** (Figures 3.41–3.45; Table 3.1) should be exposed by removing thin slices of cartilage from the roof of the chondrocranium, as was done for the ear. Earlier dissections of the ear and eye probably destroyed some of the cranial nerves that must still be identified, so look for these structures mainly on the intact side of the head. Work carefully in removing the cartilage forming the dorsal roof of the orbit to avoid injuring the superficial ophthalmic nerve. The nerve was noted on page 65, but its connections to the rest of the nervous system may now be followed.

The brain sits in the large cranial cavity within the posterior part of the chondrocranium. Begin exposing the brain posteriorly, between the otic capsules. As you work your way forward, peer into the anterior part of the cranial cavity and you may be able to see the thin, strand-like **epiphysis** (Figures 3.43–3.45) extending dorsally from the brain to the epiphyseal foramen (see page 28) in the roof of the chondrocranium. Continue to shave the roof and as much of the lateral walls of the cavity as you can without injuring the nerves. When you have finished opening the cranial cavity, the dorsal surface of

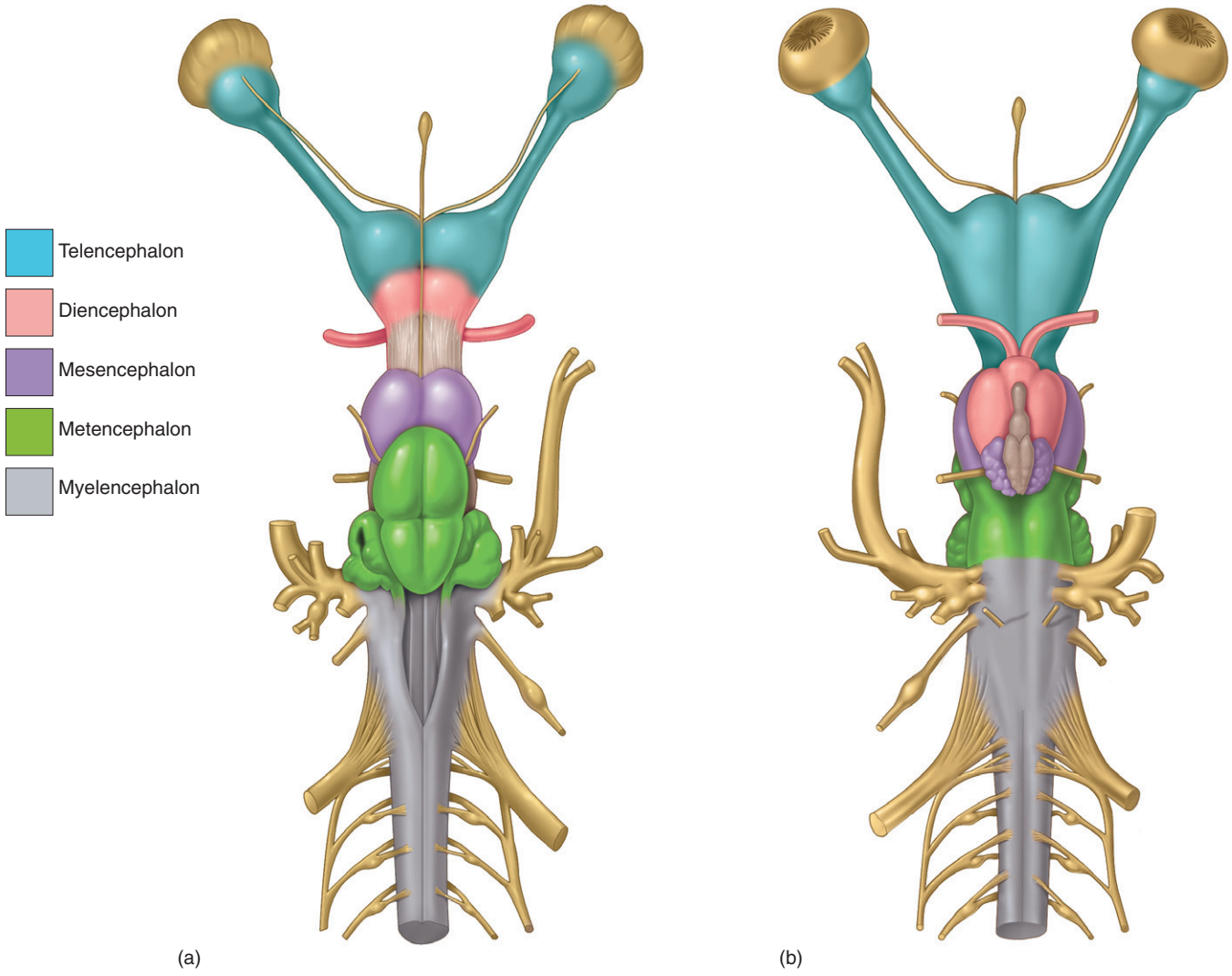


FIGURE 3.42 Brain of the shark in (a) dorsal and (b) ventral views, with regions of the brain color-coded.

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

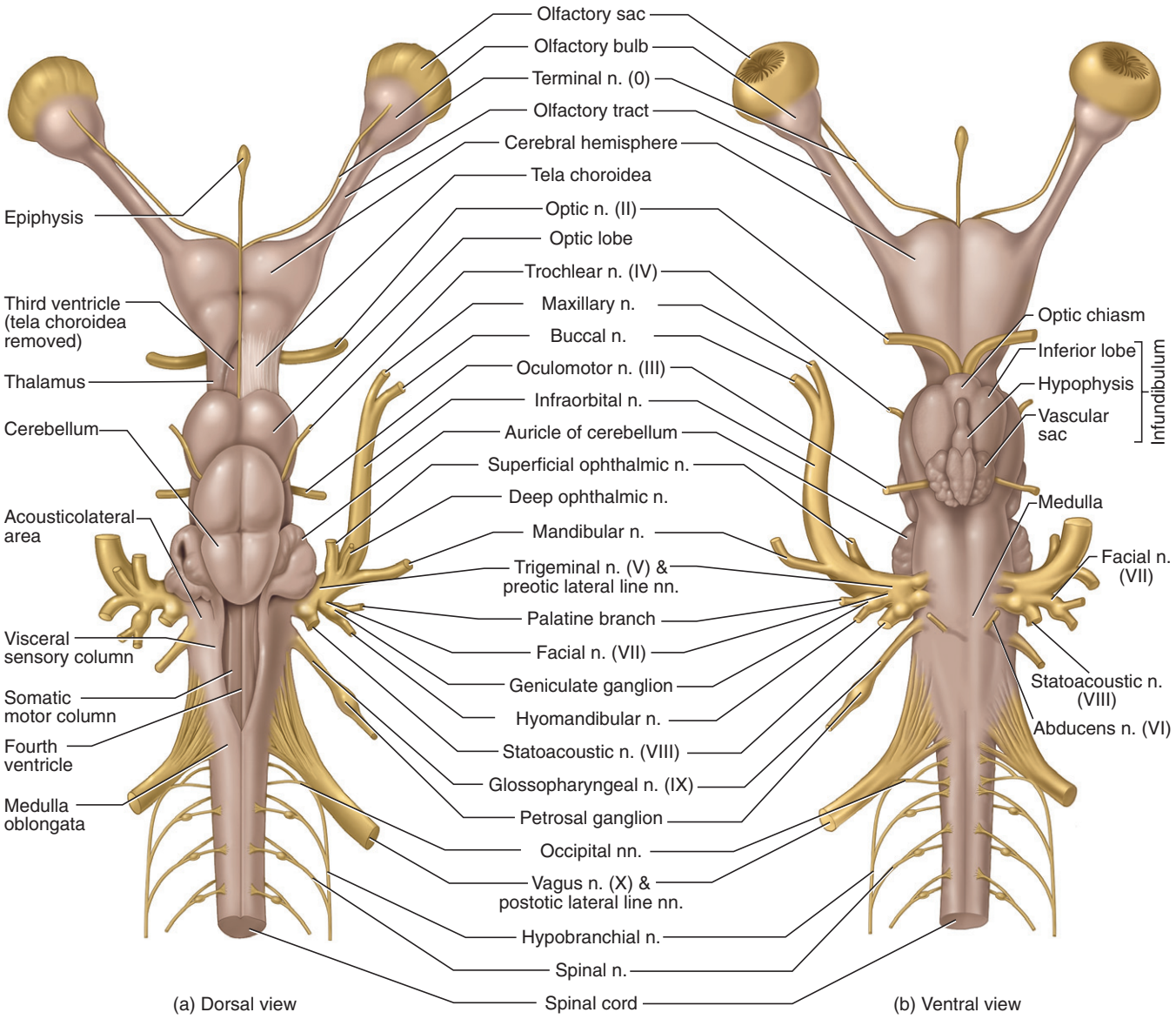


FIGURE 3.43 Brain and cranial nerves of the shark in (a) dorsal and (b) ventral views.

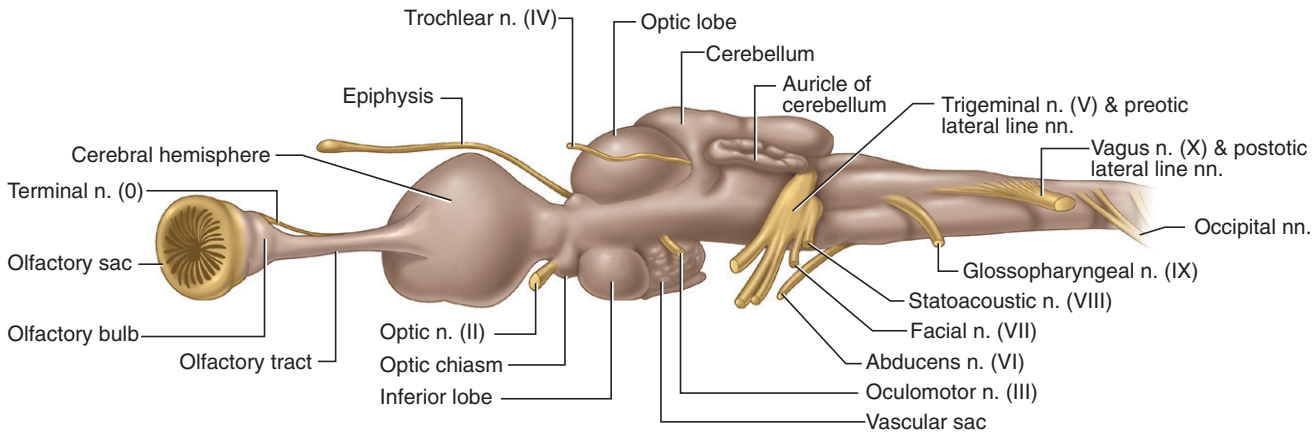


FIGURE 3.44 Brain and cranial nerves of the shark in left lateral view.

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

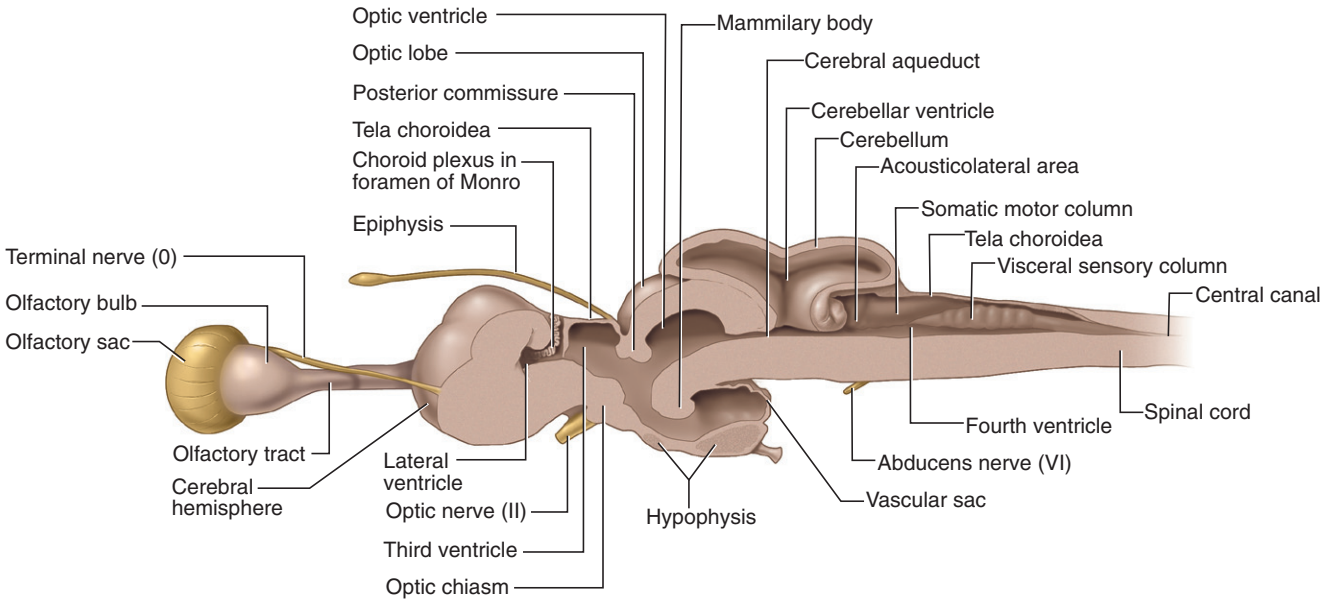


FIGURE 3.45 Right half of the brain of the shark, showing sagittal surface.

the brain will be revealed. Work carefully as the brain is easily scrambled by poking with instruments. Also remove thin frontal slices, mainly of muscle tissue, posterior to the chondrocranium until you expose the vertebral column. Shave down the neural arch dorsally and laterally. Stop when you can clearly see, through the cartilage, the **spinal nerves** extending laterally from the **spinal cord**.

Brain

The brain is subdivided into the following five regions, in anterior to posterior order: **telencephalon**, **diencephalon**, **mesencephalon**, **metencephalon**, and **myelencephalon** (Figure 3.42). The telencephalon includes the **olfactory bulbs** anteriorly (Figure 3.43). The olfactory sacs (see page 64) lie anterior to the bulbs. The bulbs narrow into the **olfactory tracts**, which in turn extend into the **cerebral hemispheres**. Together these constitute the **cerebrum**. The diencephalon lies posterior to the cerebral hemispheres. Its roof is the **epithalamus**, its sides the **thalamus**, and its floor the **hypothalamus**. The epiphysis attaches posteriorly on the epithalamus. Most of the epithalamus is formed by a thin, vascular **tela choroidea**. Anteriorly, the tela choroidea attaches to the cerebrum. Carefully remove the tela choroidea to reveal the **third ventricle** (Figures 3.43 and 3.45), the cavity of the diencephalon that contains various vascular structures such as the **choroid plexus**, which is an extension of the tela choroidea and is involved in the production of cerebrospinal fluid. Anteriorly the third ventricle leads, through the **foramen of Monro**, into left and right **lateral ventricles**, which lie respectively within the left and right cerebral hemispheres.

The mesencephalon includes a pair of rounded **optic lobes**. The main structure of the metencephalon is the large **cerebellum**, which partially overhangs the optic lobes anteriorly and the myelencephalon posteriorly. The **auricles** of the cerebellum project anterolaterally from the posterior end of the metencephalon. The myelencephalon includes nearly all the **medulla oblongata**, the posterior part of the brain that narrows into the spinal cord. The roof of the medulla oblongata is covered by a tela choroidea, which extends anteriorly to cover the roof of each auricle as well. Removing the tela choroidea reveals the **fourth ventricle**, the cavity of the medulla. The internal floor and sides of the medulla have various longitudinal ridges and grooves. The two large midventral ridges, one on either side of the midventral groove, are the **somatic motor columns**. Lateral to each column is a deep longitudinal depression. A second, large pair of ridges extends longitudinally on the wall of the medulla lateral to these depressions. These are the **visceral sensory columns**. Deep within the depression (thus between the somatic motor column and visceral sensory column) is a much smaller column, the **visceral motor column**. Finally, there is a large longitudinal ridge dorsal to each visceral sensory column. This is the **somatic sensory column**, and its surface has the form of small, bead-like swellings. Anteriorly the somatic sensory column becomes enlarged and forms the **acousticolateral area**.

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

TABLE 3.1 The Cranial Nerves and Their Branches of the Shark

	NUMBER	NERVE	BRANCHES	NERVE FORMED
	CN 0	Terminal n.		
	CN I	Olfactory n.		
	CN II	Optic n.		
	CN III	Oculomotor n.	Various branches, mainly to the ventral rectus, and dorsal, ventral, and medial oblique muscles	
	CN IV	Trochlear n.		
	CN V	Trigeminal n.	Superficial ophthalmic branch Deep ophthalmic branch Mandibular branch Maxillary branch	Infraorbital n. Superficial ophthalmic n.
Preotic lateral line nerves	ADLLN	Anterodorsal lateral line n.	Buccal branch Superficial ophthalmic branch	
Preotic lateral line nerves	OLLN	Otic lateral line n.		
Preotic lateral line nerves	AVLLN	Anteroventral lateral line n.		Hyomandibular n.
	CN VI	Abducens n.		
	CN VII	Facial n.	Hyomandibular branch Palatine branch	
	CN VIII	Statoacoustic n.		
	CN IX	Glossopharyngeal n.	Pretrematic branch Posttrematic branch Pharyngeal branch	
Postotic lateral line nerves	MLLN	Middle lateral line n.		
Postotic lateral line nerves	STLLN	Supratemporal lateral line n.		
Postotic lateral line nerves	PLLN	Posterior lateral line n.	Lateral branch Dorsal branch (not discussed in text) Ventral branch (not discussed in text)	
	CN X	Vagus n.	Visceral branch: four branchial branches, each with pretrematic, posttrematic, and pharyngeal branches Intestinal branch Accessory branch (not discussed in text)	
		Occipital nn.		Hypobranchial n.
		Anterior spinal nn.		

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

Cranial Nerves (CNN 0, I–X, and Lateral Line Nerves)

This section mainly examines the cranial nerves, but the occipital and the anterior spinal nerves must also be considered to properly comprehend the pattern and distribution of the nerves arising from the brain. Many of the nerves attach to the ventral surface of the brain, but their proximal ends will be examined shortly. Thus, unless otherwise instructed, do not jump ahead and study the other structures of the brain. Remove as much cartilage as possible from the lateral wall of the cranial cavity and of the neural arch without damaging the nerves. Also, clean the orbit of connective tissue, as was done for the other eye during examination of the orbit.

The cranial nerves of vertebrates were first studied in humans, and the sequence and names of the nerves were based on the pattern in humans. Twelve nerves were initially recognized and they were given both name and Roman numeral designations (see Table 7.5 on page 251). A small anterior nerve, the terminal nerve, was discovered later to be present in almost all vertebrates (but not birds). As it is anterior to CN I, it was designated as "0" (zero—which is not a Roman numeral!). These cranial nerves and their designations became commonly accepted, as their pattern is generally applicable to all amniotes.

This sequence, however, does not apply equally well to anamniotes, in which the final two nerves, the **accessory (XI)** and **hypoglossal (CN XII) nerves**, are not definitively recognized. Further, many anamniotes also have a set of six additional cranial nerves associated with the lateral line and electroreceptor organs. As these six nerves, termed **lateral line nerves**, are lacking in amniotes, they were never numbered and were considered to be components of some of the conventionally recognized cranial nerves. However, the lateral line nerves have their own roots and they are currently considered separate nerves, even though their separate emergence from the brain is difficult to identify grossly. They enter the brain very near cranial nerves VII and X and so may be referred to as either preotic or postotic lateral line nerves. More distally, the fibers of some do accompany those of other cranial nerves (see Table 3.1). For these reasons, they will not, with one exception, be considered in detail.

The most anterior cranial nerve is the **terminal nerve** (**CN 0**), a thin nerve passing along the medial side of the olfactory tract. It is often difficult to find, but look for it where the olfactory tract meets the cerebrum. The **olfactory nerve** (**CN I**) is formed by many fine fibers that pass from the olfactory sac into the olfactory bulb, but they will not be seen grossly. The **optic nerve** (**CN II**) has already been seen (see page 65). Trace it from its attachment to the medial surface of the eyeball into the cranial cavity and then to its attachment on the diencephalon.

The **oculomotor nerve** (**CN III**) arises from the ventral surface of the mesencephalon and branches out to innervate four eye muscles (ventral oblique, and dorsal, ventral, and medial rectus muscles). Examine the ventral oblique and find the branch of the oculomotor that passes to it, and then trace the nerve posteriorly (see Figure 3.37). The nerve passes ventral to the ventral rectus muscle, then curves dorsally and gives off a branch to the ventral rectus muscle. It continues dorsally, crosses anterior to the base of the lateral rectus muscle and dorsal to the base of the dorsal rectus muscle, and passes medially. It gives off branches to the dorsal and medial rectus muscles and then enters the chondrocranium. The oculomotor nerve can be seen leaving the brain by pushing the brain gently to the side. The slender **trochlear nerve** (**CN IV**) extends anterolaterally from the dorsal surface of the mesencephalon. It crosses over the optic lobe, and passes to innervate the dorsal oblique muscle.

The **abducens nerve** (**CN VI**; this is discussed here, out of sequence, so the nerves discussed in the next paragraph can be treated together) arises from the ventral surface of the medulla. Its origin will be seen later. The abducens passes anterolaterally to innervate the lateral rectus muscle. It can be found on the ventral surface of this muscle.

The next three nerves, the **trigeminal** (**CN V**), **facial** (**CN VII**), and **statoacoustic** (**CN VIII**) **nerves** share a close origin from the surface of the brain. In addition, the roots of the preotic lateral line nerves arise from between the roots of the trigeminal and facial nerves. All of these nerves arise in this sequence from the anterior part of the medulla, beginning just behind the auricles of the cerebellum. However, they emerge so closely together that it is difficult to identify them separately. Their peripheral distributions, however, can be readily traced. The preotic lateral line nerves include the **anterodorsal lateral line nerve** (**ADLLN**), the **anteroventral lateral line nerve** (**AVLLN**), and the **otic lateral line nerve** (**OLLN**).

Some branches of the trigeminal, facial, and lateral line nerves merge to form larger nerves or trunks. Although some branches of the trigeminal, facial, and lateral line nerves were observed during dissection of the orbit, use the following description to review them carefully and ascertain their pattern of distribution.

The trigeminal[1] is a large nerve that divides into four branches on emerging from the cranial cavity into the

[1]The trigeminal nerve (CN V) is so named because in amniotes it has three branches. These branches are named but also designated as V_1, V_2, and V_3. The trigeminal of anamniotes, however, has four branches.

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

orbit. These are the **superficial ophthalmic**, **deep ophthalmic**, **mandibular**, and **maxillary branches**. The first branch is accompanied by the superficial ophthalmic branch of the ADLLN, the fourth branch by the buccal branch of the ADLLN (Table 3.1). The superficial ophthalmic branch is the most dorsal and passes just ventral to the dorsal margin of the orbit. The deep ophthalmic branch passes through the orbit but adheres to the dorsomedial surface of the eyeball. The mandibular branch extends laterally along the posterior wall of the orbit, almost directly posterior to the lateral rectus muscle. The maxillary branch contributes to the **infraorbital nerve**, the large nerve passing along the floor of the orbit and crossing the preorbitalis muscle. Anteriorly, the infraorbital divides into separate maxillary (medially) and buccal (laterally) nerves.

The facial nerve has two branches. One is the **hyomandibular branch**, which forms the hyomandibular nerve with the AVLLN. The hyomandibular nerve was observed as it passed over the external surface of the levator hyomandibulae muscle (page 40). Trace it now from the brain, carefully cutting away portions of the musculature, ear, and spiracle. Near its origin, the hyomandibular branch bears a swelling, the **geniculate ganglion**. The second branch of the facial is the **palatine branch**, which participates in the innervation of the lining of the oral cavity.

The **statoacoustic nerve** (**CN VIII**) is a short nerve that innervates the ear. Remove cartilage of the otic capsule to see branches passing, in particular, to the ampullae of the semicircular ducts and the sacculus.

The **glossopharyngeal nerve** (**CN IX**) arises posterior to the statoacoustic nerve. It extends posterolaterally through the floor of the otic capsule to the first pharyngeal slit. Pick away the cartilage of the otic capsule to follow the nerve. Note the swelling, the **petrosal ganglion**, along the nerve just before it emerges from the capsule. Very near the dorsal margin of the pharyngeal slit, the glossopharyngeal divides into pretrematic and posttrematic branches (remember that *trema* refers to the slit). The glossopharyngeal also has a small pharyngeal branch, but do not look for it.

The three postotic lateral line nerves are the **middle lateral line nerve** (**MLLN**), the **supratemporal lateral line nerve** (**STLLN**), and the **posterior lateral line nerve** (**PLLN**). Their roots emerge from the brain between the glossopharyngeal (CN IX) and vagus (CN X; see later) nerves. The peripheral distribution of the PLLN will be traced later.

The **vagus nerve** (**CN X**) mainly innervates the remaining pharyngeal slits and the viscera. Note the series of fan-like rootlets emerging from the medulla just posterior to the glossopharyngeal nerve. These include the roots of the postotic lateral line nerves, more anteriorly, and of the vagus, more posteriorly. However, it is not practical to attempt to separate them. The roots of the vagus and the PLLN merge and pass posterolaterally through the otic capsule. Follow them posteriorly, removing cartilage and soft tissue as required. The vagus and the PLLN separate just medial to the first pharyngeal slit. The PLLN lies medial to the vagus and curves posteromedially as it extends between the epaxial and hypaxial musculature to innervate the lateral line canal in the trunk.

The vagus has two main parts, the visceral and intestinal branches. The visceral branch may be observed as it passes over the pharyngeal slits and gives rise to four **branchial branches**, one each to all but the most anterior pharyngeal slit (which is innervated by the glossopharyngeal nerve). Reflect the visceral branch of the vagus and follow the branchial branches laterally (Figure 3.41). They lie along the floor of the anterior cardinal sinus (see pages 43 and 58). Like the glossopharyngeal, each branchial branch subdivides into pretrematic, posttrematic, and pharyngeal branches, but do not search for the pharyngeal branch. The intestinal branch continues posteriorly after the last of the branchial branches. Medial to the last branchial slit, it turns sharply medially. Dissect carefully here, as other nerves cross it dorsally (see later). The intestinal then continues ventrally into the pleuroperitoneal cavity, passing initially along the esophagus. This portion may also be seen by turning your specimen on its dorsal surface, slitting open the posterior cardinal sinus, and examining the dorsomedial wall of the sinus.

Return to the nerves crossing the intestinal branch of the vagus, noted in the preceding paragraph. The large nerve is the **hypobranchial nerve**, which passes ventrally to innervate the hypobranchial musculature. A smaller nerve, a spinal nerve, passes just posterior to the hypobranchial in this region. Trace the hypobranchial anteromedially as it passes deep to the PLLN. Note that the hypobranchial becomes gradually thinner as you trace it toward the brain. It initially arises from the brain as two or three occipital roots (see later).

The nerves immediately posterior to the vagus of the shark, and most anamniotes, are not directly comparable to those of more derived vertebrates. In the shark these nerves merge from roots that arise from the transition between the medulla and spinal cord. They are thus formed from roots that are occipital and spinal. As a result, they are not entirely within the chondrocranium and thus are not "cranial." There is ambiguity because the posterior end of the cranium is phylogenetically variable among anamniotes. However, they are in part homologous with cranial nerves of higher vertebrates and so are considered here.

Usually, the first two slender roots that emerge posterior to the vagus unite to form the **occipital nerve**, which then partially merges with the vagus nerve. The occipital nerve continues posteriorly and receives

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

contributions from the first few spinal nerves, which arise posterior to the occipital nerve. The union of the occipital and spinal nerves is the hypobranchial nerve, as noted earlier. Each spinal nerve results from the union of a dorsal root and a ventral root that arise from the spinal cord. The roots unite a short distance from the spinal cord, and the dorsal root bears a swelling, or ganglion. In amniotes the transition between the head and the trunk becomes fixed and the occipital nerves clearly arise from the brain within the skull as a "cranial" nerve termed the hypoglossal nerve (CN XII) (see Table 7.5 and Figure 7.80). Thus, the hypobranchial nerve of the shark (and other anamniotes) is homologous with the hypoglossal of amniotes. As noted earlier, the accessory nerve (CN XI; see Table 7.5 and Figure 7.80) of higher vertebrates (mainly derived from the vagus), is not represented as a distinct nerve in the shark.

Ventral View of the Brain

When you are familiar with the cranial nerves, the brain may be removed from the chondrocranium. Cut the olfactory tracts and then across the spinal cord just posterior to the medulla. Lift the anterior part of the brain, locate and cut the optic nerves. Continue to cut each of the cranial nerves, leaving as long a stump as possible. Lift the brain laterally and note the ventral extension, the **hypophysis**, just behind the optic nerves. Cartilage posterior to the hypophysis will have to be removed in order to free the brain entirely without damage.

Examine the ventral surface of the brain, noting its regions as described earlier (page 72) and the cranial nerves, particularly those that arise from ventral surface—the optic, oculomotor, and abducens. The optic nerves converge toward the anterior part of the hypothalamus and form the **optic chiasm**, where the optic nerves cross over to the opposite side of the brain. The rest of the hypothalamus is formed mainly by the **infundibulum**, which bears several important structures. The paired inferior lobes of the infundibulum lie just posterior to the optic chiasm. Posterior to each inferior lobe, the infundibulum continues as a **vascular sac**. Between the left and right inferior lobes and vascular sacs lies the hypophysis, noted earlier. The hypophysis is usually torn during removal of the brain. If this occurs in your specimen, examine another student's specimen.

Sagittal Section of the Brain

The brain and spinal cord are hollow, with several connected cavities or ventricles in the brain itself, and a narrow **central canal** in the spinal cord. In life, the ventricles and central canal are filled with cerebrospinal fluid. Some of the ventricles have already been noted (see page 72), but to examine all the ventricles and their relationships to each other, cut the brain in half by making a midsagittal section using a new scalpel blade. Observe one of the halves in sagittal view and briefly review the regions of the brain before studying the ventricles (Figure 3.45).

The **third ventricle**, noted earlier (page 72), is the cavity of the diencephalon and communicates anteriorly with each of the **lateral ventricles** (one each in the cerebral hemispheres) through the **foramen of Munro**. The third ventricle extends into the optic lobes as the **optic ventricle**, as well as into the hypophysis. The **fourth ventricle** is the cavity of the medulla, and continues into the cerebellum as the **cerebellar ventricle**. The third and fourth ventricles are connected by a narrow canal, the **cerebral aqueduct**.

Key Terms: Brain and Cranial Nerves

abducens nerve (CN VI)
accessory nerve (**CN XI**, not recognized in shark) (spinal accessory)
acousticolateral area
anterodorsal lateral line nerve (ADLLN)
anteroventral lateral line nerve (AVLLN)
auricles of **cerebellum**
brain
branchial branches of visceral branch of vagus nerve
buccal branch of anterodorsal lateral line nerve (ADLLN)
central canal
cerebellar ventricle
cerebellum
cerebral aqueduct (aqueduct of Sylvius)
cerebral hemispheres
cerebrum
choroid plexus
cranial nerves
deep ophthalmic branch of **trigeminal nerve** (profundus nerve)
diencephalon
epiphysis
epithalamus
facial nerve (CN VII)
foramen of **Monro** (interventricluar foramen)
fourth ventricle
geniculate ganglion
glossopharyngeal nerve (CN IX)
hyomandibular branch of **facial nerve**
hyomandibular nerve
hypobranchial nerve
hypoglossal nerve (**CN XII**, not recognized in shark)
hypophysis
hypothalamus

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

infraorbital nerve
infundibulum
lateral ventricles
mandibular nerve (= mandibular branch of trigeminal nerve)
maxillary branch of **trigeminal nerve**
medulla oblongata
mesencephalon
metencephalon
middle lateral line nerve (MLLN)
myelencephalon
occipital nerve
oculomotor nerve (CN III)
olfactory bulbs
olfactory nerve (CN I)
olfactory tracts
optic chiasm
optic lobes
optic nerve (CN II)
optic ventricle
otic lateral line nerve (OLLN)
palatine branch of **facial nerve**
petrosal ganglion
posterior lateral line nerve (PLLN)
postotic lateral line nerves
preotic lateral line nerves
somatic motor column
somatic sensory column
spinal cord
spinal nerves
statoacoustic nerve (CN VIII) (vestibulocochlear, octaval)
superficial ophthalmic branch of **anterodorsal lateral line nerve (ADLLN)**
superficial ophthalmic branch of **trigeminal nerve**
superficial ophthalmic nerve
supratemporal lateral line nerve (STLLN)
tela choroidea
telencephalon
terminal nerve (CN 0)
thalamus
third ventricle
trigeminal nerve (CN V)
trochlear nerve (CN VI)
vagus nerve (CN X)
vascular sac
intestinal branch of **vagus nerve**
visceral branch of **vagus nerve**
visceral motor column
visceral sensory column

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

CHAPTER

4

The Perch

INTRODUCTION

The yellow perch, *Perca flavens*, is an actinopterygian. Besides the sharks and their relatives, there are two groups of living fish-like vertebrates, Actinopterygii, the ray-finned fishes, and Sarcopterygii, which includes the lobe-finned fishes and their tetrapod relatives. The latter is a relatively small group, at least in terms of their fish-like forms, and includes the coelacanths and lungfishes, barely a handful of species, which is a rather dismal record as far as fish go. Conversely, the actinopterygians are a huge success story, both in terms of diversity and numbers, with about 25,000 species known (although this number varies depending on author). The fins of actinopterygians are supported by slender, rod-like rays or lepidotrichia radiating from the base of the fin; the musculature controlling the fin is largely within the body wall.

The actinopterygians may be considered broadly as comprising basal forms, some 40 species grouped as Polypteriformes (bichirs) and Chondrostei (sturgeons and paddlefish; sometimes grouped paraphyletically as "palaeonisciformes") and the derived Neopterygii, a clade that includes, clearly, the great majority of ray-finned fishes (see Chapter 1). In older classifications, the basal forms were considered chondrosteans, representative of a more primitive stage of ray-finned fishes. Neopterygians include several basal forms, such as gars and bowfins, that were grouped as "holosteans," intermediate between the chondrosteans and the advanced ray-finned fishes, the Teleostei.

Teleosts have undergone extensive radiations to produce fishes that have invaded nearly every aquatic niche. There are far too many groups to discuss here, but we may mention Elopomorpha (eels and tarpons), the commercially important Clupeomorpha (anchovies and herrings), and Paracanthopterygii, another commercially important group that includes codfishes. The perch belongs to Perciformes, a member of Acanthopterygii, the spiny-finned fishes. Another interesting group is Ostariophysi, which includes catfishes, characins, and minnows. These fish share a unique sound detection system, the Weberian apparatus, which involves the swim bladder and modified elements of the first few trunk vertebrae. The vertebrae act as a conduction system between the swim bladder and the inner ear at the back of the skull. Vibrations of the swim bladder caused by sound waves are transmitted by the bony elements to a posterior extension of the ear's membranous labyrinth, stimulating the auditory center of the brain.

SECTION I: SKELETON

Skull

Examine a mounted skeleton of the perch and differentiate the **head**, **trunk**, and **caudal** regions (Figure 4.1). Unlike Chondrichthyes, Actinopterygii have well-developed bony skeletons. This is especially evident in the head, where numerous dermal bony elements (as well as endochondral elements) produce a complex skull. It is difficult and impractical to attempt identification of all the bones of the skull unless detailed preparations of skulls in various stages of disarticulation are available. Instead it is more productive to focus on various features that are particular to bony fishes, such as the bones of the jaw mechanism and opercular regions. Several other easily identifiable bones are included in this discussion for context.

Begin by locating the opercular bones on the pharyngeal region that cover the gills (Figures 4.1 and 4.2). The **operculum** is the large, triangular bony plate. Several bones surrounding the operculum can be easily identified. The J-shaped **preoperculum** lies anterior to the operculum; the **suboperculum** lies posteroventral to the operculum. Ventral to the preoperculum is the **interoperculum**. The four **branchial arches** that support the gills lie deep to the operculuar bones. Peer beneath the operculars to observe the arches.

Next, locate the large, circular **orbit** that houses the eyeball. Some of the deeper bones of the skull, such as the parasphenoid, are visible within the orbit. A series

© 2010 Elsevier Inc.

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

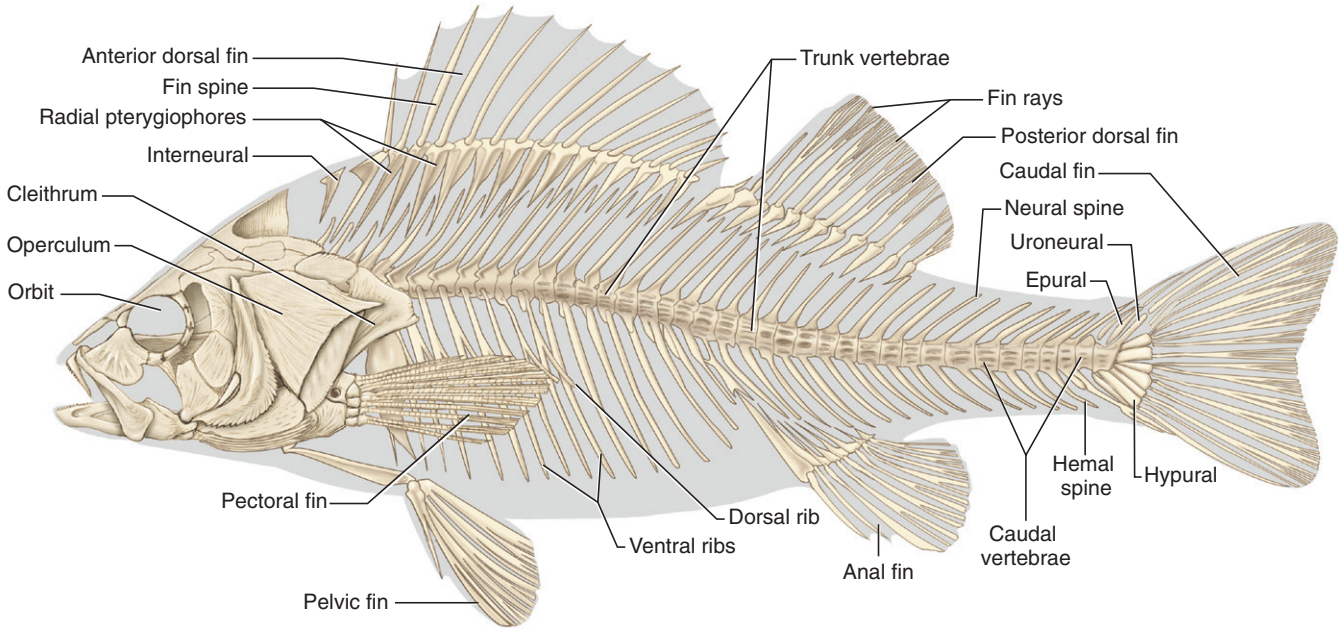


FIGURE 4.1 Skeleton of the perch in left lateral view.

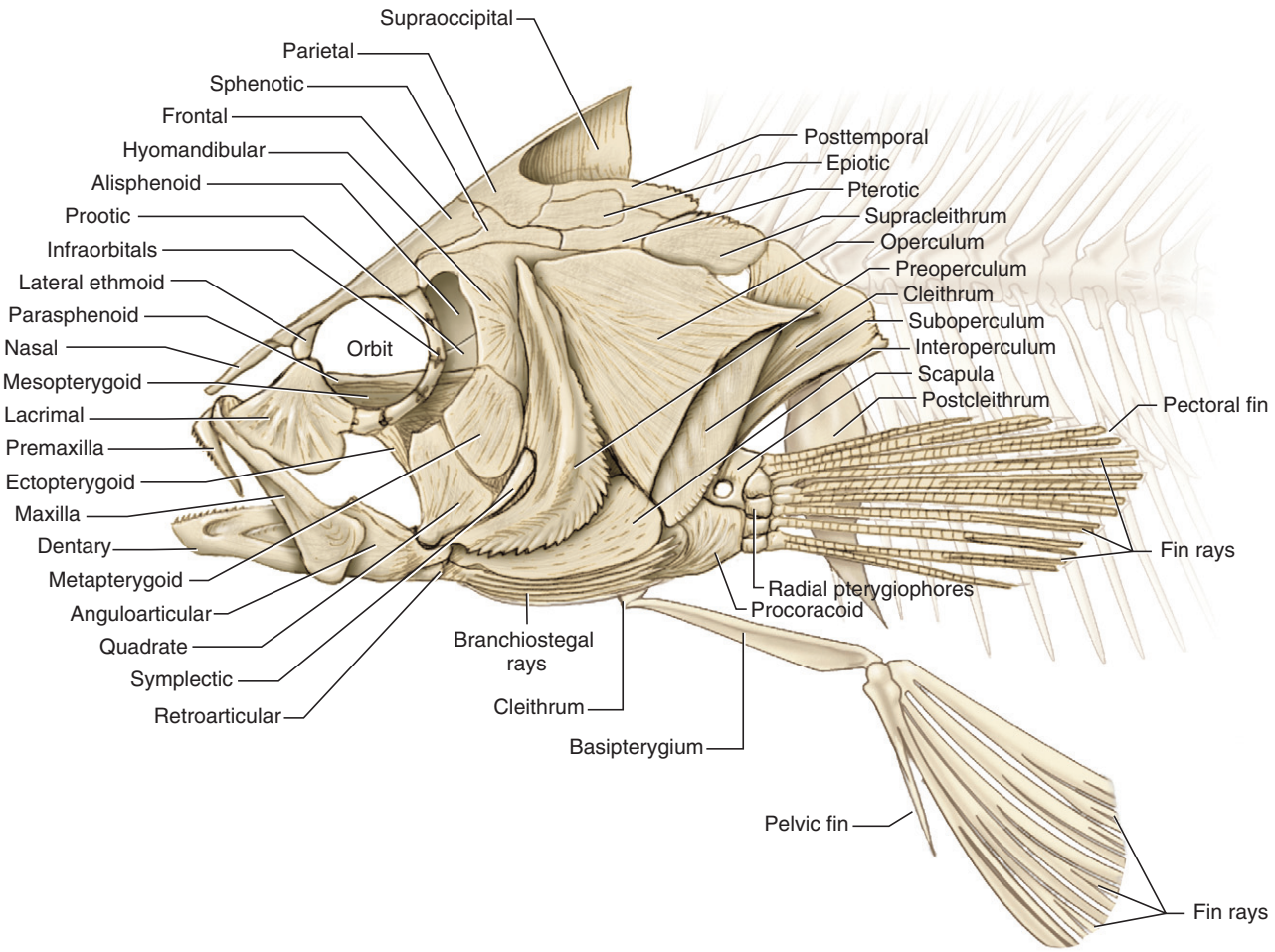


FIGURE 4.2 Skull and branchial skeleton of the perch in left lateral view.

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

of bones surround and help form the orbit. Several are large and easily identifiable, such as the **frontal**, which forms much of the skull roof, the **parietal**, posterior to the frontal, and the **lacrimal**, which forms the anteroventral margin of the orbit. The **maxilla** is the slender, edentulous bone articulating with the lacrimal. Its widened posterior end extends laterally and is embedded in soft tissue. Note that it does not form part of the margin of the mouth. The **premaxilla**, which bears teeth on its anteroventral surface, is the most anterior bone of the upper jaw. It articulates with the premaxilla from the opposite side, and the **nasal** and maxilla posteriorly. A main feature of derived actinopterygians is their ability to protrude the premaxilla during opening of the mouth. The maxilla acts as a lever for the jaw muscles in helping to protrude the premaxilla forward. We should note that the names of several of the bones noted here follow the convention currently used for actinopterygians, but the bones are not homologous with those of the same name in other vertebrates discussed in this manual. For example, the bone termed the frontal here is homologous with the parietal of tetrapods, whereas the parietal is homologous with the postparietal of other tetrapods.

A series of three main bones, lying between the orbit and preoperculum, extend anteroventrally. These are, in dorsal to ventral order, the **hyomandibular**, **metapterygoid**, and **quadrate**. These bones contribute to the suspensorium, the apparatus that supports the jaws on the rest of the skull. The hyomandibular and metapterygoid support the quadrate, which forms the articulation with the lower jaw. The lower jaw is formed by three bones. The **anguloarticular** forms most of the posterior end of the lower jaw and articulates with the quadrate of the upper jaw. The angular portion is a large, flat dermal, superficial component, whereas the endochondral articular is medial to the angular and so is not easily visible in lateral view. The **dentary**, which bears teeth, may be seen anterior to anguloarticular. The **retroarticular** is a small endochondral ossification posteroventrally on the lower jaw associated with the ossification of the articular.

Key Terms: Skull

anguloarticular
branchial arches
dentary
frontal
head
hyomandibular
interoperculum
lacrimal
maxilla
metapterygoid
nasal
operculum
orbit
premaxilla
preoperculum
quadrate
retroarticular
tail
trunk
suboperculum

Postcranial Skeleton

The vertebral column includes **trunk vertebrae** anteriorly and **caudal vertebrae** posteriorly (Figure 4.1). The main part of a vertebra is the **centrum**, similar to those of the shark (Figure 3.6b). All the vertebrae bear elongated **neural spines** dorsally. The caudal vertebrae also bear elongated **hemal spines** ventrally. The trunk vertebrae bear ribs. There are two types of ribs in the perch, the **dorsal** and the **ventral ribs**. The ventral ribs are much more prominent and are usually present in prepared specimens. These curved structures, which form in the myosepta adjacent to the body cavity (coelom), extend ventrally. More delicate dorsal ribs extend laterally. They are attached ligamentously to the posterior surface of the more anterior ventral ribs, and are often missing in prepared specimens.

Examine the **anterior** and **posterior dorsal fins** on the middorsal line (Figure 4.1). The fins are supported by thin, elongated **fin rays**. These rays may be ossified, such as those supporting the anterior dorsal fin; in this case, they are usually termed *spines*. Other fin rays, termed *soft fin rays*, are flexible and unossified and may branch distally. Each fin ray is supported at its base by a **radial pterygiophore**, a ventrally tapered bony element. The tip of a radial pterygiophore extends ventrally into the connective tissue between two neural spines. Note that the radial pterygiophore series is continuous—they extend all the way along the dorsum beneath and between the anterior and posterior dorsal fins. The separation between these fins, in fact, is due to reduction of the spines between them. The posterior dorsal fin is structured similarly to the anterior dorsal fin, except that only the first two fin rays are spines; the remainder are soft fin rays.

The **anal fin** lies along the midventral line, opposite the position of the posterior dorsal fin. As in the latter, all but the first two fin rays are soft fin rays. Radial pterygiophores support the fin rays, essentially as in the dorsal fins, but taper dorsally. The anterior few (usually two) radial pterygiophores fuse into a large element that extends dorsally to attach to one or two ventral ribs, which here are quite reduced in size. It is posterior to this point of attachment that the series of hemal spines begins.

The **caudal fin** is supported by soft fin rays, which are arranged to form a homocercal tail. This type of fin is

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

superficially symmetrical with about equal numbers of fin rays dorsal and ventral to the longitudinal axis extending posteriorly from the vertebral column. However, the body axis itself turns abruptly dorsally, so it is not symmetrical internally, although this is not easy to detect with the naked eye (see later). This upward turn is easily noted in less derived actinopterygians, such as sturgeons. It may still be appreciated in derived forms such as the perch by the orientation of the **uroneurals**, the last few neural spines, and the position of the **hypurals** immediately posterior to them. The hypurals, also present ventral to the uroneurals, are the flattened hemal spines of the last few caudal vertebrae and provide most of the support for the fin rays of the caudal fin. Several neural spines, termed **epurals** and unattached to vertebrae, provide some support for the dorsal part of the fin.

Lastly, examine the paired fins (Figures 4.1 and 4.2). The **cleithrum** is the main supporting element of the pectoral girdle. It is a large, dorsoventrally elongated bone that lies mainly deep to the operculum and suboperculum, and extends to the ventral midline to articulate with the cleithrum from the other side of the body. Dorsally it articulates with the **supracleithrum**, which, in turn, articulates with the **posttemporal**. The latter is attached to the posterior end of the skull. This chain of connections links the head and shoulder girdle. The **scapula** and **procoracoid** are the large skeletal elements of the shoulder girdle that directly support the fin. The scapula lies dorsal to the procoracoid. Their anterior ends lie deep to and are covered by the cleithrum. The **postcleithrum** is an elongated triangular bone that extends dorsoventrally. Its widened end lies deep to the cleithrum. It tapers ventrally, passes medial to the fin, and extends toward the pelvic fin. The radial pterygiophores, of which there are usually four, extend from the scapula or procoracoid and distally articulate with the soft fin rays supporting the fin. Movement is possible proximally (between the scapula or procoracoid and radial pterygiophores) and distally (between the radial pterygiophores and fin rays).

The pelvic girdle is formed by paired **basipterygia**. Each is a triangular plate of bone oriented anteroposteriorly, with the base located posteriorly. As it passes anteriorly, the basipterygium tapers and passes dorsal to the articulation between the right and left cleithra. The fin rays of each fin attach directly to the posterior end of a basipterygium, and, except for the medial ray, are soft fin rays.

Key Terms: Postcranial Skeleton

anal fin
anterior dorsal fin
basipterygium (plur. **basipterygia**)
caudal fin
caudal vertebrae
centrum
cleithrum (plur. **cleithra**)
dorsal ribs
epurals
fin rays
hemal spines
hypurals
neural spines
postcleithrum
posterior dorsal fin
posttemporal
procoracoid
radial pterygiophores
scapula
supracleithrum
trunk vertebrae
uroneurals
ventral ribs

SECTION II: EXTERNAL ANATOMY

The external anatomy of the perch (Figure 4.3) is similar in several aspects to that of the dogfish shark. The body, which may be subdivided into **head**, **trunk**, and **tail** regions, is generally streamlined, not surprising in a swimming fish, and there are several fins. The constricted region connecting the trunk and tail regions is the **caudal peduncle**. Several differences are immediately apparent, however. The skin, for example, has numerous, readily apparent **scales**. Also, there is only a single opening on each side of the body for the exit of water from the pharynx, and the positions of the paired fins are quite different.

Examine the head (Figure 4.3). On each side it bears a large **eye**, lacking lids. Posterior to it, the preopercular region, containing the bones that help support the jaws, and the opercular region, containing the opercular bones covering the gills, are easily recognizable. The large **mouth** is terminal in the perch but may be slightly dorsal or ventral in other teleosts. Note that the **maxilla**, a bone of the upper jaw, is free posteriorly, embedded in a fold of skin, and lacks **teeth** (see also Figure 4.2). The **premaxilla** is recognizable also, at the anterior end of the upper jaw, and can slide back and forth, thus allowing the perch (and most other teleosts) to protrude its jaws. Teeth are present on the premaxilla, as well as on the lower jaw or **mandible**. **Nares** (sing., **naris**) can be found anterior to each eye. On each side of the head there are two nostrils, one anterior and the other posterior, opening into the nasal cavities. Water enters the nasal cavity through the anterior nostril and exits through the posterior nostril.

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

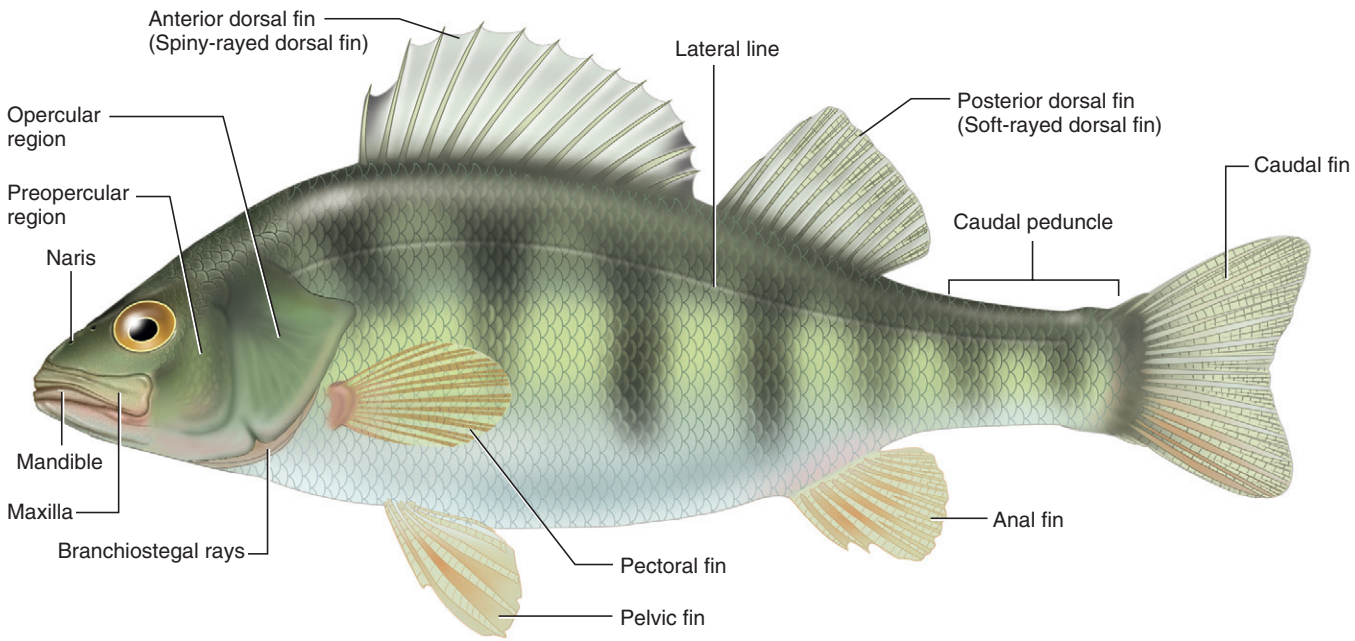


FIGURE 4.3 External features of the perch in left lateral view.

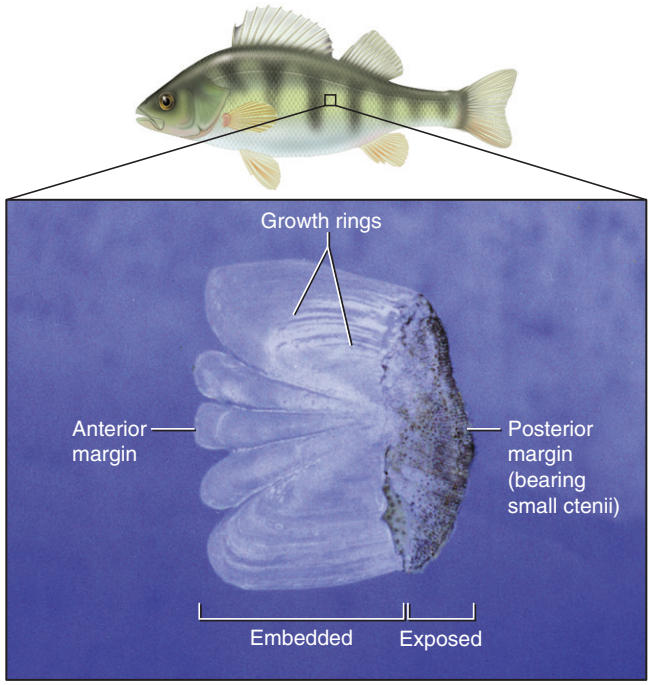


FIGURE 4.4 Detail of scale of the perch in lateral view.

On the trunk and caudal peduncle, the prominent **lateral line** forms a distinct ridge along the scales. Other canals occur on the head but they are much less conspicuous. Using forceps, pull out one of the scales from the trunk (Figure 4.4). Most of the scale is embedded in the skin, and only a small posterior portion is exposed. This posterior end, termed the bony portion (though it is distinct from true bone), has numerous small tooth-like projections called *ctenii*. This type of scale is termed **ctenoid** (comb-like), based on the structure of its posterior end (other teleosts may have circular or cycloid scales because they lack ctenii; some lack scales). The embedded portion of the scale is made of fibrous connective tissue. Scales grow as the fish ages. The concentric growth rings on the embedded portion of the scale can be used to age an individual.

There are four median fins, the **anterior dorsal**, **posterior dorsal**, **anal**, and **caudal fins** (Figure 4.3). Identify the anterior and posterior dorsal fins along the dorsal midline. The anterior dorsal fin is larger and is supported by ossified fin rays, as noted earlier. Most of the supporting fin rays in the posterior dorsal fin are unossified and flexible. The anal fin is on the ventral midline, just anterior to the tail, and is supported mainly by soft fin rays. The homocercal caudal fin is superficially symmetrical. Note the paired fins, the **pectoral** and **pelvic fins**. Although some teleosts (for example, the catfish) have these fins in positions comparable to those in the shark, in the perch the pectoral fin is displaced dorsally and the pelvic is displaced anteriorly.

Lastly, examine the posterior openings of the urogenital and digestive tracts. Unlike the shark, the perch does not have a cloaca. Instead the digestive tract has a separate opening, an **anus**, the large, circular opening anterior (Figures 4.7–4.9) to the anal fin. The **urogenital aperture** is considerably smaller and less evident, and lies immediately posterior to the anus (Figures 4.7–4.9). In some females (see later), however, the urogenital opening may be as large as and even larger than the anus.

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

Key Terms: External Anatomy

anal fin
anterior dorsal fin
anus
caudal fin
caudal peduncle
ctenoid
eye
head
lateral line
mandible
maxilla
mouth
naris (nostril)
pectoral fin
pelvic fin
posterior dorsal fin
premaxilla
scales
tail
teeth
trunk
urogenital aperture

SECTION III: MOUTH, ORAL CAVITY, AND PHARYNX

Examine the **mouth**, which forms the anterior opening of the digestive tract. It is terminal, a position common in fish that swim to overtake their prey. Note the posterior end of the maxilla. Embedded in soft tissue, it is free to move laterally, an important feature allowing expansion of the oral cavity during feeding. Note the marginal series of **teeth** in the upper and lower jaws. In addition to the marginal series, there are **palatal teeth** in the roof of the **oral cavity**, and **pharyngeal teeth**, both upper and lower, in the posterior part of the **pharynx**. Postpone identifying them until the pharynx is opened (see later).

Expose the oral cavity and pharynx by removing the opecular bones as follows. Lift the free, posterior end of the operculum. Insert one blade of a stout pair of scissors beneath the surface of the operculum, at approximately the midheight of the posterior margin. Keeping the blade close to the deep surface of the operculum, cut through the bones, heading toward and through the angle of the mouth. Spread the flaps to observe the **gills**, each composed of numerous **gill filaments**, which are involved with gas exchange with the water flowing over them. Then cut away, bit by bit, the opercular flaps covering the gills until you have exposed the region, as shown in Figure 4.5. The most anterior of the four **branchial arches**, and the gill it supports, should be plainly visible. Manipulate the arches and gills to identify the remaining three arches. **Gill rakers** should be plainly visible on the first arch. The rakers are projections that extend inward across the pharyngeal slit. They help in feeding, preventing prey (and other debris) from passing through the pharyngeal openings and escaping.

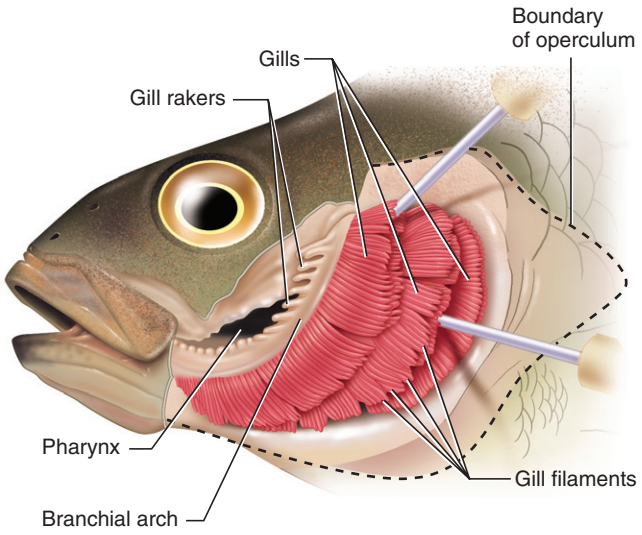


FIGURE 4.5 Gills of the perch in left lateral view.

In gas exchange, water passes through the mouth and oral cavity into the pharynx. It then passes over the gills and into the opercular chamber (which corresponds to the parabranchial chambers seen in the shark), the space between the gills and operculum, and then leaves posteriorly through the opening at the posterior end of the operculum. The floor of the opercular chamber is supported by the **branchiostegal rays**.

There are five passages or slits through the pharynx: three are between the four brachial arches, one is anterior to the first arch, and another is posterior to the last arch. Each arch bears a double set of filaments. This is similar to the condition in the **holobranch** of the shark, in which gill lamellae are present on the anterior and posterior surfaces of the interbranchial septum (see page 45). In the holobranch of the perch, however, the septum is absent, so the gill filaments are positioned almost side by side. Still, they correspond to the anterior and posterior sets of lamellae of the shark, with the anterior filaments being **posttrematic** ("after the slit") and the posterior being **pretrematic** ("before the slit"). The perch thus has four holobranches. Unlike in the shark, there is no hemibranch (and, of course, no pseudobranch, as the spiracle is absent).

Key Terms: Mouth, Oral Cavity, and Pharynx

branchial arches
branchiostegal rays
gill filaments

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

gill rakers
gills
holobranch
mouth
oral cavity
palatal teeth
pharyngeal teeth
pharynx
posttrematic
pretrematic
teeth

SECTION IV: PLEUROPERITONEAL CAVITY AND VISCERA

To expose the pleuroperitoneal cavity and viscera, make an incision along the midventral line, proceeding as follows. In a female with an enlarged urogenital aperture, insert a scissor blade into the anterolateral margin of the aperture. Make a small incision, approximately 0.5 cm, in this direction, and then turn back anteromedially toward the midline, anterior to the anus. This will avoid injuring the digestive tract. In a specimen with a small urogenital aperture, proceed as just described but begin by inserting the scissor blade into the anus. Continue to cut anteriorly along the midline, keeping close to the deep surface of the body wall, past the pelvic girdle. Turn your incision dorsally to pass posterior to the attachment of the pectoral fin on the body. Cut dorsally past the pectoral fin to a point just posterior to the eye.

Return to the posterior end of the midventral incision. Cut dorsally for about 1 cm, then reflect the flap of body wall and examine the dorsal part of the cavity. You should see a dark, membranous sac, the **swim bladder** (Figures 4.6–4.8). Probe it gently. Resume cutting through the body wall until you reach the level just ventral to the swim bladder (this point will be ventral to the position of the dorsal-most point of the anterior vertical incision). Then cut anteriorly, more or less parallel to the swim bladder, to join the anterior vertical incision. Your incision should veer slightly dorsally as you cut. In addition to the musculature of the body wall, you will also cut through the ventral ribs. Once finished, remove the section of body wall and examine the underlying structures. The viscera are covered by **visceral peritoneum**, whereas the cavity itself is lined by **parietal peritoneum**.

Many female specimens will possess a very large **ovary** that seems to fill most of the pleuroperitoneal cavity (Figure 4.6). In such specimens you will probably be able to see only the darkly colored **liver** at the very anterior end of the cavity. Find the narrow **small intestine** ventral to the ovary. It is normally midventral, but may be displaced to one side by a massive ovary. Note the swim bladder dorsal to the ovary. In specimens with smaller gonads, several other visceral structures may be observed without further dissection. The small intestine is easily identifiable on the floor of the cavity. Posterior to the liver, you should observe the short, thick **stomach**, and perhaps the **spleen** and **gall bladder** if you have opened the right side of the cavity.

Once you have identified these structures, remove more of the body wall, preferably in small pieces, as follows. Remove the wall anterior to the liver, keeping close to the deep surface of the wall and continuously checking that you are not destroying underlying structures. Immediately anterior to the liver is the **transverse septum**, a thin membrane that separates the pleuroperitoneal cavity and the pericardial cavity. Cut through the transverse septum along its attachment to the body wall to expose the **heart** within the pericardial cavity.

At this stage, continue the midventral incision anteriorly to the posterior margin of the mouth, as shown in Figures 4.8 and 4.9. The musculature is thicker here, so cut carefully to avoid damaging the heart. You may wish to use a scalpel. Also cut away the lateral portions of the branchial arches to expose the pharynx. Then remove more of the lateral body wall dorsal to the liver. This will expose a small, dark, lobulated mass, the **head kidney**, lying immediately dorsal to the liver. Once you have exposed the head kidney, use a scalpel to cut a parasagittal section through the musculature dorsal to the swim bladder. This will allow you to expose the **kidneys**, which lie against the dorsal wall of the cavity, dorsal to the swim bladder. Be careful in using the scalpel. It is worth removing a row or two of scales along the path you intend to cut. If this method proves too awkward, find the kidneys by removing the swim bladder, but do so after you have examined the remaining structures described next.

The preparation described above is time-consuming, but it reveals the pattern, context, and arrangement of the various systems and their structures in a single view. Although you can begin with any of the structures, it is best to examine the gonads first, because in many specimens they will be so large that they will have to be removed.

The ovary of the female will vary considerably in size with the reproductive cycle of the fish, and may be massive, filled with eggs (Figure 4.6). The ovary of the perch is secondarily fused into a single structure (although this is not true of most teleosts, which retain paired ovaries) that is enveloped during embryonic development by bilateral peritoneal folds. This envelopment continues posteriorly and meets a funnel-like internal elongation of the urogenital aperture, lying just posterior to the anus. This combination (i.e., of the peritoneum and internal elongation of the aperture) forms an **ovarian duct** for passage of the eggs. The ovarian

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

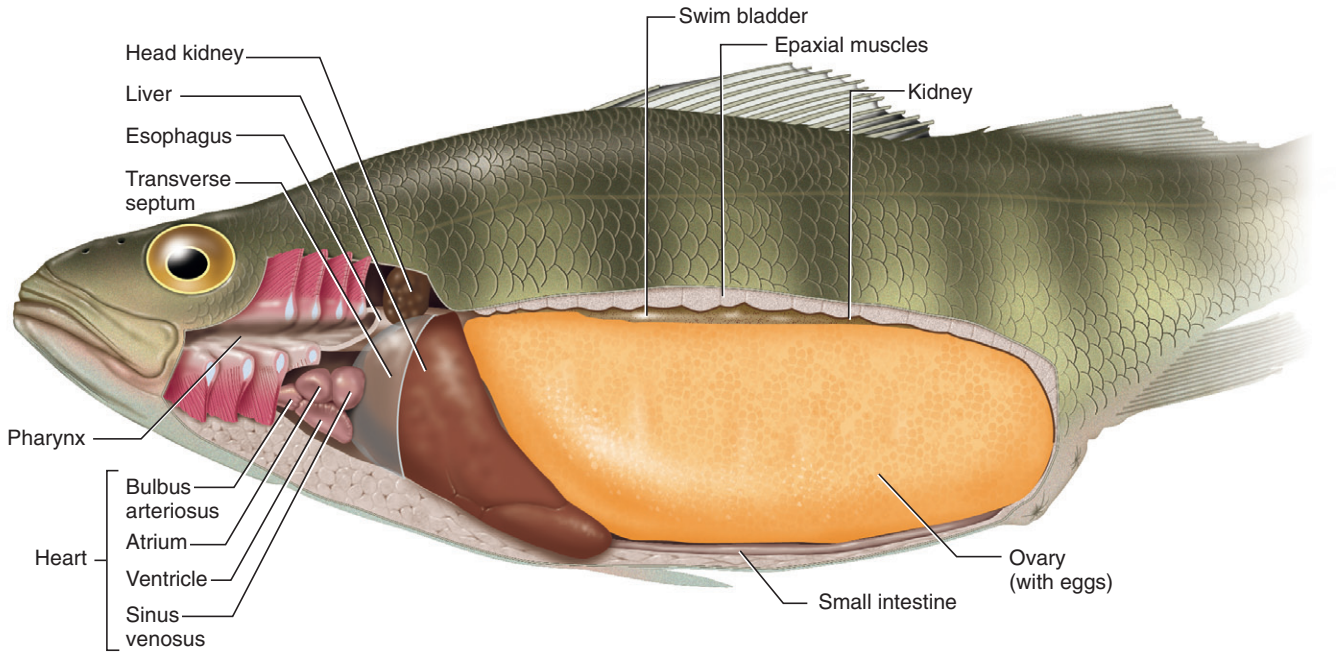


FIGURE 4.6 Left lateral view of the perch with body wall cut away to reveal pharynx and pleuroperitoneal cavity.

duct, however, is not homologous to that (usually considered a Müllerian duct) used for the same purpose in other vertebrates. Gently tugging the posterior end of the ovary will pull taut the funnel-shaped posterior end of the ovarian duct and make it easier to distinguish. In other teleosts the ovarian duct is formed differently. For example, a common pattern is that the ovary contains an internal cavity, formed by envelopment of a small part of the celomic cavity during embryonic development. The eggs are shed into this cavity, the lining of which extends posteriorly to form an ovarian duct. In most teleosts, therefore, the eggs are released directly into a tube, the ovarian duct, rather than into the pleuroperitoneal cavity, as occurs in almost all other vertebrates.

Cut transversely through the ovary, approximately 3 cm from its posterior margin, and carefully remove the anterior portion. This will leave a cone-shaped posterior end in place. Gently reflect it ventrally and delicately dissect between the ovary and swim bladder, now clearly visible, to expose the small, light-colored, elongated, and oval **urinary bladder** (Figure 4.7). The bladder continues posteroventrally into the urinary opening of the urogenital aperture, but postpone tracing it.

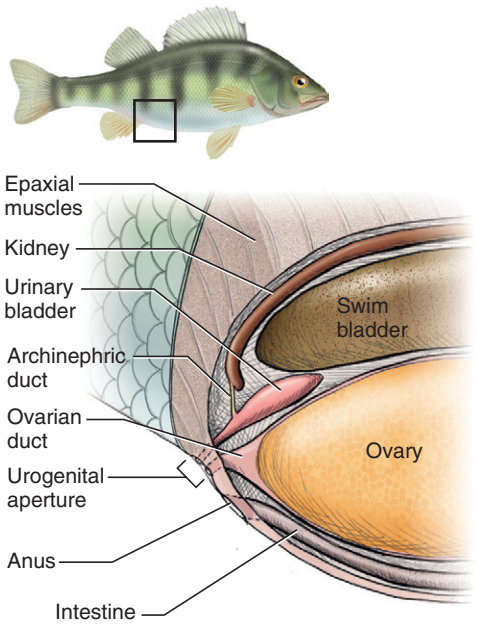


FIGURE 4.7 Schematic illustration showing the urogenital structures of the female perch in right lateral view.

The paired **testes** of the male perch are lobulated, light colored, and posteriorly tapered structures (Figure 4.8). Each testis has its own duct, the **testicular duct**, which carries only sperm. The testicular duct is a specialization of teleosts (although not all teleosts, such as salmonids, possess a duct for the testis; instead, sperm are released by the testes into the body cavity and leave the body through pores) and is not comparable to the archinephric duct observed in sharks. It is fairly small and thus difficult to find without a dissecting microscope. Right and left testicular ducts unite near the posterior end of the testes into a single duct that leads out of the body through the urogenital aperture just posterior to the anus. The opening of the duct can be distinguished from that of the **archinephric duct** (see later)

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

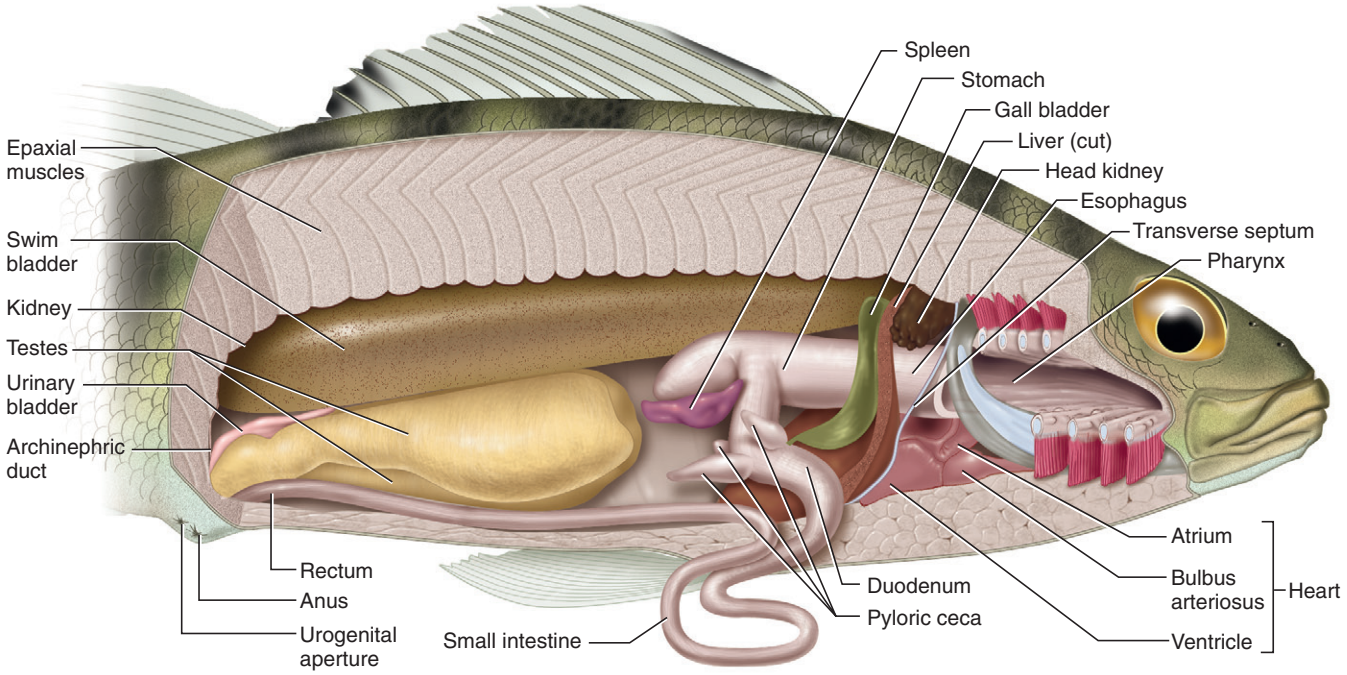


FIGURE 4.8 Cutaway view of the male perch in right lateral view, to reveal structures of the pharynx and pleuroperitoneal cavity.

with a magnifying glass. The urinary bladder lies dorsal to the posterior end of the testes.

Turn your attention to the anterior end of the animal (Figures 4.8 and 4.9). Identify the oral cavity—look now for the teeth described earlier—and follow it posteriorly into the pharynx. The pharynx leads into the wide, short, and straight **esophagus** that passes posteriorly into the stomach. The stomach is **T**-shaped, with a broad horizontal portion and a short, vertical, pyloric portion forming the stem of the **T**. The coiled intestine follows the pyloric portion. Note the three finger-like projections, the **pyloric ceca**, at the anterior end of the intestine. These are typically present in teleosts, though their number varies. The anterior part of the intestine, the **duodenum**, is somewhat wider than the remaining distal portion. Although its terminal portion may be referred to as a **rectum**, it is not sharply demarcated from the rest of the intestine.

Note the structures associated with the digestive tract. The large, massive liver has already been noted. It may be necessary to remove part of it, as shown in Figures 4.8 and 4.9, in order for the stomach and other organs to be seen properly. The gall bladder is a small, elongated sac. The bile duct leads to the duodenum, but it is difficult to find. The **pancreas** cannot be seen grossly. Bits of pancreatic tissue are scattered throughout the mesentery, often embedded in the fatty tissue there (Figure 4.9). The spleen, not properly an organ of the digestive system but concerned with production of blood cells, is an elongated, dark structure near the posterior end of the stomach.

The swim bladder is the large, hollow sac lying, as noted earlier, dorsally in the body cavity. It is not enclosed by the peritoneum, and so is retroperitoneal in position. It is a hydrostatic organ used to control buoyancy. Its inflation decreases the fish's density, thus increasing buoyancy. Its deflation has the opposite effect. The bladder develops as an outgrowth of the anterior part of the digestive tract, and in many teleosts it retains an open duct connection to the esophagus, a condition termed *physostomous*. In the perch, however, the connection between the bladder and gut is lost, the *physoclistous* condition.

The kidneys lie dorsal to the swim bladder and are thus also retroperitoneal. They are long, narrow, ribbon-like structures with somewhat scalloped lateral margins lying on either side of the dorsal midline of the body cavity. Posteriorly, the kidneys curve ventrally, following the surface of the body cavity (Figure 4.7). Each kidney is drained by an archinephric duct (in the males of some species it may also receive sperm, but the more common condition is that represented by the perch, in which a separate testicular duct serves for sperm passage). The right and left archinephric ducts enter the urinary bladder. Urine exits the body through a single duct leading to the urinary opening of the urogenital aperture. Dissection of this region to reveal the ducts is difficult without a microscope and considerable

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

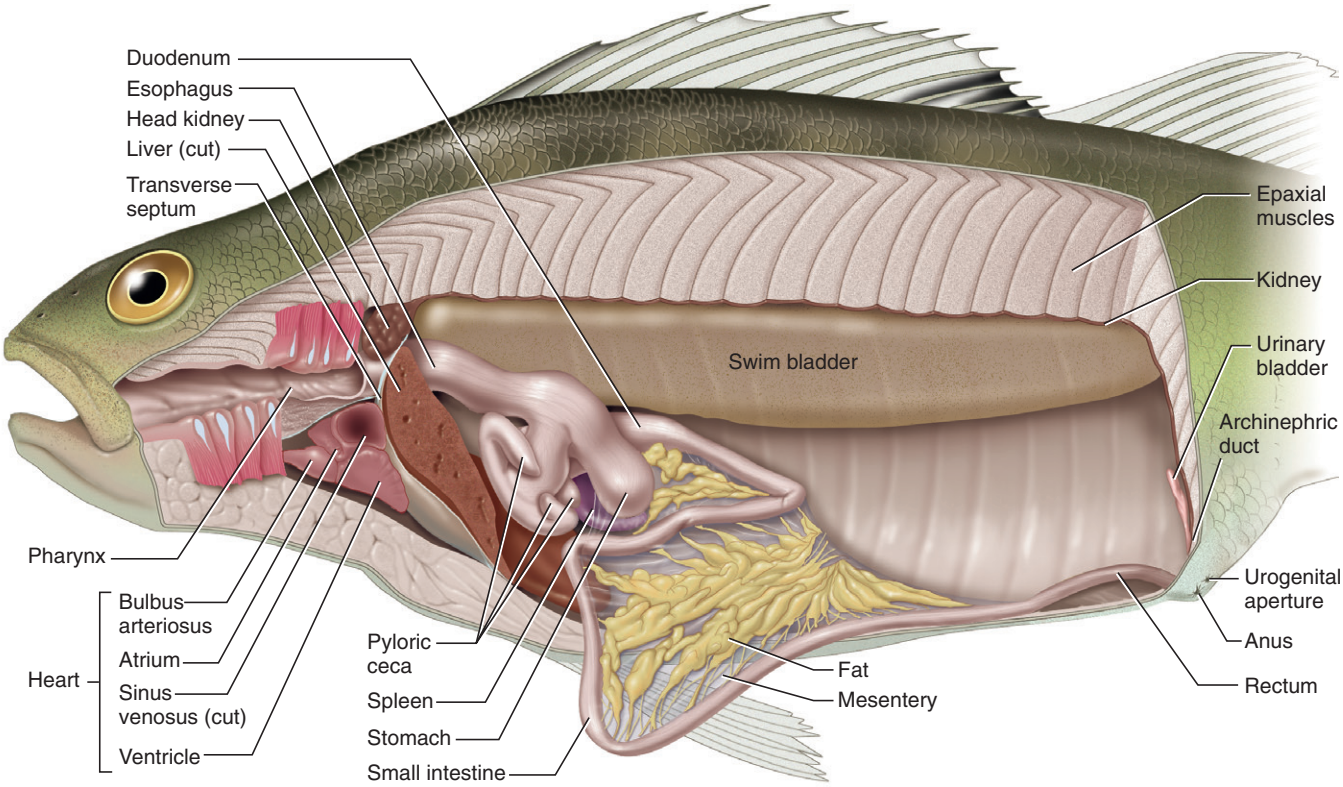


FIGURE 4.9 Cutaway view of the female perch in left lateral view, to reveal structures of the pharynx and pleuroperitoneal cavity.

patience. Figure 4.7 indicates the structures and their relationships.

Finally, examine the heart, which has already been exposed and noted. As in the shark, the heart is an S-shaped, four-chambered structure that receives venous blood posteriorly and pumps it anteriorly into the gills (Figures 4.8 and 4.9). The most posterior chamber is the **sinus venosus**, which directs blood into the **atrium** lying immediately anterior to it. From the atrium, blood enters the **ventricle**, which lies ventrally. The ventricle pumps blood through the fourth chamber, the **bulbus arteriosus**, which leads into the ventral aorta. Afferent branchial arteries branch off the ventral aorta, leading blood through the gills. Efferent branchial arteries recollect the blood into the dorsal aorta, which distributes it to the various parts of the body. Unless you have an injected specimen, the vessels will be difficult to follow.

Key Terms: Pleuroperitoneal Cavity and Viscera

archinephric duct (Wolffian duct)
atrium
bulbus arteriosus
duodenum
esophagus
gall bladder
head kidney
heart
kidneys
liver
ovarian duct
ovary
pancreas
parietal peritoneum
pyloric cecum (plur. **ceca**)
rectum
sinus venosus
small intestine
spleen
stomach
swim bladder
testes
testicular duct
transverse septum
urinary bladder
ventricle
visceral peritoneum

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

CHAPTER

5

The Mudpuppy

INTRODUCTION

The common mudpuppy, *Necturus maculosus*, is a member of Caudata, which together with Anura (frogs and toads) and Gymnophiona (caecilians or apodans) form Amphibia (see Chapter 1). Caudata, including the salamanders and newts, are the least specialized amphibians in body form and locomotion. The body is elongated and stout, with well-developed axial musculature and tail. Salamanders use their limbs in combination with the side-to-side body undulations characteristic of fish, and thus probably resemble the earliest land vertebrates in locomotion. In contrast, frogs (see Chapter 6) are characterized by a shortened body and specialized saltatory locomotion, and the limbless gymnophionans inhabit terrestrial to aquatic habitats.

There are several clades of salamanders, of which Plethiodontidae includes by far the most species. Salamanders range from being fully aquatic to fully terrestrial. Members of several clades do not metamorphose. *Necturus* is commonly included with *Proteus* in Proteidae, a small group of fully aquatic, neotenic (i.e., retaining juvenile features) salamanders that retain their larval, filamentous external gills, two pairs of pharyngeal slits, and caudal fins as adults. *Necturus* includes six species. *N. maculosus* is apparently closely related to *N. lewisi*, the Red River mudpuppy. The remaining species of *Necturus* are commonly referred to as waterdogs.

SECTION I: SKELETON

Cranial Skeleton

Skull

Examine the skeleton of the head on isolated specimens (Figures 5.1–5.3), as well as on a mounted specimen (Figure 5.4) to identify the **skull**, **mandible**, and **hyoid apparatus**. The skull (Figure 5.1) is formed from a dermal skull roof, chondrocranium (Figure 5.2), and palatal complex, itself formed from dermal bones and a remnant of the splanchnocranium (see later). Other parts of the splanchnocranium form the mandible (Figure 5.2) and hyoid apparatus (see Figures 5.1 and 5.3).

The dermal skull roof covers the brain and major sense organs dorsally. The ventral surface, or underside, of the skull is formed mainly by the palatal complex. Between the dermal roof and palatal complex is the chondrocranium, which remains mainly cartilaginous and has only small exposures on the outside of the skull. In the shark (see page 28) the chondrocranium forms a nearly complete enclosing and supportive structure for the brain and major sense organs. The chondrocranium is highly developed in the shark and other chondrichthyeans, but this is necessary because of the near absence of bone in these vertebrates. In most other vertebrates, bone covers the brain dorsally and forms the floor of the skull, so the chondrocranium is a relatively minor structure. This is particularly true in *Necturus*, in which the chondrocranium (Figure 5.2) retains larval characteristics, as do many other parts of the body, and is even less developed than in most vertebrates.

Examine an isolated skull. In dorsal view (Figure 5.1a), the paired **premaxillae** are seen anteriorly, followed by the paired **frontals** and **parietals**. Note the long slender anterior extension of the parietal that extends along the lateral margin of the frontal. The cartilaginous **antorbital processes**, which are part of the chondrocranium (Figure 5.2), project laterally near the anterior end of the parietal bones, but these delicate elements are often missing in prepared specimens. *Necturus* lacks maxillae, elements that are commonly present in the skull of tetrapods, including most other caudates. It is functionally replaced by a modified **vomer**, which forms the anterolateral margin of the skull. Posterior to the antorbital process, the **palatopterygoid** forms the central portion of the lateral margin.

The otic capsules lie at the posterolateral corners of the skull. The paired bones that contribute to each capsule are the **prootics** and the **opisthotics** (Figures 5.1a–c). The prootic lies lateral to the parietal near the suture of the parietals and frontals, and the opisthotic lies posterior to

© 2010 Elsevier Inc.

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

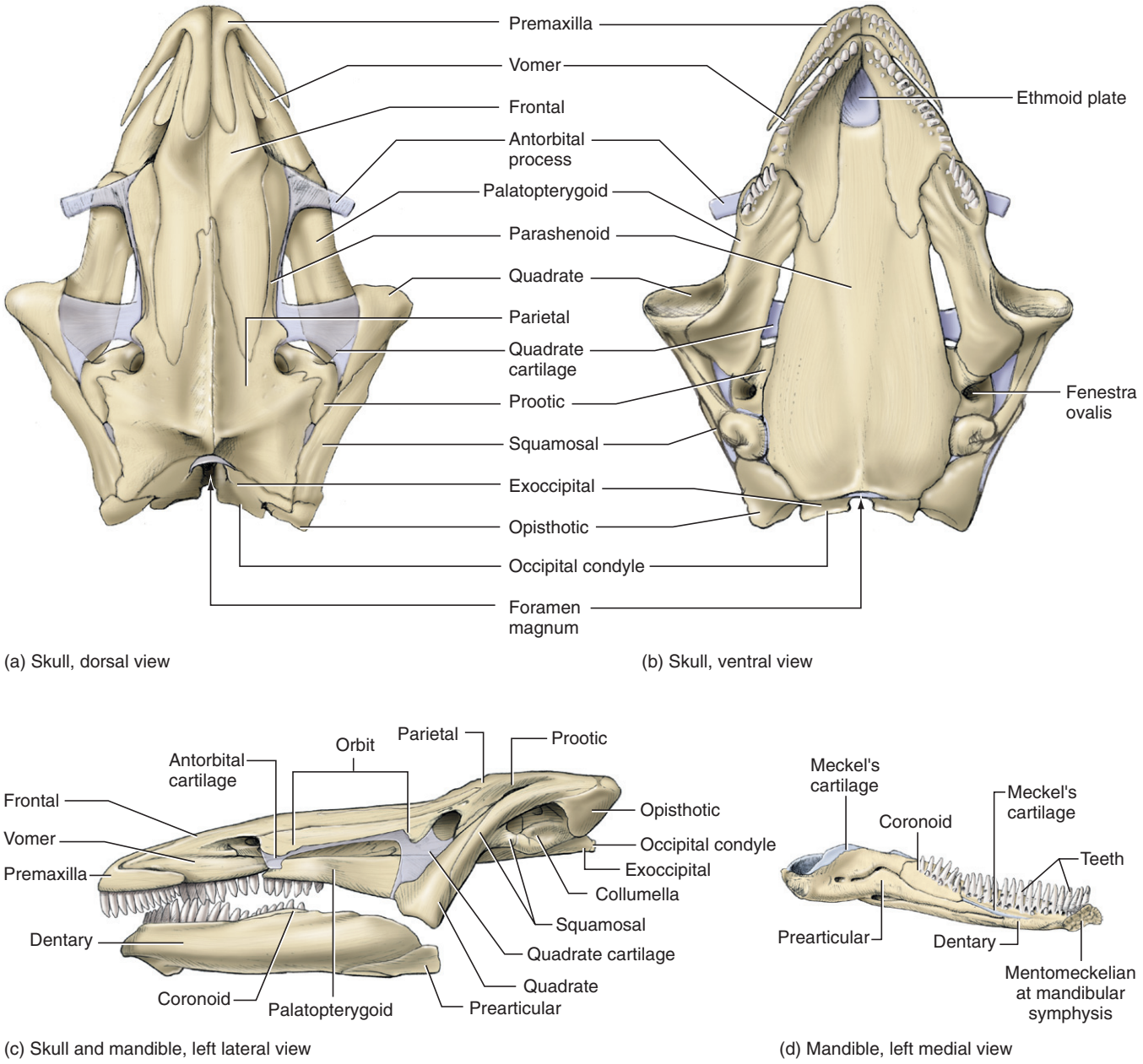


FIGURE 5.1 Skull and mandible of the mudpuppy in (a) skull in dorsal view; (b) skull in ventral view; (c) skull and mandible in left lateral view; and (d) left mandible in medial view.

the squamosal. A cartilaginous region, containing the **fenestra ovalis**, lies between the prootic and opisthotic. The **squamosal** extends anterolaterally from the opisthotic, forming the posterolateral margin of the skull. The **quadrate** articulates with the anterior end of the squamosal and inclines anteroventrally (Figure 5.1c). It contacts the pterygoid anteriorly (Figure 5.1a, b) and forms the jaw joint at its articulation with the mandible. The **quadrate cartilage** forms a slender bridge extending from the anterior end of the quadrate toward the lateral margin of the parietal (Figure 5.1a, c).

Just anterior to the opisthotic, and thus essentially covering the cartilaginous region between the prootic and opisthotic, is the disc-shaped **columella**. The columella covers the oval window, mentioned earlier. A small stylus projects from its lateral surface. The columella, with its stylus, is a small delicate bone that transmits vibrations to the inner ear. It may be missing in your specimen, in which case the oval window should be clearly visible. The **foramen magnum** (Figure 5.1a, b) is the large opening on the posterior surface of the skull through which the spinal cord passes. The **exoccipitals**,

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

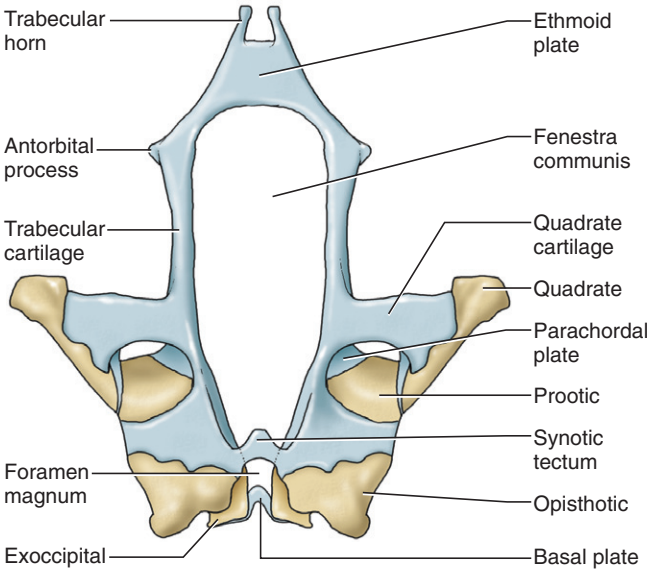


FIGURE 5.2 Chondrocranium of the mudpuppy in dorsal view.

each bearing an **occipital condyle**, form the skull lateral and ventral to the foramen magnum.

Examine the skull in ventral view (Figure 5.1b) and identify the premaxillae, vomers, and palatopterygoids. Note that the premaxillae and palatopterygoids each bear a short row of relatively large anterior teeth, whereas the vomers bear a longer row of teeth. Close inspection reveals a row of smaller teeth lying along the lingual margins of the larger teeth. The large, triangular, and plate-like **parasphenoid** forms nearly all the rest of the skull's ventral surface. A portion of the cartilaginous **ethmoid plate** is visible anterior to the parasphenoid. The palatopterygoid, identified earlier, apparently represents a compound element formed by the pterygoid and palatine, as noted by Trueb (1993). The palatine, which is usually present as an independent element in the palatal region of tetrapod skulls, is not individually recognizable in caudates (at least in adults).

The chondrocranium should be studied in a separate preparation (Figure 5.2), usually set in an acrylic block, even though many of its elements have already been observed. The posterior half of the chondrocranium consists of the otic capsules, with its cartilaginous portion set between the bony prootic and opisthotic, and the exoccipitals. Left and right otic capsules are connected dorsally by a delicate cartilaginous bridge, the **synotic tectum**. The **basal plate** forms a similar bridge between left and right exoccipitals. A **parachordal plate** extends anteriorly from each otic capsule. The **trabecular cartilages** are the slender rod-like elements extending anteriorly from the parachordals. The antorbital processes (noted earlier) project laterally from each trabecula. Beyond the antorbital processes the trabecular cartilages converge to form the ethmoid plate (noted earlier) and then send a pair of **trabecular horns** anteriorly between the nasal capsules, which are extremely delicate and usually not preserved.

Just anterior and lateral to each otic capsule, many preparations include the bony and cartilaginous components of the quadrate. These already have been observed, but remember that they are part of the palatal complex rather than the chondrocranium. They are in part homologous to the palatoquadrate cartilage, and thus belong to the mandibular arch, which is part of the splanchnocranium.

Mandible

The mandible is formed by four elements (Figure 5.1c, d). **Meckel's cartilage** is a cartilaginous structure extending through the interior of the mandible. It is visible mainly in medial view (Figure 5.1d), particularly posteriorly, where it forms the articular surface for the quadrate of the upper jaw. Commonly (but not in *Necturus*), it is this posterior region where the articular ossifies to help form the quadrate-articular jaw joint common in nonmammalian tetrapods. Anteriorly, Meckel's cartilage ossifies as the **mentomeckelian** at the mandibular symphysis.

Meckel's cartilage is mostly covered by the **dentary**, coronoid,[1] and prearticular.[2] The dentary covers most of the lateral surface and bears a long row of marginal teeth. The coronoid, which bears a shorter row of marginal teeth, is broadly exposed in medial view, but has a tiny exposure laterally along the dorsal margin of the central part of the mandible. The prearticular covers much of the posterior part of the mandible in medial view, tapering anteriorly as a wedge on the dentary.

Hyoid Apparatus

The hyoid apparatus (Figure 5.3) is large and composed of the hyoid arch and parts of the first three branchial arches. The hyoid arch is the largest and most anterior, and supports the tongue. It is composed on each side by the small **hypohyal** and, more laterally, the larger **ceratohyal**. The median **basibranchial 1** extends posteriorly from the hypohyals to the base of the first branchial arch, which is also composed on each side by two

[1]In several dissection manuals (such as Holmberger and Walker, 2004; Wischnitzer and Wischnitzer, 2006), the coronoid is termed the splenial. Our designation follows Trueb (1993).

[2]This element is labeled as the articular CHECK in the dissection manuals noted immediately prior. However, Trueb (1993) indicated that the medial dermal bone in this region is the prearticular, and that the angular (commonly present as an independent element in nonmammalian tetrapods) is fused posteriorly to the prearticular.

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

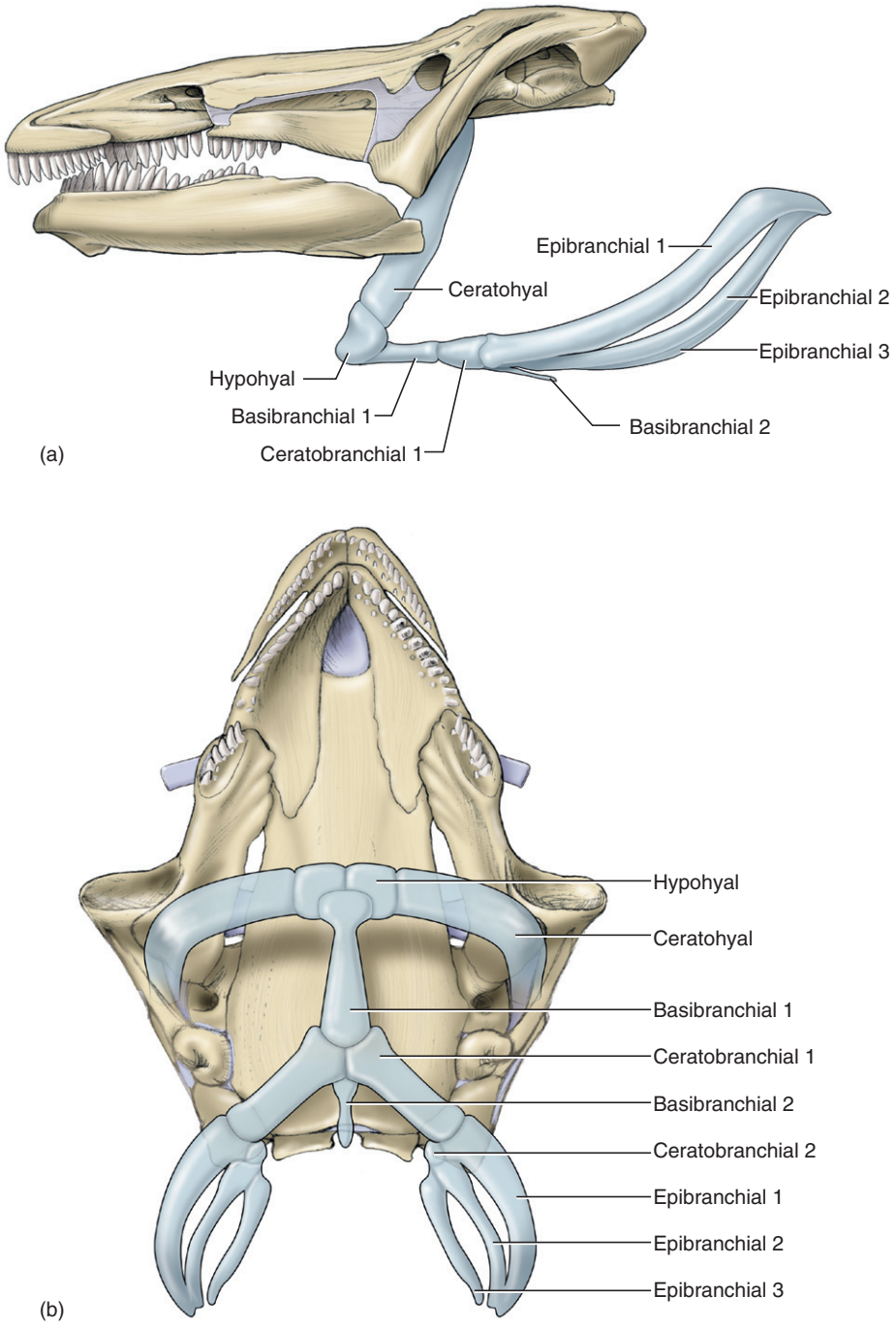


FIGURE 5.3 (a) Skull, mandible, and hyoid apparatus of the mudpuppy in left lateral view; and (b) skull and hyoid apparatus of the mudpuppy in ventral view.

large elements, **ceratobrachial 1** and **epibranchial 1**. The more slender **basibranchial 2** extends posteriorly from the left and right ceratobranchial 1. **Ceratobranchial 2** is a tiny, nodular element at the base of **epibranchial 2**. **Epibranchial 3** lies posterior to epibranchial 2. The remaining branchial arches are apparently represented by tiny cartilaginous elements, but these are rarely preserved in prepared specimens.

Key Terms: Cranial Skeleton

antorbital process
basal plate
basibranchial
ceratobranchial
ceratohyal
coronoid (splenial)

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

columella
dentary
epibranchial
ethmoid plate
exoccipital
fenestra ovalis (oval window)
foramen magnum
frontal
hyoid apparatus
hypohyal
mandible
Meckel's cartilage (mandibular cartilage)
mentomeckelian
occipital condyle
opisthotic
palapterygoid
parachordal plate
parasphenoid
parietals
prearticular
premaxilla
prootic
quadrate
quadrate cartilage
skull
squamosal
synotic tectum
trabecular cartilage
trabecular horn
vomer

Postcranial Skeleton

Axial Skeleton

The axial skeleton consists of four types of vertebrae (Figure 5.4). Most anteriorly is the single **cervical vertebra** that articulates with the occipital condyles of the skull. In addition to this set of articulations is another: an anteroventral process of the atlas (the odontoid process) projects into the foramen magnum and articulates with the lateral margins of the foramen. Posteriorly, the atlas articulates with the first of the long series of **trunk vertebrae** (Figures 5.4 and 5.5). The latter bear **transverse processes**, which extend from the **centrum** and articulate with small, Y-shaped, posterolaterally directed **ribs**. The **neural canal** passes dorsal to the centrum. The **neural arch** forms the roof of the canal and bears a **neural process**. **Prezygapophyses** and **postzygapophyses** are present for articulation with the preceding vertebrae and succeeding vertebra, respectively. A single **sacral vertebra** (Figures 5.4 and 5.8) articulates with the pelvic girdle by way of its ribs. The **caudal vertebrae** (Figure 5.6), each bearing a **hemal arch**, follow the sacral vertebra. Most lack ribs, but bear transverse processes.

Appendicular Skeleton

The **pectoral girdle** (Figure 5.7) is composed of left and right halves that overlap ventrally but do not fuse. The ossified **scapula** is a short bone that dorsally bears the **suprascapular cartilage**. The **glenoid fossa**, the depression that articulates with the forelimb, is on the ventral surface of the scapula. The slender, elongated **procoracoid cartilage** projects anteriorly from the glenoid fossa. The **coracoid cartilage** forms the broad, ventral, plate-like part of the girdle; it is these cartilages that partly overlap.

As is typical of tetrapods, the forelimb consists of the brachium, antebrachium, and manus in proximal to distal order. The brachium is supported by the **humerus**. In the antebrachium the **radius** is the anteromedial bone, and the **ulna** is the posterolateral bone. The manus

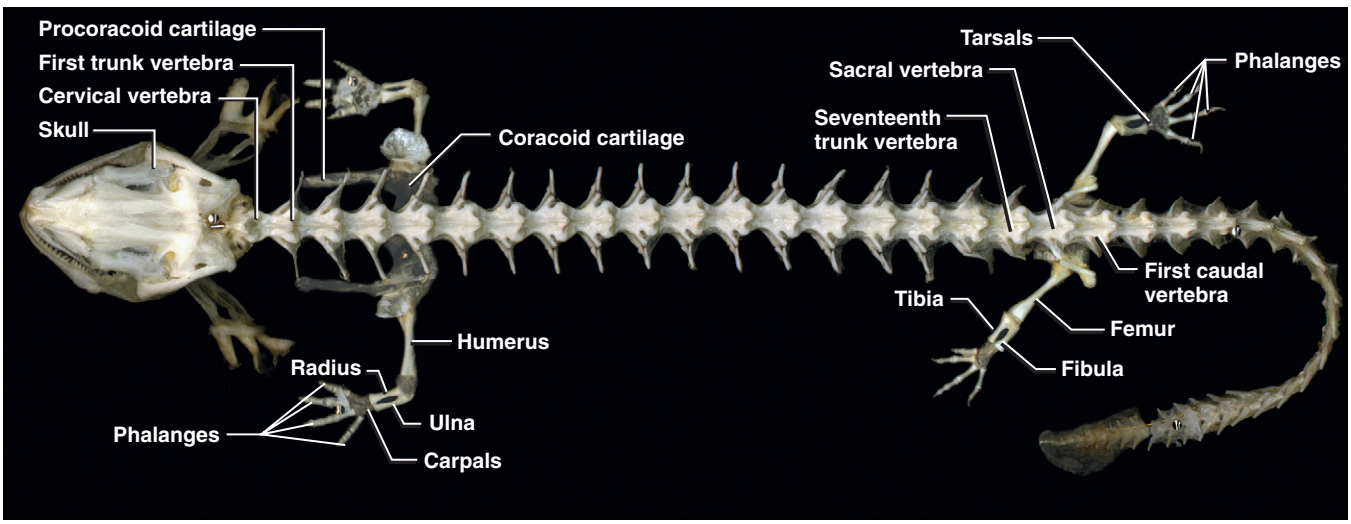


FIGURE 5.4 Skeleton of the mudpuppy in dorsal view.

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

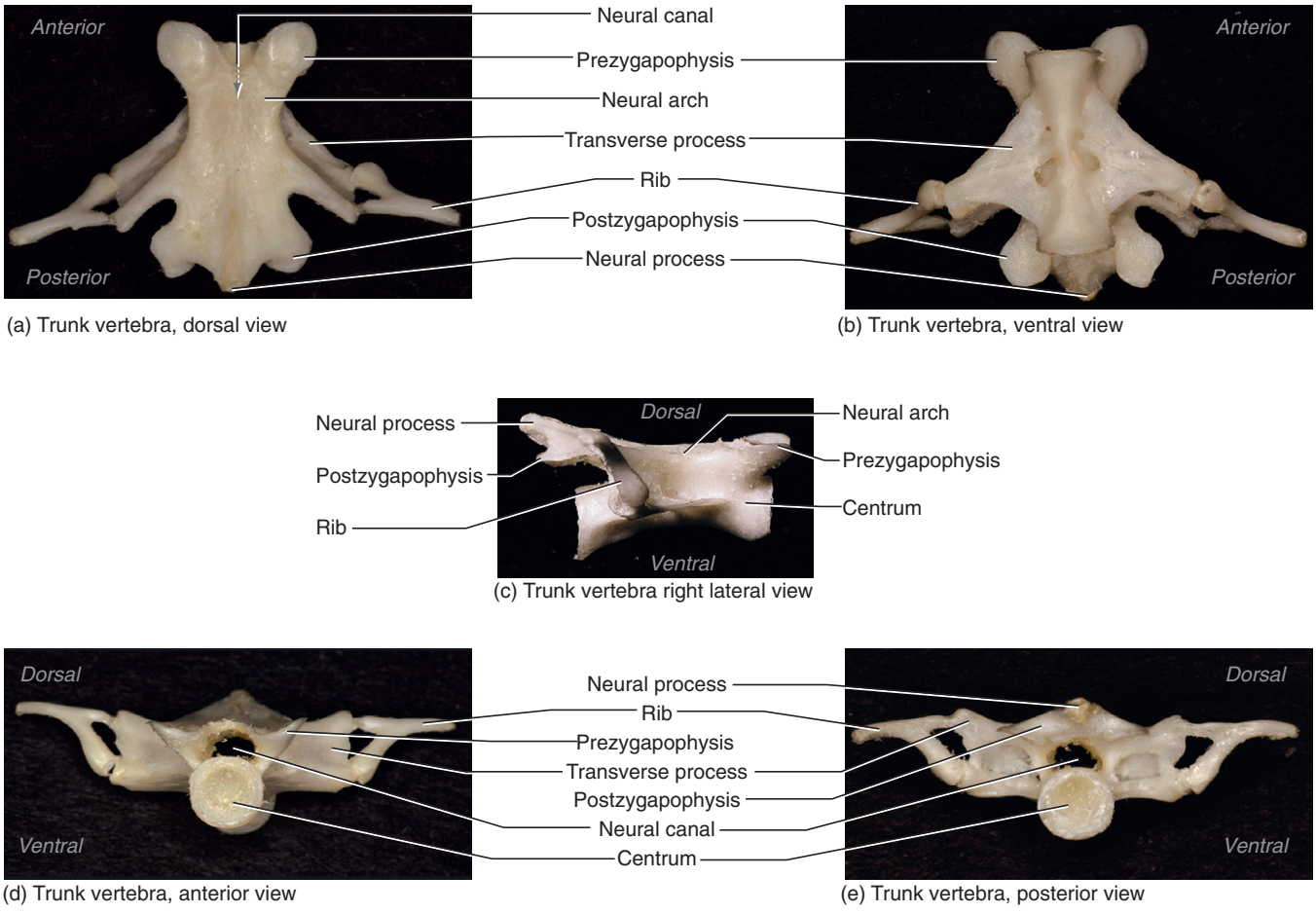


FIGURE 5.5 Trunk vertebra of the mudpuppy in (a) dorsal, (b) ventral, (c) right lateral, (d) anterior, and (e) posterior views.

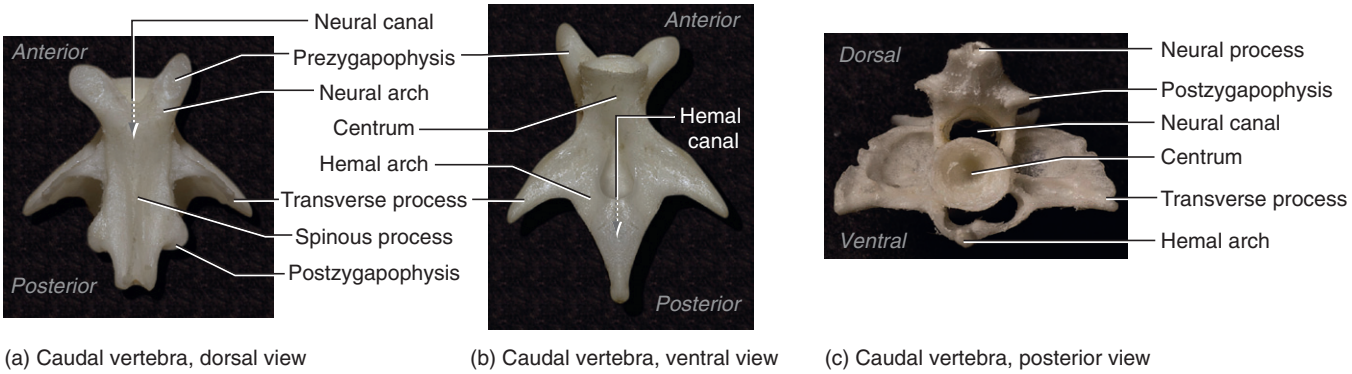
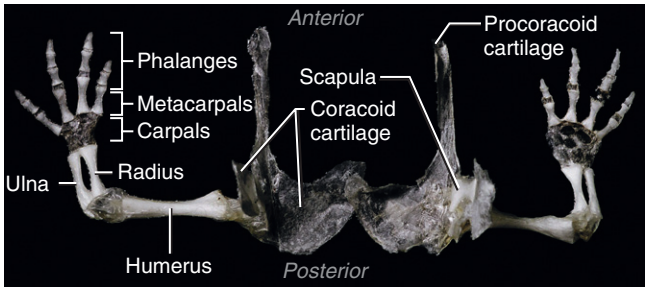


FIGURE 5.6 Caudal vertebra of the mudpuppy in (a) dorsal, (b) ventral, and (c) posterior views.

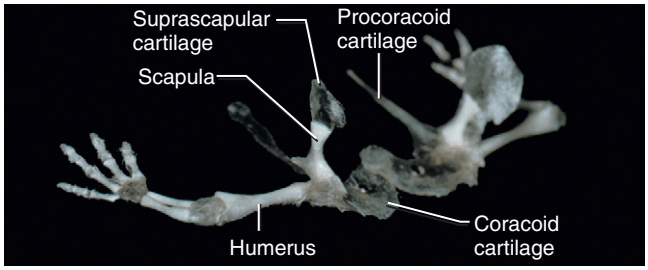
includes six cartilaginous **carpals**, followed distally by four digits. The most proximal segment of each digit is a **metacarpal**, and the more distal elements are **phalanges**. There is some ambiguity as to the use of the term digit. It is considered by some to include only the phalanges, the free elements of the manus (or pes), and by others to include the metacarpals (or metatarsals) plus the phalanges. Here, we follow the latter scheme, as outlined by Kardong (2009).

The **pelvic girdle** (Figure 5.8), like the pectoral, is mainly cartilaginous. The **ilium** is ossified and extends ventrally from its articulation with the rib of the sacral vertebra toward the **acetabulum**, the depression that articulates with the hind limb. The girdle is formed

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com



(a) Pectoral girdle, dorsal view



(b) Pectoral girdle, left posterodorsolateral view

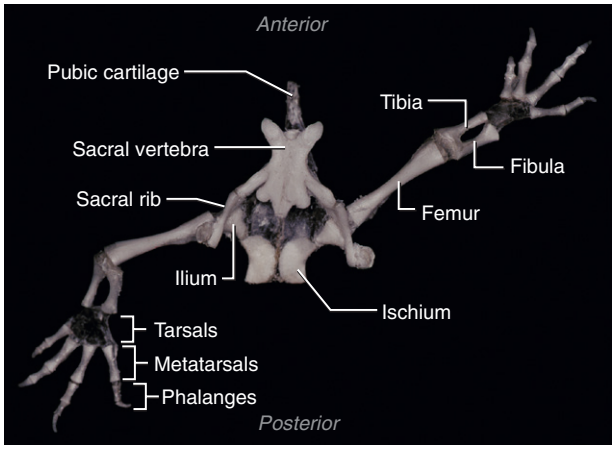
FIGURE 5.7 Pectoral girdle and forelimbs of the mudpuppy in (a) dorsal and (b) posterodorsolateral views.

ventrally by the expansive **puboischiadic plate**. Examine the plate in ventral view. The elongated, triangular **pubic cartilage** is the anterior portion. The posterior portion is the **ischiadic cartilage**, which contains a pair of ossifications termed **ischia**. Note the **obturator foramen** just anterior to each acetabulum.

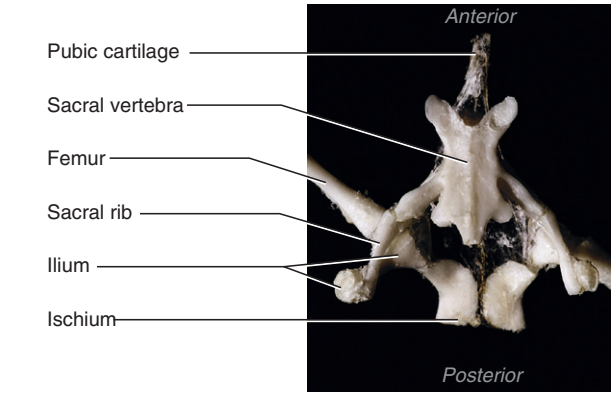
The hind limb is also formed of three segments, the thigh, crus, and pes. The **femur** is the single bone of the thigh. The **tibia** and **fibula** lie anteriorly and posteriorly, respectively, in the crus. The pes is formed proximally by six cartilaginous **tarsals** and distally by four ossified digits. The proximal bone of each digit is a **metatarsal**, and the distal elements are **phalanges**.

Key Terms: Postcranial Skeleton

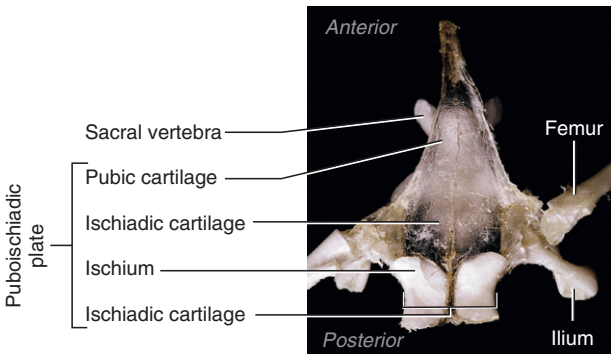
acetabulum
carpals
caudal vertebrae
centrum (vertebral body)
cervical vertebra
coracoid cartilage
femur
fibula
glenoid fossa
hemal arch
humerus
ilium
ischiadic cartilage



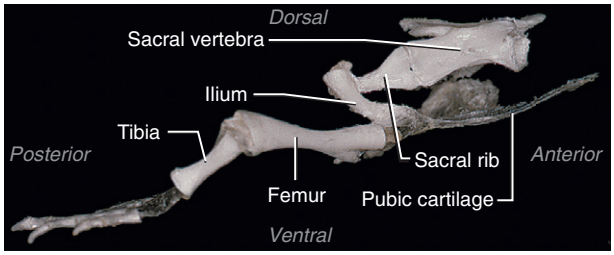
(a) Pelvic girdle, dorsal view



(b) Pelvic girdle, dorsal view (closeup)



(c) Pelvic girdle, ventral view (closeup)



(d) Pelvic girdle, right lateral view

FIGURE 5.8 Pelvic girdle and hind limbs of the mudpuppy in (a) dorsal view, (b) close-up of pelvic girdle in dorsal view, (c) close-up of pelvic girdle in ventral view, and (d) right lateral view.

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

ischium (pl., **ischia**)
metacarpal
metatarsal
neural arch (vertebral arch)
neural canal (vertebral canal)
neural process (spinous process)
obturator foramen
pectoral girdle
pelvic girdle
phalanges
postzygapophysis
prezygapophysis
procoracoid cartilage
pubic cartilage
puboischiadic plate
radius
ribs
sacral vertebra
scapula
suprascapular cartilage
tarsals
tibia
transverse process
trunk vertebrae
ulna

SECTION II: EXTERNAL ANATOMY

Perhaps the mudpuppy's (Figure 5.9) most striking larval feature is the presence of three pairs of **external gills**, located just posterior to the flattened **head**. Also retained are two pairs of **pharyngeal slits**, one between the first and second gills, the other between the second and third gills. The slits may be probed but will be observed later (Figure 5.25). Note the prominent transverse **gular fold**.

The **mouth** is large and bounded by **labia** (sing., **labium**) or lips. The lidless **eyes** are small, as are the widely separated **nares**, which communicate with the oral cavity (see later). A short **neck** is present between the head and the long **trunk**. Posteriorly, the large, flattened **tail** bears a small, marginal **fin**, which lacks the supporting rays present in fishes.

Paired **pectoral** and **pelvic limbs** are small, but bear the three segments typical of terrestrial tetrapods. The **cloaca**, marking the posterior end of the trunk, lies ventrally between the pelvic limbs. In males the cloacal aperture is surrounded by small projections or papillae. The region around the cloaca is swollen due to the presence of the **cloacal gland**. Lastly, note the smooth, scaleless skin, which has an important gas exchange function. A lateral line system is present as well, but is not obvious.

Key Terms: External Anatomy

cloaca
cloacal gland
external gills
eyes
fin
gular fold
head
labia (sing., **labium**)
mouth
nares (sing., **naris**)
neck
pectoral limbs
pelvic limbs
pharyngeal slits
tail
trunk

SECTION III: MUSCULAR SYSTEM

The musculature of the mudpuppy is more complex than that of fish. Among the many changes involved in

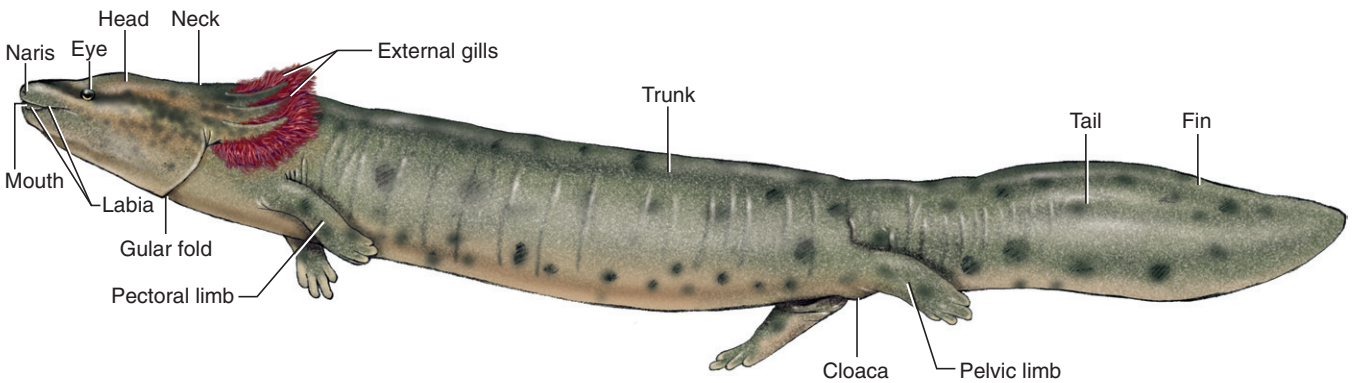


FIGURE 5.9 External features of the mudpuppy in left lateral view.

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

the transition from an entirely aquatic to a mainly terrestrial mode of life are those involved in locomotion and support. Although the mudpuppy is aquatic, it has a tetrapod body plan and the musculature, particularly of the appendages and trunk, has become differentiated to serve these specialized functions. In addition, the musculature that controls the jaws and tongue has also become specialized.

Study of the musculature first involves removing the skin. Although the specimen in the figures of this chapter have been skinned completely, you need only skin one half of the body. Make a short, shallow incision in the abdominal region, just to one side of the midventral line, preferably on that side of the body that has already been opened for injection (if your specimen has been so prepared). Use a needle or thin probe to lift the skin from the underlying musculature. Once you are sure that you have cut through only skin, continue the incision, lifting the skin with a probe as you do so, anteriorly to the level of the gular fold and posteriorly past the cloaca and onto the tail.

Begin to separate the skin from the musculature using a probe or needle. Although it is easier to separate the skin from the musculature than in the dogfish, proceed cautiously as the muscles of the mudpuppy are delicate. Work your way toward the dorsal surface of the opposite side of the body. Anteriorly, make a transverse cut, back across the midventral line, and onto the other side of the body, following the margin of the gular fold. Do not remove the skin from the fold at this time. Continue the cut around the posterior edge of the last external gill. Then, curve anteriorly and down along the anterior edge of the first external gill toward the angle of the jaw. Separate the skin from the musculature as you cut. Posteriorly, make a transverse cut, back across the midventral line, and onto the other side of the body.

Make an anteroposterior incision just to one side of the midventral line of the head. Extend the incision, using scissors as described earlier, posteriorly to the margin of the gular fold, and anteriorly to the leading edge of the mandible. Then cut the skin along the margin of the gular fold and along the ventral edge of the mandible, around the angle of the jaw and along the margin of the upper jaw. When you reach the level of the eye, cut dorsally to the posterior edge of the eye and then proceed slightly anterior to the eye toward the dorsal midline. Continue to separate skin from muscles until you have removed the skin from one half of the body.

A classification of the muscles of the mudpuppy is presented in Table 5.1. The classification is based ultimately on embryonic derivation, which makes comparison of different muscles among vertebrates (that is, the establishment of homologies) much easier. It is fairly straightforward to trace the evolutionary changes among different muscles when comparing among similar vertebrates (for example, different sorts of fishes), but is less easy when trying to homologize muscle of vertebrates that have considerably different body types, such as a fish and a tetrapod. On the other hand, strict adherence to such a classification is not the most convenient method to work through a dissection to identify the muscles. Thus, the muscles are described here according to position.

Muscles of the Trunk and Tail

Examine the musculature of the trunk and tail in lateral view (Figure 5.10). It is subdivided, on each side of the body, by the **horizontal skeletogenous septum** into dorsal **epaxial** and ventral **hypaxial** musculature. Compared to the dogfish, the epaxial musculature is relatively reduced, in part reflecting its diminished importance in locomotion, and the septum is thus more dorsal in position. The musculature consists of **myomeres** separated by **myosepta** as in fishes, but note that the myomeres are relatively simple, rather than assuming the complexly folded pattern observed in fishes. The musculature is subdivided into left and right portions by a middorsal septum (Figure 5.12) and ventrally by the linea alba (Figure 5.14).

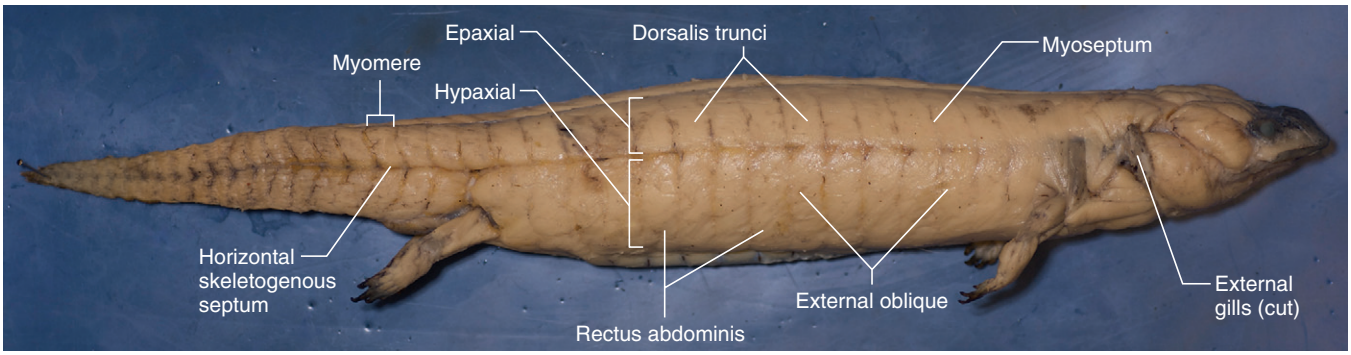


FIGURE 5.10 Musculature of the mudpuppy in right lateral view.

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

TABLE 5.1 Classification of Mudpuppy Musculature

AXIAL MUSCLES
Epaxial Muscles
dorsalis trunci (posterior portion)
interspinalis muscles
Epibranchial Muscles
dorsalis trunci (anterior portion)
Hypaxial Muscles
caudocruralis
external oblique
ischiocaudalis
internal oblique
levator scapulae (acts on pectoral girdle)
rectus abdominis
subvertebralis
thoraciscapularis (acts on pectoral girdle)
transversus abdominis
Hypobranchial Muscles
Prehyoid Muscles
genioglossus
geniohyoideus
Posthyoid Muscles
omoarcual (acts on pectoral girdle)
pectoriscapularis (acts on pectoral girdle)
rectus cervicus
BRANCHIOMERIC MUSCLES
Mandibular Muscles
adductor mandibulae anterior
adductor mandibulae externus
intermandibularis
Hyoid Muscles
branchiohyoideus
depressor mandibulae
interhyoideus
sphincter colli
Branchial Muscles
cucullaris (acts on pectoral girdle)
depressores arcuum
dilatator laryngis
levatores arcuum
subarculaes
transversi ventrales
APPENDICULAR MUSCLES
Pectoral Muscles
coracobrachialis
coracoradialis
dorsalis scapulae
extensor antebrachii et carpi radialis
extensor antebrachii et carpi ulnaris
extensor digitorum communis (of forelimb)
flexor antebrachii et carpi radialis
flexor antebrachii et carpi ulnaris
flexor superficialis longus
humeroantebrachialis
latissimus dorsi
pectoralis
procoracohumeralis
subcoracoscapularis
supracoracoideus
triceps
Pelvic Muscles
caudofemoralis
extensor fibularis
extensor tibialis
flexor primordialis communis
ilioextensorius
ilioextensor digitorum communis (of hind limb)
iliofemoralis
iliofibularis
tibialis
ischiofemoralis
ischioflexorius
puboischiofemoralis externus
puboischiofemoralis internus
puboischiotibialis
pubotibialis

The epaxial musculature is subdivided by myosepta, but the more superficial bundles mainly fuse together to form the **dorsalis trunci**, a longitudinal muscle extending anteroposteriorly from the trunk into the tail, where it becomes laterally compressed (Figure 5.10). Deeper portions of the epaxial musculature include bundles, the interspinal muscles, which extend between vertebrae, but these are not illustrated here (though they are listed in Table 5.1).

The hypaxial musculature of fishes comprises a single sheet, but in tetrapods it is subdivided into several portions. Among these are three sheet-like flank layers that cover the pleuroperitoneal cavity laterally. The most superficial of these layers is the **external oblique**, the fibers of which extend posteroventrally (Figures 5.10 and 5.11a). Deep to it is the **internal oblique**, the middle layer. Expose it by making a shallow dorsoventral cut through the external oblique of one of the myomeres about midway between the forelimb and the hind limb (Figure 5.11a). Work slowly, making additional shallow cuts and gently probing the fibers until you can see a change in the fiber direction. The fibers of the internal oblique extend posterodorsally, and thus oriented at nearly right angles to those of the external oblique. When you reach this layer, you may more readily cut away portions of the external oblique to expose the

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

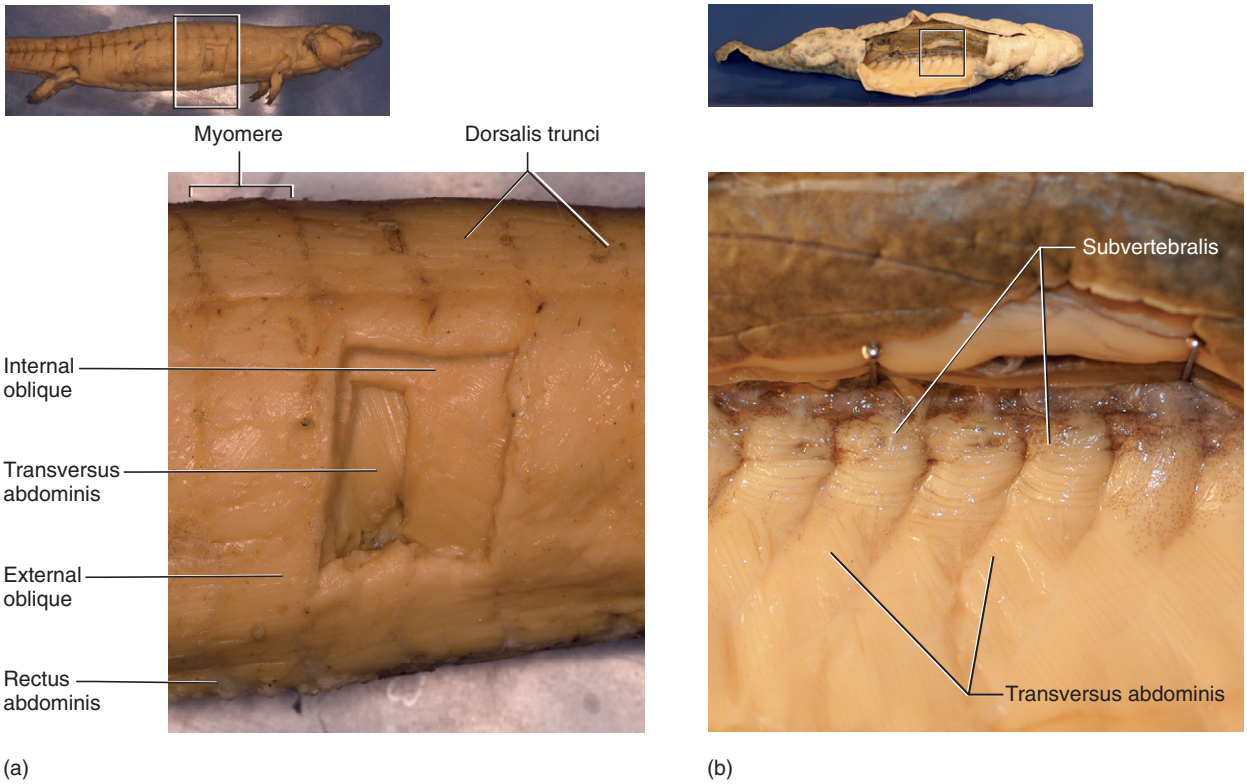


FIGURE 5.11 Hypaxial muscles of the mudpuppy in (a) flank muscles in lateral view, with deeper layers exposed in successive cut-outs of body wall, and (b) subvertebralis muscle, with body cavity opened.

internal oblique more broadly. The deepest layer is the **transversus abdominis**. To expose it, repeat the procedure just described to cut through the internal oblique. You may wish to further expose the internal oblique by dissecting a different myomere. This has been done for two adjacent myomeres in Figure 5.11a. The fiber direction of the tranversus abdominis is different again, in this case nearly dorsoventral.

Other subdivisions of the hypaxial musculature are the **subvertebralis** and the **rectus abdominis**. The former represents a dorsal subdivision, extending from vertebra to vertebra and attaching to the lateral surface of each centrum and the transverse processes of the vertebrae. The best way to observe it is in ventral view with the body cavity exposed, as is shown in Figure 5.11b. However, do not look for the subvertebralis until you have studied the structures within the cavity. When you are ready to do so, examine the musculature on the dorsal wall of the body cavity. Observing the fibers clearly will require you to carefully remove the peritoneum, the thin layer of serous epithelium that lines the body cavity. The fibers of the subvertebralis extend longitudinally. Laterally adjacent to it is the transversus abdominis, the deepest layer of the flank muscles, already noted in the previous paragraph. The rectus abdominis, clearly visible in external view, is the ventral subdivision of the hypaxial musculature, and extends anteroposteriorly just lateral to the linea alba (Figure 5.22a).

Muscles of the Head and Pectoral Region

Examine the musculature of the head and pectoral region (Figures 5.12–5.14). The muscles that close the jaw occupy the lateral and dorsal surface of the head largely posterior to the eyes (Figures 5.12 and 5.13). The bulky lateral muscle is the **adductor mandibulae externus**, which is partially subdivided. It arises from the quadrate and squamosal of the skull and inserts on the mandible. Medial to it is the **adductor mandibulae anterior**, which lies adjacent to the middorsal line and extends anteriorly, medial to the eye. It arises from the frontal and parietal and inserts on the mandible. Posterolateral to the adductor mandibulae externus is the **branchiohyoideus**, considered further later.

Posterior to the head muscles, observe the dorsalis trunci extending forward to the head (Figure 5.12). The delicate dorsal portions of several muscles may be seen on either side of the dorsalis trunci in the gill and pectoral regions. Although these are labeled in Figure 5.12, they are better observed in lateral view (Figure 5.13a), as described later. If you haven't already

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

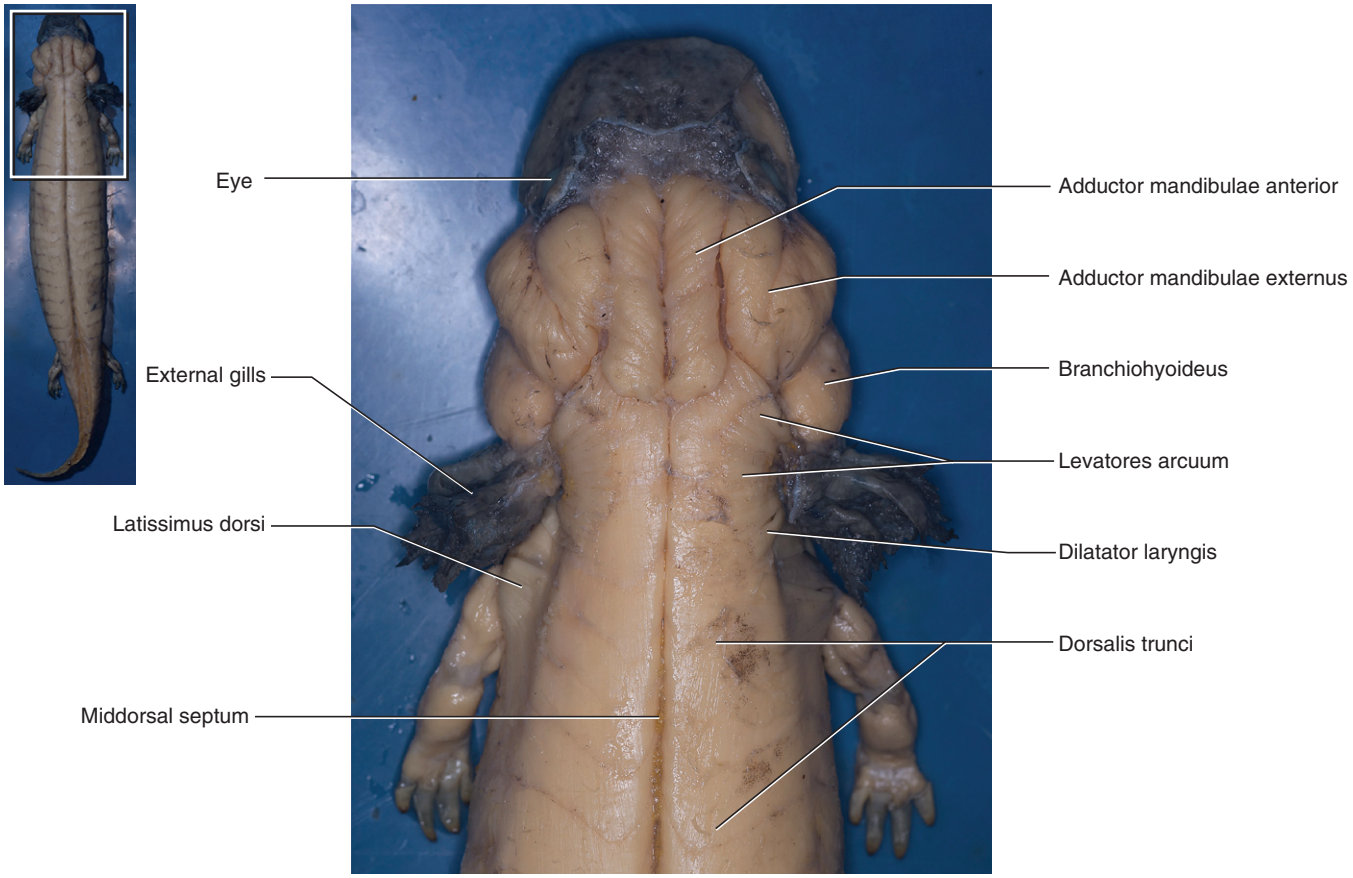


FIGURE 5.12 Musculature of the head and pectoral region of the mudpuppy in dorsal view.

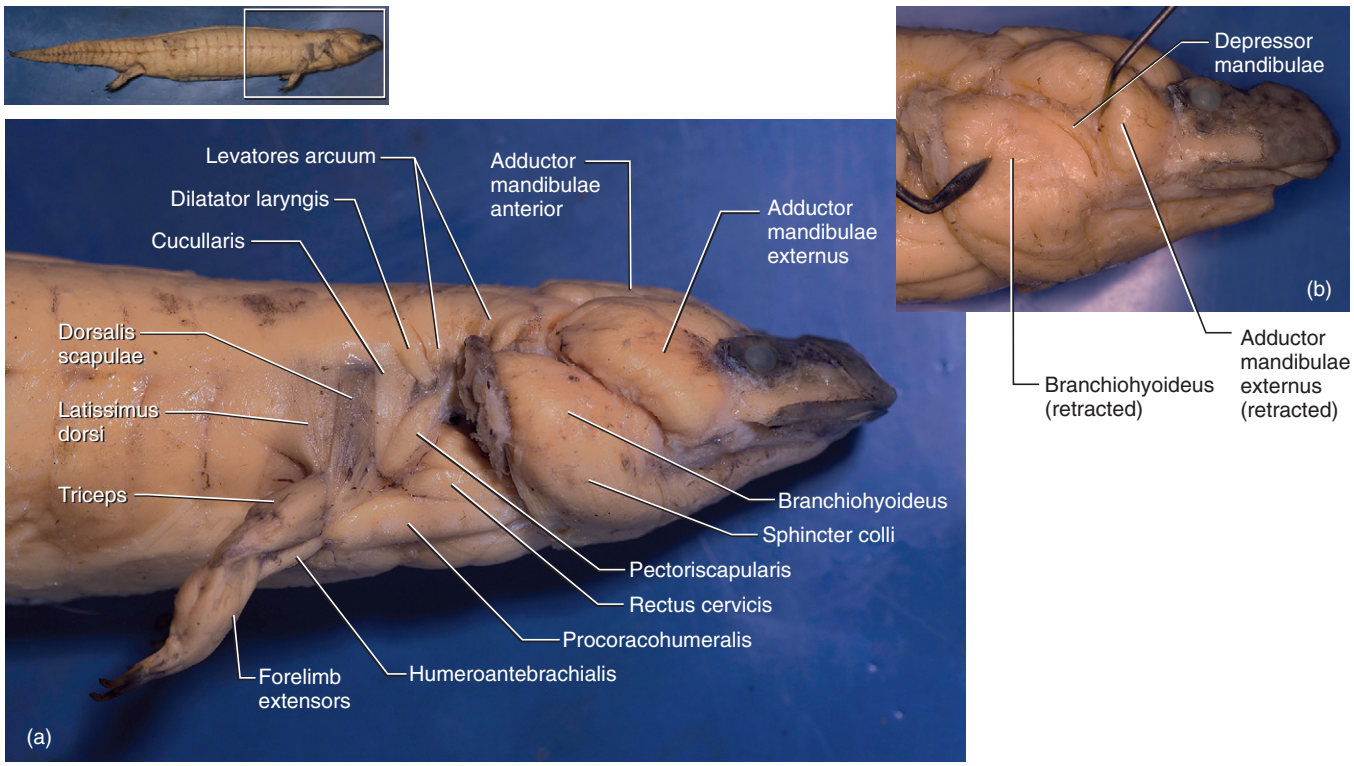


FIGURE 5.13 Musculature of the head and pectoral region of the mudpuppy in right lateral view.

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

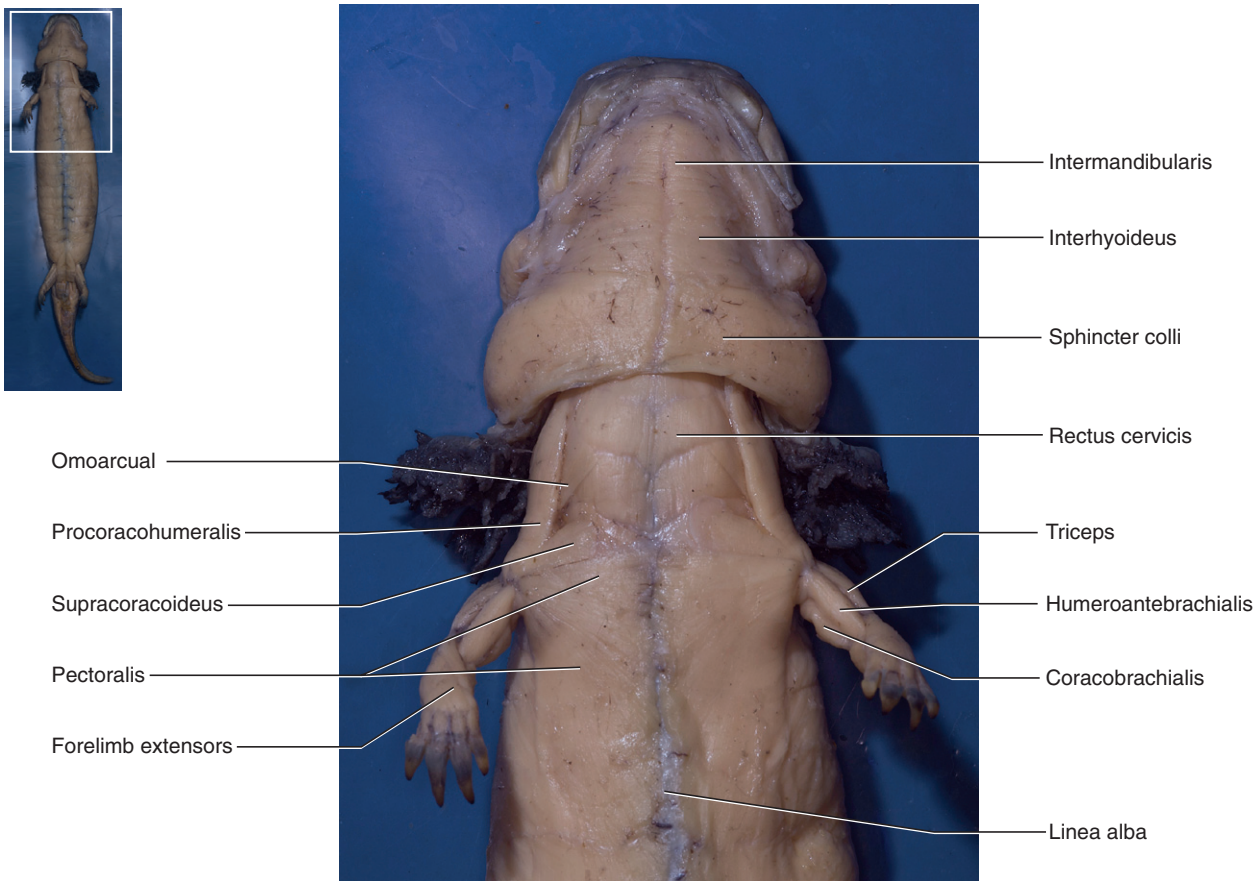


FIGURE 5.14 Musculature of the head and pectoral region of the mudpuppy in ventral view.

done so, cut off the external gills of one side close to their base.

Examine the pectoral region in lateral view (Figure 5.13a). Dorsal to the forelimb are two fan-shaped muscles. The larger, more posterior **latissimus dorsi** arises from the fascia covering the dorsalis trunci. Its converging fibers extend mainly anteroventrally to insert on the humerus, and it functions to retract the forelimb. Anterior to it, the smaller **dorsalis scapulae** arises from the suprascapular cartilage and passes ventrally, its fibers converging to insert on the humerus. It serves to pull the humerus anteriorly. Two smaller, strap-like muscles lie anterior to the dorsalis scapulae. The **cucullaris** is immediately anterior to it, followed by the **pectoriscapularis**. The former arises from the fascia of the dorsalis trunci, and its nearly parallel fibers extend slightly posteroventrally to insert on the scapula, serving to pull it anterodorsally. The fibers of the pectoriscapularis extend slightly more obliquely from the epibranchial cartilage to insert on the scapula, pulling it anteriorly. The fibers of the **rectus cervicus** may be observed passing anteriorly from beneath the ventral margin of the pectoriscapularis. The **procoracohumeralis**, with fibers also extending anteroposteriorly, lies ventral to the rectus cervicus and is considered later.

A fan-shaped series of delicate muscles lies dorsal to the base of the external gills (Figure 5.13a). The more posterior fibers constitute the **dilatator laryngis**. It arises from the epaxial musculature, crosses the origin of the cucullaris, and passes medially to insert on the laryngeal cartilages. It functions to open the glottis. Anterior to the dilatator laryngis are several slips that constitute the **levatores arcuum** muscles. These arise, like the dilatator laryngis, from the fascia covering the dorsalis trunci but insert on the branchial arches to raise the gills.

The broader **branchiohyoideus** lies anterior to the base of the external gills. The muscle arises from the first branchial arch. Its fibers extend anteroventrally and, near the angle of the jaw, pass deep to the fibers of the **sphincter colli**, and then extend anteriorly, on the ventral surface, to insert on the ceratohyal cartilage. It functions to retract the hyoid apparatus. Its ventral portion will be examined later. The **depressor mandibulae**, which opens the jaw, lies between the adductor mandibulae externus and branchiohyoideus. To see it, retract and look between these two muscles, as shown

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

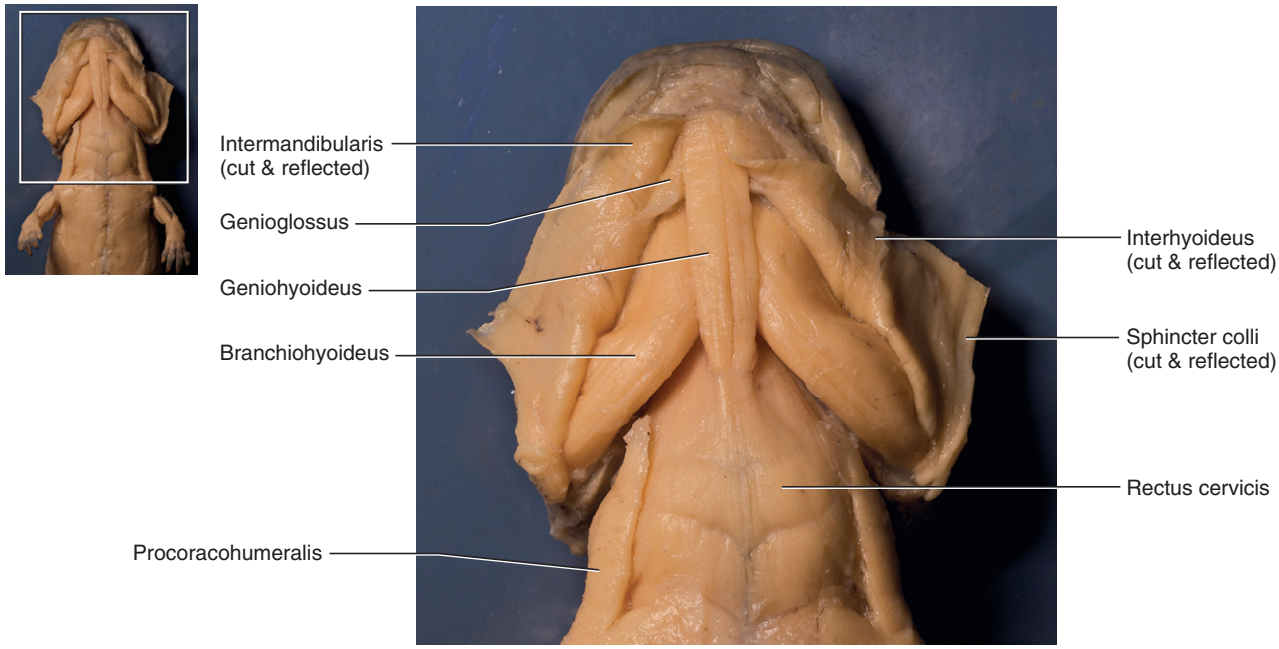


FIGURE 5.15 Deeper musculature of the head of the mudpuppy in ventral view.

in Figure 5.13b. It arises from the squamosal and parietal of the skull and inserts on the angular of the mandible.

Examine the head and pectoral region in ventral view (Figure 5.14). Three muscles lie superficially on the ventral surface of the head. These are the **intermandibularis**, most anteriorly, followed by the **interhyoideus** and then the sphincter colli. They are difficult to distinguish, but careful observation reveals subtle differences in their fiber direction. The intermandibularis is a thin, approximately triangular sheet with nearly transverse fibers. It arises from the mandibular ramus and inserts along a midventral raphe, functioning to raise the floor of the oral cavity. The fibers of the interhyoideus, also a thin sheet, extend slightly oblique to those of the intermandibularis. Its anterior portion is partly covered by the intermandibularis. The interhyoideus also inserts on a midventral raphe. It serves to raise the throat region. The sphincter colli is the posterior part of the interhyoideus (some authors apply interhyoideus to both). It was noted earlier in connection with the branchiohyoideus. In ventral view it forms a wide band of fibers. It arises from the fascia of the branchiohyoideus and inserts, like the interhyoideus, on a midventral raphe.

During skinning, the skin within the gular fold was left in place. Now, carefully separate and remove this portion. Be particularly careful where it adheres to the posterior edge of the sphincter colli. Then, slide a probe beneath the posterior border of this muscle, just to one side of the midventral line. Slowly work the probe to the anterior part of the intermandibularis, being careful not to injure the deeper musculature. When you have separated the superficial muscles from the underlying muscles, cut along the probe with small scissors. Carefully reflect the superficial muscles (Figure 5.15). The large muscle revealed is the ventral part of the branchiohyoideus. Follow it now as its fibers pass anteromedially to insert on the ceratohyal cartilage. The long, strap-like **geniohyoideus** will be revealed along the midventral line extending anterioposteriorly between the mandibular symphysis and the basibranchial 2 of the hyoid apparatus. It functions to pull the hyoid apparatus anteriorly and lowers the mandible. Probe near the anterior end of the geniohyoideus, deep to its lateral margin, to uncover the **genioglossus**, a small muscle with fibers extending posteriorly and slightly laterally. The **rectus cervicis** is also clearly revealed.

Three small muscles lie ventrally on the branchial region. Spread apart and look deep between the branchiohyoideus and rectus cervicis muscles. Dissect carefully, using needle and forceps, to tease away tissue (Figure 5.16). The **subarcuales** comprise three muscles. They extend between adjacent visceral arches and function to adduct the gills. The **transversi ventrales** cross the posterior end of the subarcuales and pull the gills ventromedially. Smaller muscles, the depressores arcuum (not illustrated), pass from the third to fifth branchial arches to the base of the external gills, serving to depress them. They are difficult to find, and probably were removed with the skin.

Extending posteriorly and slightly laterally alongside the rectus cervicis is the procoracohumeralis, which was noted earlier (Figure 5.14). Arising from the procoracoid

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

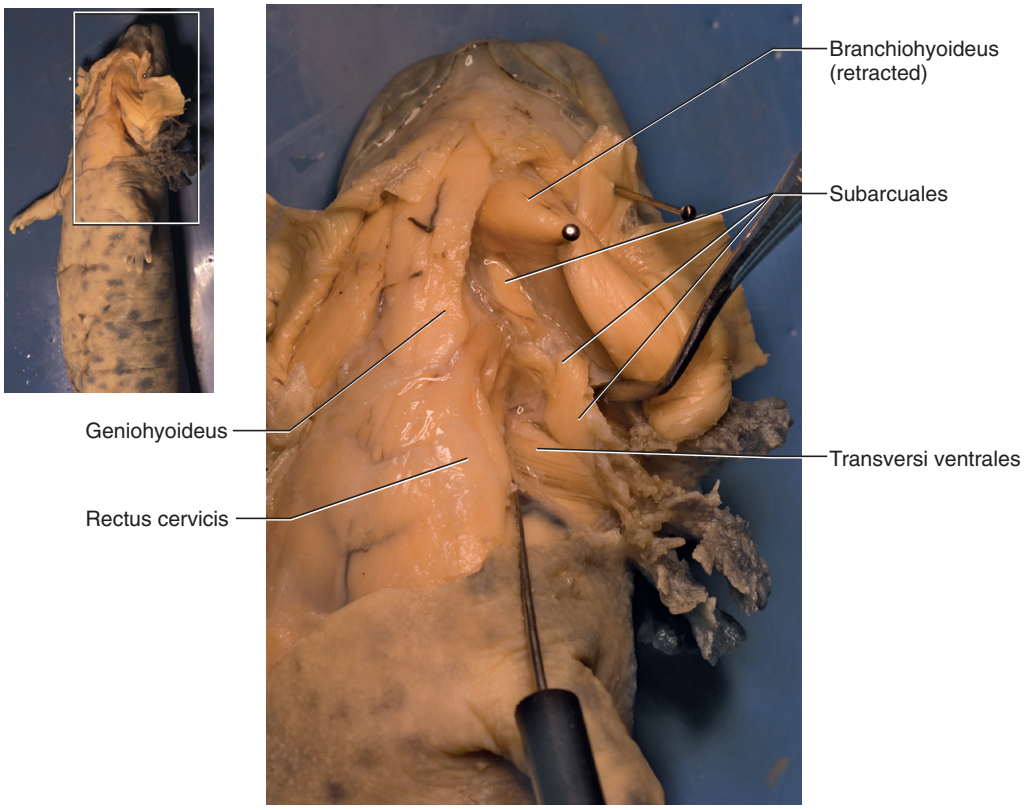


FIGURE 5.16 Subarcual musculature of the mudpuppy in ventral view.

process of the pectoral girdle, this muscle inserts on the humerus and pulls it anteriorly. The **omoarcual** is a delicate muscle arising from the rectus cervicis medial to about the midlength of the procoracohumeralis. Lift the medial border of the latter to better expose the omoarcual. Its fibers extend posterolaterally to insert on the procoracoid process to pull the shoulder anteriorly. Two larger muscles cover the pectoral region. The more anterior and smaller **supracoracoideus** arises from the ventral surface of the coracoid plate. Its fibers converge posterolaterally to insert on the humerus. The larger, fan-shaped muscle posterior to the supracoracoideus is the **pectoralis**, arising mainly from the linea alba and inserting on the humerus. The supracoracoideus and pectoralis are humeral adductors. The posterior portion of the supracoracoideus is covered by the pectoralis, and will be seen shortly. A third muscle lies deep to the supracoracoideus. This is the **coracoradialis**, which will be exposed once the remaining shoulder and forelimb muscles have been studied.

The brachium is mainly covered by the **triceps**, **coracobrachialis**, and **humeroantebrachialis** (Figures 5.14, and 5.17–5.19). The triceps is the largest, occupying the dorsal surface of the brachium, and consists of two easily recognizable parts. Its humeral head, arising from the humerus, is dorsolateral (Figures 5.17 and 5.19), and the coracoid head, arising from the coracoid, is more medial (Figures 5.17 and 5.18). These unite, inserting by a common tendon proximally on the ulna, and serve to extend the antebrachium. The coracobrachialis is ventromedial (Figures 5.14 and 5.18). It extends between the coracoid plate and distal end of the humerus, and adducts the forelimb. The humeroantebrachialis, anterior to the coracobrachialis, extends between the humerus and proximal end of the radius and flexes the antebrachium. The small **subcoracoscapularis** extends between the scapula and coracoid plate and the humerus. This muscle separates the proximal portions of the humeral and coracoid heads of the triceps, and may be seen between them (Figure 5.17).

The antebrachium bears the flexors (Figure 5.18) and extensors (Figure 5.19) of the wrist and digits. The flexors, on the ventral surface, are the **flexor superficialis longus, flexor antebrachii et carpi radialis**, and **flexor antebrachii et carpi ulnaris**. The extensors are on the dorsal surface of the antebrachium, and include the **extensor digitorum communis**, **extensor antebrachii et carpi radialis**, and **extensor antebrachii et carpi ulnaris**.

Next, examine the deeper musculature associated with the forelimb. Approach the shoulder region dorsally. Cut across and reflect the latissimus dorsi and gently pull the suprascapular cartilage laterally. Clear tissue from near

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

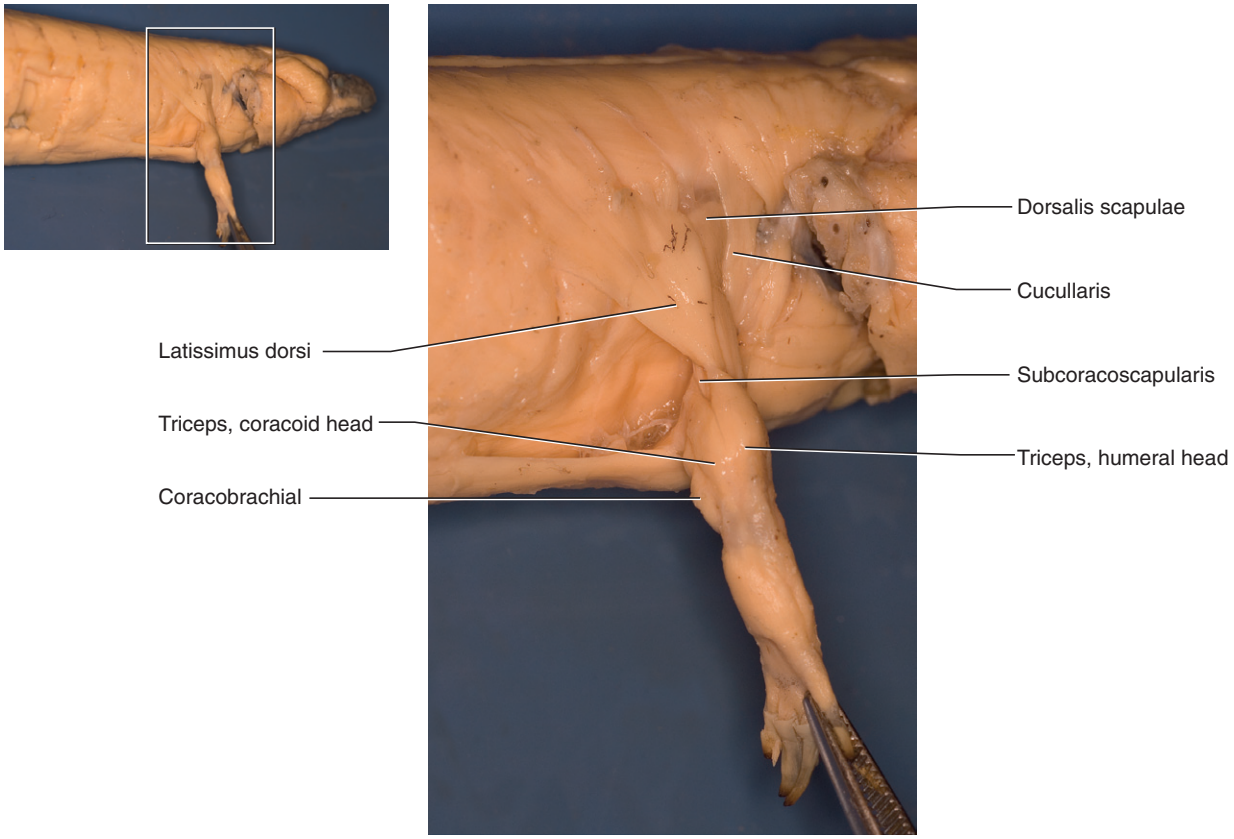


FIGURE 5.17 Forelimb musculature of the mudpuppy in dorsal view.

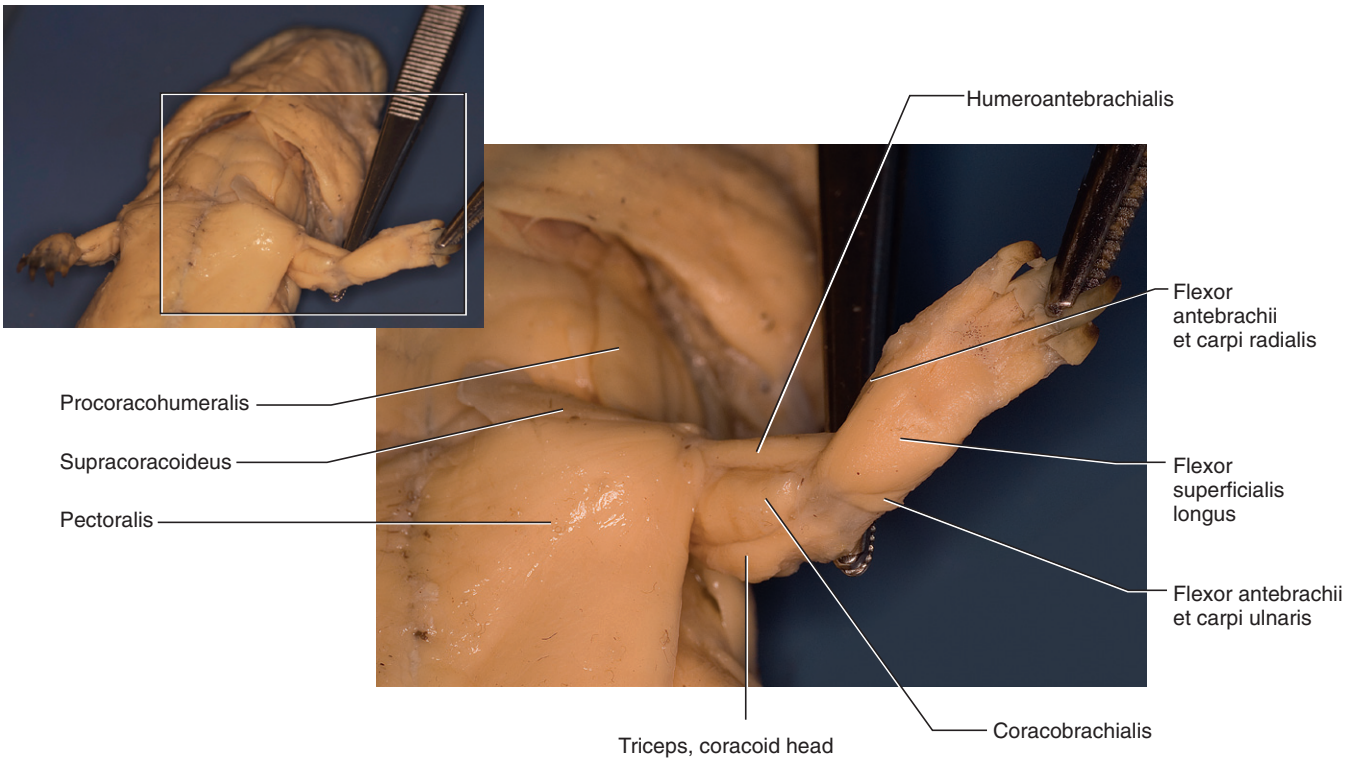


FIGURE 5.18 Forelimb musculature of the mudpuppy in ventral view.

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

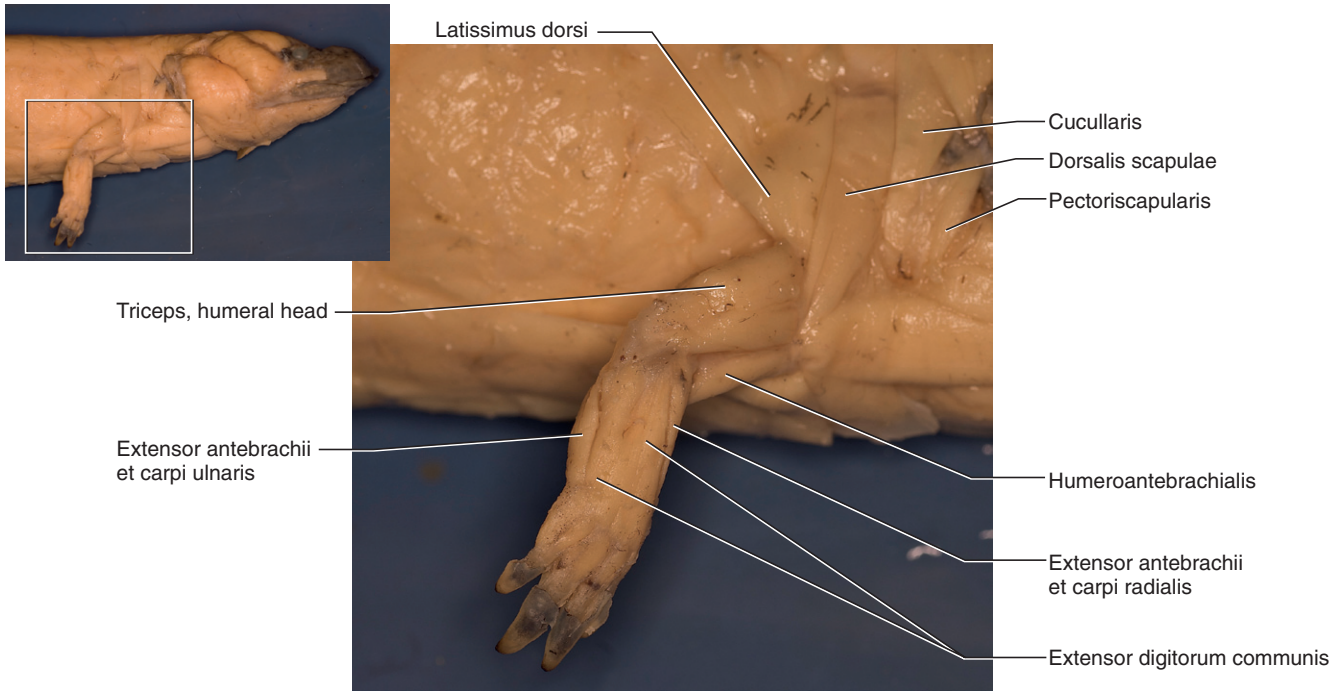


FIGURE 5.19 Forelimb musculature of the mudpuppy in lateral view.

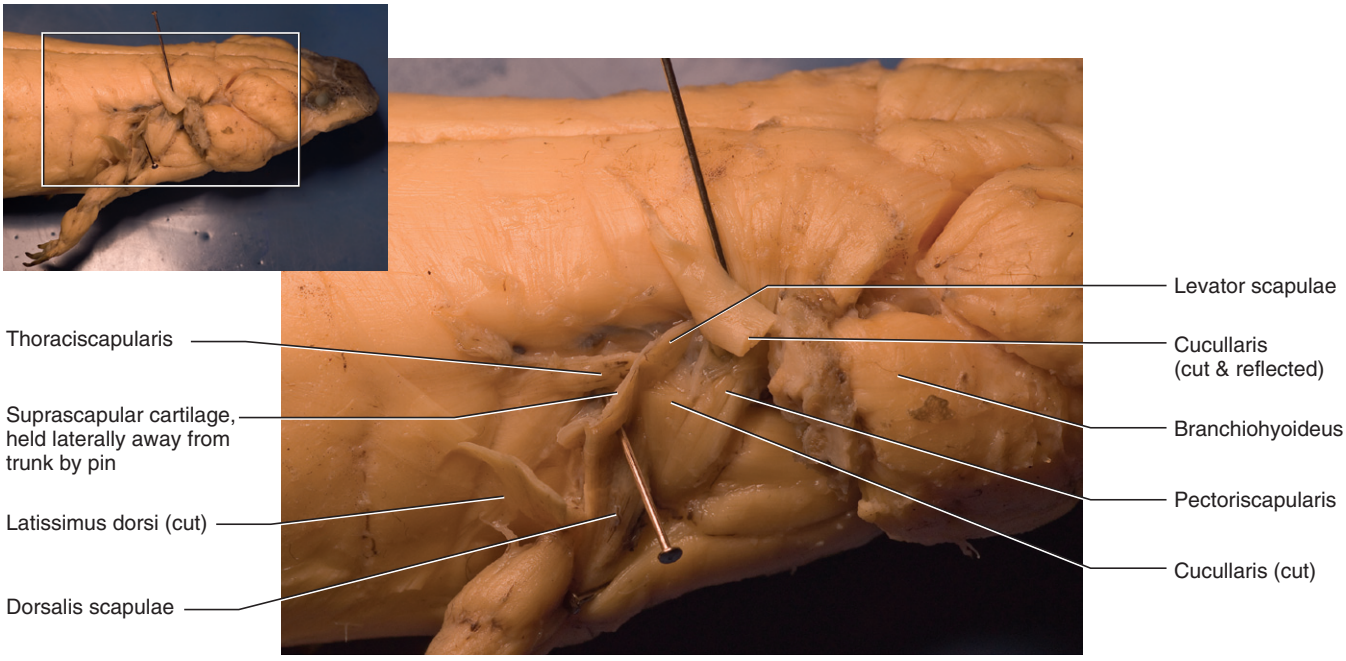


FIGURE 5.20 Deep shoulder musculature of the mudpuppy in lateral view.

its posterior margin to reveal the narrow **thoraciscapularis** (Figure 5.20). It arises from the surface of the hypaxial musculature and inserts on the scapula, serving to retract and depress the scapula. While holding the suprascapular cartilage laterally, examine and carefully clear tissue from just anterior to its anterodorsal margin. You will reveal a delicate muscle, the **levator scapulae**. It extends anteriorly, passing deep to the posterior margin of the cucullaris, toward its origin on the posterior surface of the skull. Its function is to pull the scapula anteriorly. Pull the cucullaris forward to obtain a better view. In terrestrial or metamorphosed salamanders, the levator

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

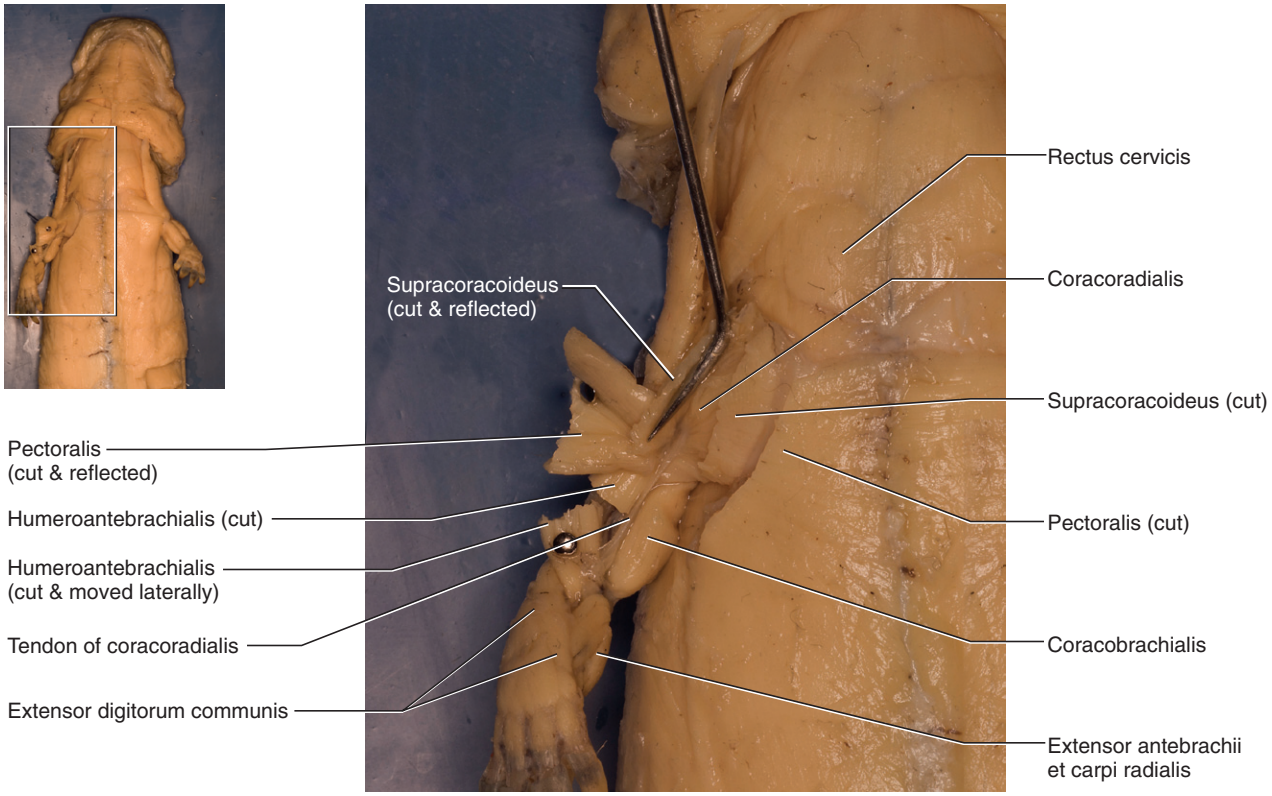


FIGURE 5.21 Deeper musculature of the pectoral region of the mudpuppy in ventral view.

scapulae muscle becomes involved with the ear in sound transmission and is termed the opercular muscle.

Now that the other muscles of the pectoral region and forelimb have been examined, the coracoradialis, mentioned earlier, may be considered. To find it, first identify its tendon, which lies between the humeroantebrachialis and coracobrachialis (Figure 5.21). Trace the tendon proximally as it passes deep to the margin of the pectoralis. Once you have an idea of where this tendon heads, carefully separate the pectoralis from the underlying musculature, and cut and reflect it, as shown in Figure 5.21. You may now appreciate the full extent of the supracoracoideus. Lift this muscle as well, by carefully passing a probe deep to it. Then cut and reflect it, as also shown in Figure 5.21, to reveal the coracoradialis.

Muscles of the Pelvic Region

Examine the pelvic region in ventral view (Figure 5.22). The large, triangular muscle, one on either side of the midventral line, is the **puboischiofemoralis externus**. Its fibers extend from its origin on the puboischiadic plate to insert on the femur. Posterior to it is the **puboischiotibialis**, which in the male lies just anterior to the cloacal gland. It also arises from the puboischiadic plate and extends to the tibia. Both muscles adduct the hind limb.

If your specimen is a male, cut through the midline of the cloacal gland, lift one of the halves, and carefully remove it to expose the underlying musculature. Two elongated muscles are easily observed next to the cloaca, the smaller and more medial **ischiocaudalis** and the **caudocruralis** lateral to it (Figure 5.22a). The former, arising from the ischium, inserts on the caudal vertebrae to flex the tail, which is also the function of the caudocruralis, but this muscle arises from the surface of the puboischiotibialis. A third narrow muscle, the **caudofemoralis**, lies deep and slightly lateral to the caudocruralis. To view it, retract the caudocruralis (Figure 5.22b; see also Figures 5.23 and 5.24). The caudofemoralis arises from the caudal vertebrae and inserts on the femur to retract the thigh. A small, triangular muscle, the **ischiofemoralis**, lies deep to the puboischiotibialis. Carefully cut across the latter near the midline, as shown in Figure 5.22b, to expose the ischiofemoralis. Arising from the ischium, it inserts on, and retracts, the femur.

Lying laterally adjacent to the puboischiofemoralis externus and puboischiotibialis is the long, narrow **pubotibialis** (Figure 5.22). It arises from the pubic cartilage and inserts on the tibia, serving to adduct the hind limb. The **puboischiofemoralis internus** lies just lateral to the pubotibialis. Arising from the puboishiadic plate, it inserts on the femur and pulls the hind limb anteriorly.

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

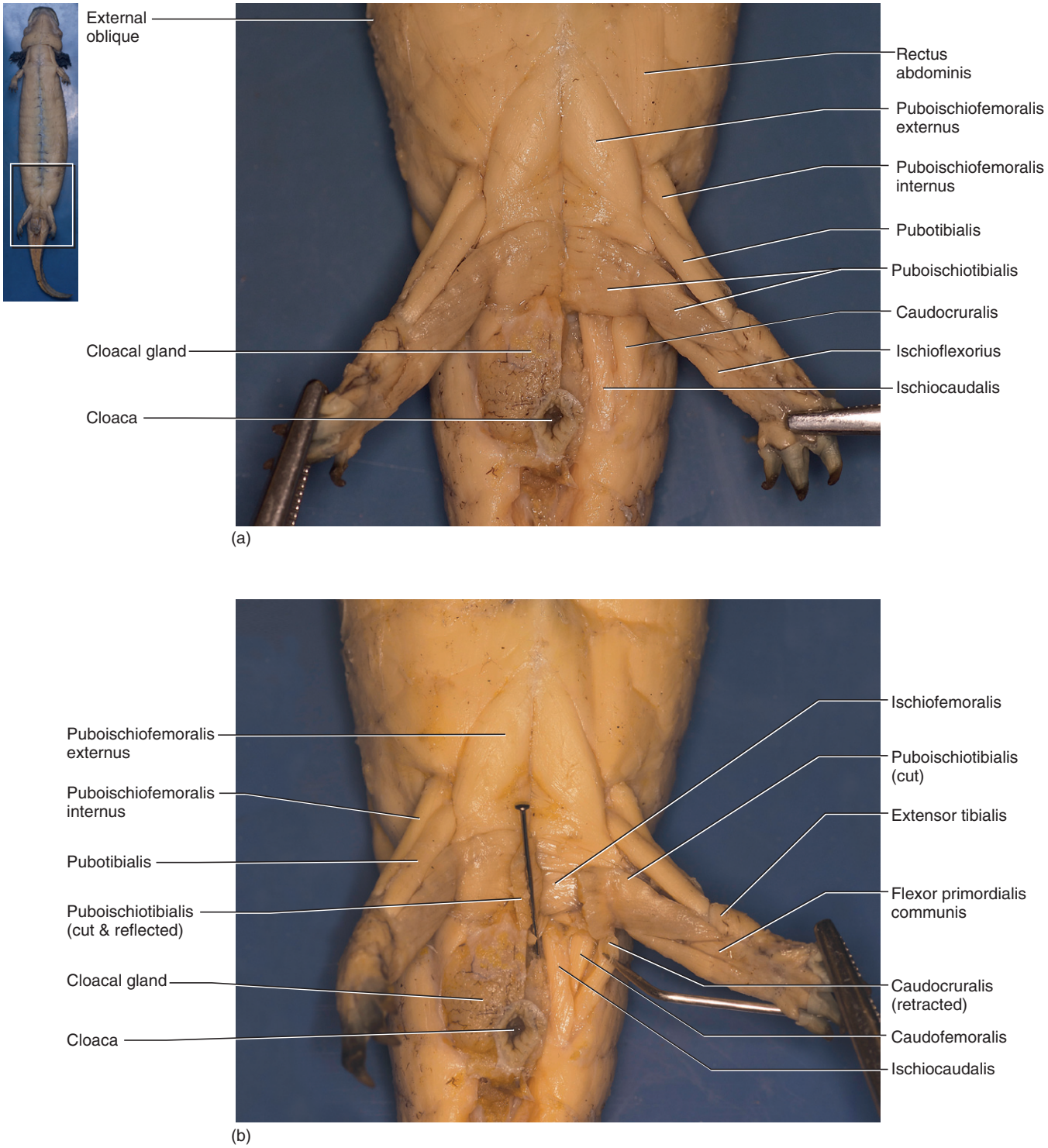


FIGURE 5.22 Superficial (a) and deeper (b) musculature of the pelvic region of the mudpuppy in ventral view.

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

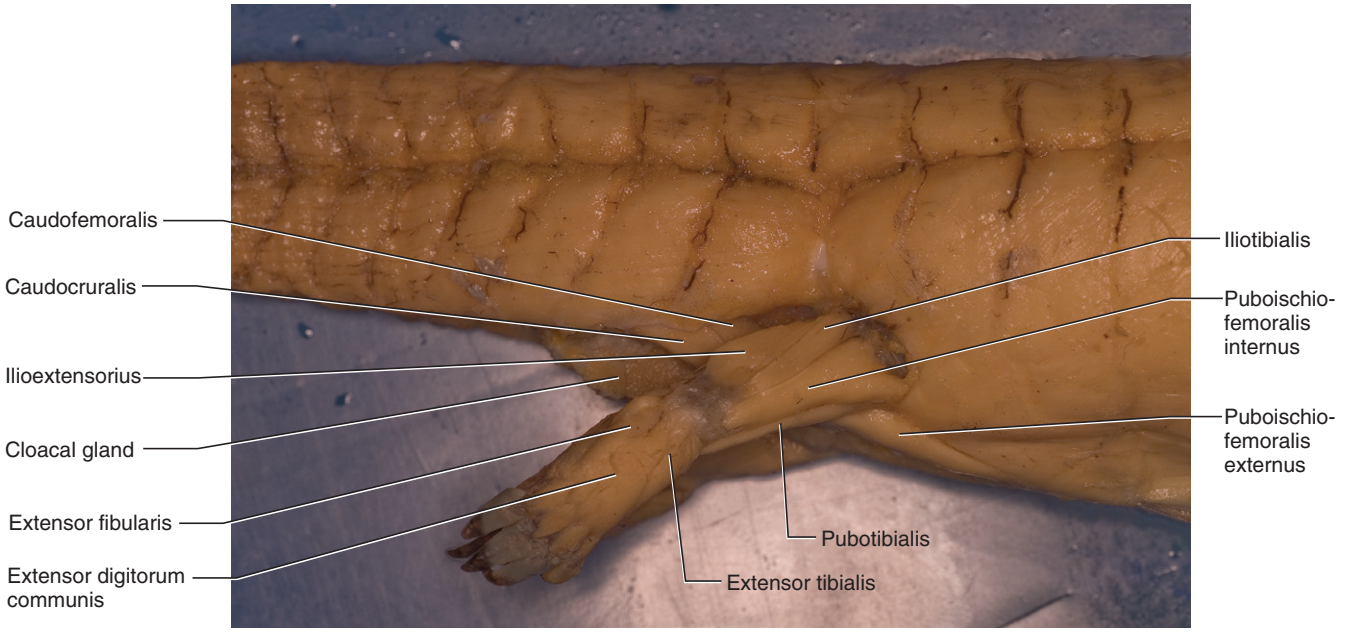


FIGURE 5.23 Musculature of the dorsal surface of the hind limb of the mudpuppy as seen in lateral view.

The **ischioflexorius** (Figures 5.22 and 5.24) lies mainly posterior to the puboischiotibialis on the medioventral surface of the hind limb. The ischioflexorius arises from the ischium and inserts on the fascia of the crus, serving to flex it and the pes.

Three muscles may be clearly observed superficially on the dorsal surface of the thigh (Figure 5.23). Anteriorly is the puboischiofemoralis internus, already noted, followed by **iliotibialis**, and then the **ilioextensorius** posterior to it. The last two arise from the ilium, inserting on the tibia, with the iliotibialis abducting the hind limb and the ilioextensorius extending the crus. The **iliofibularis** follows, on the posterior surface of the thigh (Figure 5.24). Also arising from the ilium, it inserts on the fibula to abduct the hind limb. A small, deeper muscle, the **iliofemoralis**, lies just posterior to the proximal end of the iliofibularis. Dissect in this region, removing nerves and blood vessels to expose it.

The flexor (Figure 5.22b) and extensor (Figure 5.23) muscles lie on the crus. Its ventral surface bears the flexors, including the **flexor primordialis communis**. The ischioflexorius helps flex the pes, as noted earlier. The dorsal surface of the crus bears the extensors, with the **extensor tibialis** anteriorly and the **extensor fibularis** posteriorly. Between them is the **extensor digitorum communis**, which fans out into slips that insert on the metatarsals, serving to extend the pes and digits.

Key Terms: Muscluar System

adductor mandibulae anterior
adductor mandibulae externus
branchiohyoideus
caudocruralis (caudopuboischiotibialis)
caudofemoralis
coracobrachialis
coracoradialis
cucullaris
depressor mandibulae
dilatator laryngis
dorsalis scapulae
dorsalis trunci
epaxial musculature
extensor antebrachii et carpi radialis
extensor antebrachii et carpi ulnaris
extensor digitorum communis (of forelimb)
extensor digitorum communis (of hind limb)
extensor fibularis
extensor tibialis
external oblique
flexor antebrachii et carpi radialis
flexor antebrachii et carpi ulnaris
flexor primordialis communis
flexor superficialis longus
genioglossus
geniohyoideus
horizontal skeletogenous septum
humeroantebrachialis
hypaxial musculature
ilioextensorius
iliofemoralis
iliofibularis
iliotibialis
interhyoideus

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

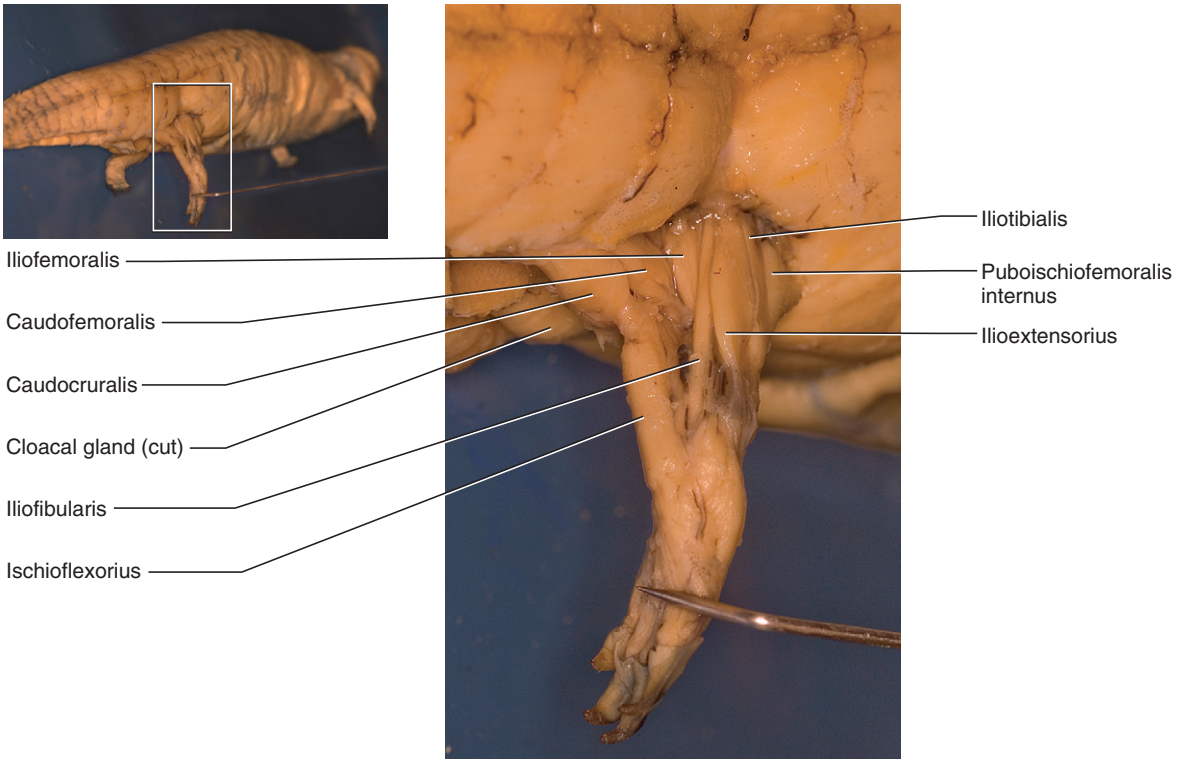


FIGURE 5.24 Musculature of the hind limb of the mudpuppy in posterolateral view.

intermandibularis
internal oblique
ischiocaudalis
ischiofemoralis
ischioflexorius
latissimus dorsi
levator scapulae
levatores arcuum
myomeres
myosepta
omoarcual
pectoralis
pectoriscapularis
procoracohumeralis
puboischiofemoralis externus
puboischiofemoralis internus
puboischiotibialis
pubotibialis
rectus abdominis
rectus cervicis
sphincter colli
subarcuales
subcoracoscapularis
subvertebralis
supracoracoideus
thoraciscapularis
transversi ventrales
transversus abdominis
triceps

SECTION IV: MOUTH, ORAL CAVITY, AND PHARYNX

Open the **oral cavity** and **pharynx** by cutting from each corner of the mouth posteriorly through the gills. Swing open the lower jaw, as shown in Figure 5.25, to expose the oral cavity and pharynx. These regions are not distinctly demarcated. Note the teeth, arranged in V-shaped rows in the anterior part of the oral cavity. In the upper jaw, the most anterior row contains **premaxillary teeth**. Just behind these teeth are the **vomerine teeth** medially and the **pterygoid teeth** laterally. A **choana**, the internal opening of the nasal passage, may be seen on the roof of the oral cavity, just lateral to the pterygoid teeth. In the lower jaw there is a single row of teeth. Most of them are **dentary teeth**; a few **coronoid teeth** lie near the posterior end of the row. The **tongue**, supported by the **hyoid arch**, lies behind these teeth. Identify the sectioned surfaces of the hyoid arch and **mandibular arch**. The entrances of the pharyngeal slits into the pharynx may be noted on each side. Probe to verify that there are two

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

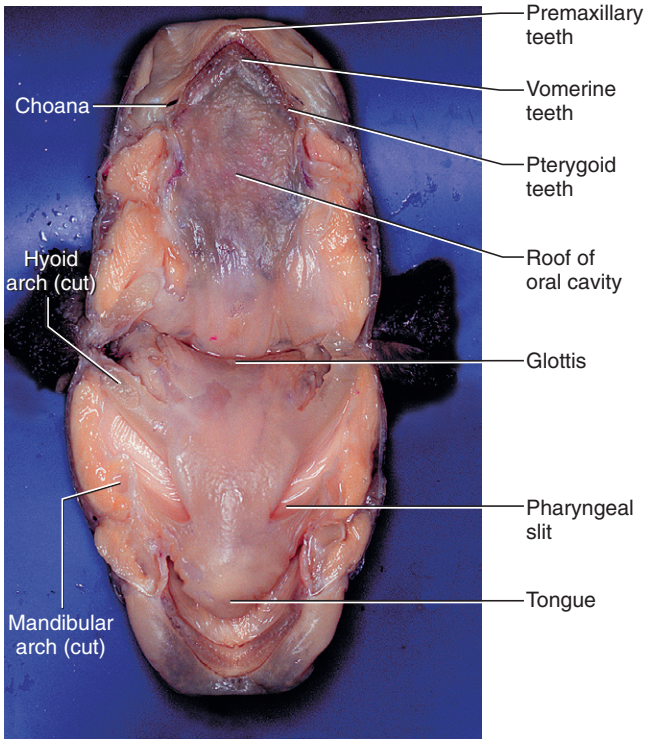


FIGURE 5.25 Oral cavity and pharynx of the mudpuppy.

slits. Midventrally on the floor of the pharynx, between the entrances to the slits, is the **glottis**, a small, slit-like opening into the respiratory system.

Key Terms: Mouth, Oral Cavity, and Pharynx

choana
coronoid teeth (splenial teeth)
dentary teeth
glottis
hyoid arch
mandibular arch
oral cavity
pharynx
premaxillary teeth
pterygoid teeth
tongue
vomerine teeth

SECTION V: PLEUROPERITONEAL CAVITY AND VISCERA

Dissection of the pleuroperitoneal cavity in *Necturus* allows examination of the viscera and respiratory and urogenital structures. Many vessels will also be noted at this time. Enter the pleuroperitoneal cavity by making a longitudinal incision about 0.5 cm to the left of the midventral line. If the vessels of your specimen have been injected, its abdominal wall will have been cut. If so, continue along this cut to expose the cavity. Cut anteriorly until you reach the level of the posterior margin of the forelimbs, at which point you will have reached the posterior margin of the coracoid cartilage. Cut posteriorly to the posterior margin of the hind limbs, cutting through the puboischiadic plate.

Gently spread the abdominal wall (Figure 5.26). The large, elongated, dark structure midventrally is the **liver**. Lift the cut edge of the body wall to observe the **falciform ligament** extending between the wall and the ventral surface of the liver. The ligament is much larger than in the other vertebrates considered here. Note the **ventral abdominal vein** passing along the midventral abdominal wall and toward the liver through the free posterior margin of the ligament. Examine the posteroventral part of the cavity to observe the thin-walled **urinary bladder**. It is supported from the midventral abdominal wall by the **median ligament**. A **vesicular vein** from the bladder passes in the anterior free margin of this ligament to join the ventral abdominal vein.

Carefully cut through the falciform ligament, and make two transverse cuts through the body wall, one on either side, to create four flaps that can be spread apart. (Much of the ventral body wall has been removed in Figures 5.27–5.29, but you need not do so to observe the following structures.) The long, light-colored, tubular **stomach** (Figure 5.26) lies dorsal and slightly to the left of the liver. Lift the stomach to see that it is supported by the **greater omentum**. Spread apart the liver and stomach. The **gastrohepatic ligament** is the small, triangular sheet stretching between their anterior portions (Figure 5.27).

The elongated **spleen** hangs from the posterior left side of the stomach (Figures 5.27 and 5.28). The **gastrosplenic ligament** extends between these organs (Figure 5.27). The stomach ends abruptly at the **pyloric sphincter**, a marked constriction beyond which the digestive tract continues as the long, coiled **small intestine**, followed by the short, straight **large intestine**. The **mesentery** supports the small intestine. Spread the coils of the small intestine to observe it. The **mesorectum** supports the large intestine (Figure 5.27).

The first loop of the small intestine is the **duodenum** (Figures 5.26 and 5.27). The **hepatoduodenal ligament** extends between the duodenum and the dorsal surface of the liver (Figure 5.27). Several organs and vessels lie in this region, but may be difficult to discern. Examine this region in several views as follows, referring to Figures 5.27–5.29. The **pancreas** lies along the duodenum (and partly within the hepatoduodenal ligament). To help identify it, pull the stomach to the left and reflect

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

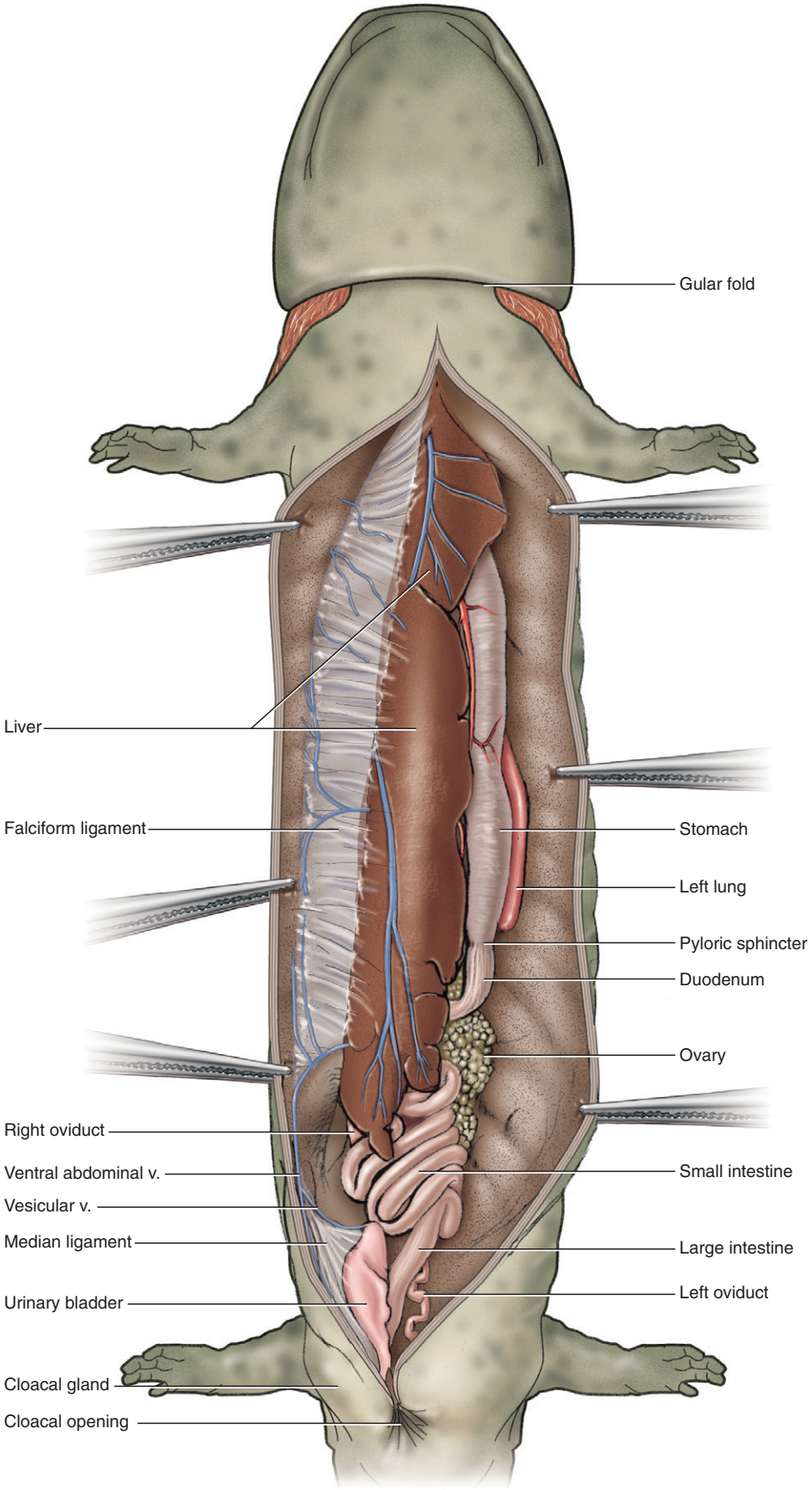
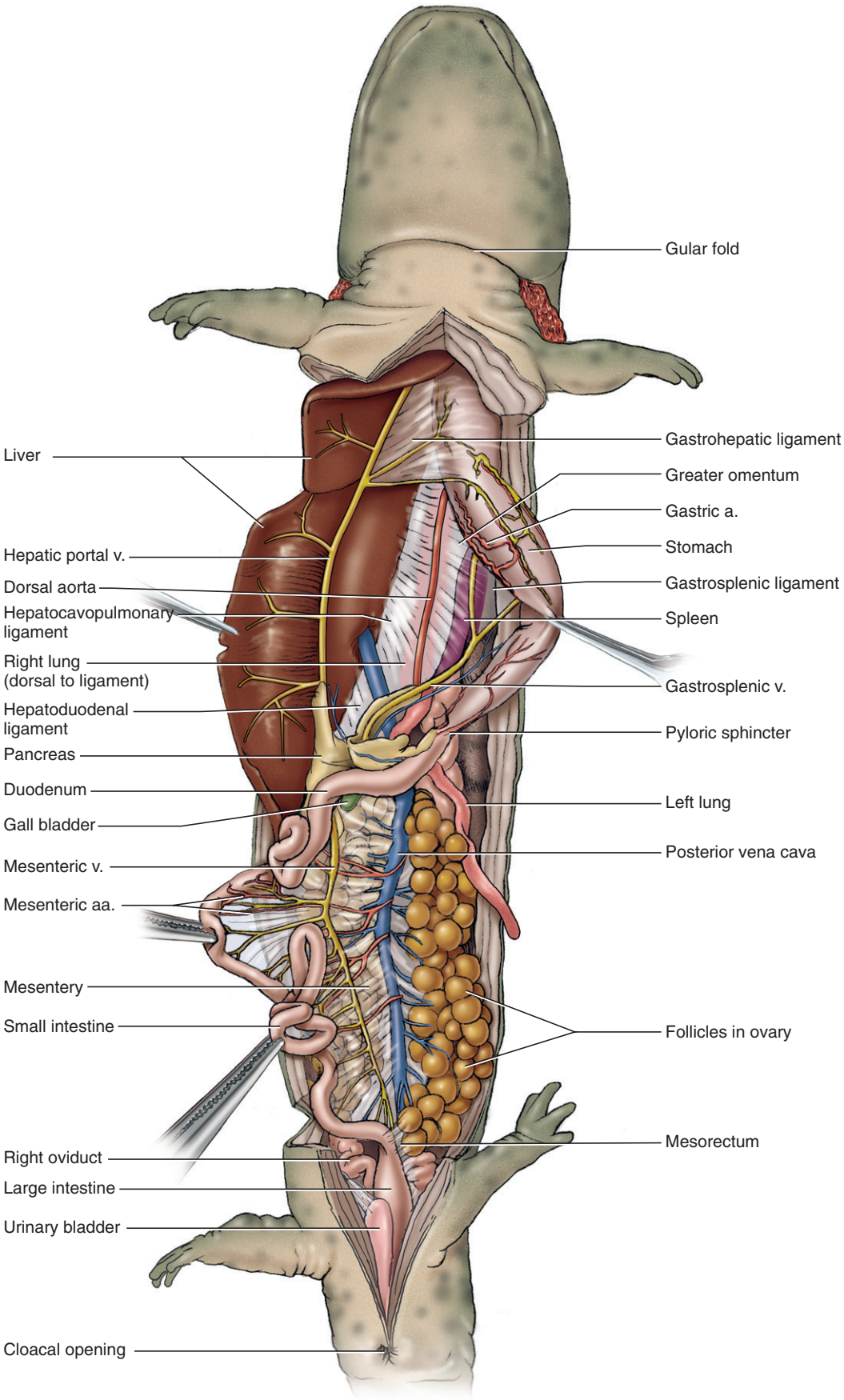


FIGURE 5.26 Pleuroperitoneal cavity of the mudpuppy in ventral view.

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

FIGURE 5.27 Pleuroperitoneal cavity of the mudpuppy in ventral view, with the liver reflected to the right and stomach pulled to the left.



Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

the liver to the right to expose its dorsal surface (Figure 5.27). The pancreas is irregular, but note that part of it extends anteriorly toward the spleen. The **gastrosplenic vein** lies partly embedded within this lobe and extends toward the spleen.

Observe the long, thin translucent left **lung** lying dorsal to the stomach. The right lung is similar in form; look for it between the stomach and the liver. You should discern the right and left lungs, apparently lying side by side. For now, distinguish between them but do not tear through any mesenteries. The liver is supported anterodorsally by the **hepatocavopulmonary ligament**. The **posterior vena cava** is the large vessel passing through the posterior end of this ligament (Figure 5.27). Note the large **hepatic portal vein** embedded in the dorsal part of the liver.

Next, reflect the stomach to the right, so that it lies on the liver's dorsal surface, as shown in Figure 5.28. Note the relationships among the liver, stomach, spleen, and pancreas, as well as their associated mesenteries. Lift the left lung. It is supported by a narrow **pulmonary ligament**, which is connected to the greater omentum.

Next, let the viscera fall back in place, and then reflect the liver to the left, as shown in Figure 5.29. Examine the posterodorsal part of the liver for the **gall bladder**, a thin, translucent, greenish sac. Gently lift it and examine the region where it attaches to the liver. The **cystic duct** leaves the gall bladder but is joined by several (and usually fairly narrow) **hepatic ducts** from the liver to form the **common bile duct**, which passes partly through the substance of the pancreas to reach the duodenum. The bile duct is similar to that of the shark and cat, but is much shorter. Note again the positions of the posterior vena cava and gastrosplenic vein. Examine the right lung. Its pulmonary ligament, wider than that of the left lung, is part of the hepatocavopulmonary ligament.

Key Terms: Pleuroperitoneal Cavity and Viscera

common bile duct
cystic duct
duodenum
falciform ligament
gall bladder
gastrohepatic ligament
gastrosplenic ligament
gastrosplenic vein
greater omentum
hepatic ducts
hepatic portal vein
hepatocavopulmonary ligament
hepatoduodenal ligament
large intestine
liver
lung
median ligament
mesentery
mesorectum
pancreas
posterior vena cava
pulmonary ligament
pyloric sphincter
small intestine
spleen
stomach
urinary bladder
ventral abdominal vein
vesicular vein

SECTION VI: UROGENITAL SYSTEM

Urinary and reproductive structures should be examined next, but do not injure mesenteries and vessels in doing so. Postpone detailed tracing of the structures until the blood vessels have been studied. Lift the coils of the small intestine in the posterior part of the pleuroperitoneal cavity to locate one of the paired gonads.

Male Urogenital System

In males the **testis** is an elongated organ posteriorly in the pleuroperitoneal cavity lying ventral to the kidney (Figure 5.30). It is supported by the **mesorchium**. The **kidney**, longer than the testis, is considerably wider posteriorly than anteriorly. Its narrow anterior part is genital in function, and the wider posterior portion is urinary.

The **archinephric duct** is a longitudinal tube that extends along the lateral margin of the kidney. The portion along the genital part of the kidney is coiled, but its more posterior part, lying along the urinary portion of the kidney, is straight. Numerous small collecting tubules may be observed leading to the duct from the kidney. Trace the duct posteriorly to its entrance into the cloaca. In males the duct carries sperm from the testis, as well as urine from the urinary portion of the kidney. Sperm reaches the duct by way of **ductuli efferentes**, which lead into the genital portion of the kidney and thence to the archinephric duct. The vestigial **oviduct** is a dark thread-like structure along the lateral edge of the archinephric duct. It has no connection with the latter and continues anteriorly on its own. The margins of the cloaca bear numerous **cloacal papillae**. Skin the region on one side of the cloaca to expose the **cloacal gland**, which consists of numerous tiny tubules and is involved in clumping sperm to form spermatophores.

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

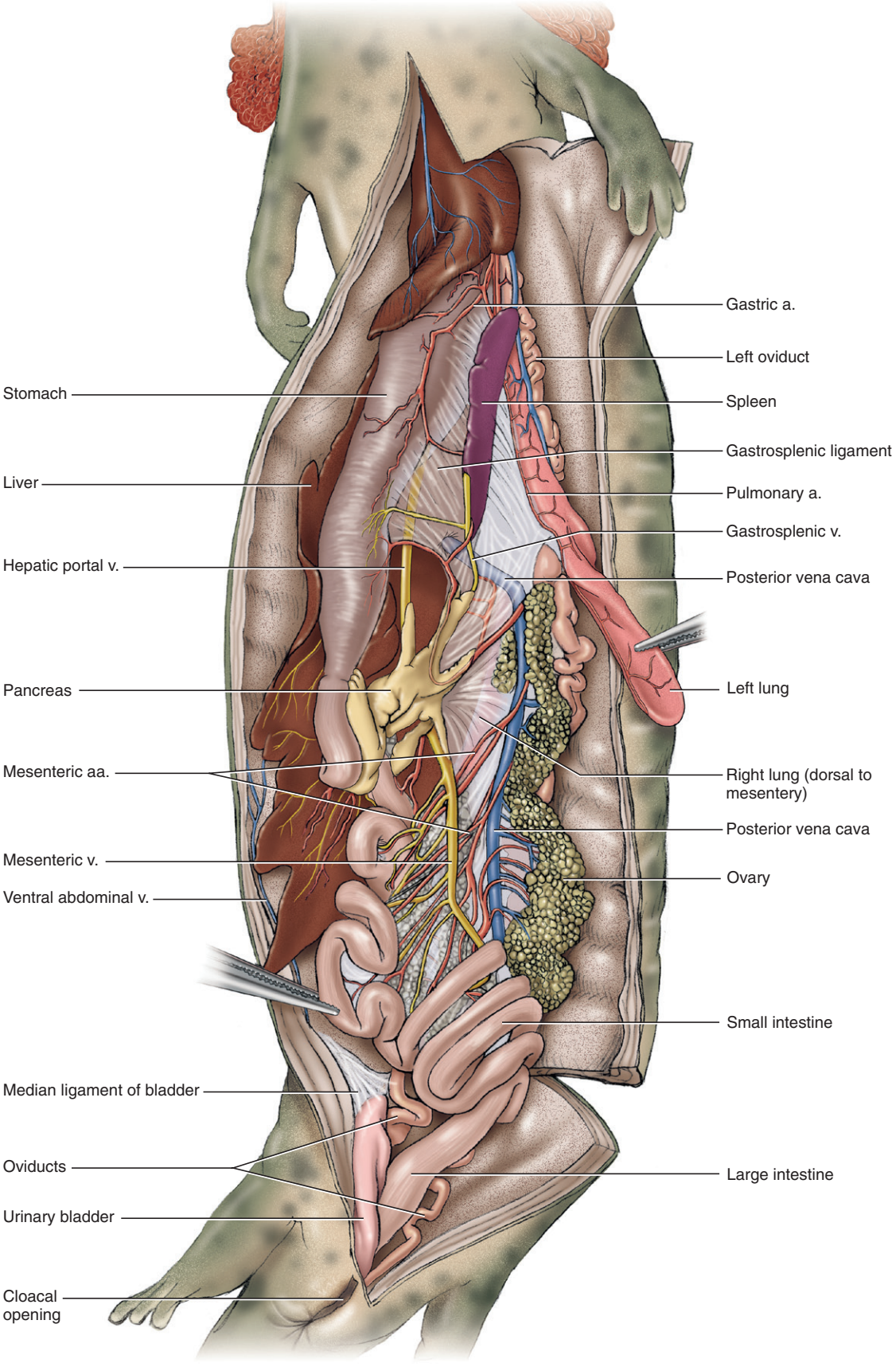


FIGURE 5.28 Pleuroperitoneal cavity of the mudpuppy in ventral view, with the liver and stomach reflected to the right.

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

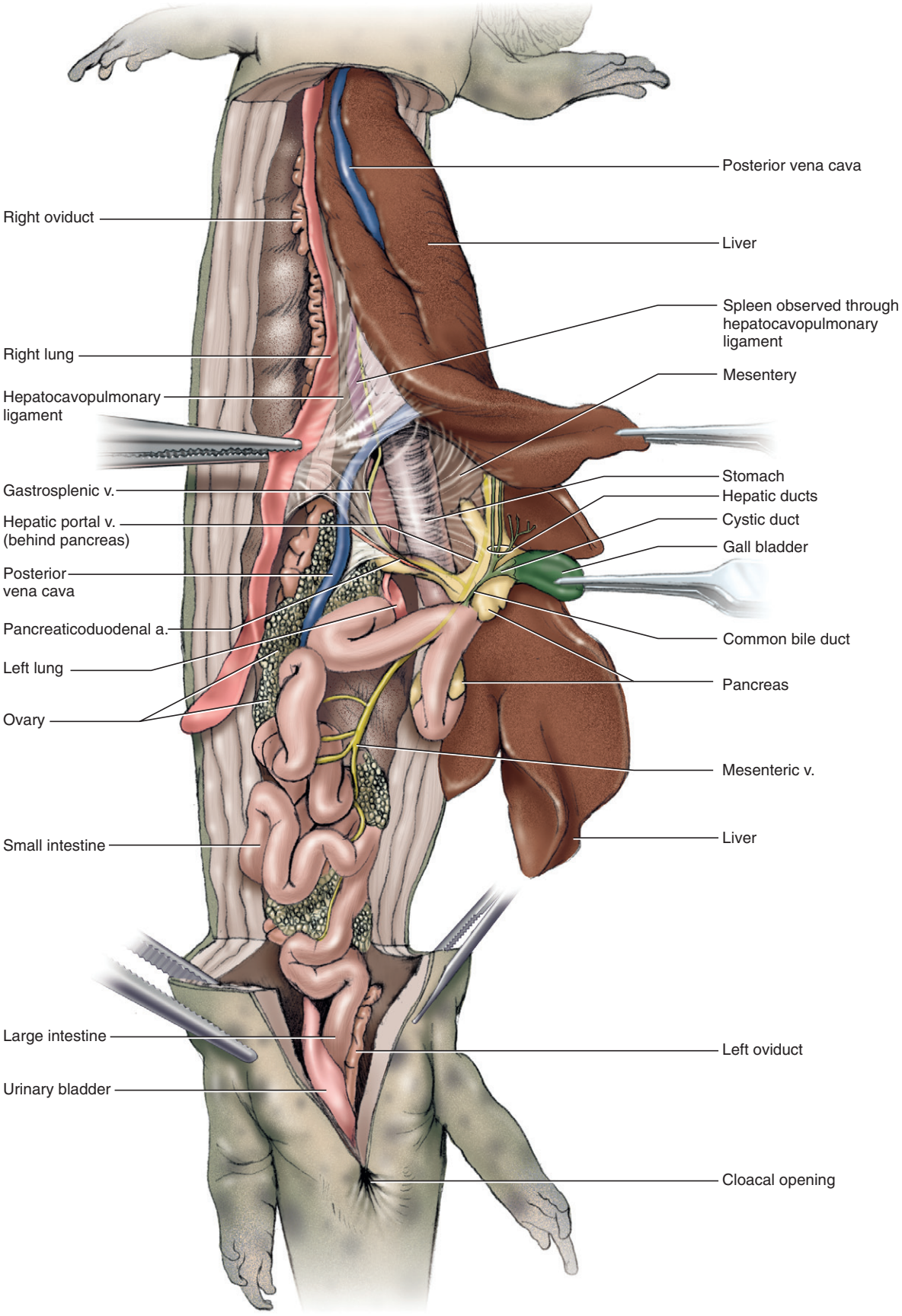


FIGURE 5.29 Pleuroperitoneal cavity of the mudpuppy in ventral view, with the posterior end of the liver reflected to the left.

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

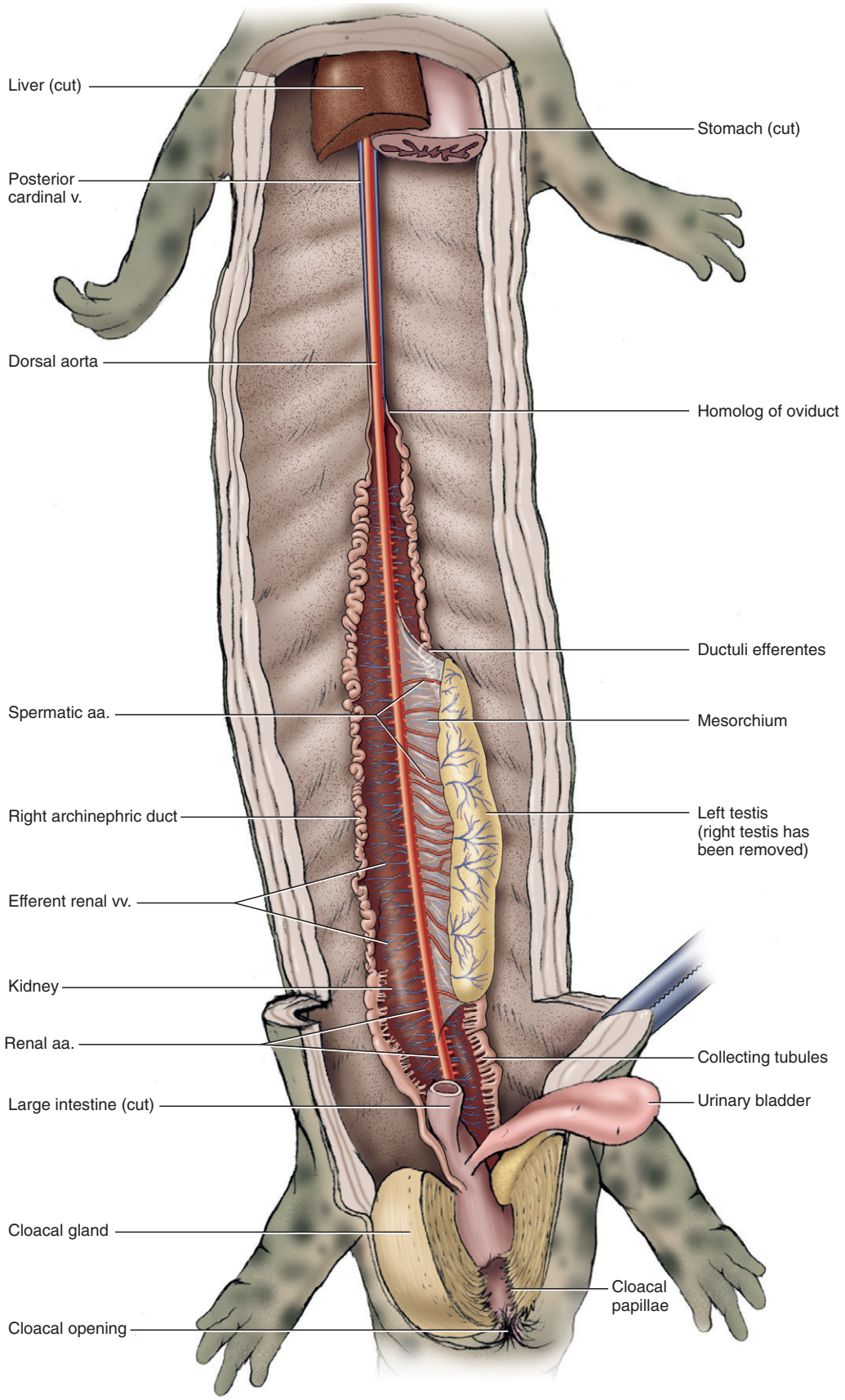


FIGURE 5.30 Pleuroperitoneal cavity of the male mudpuppy in ventral view, showing the urogenital system. Portions of the viscera have been removed.

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

Female Urogenital System

In females the elongated **ovary**, supported by the **mesovarium**, may be quite large (Figure 5.31). The presence of numerous eggs within follicles gives the ovary a lobulated or granular appearance, in contrast to the more regular surface of the testes. The follicles and eggs vary in size depending on their stage of maturity, being quite large in some specimens (Figure 5.27) and smaller in others (Figures 5.29 and 5.31). The archinephric duct lies along the lateral margin of the kidney but is straight and narrower than in the male. In the female it carries only urine from the kidney. Follow it posteriorly to its entrance into the cloaca.

The **oviduct**, supported by the **mesotubarium**, is the long, prominent, and convoluted tube lying between the ovary and kidney and extending nearly the length of pleuroperitoneal cavity. At its anterior end is the open, funnel-shaped **ostium**, into which the eggs pass after they have been released into the coelom by the ovary. Follow the oviduct posteriorly to its entrance into the cloaca. Cloacal glands and papillae are absent in the female.

Key Terms: Urogenital System

archinephric duct
cloacal gland
cloacal papillae
ductuli efferentes
kidney
mesorchium
mesotubarium
mesovarium
ostium
ovary
oviduct
testis

SECTION VII: CARDIOVASCULAR SYSTEM

Heart

The **pericardial cavity** lies just anterior to the liver. It is enclosed by the **pericardial sac** and contains the **heart** (Figure 5.32). Continue the midventral incision of the abdominal wall anteriorly, cutting through the coracoid cartilage, to expose the pericardial cavity. In doing so you will also cut through the **transverse septum**, the partition separating the pericardial and pleuroperitoneal cavities. Do not injure the posterior vena cava, which passes through the septum to reach the pericardial cavity. Carefully remove the musculature ventral to the cavity. The cavity is lined by parietal pericardium, whereas the heart itself is covered by visceral pericardium.

The largest and most conspicuous part of the heart is the **ventricle**, which occupies the posteroventral part of the pericardial cavity (Figure 5.33). Lift the posterior end of the ventricle to observe the **sinus venosus** (Figure 5.34). The atrium lies anterodorsal to the ventricle and is partially divided into **left** and **right atria**. The **conus arteriosus** is the narrow tube extending anteriorly between the atria from the right side of the ventricle. It continues anteriorly as the wider **bulbus arteriosus**. The latter is the enlarged and modified base of the **ventral aorta** (compare with that of the shark, as in Figure 3.27).

Venous System

Trace the **posterior vena cava**, identified earlier, as it passes from the liver through the transverse septum. On entering the pericardial cavity, it subdivides into left and right **hepatic sinuses**, large vessels that extend anterolaterally into the sinus venosus (Figures 5.33–5.35). Probe just anterolateral to the entrance of the hepatic sinus on one side to observe the **common cardinal vein**, which enters the posterolateral end of the sinus venosus. The common cardinal vein mainly receives vessels that drain the head and forelimbs, such as the **anterior cardinal vein** (referred to as the jugular vein by some authors) and **lingual veins** as well as the **subclavian vein**, which is formed by the union of the **brachial** and **cutaneous veins**. The common cardinal also receives the **posterior cardinal vein** and the **lateral vein**, which extends along the lateral side of the trunk. These vessels all join the common cardinal in close proximity (Figures 5.33 and 5.35). The anterior cardinal vein is formed by the confluence of the **external jugular vein**, which passes dorsal to the gills and onto the side of the head, and the smaller **internal jugular vein**, which drains the roof of the oral cavity and pharynx (Figure 5.35).

Various veins within the pleuroperitoneal cavity have already been identified. The posterior vena cava was identified first as it passed to the liver through the hepatocavopulmonary ligament and then through the transverse septum; reidentify this vein. Follow it as is passes through the liver, from which it receives several **hepatic veins**. Posteriorly, the posterior vena cava passes middorsally in the pleuroperitoneal cavity, extending between the kidneys (Figure 5.35). It receives numerous **efferent renal veins** from the kidneys, as well as **testicular** or **ovarian veins** from the gonads (see also Figure 5.35).

The **pulmonary vein** extends anteroposteriorly along the surface of the lung, collecting oxygenated blood from the lung and returning it to the heart. The vein should be injected with blue latex but occasionally appears red. Follow the pulmonary vein as it passes

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

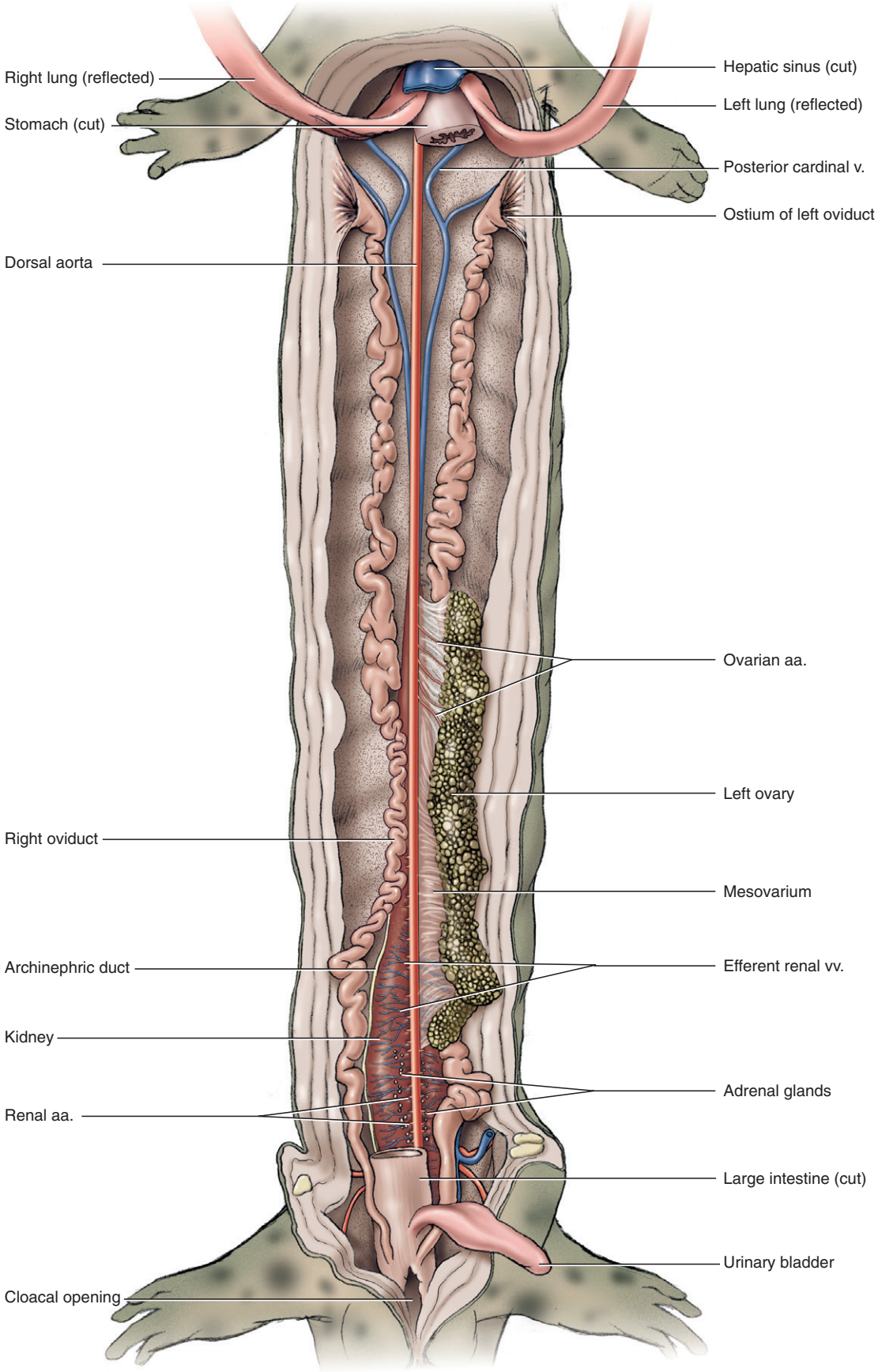


FIGURE 5.31 Pleuroperitoneal cavity of the female mudpuppy in ventral view, showing the urogenital system. Portions of the viscera have been removed.

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

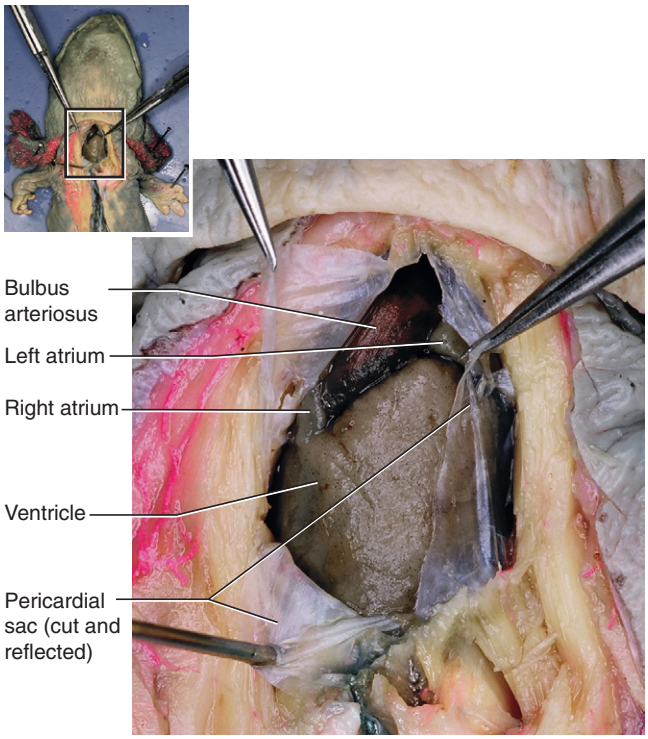


FIGURE 5.32 Pericardial cavity of the mudpuppy in ventral view, opened to reveal the heart.

anteriorly. It curves medially and passes dorsal to the posterior vena cava and hepatic sinus, where it joins the pulmonary vein from the lung of the other side of the body (Figures 5.33 and 5.35). Their union forms a short, single vein (common pulmonary vein) that extends anteriorly before entering the left side of the atrium of the heart.

A **renal portal vein** extends longitudinally along the dorsolateral margin of each kidney, and delivers blood to the capillaries of the kidney via the tiny **afferent renal veins** (Figure 5.35). Follow one of the renal portal veins posteriorly. At about the level of the hind limbs, each renal portal vein receives a **common iliac vein**. Posterior to the kidneys, the left and right renal portal veins form by the bifurcation of the median **caudal vein** from the tail. Anterior to the kidneys, the renal portal veins become the **posterior cardinal veins**. In this region the posterior cardinals anastomose with the posterior vena cava via the converging **subcardinal veins** (Figure 5.35). Anteriorly, each posterior cardinal vein drains into a common cardinal vein.

The **ventral abdominal vein** was observed passing through the free posterior margin of the falciform ligament (Figure 5.26). Return to this vessel. As you will see presently, its anterior end joins the **hepatic portal vein**. For now, follow the ventral abdominal vein posteriorly along the midventral abdominal wall. As noted earlier, it receives the **vesicular vein** from the urinary bladder. The ventral abdominal vein is formed, farther posteriorly, by the union of left and right **pelvic veins**. Follow one of the pelvic veins posterolaterally. At the level of the hind limbs, it receives the **femoral vein**. At this point, note that the common iliac vein, observed earlier as it entered the renal portal vein, joins the pelvic and femoral veins. The iliac is thus a short vein extending between the renal portal vein and the union of the pelvic and femoral veins.

Observe the mesentery by spreading the coils of the small intestine. The **mesenteric vein** extends within the mesentery (Figure 5.33). Follow it as it passes anteriorly toward the pancreas. Next, locate the **gastrosplenic vein**, identified earlier as extending between the pancreas and spleen. The union of these veins, within the pancreas, forms the **hepatic portal vein**, which passes along the dorsal surface of the liver before entering this organ (Figure 5.35). The ventral abdominal vein joins the hepatic portal vein a short distance anterior to the union of the mesenteric and gastrosplenic veins.

Arterial System

Return to the bulbus arteriosus. As it leaves the front of the pericardial cavity, it bifurcates into left and right arches, or branches, of the ventral aorta (Figure 5.36). Each of these diverges laterally and subdivides into two branches. They are probably not injected, but usually have remnants of blood so that they can, with diligence, be followed. The most anterior branch is the **first afferent branchial artery**, which follows the first branchial arch and enters the first external gill. The second branch bifurcates into the **second** and **third afferent branchial arteries**. Follow them, respectively, into the second and third external gills. The afferent branchial arteries carry deoxygenated blood to the gills for oxygenation. The **external carotid artery**, which should be injected, is a narrow vessel extending anteromedially along the anterior margin of the first afferent branchial artery. Although it is in close proximity, and indeed connected by tiny anastomoses, to the first afferent branchial artery, the external carotid artery is a branch of the first efferent branchial artery (see later), and therefore carries blood that has already passed through the gills for oxygenation.

Remove the lining on the roof of the oral cavity and pharynx. Medial to the external gills are the left and right **radices** (sing. **radix**) of the **dorsal aorta** (Figure 5.37). Each radix arches toward the dorsal midline and joins its fellow to form the dorsal aorta, which continues middorsally along the trunk and tail. Follow the radix laterally. Its first branch is the **vertebral artery**, which passes anteriorly and almost immediately enters the musculature. Farther laterally, a short trunk, the **carotid duct**, enters the anterior surface of the radix. The duct

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

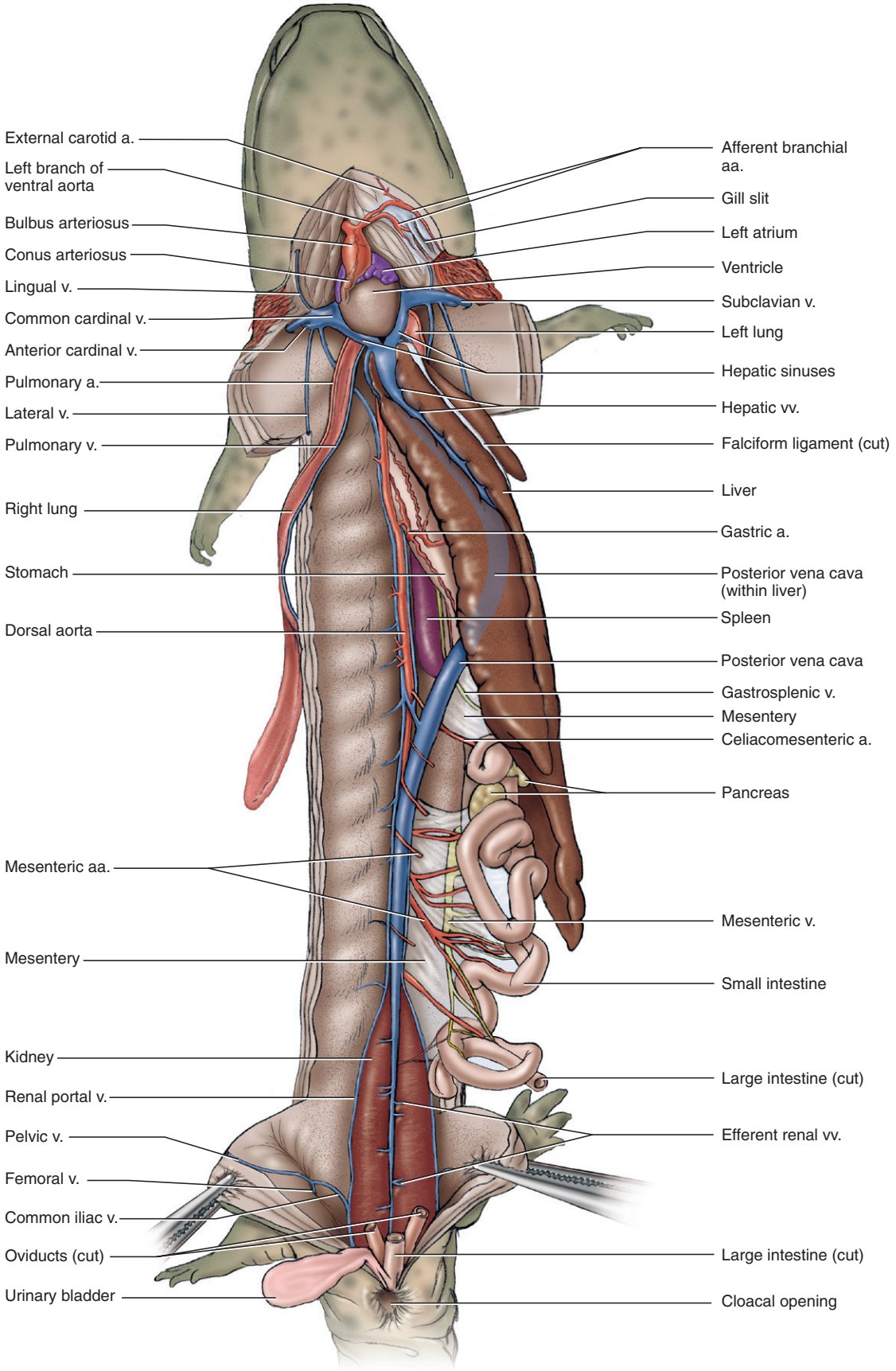


FIGURE 5.33 Pleuroperitoneal cavity of the mudpuppy in ventral view, revealing heart and vessels. Liver is pulled to the left.

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

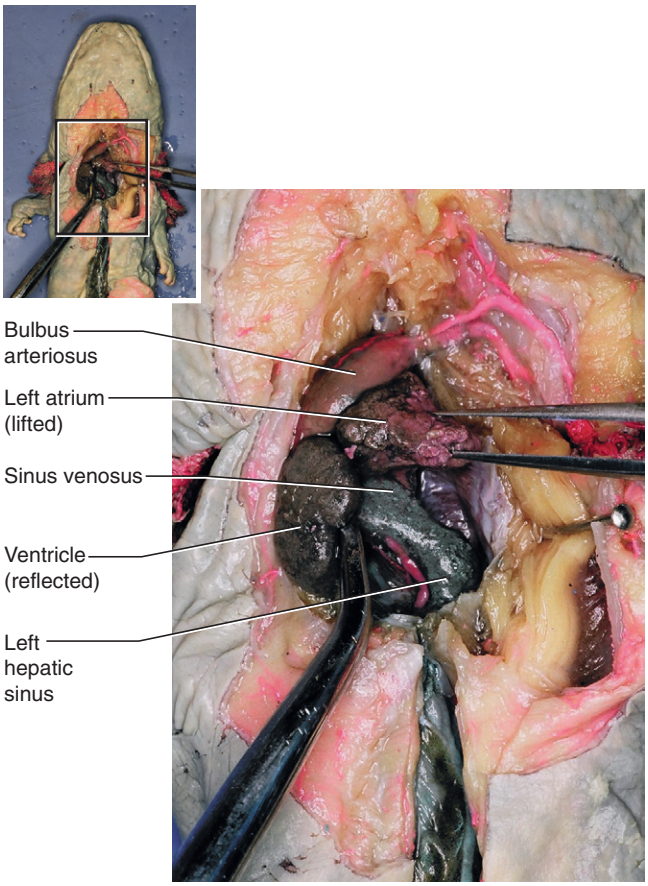


FIGURE 5.34 Pericardial cavity of the mudpuppy in ventral view, exposing the heart. The ventricle and atrium are lifted and moved aside to reveal the sinus venosus.

connects to the following two arteries. The **first efferent branchial artery** extends anteromedially from the first external gill. The **internal carotid artery** curves anteromedially from the duct, and helps supply the facial region and brain. The **external carotid artery**, observed in association with the afferent branchial arteries, helps supply the floor of the oral cavity and pharynx. It arises from the first efferent branchial artery just after the latter emerges from the gill. Return to the radix and continue to follow it laterally. The **pulmonary artery** arises from its posterior surface and passes to the lung. The pulmonary artery is injected with red latex, and the pulmonary vein should be injected with blue latex, although occasionally it also appears red. To distinguish between the pulmonary artery and pulmonary vein, trace each of them anteriorly. The pulmonary artery curves slightly laterally and connects to the radix, whereas the pulmonary vein passes medially and then dorsal to the posterior vena cava (as already noted earlier). Beyond the pulmonary artery, the **second** and **third efferent branchial arteries**, which emerge from the second and third gills, unite to form the radix.

The efferent branchial arteries recollect blood that has passed through the gills and is therefore oxygenated (as also occurs in the shark). From the description of the arteries given in the previous paragraph, it should be evident that the pulmonary artery, being a branch of the radix of the aorta, itself formed by the union of the efferent branchial arteries, carries blood that has already passed through the gills and is therefore oxygenated. The mudpuppy is distinct in this regard from other typical air-breathing tetrapods, in which the pulmonary artery leads from the heart and carries deoxygenated blood to the lungs for oxygenation. Embryologically, the pulmonary artery develops from the sixth aortic arch, which passes from the dorsal to ventral aorta, and is interrupted in its course by the capillaries of the gill, which thus define the afferent (ventral) and efferent (dorsal) portions of the arch, or branchial arteries. In most other lung-bearing tetrapods, the ventral portion of the sixth aortic arch is retained as the connection from the heart to the lungs (that is, to the pulmonary artery), and the efferent portion of the arch is either retained as a reduced vessel, termed the duct arteriosus, or, more commonly, lost in the adult. In the mudpuppy, however, the reverse occurs: The efferent portion of the arch is lost and the afferent portion, the duct arteriosus, is retained. This arrangement, of course, is tied to the presence of both gills and lungs in the mudpuppy, and it allows the mudpuppy "options" for oxygenation. If, for example, the external gills are unable to take up sufficient oxygen because of low water oxygen saturation, blood can be routed to the lungs for further oxygenation when the mudpuppy surfaces to breathe; and then returned, as usual in tetrapods, to the heart by way of the pulmonary vein. When oxygen uptake through the external gills is sufficient, then the mudpuppy can bypass the lung circulation, shunting blood to the rest of the body.

As in the other vertebrates so far studied, the dorsal aorta supplies the structures of the trunk by paired and unpaired branches. Its most anterior paired vessels are the **subclavian arteries**. Each subclavian extends almost directly laterally, giving off several small arteries before continuing into the forelimb as the **brachial artery**. The next few posterior arteries are single median arteries that mainly supply the viscera (Figure 5.38). The most anterior of these, the **gastric artery**, arises near the anterior end of the stomach and passes to this organ. The larger **celiacomesenteric artery** arises near the posterior end of the stomach and soon subdivides into various branches that primarily supply the spleen, stomach, duodenum, and liver. The dorsal aorta then gives off several unpaired **mesenteric arteries** that pass through the mesentery and supply the intestines. In addition, the aorta gives off paired **testicular** or **ovarian arteries** to the testes or ovaries that pass through the mesorchium or mesovarium, respectively, and paired **renal arteries** that

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

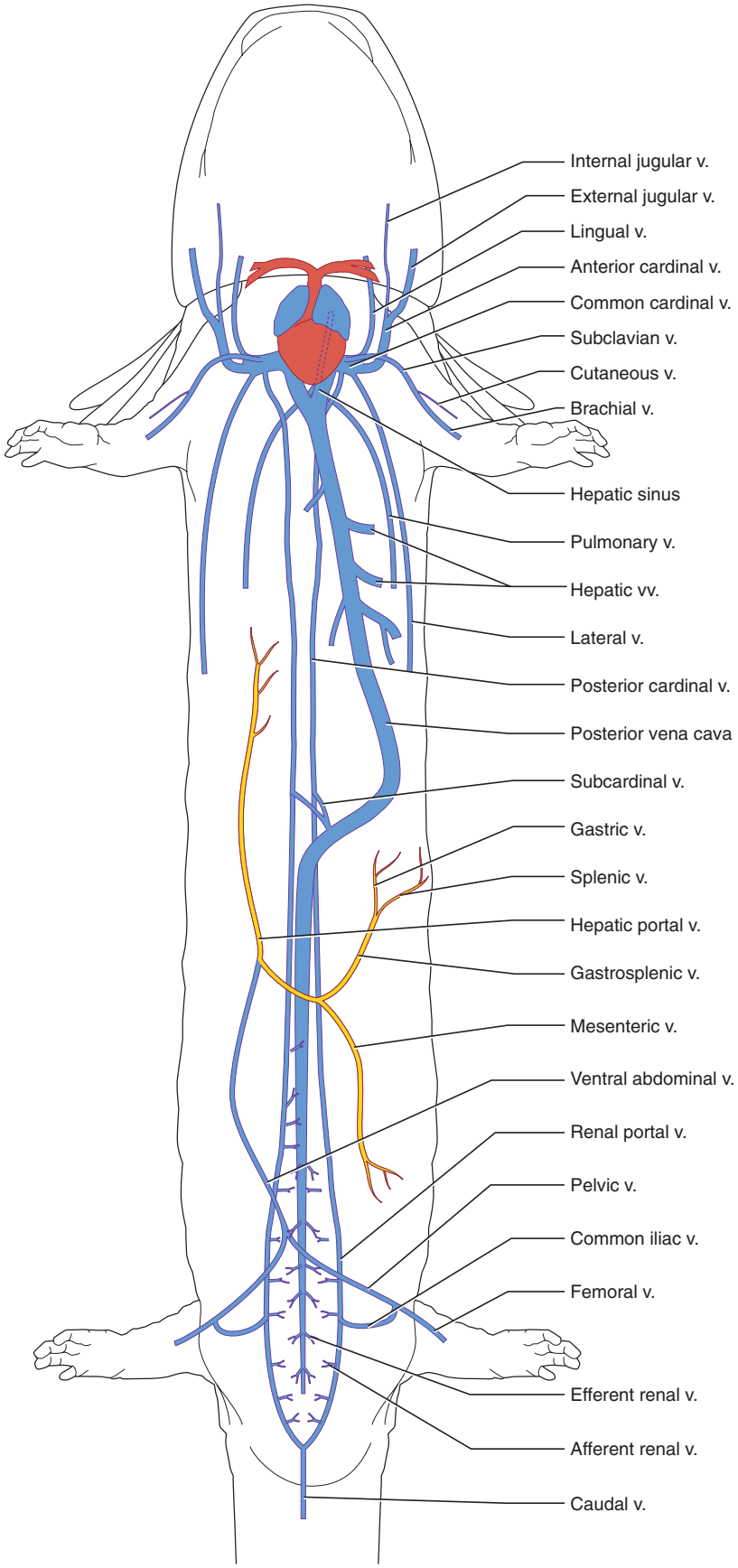


FIGURE 5.35 Schematic illustration showing the pattern of the venous system in the mudpuppy superimposed on a ventral view of the body outline.

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

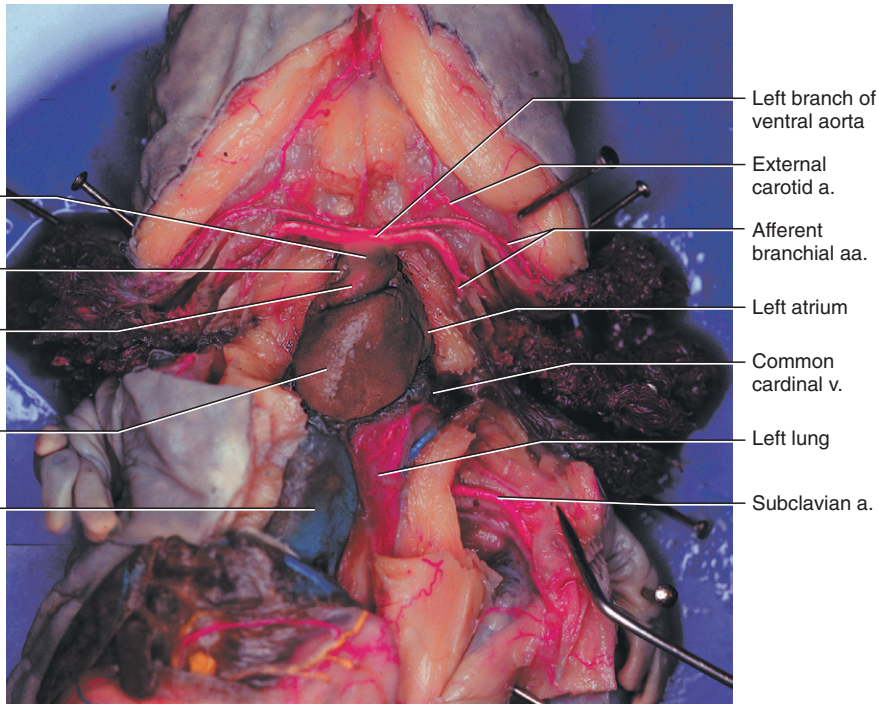


FIGURE 5.36 Ventral view of the heart and ventral aorta in the mudpuppy.

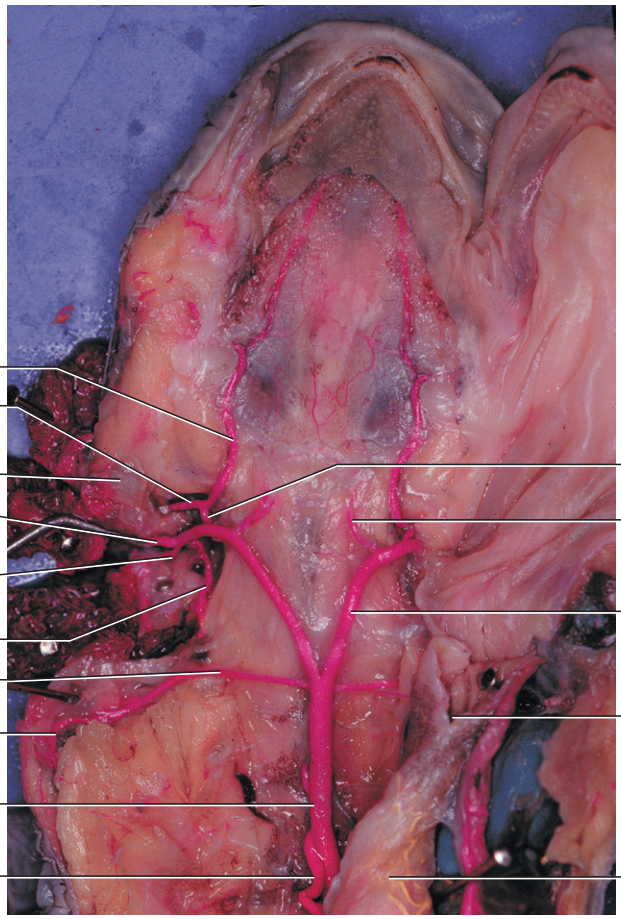


FIGURE 5.37 Dorsal aorta and branches of the mudpuppy in ventral view. The right side of the mouth has been cut and the lower jaw swung open.

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

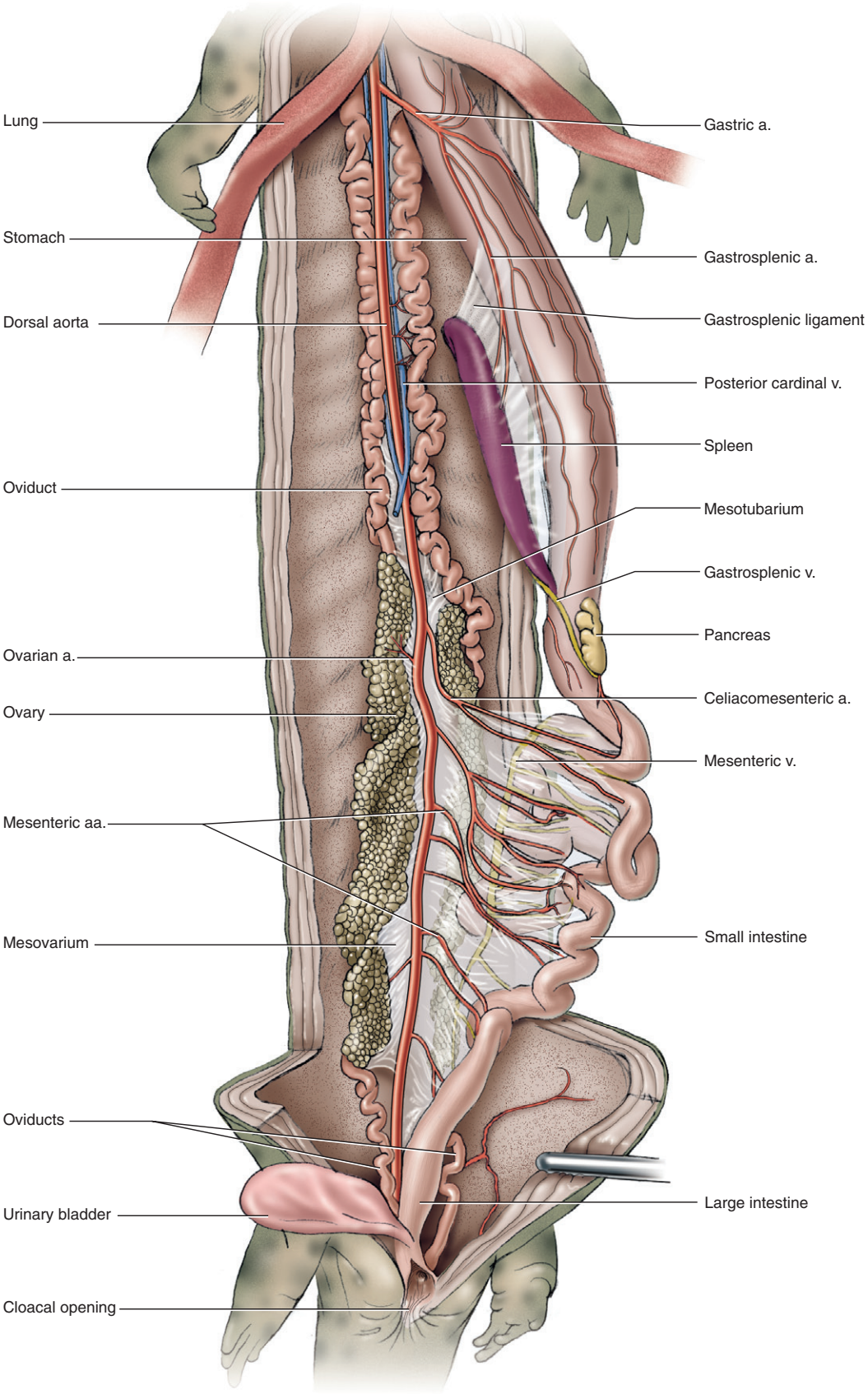


FIGURE 5.38 Pleuroperitoneal cavity of the mudpuppy in ventral view, showing the pattern of the arterial system posterior to the heart.

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

pass into the kidneys. Dorsal to the posterior part of the kidneys, large, paired **iliac arteries** extend laterally. Each branches into three vessels, an anterior **epigastric artery** (onto the body wall), a lateral **femoral artery** (into the hind limb), and a posterior **hypogastric artery** (to the cloaca and urinary bladder). The small, paired **cloacal arteries** are the last branches of the aorta, which then continues into the tail as the **caudal artery**.

At this point, now that you have examined the vessels and viscera, recall the suggestion on page 99 that you observe the subvertebralis muscle (Figure 5.11b).

Key Terms: Cardiovascular System

afferent branchial artery
afferent renal arteries
anterior cardinal vein
brachial artery
brachial vein
bulbus arteriosus
carotid duct
caudal artery
caudal vein
celiacomesenteric artery
cloacal arteries
common cardinal vein
common iliac vein
conus arteriosus
cutaneous vein
dorsal aorta
efferent branchial artery
efferent renal veins
epigastric artery
external carotid artery
external jugular vein
femoral artery
femoral vein
gastric artery
gastrosplenic vein
heart
hepatic portal vein
hepatic sinuses
hepatic veins
hypogastric artery
iliac artery
internal carotid artery
internal jugular vein
lateral vein
left atrium
lingual vein
mesenteric arteries
mesenteric vein
ovarian artery
ovarian vein
parietal pericardium
pelvic veins
pericardial cavity
pericardial sac
posterior cardinal vein
posterior vena cava
pulmonary artery
pulmonary vein
radices (sing. **radix**)
renal arteries
renal portal vein
right atrium
sinus venosus
subcardinal vein
subclavian artery
subclavian vein
testicular artery
testicular vein
transverse septum
ventral abdominal vein
ventral aorta
ventricle
vertebral artery
vesicular vein
visceral pericardium

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

CHAPTER

6

The Frog

INTRODUCTION

The North American bullfrog, *Rana catesbeiana*, is a member of Anura, which together with Caudata (salamanders and newts) and Gymnophiona (caecilians or apodans) form Amphibia (see Chapter 1). Frogs have a long fossil history, with the Early Triassic *Triadobatrachus massinoti* recognized as among the earliest frogs. As with amphibians generally, anurans tend to have permeable, scaleless skin, kept moist by numerous mucous glands, that allows for considerable cutaneous respiration. Frogs have highly specialized locomotory features that make them instantly recognizable. Most obvious perhaps are that the body is rigid, short, and wide, the hind limbs are long and, familiarly though not exclusively, used for jumping, and the tail is absent (Figure 6.8). It is to the last feature that the group owes its name: Anuran is derived from the Ancient Greek words meaning "without" (*an*) and "tail" (*oura*).

These specializations, among others, provide ample proof of the risks involved in viewing living vertebrates as primitive or somehow intermediate between other vertebrate grades. They (and the other amphibians) are in fact highly derived tetrapods. Anurans are the most successful amphibians, including more than 5200 species and comprising nearly 90% of all amphibians (Frost et al., 2006), living on all continents except Antarctica. They have diversified into numerous and markedly different ecological types.

Anurans generally have an aquatic tadpole or larval stage and undergo metamorphosis to produce the radically different adult form, but different reproductive strategies have evolved. Some, such as some members of Pipidae, a group of specialized aquatic frogs, produce eggs that develop directly into juvenile frogs, whereas other pipids have aquatic larvae. Some species of *Nectophrynoides* (Bufonidae, the true toads) are viviparous, and in *Gastrotheca* (Hylidae) the juvenile frogs develop directly in pouches in the female's skin. In the species *Rhinoderma darwini* (Rhinodermatidae), the tadpoles complete their development in the vocal sacs of the male.

Jumping, using long hind limbs, is the stereotyped frog locomotory behavior. Again, considerable specialization exists among anurans in this regard. For example, pipids are specialized aquatic frogs with webbed feet used for propulsion through water. Several clades (e.g., Centrolenidae, Hylidae, Rhacophoridae) include arboreal frogs, which can move by quadrupedal walking or climbing as well as by leaping. Hemisotidae include burrowing frogs that dig headforemost, a behavior reflected by their heavily ossified skulls. Several terrestrial frogs tend to hop or walk rather than jump, such as Bufonidae, which tend to have heavy or robust bodies with relatively short legs.

Although frogs are commonly used in vertebrate dissection courses, it is worth remembering that, as vertebrates, they are neither primitive nor typical—they are just readily available. However, their frequent use, particularly for some species, has been a factor in their decline in many areas. Perhaps instructors might consider the use of the abundant Marine Toad instead. On the other hand, in some countries, such as Argentina, the bullfrog is bred for commercial purposes and has become a pest that is eliminating native species.

Rana catesbeiana belongs to Ranidae, although the systematics of this group are not resolved and it may be paraphyletic (see Frost et al., 2006). *R. catesbeiana* is a native North American frog with a fairly wide natural distribution and has been introduced in parts of Asia, South America, and Europe. Bullfrogs vary considerably in size, but length tends to be between 10 and 17 cm, although many will be 20 cm in length (measured from the tip of the snout to the cloaca). They live in water, so are found near lakes, ponds, and rivers.

SECTION I: SKELETON

Skull, Mandible, and Hyoid Apparatus

The skeleton of anurans demonstrates quite dramatically the misleading assumption that many beginning students have about amphibians—that they

© 2010 Elsevier Inc.

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

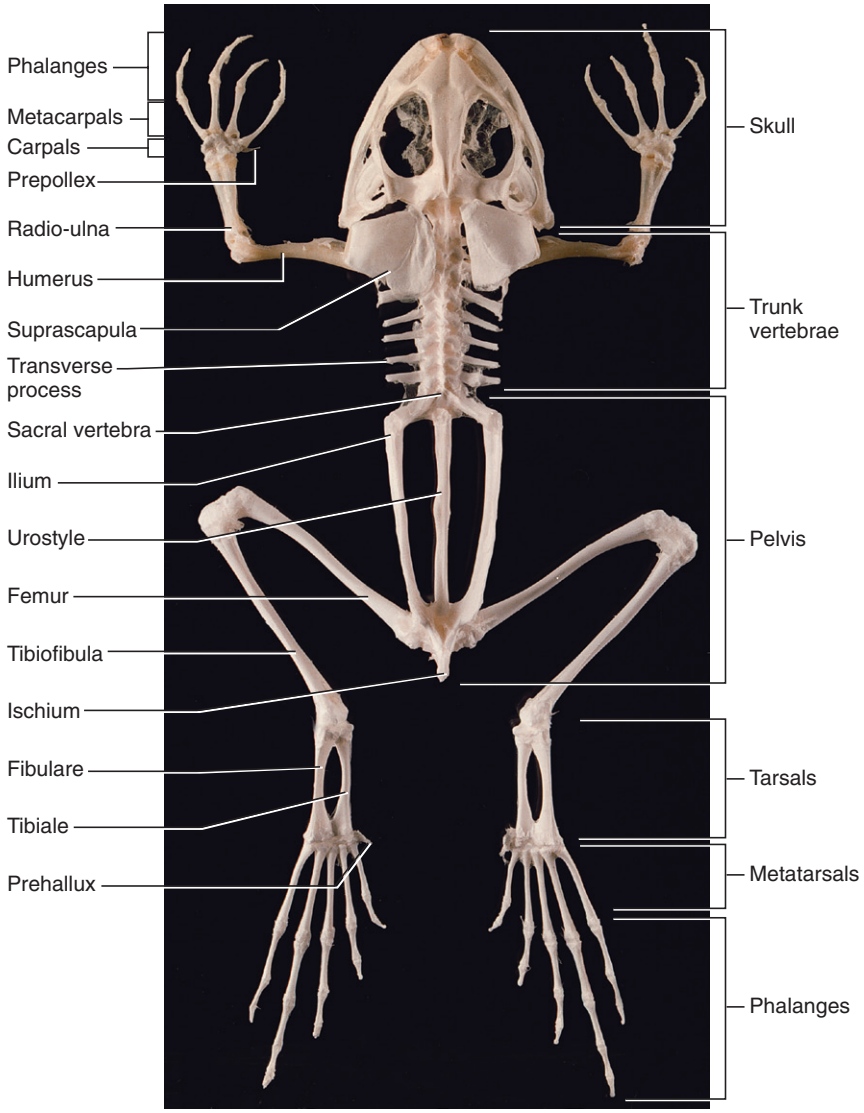


FIGURE 6.1 Dorsal view of the skeleton of the frog.

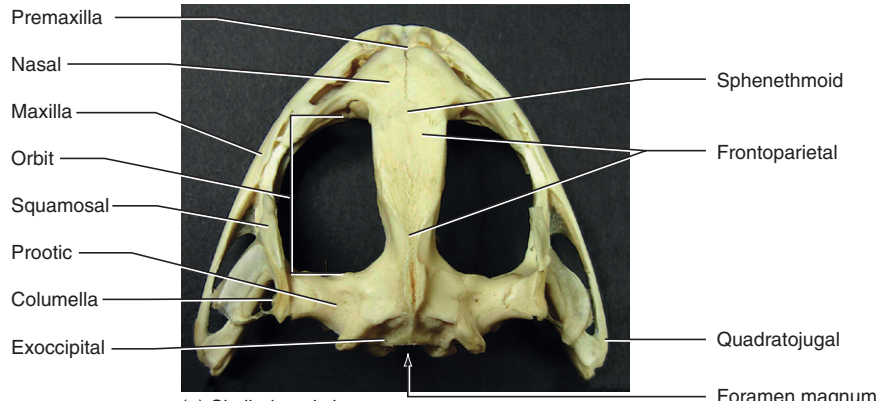
are intermediate between fishes and higher tetrapods, and so are simpler versions of reptiles and mammals. One glance at the highly specialized skeleton of a frog should suffice to dispel such views. The skeleton described here is of *Rana catesbeiana*, but its features apply to anurans generally.

Living amphibians generally tend to have specialized and reduced (and in some cases largely cartilaginous) skeletons, and that of frogs is no exception (Figure 6.1). There has indeed been considerable loss of bone and decrease in ossification over basal tetrapods (as well as "higher" tetrapods), which is clearly evident in the broad, flattened, and fenestrated **skull** (Figures 6.1 and 6.2). Among the bones commonly present in tetrapods but absent in anurans are the lacrimal, prefrontal, postfrontal, and opisthotic. Two particularly large openings are the **orbits** dorsally and the **interpterygoid vacuities** ventrally on the palate.

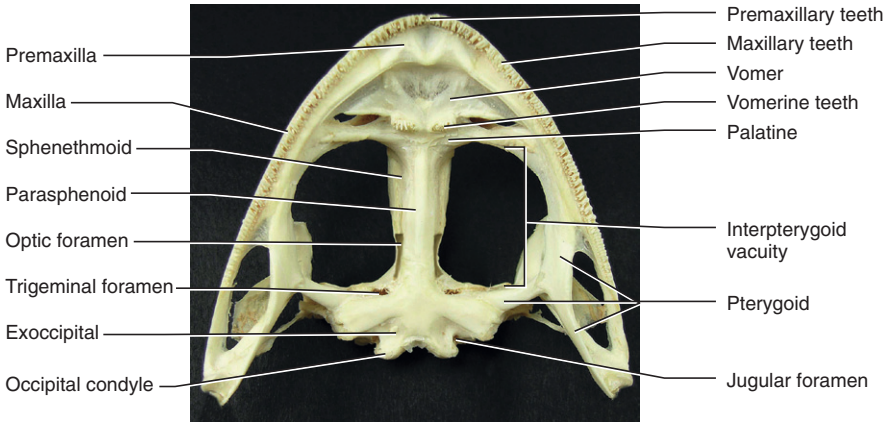
Examine the skull in dorsal view (Figure 6.2a). Its margin is approximately parabolic. On each side, this margin is composed of the small median **premaxilla**, the long **maxilla**, and the shorter **quadratojugal**, in anterior to posterior order. Ventrally, the premaxilla and maxilla bear a single row of small teeth, the **premaxillary** and **maxillary teeth**, respectively (Figure 6.2b, c). The **vomers** lie anteriorly just behind the premaxillae. They bear **vomerine teeth**.

The paired **nasals** are broad and flattened medially and contact each other on the dorsal midline (Figure 6.2a, c, d). Each has a narrow process that extends latero-ventrally, forming the anterior margin of the large orbits, and contacts an ascending process of the maxilla. A **naris**, the opening into the nasal cavities, lies anterior to each orbit. The paried **frontoparietals** are elongated, flattened bones that meet along the dorsal midline to form most of the cranial roof. Much of the side and

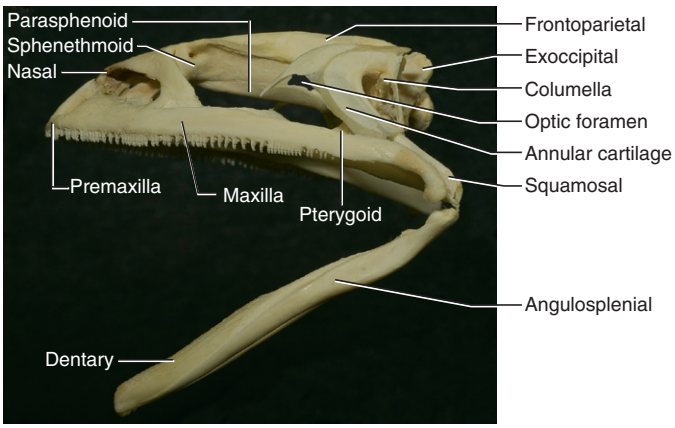
Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com



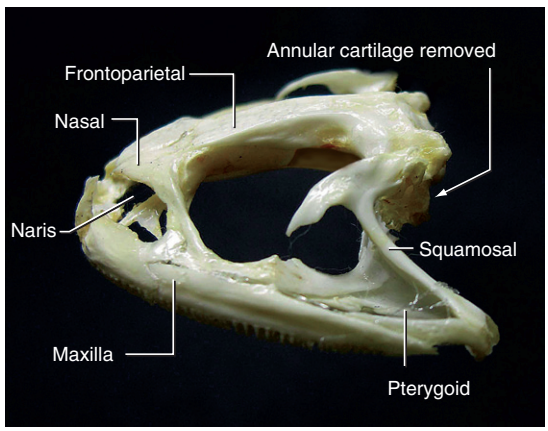
(a) Skull, dorsal view



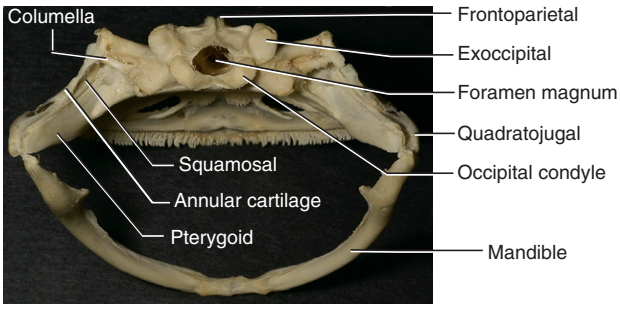
(b) Skull, ventral view



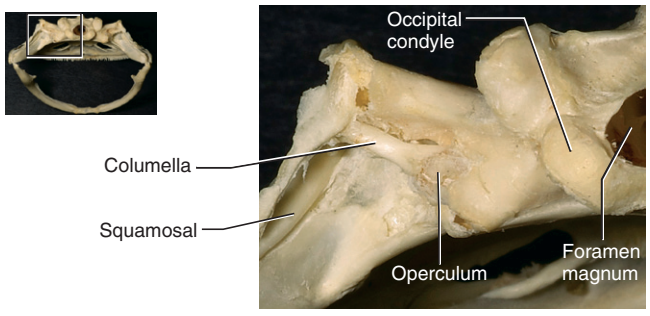
(c) Skull and mandible, left lateral view



(d) Skull, left dorsolateral view



(e) Skull and mandible, posterior view



(f) Detail of otic region, posterior view

FIGURE 6.2 Skull and mandible of the frog in (a) dorsal and (b) ventral views of the skull; (c) left lateral view of the skull and mandible; (d) left dorsolateral view of the skull; (e) posterior view of the skull and mandible; and (f) detail of left otic region.

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

ventral parts of the braincase are formed by the **sphenethmoid**, which is exposed mainly in ventral and lateral views (Figure 6.2b, c). It is essentially tubular, but its anterior part expands laterally. Examine the skull in ventral view to see this anterior part. Here, the **palatines**[1] extend as transverse bars on either side of the sphenethmoid to reach the maxillae. A small portion of the sphenethmoid that helps form the roof of the braincase is exposed dorsally, wedged between the nasal and frontoparietal bones.

The **parashenoid** is approximately cruciate or **t**-shaped (Figure 6.2b). The anteriorly tapering stem of the **t** covers the sphenethmoid ventrally. The top part of the stem projects posteriorly toward the **exoccipital** bones. Each transverse arm of the **t** extends laterally toward a **pterygoid** bone. The paired exoccipital bones form the posterior part of the skull (Figure 6.2e, f). They enclose the **foramen magnum**, the large opening for passage of the spinal cord. Ventrally, each exoccipital bears an **occipital condyle** for articulation with the atlas. The pterygoid is triradiate, or **y**-shaped, with its three arms extending out to contact other skeletal elements (Figure 6.2b). Its anterior arm extends anteriorly and contacts the maxilla and nasal, and its posterior arm extends posteriorly, curving gently laterally, to the angle of the jaw (see later). The medial arm is shortest. It extends toward the **prootic** (see later) and transverse stem of the parasphenoid.

Examine the posterior end of the skull in lateral view and identify the **T**-shaped **squamosal** (Figure 6.2c, d). The top of the **T** is curved, with one arm extending anteroventrally, the other posterodorsally. Some prepared specimens provide an unobstructed view of the squamosal (Figure 6.2d), due to the absence of the **annular cartilage** that supports the **tympanic membrane**. Other specimens retain the cartilage, and the distal end of the **columella** (Figure 6.2c; see also Section III) can be seen within the area it circumscribes. The long stem of the **T** of the squamosal is oriented posteroventrally toward the angle of the jaw, where the jaw joint is formed. The main element that forms the upper part of the jaw joint is the **quadrate**, but this element, usually cartilaginous in anurans, is usually not visible in adults because it is covered laterally by the ventral part of the squamosal, and medially and posteromedially by the posterior arm of the pterygoid.

The medial end of the columella (or stapes) expands into a (partly cartilaginous) footplate that covers the anterior part of the fenestra ovalis, the entrance into the inner ear, whereas its lateral, slender portion is termed the stylus (Figure 6.2e, f). Another term used for the columella is plectrum (see Duelmann and Trueb, 1994). Anurans (and some salamanders) have a second skeletal element that covers the posterior part of the fenestra ovalis. This is the cartilaginous **operculum** (Figure 6.2f), which is coupled with the columella (for further details see Mason and Narins, 2002; Mason et al., 2003).

Examine the skull in dorsal view. The irregularly shaped prootics contain the inner ear. The prootic extends between the squamosal laterally, and the exoccipital and frontoparietal medially. Usually the prootic fuses with the exoccipital (a combined element sometimes referred to as the otoccipital, as noted by Duellman and Trueb, 1994). Anteriorly the prootic helps form the posterior wall of the orbit and margin of the **optic foramen** (Figure 6.2b, c) and contains a large opening, the **trigeminal foramen** (Figure 6.2b; termed the prootic foramen by Duellman and Trueb, 1994), through which the trigeminal (Cranial Nerve V) and facial (Cranial Nerve VII) nerves pass. Posteriorly the prootic and exoccipital form the **foramen ovale** (or jugular foramen according to Trueb, 1973), the opening just beside the occipital condyle, for passage of the glossopharyngeal and vagus nerves (Cranial Nerves IX and X, respectively).

The **mandible** is a slender, parabolic, edentulous structure (Figures 6.2c, e and 6.3). As in the skull, several bones (e.g., the coronoid, articular, and prearticular) commonly present in nonmammalian tetrapods are missing. Teeth are also absent from the lower jaw, as in nearly all anurans. The mandible includes **Meckel's cartilage**, nearly all of which is covered by two large elements, the **dentary** anterolaterally and the **angulosplenial** medially and posteriorly. The dentary is a thin, flange-like bone. The angulosplenial is larger. Its

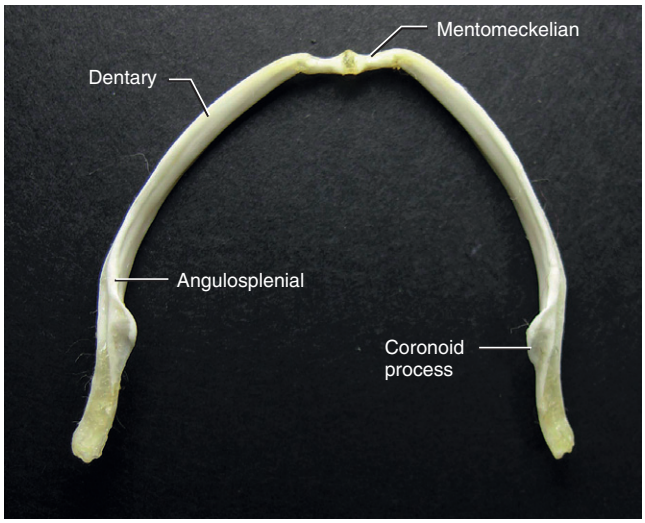


FIGURE 6.3 Dorsal view of the mandible of the frog.

[1]Trueb (1993) indicated that the element termed the palatine may not be homologous with the palatine of other tetrapods, as it seems to arise as a lingual process of the maxilla. This author referred to the process as the neopalatine.

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

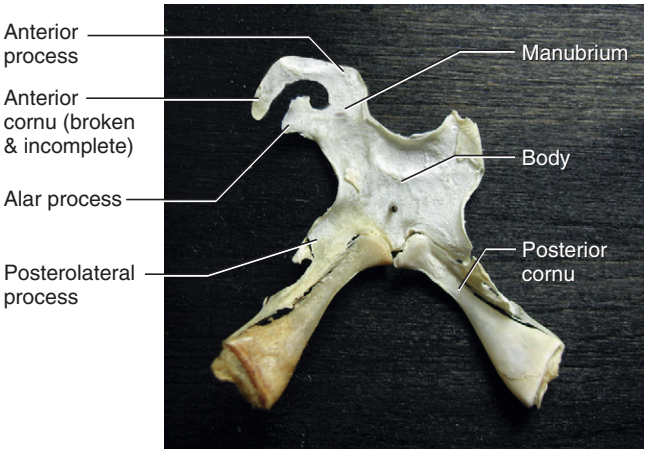


FIGURE 6.4 Hyoid of the frog in dorsal view. The anterior portion of the right side is missing.

posteromedial surface bears the medially directed flange-like **coronoid process**. Posteriorly the angulosplenial articulates with the quadrate of the skull. Portions of Meckel's cartilage, if preserved, may be observed in the dorsal, trough-like groove of the angulosplenial. Anteriorly, the **mentomeckelian** ossifies at the mandibular symphysis. The right and left mentomeckelians are attached anteriorly at the mandibular symphysis by a syndesmotic (i.e., fibrous) connection. Trueb (1993) indicated that in frogs the mentomeckelian is derived from the infrarostral (a structure of the larval chondrocranium), and the mentomeckelian of frogs and salamanders may not be homologous.

The **hyoid apparatus** is mainly a thin, broad cartilaginous plate, or body, on the floor of the oral cavity that supports the tongue and larynx (Figure 6.4). Several processes project from it. The **anterior cornu** initially extends anteriorly, but curves sharply posterodorsally to attach to the skull. In Figure 6.4 only part of the left anterior cornu is preserved. The **posterior cornua** are bony rods extending from the posterior margin. They begin medially but diverge to contact the larynx.

Key Terms: Skull, Mandible, and Hyoid Apparatus

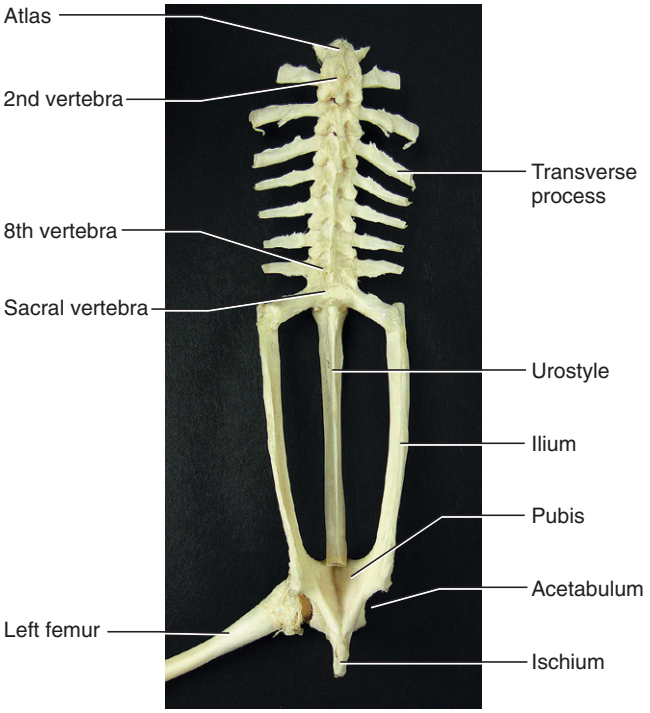
annular cartilage
anterior cornu
columella
coronoid process
dentary
exoccipital
foramen magnum
foramen ovale
frontoparietal
hyoid apparatus
interpterygoid vacuity
mandible
maxilla
maxillary teeth
Meckel's cartilage
Mentomeckelian
naris
nasal
occipital condyle
operculum
orbit
palatine
parashenoid
posterior cornu
premaxilla
premaxillary teeth
prootic
pterygoid
quadratojugal
skull
sphenethmoid
squamosal
trigeminal foramen
tympanic membrane
vomerine teeth
vomer

Postcranial Skeleton

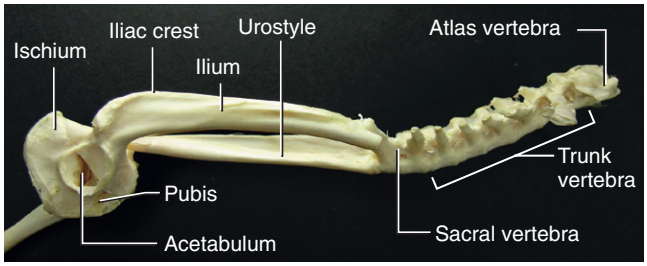
The postcranial skeleton also shows evidence of extreme modification, associated mainly with the highly specialized locomotor mechanism characteristic of most anurans. The **vertebral column** is reduced, with only nine free **vertebrae** (Figure 6.5). Most anteriorly in this series is the **atlas**, which articulates with the occipital condyles of the skull. The last free vertebra is a **sacral vertebra**, attaching to the **pelvic girdle** (see later). Extending posteriorly from the sacral vertebra is the elongated, rod-like **urostyle**, which is formed by the fusion of several postsacral vertebrae. The vertebrae have prominent **transverse processes**, but ribs are lacking.

The appendicular skeleton is well developed. The **pectoral girdle**, largely ossified, contains several elements (Figures 6.1 and 6.6). The **scapula** is a nearly vertical plate-like structure. Extending dorsomedially from it is the **suprascapula**, which has a prominent and usually calcified cartilaginous portion medially. Ventrally, there are two large paired elements. The more anterior and slender **clavicles**, dermal elements, extend almost directly medially from the scapula. The larger, more posterior **procoracoids** form a plate-like base to the girdle. The **glenoid fossa**, for articulation with the **humerus** (see later), is formed mainly by the scapula and procoracoid. An anterior median element, the **omosternum**, lies anteriorly. The cartilaginous **episternum**

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

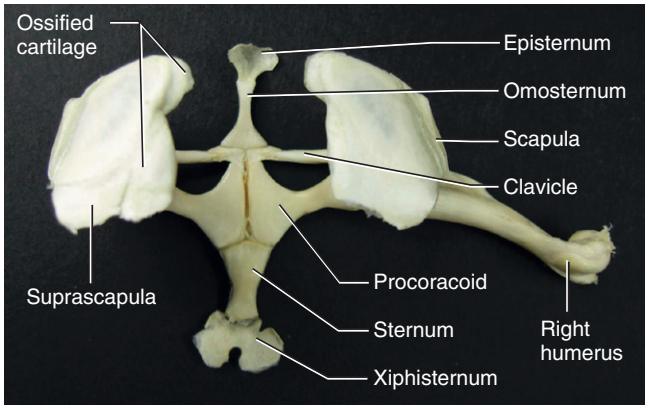


(a) Vertebral column and pelvic girdle, dorsal view

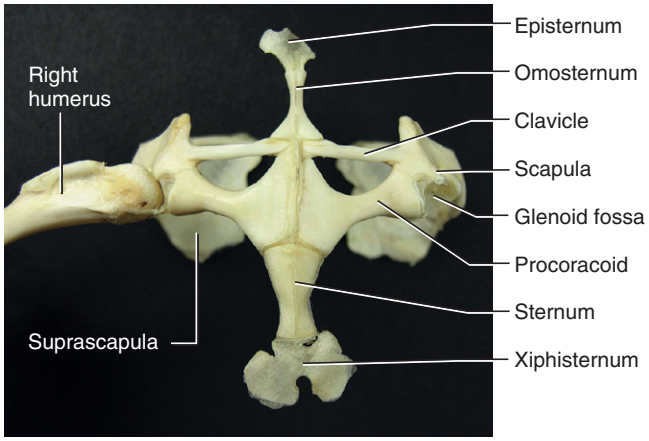


(b) Vertebral column and pelvic girdle, right lateral view

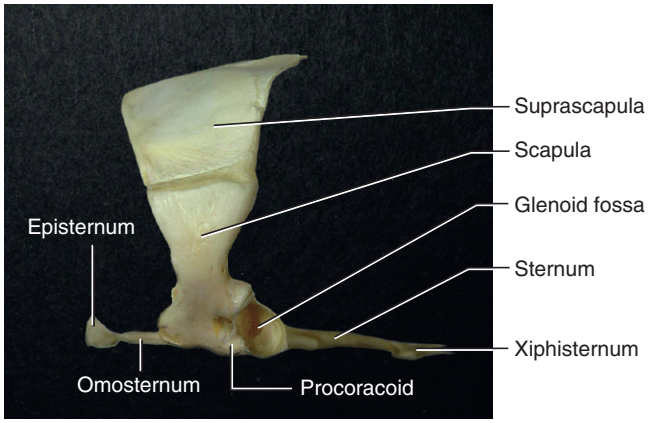
FIGURE 6.5 Vertebral column and pelvis of the frog in (a) dorsal and (b) right lateral views.



(a) Pectoral girdle, dorsal view



(b) Pectoral girdle, ventral view



(c) Pectoral girdle, left lateral view

FIGURE 6.6 Pectoral girdle of the frog in (a) dorsal, (b) ventral, and (c) left lateral views.

extends anteriorly from it. A posterior median element, the **sternum**, articulates with the procoracoids. A cartilaginous **xiphisternum** extends posteriorly from it.

The forelimb includes three segments, the most proximal of which is the brachium (see later), which is supported by the humerus; this bone extends laterally from the glenoid fossa (Figures 6.1 and 6.6). The next segment, the antebrachium, is supported by the **radius** and **ulna**, which fuse to form the **radio-ulna** (Figures 6.1 and 6.7). The **manus** includes a proximal series of small, nodular **carpals**, followed by four complete **digits**, including **metacarpals II** through **V** and **phalanges** (as noted in Chapter 5, the inclusion of a metacarpal as part of a digit follows Kardong, 2009). The two medial digits each bear two phalanges, and the lateral two bear three phalanges each. A small **prepollex** extends medially from the carpals and may represent a reduced metacarpal.

In the **pelvic girdle**, the **pelvis** is formed on each side by the **ilium**, **ischium**, and **pubis** (Figures 6.1 and 6.5). The slender ilium is an elongated, anteriorly directed element, with a well-developed **iliac crest**. The ischium and pubis together outline a semicircle in lateral view,

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

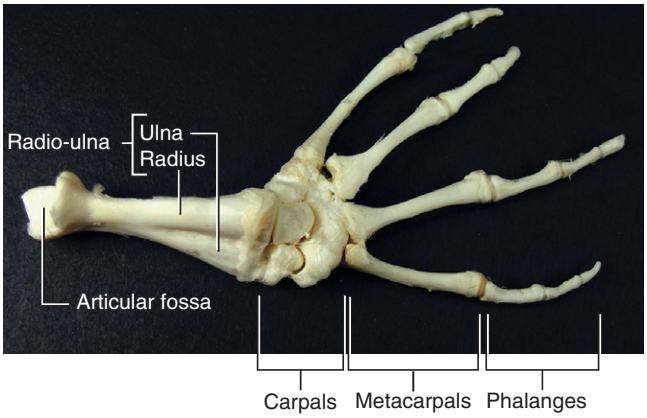


FIGURE 6.7 Right antebrachium and manus of the frog in dorsal view.

the ischium forming the more posterior portion. The **acetabulum** is a conspicuous depression for articulation with the **femur**. The hind limb consists of the proximal femur, followed by the **tibia** and **fibula**, fused to form the **tibiofibula**. The **pes** has rather typical **metatarsals** and **phalanges**, but a modification in the tarsal region produces another functional segment to the hind limb, a feature that is related to the saltatory locomotion of frogs. Here, the two proximal tarsals are elongated to form a medial **tibiale** and lateral **fibulare** (= **calcaneum**), which are partly fused at their ends. The tibiale and fibulare are commonly viewed as equivalent to the astragalus and calcaneum, respectively, the larger tarsal elements of amniotes. Although this does indeed seem to be the case for the fibulare, the tibiale is not homologous with the astragalus. As noted by O'Keefe et al. (2006), the amniote astragalus is apparently a fusion of as many as four anamniote tarsal elements. The distal tarsals have the more typical nodular form. There are five digits, with the first being shortest and the fourth being longest. Digits I and II each bear two phalanges; III and V, three; and IV, four. A small **prehallux**, similar to the prepollex, extends medially from the tarsal region.

Key Terms: Postcranial Skeleton

acetabulum
atlas
carpals
clavicle
digits
episternum
femur
fibula
fibulare (= calcaneum)
glenoid fossa
humerus
iliac crest
ilium
ischium
manus
metacarpal
metatarsal
omosternum
pectoral girdle
pelvic girdle
pelvis
pes
phalanges
prehallux
prepollex
procoracoid
pubis
radio-ulna
radius
sacral vertebra
scapula
sternum
suprascapula
tibia
tibiale
tibiofibula
transverse processes
ulna
urostyle
vertebrae
vertebral column
xiphisternum

SECTION II: EXTERNAL ANATOMY

As with the underlying skeleton, many features of the external anatomy are highly modified in association with the highly specialized saltatory mode of locomotion. The most obvious features are that frogs have very short, wide bodies and very large hind limbs and lack a tail (Figure 6.8). With respect to the shortness of the trunk and relative size of the hind limbs, frogs exhibit among the most extreme specializations of any vertebrate. The forelimb, including the **brachium**, **antebrachium**, and **manus**, is typical in form and proportions to that of other tetrapods. In the hind limb, the **thigh** and **crus** are also typical, but the **pes** is extremely elongated, a characteristic due to the marked modification of two proximal tarsals (Figure 6.1; see Section I), which produces an additional functional segment. There are four digits in the manus. The pes has five digits, which are webbed, as in many swimming forms. The thumb hypertrophies in males during the breeding season to help hold the female during amplexus. Claws are absent, as in amphibians generally.

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

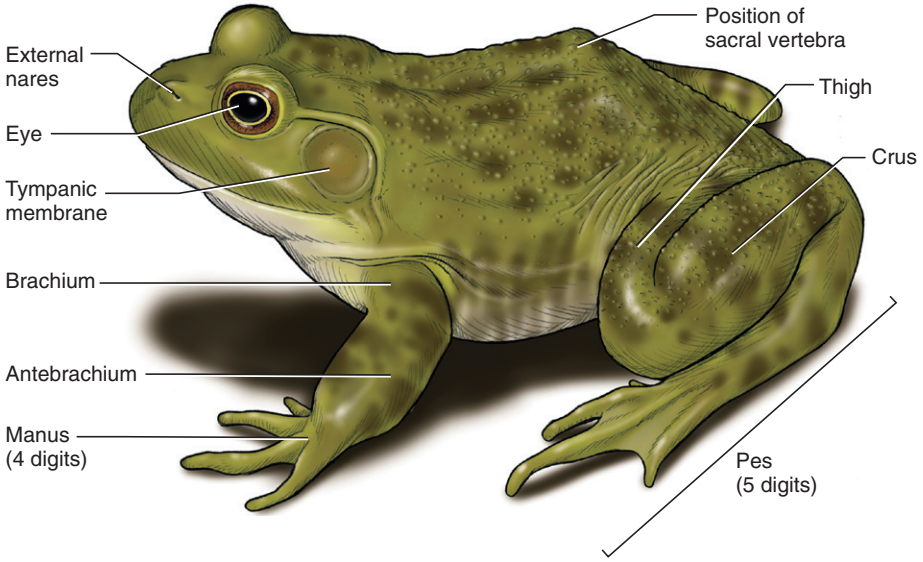


FIGURE 6.8 External features of the frog.

The **skin**, as in many anurans, is thin and highly glandular. These features are associated with the considerable degree of respiration through the skin in most anurans. The mouth is very large, but otherwise normal. The **nares** are rather small, located anteriorly and close together on the dorsal surface of the snout. The **eyes** are fairly large and project out from the top of the head, but in preserved specimens they are often retracted and covered by the small **eyelids**, which are not independently moveable. A **nictitating membrane** is present (Figure 6.9a).

Posterior to each eye, the conspicuous and circular **tympanic membrane** represents the ear externally (Figure 6.9a). Actually, the membrane itself lies deep to the skin, and may be separated from it. As noted earlier, the membrane is supported by the annular cartilage (Figure 6.9b). Males are easily distinguished from females by the size of the tympanic membrane. In females it is about the same size as the eye, whereas in males it is much larger than the eye.

The **cloaca** is present posteriorly (Figure 6.13). However, due to the absence of a tail, it appears to be located somewhat dorsally.

Key Terms: External Anatomy

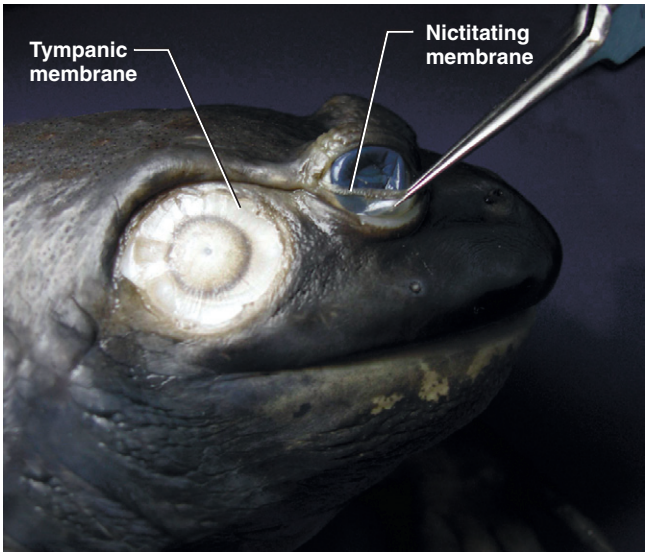
antebrachium
brachium
cloaca
crus
eyelid
eyes
manus
nares (sing., **naris**)
nictitating membrane
pes
skin
thigh
tympanic membrane

SECTION III: MOUTH, ORAL CAVITY, AND PHARYNX

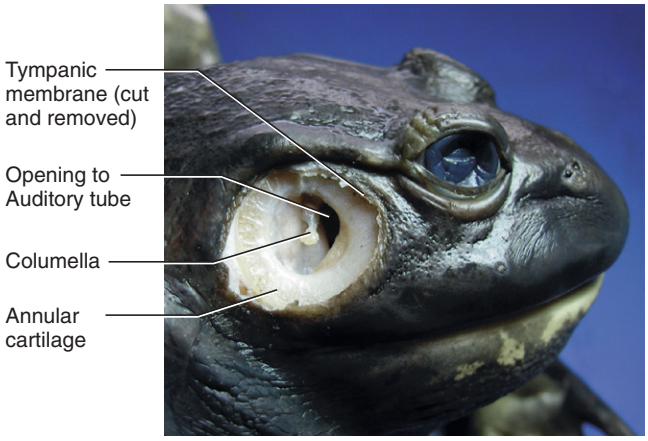
Open the mouth by cutting through the angle of the jaw on each side, so that you can open the mouth to reveal the **oral cavity** and **pharynx**, as shown in Figure 6.10. Note the large **tongue** on the floor of the oral cavity. The tongue is attached anteriorly and folded back into the oral cavity, so that its distal, bifid end lies posteriorly. The tongue is extended to catch insects by rotating it dorsally around its anterior attachment. A single row of small teeth, often easier to feel than to see, lies around the margin of the upper jaw. As described earlier, these teeth are mostly **maxillary teeth**. The few **premaxillary teeth** are near the midline. The teeth lie external to the **maxillary groove**, which extends around the margin of the upper jaw. The **pterygoid ridge** is medial to the groove. A row of **vomerine teeth** is present on each of the vomers. These teeth lie farther posteriorly near the midline of the roof of the oral cavity.

A series of openings enter the oral cavity. The **choanae** are prominent and lie lateral to the vomerine teeth. The large posterolateral openings are the **auditory tubes**, which lead to the middle ear cavities. The floor of the orbits lies between the choanae and auditory tubes. Pressure on this area will force the eyeballs up into their open position. Ventrally in the oral cavity, posterior to

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com



(a) Tympanic membrane and nictitating membrane, right lateral view



(b) Columella with tympanic membrane removed, right lateral view

FIGURE 6.9 Auditory region of the frog in right lateral view.

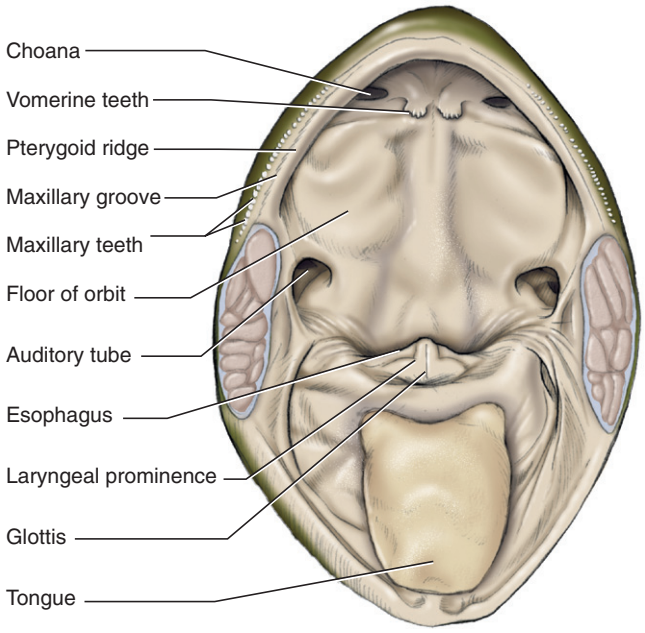


FIGURE 6.10 Anterior view of the oral cavity and pharynx of the frog.

Key Terms: Mouth, Oral Cavity, and Pharynx

auditory tube (Eustachian tube)
choanae
columella
esophagus
glottis
laryngeal prominence
lungs
maxillary groove
maxillary teeth
oral cavity
pharynx
premaxillary teeth
pterygoid ridge
tongue
vomerine teeth

the tongue, is the slit-like **glottis**, which leads to the **lungs** (see later). The glottis is on a small projection, the **laryngeal prominence**, which is formed by cartilages. Laterally on the floor of the oral cavity, on each side of the anterior end of the glottis, is a small opening in males that leads to a vocal sac. The sacs are used in calling during the mating season, but are difficult to find. The entrance into the **esophagus** is posterior to the glottis. Probe it gently to verify that it does indeed extend posteriorly.

Break the tympanic membrane to expose the middle ear cavity (Figure 6.9b). The **columella** (see page 130), which has a cartilaginous distal portion, passes through this cavity to the membrane. Probe the cavity to verify that it connects with the oral cavity through the auditory tube.

SECTION IV: PLEUROPERITONEAL CAVITY, VISCERA, AND UROGENITAL SYSTEM

Using a scalpel and just to one side of the midventral line, make a small, shallow incision—just large enough to insert a scissor blade—through the skin (and only through the skin), which is very thin. Avoid damaging the underlying musculature. Using scissors, continue the incision anteriorly approximately to the level of the axilla, and posteriorly to approximately midway across the width of the hind limb. From its anterior limit, extend

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

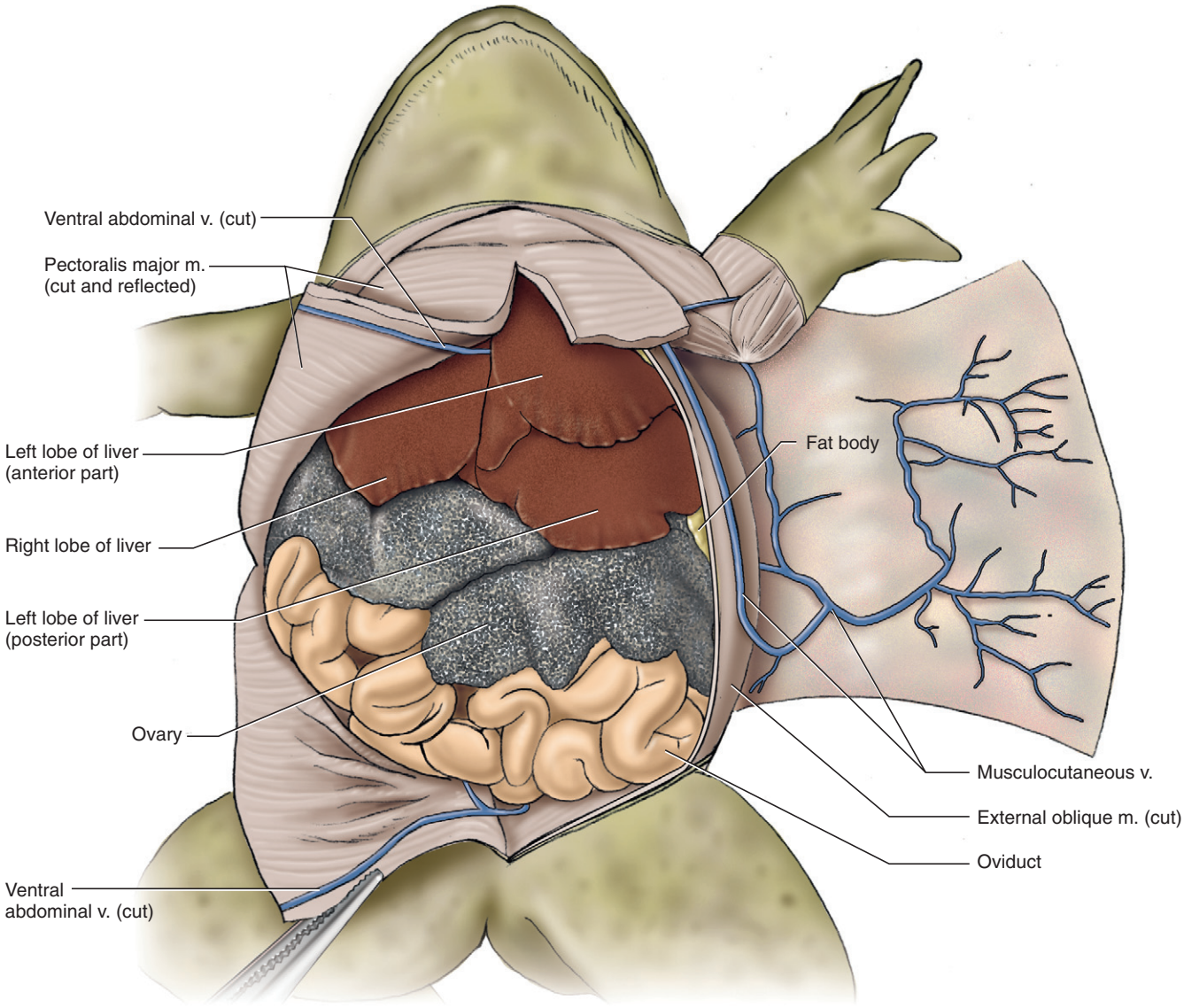


FIGURE 6.11 Pleuroperitoneal cavity of a female frog in ventral view. The very large ovaries of this individual obscure many of the viscera.

the incision laterally to pass just posterior to the forelimb, and reach nearly to the frog's dorsum. Similarly, from the posterior limit, cut the skin around the margin of the hind limb. Repeat these steps for the skin on the other side of the body, finally producing two flaps that can be reflected laterally.

Begin reflecting the skin on one side. It tends to pull away easily but does adhere more strongly in several places. These represent the attachments of lymphatic sacs. Scrape away the connecting tissue, but stay close to the skin in doing so. You will reveal the pectoral and abdominal musculature. Proceed cautiously on the ventrolateral surface, where the **musculocutaneous vein** extends anteroposteriorly—leave the vein on the musculature; it lies just lateral to the lateral edge of the pectoralis major (Figure 6.11). Anteriorly, it veers medially and passes deep to the pectoralis major. Follow the vein posteriorly as it reflects onto the deep surface of the skin, and note that it is formed by the coalescence of the numerous veins draining the skin.

Examine the abdominal musculature. On the midline, you will note the path of the **ventral abdominal vein**, which actually lies within the abdominal cavity and will be exposed presently. Make two anteroposterior incisions through the musculature. The first will be approximately 0.5 cm to one side of the midventral line, to avoid damaging the ventral abdominal vein. For convenience, make this incision on the same side of the body on which the musculocutaneous vein was exposed. Make the second incision parallel and just medial to that portion

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

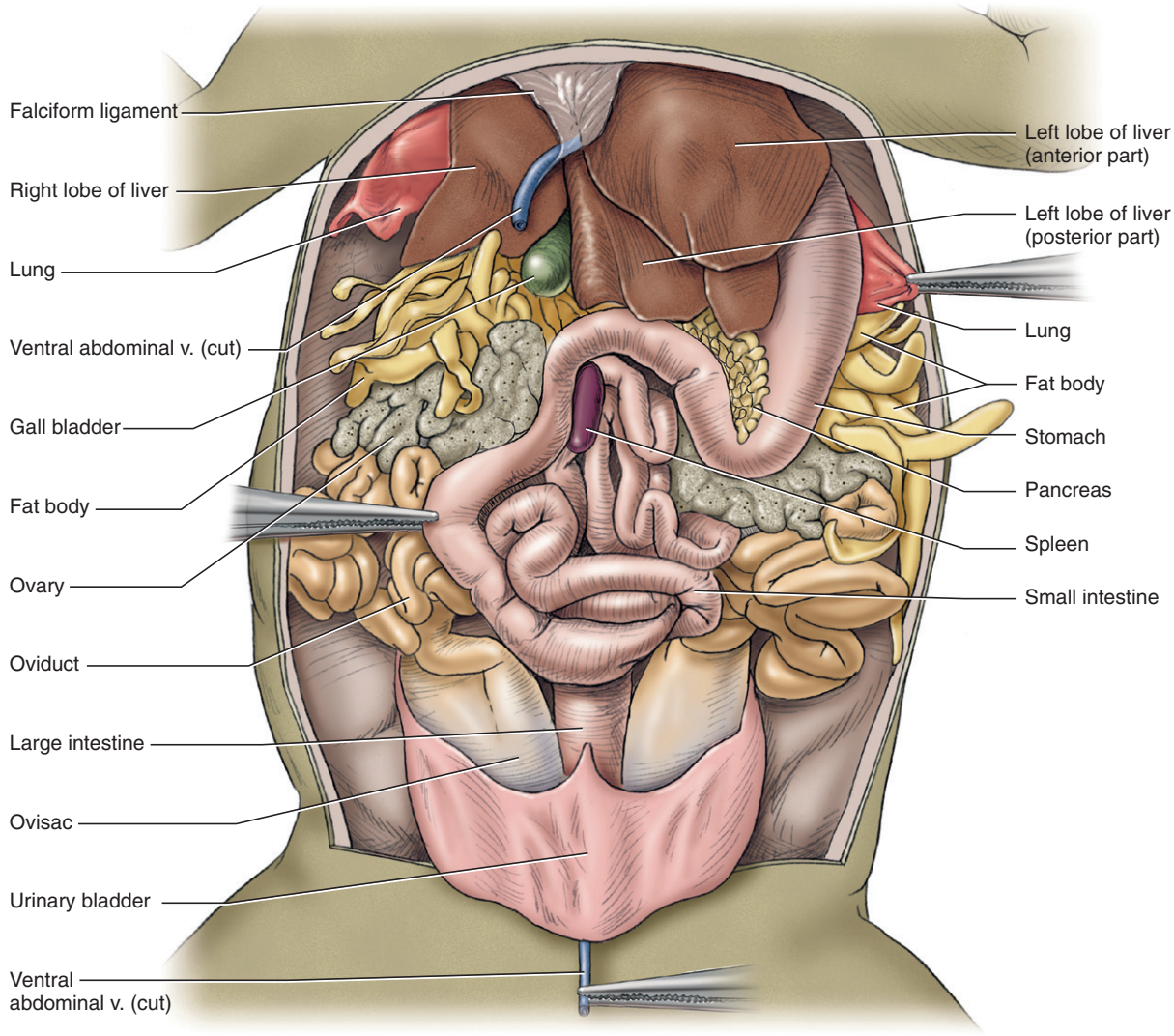


FIGURE 6.12 Pleuroperitoneal cavity of a female frog in ventral view. The smaller ovaries expose many of the viscera.

of the musculocutaneous vein on the abdominal wall. Then make a transverse cut anteriorly and another posteriorly so that you may remove the rectangular block of musculature. This will expose approximately half of the pleuroperitoneal cavity. For the musculature of the other side, simply cut transversely through the musculature from the middle of the median anteroposterior incision, and reflect the resulting two flaps.

Follow the ventral abdominal vein as it passes into the cleft between the **right** and **left lateral lobes** of the liver, the large dark mass lying anteriorly in the pleuroperitoneal cavity. The liver is relatively wide and short, conforming to the shape of the body. Its lobes are usually subdivided to varying degrees. The left lobe usually extends farther posteriorly due to the development of its posterior lobe, and the right lobe of the liver usually covers a smaller median lobe of the liver. Spread the lateral lobes of the liver to reveal the spherical, sac-like **gall bladder**, which lies just posterior to the passage of the ventral abdominal vein (Figure 6.12). Extending from this vein and the liver to the midventral body wall is the **falciform ligament**. Lift the body wall, and break through the falciform ligament to reveal the **pericardium**, a sac-like structure that contains the heart (see later) nestled between the anterior ends of the lateral lobes of the liver.

Examine the structures posterior to the liver. In the female the irregularly shaped **ovaries** are generally conspicuous, "speckled" structures containing developing follicles that are usually visible. The ovaries vary in size, depending on the stage of the reproductive cycle, and may be massive, occupying a large part of the pleuroperitoneal cavity (compare Figures 6.11–6.13). The small, ovoid **testes** of the male are much less apparent, being confined to their relatively dorsal position, and thus covered by other viscera. They will be described shortly.

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

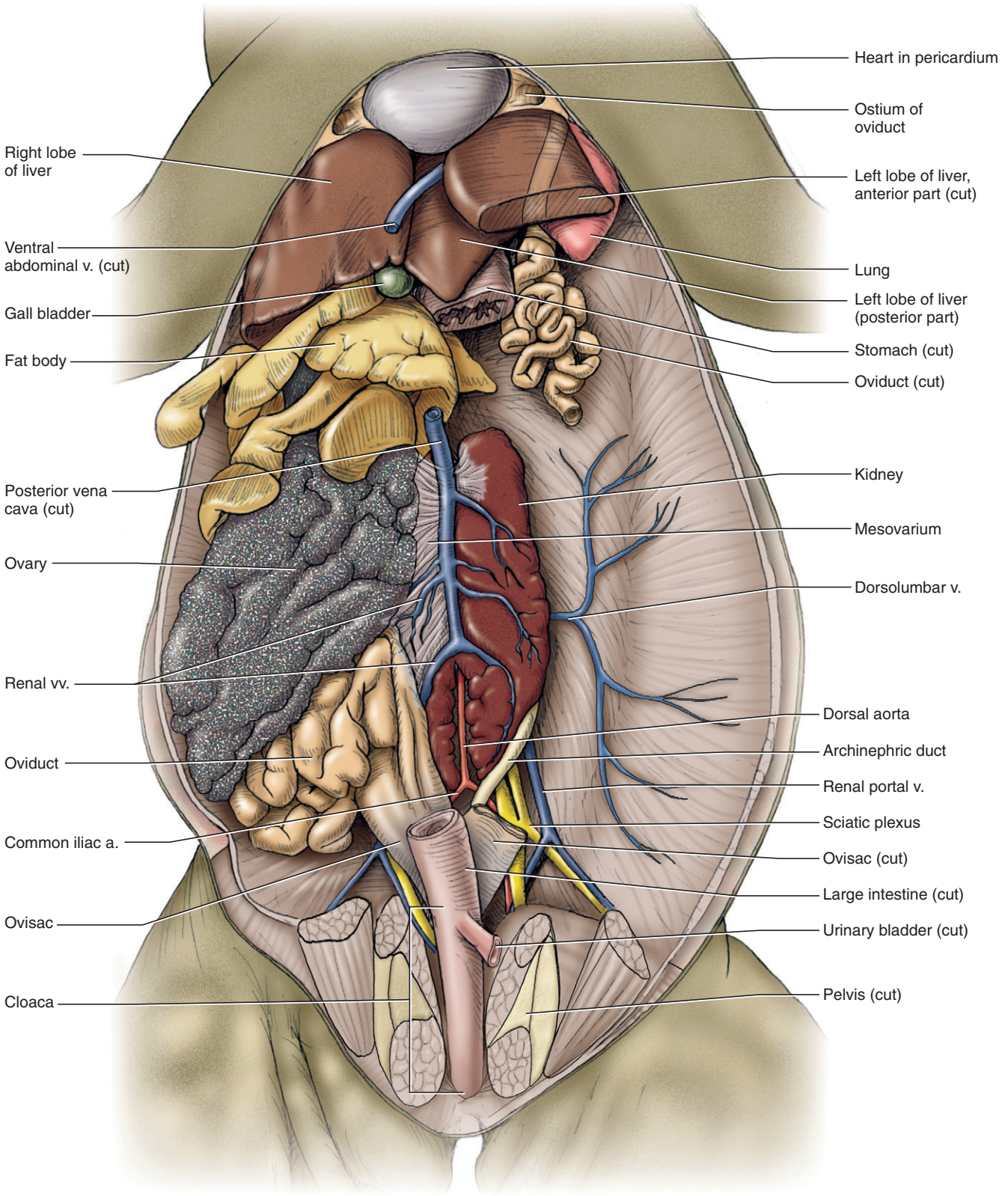


FIGURE 6.13 Pleuroperitoneal cavity of a female frog in ventral view. Several structures have been removed from the left side to expose the urogenital system.

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

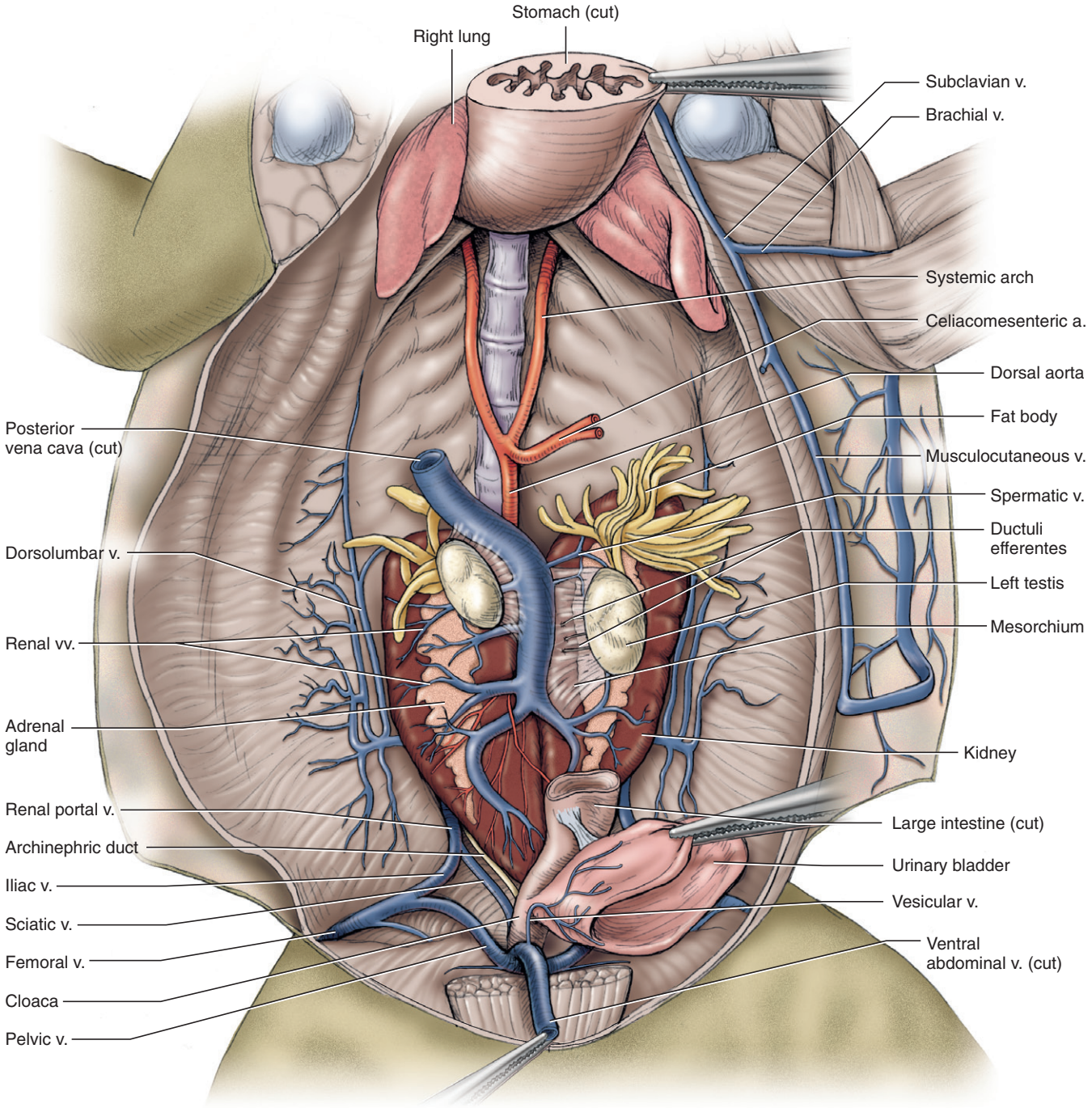


FIGURE 6.14 Pleuroperitoneal cavity of the male frog, with many of the viscera removed to expose urogenital system.

In both sexes, each gonad is associated with a conspicuous **fat body** (Figures 6.12–6.14), which is subdivided into numerous digitiform lobes that are often pressed up against the sides of the pleuroperitoneal cavity. Stored nutrients in the fat bodies are used primarily to nourish the developing gametes. The size of the fat bodies thus varies greatly with the stage of the reproductive cycle. In females, the paired **oviducts** are large, highly convoluted tubes occupying much of the rest of the ventral part of the pleuroperitoneal cavity. Stretches of the digestive tract (see later) may be exposed among the coils of the oviducts, but these are generally narrower and slightly darker. In males large oviducts will not be present; the coils all belong to the digestive tract.

If your specimen is a female with very large or massive ovaries, remove them to provide a better view of the

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

remaining structures, as shown in Figure 6.13. Grasp an ovary, reflect it laterally, and remove it by cutting through its mesentery, the **mesovarium** (Figure 6.13).

Examine the viscera. Find the **stomach**, tucked deep to the lateral side of the left lobe of the liver (Figure 6.12). It extends posteriorly on the left side of the pleuroperitoneal cavity. Proximally, it leads to the short, thick **esophagus**. Lift the proximal end of the stomach to reveal the left **lung**, far anterior in the pleuroperitoneal cavity (Figures 6.13 and 6.14). The right lung may be found dorsal to the right lobe of the liver. The lungs appear as small, contracted sacs in preserved specimens, but they are generally larger in live frogs. Return to the stomach. Distally it narrows and turns abruptly to the right and leads to the **intestine**. The intestine may be subdivided into the narrow, coiled **small intestine** followed by a short, wide **large intestine** that leads to the **cloaca** (Figure 6.13). The **pancreas** lies in the mesentery between the **duodenum**, the first part of the small intestine, and the stomach (Figure 6.12). The **spleen** is a dark, ovoid body lying in the mesentery farther distally and dorsal to the small intestine. Examine the posterior part of the pleuroperitoneal cavity to find the large, thin-walled **urinary bladder**. It empties into the ventral surface of the tube-like cloaca (Figures 6.12 and 6.14).

Examine an oviduct in a female specimen (Figure 6.13). Follow it anteriorly. As it passes anteriorly, it becomes narrower but remains highly coiled, and then, as it passes dorsal to the lung, straightens to reach its opening, the **ostium**, which lies just lateral to the pericardium and faces ventromedially. Ova enter the oviduct through the ostium and then pass posteriorly through the oviduct. At its other end, the oviduct widens and straightens to form the **ovisac**, which may contain masses of eggs. The ovisacs empty into the dorsal surface of the cloaca, just proximal to the level of the entrance of the urinary bladder.

The prominent **kidneys** lie on the dorsal wall of the pleuroperitoneal cavity (Figures 6.13 and 6.15). They are dark, flattened, ovoid structures. The large vessel between them is the **posterior vena cava** (see later). **Adrenal glands** lie along the ventral surface of the kidneys and usually appear as lighter-colored bands. Along the lateral margin of the posterior end of each kidney lies an **archinephric duct**, which leads posteriorly into the dorsal surface of the cloaca, and very near the entrance of the ovisac in the female. The archinephric duct transports only urine in the female, but carries both urine and sperm in the male. The whitish strands that appear dorsal to the kidneys and extend posteriorly are part of the sciatic plexus and give rise to the nerves of the hind limb (Figure 6.13). To follow the nerves more anteriorly, break through the peritoneum so that a kidney may be lifted from the dorsal body wall.

The ovaries in the female have already been identified. Identify the testes in a male. They lie on the ventral surface of the kidneys, and each is supported by its mesentery, the **mesorchium** (Figure 6.14). The testes are small, smooth, and ovoid structures, their light color in sharp contrast with that of the kidneys. Sperm pass from the testes through inconspicuous **ductuli efferentes** in the mesorchium, and then enter the kidney to reach the archinephric duct.

Key Terms: Pleuroperitoneal Cavity, Viscera, and Urogenital System

adrenal gland
archinephric duct (Wolffian duct)
cloaca
ductuli efferentes
duodenum
esophagus
falciform ligament
fat body
gall bladder
intestine
kidney
large intestine
liver, right and left lateral lobes
lung
mesorchium
mesovarium
musculocutaneous vein
ostium
ovary
oviduct
ovisac
pancreas
pericardium
posterior vena cava
small intestine
spleen
stomach
testis
urinary bladder
ventral abdominal vein

SECTION V: CARDIOVASCULAR SYSTEM

Remove the musculature ventral to the **pericardium** to expose the vessels anterior to the **heart**, as shown in Figure 6.15. Make a longitudinal, midventral slit through the pericardium to open the **pericardial cavity** and expose the heart. Several of the heart's components are plainly visible in ventral view. Its most prominent structure is the single **ventricle**, which lies in the posterior half of the pericardial cavity. Lift the ventricle to see

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

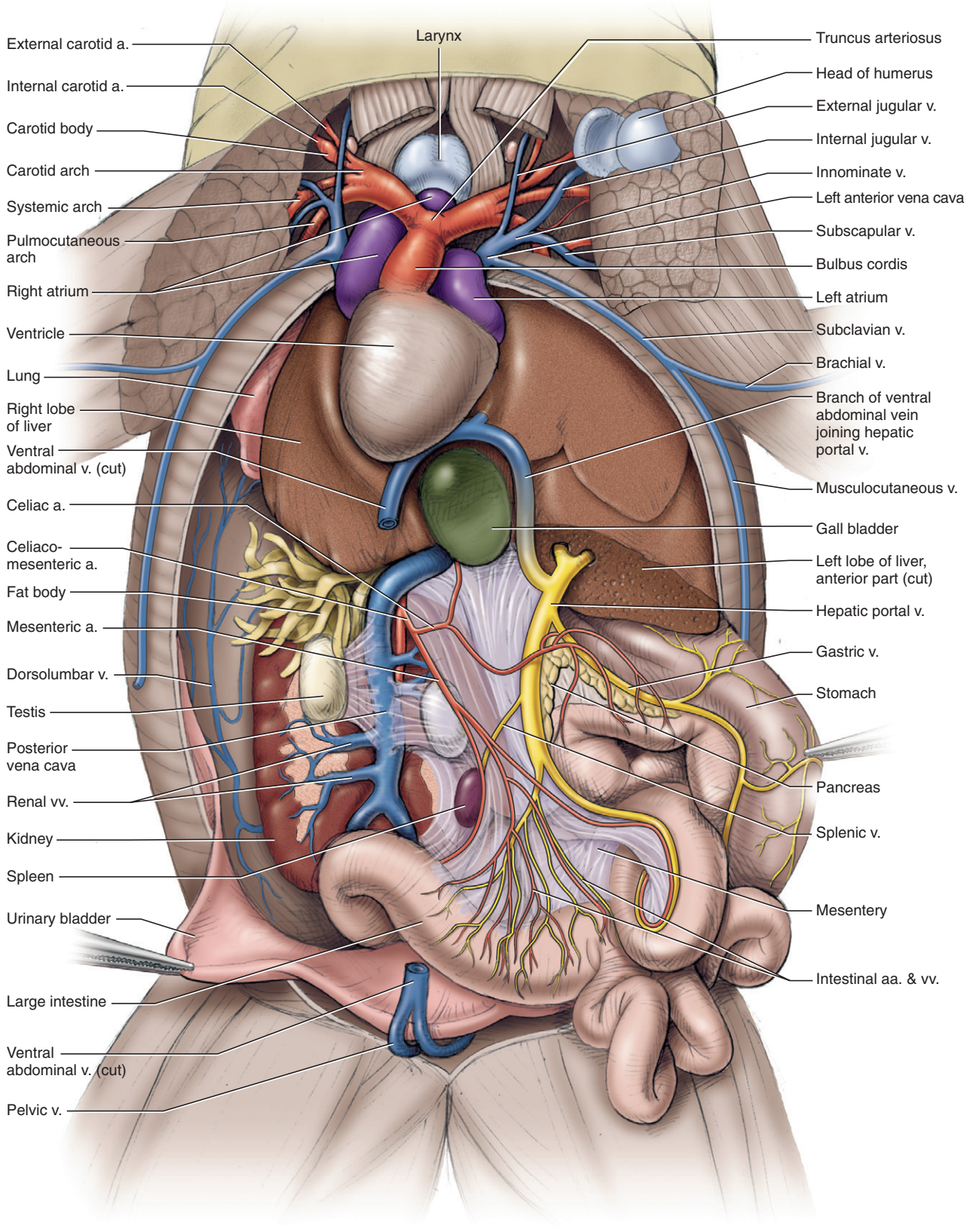


FIGURE 6.15 Pleuroperitoneal and pericardial cavities of the male frog.

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

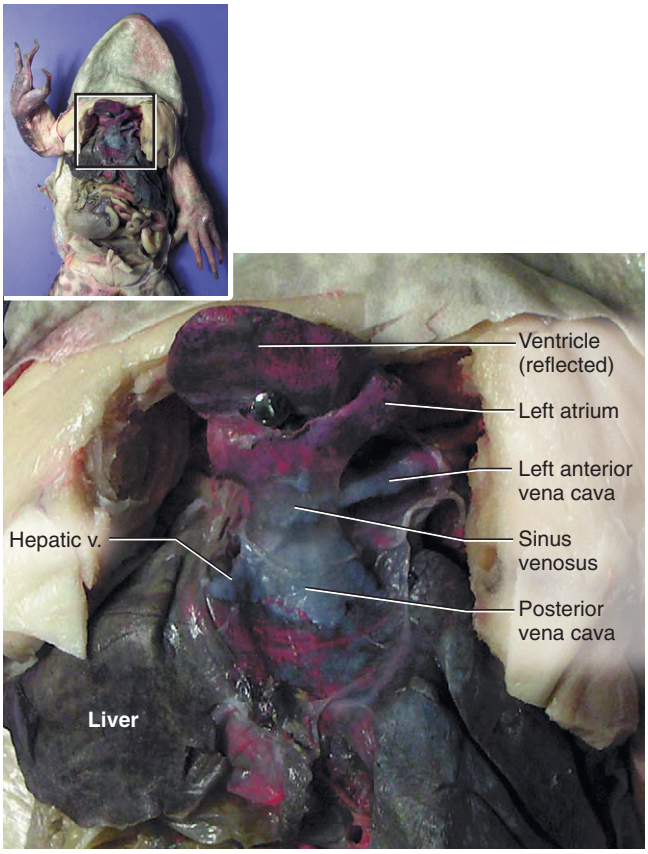


FIGURE 6.16 Heart of the frog in ventral view, with the ventricle reflected.

the **sinus venosus** (Figure 6.16). The **right** and **left atria** (sing. **atrium**) are the conspicuous structures anterior to the ventricle (Figure 6.15). Between them, the **bulbus cordis** extends from the ventricle anteriorly and slightly to the left. This anterior part of the heart may be covered by fat and connective tissue. Carefully pick away and remove it. In an injected specimen the structures are clearly identifiable and easy to expose. In uninjected specimens the vessels are harder to identify and the thin-walled artria readily torn, so proceed cautiously.

The bulbus cordis leads into the **truncus arteriosus**, which continues a short distance anteriorly before bifurcating into right and left branches, each of which extends anterolaterally and gives rise to three large arteries (Figures 6.15 and 6.17). Follow one of the branches, and identify these arteries and their branching patterns. The most anterior branch is the **carotid arch**. It divides into a small branch, the **external carotid artery**, that extends anteriorly to supply the tongue and lower jaw, and a bulbous **carotid body** that continues as the **internal carotid artery** to supply the eye, brain, and upper jaw. The most posterior branch is the **pulmocutaneous arch**. It curves sharply posteriorly, giving off a **cutaneous artery** extending laterally to supply the skin, and then continues to the lung as the **pulmonary artery**. The middle branch is the **systemic arch**. It supplies most of the rest of the body with blood, and so is the largest of the three branches. Initially the systemic arch passes nearly laterally, but it soon arches strongly dorsally. As it passes dorsal to the lung it curves medially and posteriorly, giving off two branches, the **occipitovertebral artery** and the **subclavian artery**, which continues into the brachium as the **brachial artery** (Figure 6.17). After giving off these two branches, the systemic arch enters the pleuroperitoneal cavity.

Within the cavity each systemic arch passes posteromedially. Just anterior to the level of the kidneys, the right and left systemic arches unite to form the **dorsal aorta**, which continues posteriorly along the middorsal wall of the cavity (Figures 6.14 and 6.17). Immediately after its origin, the dorsal aorta sends off a large branch, the **celiacomesenteric artery**, to the abdominal viscera. This vessel soon bifurcates into the **celiac artery**, which mainly supplies the liver, gall bladder, stomach, and pancreas, and the **mesenteric artery**, which supplies the intestines and spleen.

Between the **kidneys**, several (usually between four and six) smaller, paired vessels, the **urogenital arteries**, extend laterally from the dorsal aorta to supply the kidneys and gonads, as well as fat bodies and urogenital ducts (Figure 6.17). Near the posterior end of the kidneys the dorsal aorta bifurcates into right and left **common iliac arteries** (Figures 6.13 and 6.17). In this region the arteries lie dorsal to the veins, which are also more prominent. Follow one of the common iliac arteries posteriorly. It gives off two smaller branches in quick succession from its lateral surface. These are the **hypogastric artery**, which mainly supplies musculature in this region and the urinary bladder; and the **femoral artery**, which helps supply several muscles and the skin in this region. The common iliac artery then continues into the hind limb as the **sciatic artery** (Figure 6.17). Its many branches supply the leg.

Return to the heart, lift the ventricle, and examine the sinus venosus, which leads into the right atrium (Figure 6.16). Note the large vessels, the **right anterior vena cava** and the **left anterior vena cava**, extending along the lateral edge of the atria and passing into the sinus venosus. These venae cavae collect blood from the head and forelimbs, as well as the skin. Many of the vessels that enter the venae cavae lie dorsal to the arterial vessels and should be injected with blue latex. In a few specimens, however, these will have been infiltrated by the latex of the arteries and will be partly or completely red.

Trace an anterior vena cava. The pattern described here is the general pattern, but there is variation. Indeed, the branching patterns of the right and left venae cavae may vary. The anterior vena cava collects blood from several vessels and empties into the sinus venosus. The main vessels forming the anterior vena cava are the

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

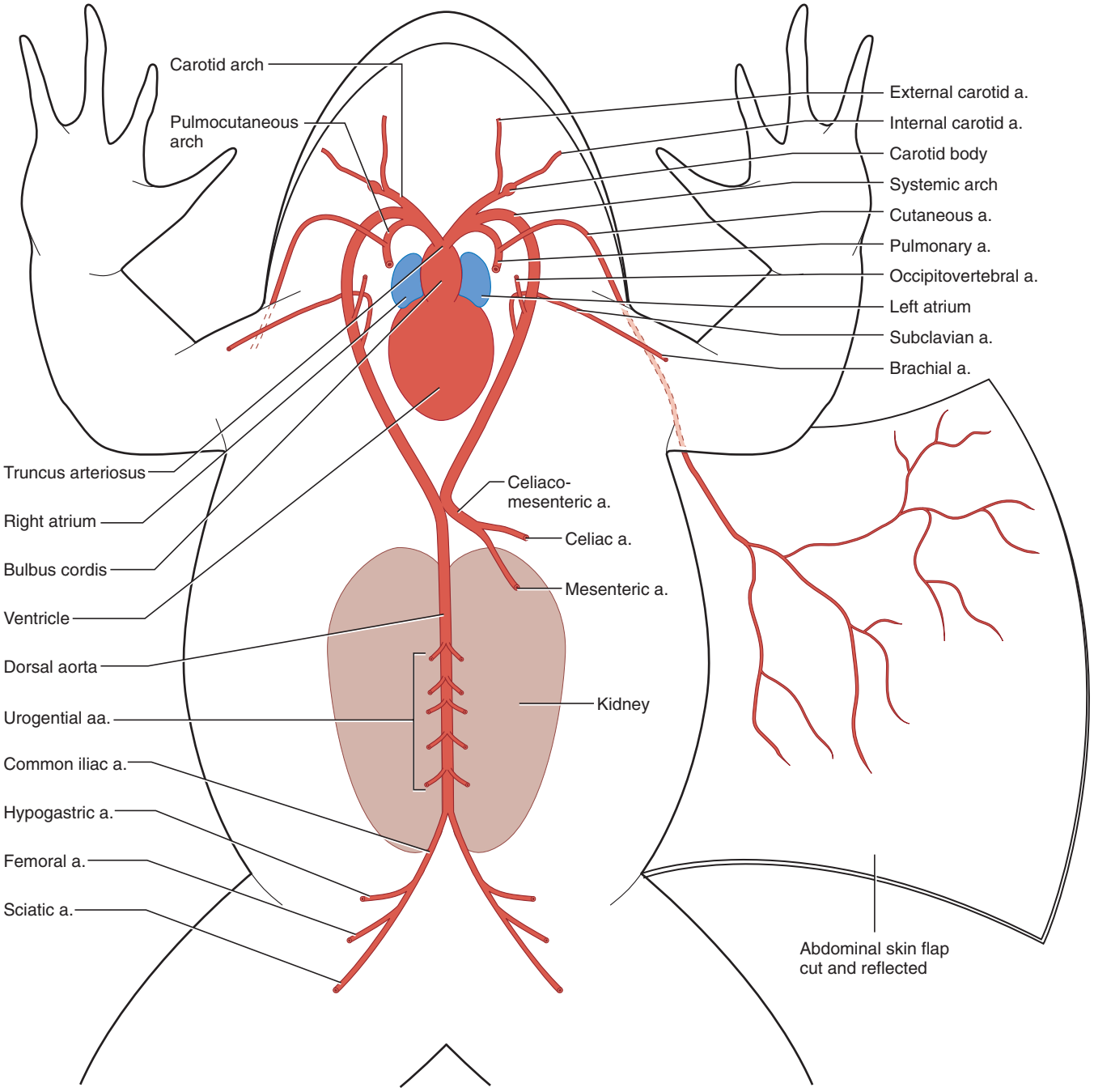


FIGURE 6.17 Schematic illustration of the arterial system of the frog in ventral view superimposed on the body outline.

external jugular, **innominate**, and **subclavian veins** (Figures 6.15 and 6.18). These three may join together. The external jugular vein extends almost directly anteriorly and drains the tongue and lower jaw. For most of its length it passes nearly parallel and just medial to the external carotid artery. The innominate vein may be quite short or it may extend laterally for a longer distance before receiving its tributaries, the **internal jugular** and **subscapular veins**. The internal jugular, draining the eye, brain, and upper jaw, extends anterolaterally, whereas the subscapular vein, draining mainly the muscles associated with the pectoral girdle, passes nearly laterally. Finally, the subclavian vein passes posterolaterally, formed by the confluence of the **brachial vein** from the forelimb and the **musculocutaneous vein**, noted earlier, from the pectoral musculature and the deep surface of the skin.

The **pulmonary veins** return blood to the heart from the lungs (Figure 6.18). The pulmonary vein, one on each side, passes dorsal to the anterior vena cava. Right and

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

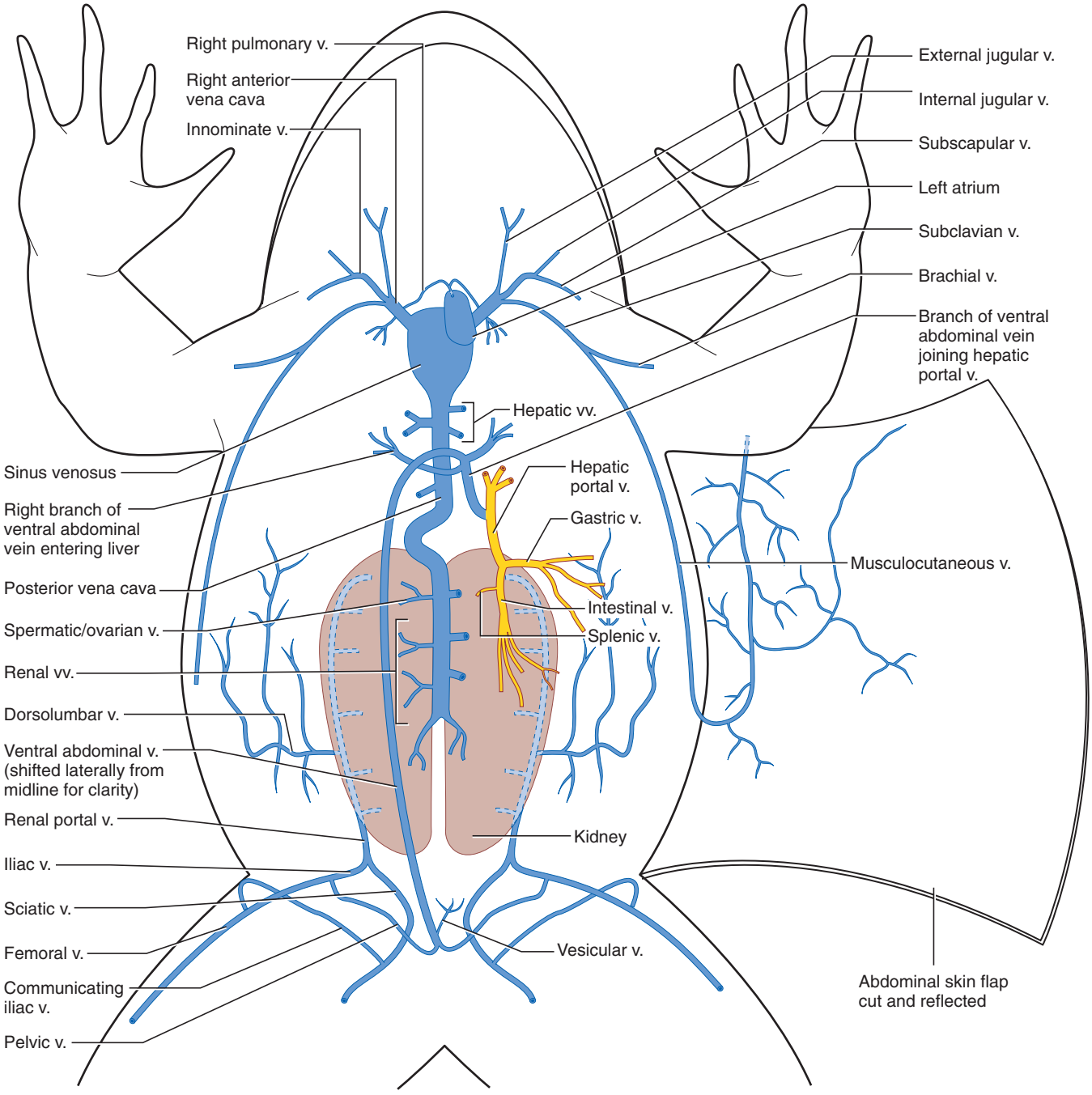


FIGURE 6.18 Schematic illustration of the venous system of the frog in ventral view superimposed on the body outline. Right atrium, ventricle, and bulbus cordis of heart removed.

left pulmonary veins then unite just anterior to the heart to form a short single vessel that extends posteriorly into the left atrium.

Much of the blood posterior to the heart (that from the skin being the main exception) is returned via the **posterior vena cava**, the large vessel extending between the kidneys (Figures 6.13–6.15). Here it receives several **renal veins** from the kidneys (the fat bodies generally drain into the more anterior renal veins) and **spermatic veins** from the testes or **ovarian veins** from the ovaries. The posterior vena cava extends anteriorly through the liver, receiving from it several **hepatic veins** (Figure 6.18), to reach the posterior end of the sinus venosus. The posterior vena cava also receives blood from much of the hind limbs and dorsal body musculature by way of the paired **renal portal veins**, which enter the kidneys

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

(Figures 6.13, 6.14, and 6.18). This blood then makes its way through the kidneys to reach the posterior vena cava via the **renal veins**.

Examine a renal portal vein. It extends mainly along the dorsolateral surface of the kidney. It is formed posteriorly by the union of the **iliac** and **sciatic veins** (Figures 6.14 and 6.18), the latter from the medial side of the thigh. The iliac vein is formed by the **femoral vein**, the large vessel from the lateral side of the thigh, and the **pelvic vein**. A connection between the femoral and sciatic veins, the **communicating iliac vein**, extends from the femoral, curving dorsally and then medioventrally to meet the sciatic vein (Figure 6.18). The pelvic vein extends ventromedially to join the pelvic vein from the other side of the body. Their union forms the **ventral abdominal vein**, identified earlier, but which will be described shortly. A small vesicular vein, draining the urinary bladder, enters the ventral abdominal vein just after its origin. The renal portal vein passes anteriorly, sending numerous branches into the kidney. The **dorsolumbar vein**, which drains the dorsal and lateral abdominal walls, consists of numerous branches that collect usually into a single vessel that enters the renal portal vein at about the midlength level of the kidney (Figures 6.13–6.15 and 6.18).

As noted earlier, the ventral abdominal vein passes anteriorly along the midventral wall of the pleuroperitoneal cavity and extends between the lobes of the liver. It then arches dorsally and then posteriorly. It gives off three branches, two of which enter the right and left lateral lobes of the liver, and the third continuing to join the **hepatic portal vein**, which, as described later, enters the liver (Figures 6.15 and 6.18). Blood from the hind limb may thus return to the heart through the posterior vena cava by several routes. It may pass through the renal portal system or the hepatic veins. In the latter instance it may pass through the branches of the ventral abdominal vein that enter the liver directly or through the hepatic portal vein via that branch of the ventral abdominal vein joining the hepatic portal vein.

The hepatic portal vein drains the abdominal viscera. It is formed mainly by the following vessels: the **gastric vein**, which collects several vessels and drains the stomach and part of the esophagus, and the **intestinal vein**, formed by vessels that drain most of the small intestine and large intestine (Figures 6.15 and 6.18). The hepatic portal then receives a branch from the ventral abdominal vein before entering the liver.

Key Terms: Cardiovascular System

brachial artery
brachial vein
bulbus cordis
carotid arch
carotid body
celiac artery
celiacomesenteric artery
common iliac artery
communicating iliac vein
cutaneous artery
dorsal aorta
dorsolumbar vein
external carotid artery
external jugular vein
femoral artery
femoral vein
gastric vein
heart
hepatic portal vein
hepatic veins
hypogastric artery
iliac vein
innominate vein
internal carotid artery
internal jugular vein
intestinal vein
kidney
left anterior vena cava
left atrium
mesenteric artery
musculocutaneous vein
occipitovertebral artery
ovarian vein
pelvic vein
pericardial cavity
pericardium
posterior vena cava
pulmocutaneous arch
pulmonary artery
pulmonary vein
renal portal vein
renal vein
right anterior vena cava
right atrium
sciatic artery
sciatic vein
sinus venosus
spermatic veins
subclavian artery
subclavian vein
subscapular vein
systemic arch (aortic arch)
truncus arteriosus
urogenital arteries
ventral abdominal vein
ventricle

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

CHAPTER

7

The Cat

INTRODUCTION

The domestic cat, *Felis domestica*, belongs to Mammalia, a synapsid lineage that has its roots in the Triassic Period. Mammals can be readily diagnosed based on living representatives. Among their more distinguishing features are the presence of an insulating covering of hair, a diaphragm that separates the pleural and abdominopelvic cavities, and mammary glands (to which they owe their name). Such soft tissue features, however, fossilize only under exceptional circumstances, and recognition of the most ancient mammals has been based on other features. Paleontologists have traditionally relied mainly on three skeletal features in determining whether a fossil species had achieved the mammalian condition: (1) the presence of three middle ear ossicles (nonmammalian synapsids have one or, rarely, two); (2) a jaw joint between the squamosal bone of the skull and the dentary of the lower jaw (in nonmammalian synapsids, the jaw joint is between the quadrate and articular bones or, in a few cases, all four of these bones participate); and (3) each half of the lower jaw consisting of a single bone, the dentary (in primitive mammals and nonmammalian synapsids, each half includes more than one bone).

Modifications leading to the typical mammalian condition occurred in several advanced cynodont lineages, and the point at which the "mammalian threshold" was crossed has traditionally been defined by possession of a jaw joint between the squamosal and dentary. It is not clear whether all the other features that are usually considered "mammalian" were acquired simultaneously. Evidence from fossils suggests that they were not. Thus, use of the jaw joint criterion to define Mammalia is arbitrary—any of several other features could equally well be employed. For this reason, paleontologists have moved away from character-based definitions of Mammalia (or any higher-level taxon) and have come to rely on ancestry as the criterion for defining a group. As noted in Chapter 1, cladistics relies on shared, derived characters to reveal ancestry. The name Mammalia now usually is restricted to the group that includes the living groups of mammals and their common ancestor, as well as all the extinct descendants of this ancestor. It is true that application of the name Mammalia to this particular group is also arbitrary, but this system does not rely on characters and promotes a more stable system of grouping organisms.

There are two major subdivisions of living mammals, Monotremata and the much more diverse Theria or "higher mammals." The monotremes are restricted to Australia and New Guinea and include the duckbill platypus and two species of echidnas. Although they have hair and mammary glands, they retain the general amniote reproductive strategy of laying and incubating eggs. They possess several derived characters, however. For example, adult platypuses lack teeth and the rostrum is covered by a leathery bill or beak.

Theria is subdivided into Metatheria (marsupials) and Eutheria (placental mammals). The metatherians were much more widespread and diverse earlier in their history. Living metatherians, while still fairly diverse, are restricted primarily to Australia and South America, with a fairly recent incursion, the opossum, into North America. Metatherians are also known as marsupials or pouched mammals due to the presence of an abdominal marsupium (pouch) or fold in the female. Typically, the young are born in an immature condition and make their way from the vulva to the marsupium, where they latch on to a nipple and complete their development. This is the reproductive strategy of the more familiar marsupials such as the kangaroo, wallaby, and koala. However, not all marsupials follow this strategy. Some, such as the caenolestids or shrew-opossums, lack a pouch and others (the bandicoot) even have a placenta similar to that of the placental mammals.

The eutherians are the most diverse and widespread of mammals, present on all continents save Antarctica (with modern humans as the exception, of course). They have undergone several major radiations during their history and are currently among the more dominant or conspicuous elements of most terrestrial and aquatic

© 2010 Elsevier Inc.

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

habitats. The degree of habit and structural modifications are truly remarkable. Eutherians include the relatively generalized shrews, the fossorial moles, and the armored armadillos. Several groups of herbivorous types have evolved, including rodents, the most numerous of mammals; the bovids, such as the common cattle, as well as bison and sheep, and the swift and graceful gazelles; the sleek and powerful equids, such as horses and zebras; and the huge rhinoceroses, hippopotami, and elephants, the largest of living land animals. The chiropterans, or bats, have mastered the skies and are the second most numerous group of mammals. Several eutherian lineages have invaded the seas. Among these are the cetaceans (whales, dolphins, and porpoises; now grouped together with artiodactyls as Cetartiodactyla) and sirenians (manatees and dugongs), which are completely aquatic, and the pinnipeds (walrus and seals), which live both on land and in the water. The primates, a group that includes humans, are generally arboreal specialists.

Another great group of placental mammals includes the carnivorans, to which the cat belongs (carnivoran is the informal term for the mammalian clade Carnivora, whereas carnivore refers to a mainly or strictly meat-eating animal). Living carnivorans include ursids (bears), canids (dogs and their kin), mustelids (weasels and kin), procyonids (raccoons), hyaenids, felids (cats), and viverrids (genets), as well as the pinnipeds just mentioned. The felids include some of the fiercest and largest mammalian predators, such as tigers and lions. The domestic cat is among the smaller members of the group.

SECTION I: SKELETON

Cranial Skeleton

Skull

As with other vertebrates, the skull (Figure 7.1) of the cat protects and supports the brain and sense organs and is used in food gathering and processing. It is a single structure formed from various centers of ossification, but may be conveniently divided into a facial or rostral region, including the nose, orbits, and upper jaws, and a cranial region, including the braincase and ear. The lower jaw, though not usually considered part of the skull itself, is included in the following description.

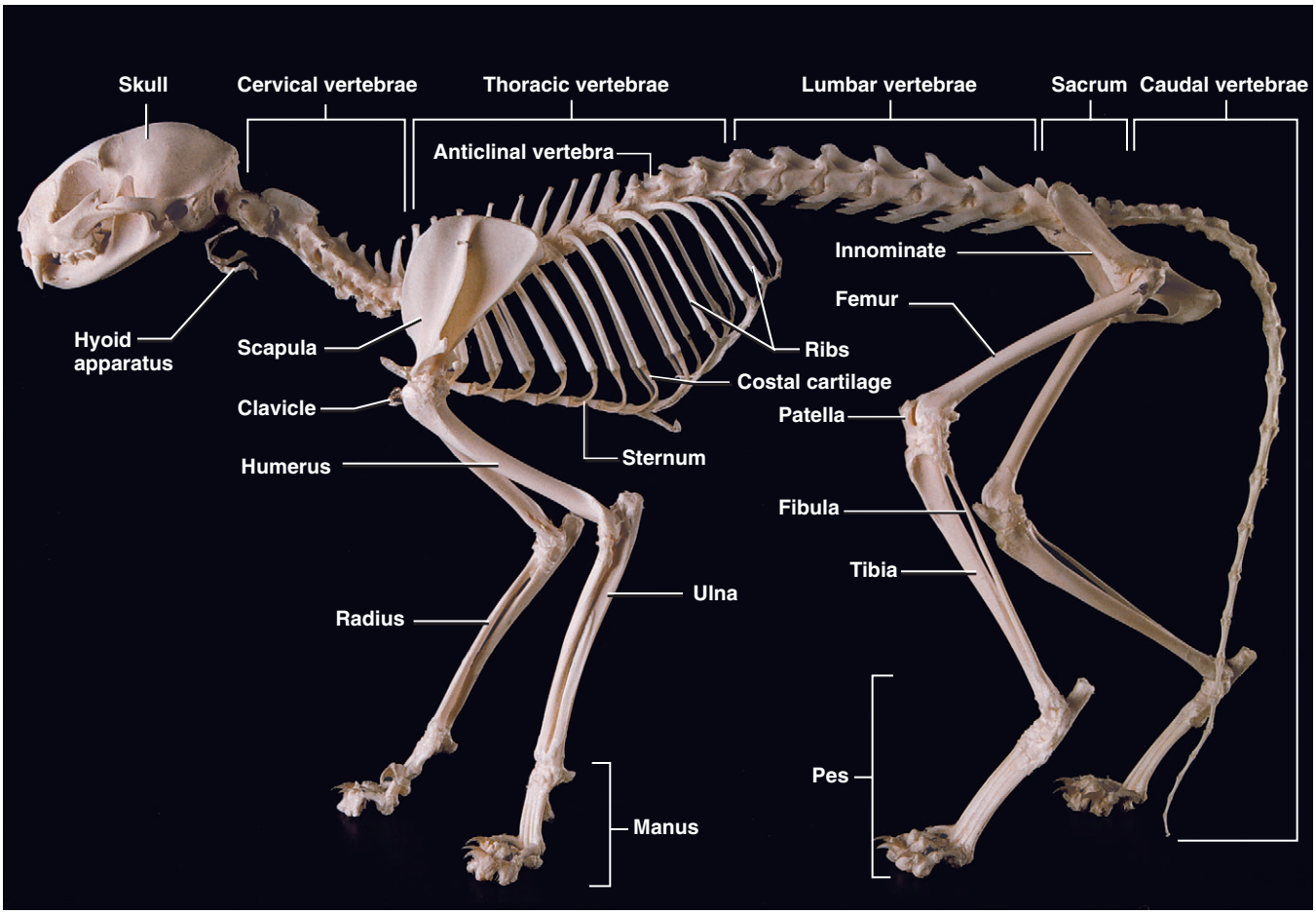


FIGURE 7.1 Skeleton of the cat in left lateral view.

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

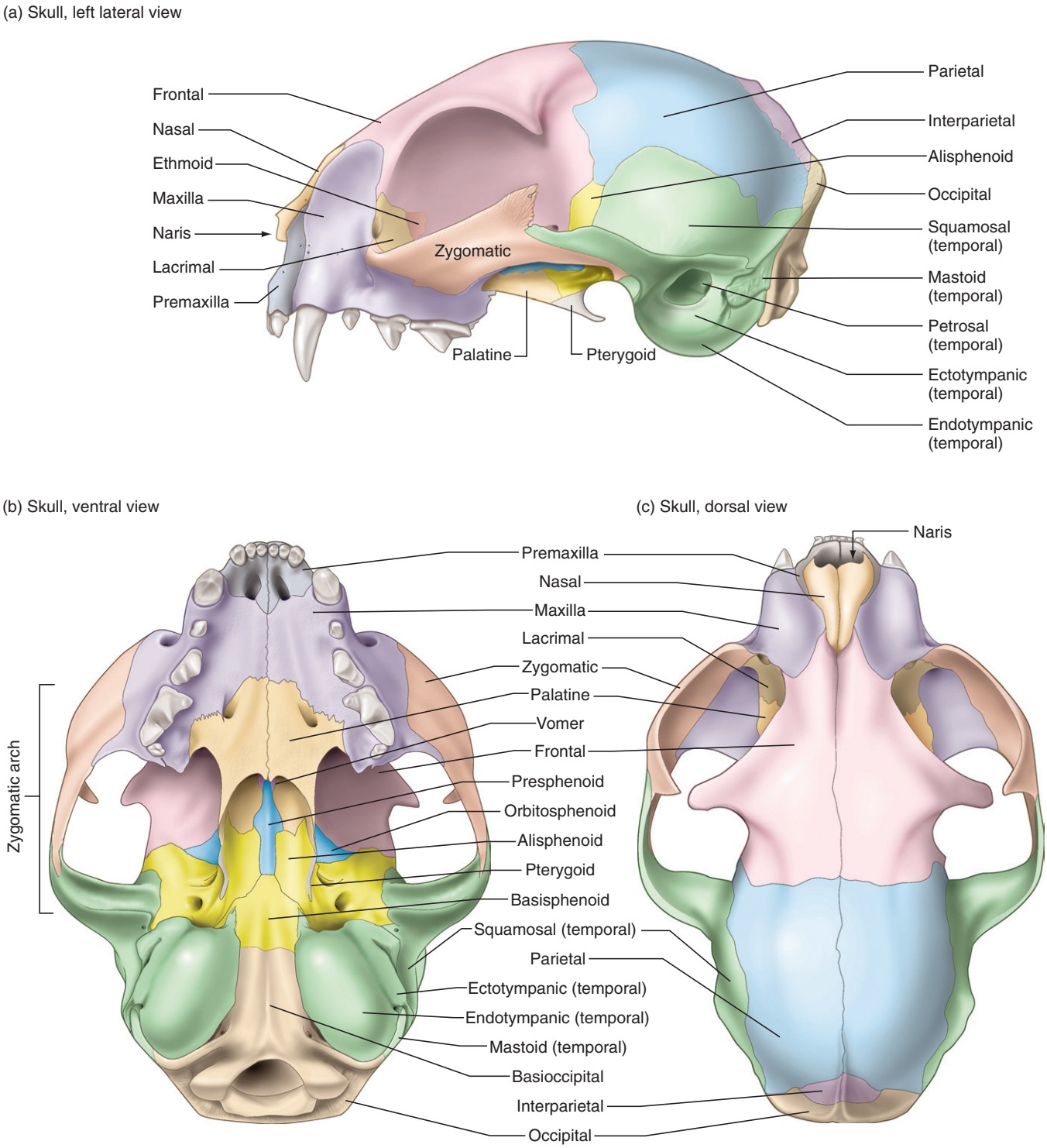


FIGURE 7.2 Skull of the cat in (a) left lateral, (b) ventral, and (c) dorsal views, with bones color-coded.

Examine a skull and identify its main features (Figure 7.2a–c). Anteriorly and ventrally, note the marginal series of teeth. Directly above the middle anterior teeth is a large opening, the **naris**, that leads into the nasal cavity. In life the opening is separated by a cartilaginous septum, so that two external nares or nostrils are present. On either side of the skull, dorsal to the posterior teeth, are the large **orbits**, the cavities that house the eyeballs. Posterior to each orbit is the expansive cranial wall. This surface is the **temporal fossa**. It protects the brain and

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

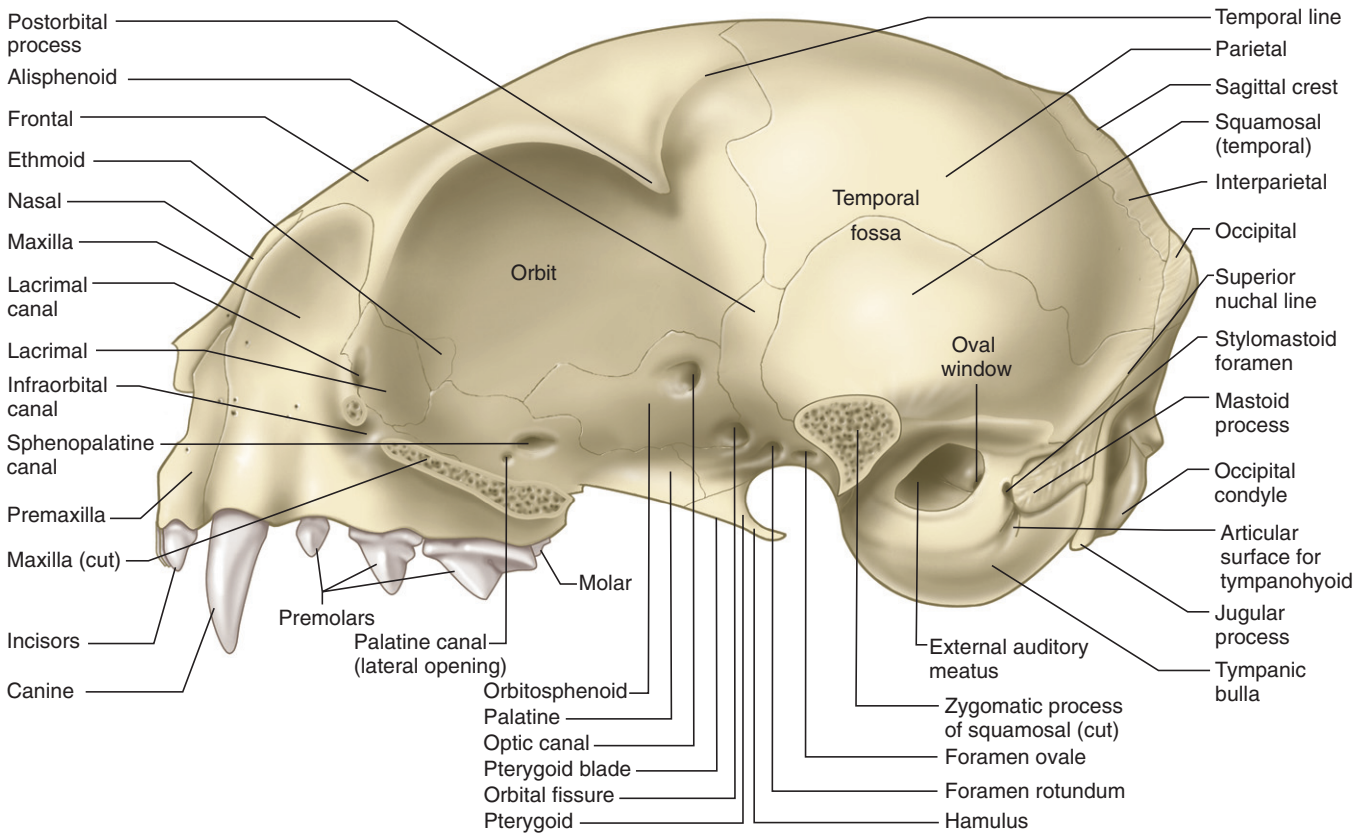


FIGURE 7.3 Skull of the cat in left lateral view, with zygomatic arch removed.

serves as the origin for the temporal musculature, which helps to close the jaw. Phylogenetically, the fossa was derived mainly from a depressed region of the skull; thus comes its designation as a *fossa*, even though in the cat, as in other mammals, it is convex.

The ventral margins of the orbit and fossa are marked by the laterally bowed **zygomatic arch**, which serves mainly for the origin of the masseteric musculature, another group of jaw-closing muscles (Figure 7.4). Just posterior to the posterior root of the zygomatic arch is the **external auditory meatus**, the opening and passageway leading to the middle and inner ear (Figures 7.3 and 7.4). The posterior surface of the skull, the occiput, is pierced ventrally by the large **foramen magnum**, through which the spinal cord passes to the brain.

Examine the skull in ventral view (Figure 7.4). The flat region between the teeth is the **hard palate**. At its posterior end is the median internal opening of the nasal passage. In life there are two openings, the **choanae**. Farther posteriorly lie the paired, oval, and strongly convex **tympanic bullae**. The bulla forms the floor of the middle ear.

Nearly all the bones of the skull are paired. First identify the paired bones along the dorsal midline. Anteriorly, the small, triangular **nasals** form the dorsal margin of the naris. Posterior to the nasals are the large **frontals**. These extensive bones contribute to the dorsal and lateral surfaces of the skull. Laterally they form most of the orbital walls. Note the **postorbital process** that projects ventrally from each frontal to demarcate the posterior margin of the orbit. Farther posteriorly are the **parietals**. These large bones form most of the dorsal and lateral parts of the cranium. The small **interparietal** bone is wedged between the posterior ends of the parietals. Usually in older individuals the interparietal fuses to the surrounding bones. The **temporal lines** are faint ridges that mark the boundary of muscular attachment on the temporal fossa. These lines curve posteromedially from the postorbital processes of the frontal. They continue posteriorly on the parietals, converging toward the **sagittal crest**, which lies mainly on the interparietal. The crest may be high and sharp or represented only by a rugose ridge.

The **occipital** forms the occiput, the skull's posterior surface, and contributes to the **basicranium** (i.e., the base of the cranium). Its most notable features are the **foramen magnum** (Table 7.1 describes the functions of skull foramina) and the **occipital condyles**, which articulate with the first vertebra and support the head on the neck. The occipital is formed from four separate bones.

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

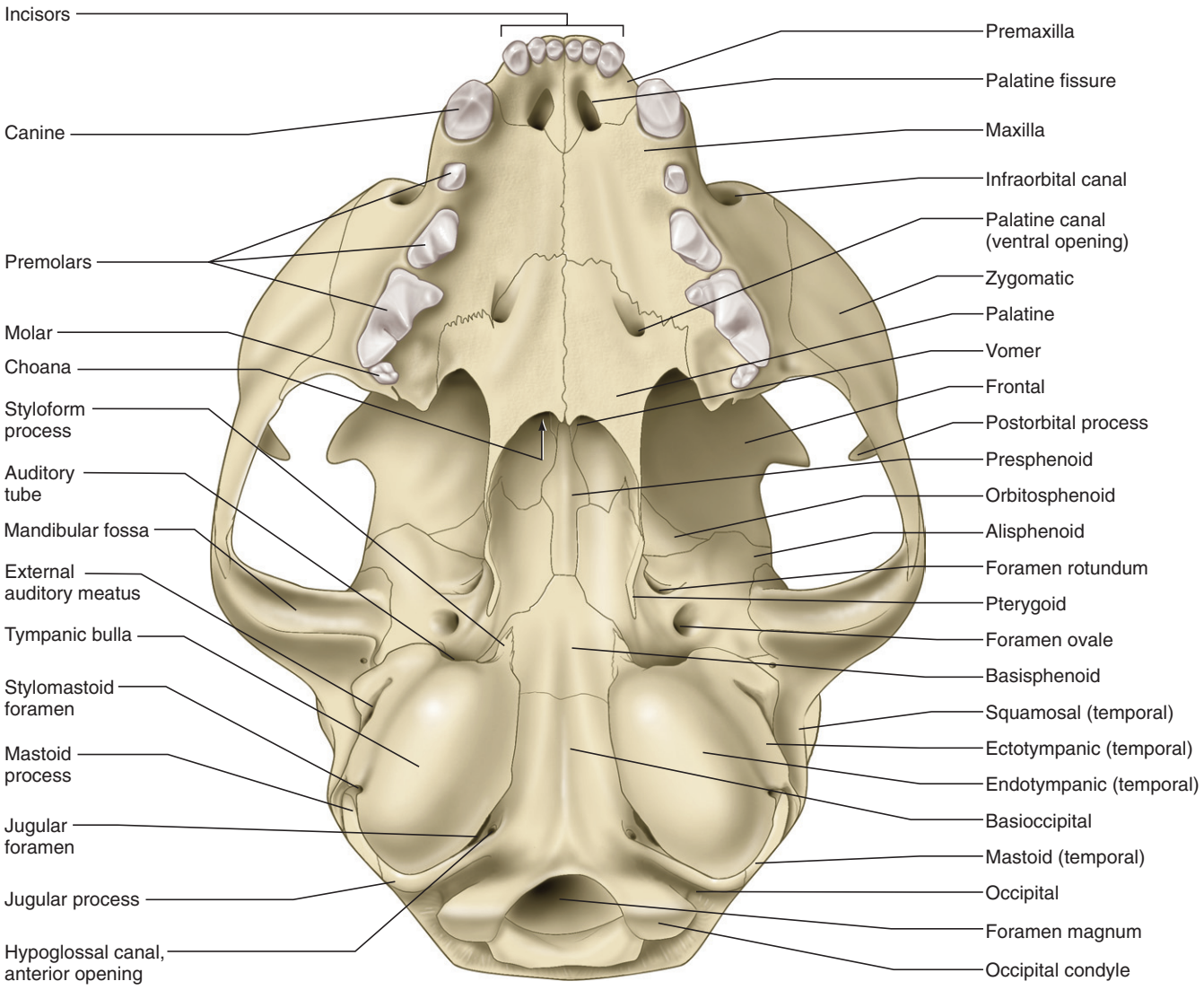


FIGURE 7.4 Skull of the cat in ventral view.

They fuse early in life (for example, in humans they are fused together by about six years of age), and thus are not illustrated as separate bones, but it is convenient to recognize them separately for the following discussion. The dorsal part of the occipital is the **supraoccipital** (also known as the squamous potion of the occipital), which forms the dorsal margin of the foramen magnum. The supraoccipital bears the external occipital crest, a median ridge that extends ventrally from the dorsal margin of the occipital. The paired **exoccipitals** (or the lateral portions of the occipital) form the lateral parts of the occiput. Each exoccipital carries an occipital condyle and extends laterally to contact the mastoid part of the temporal bone (see later), as well as ventrally over the posterior part of the tympanic bulla. The ventral end of the projection forms a blunt **jugular process**. The ventral margin of the foramen magnum is completed by the **basioccipital** (or basilar portion of the occipital), which also contributes to the basicranium as it extends anteriorly between the tympanic bullae.

Return to the front of the skull (see Figures 7.3 and 7.4). The lateral and ventral margins of the nasal aperture are formed by the **premaxillae**. Each is a fairly small bone, with a long, narrow vertical portion and a short ventral portion, into which are implanted the front teeth or the upper **incisors**. There are three incisors in each premaxilla. Ventrally the premaxillae form the anterior part of the hard palate. Here, each premaxilla has medial and lateral branches separated by the **palatine fissure**.

The **maxillae** are larger bones that hold the rest of the teeth and, in ventral view, form most of the hard palate. The large, curved canine is the first tooth in the maxilla. The following three teeth are **premolars**. Phylogenetically, they represent premolars 2 through 4 (P2–P4). Cats

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

TABLE 7.1 Cranial and Mandibular Foramina of the Cat: Location and Function

Name	Location	Main Structures Transmitted
Auditory tube, opening	Between tympanic bulla (endotympanic) and basisphenoid	Auditory tube emerges from middle ear, from which it passes to nasopharynx
Condyloid canal	Exoccipital	Vein
Cribriform foramina	Cribriform plate of ethmoid	Subdivisions of olfactory nerve (CN I)
Ethmoid foramen	Between frontal and orbitosphenoid	Branch of ophthalmic division of trigeminal nerve (CN V_1)
External auditory meatus	Ectotympanic	Passageway for outer ear
Foramen magnum	Between supraoccipital, basioccipital, and exoccipitals	Spinal cord, hypoglossal nerve (CN XII), basilar artery
Foramen ovale	Alisphenoid	Mandibular division of trigeminal nerve (CN V_3)
Foramen rotundum	Alisphenoid	Maxillary division of trigeminal nerve (CN V_2)
Hypoglossal canal	Exoccipital	Hypoglossal nerve (CN XII)
Infraorbital canal	Maxilla	Infraorbital branch, maxillary division of trigeminal nerve (CN V_2), infraorbital artery
Internal acoustic meatus	Petrosal	Facial (CN VII) and vestibulocochlear (CN VIII) nerves
Jugular foramen	Dorsally between petrosal and basioccipital; ventrally between entotypmanic (tympanic bulla) and basioccipital	Glossopharyngeal nerve (CN IX), vagus nerve (CN X), accessory nerve (CN XI), internal jugular vein; also, hypoglossal nerve (CN XII), after it emerges from the hypoglossal canal
Lacrimal canal	Lacrimal	Lacrimal duct
Mandibular foramen (posterior opening of mandibular canal)	Posteriorly on medial surface of dentary	Dentary branch of mandibular division of trigeminal nerve (CN V_3); blood vessels
Mental foramina (anterior openings of mandibular canal)	Anteriorly on lateral surface of dentary	Dentary branch of mandibular division of trigeminal nerve (CN V_3); blood vessels
Optic canal	Orbitosphenoid	Optic nerve (CN II) and ophthalmic artery
Orbital fissure	Between orbitosphenoid and alisphenoid	Oculomotor nerve (CN III), trochlear nerve (CN IV), abducens nerve (CN VI), ophthalmic division of trigeminal nerve (CN V_1), branch of maxillary division of trigeminal nerve (CN V_2)
Oval window	Petrosal	Receives footplate of stapes
Palatine canal		
Lateral opening	Palatine (orbital portion)	Greater palatine branch, maxillary division of trigeminal nerve (CN V_2)
Ventral opening	Palatine (palatine portion), near suture with maxilla	
Palatine fissure	Between premaxilla and maxilla	Nasopalatine branch, maxillary division of trigeminal nerve (CN V_2), nasal artery
Round window	Petrosal	Covered in life by secondary tympanic membrane, which accommodates vibrations of fluid in inner ear
Sphenopalatine foramen	Palatine (orbital portion)	Sphenopalatine branch, maxillary division of trigeminal nerve (CN V_2), sphenopalatine artery
Stylomastoid foramen	Temporal, between mastoid and ectotympanic	Facial nerve (CN VII)

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

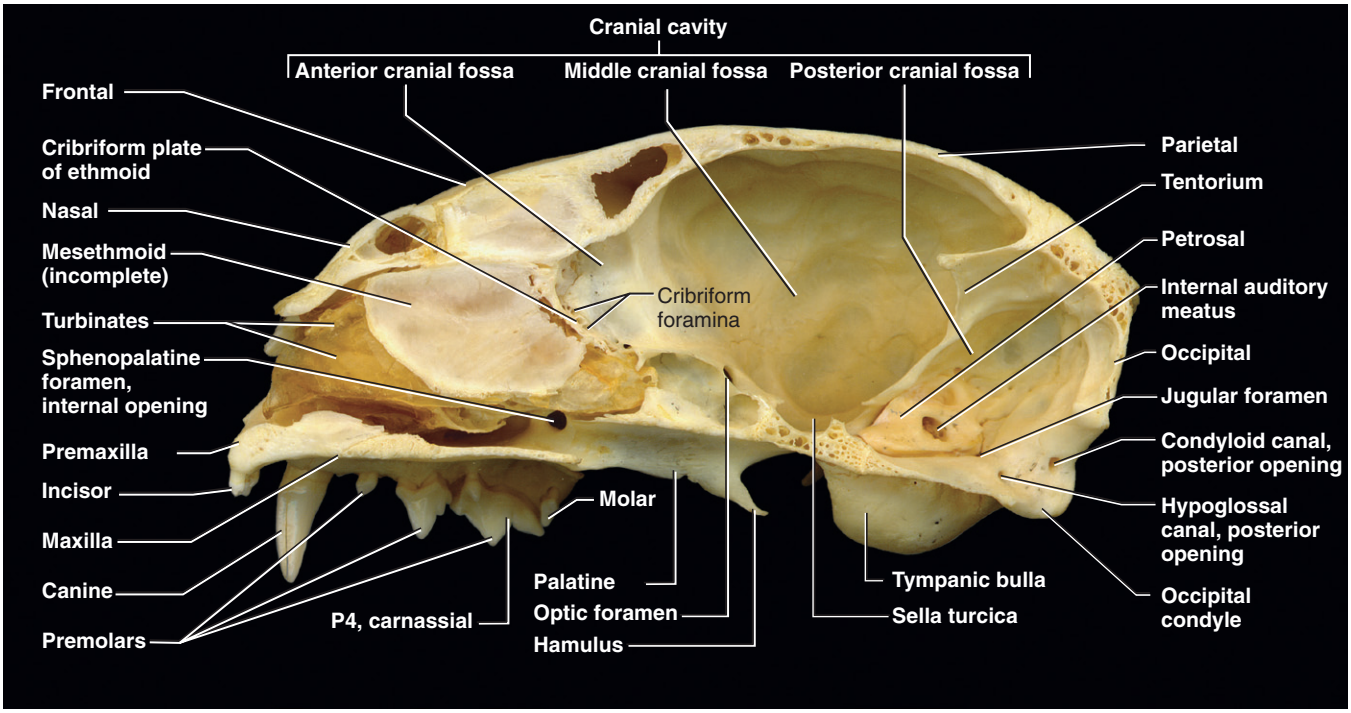


FIGURE 7.5 Right side of the skull of the cat shown in sagittal section.

lost P1 during their evolution and a gap, the **diastema**, is present between the canine and the small, peglike P2. P3 is a larger, triangular tooth that is followed by the very long, bladelike P4. Note the small, final tooth, **molar** 1 (or M1), set transversely and covered in lateral view by the posterior end of P4. The blade-like P4 is the main meat-shearing tooth, and is referred to as the **carnassial** (Figure 7.5). It meets the blade-like m1, the carnassial of the lower jaw.

In lateral view, each maxilla makes a large contribution to the snout or **rostrum**, where it contacts the premaxilla, nasal, and frontal bones. It also contributes a small portion to the orbital margin, where it contacts the small, delicate **lacrimal**, which makes a small contribution to the anterior orbital wall. The conspicuous opening of the **lacrimal canal** lies at the anterior margin of the orbit. Finally, the maxilla passes ventral to the **zygomatic** and participates in the anterior root of the zygomatic arch. Note that the maxilla contributes a shelf that forms the anterior floor of the orbit. The **infraorbital canal** is the large passage, entirely within the maxilla, at the anterior end of the zygomatic arch.

The **palatines** complete the hard palate posteriorly. Ventrally each palatine is a horizontal plate of bone, and the internal opening of the nasal cavity lies posterior to these plates at the midline. The ventral opening of the small **palatine canal** lies very near the suture between the palatine and maxilla, approximately medial to the anterior part of P4. Posteriorly each palatine forms a thin, vertical plate of bone. This portion helps, together with the **pterygoid**, to form the **pterygoid blades** or flanges, as well as the ventral part of the orbital wall (Figure 7.3). The region between the pterygoid blades forms the bony part of the tube-like nasopharynx (see page 206 and Figure 7.40). The orbital portion of the palatine (Figure 7.3) has two openings. The larger is the **sphenopalatine foramen**; the smaller is the lateral opening of the palatine canal.

In ventral view, locate the posterior end of the palatine bones (Figure 7.4). They contact a complex, composite element, usually termed the **sphenoid**, consisting of various ossifications. The main part, or body, is the **basisphenoid**. The pterygoid processes of the basisphenoid are the portions that contact the palatine and form the posterior end of the pterygoid blades. The narrow, hook-like posterior projection at the end of each pterygoid blade is the **hamulus**, to which a palatal muscle is attached. The main part of the basisphenoid contributes to the basicranium. It lies ventrally between the anterior parts of the tympanic bullae. The lateral, wing-like portion of the basisphenoid is the **alisphenoid**. It is exposed on the lateral surface of the skull, and will be discussed shortly. Return to the ventral surface and locate the **presphenoid**, the elongated, narrow, median bone lying between the pterygoid blades. The presphenoid also has a lateral extension, the **orbitosphenoid**, that is exposed in the ventral orbital wall. The connection between the presphenoid and orbitosphenoid is concealed by the palatine. The orbitosphenoid contacts

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

the palatine, frontal, and alisphenoid bones. A tiny **ethmoid foramen** (see Table 7.1) lies along the suture between the orbitosphenoid and frontal, but it may be difficult to see.

A series of four openings into the cranial cavity lies just dorsal to the pterygoid blades, on the lateral surface of the skull (Figure 7.3). Locate these foramina. The two anterior foramina are approximately twice as large as the two posterior foramina. The most anterior foramen is the **optic canal**, and it lies entirely within the orbitosphenoid. The second is the **orbital fissure**. Its margin is formed by the orbitosphenoid and the alisphenoid. The third and fourth foramina, respectively the **foramen rotundum** and **foramen ovale**, lie entirely within the alisphenoid.

Peer into the internal opening of the nasal cavity. Extending anteriorly from the presphenoid is the **vomer**. Its ventral surface is keeled. The vomer passes anteriorly and contacts the premaxillae and the maxillae. Examine the nasal aperture to view the vomer in anterior view, and note its narrow trough-like form. The vomer contributes to the bony nasal septum, which helps partition the nasal cavity into left and right parts.

The nasal cavity is filled with delicate, scroll-like **turbinate bones** (Figure 7.5). Most of these scrolls are formed from the maxilloturbinate, a paired bone that is connected to the medial wall of each maxilla. The turbinates dorsally in the nasal cavity are formed from the ethmoturbinates, which form the bulk of the **ethmoid**. In some cats a tiny portion of the ethmoid is exposed on the orbital wall, just posterior to the lacrimal (Figure 7.3). Other parts of the ethmoid are the **mesethmoid** and the **cribriform plate**. The mesethmoid is a median bony plate that, together with the vomer, helps form the bony nasal septum. The cribriform plate is a transverse plate, pierced by many small **cribriform foramina**, that forms the anteroventral wall of the cranial cavity. The cribriform plate can be viewed in a sagitally sectioned skull (Figure 7.5) or one in which the skull roof has been removed.

The **temporal** consists of three components that are fused together: the squamous, petrous, and tympanic portions. The **squamosals** are the large, flat bones ventral to the parietals that help complete the lateral wall of the braincase (Figure 7.3). Ventrally the squamosal sends out a projection, the zygomatic process, that extends laterally and then anteriorly to form the posterior part of the zygomatic arch. On the ventral surface of the lateral part of the zygomatic process is the **mandibular fossa** (Figure 7.4), a smooth, transverse groove that articulates with the lower jaw in forming the temporomandibular joint.

The petrous portion of the temporal includes the **petrosal** and **mastoid bones**. The petrosal contains the inner ear and may be seen through the external auditory meatus; its medial part should be viewed in a sagittally sectioned skull (Figure 7.5). The tiny bones or ossicles of the middle ear are the **malleus**, **incus**, and **stapes**. The middle ear is essentially between the external auditory meatus and the petrosal and is covered ventrally by the tympanic bulla. The middle ear bones sometimes remain in place. The malleus is the slender, elongated bone lying across the inner end of the external auditory meatus. The other two are more difficult to distinguish, but the stapes lies medially and fits into the **oval window** of the petrosal (Figure 7.3).

When the middle ear bones are absent, the two lateral foramina of the petrosal can be identified by peering into the external auditory meatus. Move the skull so that you have an anterolateral view into the middle ear. The foramina lie posteriorly on the petrosal. The more ventral one is the **round window** and opens posteriorly. The oval window, mentioned earlier, lies dorsal to the round window and opens laterally.

The mastoid bone is the only part of the petrous portion that is exposed externally. It overlaps the posterolateral surface of the tympanic bulla. Its ventral portion forms the **mastoid process**. (It is tiny in the cat, but you can feel it protruding just behind your ear.) The small **stylomastoid foramen** opens just anterior to the mastoid process (Figures 7.3 and 7.4). The mastoid bone continues dorsally on the occiput as a short wedge between the squamosal and occipital bones. The hyoid apparatus articulates with the tympanic bulla just ventral to the mastoid process (Figure 7.3).

The tympanic portion of the temporal includes the rounded, oval tympanic bulla, which is formed from two ossifications. The **ectotympanic** mainly forms the ring of bone surrounding the external auditory meatus, but contributes to the bulla ventrolaterally. The rest of the bulla is formed by the **endotympanic**. Anteromedially the bulla sends a pointed wedge, the **styloform process**, onto the base of the skull. Lateral to the process is the large opening for the **auditory tube** (Figure 7.4).

Note the large **jugular foramen** in the base of the skull at the posteromedial margin of the tympanic bulla. It passes between the bulla, the basioccipital (medially), and the exoccipital (posteriorly). A second, much smaller opening lies on the posterior wall (i.e., the exoccipital) of the larger passage. This is the anterior opening of the **hypoglossal canal**. Identify the posterior opening by examining the medial wall of an occipital condyle (i.e., look into the foramen magnum) or a sagittal section (Figure 7.5). Pass a bristle through the hypoglossal canal to determine its course. Posterior and dorsal to the posterior opening of the hypoglossal canal is the posterior opening of the **condyloid canal**.

The zygomatic, contacting the maxilla anteriorly and the zygomatic process of the squamosal posteriorly, forms most of the zygomatic arch. It forms the ventral

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

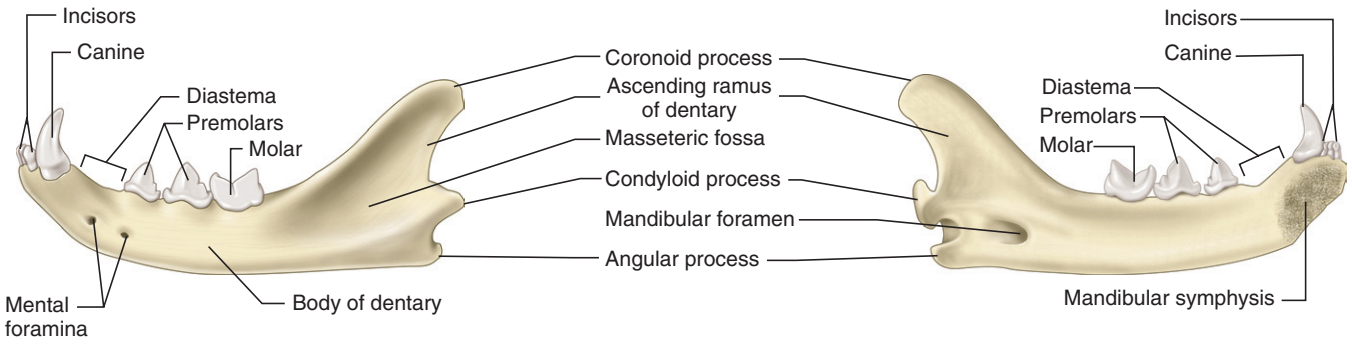


FIGURE 7.6 Dentary of the cat in (a) lateral and (b) medial views.

margin of the orbit, and it sends up a postorbital process that closely approaches the postorbital process of the frontal. Ventrally and laterally the zygomatic bears a crescentic, slightly concave region for origin of masseteric musculature.

Examine a sagittal section of the skull (Figure 7.5). The posterior half of the skull contains the large **cranial cavity** for the brain. The cavity is subdivided into a small **anterior cranial fossa** that receives the olfactory bulbs of the brain (see Figure 7.40), a **middle cranial fossa**, the largest subdivision, which mainly houses the cerebrum, and a **posterior cranial fossa**. The last two fossae are separated by a partial bony septum, the **tentorium**. A depression, the **sella turcica** (shaped like a traditional Turkish saddle in humans, but not in the cat), of the basisphenoid on the floor of the middle cranial fossa houses the hypophysis (see Figure 7.40). Note the petrosal, which houses the inner ear. The large opening is the **internal acoustic meatus** (Figure 7.5) for passage of the facial (CN VII) and vestibulocochlear (CN VIII) nerves (see Section VII).

Mandible

The **mandible**, or lower jaw, is formed on each side by a single bone, the **dentary** (Figure 7.6). Left and right dentaries articulate anteriorly at the **mandibular symphysis**. The horizontal part of the dentary, in which the teeth are implanted, is the **body**. Note the presence, normally, of three incisors, followed by a canine, which is separated from the three cheek teeth by a diastema. The cheek teeth include p3, p4, and the elongated, blade-like m1. The m1 is the carnassial of the lower jaw; hence the carnassial pair is P4/m1. Typically, two **mental foramina** (see later and Table 7.1 for function) are present anteriorly on the lateral surface of the body (Figure 7.6a).

The part posterior to the body is the **ascending ramus**, which has three processes. The **coronoid process** is the largest, extending dorsally. The temporal muscle inserts mainly on its dorsolateral and medial surfaces. The **masseteric fossa**, the large, triangular depression on the lateral surface of the coronoid process, serves as part of the insertion area for the masseteric musculature. The transversely expanded **condyloid process,** forming the lower half of the temporomandibular joint, bears a semicylindrical facet for articulation with the mandibular fossa on the temporal bone. Manipulate the mandible on the skull, and note how the form of the joint permits mainly up and down (or orthal) movements of the jaw and restricts lateral motion. Identify the roughened area on the anteromedial surface of the condyloid process. It is the insertion site for the medial pterygoid muscle. The **angular process** is the projection of the posteroventral part of the dentary. Its medial surface serves as the insertion site for the lateral pterygoid muscle and its lateral surface for part of the masseteric musculature.

A large **mandibular foramen** lies anterior and slightly dorsal to the angular process on the medial surface of the dentary (Figure 7.6b). This foramen is the posterior opening of the mandibular canal, which extends anteriorly through the body for the passage of the blood vessels and the mandibular division of the trigeminal nerve. The mental foramina are the main anterior openings of the canal.

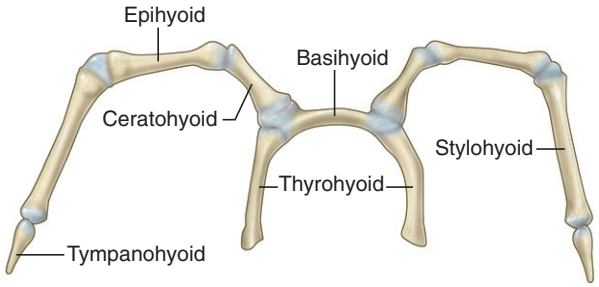


FIGURE 7.7 Hyoid apparatus of the cat.

Hyoid Apparatus

The hyoid apparatus (Figures 7.1 and 7.7) is composed of several small bones, the phylogenetic remnants of

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

some of the gill arches in fishes. It sits in the throat at the base of the tongue and supports the tongue and laryngeal muscles. It is composed of a median bar, the **basihyoid** or body, which is oriented transversely at the anterior end of the larynx. There are two pairs of horns or cornua that extend from the basihyoid. The **lesser cornua** are the longer, anterior pair, whereas the **greater cornua** are the smaller, posterior pair. Each lesser cornu consists of a chain of four ossicles that curves anteriorly and dorsally to attach to the skull. These elements are the **ceratohyoid**, **epihyoid**, **stylohyoid**, and **tympanohyoid**, which has a ligamentous attachment to the temporal bone of the skull. The greater cornu is formed on each side by the **thyrohyoid**, which articulates with thyroid cartilage of the larynx. The discrepancy between the size and names of the cornua derives from their condition in humans, in which the greater cornua are indeed larger, as the lesser cornu is represented only by the ceratohyoid.

Key Terms: Cranial Skeleton

alisphenoid
angular process
anterior cranial fossa
ascending ramus of **dentary**
auditory tube (Eustachian tube, pharyngotympanic tube)
basicranium
basihyoid
basioccipital
basisphenoid
body of **dentary**
carnassial
ceratohyoid
choanae
condyloid canal
condyloid process
coronoid process
cranial cavity
cribriform foramina
cribriform plate
dentary
diastema
ectotympanic
endotympanic
epihyoid
ethmoid bone
ethmoid foramen
external auditory meatus
foramen magnum
foramen ovale
foramen rotundum
frontal
greater cornua
hamulus
hard palate
hypoglossal canal
incisors
incus
infraorbital canal (antorbital canal)
internal acoustic meatus
interparietal
jugular foramen
jugular process
lacrimal bone
lacrimal canal
lesser cornua
malleus
mandible
mandibular foramen
mandibular fossa
mandibular symphysis
masseteric fossa
mastoid
mastoid process
maxilla (pl., **maxillae**)
mental foramina
mesethmoid
middle cranial fossa
molar
naris (pl., **nares**)
nasal
nasal aperture
occipital bone
occipital condyles
optic canal
orbital fissure
orbitosphenoid
orbits
oval window (fenestra ovalis; vestibular window; fenestra vestibuli)
palatine (incisive)
palatine canal
palatine fissure
parietals
petrosal (periotic)
posterior cranial fossa
postorbital process
premaxillae
premolar
presphenoid
pterygoid
pterygoid blades
rostrum
round window (fenestra rotundum; fenestra cochlea)
sagittal crest
sella turcica
sphenoid
sphenopalatine foramen

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

squamosal
stapes
styloform process
stylohyoid
stylomastoid foramen
temporal
temporal fossa
temporal lines
tentorium
thyrohyoid
turbinate bones
tympanic bullae
tympanohyoid
vomer
zygomatic arch
zygomatic (malar, jugal)

CRANIAL SKELETON: SUPPLEMENT—COMPARATIVE MAMMALIAN SKULLS

Mammals are a highly diverse clade and the form of their skulls reflects this diversity (as is also true of the reptiles discussed in Chapter 8). Among the more extreme specializations, we might mention the elongated, tubular, and edentulous skulls of South American anteaters, the massive and highly pneumaticized skulls of elephants, and the huge skulls of baleen whales such as the right whale. In the latter, the skull seems little more than upper and lower jaws, forming gigantic struts, linked to the back of the skull to allow feeding with and support of the baleen plates in the upper jaw. Such differences in form largely reflect evolutionary adaptations to different feeding habits, although in many mammals other factors (such as digging) may also play a role in shaping the form of the skull. Indeed, the jaws, particularly the mandible, and the rest of the skull may need to respond to different pressures. Whereas the mandible is clearly affected by feeding, the upper jaw and the skull may face conflicting demands, such as the size of the brain, bearing horns or antlers, and fighting behavior (as in rams).

We may gain an appreciation of mammalian diversity by considering the cranial skeletons of more commonly available mammals, such as of the sheep, *Ovis aries*, and the beaver, *Castor canadensis*. Here, we provide general comparative descriptions of the skulls and mandibles of these mammals, and assess both the similarities and differences between them and that of the cat, to evaluate the functional adaptations reflected by their form or, in other words, the relationship between form and function. The goal of this section is not necessarily to try to identify all the bones and structures as was done for the cat (although, by and large, most of these structures can readily be identified), and thus Key Terms are not identified. Rather, the point is to consider some of the major differences in light of the particular uses required by these mammals. In the following discussion, examine skulls of these mammals and refer to Figures 7.S1 through 7.S4.

In comparing the skulls of the sheep, beaver, and cat, several obvious differences are apparent, but so are many similarities. Among the overall differences are that the skull of the sheep has a much longer and deeper rostrum (though not all carnivorans have as short a rostrum as the cat). The rostrum of the beaver is also elongated, though not to the degree as in the sheep, and the entire dorsal profile of the skull is flattened, rather than curved. In the sheep the orbit is partly enclosed posteriorly by a bony bar, rather than being openly continuous posteriorly with the temporal fossa. In both the sheep and beaver, the zygomatic arch, particularly anteriorly, is stouter than in the cat. In the mandible, the coronoid process is relatively slender in the sheep and beaver, and larger in the cat, but the reverse is true of the angular process. The condyloid process is approximately at the same level as the tooth row in the cat, but raised dorsally above the tooth row in the sheep and beaver.

Consider the teeth. The cheek teeth in the cat (there are four, but other carnivorans may have more) seem relatively feeble, whereas those in the sheep (six teeth) and beaver (four teeth) seem more substantial. Those of the sheep and beaver are broad rather than sharp-edged as in the cat. The cheek teeth are separated from the front teeth by a much more pronounced diastema in the sheep and beaver (the diastema is relatively short even in carnivorans that have a longer snout than the cat). The beaver possesses a massive upper and lower incisor in each jaw quadrant, whereas the cat has three small incisors and a large canine, which is absent in the beaver. The sheep, on the other hand, lacks the upper incisors and canine, but has three small incisors and an incisiform canine on each side of the mandible. The six cheek teeth of the sheep comprise three premolars and three molars. The beaver's four cheek teeth include a single premolar followed by three molars.

On the other hand, there are many similarities among the three mammals. For example, the bones are generally similar in shape and position, although the proportions may differ. Identify the main bones of the skulls in the sheep and beaver, using the descriptions that follow, the indicated figures, and the knowledge gained through your detailed study of the cat skull. The nasals, frontal, and parietals are easily recognizable along the roof and lateral cranial wall of the skull. The frontal extends notably farther posteriorly in the sheep. As well, the frontal is pierced dorsally by the supraorbital foramen, which communicates with the orbit.

Another notable difference is that in the sheep particularly, but also the beaver, the parietal extends

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

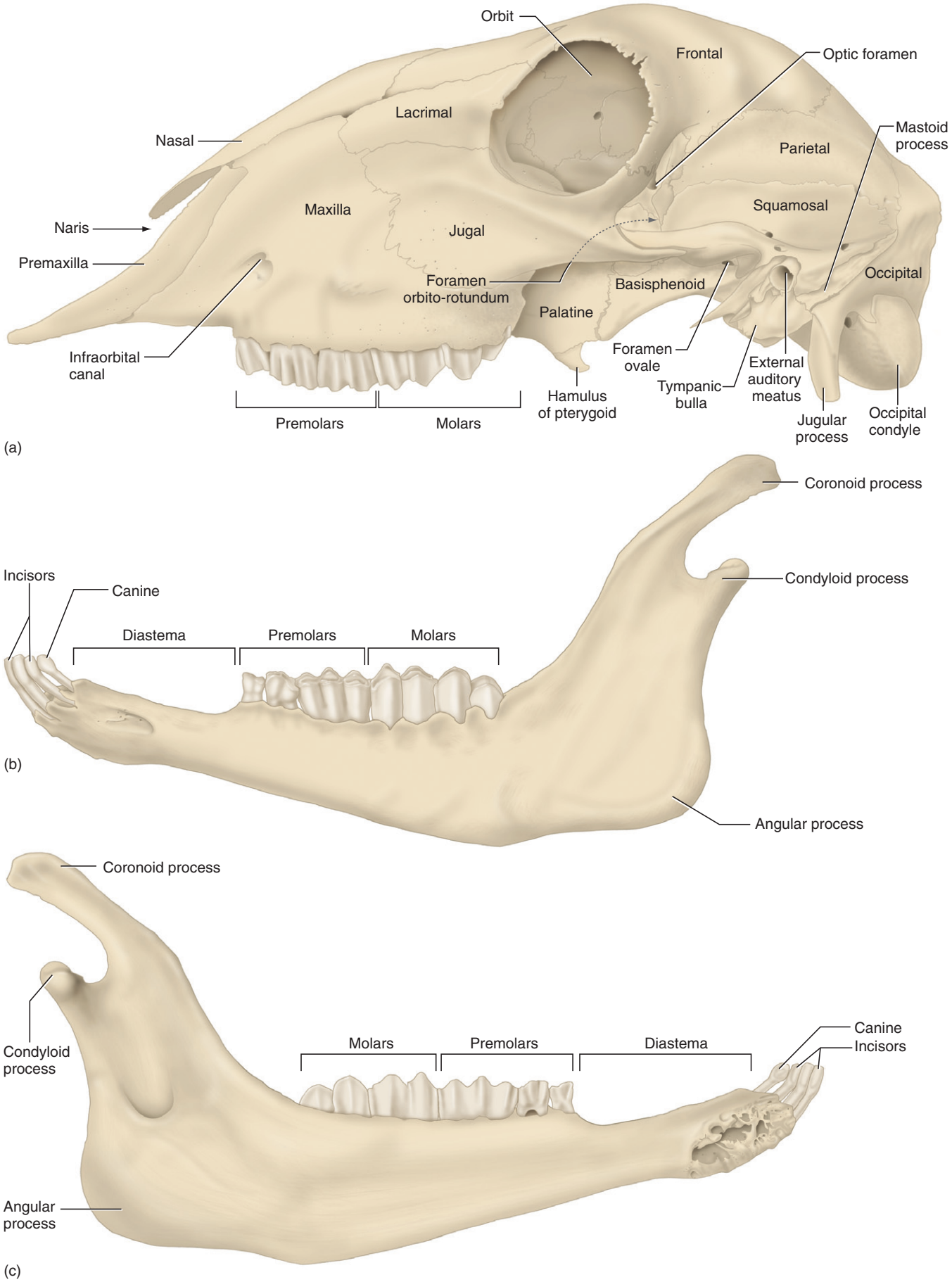


FIGURE 7.S1 Skull of the sheep in (a) lateral view, and dentary in (b) lateral and (c) medial views.

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

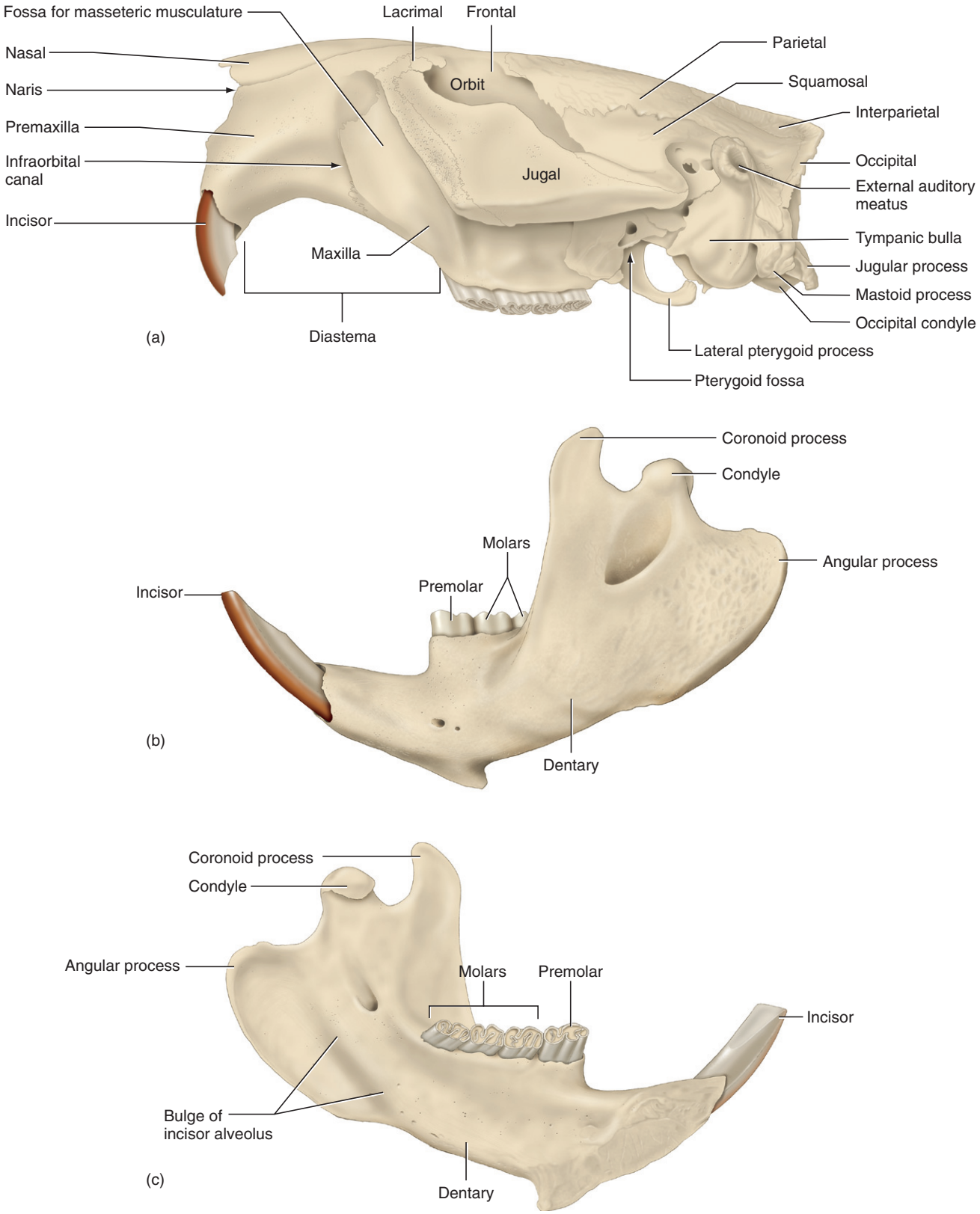


FIGURE 7.S2 Skull of the beaver in (a) lateral view, and dentary in (b) lateral and (c) medial views.

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

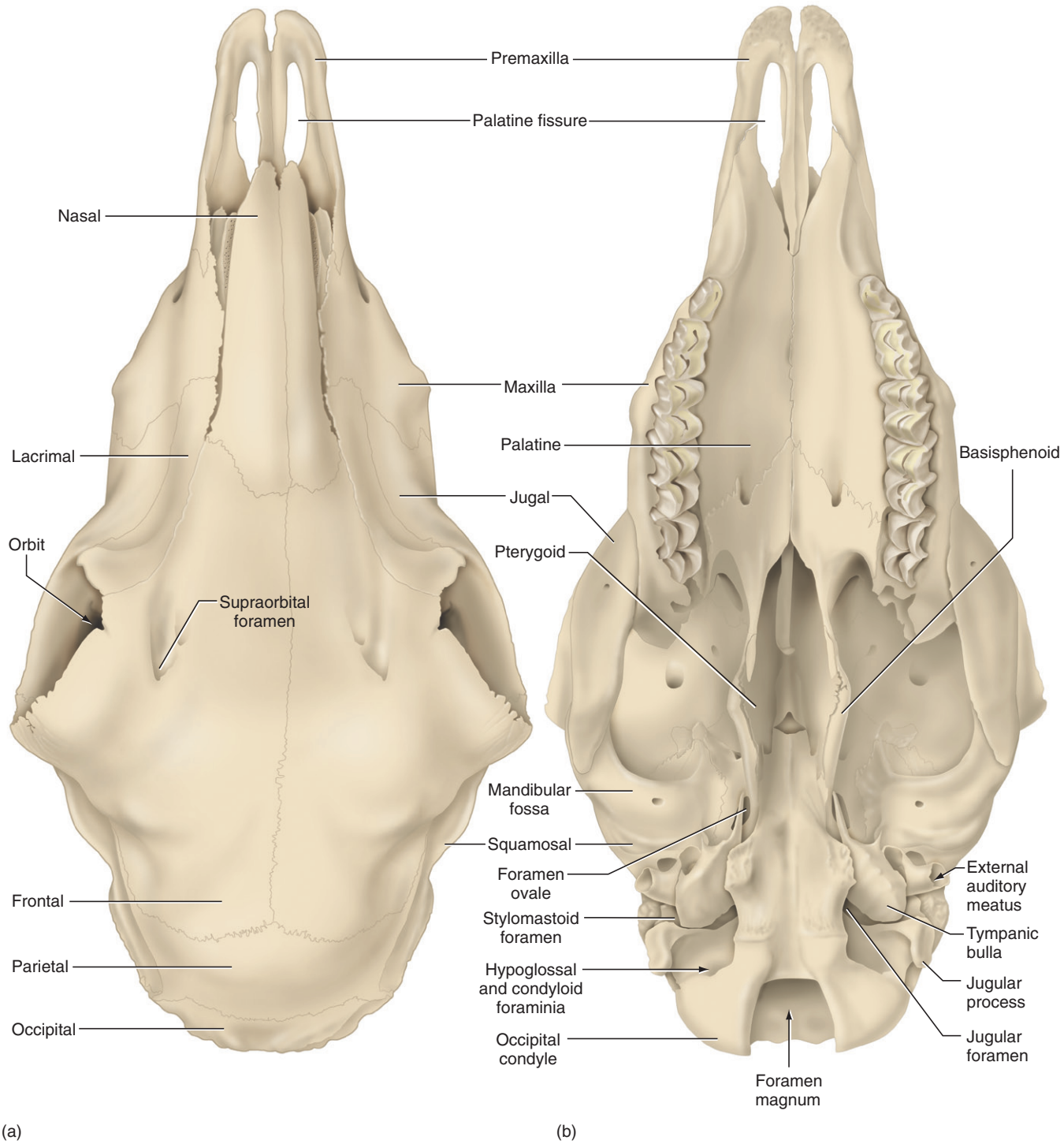


FIGURE 7.S3 Skull of the sheep in (a) dorsal and (b) ventral views.

considerably anterior relative to the posterior margin of the frontal. The frontal of the sheep bears a prominent descending postorbital process that meets an equally prominent ascending postorbital process of the zygomatic to form the postorbital bar. The nasals in both the sheep and beaver are much more prominent and elongated. The same is true of the premaxillae, which contribute more prominently to the palate and are particularly stout in the beaver. The maxilla occupies the usual position and bears the cheek teeth. In the sheep and beaver, the maxilla is more extensive and tends to be deeper. A notable feature in the beaver is that the

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

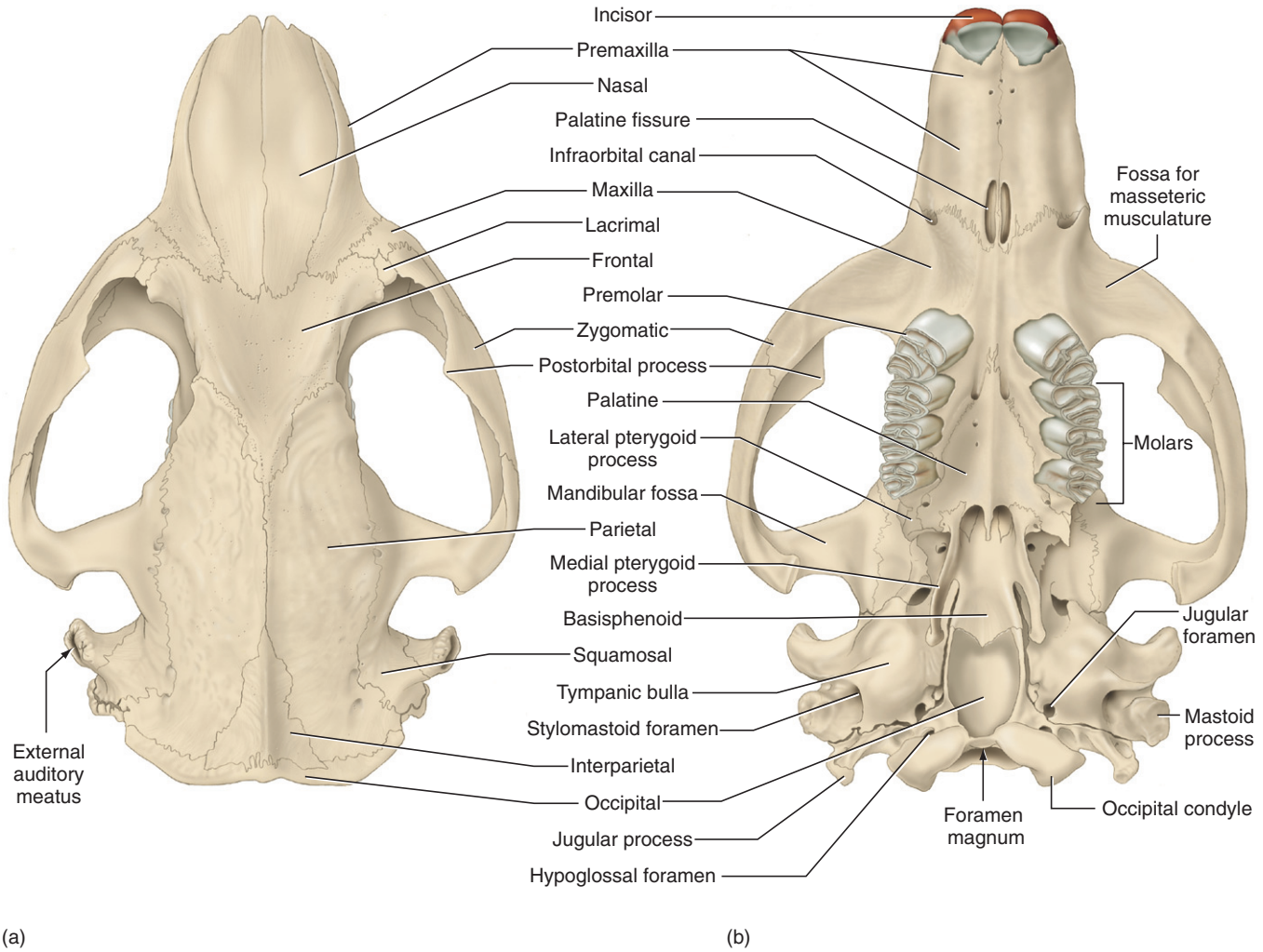


FIGURE 7.S4 Skull of the beaver in (a) dorsal and (b) ventral views.

maxilla bears an extensive depression just anterior to the anterior root of the zygomatic arch (the premaxilla bears a small dorsal portion of this depression). The fossa is neatly delimited anteriorly by a distinct shelf-like ridge on the lateral surface of the maxilla and premaxilla. As noted later, the fossa in the beaver serves for insertion of part of the masseter muscle, one of the jaw closing muscles. The infraorbital foramen is hidden in lateral view medial to the shelf, whereas in the sheep, as in the cat, the opening is visible. On the palate, the premaxillae of the sheep help enclose more prominent palatine fissures. Posteriorly the palatines follow the maxillae and help complete the palate, and then turn to form the usual bladelike walls of the pterygoid region. The lacrimal contributes to the anterior margin of the orbit in all three mammals, but it is particularly large in the sheep, extending far anteriorly on the lateral rostral wall. Also, it extends posteriorly as an inflated, pyramid-shaped portion, often with a lacy appearance in some individuals, that projects into the anterior part of the orbit. The squamosal (part of the temporal) occupies its usual place on the posterolateral side of the skull and bears the posterior root of the zygomatic arch.

The occipital, as usual, forms the posterior surface of the skull. It encloses the foramen magnum and bears the paired occipital condyles that articulate with the vertebral column. The occipital is formed by the usual four elements as described in the cat, but they are not explicitly indicated in the figures of the sheep and beaver. The only major difference is that in the sheep the supraoccipital is excluded from the margin of the foramen magnum. Indeed, it is possible to see the suture of the supraoccipital with the exoccipitals even in older individuals. This suture takes the form of a V-shaped contact just dorsal to the foramen magnum. The interparietal forms a large triangular wedge between the occipital and parietals in the beaver, but is less conspicuous in the sheep.

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

Ventrally, the basioccipital helps form the floor of the braincase. The tympanic bullae lie to either side of this bone. In the beaver, the bulla is relatively large and mediolaterally wide, similar to but not nearly as inflated as in the cat. The bulla is smaller in the sheep and transversely compressed, forming a more nearly dorsoventral structure. The external acoustic meatus is the opening into the ear. In contrast to the condition in the cat, it is borne by an elongated bony tube extending laterally from the rest of the temporal. It is particularly long in the beaver and less so in the sheep. The mastoid process, the external exposure of the petrosal, is prominent in the beaver, and less so in the cat and sheep. The jugular process, just lateral to the occipital condyle, is larger in the beaver and exceptionally so in the sheep. Several of the other entrances in this region into the skull, such as the stylomastoid, hypoglossal, and jugular foramina, are reasonably similar to those already identified in the cat. In the sheep, the hypoglossal opening lies at the base of a deep depression (the condyloid fossa) between the occipital condyle and jugular process. As well, the condyloid foramen, which is smaller and lies lateral to the hypoglossal foramen, also opens directly from the floor of the fossa.

The basisphenoid follows anterior to the basioccipital and, as in the cat, has a lateral wing, the alisphenoid, that extends dorsally into the orbital wall. Ventrolaterally the basisphenoid encloses the foramen ovale in the sheep, as in the cat, and continues to contact the palatine. The pterygoid is more broadly exposed in lateral view in the sheep, but the hamulus is about the same size. Anterodorsal to the foramen ovale (and hidden in lateral view by the zygomatic arch) is a large opening, the foramen orbito-rotundum (a confluence of the separate foramen rotundum and orbital fissure noted in the cat). Anterodorsal to this opening is the optic canal, about as large as the foramen ovale. In the beaver, the relationships of the foramina are more complex and are not considered here. However, note the large lateral and medial pterygoid processes that extend posterior to the palatines. The medial is particularly prominent, extending posteriorly as a stout hook-like structure. Between the pterygoid processes, note the deep pterygoid fossa.

Several of the differences noted among the skulls of the cat, sheep, and beaver are adaptations reflecting differences in dietary habits. That the differences are so pronounced should be of no surprise, as the skull is instrumental in procuring and processing food. The cat represents a carnivore and a strict one at that, and many of its features are indicative of a carnivorous diet. Of the main jaw-closing muscles, for example, the temporalis muscle is larger than the masseter muscle, and the relatively large temporal fossa reflects this difference. So too does the relatively large coronoid process (on which the temporalis mainly inserts) compared to the smaller angular process (on which part of the masseter muscle inserts) of the mandible.

Although the sheep and beaver represent different herbivore types, several of the features of their skulls reflect the processing of vegetation (more accurately, of food with certain physical properties, rather than all kinds of vegetation; other plant feeders, such as primates for example, have other mechanical requirements and the feeding apparatus is different from the pattern common in rodents and the ruminant artiodactyls discussed here). In herbivores the temporalis muscle tends to be smaller than the masseter muscle, and thus the temporal fossa is relatively smaller, and the angular process is larger than the coronoid processes in these mammals (indeed, the coronoid process is barely developed in some rodents). In addition, note the position of the condyloid process of the mandible in the herbivores as compared to the carnivore. This position reflects a more dorsal position of the joint between the skull and mandible. The effect of the different positions is that in the cat, with the joint approximately level with the tooth row, the teeth can be engaged sequentially, in a scissor-like manner, a suitable action for cutting and slicing. In the herbivores, the position of the joint engages the cheek teeth simultaneously, which can thus form the long grinding and crushing batteries necessary for processing vegetation.

The form of the cheek teeth themselves is also revealing. In the cat, as already noted, these teeth are mainly laterally compressed with a single sharp edge, an efficient mechanism for cutting and slicing through flesh and tendons when the teeth pass adjacent to each other in a scissor-like fashion. Not all carnivorous mammals have such strictly blade-like teeth. A more flexible diet than in the cat is revealed by the dentition of canids (dogs and their relatives), which retain a sharp-edged carnassial pair but the teeth following the carnassials have crushing surfaces. In those that mainly crush bones, some of the cheek teeth are robust and tend to have broad occlusal surfaces, such as in hyenas.

In a herbivore, however, the cheek teeth tend to be morphologically similar to each other, with the premolars becoming molarized (i.e., molarlike), and they have relatively wide and complex occlusal surfaces bearing several sharp-edged ridges or lophs (again, this does not apply to all herbivores, as many, such as primates, do not possess such morphology). The lophs are composed of enamel, the hardest part of the tooth, and between the lophs is softer dentine, which wears more rapidly and thus forms depressions between the lophs. When the lophs move past each other, they act like two rasps that grate food between them. The main difference between the beaver and sheep is that the ridges are

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

transversely oriented in the former and anteroposteriorly oriented in the latter, which reflects differences in the way the jaw moves in these two herbivores, and is considered later. The rasping effect of the lophs results in similar effects.

The need to grind tough vegetation, however, results in considerable wear of the teeth. Herbivores have adapted to this by evolving tall (or hypsodont) teeth. Such teeth are set in deep alveoli in the jaw bones, and thus the maxilla and mandible have become deeper to house the taller teeth. This is particularly evident in grazing mammals, such as the sheep, in which the orbits have even moved posteriorly to accommodate the roots of the upper teeth. In some instances (some rodents and rabbits) the roots of the cheek teeth do not close and the teeth are ever-growing (or hypselodont).

A characteristic feature of herbivorous mammals is that their mandibles have considerable freedom of movement, either side to side or backward and forward, reflecting the need to have the lophs of the cheek teeth move past each other. In carnivores, however, the mandible tends to be restricted mainly to up and down (or orthal) movements. The form of the jaw joint reflects these motions. In the cat, the condyloid process is rounded and transversely widened, articulating with a concave and transversely wide mandibular fossa. This joint restricts lateral movement. In the sheep, both the condyle and fossa are nearly flat, permitting considerable side-to-side movement. The beaver, and rodents in general, have specialized mandibular movements. In these mammals, the lower jaw can function in two distinct positions. With the mandible in posterior position, the cheek teeth can be engaged in mastication to crush and grind, but in this position the tips of the incisors do not meet. Rodents, however, can pull the mandible forward to engage the incisors to gnaw food or clip vegetation (and in some cases, to dig), in which case the cheek teeth are not fully engaged. The form of the jaw joint reflects these possibilities. Here, the condyloid process is rounded and the mandibular fossa is elongated, which allow for anteroposterior (or propalinal) and transverse jaw movement. Another feature of rodent dentition that increases masticatory efficiency is that the upper and lower tooth rows are about equidistant from each other, whereas in most other mammals, the cat and sheep included, the upper and lower tooth rows are not the same distance apart, meaning the lower teeth are positioned medial to the upper teeth when the jaw is closed. The result is that the upper and lower teeth of only one side can occlude. In the beaver, however, both side upper and lower teeth meet at the same time, so mastication may be carried out by both side tooth rows through anteroposterior movements of the jaw—and this, of course, explains the transversely oriented lophs of this mammal.

Consider next the front teeth. In general, the incisors are used to obtain food, whether grasping vegetation or nipping prey. In the cat, the incisors are all present and the canine is well developed as a pointed, conical tooth. This makes functional sense in several ways. Typically, the incisors are used to capture and manipulate prey (although they may also serve other functions, such as grooming), and the canines especially to stab and pierce in subduing and killing prey. This requires a quick biting movement from a relatively wide gape. The temporalis muscle is most mechanically efficient, given its position, in initiating such movements to provide a forceful bite at the front of the jaws. This explains the general tendency in carnivores for the temporalis being the larger of the two jaw closing muscles discussed here.

In herbivores there is less need for a powerful temporalis, given that subduing and killing prey is not a concern. The emphasis in such mammals as the sheep is on constant mastication, mainly a function of the cheek teeth, for which the masseter muscle is ideally positioned. It is likely that the postorbital bar, noted earlier, is an adaption for absorbing stress during mastication. In the sheep the upper incisors and canines are lost, and this is generally true of ruminant artiodactyls. In their place, at the front of the oral cavity, on the ventral surface of the premaxilla, is a hard pad of fibrous tissue with a thick, horny epithelial covering, the dental pad or plate, against which the lower teeth produce their nipping and cutting actions. In the males of some antlerless ruminants, such as the mouse and musk deer, the canine is retained as a large tooth for fighting and display.

In the beaver, as in rodents generally, there is only a single pair of enlarged, curved, gnawing, and ever-growing incisors in the upper and lower jaws, the other incisors and canines having been lost during evolution. The teeth bear enamel only on their anterior surfaces, and as this material is harder than the dentine posterior to it, the enamel wears more slowly, producing the self-sharpening, chiseled edge characteristic of rodents. These teeth, as noted earlier, can be engaged by moving the mandible forward. To this end, rodents (the mountain beaver, *Aplodontia rufa*, which is not a true beaver, is an exception) exhibit a trend toward specialization of the masseter musculature so that at least one of its divisions takes origin on the rostrum, in contrast to the typical condition in mammals, where the masseter originates from the zygomatic arch.

An anterior attachment of part of the masseter results in a more nearly anteroposterior line of action, which increases the muscle's mechanical advantage in pulling the mandible forward. There are several patterns for such reorganization of the masseter. The beaver is characteristic of the sciuromorphous condition, in which the anterior part of the superficial masseter arises from the

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

anterior surface of the zygomatic arch and the lateral surface of the rostrum—the depression that serves this origin was noted earlier. The other patterns are termed hystricomorphous and myomorphous. In the former, as in porcupines and the guinea pig, the anterior part of the medial masseter arises from the anterior surface of the rostrum and extends through a usually greatly enlarged infraorbital foramen. In the myomorphous condition, as in rats and mice, the anterior part of the superficial masseter arises from a markedly enlarged anterior portion of the zygomatic arch; the anterior part of the medial masseter arises from the rostrum and extends through a moderately enlarged infraorbital foramen.

A final consideration is the size of the diastema, which, as noted earlier, tends to be more extensive in many (but not all) herbivorous mammals. The longer diastema may be a function of the longer snout and jaws, but the reason for this is not clear. Suggestions include that the diastema is functionally important in mastication, allowing additional space for the tongue to manipulate food, but the longer snout may also reflect a need for a herbivore to select food with the incisors without injuring its eyes. Also, separating the incisors from the check teeth improves the specific function of both kinds of teeth. On the one hand, the sharper, cutting front teeth are relatively far removed from the pivot (the jaw joint), where speed is enhanced over force. On the other hand, the crushing check teeth are closer to the pivot, where force is enhanced over speed. In rodents, the longer snout also helps accommodate the extremely large incisors. These teeth extend far back into the skull and mandible, curving posteriorly through the rostrum, and the bugle produced by the alveolus of the upper incisor on the lateral surface of the premaxilla is usually clearly evident. In the mandible, the incisor curves along the ventral margin of the mandible, and extends posterior to the cheek teeth. The bulge of its alveolus is also clearly evident in medial view.

Postcranial Skeleton

Vertebral Column

The **vertebral column** is composed of a series of movable bones, or **vertebrae**. The column is an important structure in support and locomotion and has evolved in mammals into five distinct regions. Examine a mounted skeleton to identify these regions (Figure 7.1). Most anteriorly, in the neck, are the **cervical vertebrae**, which are followed by the rib-bearing **thoracic vertebrae** in the trunk. Next are the **lumbar vertebrae**, lying dorsal to the abdomen and between the thoracics and **sacral vertebrae**. The latter are fused into a solid unit and articulate with the pelvis. Lastly, the **caudal vertebrae** support the tail. An opening, the **intervertebral foramen**, is present on each side between adjacent vertebrae for the passage of a spinal nerve.

Each vertebra generally possesses several parts. For the following, examine a typical cervical vertebra (Figure 7.8). The **centra** (sing. **centrum**) or vertebral bodies, oval or kidney-shaped in section, form the main support of the vertebral column. The **neural canal**, through which the spinal cord passes, lies dorsal to the centrum. The neural canal is enclosed laterally and dorsally by the **neural arch**. The arch is composed on each side by a **pedicle**, an oblique plate forming the side of the arch, and a **lamina**, a horizontal plate forming the top of the arch. A **neural process** projects dorsally from the neural arch. A **transverse process** projects laterally on either side from near the junction of the centrum with a pedicle. Near the junction between the pedicle and lamina, each vertebra has anterior and posterior projections for articulation with other vertebrae. The anterior projection, the **prezygapophysis**, bears a facet that faces dorsally or dorsomedially. The facet of the posterior process or the **postzygapophysis** faces ventrally or ventromedially. Thus, a prezygapophysis slips under the postzygapophysis of the preceding vertebrae.

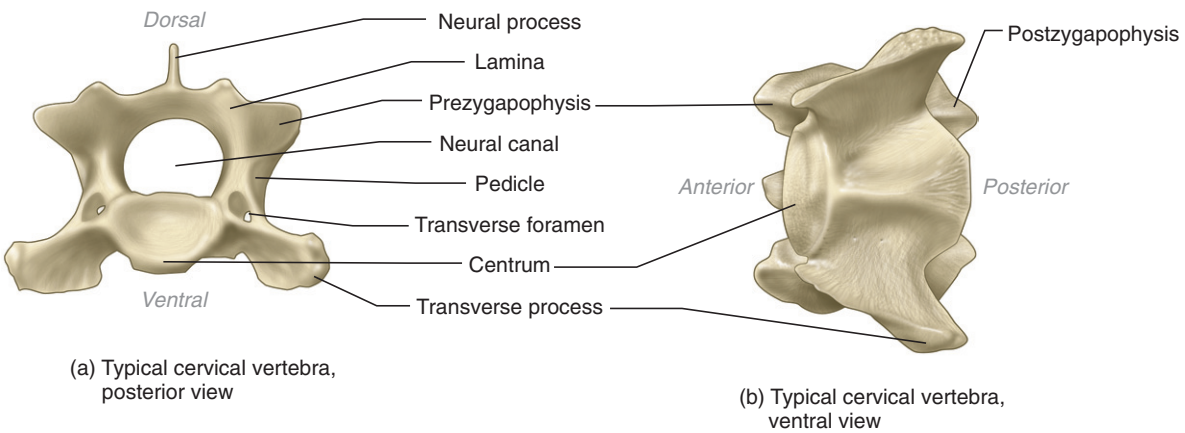


FIGURE 7.8 Cervical vertebra of the cat.

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

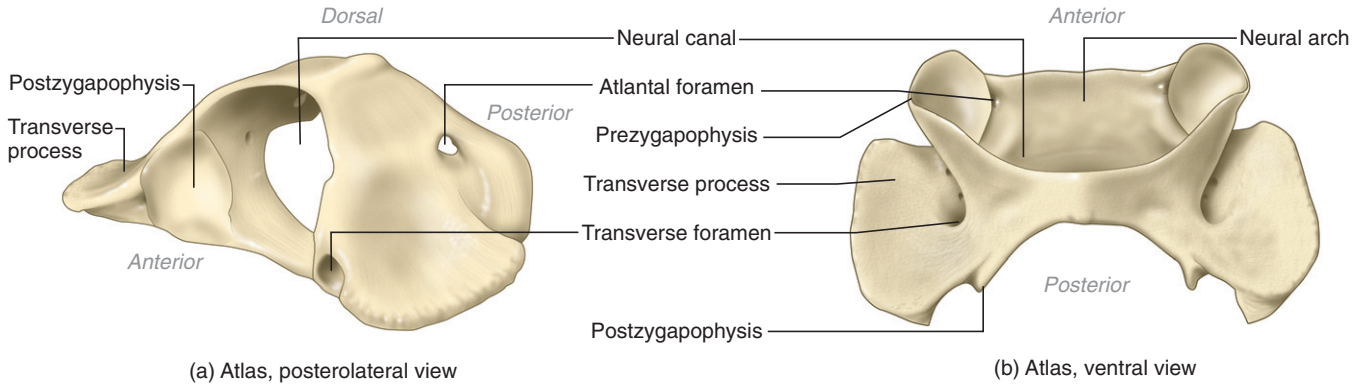


FIGURE 7.9 Atlas of the cat in (a) posterolateral and (b) ventral views.

These features are common to most vertebrae, though they may vary in size and proportion among vertebral types. Some vertebrae may also have additional processes. Examine a set of disarticulated vertebrae and distinguish the main types, as described next.

CERVICAL VERTEBRAE

The cat has seven cervical vertebrae, as do most mammals. The first two are specialized and markedly different from the remaining five, due to their function in support and movement of the head. The first vertebra is the **atlas** (Figure 7.9), after the mythological giant Atlas, who was charged with supporting the world on his shoulders. The atlas is easily recognizable. It is ring-like and lacks a neural process. Ventrally, the centrum is replaced by a narrow strut, and the neural arch is the more prominent component. The transverse processes are broad, wing-like structures. The prezygapophyses bear strongly curved articular surfaces for the occipital condyles. The joints between the occipital condyles and atlas permit mainly up and down or nodding movements of the head on the neck. The postzygapophyses bear nearly flattened surfaces for articulation with the second cervical vertebra, the **axis**. These joints allow mainly rotational movements of the head. The paired **atlantal foramina** pierce the neural arch transversely just dorsal to the prezygapophyses. Vessels (such as the craniodorsal artery, a branch of the vertebral artery) and the first cervical nerve pass through the foramen. The **transverse foramina**, despite their name, do not run transversely but anteroposteriorly through the base of the transverse process. The transverse foramen, through which the vertebral artery passes, is characteristic of the cervical vertebrae, except for the last, in which it is usually absent.

The axis is also distinctive (Figure 7.10). It has a large and anteroposteriorly elongated neural process that hangs over the atlas. Also, it has a **dens**, a process that projects anteriorly between the prezygapophyses and articulates with the atlas. This articulation participates in shaking movements of the head. Note the slender, posteriorly projecting transverse processes. The remaining cervical vertebrae are more typical vertebrae (Figure 7.8). Each possesses a relatively slender neural process that increases in height from the third cervical, in which

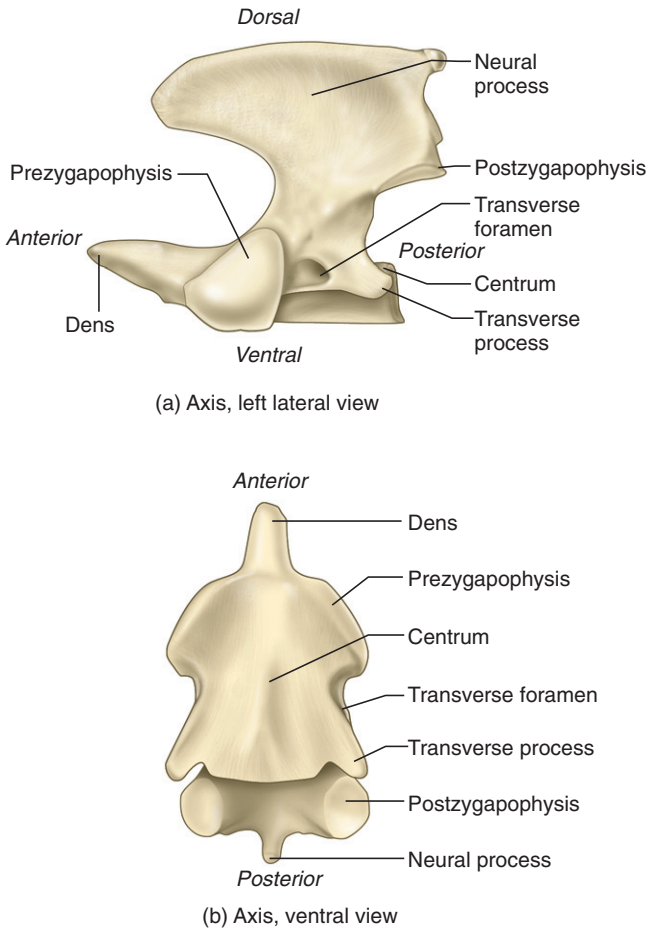


FIGURE 7.10 Axis of the cat in (a) left lateral and (b) ventral views.

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

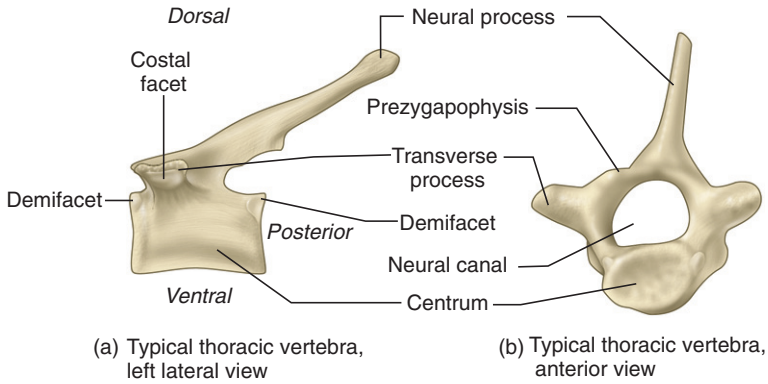


FIGURE 7.11 Thoracic vertebra of the cat in (a) left lateral and (b) anterior views.

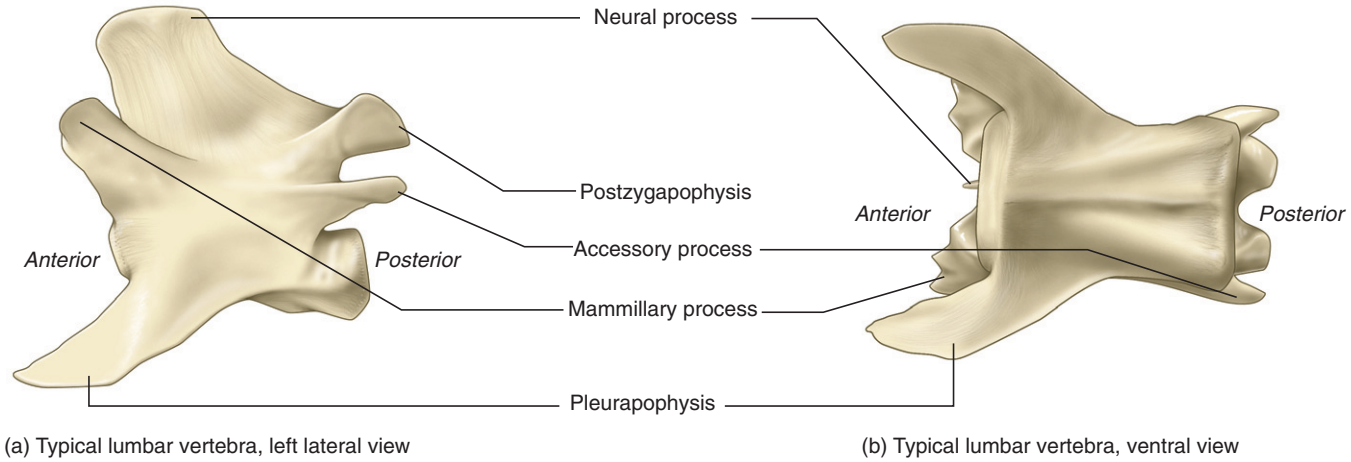


FIGURE 7.12 Lumbar vertebra of the cat in (a) left lateral and (b) ventral views.

the process is very strongly reduced, to the seventh cervical.

THORACIC VERTEBRAE

The cat usually has 13 thoracic vertebrae. These are distinguishable by the presence of additional facets for articulation with ribs and very short transverse processes. The **capitulum** of a **rib** (see later) sits between and articulates with two successive centra, for which most thoracic vertebrae possess **costal demifacets** (Figure 7.11). These are anteriorly and posteriorly paired facets, so that a vertebra typically has four demifacets. The demifacets of successive vertebrae form (on each side) a complete or "full" articular surface for the capitulum of a rib. Thoracics also have a **costal facet** on the ventral surface of each transverse process for articulation with the **tuberculum** of the corresponding rib.

The thoracic series undergoes various changes as it proceeds posteriorly. For example, the first thoracic has paired costal facets anteriorly and paired demifacets posteriorly. The last few thoracics, usually the 11th through 13th, only have paired costal facets on the centrum (i.e., no demifacets). Also, the 11th thoracic has markedly reduced transverse processes, and the 12th and 13th lack transverse processes (reflecting the absence of a tuberculum on the last few ribs). The last few thoracic vertebrae have a slender **accessory process** (see Figure 7.12) that extends posteriorly from the pedicle, just lateral to each postzygapophysis. The accessory processes reinforce the articulation between the pre- and postzygapophyses.

Finally, note the change in the neural process throughout the thoracic series. Anteriorly, the process is high and inclines posteriorly. The height of the process tends to decrease posteriorly whereas inclination tends to increase until, depending on the individual, the 10th or 11th thoracic vertebra, at which point the process is markedly reduced and points anteriorly. This vertebra is known as the **anticlinal vertebra** (Figure 7.1) to denote the change in inclination. The neural process of the remaining thoracic vertebrae (as well as of the lumbar vertebrae) also inclines anteriorly and increases in

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

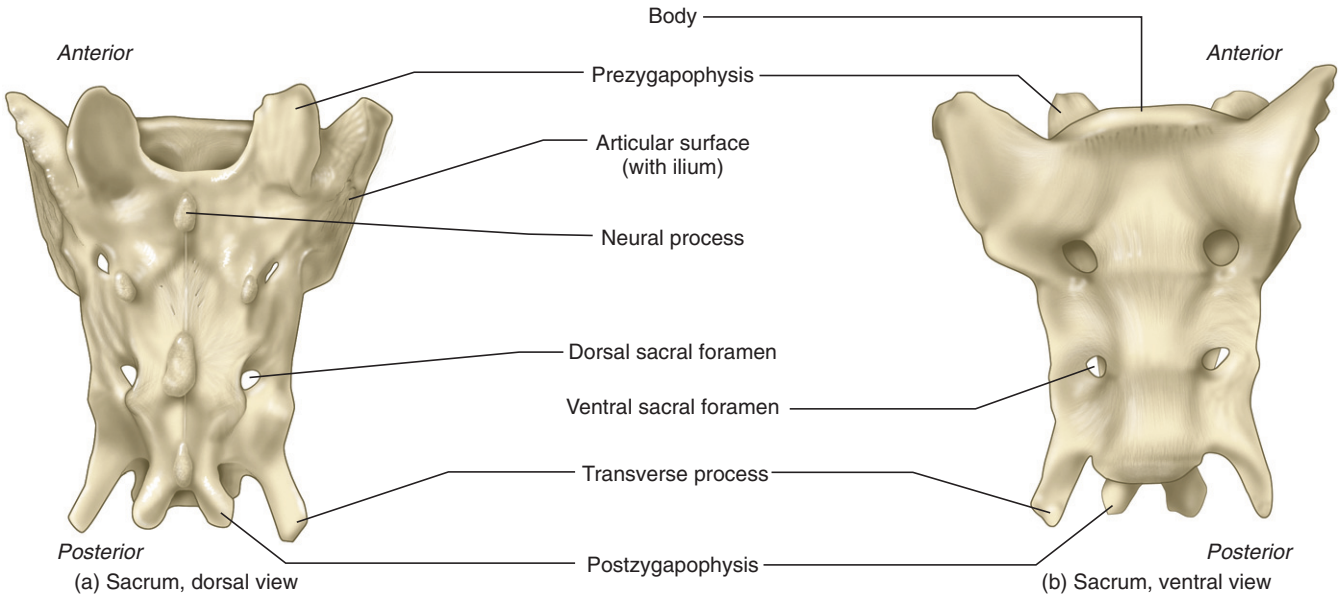


FIGURE 7.13 Sacrum of the cat in (a) dorsal and (b) ventral views.

height. The change in inclination of the neural processes allows the cat to extend and flex its back, especially during running.

LUMBAR VERTEBRAE

The cat typically has seven lumbar vertebrae. They are characterized by their large size, which increases posteriorly through the lumbar series, and **pleurapophyses**, elongated, blade-like processes that sweep anteroventrally (Figure 7.12). A pleurapophysis represents a fusion of a transverse process and an embryonic rib. The prezygapophyses are extended dorsally beyond the articular surfaces into **mammillary processes** for attachment of epaxial muscles. Finally, note that accessory processes are present on all but the last two lumbar vertebrae.

SACRAL VERTEBRAE

The cat has three sacral vertebrae that are fused together to form a single structure, the **sacrum**, which links the spine to the pelvic girdle (Figure 7.13). Anteriorly the sacrum has on either side a broad, rugose, and nearly circular surface for articulation with the innominate bones of the pelvis. The sacral vertebrae decrease in size posteriorly. Even though they are fused together, many of the structures can be recognized. Identify the three neural processes, and note the areas of fusion at the pre- and postzygapophyses. The pleurapophyses of the sacrals are expanded anteriorly and posteriorly and fuse with each other to enclose two pairs of **sacral foramina** on the dorsal and ventral surfaces of the sacrum for the passage of dorsal branches of spinal nerves. The pleurapophysis of the first sacral forms most of the articular surface for the pelvis.

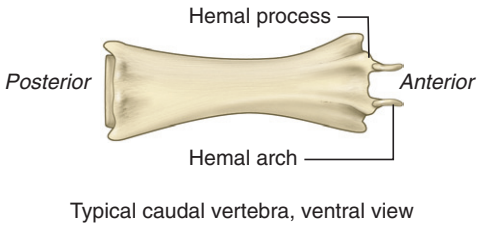


FIGURE 7.14 Caudal vertebra of the cat in ventral view.

CAUDAL VERTEBRAE

Cats typically possess from 21 to 23 caudal vertebrae, which are the smallest of the vertebrae (Figure 7.14). The caudals tend to become progressively smaller and less complex posteriorly. The anterior caudals have zygapophyses, and neural and transverse processes, but the more posterior vertebrae are elongated, cylindrical structures consisting almost entirely of the centrum. Beginning with the third or fourth caudal vertebra, you might note the presence of **hemal arches**, small V-shaped bones, lying at the anterior end of the ventral surface of the vertebra. Successive hemal arches enclose the hemal canal, through which caudal blood vessels pass. Each hemal arch articulates with a pair of small tubercles, the **hemal processes**, on the centrum. The small, delicate arches are usually lost during preparation, but their position can be determined by identifying the hemal processes.

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

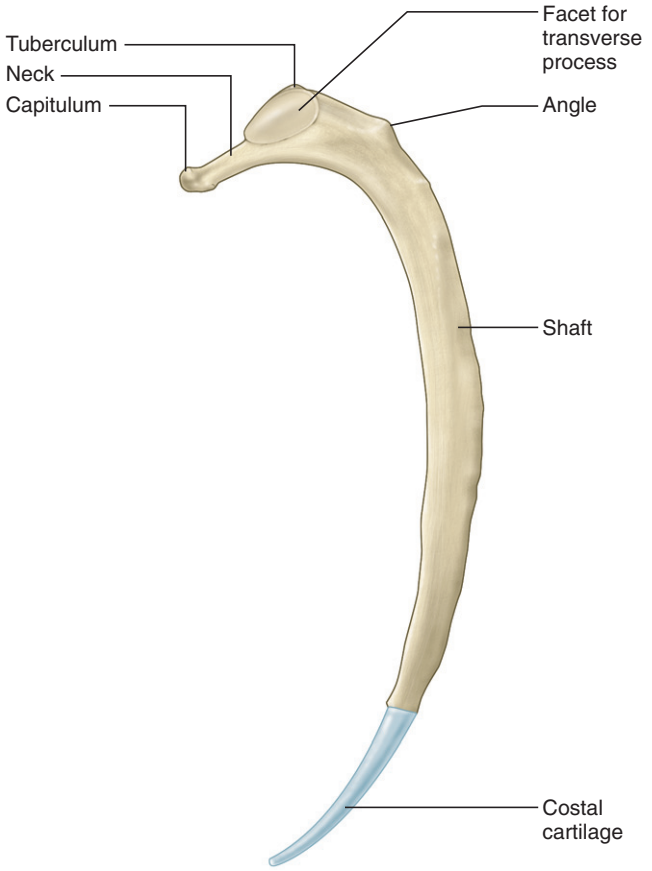


FIGURE 7.15 Rib of the cat.

Ribs

The **ribs** form a strong but partly flexible cage that protects vital organs (e.g., heart and lungs) and participates in inspiration and expiration. Each rib articulates dorsally with the vertebral column and ventrally with a **costal cartilage**.

The 13 pairs of ribs (Figure 7.15) may be subdivided into three types: **vertebrosternal**, **vertebrochondral**, and **vertebral**, based on the attachment of their costal cartilages onto the **sternum** or breast bone (Figure 7.16). The first nine ribs are vertebrosternal (or "true" ribs), meaning that the costal cartilages attach directly to the sternum. The next three are vertebrochondral (or "false" ribs) because their costal cartilages attach to the costal cartilage of another rib; that is, they do not attach directly to the sternum. The last rib is a vertebral rib because its short cartilage does not gain access to the sternum. It is thus also known as a floating rib.

Ribs differ in length but are generally similar in being curved, slender, rod-like bones. The **capitulum** or head bears surfaces for articulation with the demifacets of the thoracic vertebrae. This is followed by a short, constricted **neck** and then by the **tuberculum**, which has a facet for articulation with the costal facet on the transverse process of a thoracic rib. A tuberculum is absent in the final two or three ribs. The **shaft** of the rib curves distally, and bears a well-defined **angle** beyond the tuberculum. A costal cartilage is attached to the distal surface of each rib.

Sternum

The sternum (Figure 7.16) consists of eight **sternebrae** arranged anteroposteriorly midventrally on the thorax. The most anterior of the series is the spear tip-shaped **manubrium**. In some individuals the manubrium appears to be formed by the fusion of two elements. The next six sternebrae, constituting the **body** of the sternum, tend to be elongated, spindle-shaped elements. Finally, there is the elongated and tapering **xiphisternum**. The **xiphoid cartilage** attaches to its posterior end. The costal cartilages of the vertebrosternal ribs attach directly to the sternum. Typically, the pattern is that a costal cartilage attaches between adjacent sternebrae.

Forelimb

SCAPULA

The **scapula** or shoulder blade (Figure 7.17a, b) is a flat, triangular bone. Its medial surface is nearly flat, whereas its lateral surface has a prominent **scapular spine**. Examine a mounted skeleton, and note that the apex of the scapula is directed ventrally. Identify the scapula's **anterior**, **dorsal**, and **posterior borders**. The **glenoid fossa** is the smooth, concave surface at the apex for articulation with the humerus. The delicate **coracoid process** projects medially from the anterior margin of the glenoid fossa and is the site of origin for the coracobrachialis muscle.

The medial surface bears the **subscapular fossa**. It is relatively flat, with a few prominent scar ridges indicating tendinous muscular insertions. Note the prominent ridge near the posterior border that demarcates a narrow, slightly concave surface for muscular attachment. On the lateral surface, the scapular spine rises prominently and separates the **supraspinous fossa** anteriorly from the **infraspinous fossa** posteriorly, both of which are fairly smooth surfaces. Ventrally the spine ends in the acromion process. Just dorsal to the **acromion process** is the posteriorly projecting **metacromion process**.

CLAVICLE

The clavicle is a small, slender, slightly curved bone suspended in the musculature associated with the forelimb (Figures 7.1 and 7.17c). It lies just anterior to the proximal end of the humerus (see next). As such, the clavicle of the cat does not articulate with other skeletal elements.

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

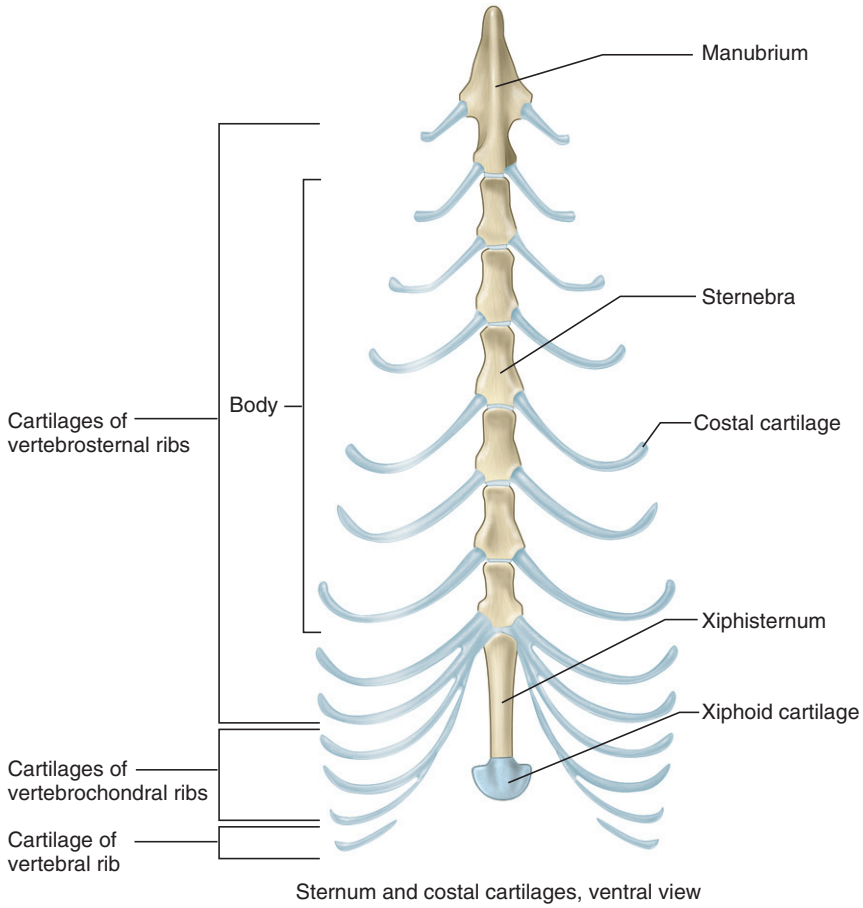


FIGURE 7.16 Sternum and costal cartilages of the cat in ventral view.

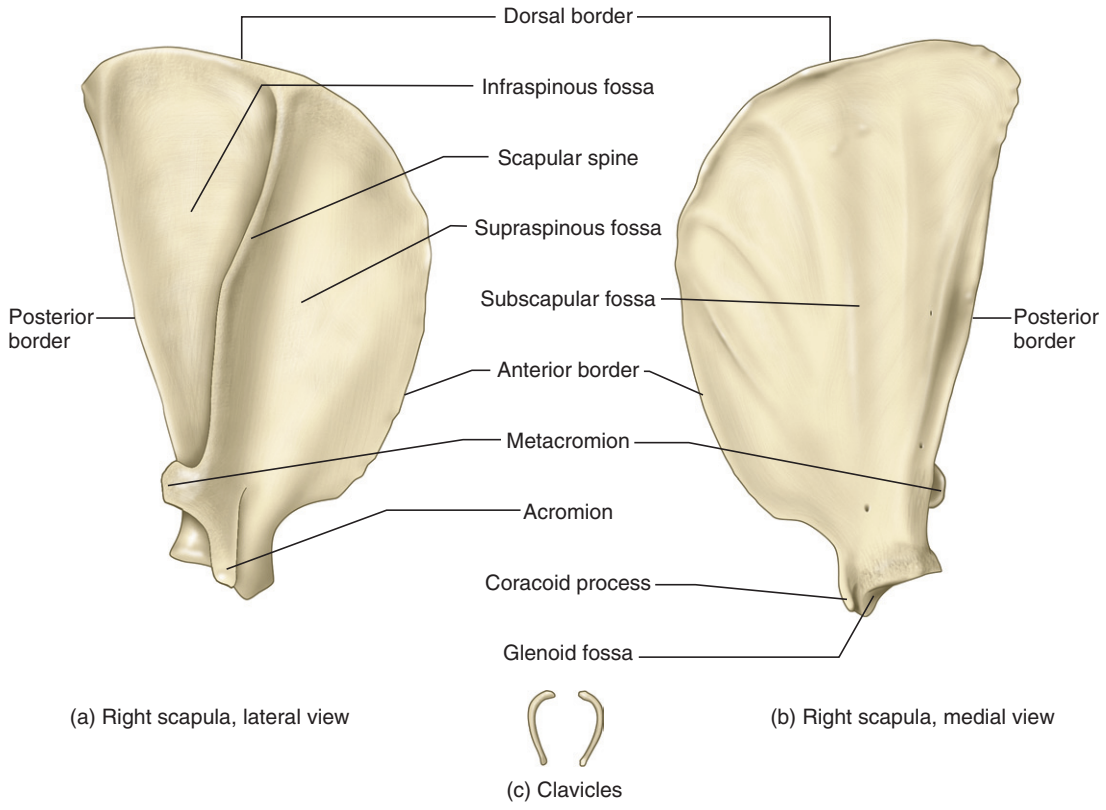


FIGURE 7.17 Right scapula of the cat in (a) right lateral and (b) medial views; and (c) clavicles of the cat.

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

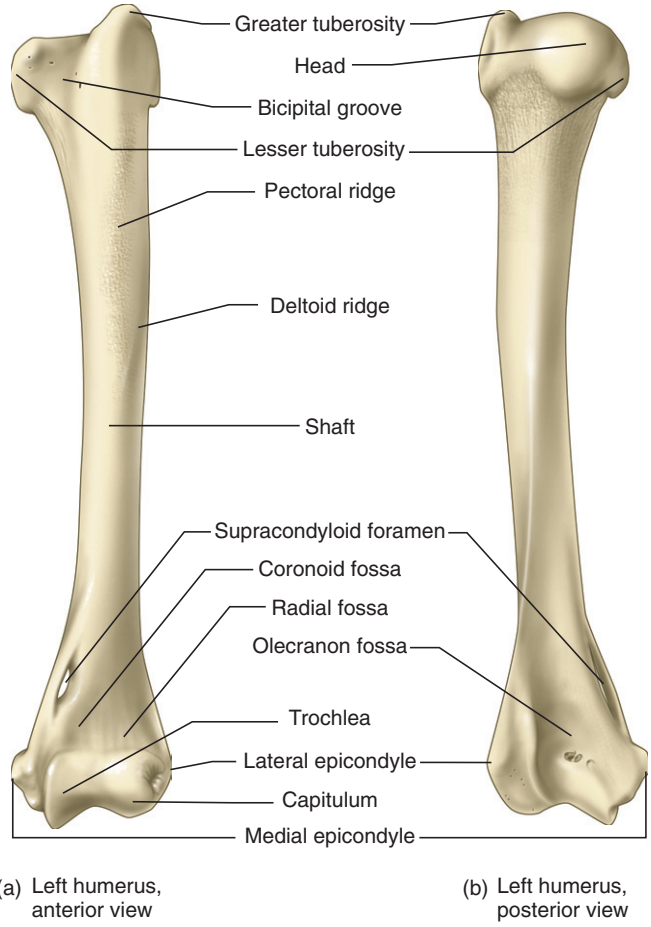


FIGURE 7.18 Left humerus of the cat in (a) anterior and (b) posterior views.

HUMERUS

The **humerus** (Figure 7.18) is the bone of the brachium, or proximal part of the forelimb. It articulates proximally with the glenoid fossa of the scapula and distally with the radius and ulna. The **head** is the large, smooth, and rounded surface that articulates with the glenoid fossa of the scapula. It is best seen in proximal and posterior views. Lateral to the head is the **greater tuberosity**, whereas the **lesser tuberosity** lies medially. Anteriorly between the tuberosities is the deep **bicipital groove**, along which passes the tendon of the biceps brachii muscle. The **pectoral ridge** extends distally from the greater tuberosity on the anterior surface of the humeral **shaft**. The less prominent **deltoid ridge** extends distally and obliquely from the posterior part of the greater tuberosity. This ridge converges toward and meets the pectoral ridge about midway along the shaft.

Distally, there is a smooth, spool-shaped surface, the **condyle**, which is actually composed of two articular surfaces. The smaller, lateral surface, the **capitulum**, articulates with the **radius** (see later), whereas the larger, medial surface, the **trochlea**, articulates with the **ulna** (see later). The **coronoid** and **radial fossae** are shallow depressions that lie just proximal to the trochlea and capitulum, respectively, on the anterior surface of the shaft. On the posterior surface, just proximal to the condyle, is the deep **olecranon fossa** that receives the olecranon of the ulna. The **medial** and **lateral epicondyles** are the rugose prominences that lie on either side of the trochlea. The **supracondyloid foramen** is the oval passage lying proximal to the trochlea.

ULNA

The **ulna** (Figure 7.19) is the longer of the two bones in the forearm, or **antebrachium**. It has a prominent proximal portion, but its shaft tapers distally. Proximally the ulna articulates with the humerus and the radius. Distally it contacts the carpus or wrist. The **trochlear notch** is the deep semicircular surface for articulation with the trochlea of the humerus. The **olecranon** is the squared process extending proximal to the trochlear notch. It is the site of insertion of the tendon of the triceps brachii muscle. The **coronoid process** extends anteriorly from the distal base of the trochlear notch. The **radial notch**, for articulation with the head of the radius, is a curved surface that lies laterally along the base of the trochlear notch. The anterior part of the radial notch forms the lateral surface of the coronoid process. The roughened **interosseus crest** lies on the central portion of the anterolateral surface of the ulnar shaft. A sheet of connective tissue extends between the ulnar interosseus crest and the radial interosseus crest (see later) and helps stabilize the antebrachium. The ulna tapers distally and ends in the **styloid process**, which articulates with the lateral part of the carpus.

RADIUS

The **radius** (Figure 7.19) is the second bone of the antebrachium. In contrast to the ulna, the radius is more slender proximally and widens distally. As the radius articulates with the lateral part of the humerus and the medial part of the carpus, it crosses over the ulna when a cat assumes a normal standing position (i.e., the manus is *pronated*, meaning the palm faces the ground; the opposite position, with the palm directed up, is termed *supinated*). Proximally the radius consists of the head, which bears an oval, concave **fovea** that articulates with the capitulum of the humerus. The shape of the head allows the radius to rotate on the capitulum. Immediately distal to the fovea, the head bears a smooth, narrow strip, the **articular circumference**, that articulates with the radial notch of the ulna. The **neck** of the radius is a short segment between the head and the **bicipital tuberosity**, onto which the tendon for the biceps brachii muscle inserts. The roughened **interosseus crest** lies distally from the tuberosity on the medial edge of the shaft.

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

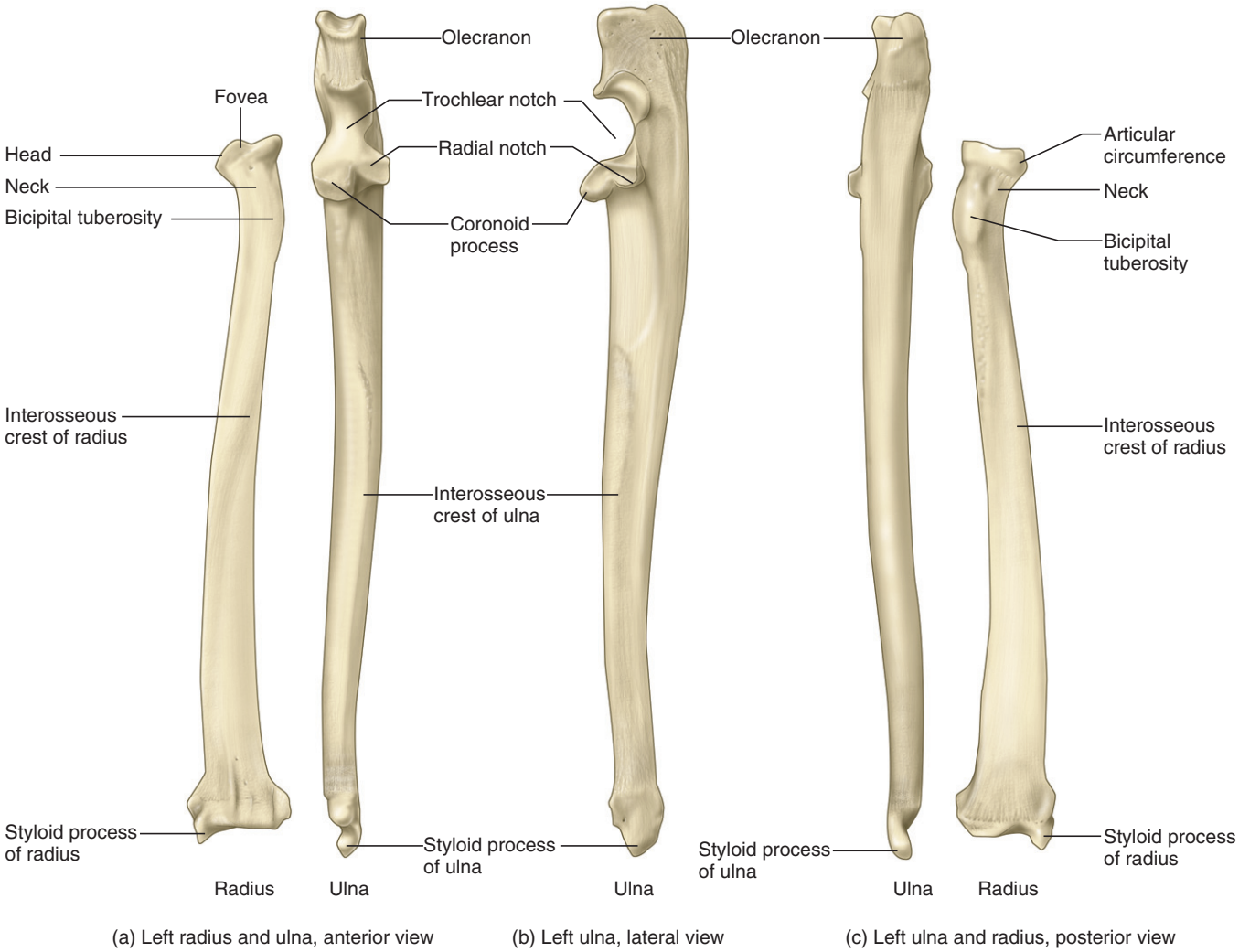


FIGURE 7.19 Bones of the left antebrachium of the cat; (a) radius and ulna in anterior view, (b) ulna in lateral view, and (c) radius and ulna in posterior view.

The distal end of the radius has a small articular surface for the ulna medially that allows the radius to turn on the ulna. The distal surface has a large, concave surface that articulates with the scapholunar bone of the wrist. Note the two grooves on the anterior surface for passage of extensor tendons, and the short **styloid process** projecting distally from the medial surface of the radius.

MANUS

The manus (Figure 7.20) includes three portions: the **carpus** (wrist), **metacarpus**, and **phalanges** in proximal to distal order. The cat has five **digits** (fingers), each of which is formed by a **metacarpal** and phalanges. The carpus consists of seven small, irregularly shaped bones set in two rows. In medial to lateral order, the proximal row consists of the **scapholunar** and **cuneiform**, with the **pisiform** projecting from the ventral surface of the cuneiform (and thus not visible in Figure 7.20); the distal row consists of the **trapezium**, **trapezoid**, **magnum**, and **unciform**. These bones articulate distally with the **metacarpals**. Note how the bones of the carpus and the metacarpals are arranged in an interlocking pattern that restricts motion.

The metacarpals are included in the palm of the manus. Of the five metacarpals, metacarpal 1 is the most medial and shortest, being less than half the length of metacarpals 2 through 5. Each metacarpal consists of a base proximally, a shaft, and a head distally. Digit 1 has only the proximal phalanx, followed by the ungual phalanx, which bears a large claw. Digits 2 through 5 each have three segments, the proximal, intermediate, and ungual phalanges; the latter also bear large claws.

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

Hind Limb

PELVIS

The pelvis or hip consists of paired **innominate** bones (Figure 7.21) that articulate with each other ventrally at the **pelvic symphysis** and with the sacrum dorsally. Examine a mounted specimen, and note the position and orientation of the innominate. Each innominate is composed largely from three bones, the **ilium**, **ischium**, and **pubis**, although a fourth center of ossification, the **acetabular** bone, makes a small contribution. These bones are firmly fused together in the adult. Examine an innominate bone in lateral view and note the large ventral opening, the **obturator foramen**. Locate the **acetabulum**, the deep socket that receives the head of the femur (see later).

The ilium consists of a **body**, near the acetabulum, and an anterodorsally projecting **wing**. The **iliac crest** is the roughened, anterodorsal edge of the ilium. The rugose articular surface for the sacrum lies on the medial surface of the wing. The ischium extends posteriorly from the acetabulum and has an expanded termination, the **ischial tuberosity**. The pubis and the rest of the ischium are oriented ventromedially. Both bones contribute to the medial margin of the obturator foramen. Also, the ischium and pubis of the each side of the body meet to form, respectively, the **ischial** and **pubic symphyses**, which together form the pelvic symphysis. The acetabular bone forms the thin, medial part of the acetabulum.

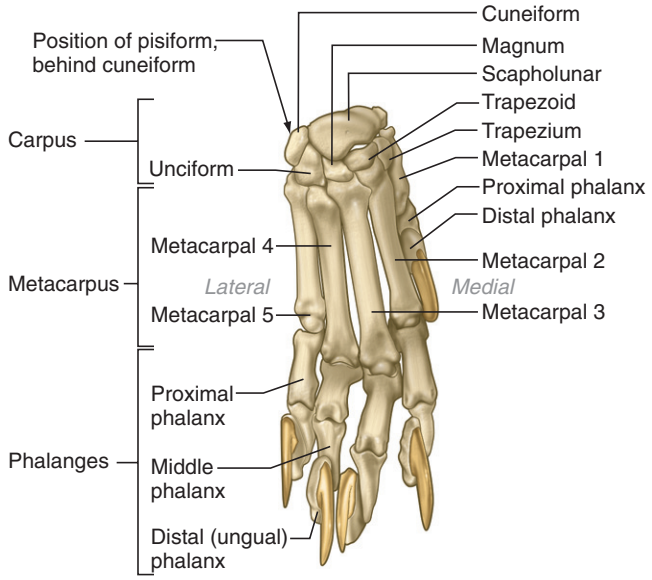


FIGURE 7.20 Right manus of the cat in dorsal view.

FEMUR

The **femur** (Figure 7.22) is the bone of the proximal part of the hind limb, or thigh. The **head** of the femur is a hemispherical surface that fits into the acetabulum of the innominate. The head is supported by the **neck**, which projects obliquely from the proximal end of the femur. Lateral to the head is the roughened, proximally projecting **greater trochanter**, which serves for attachments of

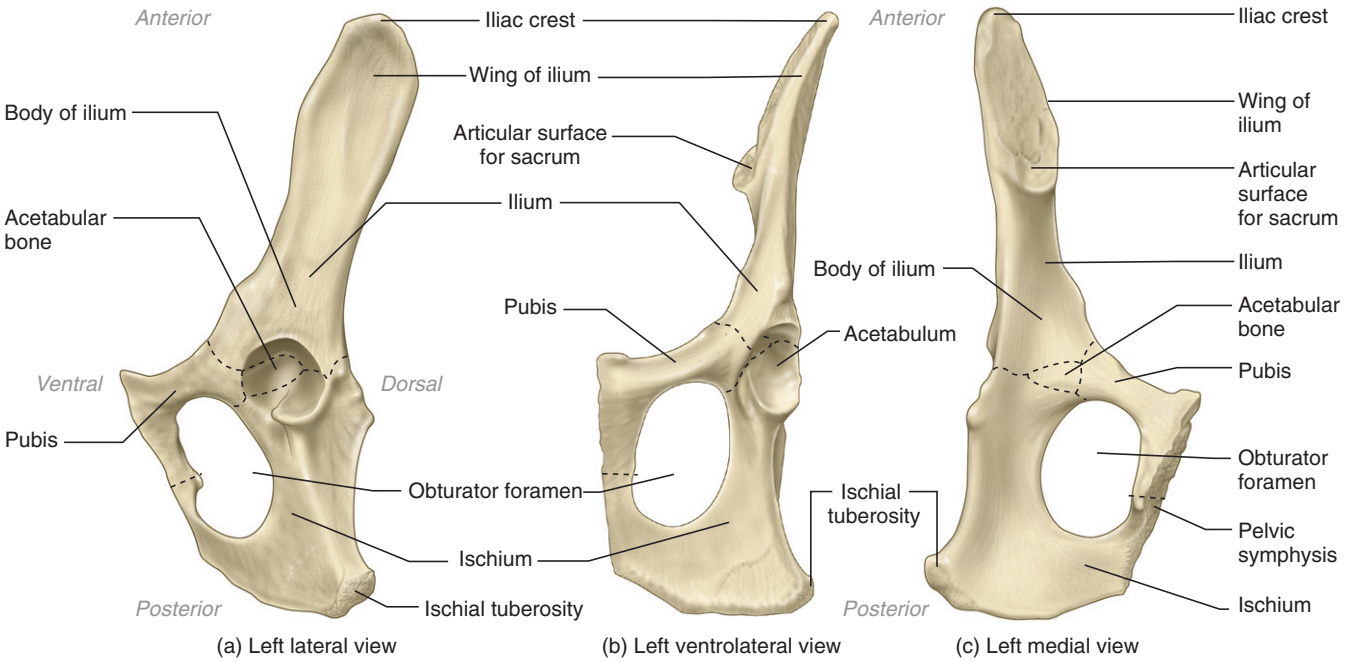


FIGURE 7.21 Left innominate of the cat in (a) lateral, (b) ventrolateral, and (c) medial views.

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

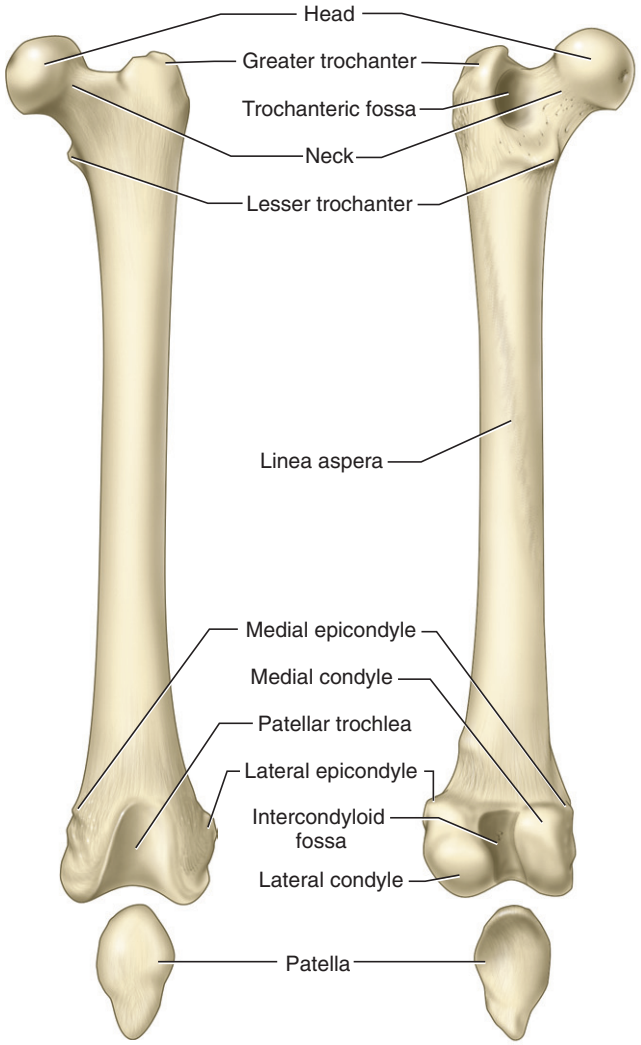


FIGURE 7.22 Left femur and patella of the cat in (a) anterior and (b) posterior views.

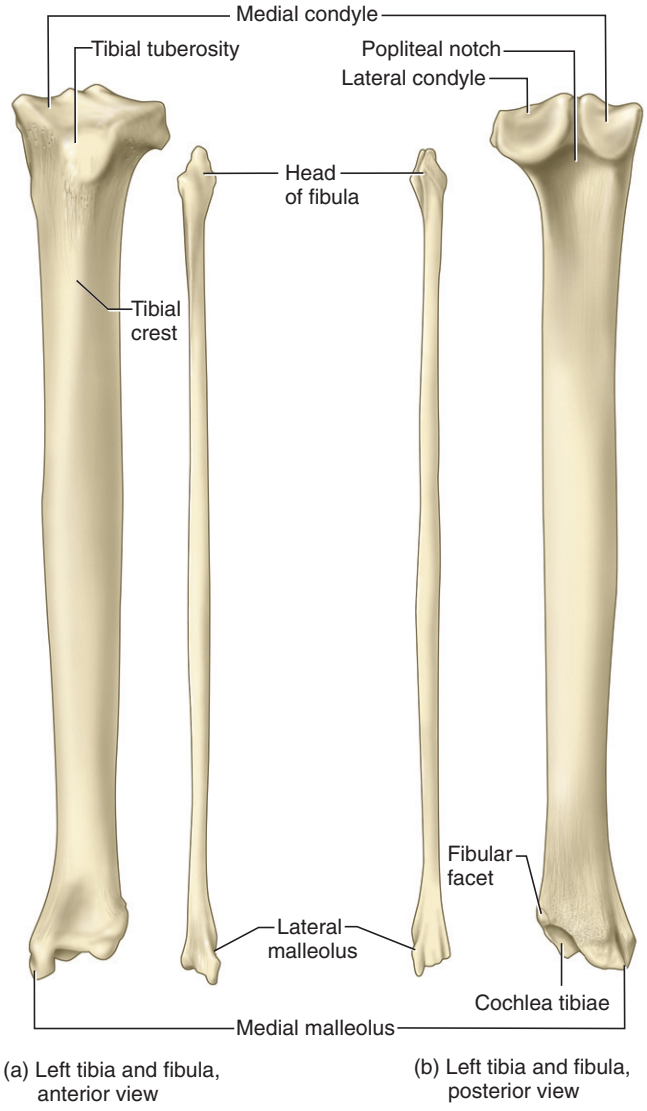


FIGURE 7.23 Left tibia and fibula of the cat in (a) anterior and (b) posterior views.

hip musculature. The deep depression posteriorly between the trochanter and head is the **trochanteric fossa**. On the posterior surface of the shaft, just distal to the head, is the **lesser trochanter**. The intertrochanteric line connects the two trochanters, but is especially defined along the posterior edge of the greater trochanter. The most prominent muscular insertion site on the diaphysis is the **linea aspera**, the roughened ridge that extends diagonally along the posterior surface of the femur.

The femur expands distally into the prominent and posteriorly projecting **lateral** and **medial condyles**. Each condyle bears a smooth, semicircular surface for articulation with the tibia. The **intercondyloid fossa** is the depression posteriorly between the condyles. The rugose areas for muscular attachment proximal to the condyles are the **lateral** and **medial epicondyles**. The **patellar trochlea**, for articulation with the patella, lies anteriorly between the condyles. It is a smooth, shallow trough oriented proximodistally.

PATELLA

The **patella** (Figure 7.22), or kneecap, is a small, tear-shaped sesamoid bone, with its apex directed distally. Its anterior surface is roughened. Posteriorly it bears a smooth, shallowly concave surface for articulation with the femur.

TIBIA

The **tibia** (Figure 7.23) is the larger and medial bone of the crus, or middle segment of the hind limb. Its

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

proximal surface bears **lateral** and **medial condyles** that articulate with the femur. Just distal to the lateral condyle, on the lateral surface and facing distally, is the small, nearly oval facet for the head of the fibula (see later). On the posterior surface of the tibia, between the condyles, is the **popliteal notch**. A small muscle, the popliteus, lies in the notch and is a flexor of the knee joint. The **tibial tuberosity**, for insertion of the patellar ligament, lies anteriorly. The **tibial crest** continues distally from the tuberosity along the shaft.

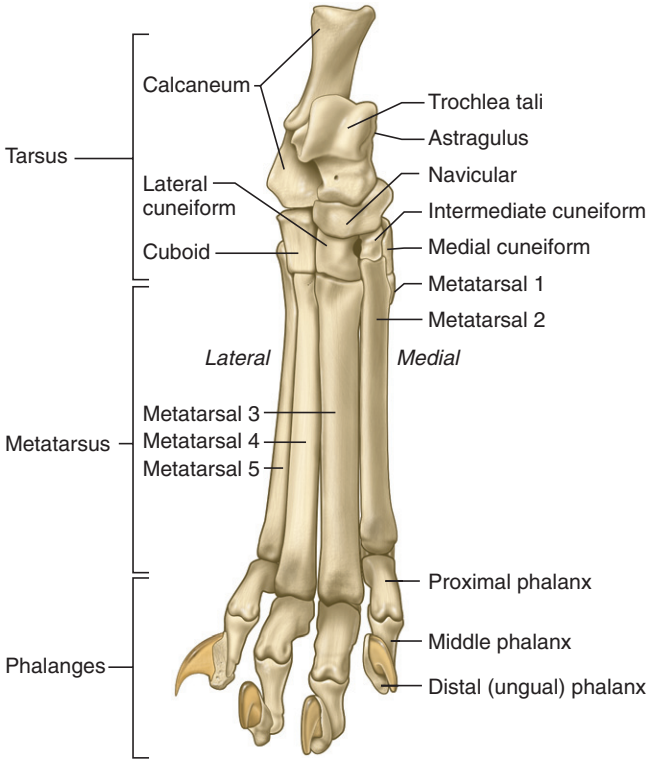
The distal end of the tibia has two articular surfaces. The large surface on the distal surface, the **cochlea tibiae**, is for the astragalus, the tarsal bone with which the pes articulates with the hind limb. Note how this facet consists of two sulci separated by a median ridge. This structure restricts motion at the ankle almost entirely to a fore and aft direction, producing flexion and extension. If available, manipulate the tibia and pes to observe this. The small, nearly triangular **fibular facet**, for articulation with the fibula, faces posterolaterally and is contiguous with the lateral part of the cochlea tibiae. The **medial malleolus** is the distal extension of the tibia's medial surface. It forms the medial protrusion of the ankle.

FIBULA

The **fibula** (Figure 7.23) is the slender, lateral, and shorter bone of the crus. The **head** is irregular and expanded. It bears a proximal facet for articulation with the tibia. The slender shaft widens distally. There are two distal facets, both toward the anterior half of the medial surface. The more proximal facet is for the distal articulation with the tibia. The distal facet articulates with the lateral part of the trochlea of the astragalus. The **lateral malleolus** projects distally from the posterolateral end of the fibula.

PES

The pes (Figure 7.24) consists of **tarsals**, **metatarsals**, and **phalanges**. There are seven tarsals, but the two most proximal bones, the **astragalus** and **calcaneum**, are much larger than the others. The astragalus is the medial bone. It articulates proximally with the tibia and fibula. Note again the form of the surface, or **trochlea tali**, for articulation with the tibia. The trochlea tali consists of medial and lateral keeled surfaces separated by a sulcus. The astragalus articulates ventrally with the calcaneum, which lies laterally. It is about twice as long as the astragalus and projects posteriorly as the heel. Distally the astragalus articulates with the **navicular**, while the calcaneum articulates with the **cuboid**. The navicular articulates distally with the **lateral**, **intermediate**, and **medial cuneiform** bones, and laterally with the cuboid. Note how the articulations among the tarsals and metatarsals are arranged to produce interlocking joints that tend to restrict movement. For example, the lateral cuneiform articulates with metatarsal III distally, but its medial surface articulates with both the intermediate cuneiform and metatarsal II. There are five metatarsals. The first is strongly reduced to a small nub that articulates with the medial cuneiform. The phalanges for digit 1 have been lost in the cat. The remaining metatarsals are stout, elongated elements and each articulates with a series of three phalanges, the proximal, intermediate, and ungual phalanges.



Right pes, dorsal view

FIGURE 7.24 Right pes of the cat in dorsal view.

Key Terms: Postcranial Skeleton

accessory process
acetabular
acetabulum
acromion process
angle
antebrachium (forearm)
anterior, dorsal, posterior borders of **scapula**
anticlinal vertebra
articular circumference
astragalus (talus)
atlantal foramen (plur. **foramina**; intervertebral foramen)
atlas
axis

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

bicipital groove
bicipital tuberosity
body of **ilium**
body of **sternum**
calcaneum (calcaneus)
capitulum of **humerus**
capitulum (head) of **rib**
carpus
caudal vertebrae
centra (sing. **centrum**)
cervical vertebrae
clavicle
cochlea tibiae
condyle
coracoid process
coronoid fossa
coronoid process
costal cartilage
costal demifacet
costal facet
cuboid
cuneiform (lateral, medial, intermediate)
deltoid ridge
dens
digits
femur
fibula
fibular facet
fovea
glenoid fossa
greater trochanter
greater tuberosity
head of **femur**
head of **humerus**
head of **radius**
hemal arches
hemal processes
humerus
iliac crest
ilium
infraspinous fossa
innominate (os coxa)
intercondyloid fossa
interosseus crest of **radius**
interosseus crest of **ulna**
intervertebral foramen
ischial symphysis
ischial tuberosity
ischium
lamina
lateral condyle
lateral epicondyle
lateral malleolus
lesser trochanter
lesser tuberosity
linea aspera
lumbar vertebrae
magnum
mammillary processes
manubrium
medial condyles
medial epicondyle
medial malleolus
metacarpals
metacarpus
metacromion process
metatarsals
navicular
neck of **femur**
neck of **radius**
neck of **rib**
neural arch
neural canal (vertebral canal)
neural process (spinous process)
obturator foramen
olecranon
olecranon fossa
patella
patellar trochlea
pectoral ridge
pedicle
pelvic symphysis
phalanges
pisiform
pleurapophyses
popliteal notch
postzygapophysis
prezygapophysis
pubic symphysis
pubis (pl., **pubes**)
radial fossa
radial notch
radius
rib
sacral foramina
sacral vertebrae
sacrum
scapholunar
scapula
scapular spine
shaft of **humerus** (diaphysis)
shaft of **femur** (diaphysis)
shaft of **fibula** (diaphysis)
shaft of **rib**
sternebrae
sternum
styloid process
subscapular fossa
supracondyloid foramen
supraspinous fossa

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

tarsals
thoracic vertebrae
tibia
tibial crest
tibial tuberosity
transverse foramina
transverse process
trapezium
trapezoid
trochanteric fossa
trochlea of **humerus**
trochlea tali of **astragalus**
trochlear notch of **ulna**
tuberculum
ulna
unciform
vertebrae
vertebral rib
vertebral arch
vertebral column
vertebrochondral rib
vertebrosternal rib
wing of **ilium**
xiphisternum
xiphoid cartilage

SECTION II: EXTERNAL ANATOMY

The body of the cat is covered almost entirely by **hair** and fur (together forming the pelage), a characteristic feature of mammals. Only the nose, **lips**, and thick pads of the feet are exceptions. The **head** and **trunk** are separated by a distinct **neck**, which allows considerable mobility of the head (Figure 7.25). Dorsally the trunk is termed the **dorsum**. Ventrally, it is subdivided into the **thorax** anteriorly and the **abdomen** more posteriorly. The **pelvis** is the region of the trunk associated with the hind limb, just anterior to the elongated **tail**.

On the head note the **pinnae** (sing. **pinna**), the mainly cartilaginous extension of the external ears. Upper and lower **palpebrae** (sing. **palpebra**) guard the large **eyes**. A third eyelid, the **nictitating membrane**, lies on the medial part of the eye. In life, it can be drawn laterally over the eye. The **nares** (sing., **naris**) are the external openings of the nose and are surrounded by a region of skin termed the **rhinarium**. The **mouth** is surrounded by lips. **Vibrissae** are stiff, tactile hairs or whiskers present mainly around the mouth and snout, but also over the eyes.

Each limb comprises three segments. In proximal to distal order, they are the **brachium**, **antebrachium**, and **manus** in the forelimb, and **thigh**,[1] **crus**, and **pes** in the

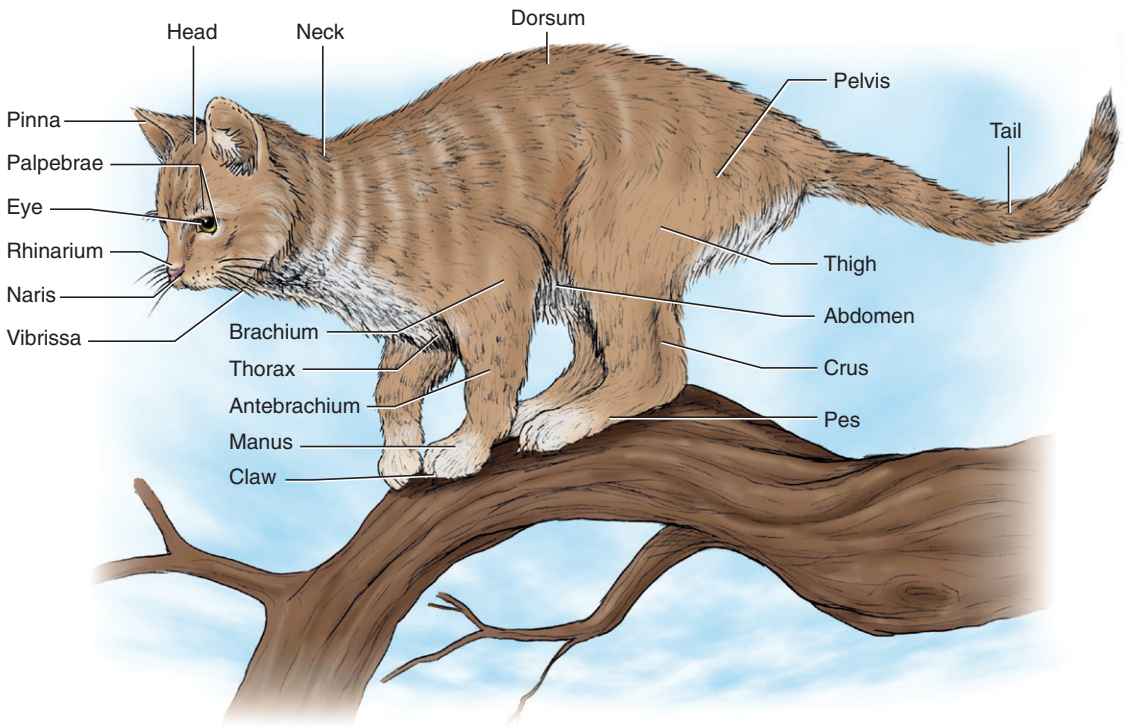


FIGURE 7.25 External features of the cat.

[1]The thigh may also be referred to as the femur, the latter also being the name of the bone within the region, as noted by Holmberger and Walker (2004).

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

hind limb. Each digit, except digit 1 of the pes, ends in a retractable **claw**. The walking surface of the forepaws and hindpaws each have epidermal thickenings of the skin termed **tori** (sing., **torus**) that act as pads during locomotion.

The **anus**, the posterior opening of the intestine, lies ventral to the base of the tail. The urinary and reproductive structures lie just anterior to the anus. In the male the **scrotum** is a sac-like projection that contains the testes. Anterior to it is the **penis**, which is probably retracted and thus not readily apparent. Its tip contains the common opening of the urogenital ducts. In the female the urinary and reproductive tracts open into the **urogenital aperture**.

Key Terms: External Anatomy

abdomen
antebrachium (forearm)
anus
brachium (arm)
claw
crus (shank)
dorsum (back)
eyes
hair
head
lips
manus
mouth
nares (sing., **naris**; nostrils)
neck (cervix)
nictitating membrane
palpebrae (sing., **palpebra**; eyelid)
pelvis
penis
pes
pinnae (sing., **pinna**)
rhinarium
scrotum
tail
thigh (femur)
thorax
tori (sing., **torus**)
trunk
urogenital aperture
vibrissae (sing., **vibrissa**; whisker)

SECTION III: MUSCULAR SYSTEM

Muscle Terminology

Tables 7.2 to 7.4 list the muscles covered here, including their areas of origin, insertion, and main actions. Muscles may be named according to several criteria. Often a name refers to the muscle's area of origin and area of insertion, usually but not always in this order. For example, the spinodeltoid extends from the spine of the scapula to the deltoid ridge of the humerus; the sternomastoid from the sternum to the mastoid process of the temporal bone of the skull; xiphihumeralis from the xiphoid process of the sternum to the humerus. A name may also refer to the main position of a muscle. For example, the subscapularis essentially occupies all the subscapular fossa of the scapula; the temporalis the temporal fossa of the skull. In other cases, names are descriptors of action, and shape or form. For example, the adductor femoris, which adducts the femur or thigh, is named for its action. Examples of names based on shape or form include the deltoid, which is generally triangular, shaped like the Greek letter delta (**Δ**); often, "-ceps" (from the Ancient Greek word for "head") appears in a muscle's name in reference to the number of heads that form the muscle—the triceps, for example, is formed by three heads, at least in humans, to which much of the terminology was first applied.

Connective Tissue and Fiber Direction

Various features and structures are associated with the muscles, but dissection and identification of the muscles requires knowing only the following features. When the skin has been removed, you will note that the muscles are covered by connective tissue. There are various kinds of connective tissue: **epimysium** covers or envelopes the surface of individual muscles; **loose connective tissue** lies between structures (such as muscles, nerves, or blood vessels) and helps fill the spaces between them; **fascia** is a very dense, sheet-like connective tissue associated in various ways with muscles; and **tendons** are dense connective tissue that connect muscles (mainly) to skeletal elements. When a tendon is very short, the muscle has a *fleshy attachment*. When it is longer, the muscle has a *tendinous attachment*. In many cases, the tendon is large and sheetlike; such a tendon is an **aponeurosis**, and the attachment is *aponeurotic*.

The visible fibers of a muscle will all tend, in the majority of cases, to have a very similar direction. It is very helpful to note fiber direction in distinguishing where one muscle ends and another begins, particularly when muscles overlap one other. This is an important clue in identifying muscles, as well as in knowing where to separate them.

Fiber direction, however, is often obscured by connective tissue, and thus it is essential that you remove the connective tissue until the direction is clearly revealed. You do not need to clean the whole surface of every muscle. It is sufficient to clear surfaces near where text directions indicate the edges of muscles should be. Most connective tissue can usually be picked away using

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

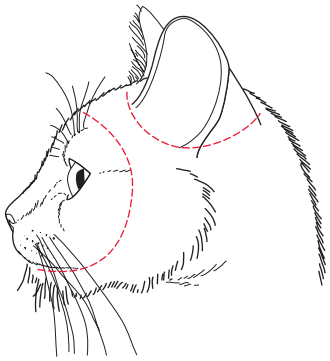
forceps and a dissecting needle. It is sometimes, but rarely, necessary to use a scalpel in nicking away the connective tissue on the surface of a muscle. Separating muscles can usually be accomplished by using a blunt probe to tearing through loose connective tissue. A scalpel should not (unless indicated) be used to cut between muscles. In clearing connective tissue, then, you will be mainly concerned with epimysium or loose connective tissue. You will not cut through aponeuroses or fascia, unless specifically directed to do so.

Key Terms: Muscular System

aponeurosis
epimysium
fascia
loose connective tissue
tendon

Subdivision of the Musculature

As for the dogfish and mudpuppy, the musculature of the cat may be subdivided into formal groups based on phylogenetic derivation. The major muscles can be identified to group based on embryology and innervation. However, the muscles of the cat have undergone considerable modification and are much more complex than in the dogfish,. Thus, the musculature from any formal group usually cannot be studied at the same time, because some muscles lie superficially and others more deeply. Also, in many cases muscles have evolved different functions than in their remote predecessors. For example, the trapezius is originally a branchiomeric muscle, but in the cat it functions as an appendicular muscle. For the cat, then, it is more practical, much as it was for the mudpuppy as well, to dissect and identify the muscles as they are observed in superficial and deep views. The musculature is organized under informal headings for convenience in dissection. This should help organize your dissection and study of the muscles.



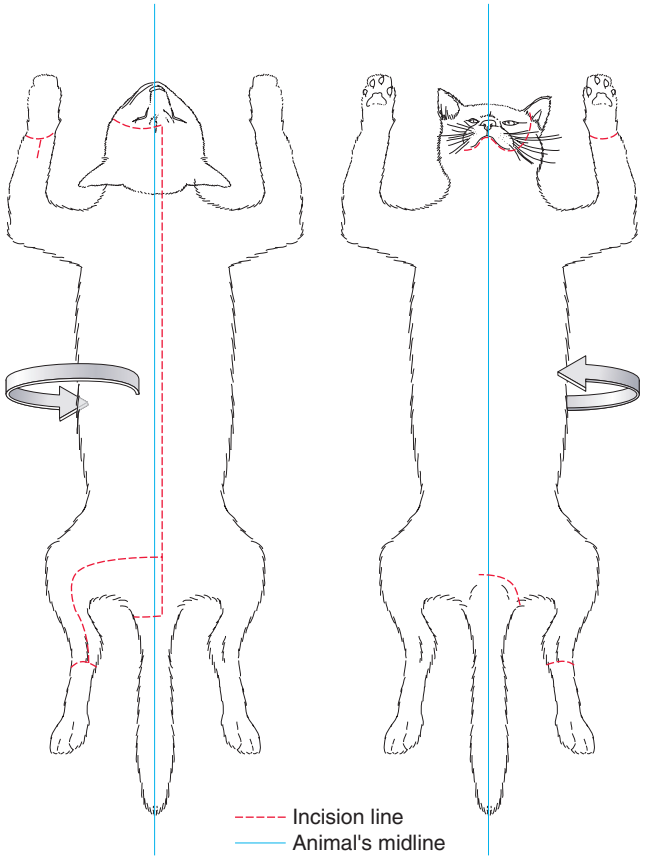


FIGURE 7.26 Diagrams showing the incision lines to be followed in skinning the cat.

Skinning the Cat

To examine the muscles and other internal structures, the cat will have to be skinned, but the skin should not be completely removed. It is best to remove the skin from only part of the cat and leave it as a flap that can be wrapped around the cat at the end of each dissection. This helps protect the muscles and other structures and prolongs preservation of your specimen.

Before beginning, read the instructions below with your specimen in front of you, and assess where you will cut through the skin. Determine the course of the incisions according to these instructions and Figure 7.26. Once skinning is completed, you will have a flap of skin still attached ventrally on one side of the chest, abdomen, and groin. For example, if your first longitudinal incision is on the right side of the middorsal line, then you will skin mainly the left side of the body, skinning the left arm and leg, and leaving the skin attached on the right side of the ventral surface of the cat. It does not matter which side of the body you choose to skin. However, avoid skinning a side if it has been damaged or had skin removed to facilitate injection of vessels. For example, in most specimens the skin on one side of the

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

throat will probably have been removed and the musculature damaged when the arteries and veins were injected. Sometimes, an area in the abdomen will have been skinned and cut to inject the hepatic portal system.

You need not make all the incisions before you begin skinning. Using a new scalpel blade, make a shallow longitudinal incision along the back, about 1 cm to one side of the neural processes of the vertebrae. As you cut, ensure that you have cut only through the skin by reflecting the edge of the flap. Extend the cut from near the base of the tail forward onto the back, neck, and head past the pinnae. At about the level of the eyes, make a sideways incision toward the other side eye (that is, cut back across and past the middorsal line), angling the incision toward the back of the eye. Continue to cut toward the back of the mouth and onto the underside of the lower jaw. Follow around the mandible to the other side. Return to the base of the tail and extend the incision back across the midline, around and under the tail. Continue forward, anterior to and then around the external genitalia. Continue the incision to just past the midventral line. Make an encircling cut around the forelimb, about midway along the antebrachium. Do the same for the hind limb, just past the ankle. Then make another incision, on the lateral surface of the hind limb, between this encircling incision and the longitudinal incision on the back.

Skinning can be accomplished by various techniques. For much of the back, for example, the skin is often readily removed, and a blunt probe, forceps, or your fingers will do the job of tearing through the fibrous connective tissue. In other areas, the skin adheres more strongly, and requires a scalpel. When using a scalpel, hold the blade parallel with the surface of the body and use short strokes; often, simply nicking the connective tissue will suffice, especially if you pull the skin flap away from the body to tense the connective tissue. You will encounter small nerves and blood vessels passing to the skin. Cut through them. As you skin the trunk, you will notice thin and narrow bands of muscles that adhere to the underside of the skin. These bundles represent the cutaneous maximus, one of the cutaneous muscles, a large sheet that covers much of the trunk and is especially prominent ventrally and near the axilla (armpit). This muscle should be removed with the skin, except near the axilla. In this region, it adheres strongly to the shoulder muscles and should be cut.

In a pregnant or lactating female, the **mammary glands** (see page 244) will be large, flattened, glandular masses in the thoracic and abdominal regions, and should be removed with the skin. If your specimen is a male, be careful in skinning the groin region. A large wad of fat, which contains the **spermatic cords** (see pages 189 and 241) that you will need to see later, lies beneath the skin in this region. Leave the wad of fat intact.

The skin on the neck and throat may be more difficult to remove. Dissect carefully so that you do not injure the vessels in the neck and throat. The skin of the head is very thick and difficult to remove. Use care so that you do not injure the various vessels, nerves, and ducts and the salivary glands that lie just below and beside the pinna. It is not worth trying to skin the pinna; simply cut through it, leaving a stump about 1 cm long. Another cutaneous muscle will be found over much of the head and neck. Remove it with the skin.

In skinning the arm and leg, tear the connective tissue with a probe or forceps to separate the skin and muscles, but try not to tear the skin itself. Proceed from both the trunk down the limb as well as from the encircling cut up the limb. The skin may adhere closely to the muscles. Dissect especially carefully along the anterolateral surface of the brachium. The **cephalic vein** (see Figure 7.27) lies here and should not be removed with the skin.

Appendicular Musculature

Much of the musculature that you will dissect includes the appendicular muscles; i.e., those associated with the forelimb and hind limb. Thus, if either or both ends of a muscle attach to the scapula (or pelvis) or more distal limb element, it can be considered an appendicular muscle. These muscles will be organized into superficial and deep portions and will be observed with the cat positioned so as to give you lateral and ventral views of its body.

Muscles of the Forelimb

Table 7.2 lists the forelimb muscles and indicates their origin, insertion, and main functions.

SUPERFICIAL FORELIMB MUSCLES: LATERAL VIEW (FIGURE 7.27)

Examine the cat in lateral view. Identify the large, white **lumbodorsal fascia** covering the back in the lumbar region. The fascia actually is composed of two main sheets of tough connective tissue, one above the other. The **latissimus dorsi** is the wide muscle that originates mainly from the lateral margin of the fascia. Its fibers pass anteroventrally and converge toward the axillary region. It pulls the humerus posterodorsally. The muscle emerging from under the latissimus dorsi and extending onto the abdomen is the **external oblique** (see later).

Anterior to the latissimus dorsi are three trapezius muscles. The most posterior is the triangular **spinotrapezius**, which draws the scapula posterodorsally. From their middorsal origin, the fibers of the spinotrapezius pass anteroventrally and converge toward the scapular spine. Next anteriorly is the **acromiotrapezius**. It is

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

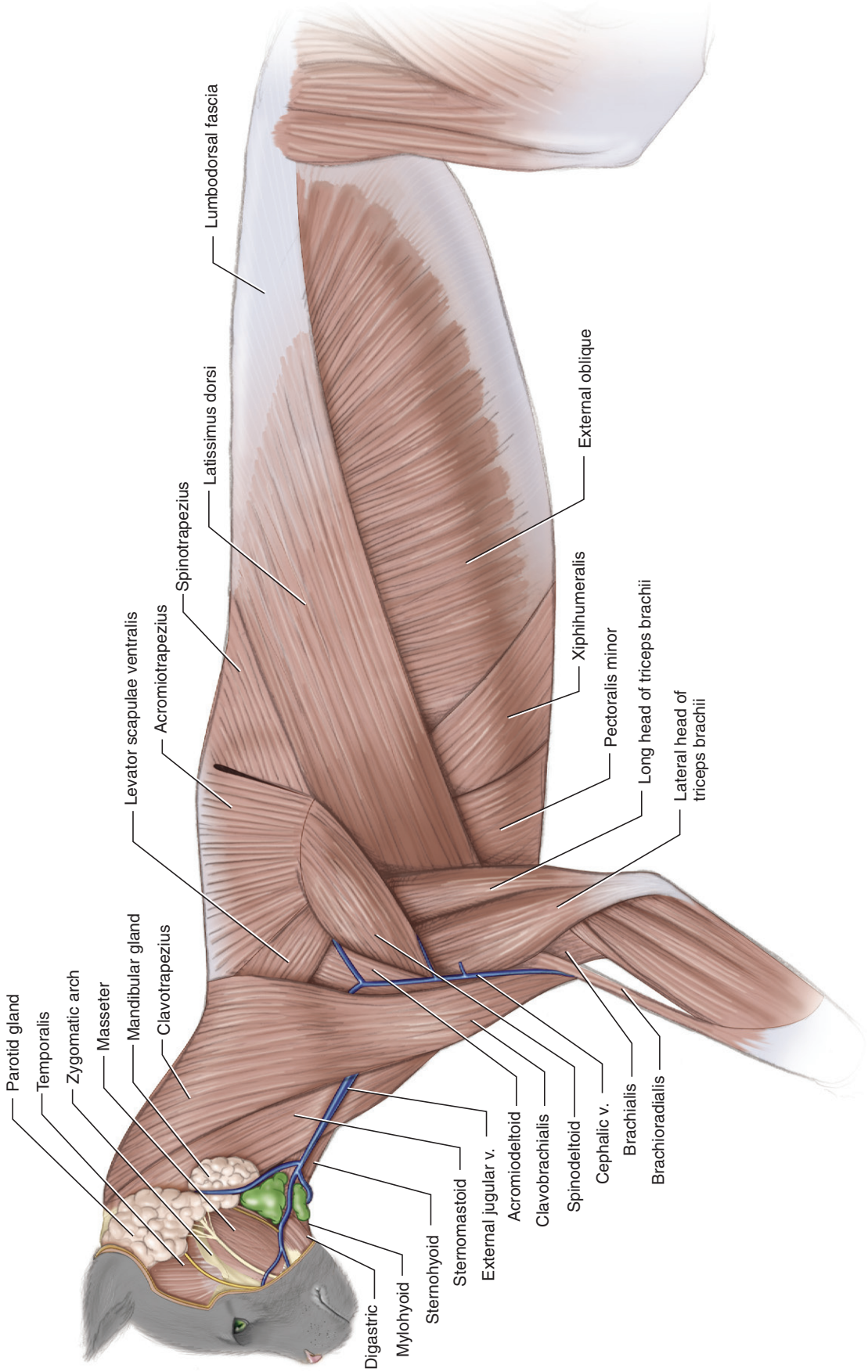


FIGURE 7.27 Muscles of the cat in lateral view.

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

wider, but very thin. Its fibers fan out from their insertion along the scapular spine toward the middorsal line, but do not extend all the way to the middorsal line. Instead, they attach to a thin aponeurosis. The acromiotrapezius can stabilize the scapula or pull it toward the dorsal midline. The most anterior trapezius muscle is the **clavotrapezius**, which covers most of the neck laterally and pulls the scapula anterodorsally. It is a wide muscle that originates from the neck middorsally, extending from just behind the skull to the acromiotrapezius. Its fibers pass almost directly ventrally toward the front of the shoulder. In mammals with a well-developed clavicle, the clavotrapezius inserts on the clavicle. As the clavicle is greatly reduced in the cat, however, the clavotrapezius inserts partly on the clavicle and partly onto another muscle, the **clavobrachialis**, which continues ventrally to insert on the ulna. Actually, a raphe (a narrow band of collagen fibers to which muscle fibers may attach), as well as the clavicle, separates these muscles; as their fibers appear to be continuous across the raphe, they seem to form a single muscle. The clavicle is embedded in the musculature but may be discerned by palpation (see later).

The **sternomastoid** lies anterior to the clavotrapezius. It is not an appendicular muscle, but should be identified at this point. It extends from the mastoid process of the skull (see Section I), just posterior to the ear, along the anterior margin of the clavotrapezius, but then veers medially to insert on the sternum. The sternomastoid will be considered again later. For now, note the **parotid** and **mandibular glands**, also considered in detail later, that lie on its anterior part, and that the muscle is crossed by the large **external jugular vein**.

Examine the musculature of the shoulder and forelimb in lateral view. The **cephalic vein** (Figure 7.27) lies on the anterolateral surface of the brachium. The **spinodeltoid** muscle extends anteroventrally from the scapular spine, arising at the insertion of the acromiotrapezius. Its anterior end passes deep to the triangular **acromiodeltoid**. These muscles are flexors and lateral rotators of the humerus. The narrow **levator scapulae ventralis**, lying dorsal to the acromiodeltoid, extends anterodorsally and then passes deep to the posterior margin of the clavotrapezius. The **long head** of the **triceps brachii** covers the brachium posteriorly, while the **lateral head** of the triceps covers the brachium laterally. Separate the edge of the spinodeltoid from the triceps and note that these heads extend proximally, deep to the spinodeltoid. The **medial head** of the triceps is discussed later. All three heads insert on the olecranon process of the humerus and extend the antebrachium.

Note again the position of the cephalic vein. Distally, it crosses the clavobrachialis, whereas proximally it lies on the acromiodeltoid, and then curves anteriorly, deep to the clavotrapezius. Lift the posterior margin of the clavotrapezius, just anterior to the acromiodeltoid, and cut through the connective tissue, fat, and nerves that you encounter. Continue to separate this muscle and the clavobrachialis from the underlying musculature. As you do so, you will see the posteriorly oriented fibers of the pectoral muscles (see later) inserting on the humerus.

Working dorsally, continue to separate the clavotrapezius, where the levator scapulae ventralis passes deep to its margin. It is fairly easy to free the muscle here, but work carefully anterior to the acromiodeltoid. The clavicle is present in this region, and you should avoid injuring the **cleidomastoid** (Figure 7.28), which attaches on the clavicle. Palpate for the clavicle. Once you identify its position, stop dissecting the clavotrapezius.

SUPERFICIAL FORELIMB MUSCLES: VENTRAL VIEW (FIGURE 7.28)

The pectoralis muscles, which draw the humerus toward the midventral line, lie superficially on the ventral surface of the thorax. Examine them in ventral view with the brachium held laterally. As a whole, this musculature is a triangular mass extending, on each side, from the ventral midline to the humerus. Carefully pick away at and clear connective tissue covering the muscles on one side to reveal four muscles. Once cleared, they can readily be distinguished by fiber direction. For the most part, the individual muscles are arranged in layers, one atop the other, and tend to adhere strongly to each other. Thus, do not attempt to separate the muscles by cutting them at their margins. Instead, work with a probe and needle to separate the muscles parallel to their surfaces. You do not need to separate each muscle completely; only go far enough to get an idea of the depth and extent of each.

The most superficial muscle is the **pectoantebrachialis**, a thin, narrow, anterior muscle that extends laterally. The **epitrochlearis** (which is not one of the pectorals) is a thin muscle covering the surface of the brachium posterior to the pectoantebrachialis. The epitrochlearis attaches to the olecranon of the ulna and thus extends the antebrachium. The **pectoralis major**, which may be subdivided in two portions, lies dorsal to the pectoantebrachialis. The more anterior part extends laterally and is covered almost entirely by the pectoantebrachialis (except for its anteriormost part, which is exposed in ventral view). The posterior part of the pectoralis major extends obliquely, with its fibers passing anteriolaterally from the midline.

The **pectoralis minor** is the muscle lying dorsal and posterior to the pectoralis major. The pectoralis minor of the cat is larger than the pectoralis major, but the names are derived from human terminology, in which the pectoralis major is indeed larger. The fibers of the pectoralis minor extend even more obliquely than those of the major as they converge toward the proximal half of the humerus. The fourth muscle is the **xiphihumeralis**, a

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

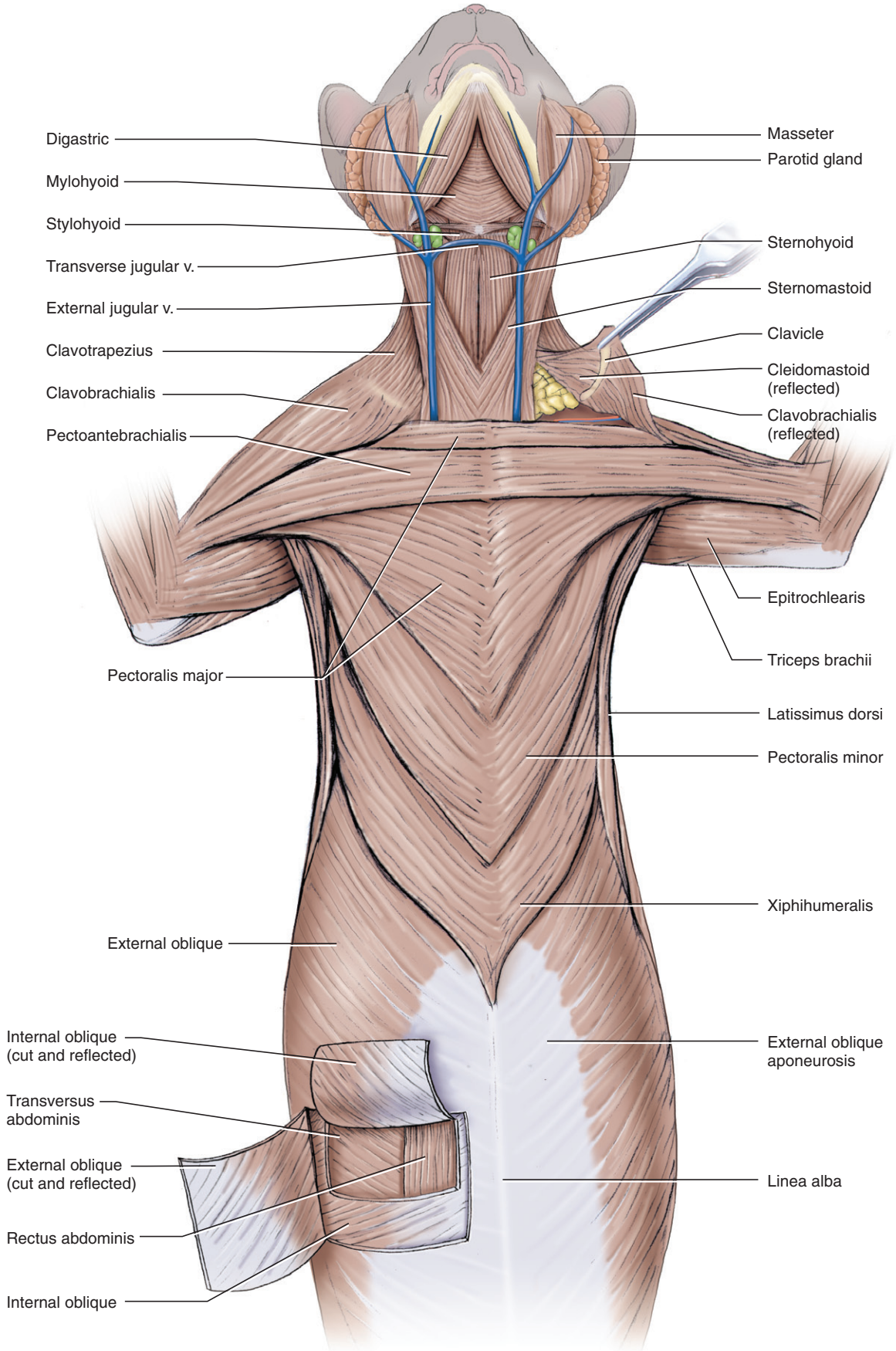


FIGURE 7.28 Muscles of the cat in ventral view.

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

long, thin, and narrow muscle that lies posterior and dorsal to the pectoralis minor. For the most part, the xiphihumeralis lies along the pectoralis minor posteriorly and attaches to the xiphisternum and xiphoid cartilage, which give it part of its name.

You have already noted how the fibers of latissimus dorsi converge toward the axilla. Also note that the latissimus dorsi and the pectoralis minor adhere to one another. Carefully separate these muscles by picking away at the connective tissue that binds them, using a needle and forceps. If necessary, use a scalpel to cut them apart.

Identify the medial edge of the clavotrapezius along the neck and follow it posteriorly until it abuts against the anterior margin of the pectoralis musculature (Figure 7.28). From about this point, the muscle becomes the clavobrachialis, and its margin is bound tightly to the pectoralis major. Beginning medially, separate these muscles. You will soon be able to lift the clavobrachialis and discern the deeper part of the pectoralis, which passes diagonally beneath the clavobrachialis. You should now be able to separate the latter from the pectoralis much more easily.

Return to the medial margin of the clavotrapezius. Lift and separate it from the underlying musculature. You will uncover the cleidomastoid, mentioned earlier, which passes from the clavicle toward the skull. Probe deep to the sternomastoid to discern its course. Separate as much of the cleidomastoid from the clavotrapezius, but work delicately near the clavicle: These muscles attach to the clavicle in close proximity, and dissection often causes damages. Continue to pick away the fat and tough connective tissue along the medial margin of the clavotrapezius, being careful not to injure the external jugular vein. Also work deep and medial to the cleidomastoid. You should be able to separate and lift the clavotrapezius, clavobrachialis, and cleidomastoid as a unit from the underlying muscles. Clean the connective tissue and fat from the bend of the elbow, being careful not to injure the cephalic vein or the slender **brachioradialis** (Figure 7.27), which supinates the manus, which lies along its anterior edge.

DEEP FORELIMB MUSCLES: LATERAL VIEW (FIGURE 7.29)

Return to the levator scapulae ventralis. Remove the fat between it and the clavotrapezius, clean away the connective tissue that covers it (i.e., the part deep to the clavotrapezius), and follow it anteriorly as it passes from the scapula toward the skull. Clean away connective tissue deep to the levator and separate it from the underlying muscles. Once you have isolated the levator, you should easily be able to remove fat and connective tissue from the anterior margin of the acromiotrapezius and free the muscle from the underlying musculature. Continue posteriorly and separate the spinotrapezius from underlying muscles. Then cut through the middle of the trapezius muscles, at right angles to the fibers, and reflect their ends.

Examine the anterior part of the latissimus dorsi beneath the spinotrapezius, and then cut the latissimus about 3 cm posterior to the brachium and reflect it. Clean off the connective tissue from the underlying musculature. Examine the muscles on the lateral surface of the scapula. The **supraspinatus** fills the supraspinous fossa, while the **infraspinatus** occupies the infraspinous fossa. These muscles insert on the greater tuberosity of the humerus. The supraspinatus extends the humerus, and the infraspinatus rotates it laterally. The **teres major** arises from the scapula, posteroventral to the infraspinatus. It inserts medially on the humerus, flexing and medially rotating it. Follow the long head of the triceps as it passes deep to the spinodeltoid and infraspinatus and find the **teres minor**, which flexes and laterally rotates the humerus. It lies along the anteroventral margin of the infraspinatus, from which it is initially difficult to distinguish. In Figure 7.29 the spinodeltoid is shown as cut and reflected to expose the teres minor, but it is not necessary to cut the spinodeltoid.

Pull the dorsal border of the scapula laterally and examine the muscles in dorsal view. The fibers of the **rhomboideus** extend anteromedially between the dorsal border of the scapula and the middorsal line. This muscle pulls the scapula toward the vertebral column. The **rhomboideus capitis**, extending separately as a narrow band toward the back of the skull, rotates and pulls the scapula anteriorly. The rhomboideus capitis lies on the surface of the **splenius** (see later), a large, flat muscle covering the neck dorsolaterally. Look ventral to the rhomboideus and note the **serratus ventralis**. It is the large muscle composed from various slips that extend between the scapula and thorax. The slips arise from the ribs and converge to insert on the vertebral border of the scapula. The serratus ventralis will be considered again later.

DEEP FORELIMB MUSCLES: LATERAL VIEW WITH FORELIMB ABDUCTED (FIGURE 7.30)

Earlier, the latissimus dorsi was separated from the pectoralis minor. Now separate the latissimus dorsi from the lateral thoracic wall. You will find considerable fat along with connective tissue adhering to the muscle. Remove the fat and connective tissue, but do not injure the blood vessels and nerves in the axilla. At first the shoulder region will not be apparent, but it can be palpated. As you pick away tissue, the scapula and its associated musculature will come into view. When you have cleaned the musculature associated with the scapula, pull the scapula laterally to see a series of strap-like muscular slips fanning out to the thorax from the scapula. These slips are part of the serratus ventralis.

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

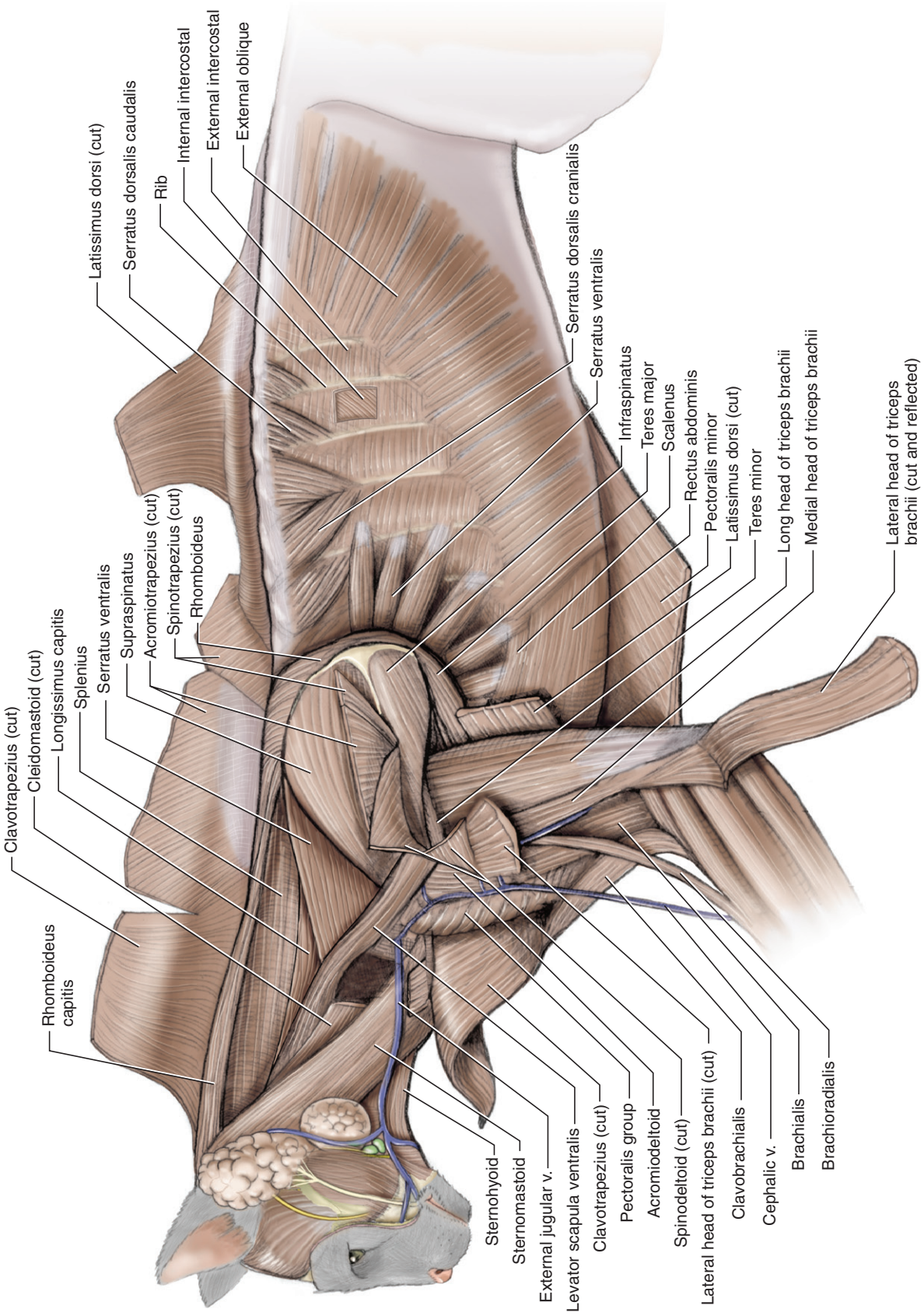


FIGURE 7.29 Deeper muscles of the cat in lateral view.

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

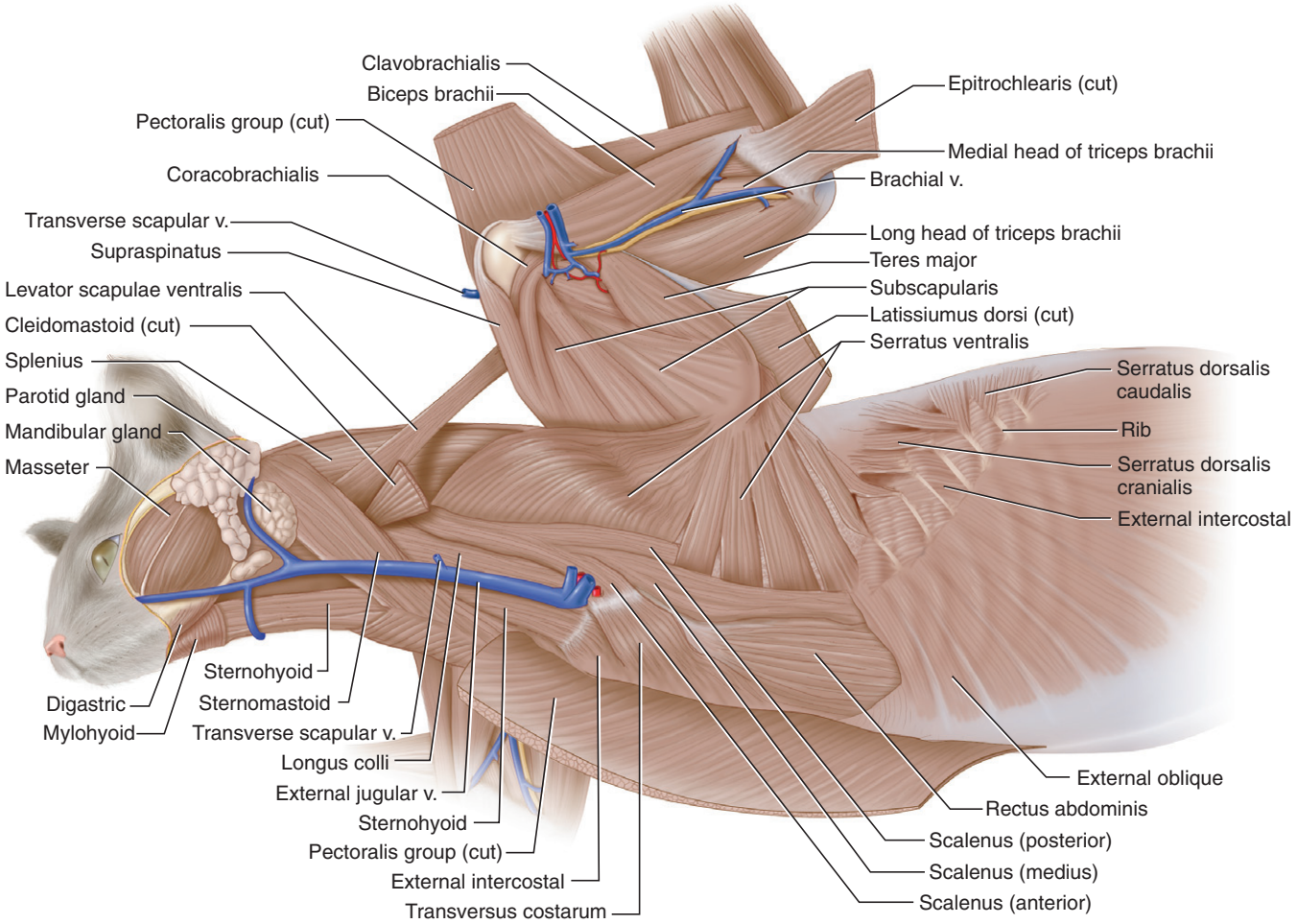


FIGURE 7.30 Deeper muscles of the cat in lateral view, with forelimb abducted.

Using scissors and beginning posteriorly, make an anteroposterior cut through the pectoralis muscles about 1 cm to one side of the midline. Work your way first through the xiphihumeralis and pectoralis minor. As you do so, lift the musculature and clean away connective tissue beneath it to ascertain that you are cutting through pectoralis musculature only. As you approach the pectoantebrachialis, lift the musculature and look for vessels and nerves passing out of the thorax and toward the shoulder. They may be embedded in some fat. Do not injure the vessels or nerves. The most apparent vessel is the **axillary vein**, a large vein injected with blue latex. It is accompanied by the axillary artery. These vessels quickly branch into various smaller vessels. The various large nerves are part of the brachial plexus.

Continue cutting through the pectoralis major and then reflect the flaps, removing the connective tissue that binds the xiphihumeralis and pectoralis minor to the thorax, so that you can reflect the pectoral musculature completely away from the thoracic wall. Then delicately clean away connective tissue and fat from around the vessels and nerves. The nerves appear as shiny, whitish strands (some rather large) passing toward the shoulder and brachium. Most lie dorsal to the vessels, but some are anterior to them.

If the musculature has been properly cleaned, it should be easy to follow the external jugular vein posteriorly. At the level of the anterior part of the shoulder, it receives a large tributary, the **transverse scapular vein** (possibly already cut). The external jugular continues posteriorly and joins the smaller internal jugular vein to form the bijugular trunk. The latter, in turn, joins the subclavian vein, which is the continuation of the axillary vein as it passes from the axilla into the thorax (see also Figure 7.54). When you have identified these vessels, which continue onto the forelimb, cut through the vessels, as well as nerves, leaving stumps about 1 cm long emerging from the thorax.

Position the brachium as shown in Figure 7.30, and continue cleaning the medial surface of the shoulder as well as the thoracic wall. Also, pick away connective tissue surrounding the vessels as they enter the shoulder

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

musculature. Reidentify the latissimus dorsi, pectoralis muscles, and the serratus ventralis. Note how the fan-like arrangement of the serratus ventralis converges toward the dorsal border of the scapula. Note too that the posterior part of this muscle is clearly subdivided into separate slips, but its anterior fibers are arranged nearly as a continuous sheet.

The large muscle covering the medial surface of the scapula is the **subscapularis**. The fibers of its various bundles converge toward the apex of the scapula and insert on the lesser tuberosity of the humerus. It is an adductor of the humerus. The teres major initially appears as one of these bundles passing along the posterior border of the scapula. Anteriorly, however, the separation is much clearer: Note how some of the vessels pass between the subscapularis and teres major. Carefully observe the muscles that cover the ventromedial region of the scapula. Most of the fibers belong to the subscapularis and converge toward the apex, but the small, strap-like **coracobrachialis**, about 0.5 cm in width, crosses against the direction of the fibers. It also adducts the humerus. In this view, the coracobrachialis lies just posterior to the origin of the **biceps brachii** (see next).

Examine the medial surface of the brachium. Cut through the epitrochlearis and the pectoral musculature (mainly pectoantebrachialis) covering the brachium, and reflect the ends to expose the muscles on the brachium. Clear the connective tissue. A large vessel, the **brachial vein**, which is a continuation of the axillary vein, should be prominently exposed. Dissect carefully near it to reveal the **brachial artery** (continuing from the axillary artery) and several nerves from the brachial plexus. The large muscle anterior to the vessels and nerves is the biceps brachii, and the muscle that lies posteriorly is the long head of the triceps, which has already been observed in lateral view. Dissect dorsally to the vessels and nerves, and push them aside to expose the **medial head** of the triceps. Follow the biceps brachii proximally toward its origin on the scapula and reidentify the coracobrachialis. The bicep inserts distally on the radius and is a flexor of the antebrachium.

Key Terms: Muscles of the Forelimb

(See Table 7.2 for synonyms.)

acromiodeltoid
acromiotrapezius
axillary vein
biceps brachii
brachial artery
brachial vein
brachioradialis
cephalic vein
clavobrachialis
clavotrapezius
cleidomastoid
coracobrachialis
epitrochlearis
external jugular vein
external oblique
infraspinatus
latissimus dorsi
levator scapulae ventralis
lumbodorsal fascia
mandibular gland
parotid gland
pectoantebrachialis
pectoralis major
pectoralis minor
rhomboideus
rhomboideus capitis
serratus ventralis
spinodeltoid
spinotrapezius
splenius
sternomastoid
subscapularis
supraspinatus
teres major
teres minor
transverse scapular vein
triceps brachii: lateral head; long head; medial head
xiphihumeralis

TABLE 7.2 Muscles of the Forelimb

Name	Origin	Insertion	Main Actions
Acromiodeltoid	Posterior margin of acromion of scapula	Lateral surface of spinodeltoid muscle	Flexes and rotates humerus laterally
Acromiotrapezius	Middorsal line from neural process of axis to 4th thoracic, by aponeurosis	Metacromion process and anterior half of spine of scapula	Adduct and stabilize scapulae
Biceps brachii	Small tubercle near dorsal margin of glenoid fossa of scapula, by tendon	Bicipital tuberosity of radius, by tendon	Flexes antebrachium

Continued

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

TABLE 7.2 *Continued*

Name	Origin	Insertion	Main Actions
Brachialis	Lateral surface of humerus	Lateral surface of ulna, just distal to semilunar notch	Flexes antebrachium
Brachioradialis	Midshaft of humerus	Styloid process of radius	Supinates manus
Clavobrachialis	Clavicle and raphe shared with clavotrapezius	Medial surface of ulna, just distal to semilunar notch	Flexes antebrachium
Clavotrapezius	Medial half of nuchal crest of skull and middorsal line up to neural process of axis	Clavicle and raphe shared with clavobrachialis	Draws scapula anterodorsally
Cleidomastoid	Mastoid process of temporal	Clavicle	Turns head when clavicle stabilized; draws clavicle anteriorly when head stabilized
Coracobrachialis	Coracoid process of scapula	Medial surface of proximal end of humerus	Adducts humerus
Epitrochlearis	Surface of latissimus dorsi	Olecranon process of ulna, by fascia	Extends antebrachium
Infraspinatus	Infraspinous fossa of scapula	Greater tuberosity of humerus	Rotates humerus laterally
Latissimus dorsi	Lumbodorsal fascia	Medial surface of proximal diaphysis of humerus	Draws humerus posterodorsally
Levator scapulae ventralis	Occipital bone and transverse process of atlas	Ventrally on metacromion and infraspinous fossa of scapula	Draws scapula anteriorly
Pectoantebrachialis	Manubrium of sternum	Fascia covering proximal surface of antebrachium	Adducts humerus
Pectoralis major	Anterior sternebrae	Pectoral ridge of humerus	Adducts humerus
Pectoralis minor	Body of sternum	Pectoral ridge of humerus	Adducts humerus
Rhomboideus	Posterior cervical and anterior thoracic vertebrae	Posterior part of dorsal border of scapula	Draws scapula toward vertebral column
Rhomboideus capitis	Medial portion of nuchal crest	Anterior part of dorsal border of scapula	Rotates and draws scapula anteriorly
Serratus ventralis cervicis	Transverse processes of 3rd to 7th cervical vertebrae	Medial surface of scapula, near dorsal border	Draws scapula anteroventrally
Serratus ventralis thoracis	Lateral surface of first 9 or 10 ribs	Medial edge of scapula, near dorsal border	Draws scapula ventrally, helps support trunk on forelimb
Spinodeltoid	Middle third of spine of scapula	Deltoid ridge of humerus	Flexes and laterally rotates humerus
Spinotrapezius	Middorsal line from neural processes of most thoracic vertebrae	Tuberosity of spine of scapula; fascia of supraspinatus and infraspinatus mm	Draws scapula posterodorsally
Subscapularis	Subscapular fossa of scapula	Lesser tuberosity of humerus	Adducts humerus
Supraspinatus	Suprapinous fossa of scapula	Greater tuberosity of humerus	Extends humerus
Teres major	Dorsal third of posterior border of scapula	Medial surface of humerus, by tendon in common latissimus dorsi	Flexes and medially rotates humerus
Teres minor	Posterior border of scapula, just distal to glenoid fossa	Greater tuberosity of humerus	Flexes and laterally rotates humerus
Triceps brachii		All 3 heads of the triceps brachii insert on the olecranon process of ulna by a common tendon	All 3 heads of the triceps brachii act to extend antebrachium
Lateral head	Deltoid ridge of humerus		
Long head	Posterior border of scapula, near glenoid fossa		
Medial head	Shaft of humerus		
Xiphihumeralis	Xiphoid process of sternum	Near distal border of bicipital groove of humerus	Adducts forelimb

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

Muscles of the Hind Limb

Table 7.3 lists the hind limb muscles and indicates their origin, insertion, and main functions.

SUPERFICIAL HIND LIMB MUSCLES: LATERAL VIEW (FIGURE 7.31)

The skin of the hind limb has already been removed. Carefully pick away the connective tissue and fat on the lateral surface of the hind limb and the base of the tail, but take care not to injure the fascia that covers the musculature. Considerable fat is present in the popliteal fossa, the depression posterior to the knee joint. Carefully clear this region. You may notice the oval popliteal lymph node, which is embedded within the fat.

Examine the musculature. The most conspicuous muscle of the thigh is the **biceps femoris**. This large muscle covers much of the posterior half of the thigh and is a main adductor and extensor of the thigh. It has a narrow origin dorsally from the ischial tuberosity but widens distally to insert by an aponeurosis on the patella and the proximal portion the tibia. The posterior portions of two deeper muscles, the **semitendinosus** and **semimembranosus**, are exposed posterior to the dorsal part of the biceps femoris.

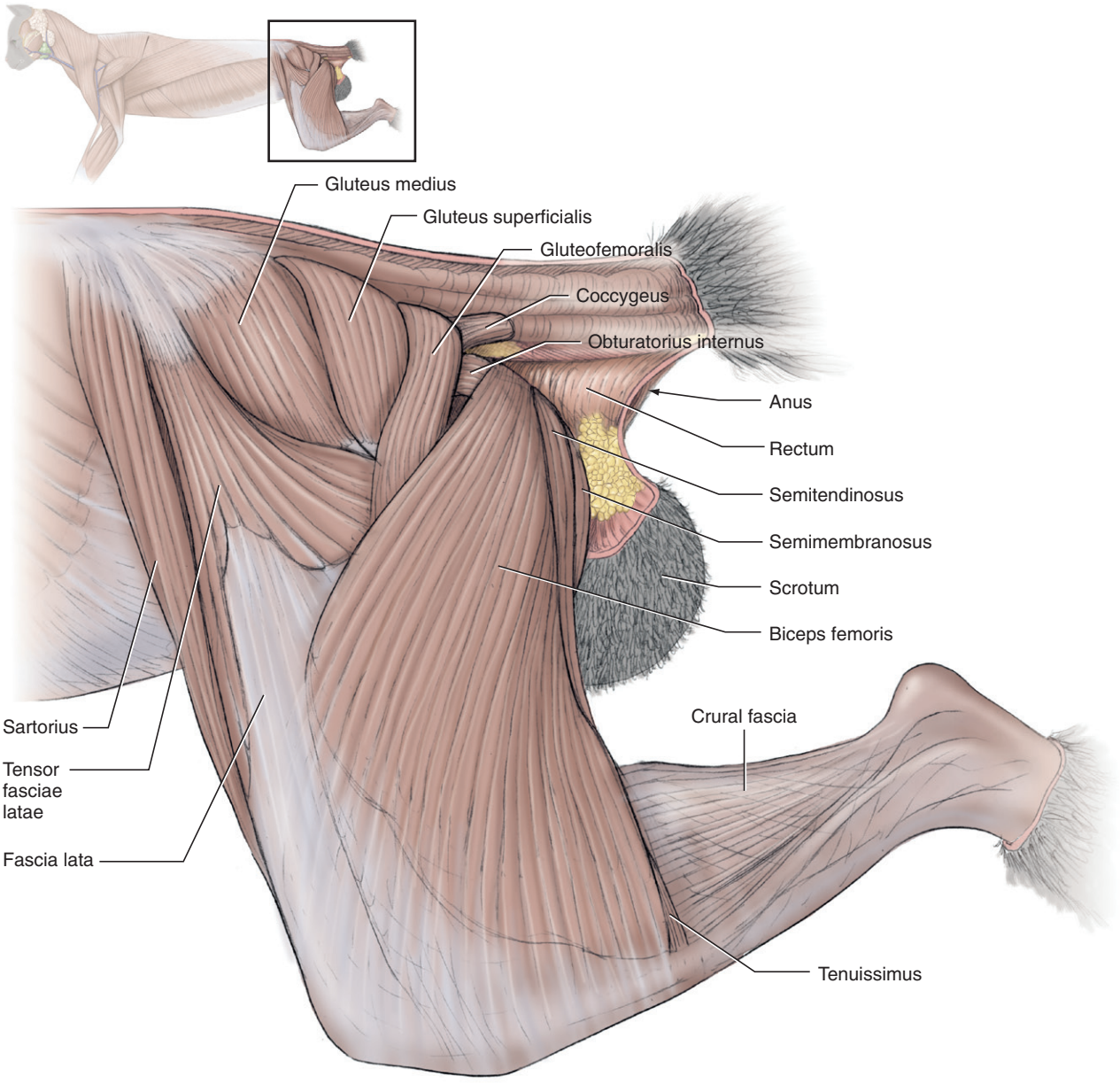


FIGURE 7.31 Superficial muscles of the hind limb of the cat in lateral view.

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

Next, identify the **sartorius**, which lies along the anterior edge of the thigh. In lateral view this muscle appears to be elongated and narrow, but its more extensive medial portion will be seen shortly. Posterior to the dorsal portion of the sartorius is the **gluteus medius**, which is covered by fascia. Carefully remove the fascia to uncover the muscle, as shown in Figure 7.31. Posterior to it is the smaller **gluteus superficialis**, followed by the **gluteofemoralis**. The latter is a strap-like muscle that continues distally, deep to the biceps femoris. The gluteal musculature generally functions in abducting the thigh. Extending between the origin of the biceps femoris and the posterior margin of the gluteofemoralis, identify the **obturatorius internus**. Dorsal to it, extending from beneath the posterodorsal margin of the gluteofemoralis to the ventral surface of the tail, is the **coccygeus**.

The **tensor fasciae latae**, a flexor of the thigh, is ventral to the gluteal musculature noted earlier. From its narrow dorsal origin, it fans out distally and inserts on the **fascia lata**, the tough membrane that extends toward the knee joint, anterior to the biceps femoris. The tensor fasciae latae is subdivided into a longer anterior portion and a triangular posterior portion. Trace the anterior portion as it extends deep to the sartorius and onto the anterior surface of the thigh.

The **tenuissimus** is a ribbon-like muscle that lies almost entirely deep to the biceps femoris. It will be exposed presently. Its very distal end, however, is exposed in lateral view along the posterodistal edge of the biceps femoris. Look for this exposed portion. It inserts by a short tendon that merges with that of the biceps femoris. When you have identified it, lift the posterior edge of the biceps femoris and gently scrape the loose connective tissue adhering to its deep surface to locate the rest of the tenuissimus. It extends dorsally and passes deep to the very dorsal portion of the gluteofemoralis (see Figure 7.33). It may serve as an extensor of the thigh or flexor of the crus, but its composition (a high number of muscle spindles) as well as size suggest that it may function as a tension sensor.

SUPERFICIAL HIND LIMB MUSCLES: MEDIAL VIEW (FIGURE 7.32)

Clear away connective tissue from the medial surface of the thigh, but leave the crural fascia for the time being. Avoid damaging vessels and nerves. Note again the wad of fat that lies between the body wall and the proximal surface of the thigh. In males the spermatic cords extend through this wad as they pass from the body wall to the testes. Dissect carefully to avoid injuring the spermatic cords. They are shown as having been dissected out in Figure 7.33, but you do not need to expose them to the same extent.

Once the surface of the thigh has been cleared of connective tissue, the full extent of the sartorius, already observed in lateral view, may be appreciated. It covers the anteromedial surface of the thigh. The large muscle on the posteromedial surface is the **gracilis** muscle, which flexes the crus and adducts the thigh. The distal portion of the semitendinosus is exposed just posterior to the gracilis. Distally the sartorius and gracilis converge and lie side by side, with the former partially covering the latter, as they extend toward the knee. Examine the triangular region formed between their proximal portions and the body wall. The **femoral artery** and **femoral vein** are the conspicuous vessels emerging from within the body cavity and extending distally. The small muscle just anterior (keep in mind that the limb is essentially parasagittal in position) to the very proximal end of these vessels is the **iliopsoas**, which flexes and rotates the thigh. The **femoral nerve** lies anterior to the femoral vessels and passes over the iliopsoas. Probe between the iliopsoas and sartorius to identify the **vastus medialis**, which will be exposed shortly. Posterior to the vessels is the **pectineus**, a small, triangular adductor of the thigh, followed by the larger **adductor longus**, and the much larger **adductor femoris**, much of which lies deep to the gracilis. The last two muscles are also adductors of the thigh (but see also Table 7.3).

Examine the vessels more closely. They will be discussed in more detail later, but it is worth noting the main branching patterns at this time. The femoral artery and vein are the main continuations of the **external iliac artery** and **external iliac vein**, which lie within the body cavity (see page 230). The femoral artery and vein are therefore the most conspicuous vessels on the medial surface of the thigh. However, the external iliac vessels branch just as they approach the body wall. The external iliac artery gives rise to the femoral artery and the **deep femoral artery**, and the external iliac vein is formed by the confluence of the femoral vein and the **deep femoral vein**. It is these four vessels that perforate the body wall onto the thigh. As noted, the femoral vessels are easily observed, but the deep femoral vessels may also be identified. Pick away the body musculature adjacent to the femoral artery, working your way toward the abdominal midline. The much smaller deep femoral artery, extending posteromedially, will be exposed. In many individuals, one of its branches is the **external pudendal artery**, which extends medially into the wad of fat in the groin region to supply the external genitalia. The **external pudendal vein** follows the artery. In males the artery and vein pass dorsal to the spermatic cord. Follow the deep femoral artery, after the origin of the external pudendal artery, as it passes into the musculature. The deep femoral vein follows the artery but lies more deeply. Move the artery to expose the vein.

Return to the femoral artery and femoral vein. The **lateral circumflex artery** and the **lateral circumflex vein**

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

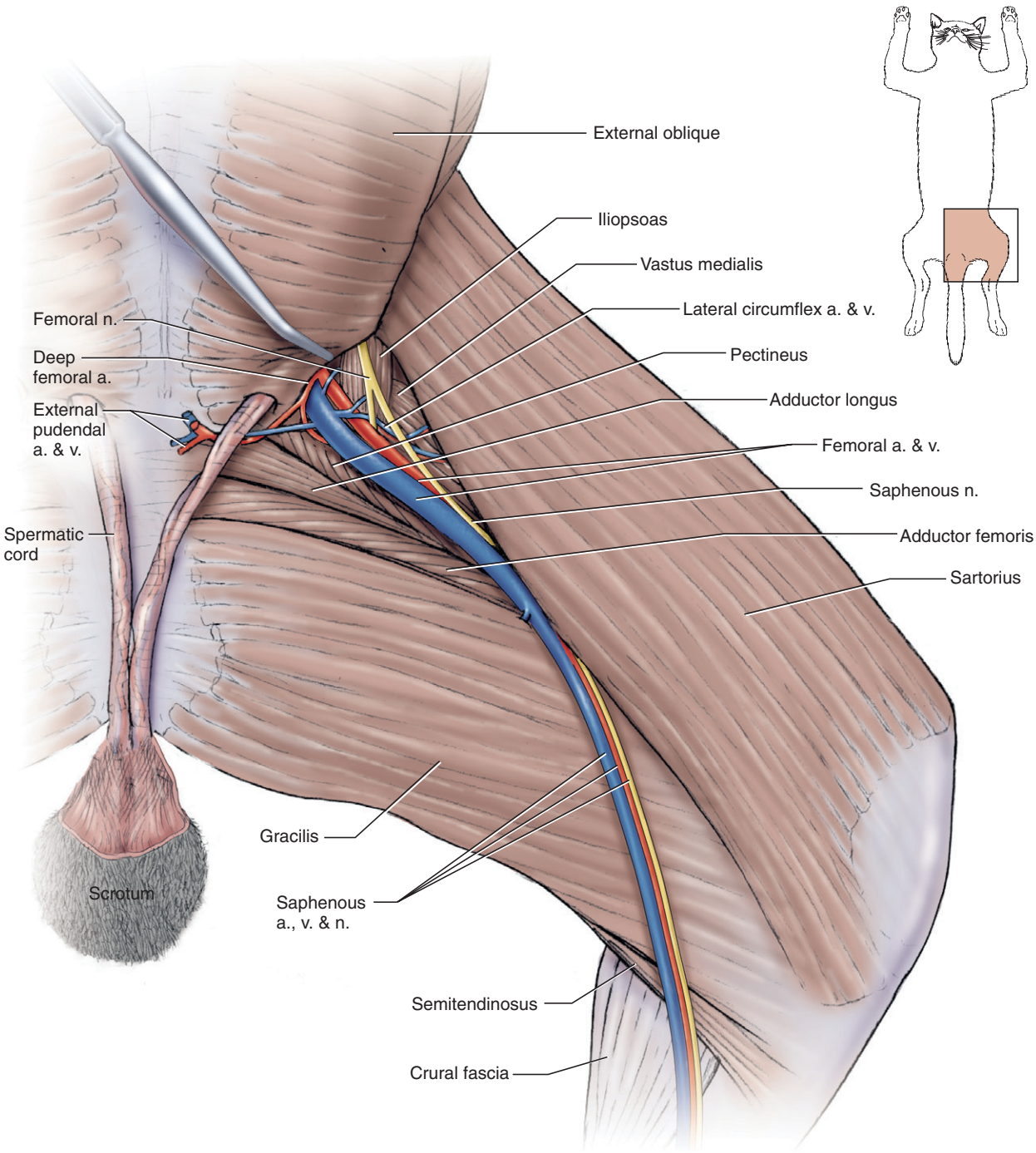


FIGURE 7.32 Superficial muscles of the hind limb of the cat in medial view.

branch from these vessels a short distance distally. Note the **saphenous nerve** that accompanies the vessels. More distally, nearer the knee, the **saphenous artery** and **saphenous vein** branch from the femoral vessels and extend distally on the surface of the crural fascia. The saphenous nerve accompanies them.

DEEP HIND LIMB MUSCLES: LATERAL VIEW (FIGURES 7.33–7.35)

Examine the lateral surface of the thigh. Continue to scrape away the connective tissue and fat from between the deep surface of the biceps femoris (working from both its anterior and posterior margins) and the

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

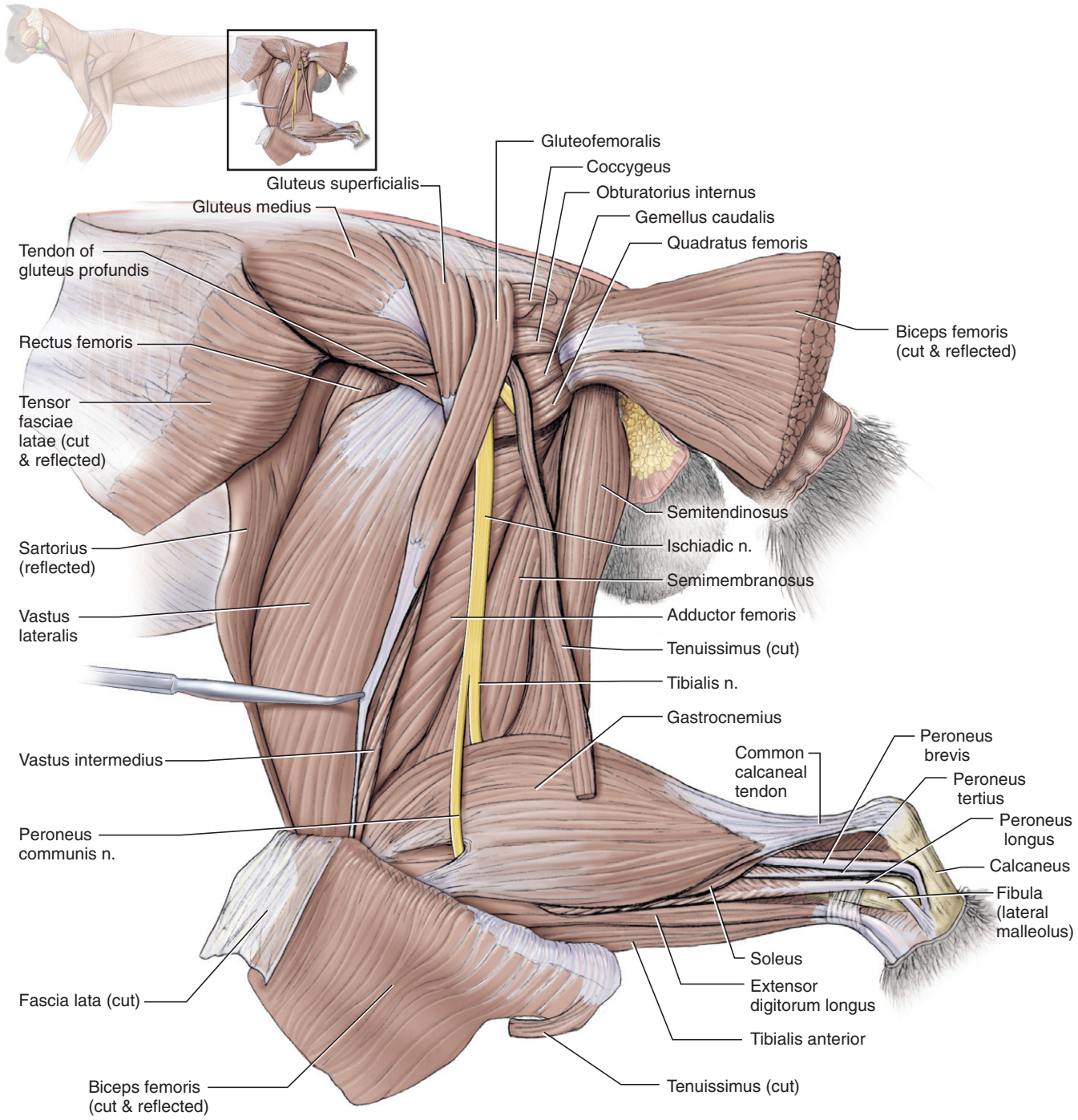


FIGURE 7.33 Deep muscles of the hind limb of the cat in lateral view.

underlying musculature, and lift the biceps from the musculature. Make an anteroposterior cut through the central part of the biceps femoris and reflect its ends. The exposed surface must be cleared of connective tissue and fat to produce a dissection similar to that presented in Figure 7.33. Although this is tedious, it furnishes an excellent example of how connective tissue and fat are distributed between muscles, both to provide a plane along which muscles may move against each other and to provide protection for structures such as nerves. In clearing the region, preserve the conspicuous **ischiadic nerve** (Figure 7.34) but remove or cut through blood vessels.

The ischiadic nerve extends nearly parallel to the tenuissimus muscle. Note the distal end of the gluteofemoralis. Its fibers insert into a narrow, tapered tendon,

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

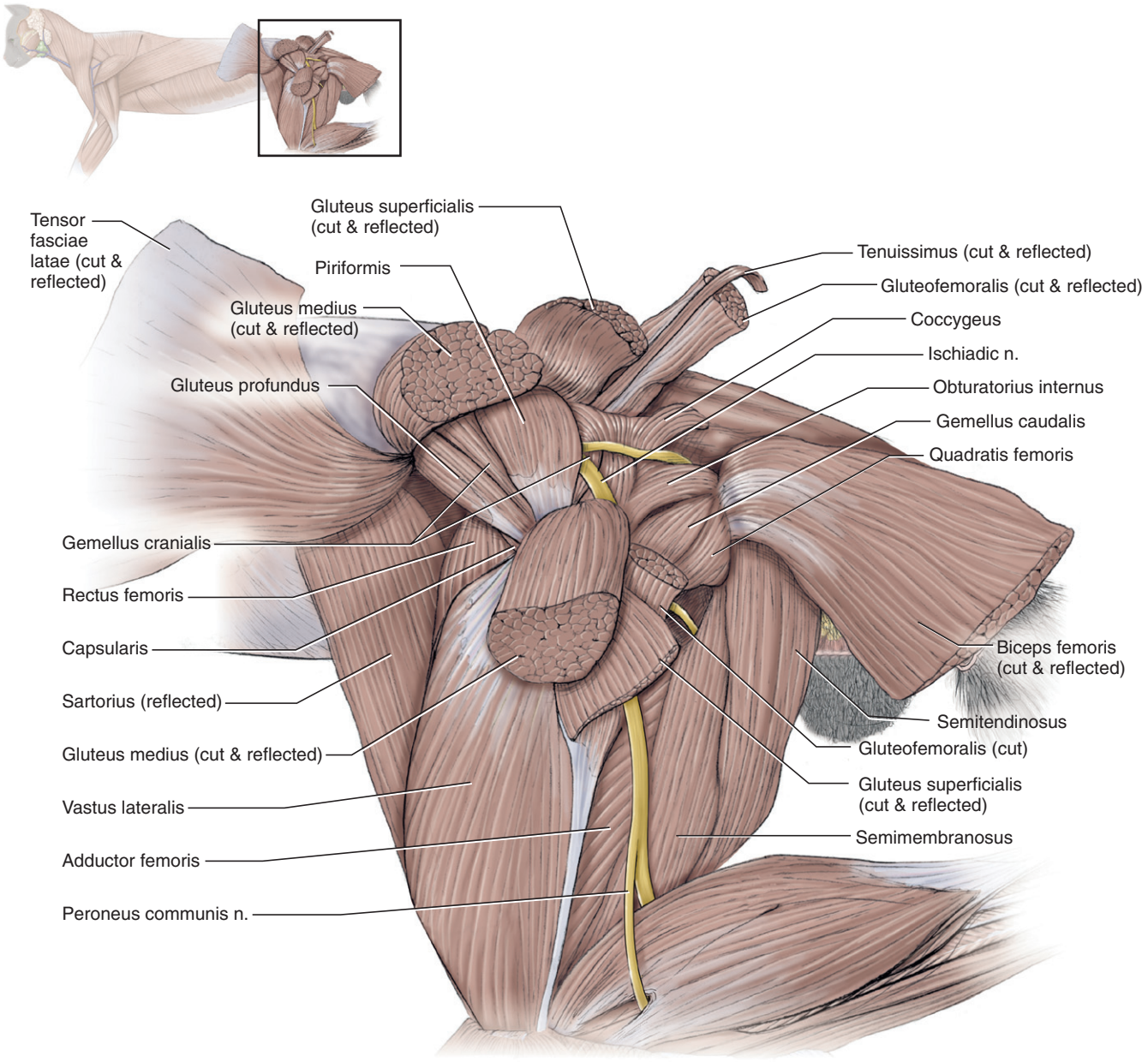


FIGURE 7.34 Deep muscles of the hind limb of the cat in lateral view.

which is nearly as long as the fleshy part of the muscle and extends toward the knee joint. The tendon may be distinguished most easily distally, where it lies on the posterior surface of the fascia lata, and appears as a narrow, glistening ribbon. Separate it from the fascia lata.

Reflection of the biceps femoris also exposes two muscles already identified, the semitendinosus and, anterior to it, the semimembranosus. The **adductor femoris** lies anterior to the latter, deep to the ischiadic nerve. Just anterior to the origin of the biceps femoris and ventral to the obturatorius internus, identify the **gemellus caudalis** and the **quadratus femoris**.

Poke a small opening into the fascia lata, ventral to the level of the tensor fasciae latae. Insert a scissor blade into the opening, bisect the fascia anteroposteriorly, and lift it from the underlying muscle. Cut along the posterior edges of the fascia where it meets the adductor femoris (avoid cutting the tendon of the gluteofemoralis), and then reflect its flaps. The tensor fasciae latae will be reflected with the proximal flap of the fascia lata. The large muscle exposed is the **vastus lateralis**. Clean away

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

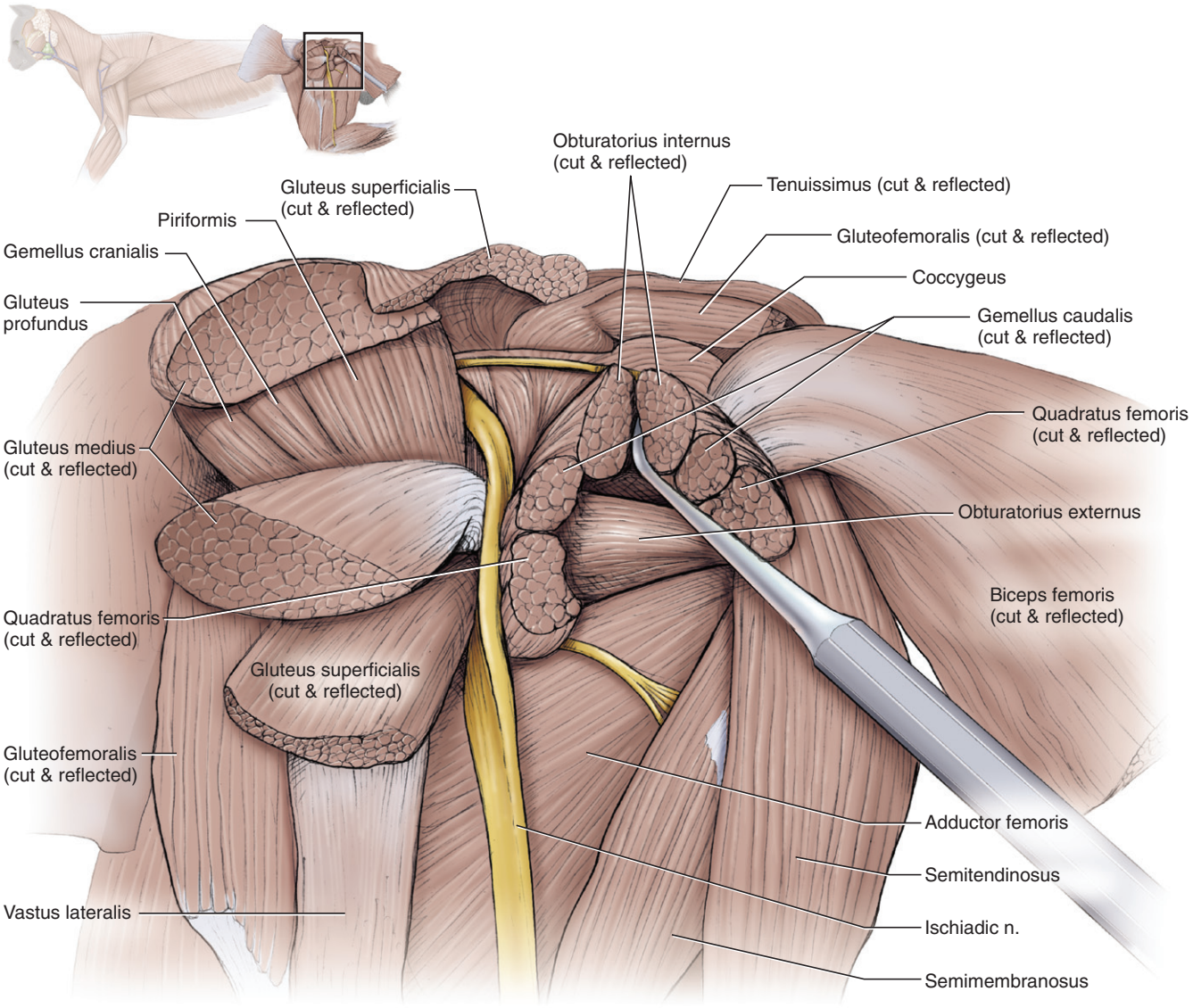


FIGURE 7.35 Deep muscles of the hind limb of the cat in lateral view.

connective tissue along the anterodorsal margin of this muscle to expose a portion of the **rectus femoris**. The tendon of the **gluteus profundus** (see later) should also be visible. The **vastus intermedius** has a small, narrow exposure along the posterodistal margin of the vastus lateralis. The vastus lateralis, vastus intermedius, vastus medialis (identified earlier, but see more later), and rectus femoris form the muscle complex termed the **quadriceps femoris**, which is the main musculature that extends the crus. The **capsularis** is a small, narrow muscle just anterior to the hip joint. It extends from the ilium to the anteroproximal surface of the femur. To locate it, probe between the origin of the vastus lateralis and the posteroventral margin of the gluteus profundus (Figure 7.34). Its small size and high proportion of muscle spindles suggest it functions as a tension sensor, although its position indicates a thigh flexor function.

Cut anteroposteriorly through the belly of the gluteofemoralis and reflect it, along with the tenuissimus. Free the gluteus superficialis and gluteus medius muscles from underlying musculature. Cut anteroposteriorly through the center of each muscle and reflect them, as shown in Figure 7.34, to expose the underlying muscles. The gluteus minimus (noted earlier), with its conspicuous insertion tendon, is the more anterior. The **piriformis** lies more posteriorly, and largely covers the **gemellus cranialis**, two muscles that act mainly to abduct the thigh.

Reflect the gluteofemoralis anteriorly, as shown in Figure 7.35. Carefully cut dorsoventrally through the

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

middle of the quadratus femoris, but do not injure underlying musculature. Continue cutting dorsally through the gemellus caudalis and obturatorius internus. Reflect the ends of the muscles you have cut through to expose the **obturatorius externus**, which extends anteroposteriorly.

Examine the muscles on the lateral surface of the crus by removing the crural fascia (Figure 7.33). There are actually several layers of fascia in the region, and they have been separated and partially cut away to produce the dissection in Figure 7.33, which preserves the insertions of the biceps femoris and tenuissimus. The most conspicuous muscle on the crus is the **gastrocnemius**, which lies posteriorly and has lateral and medial heads. Its proximal portion is very thick, but it tapers distally into its tendon, the gastrocnemius tendon. A smaller muscle, the **soleus**, lies mainly deep to the gastrocnemius, but a small portion is exposed anterior to it. It is also thick proximally and tapered distally. The tendons of the gastrocnemius and soleus muscles pass together through a sheath formed by the fascia as the **calcaneal tendon**, which inserts on the proximal end of the calcaneum. As their tendons converge, the soleus and gastrocnemius, which are the main extensors of the pes, are collectively termed the **triceps surae** muscle.

The **tibialis anterior** lies on the anterior surface of the crus. Posterior to it is the slender, elongated **extensor digitorum longus**. Follow the latter distally into its thick tendon on the dorsal surface of the pes. Between the extensor digitorum longus and the soleus is the peroneus musculature. A prominent nerve, the superficial peroneal nerve, lies between the extensor digitorum longus and the peroneus muscles. Three peroneus muscles may be recognized. The **peroneus longus** is an elongated muscle lying posterior to the extensor digitorum longus. Follow it distally as it tapers into its prominent tendon, which passes along a groove on the lateral surface of the lateral malleolus of the fibula (see page 174). The **peroneus tertius** is a smaller muscle posterior to the peroneus longus. It may be difficult to isolate, but its narrow tendon lies posterior to the tendon of the peroneus longus. The **peroneus brevis** is larger and exposed posterior to the peroneus tertius. Its tendon is much larger and easily identified. The tendons of the peroneus tertius and peroneus brevis extend distally adjacent to each other, and both pass along a groove on the posterior surface of the lateral malleolus. As they pass distally, the tendon of the peroneus brevis obscures that of the peroneus tertius.

DEEP HIND LIMB MUSCLES: MEDIAL VIEW (FIGURE 7.36)

Return to the medial surface of the hind limb. Lift the sartorius by separating it from underlying musculature. Cut across its central portion and reflect its ends. Do likewise for the gracilis. This will expose much of the musculature that has already been identified. Anteriorly, identify the vastus medialis. Much of its anterior margin is bordered by the rectus femoris. Recall that the tensor fasciae latae and fascia lata, which was cut earlier (as shown in Figures 7.35 and 7.36), lie on the vastus lateralis. More posteriorly, note the adductor femoris and semimembranosus, both now uncovered. The semitendinosus inserts on the tibia just distal to the insertion of the semimembranosus. The lateral-to-medial orientation of these last two muscles and their contribution to the medial wall of the popliteal fossa is easily appreciated.

Remove the crural fascia from the medial surface of the crus. Clear away connective tissue. The medial head of the gastrocnemius is the conspicuous muscle posteriorly. Probe deep to its anterior margin, where the gastrocnemius begins to taper distally, to locate the soleus, already observed in lateral view, and the **plantaris**, lying between the soleus and gastrocnemius. The tendon of the plantaris extends through the crural sheath with the calcaneal tendon. It continues around the proximal end of the calcaneum onto the plantar surface of the pes, and extends distally onto the digits. Here, the small flexor digitorum brevis muscle surrounds the tendon and contributes to flexion of the digits.

The large tibialis nerve emerges from beneath the musculature. Carefully dissect around the nerve to free it from surrounding structures, and follow it as it extends toward and then around the posterior margin of the medial malleolus of the tibia (see page 174). The medial surface of the tibia is the white strip of bone extending proximodistally near the anterior margin of the crus. On its anterior surface is the tibialis anterior, identified earlier. Follow it distally into its tendon and note that it extends medially across the proximal surface of the pes. Examine the musculature posterior to the tibia. Near the insertion of the semitendinosus, locate the **popliteus**, consisting of a faint, thin band of fibers extending posterodorsally from the tibia. The popliteus, which flexes the crus and rotates the tibia medially, curves laterally and crosses the posterior side of the knee joint to its origin on the lateral epicondyle of the femur. The **flexor digitorum longus** is the larger mass of musculature just posterior to the tibia. Follow it distally. Its tendon is nearly parallel and anterior to the tibialis nerve, and is of similar thickness. The tendon curves around the posterior margin of the medial malleolus onto the medial surface of the pes. Anterior to the tendon of the flexor digitorum longus is the thicker tendon of the **tibialis posterior** muscle. It also curves around the malleolus onto the medial surface of the pes. The fibers of the tibialis posterior lie almost entirely deep to the flexor digitorum longus. You may cut through the latter to expose the tibialis posterior.

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

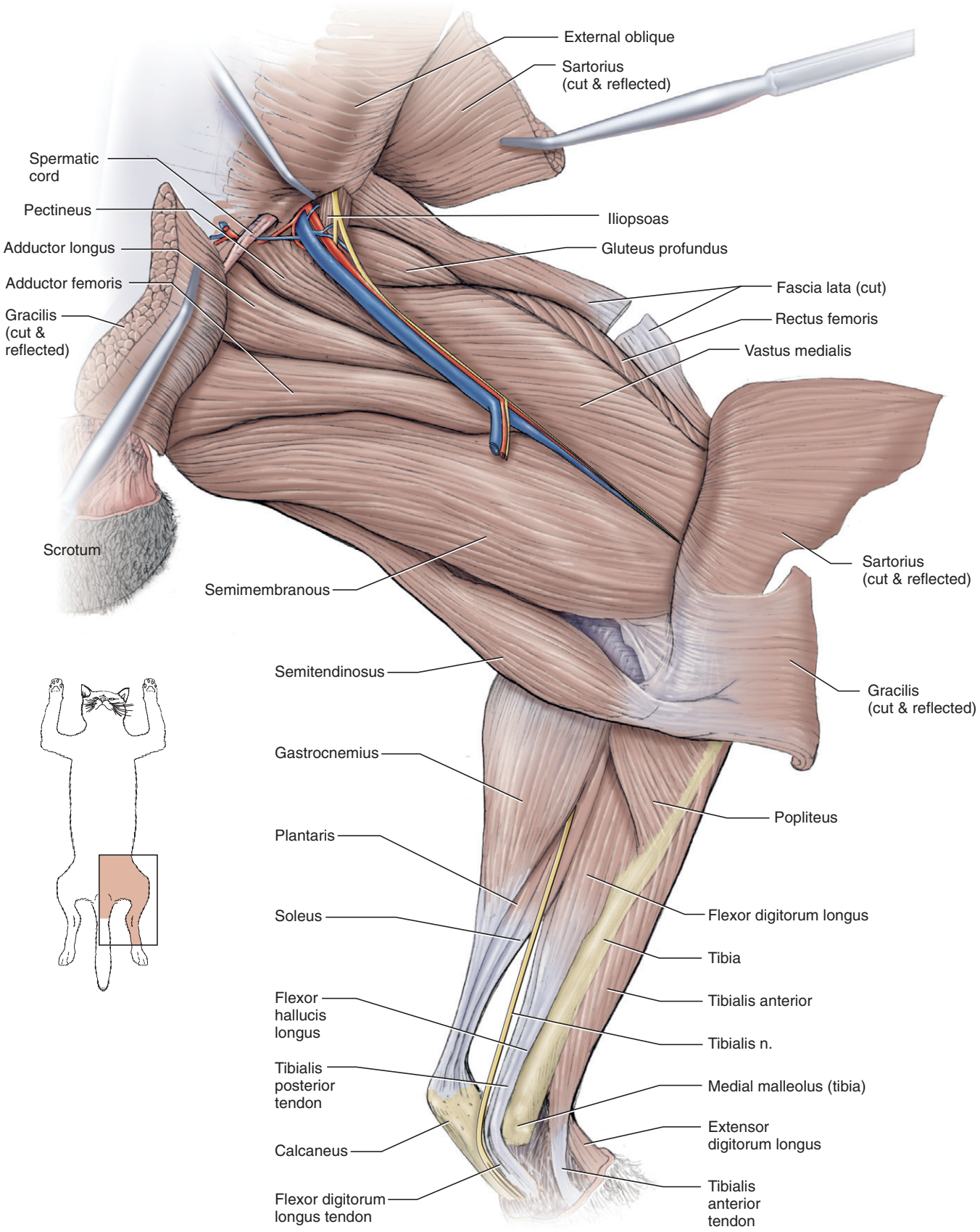


FIGURE 7.36 Deep muscles of the hind limb of the cat in medial view.

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

Key Terms: Muscles of the Hind Limb

adductor femoris
adductor longus (adductor femoris longus)
biceps femoris
calcaneal tendon (Achilles tendon)
capsularis (articularis coxae)
coccygeus (abductor caudae internus)
deep femoral artery
deep femoral vein
extensor digitorum longus
external iliac artery
external iliac vein
external pudendal artery
external pudendal vein
fascia lata
femoral artery
femoral nerve
femoral vein
flexor digitorum longus
gastrocnemius
gemellus caudalis (gemellus inferior)
gemellus cranialis (gemellus superior)
gluteofemoralis (caudofemoralis, coccygeofemoralis, gluteobiceps)
gluteus medius
gluteus profundus (gluteus minimus)
gluteus superficialis (gluteus maximus)
gracilis
iliopsoas
ischiadic nerve
lateral circumflex artery
lateral circumflex vein
obturatorius externus
obturatorius internus
pectineus
peroneus brevis (fibularis brevis)
peroneus longus (fibularis longus)
peroneus tertius (extensor digitorum lateralis)
piriformis (pyriformis)
plantaris (flexor digitorum superficialis)
popliteus
quadratus femoris
quadriceps femoris (= **rectus femoris + vastus intermedius + vastus lateralis + vastus medialis**)
rectus femoris
saphenous artery
saphenous nerve
saphenous vein
sartorius
semimembranosus
semitendinosus
soleus
tensor fasciae latae
tenuissimus (abductor cruris caudalis)
tibialis anterior (tibialis cranialis)
tibialis posterior (tibialis caudalis)
triceps surae (= **gastrocnemius + soleus**)
vastus intermedius
vastus lateralis
vastus medialis

TABLE 7.3 Muscles of the Hind Limb

Name	Origin	Insertion	Main Actions
Adductor femoris	Pubis and ischium	Shaft of femur (linea aspera)	Adducts and extends thigh
Adductor longus/adductor femoris longus	Anterior margin of pubis	Shaft of femur (linea aspera)	Adducts and flexes thigh
Articularis coxae/capsularis	Ilium	Anterior surface of femur	Flexes thigh
Biceps femoris	Ischial tuberosity	By broad aponeurosis to patella and proximal half of tibia	Flexes crus, abducts thigh
Coccygeus/abductor caudae internus	Dorsal margin of ilium and ischium	2nd to 5th caudal vertebrae	Flexes tail
Extensor digitorum longus	Lateral epicondyle of femur	Distal phalanges of digits 2 to 5, by tendon that branches into 4 portions	Extends digits 2 to 5; flexes pes
Flexor digitorum longus	Proximal portion of fibula and tibia	Joins tendon of flexor hallucis longus to distal phalanges of digits 2 to 5	Flexes digits 2 to 5 and extends pes
Flexor hallucis longus	Proximal portion of fibula and tibia	Joins tendon of flexor digitorum longus to distal phalanges of digits 2 to 5	Flexes digits 2 to 5 and extends pes

Continued

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

TABLE 7.3 *Continued*

Name	Origin	Insertion	Main Actions
Gastrocnemius	Lateral and medial epicondyles of femur and patella	By tendon onto proximal end of calcaneum, together with tendon of soleus muscle	Extends pes; flexes crus
Gemellus caudalis/inferior	Dorsolateral surface of ischium, anterior to ischial tuberosity	Tendon of obturatorius internus	Abducts thigh
Gemellus cranialis/superior	Dorsal margin of ischium and ilium	Greater trochanter of femur	Abducts and outwardly rotates thigh
Gluteofemoralis/caudofemoralis/coccygeofemoralis/gluteobiceps	Anterior caudal vertebrae	Patella	Abducts thigh and extends crus
Gluteus superficialis/maximus	Posterior sacral and anterior caudal vertebrae, and gluteal fascia	Distal part of greater trochanter of femur	Abducts thigh
Gluteus medius	Posterior sacral and anterior caudal vertebrae, dorsolateral surface of ilium, and sacral fascia	Proximal part of greater trochanter of femur	Abducts thigh
Gluteus profundus/minimus	Ventrolateral surface of ilium	Lateral part of greater trochanter of femur	Abducts and outwardly rotates thigh
Gracilis	Pubic and ischial symphyses	Proximomedial surface of tibia, crural fascia	Adducts thigh, flexes crus
Iliopsoas	Lumbar and posterior thoracic vertebrae, and ilium	Lesser trochanter of femur	Flexes and rotates thigh
Obturatorius externus	Ischium and pubis	Trochanteric fossa of femur	Flexes thigh
Obturatorius internus	Ischium and connective tissue covering obturator foramen	Trochanteric fossa of femur	Abducts thigh
Pectineus	Anterior margin of pubis	Surface of femur, just distal to lesser trochanter	Adducts thigh
Peroneus brevis/fibularis brevis	Distal half of fibula	Lateral surface of metatarsal 5	Extends pes
Peroneus longus	Proximal half of fibula	By tendon onto proximal part of metatarsals 2 to 4	Flexes and everts pes
Peroneus tertius/extensor digitorum lateralis	Lateral surface of fibula	Tendon of extensor digitorum longus	Extends and abducts 5th digit flexes pes
Piriformis/pyriformis	Posterior sacral and anterior caudal vertebrae	Greater trochanter of femur	Abducts thigh
Plantaris/flexor digitorum superficialis	Lateral epicondyle of femur and patella	By tendon extending past proximal end of calcaneum and onto tendon of flexor digitorum brevis	Extends pes (and, through flexor digitorum brevis, flexes digits 2 to 5)
Popliteus	Lateral epicondyle of femur	Proximal third of medial surface of tibia	Flexes crus and rotates tibia medially
Quadratus femoris	Ischial tuberosity	Greater trochanter and lesser trochanter of femur	Extends and outwardly rotates thigh
Rectus femoris	Ventral margin of ilium anterior to acetabulum	Lateral surface of patella	Extends crus
Sartorius	Iliac crest and anteromedial margin of ilium	Proximomedial surface of tibia, and patella	Adducts thigh, contributes to extension of crus
Semimembranosus	Ischial tuberosity and posterior margin of ilium	Distomedial surface of femur	Extends thigh, flexes crus
Semitendinosus	Ischial tuberosity	Proximomedial surface of tibia	Flexes crus, extends thigh

Continued

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

TABLE 7.3 *Continued*

Name	Origin	Insertion	Main Actions
Soleus	Proximal third of fibula	Proximal end of calcaneum (with tendon of gastrocnemius)	Extends pes
Tensor fasciae latae	Anteroventral surface of ilium	Fascia lata, which merges with proximal part of aponeurosis of biceps femoris (see above)	Flexes thigh
Tenuissimus/abductor cruris caudalis	Anterior caudal vertebra	Crural fascia and tibia, with aponeurosis of biceps femoris	May serve as a tension sensor; effectiveness as extensor of thigh or flexor of crus is probably minimal
Tibialis cranialis/anterior	Proximolateral surface of tibia and proximomedial surface of fibula	Metatarsal 1	Flexes pes
Tibialis caudalis/posterior	Proximal end of tibia and fibula	Navicular and intermediate cuneiform (tarsals)	Extends pes
Vastus intermedius	Anterior surface of femur	Patella (capsule of knee joint)	Extends crus
Vastus lateralis	Greater trochanter and dorsolateral surface of femur	Lateral surface of patella	Extends crus
Vastus medialis	Shaft of femur	Medial surface of patella (and patellar ligament)	Extends crus

Muscles of the Head and Trunk

Table 7.4 lists the head and trunk muscles, and indicates their origin, insertion, and main functions.

Muscles of the Trunk (Figures 7.28–7.30)

The musculature forming the abdominal wall is arranged mainly as three thin, but extensive, muscular sheets or layers (Figure 7.28). The most superficial layer is the external oblique (which you noted previously), the middle layer is the **internal oblique**, and the deep layer is the **transversus abdominis**. A fourth muscle, the **rectus abdominis**, also contributes to the abdominal wall. It forms a ventral muscular band extending anteroposteriorly between the sternum and pelvis (Figure 7.30). These four muscles act to constrict the abdomen. The rectus can also draw the ribs and sternum posteriorly, flexing the trunk.

The fibers of the external oblique extend posteroventrally. They do not extend all the way to the midventral line but attach by way of an aponeurosis, which covers the deeper musculature of the ventral surface of the abdomen. To see the deeper muscles, cut a small flap in the external oblique, in the central part of the abdomen, as in Figure 7.28. Reflect the muscle and aponeurosis. You can now see the middle layer, the internal oblique. Its fibers extend anteroventrally, nearly at right angles to those of the external oblique. Note, though, that the internal oblique also does not extend to the midventral line, but is continued by an aponeurosis. The muscle lying deep to the aponeuroses is the rectus abdominis, and it will be seen clearly when the internal oblique is cut and reflected. To do so, cut a similar flap in the internal oblique and reflect the muscle and aponeurosis. The muscle exposed is the transversus abdominis, the deepest layer. In this region of the abdomen the ventral end of this muscle dips deep to the rectus abdominis. Lift the lateral margin of the rectus abdominis. The transversus abdominis is also continued to the midventral line by an aponeurosis. The relative positions of the transversus abdominis and rectus abdominis muscle changes more posteriorly. There, the aponeurosis of the former divides so that part of it also covers the rectus abdominis.

Next examine muscles associated with the thorax. The **scalenus** (Figure 7.30) lies laterally on the thorax, along the ventral parts of the serratus ventralis. Posteriorly, it is subdivided into three narrow bands, with the middle part usually extending farthest posteriorly. Anteriorly, they unite into a single band that passes along the neck. The **transversus costarum** is a small, thin sheet. Its fibers extend anterodorsally from the sternum toward the ventral band of the scalenus, where it inserts on the first rib. The **longus colli** is a long, narrow muscle situated ventral to the cervical vertebrae. It extends anteroposteriorly between the anterior part of the scalenus and the external jugular vein. Note also the longitudinal muscle ventral to the posterior part of the external jugular. It is the posterior end of the **sternohyoid muscle**, which will be considered again later.

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

The thoracic wall is formed mainly by musculature that extends between successive ribs. As in the abdominal region, there are three main muscles. Most superficially are the **external intercostals** (Figure 7.29), followed by the **internal intercostals**, and, most medially, the **transversus thoracis**. Of these, only the internal intercostals extend from middorsally to midventrally. To see the first two muscles, examine the thoracic wall posterior to the serratus ventralis. The muscle fibers extending slightly posteroventrally between successive ribs are external intercostals. Carefully cut perpendicularly through the fibers of one set of external intercostals to expose the internal intercostals, whose fibers extend steeply posterodorsally. The external intercostals do not extend all the way to the midventral line, but end at about the level of the lateral margin of the rectus abdominis. Locate the latter muscle and lift its lateral portion away from the thoracic wall. Near the midventral line, note that the internal intercostals are exposed between the ribs. The transversus thoracis is present only near the midventral line, deep to the internal intercostals. Its fibers extend almost transversely, with a slight posteroventral inclination. It is best viewed when the thoracic cavity is opened (see Figures 7.45 and 7.51).

Muscles of the Back and Neck (Figure 7.37)

Two thin muscular sheets, the **serratus dorsalis cranialis** and **serratus dorsalis caudalis**, lie over the back, deep to the latissimus dorsi and rhomboideus (Figure 7.30). The serratus dorsalis muscles are composed of slips extending from the middorsal line to the lateral surfaces of the ribs. The fibers do not extend all the way middorsally, but attach by aponeuroses. The fibers of the serratus dorsalis cranialis extend posteroventrally, and those of the serratus dorsalis caudalis extend anteroventrally.

Next examine the back or epaxial muscles (Figure 7.37), which lie deep to the musculature so far observed and act mainly to extend the vertebral column. This musculature is extensive, lying between the neural spines and transverse processes and proximal ends of the ribs, from the ilium to the cervical region. It is complex largely because its individual muscles extend between various parts of more posterior vertebrae to more anterior vertebrae, and fusion among its different parts occurs, particularly posteriorly.

Begin your examination posteriorly with the muscles of the lumbar and posterior thoracic regions. Make a longitudinal cut through the fleshy part of the serratus dorsalis muscles and reflect them. To examine the back musculature here, you must also cut through the lumbodorsal fascia, as follows. Poke a hole through the fascia about midway along its length, 0.5 cm to one side of the neural spines. There are two main fascial layers. Separate them by passing a blunt probe between them. Cut through the superficial layer longitudinally, going forward as far as its anterior limit and back to about the level of the anterior part of the hind limb. Continue to remove the connective tissue and fat deep to this fascial layer—note that the latissimus dorsi arises from it laterally.

Clean the surface of the deep layer of fascia to determine its limits. Lateral to the sheet is a longitudinal and relatively narrow muscle bundle—the most lateral portion of the **longissimus dorsi** musculature. You should also be able to faintly see muscle bundles through the fascia. Cut through this deeper fascia, using the same method as with the superficial layer. In this case, dissection is essentially confined to the lumbar region, because you will not be able to go as far anteriorly, as muscle fibers adhere strongly to the deep surface of the fascia. Reflect the fascia to uncover three more longitudinally arranged muscle bundles. The most medial, as well as the narrowest, is the **multifidus**. It is an extensive muscle that is best seen in the lumbar region, lying next to the neural processes. It passes anteriorly deep to other muscles of the back into the cervical region. The two lateral bundles are part of the longissimus dorsi, which is therefore subdivided into three bundles in this region. Its two lateral bundles, separated by the lumbodorsal fascia, are considered to form the lateral division of the longissimus dorsi. The medial bundle is considered the medial division of this muscle.

Farther anteriorly, in the thoracic region, the longissimus musculature continues forward as three subdivisions, but these do not correspond entirely to those observed in the lumbar region. To see the more anterior muscles, reflect the anterior part of the latissimus dorsi (along its middorsal origin), as well as the serratus dorsalis. The three subdivisions of the musculature, arranged as longitudinal bundles and derived from the more posterior portion of the longissimus, may now be identified. The **spinalis dorsi** is the most medial, followed by the anterior continuation of the longissimus dorsi, and then, most laterally, by the **iliocostalis**. The spinalis dorsi arises mainly from the deep layer of the lumbodorsal fascia. Follow the longissimus dorsi anteriorly into its cervical extension, the narrow **longissimus capitis**, which lies along the ventral margin of the splenius on the neck. The latter was identified earlier as being deep to the rhomboideus capitis. The splenius and longissimus capitis tend to fuse, but they should be clearly demarcated. Separate these muscles, cut through the middle of the splenius, and reflect its ends. The two muscles thus exposed are the **semispinalis capitis** and **semispinalis cervicis** (which is actually the anterior portion of the multifidus, noted earlier), which pass forward from the vertebrae to insert on the skull. The longus colli, passing ventrally along the neck between the anterior part of the scalenus and the external jugular vein, was identified earlier.

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

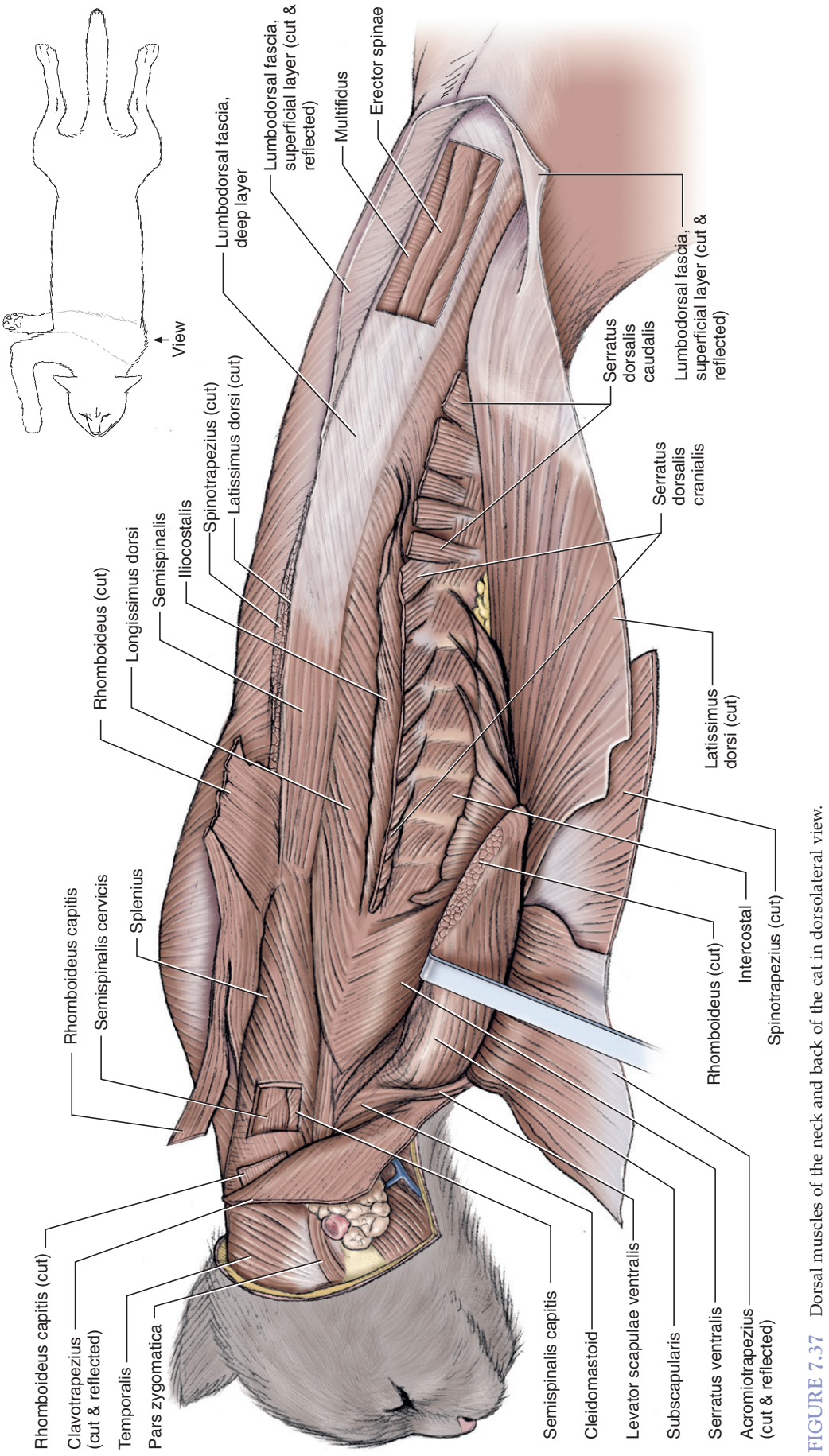


FIGURE 7.37 Dorsal muscles of the neck and back of the cat in dorsolateral view.

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

Muscles of the Throat and Jaw (Figures 7.28, 7.38, and 7.57)

Examine the muscles associated with the jaws, throat, and tongue, many of which are small, thin, strap-like muscles. It is useful to be familiar with the meaning of the main roots used in names of these muscles (*hyo-* refers to the hyoid, *thyro-* to the thyroid cartilage, *genio-* to the chin, *glossus* to the tongue). Reidentify the sternomastoid, and examine it in ventral view. The sternomastoid from each side passes ventrally and posteriorly from the occiput of the skull. Each follows the anterior border of the clavotrapezius dorsally. As the sternomastoids approach the throat, they veer medially and meet in a V at the base of the throat. The muscles of the throat lie mainly between the V. Gently spread apart the sternomastoids to expose this musculature. Pick away the connective tissue from the surface of the musculature, being careful not to injure the veins passing through the region. Examine the external jugular veins and note that each receives a medial branch that together

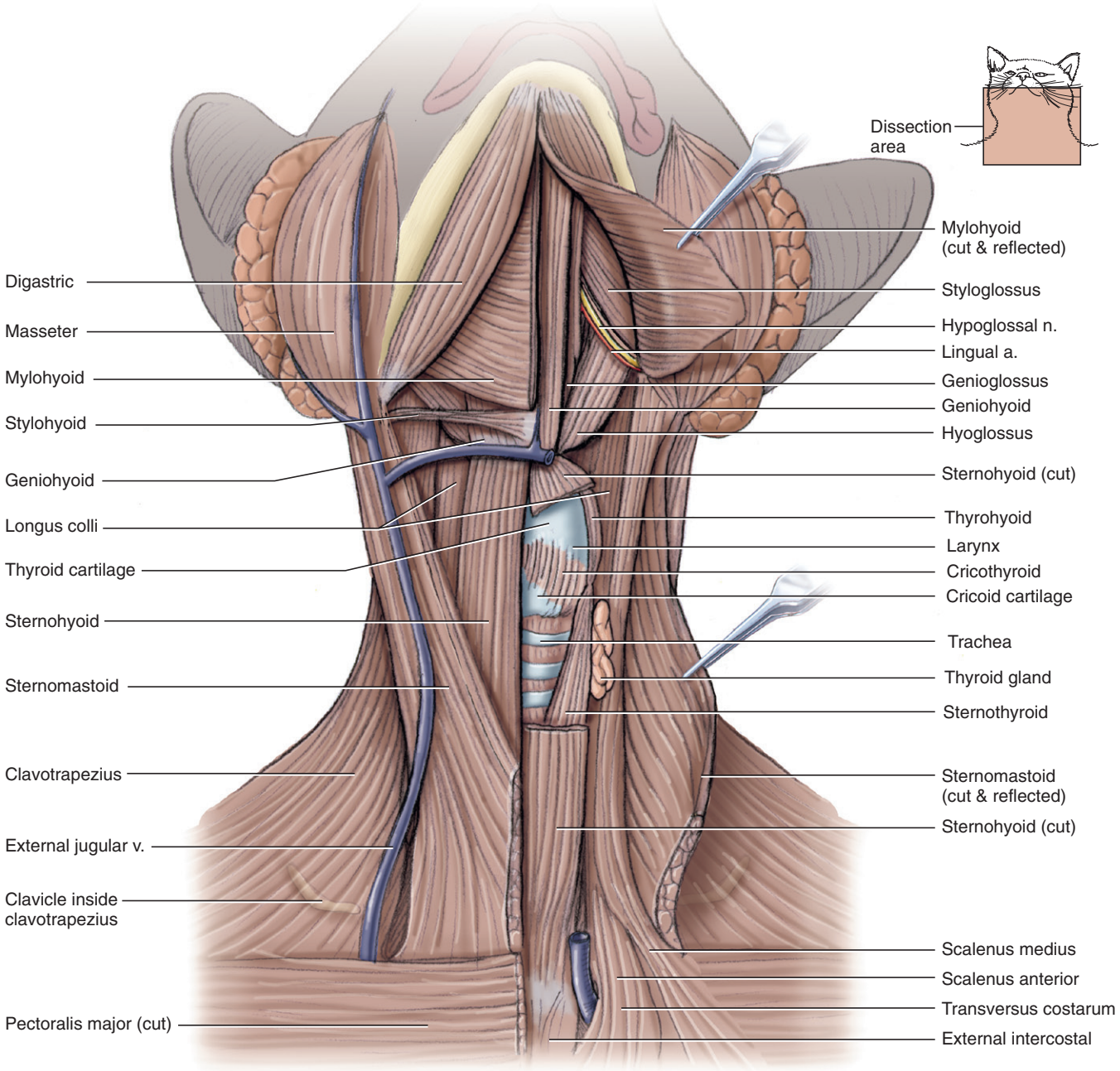


FIGURE 7.38 Muscles of the throat of the cat in ventral view.

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

form the **transverse jugular vein** near the anterior end of the throat. Extending from this union is a small vessel that passes between the musculature.

The most superficial muscles covering the throat are the **sternohyoid** muscles, whose posterior portions were seen earlier along the neck ventral to the external jugular vein. On the throat, these thin, narrow muscles pass anteroposteriorly next to each other at the midline. Separate them at the midline. Lift one of them from the underlying muscles, cut it, and reflect the ends. You will uncover another set of longitudinal fibers, dorsal and slightly lateral to the sternohyoid. These are parallel to those of the sternohyoid and appear at first glance to constitute a single muscle, but they are two muscles, lying end to end. The posterior and longer muscle is the **sternothyroid**, the more anterior and shorter is the **thyrohyoid** (Figure 7.38). Gently pass a blunt probe beneath them to determine their extent.

Examine the muscles anterior to the transverse jugular. This area is roughly triangular, with the sides of the triangle formed by the **digastric muscles**. They lie along the medial edges of the dentary and converge toward the mandibular symphysis. Between the digastrics is the **mylohyoid**, which actually consists of a pair of muscles connected by a raphe at the midline. It is easily recognizable by its transverse and slightly curving fibers. Extending laterally along the posterior edge of the mylohyoid from the lateral edge of the sternohyoid is the very small and narrow **stylohyoid**. The deeper muscles of the throat and tongue lie beneath the mylohyoid. To view them, cut and reflect the mylohyoid along the midline. The thin, narrow **geniohyoid** muscles (see also Figure 7.40) extend anteroposteriorly next to each other at the midline. These arise from the dentary on either side of the mandibular symphysis (the region of the chin in humans; cats do not have a true chin) and insert on the hyoid. The narrow **hyoglossus** muscle arises deep and lateral to the insertion of the geniohyoid. Its fibers pass anteriorly into the tongue and its surface is crossed by the hypoglossal nerve and lingual artery. The **genioglossus** muscle arises anteriorly, lateral and deep to the origin of the geniohyoid, and passes posterodorsally into the tongue. The **styloglossus** is a long, narrow muscle that passes from the mastoid process of the skull into the tongue. It extends forward parallel to the medial border of the dentary. Push the digastric laterally to help locate the styloglossus. It will cross the anterior part of the hyoglossus. The mass of the tongue is formed mainly by intrinsic fibers, termed the **lingualis proprius** within the tongue (Figure 7.40).

Examine the head. The larger muscles covering the posterolateral surface of the jaw is the **masseter**, one of the three main jaw-closing muscle groups (Figures 7.27, 7.29, 7.30, and 7.39). The **temporalis**, another jaw-closing muscle, lies on the lateral surface of the cranium and arises from the temporal fossa (see page 149). It is deep to the parotid and mandibular glands, large salivary glands that will be described presently, and covered by a thick fascia. A small slip of the temporalis, the pars zygomatica, curves over the zygomatic arch (Figure 7.37). The third and smallest jaw-closing muscle, the **pterygoid**, lies medial to the jaw and requires further dissection. It is not considered further.

Key Terms: Muscles of the Head and Trunk

digastric
external intercostals
genioglossus
geniohyoid
hyoglossus
iliocostalis
internal intercostals
internal oblique
lingualis proprius
longissimus capitis
longissimus dorsi
longus colli
masseter
multifidus
mylohyoid
pterygoid
rectus abdominis
scalenus
semispinalis capitis
semispinalis cervicis
serratus dorsalis caudalis
serratus dorsalis cranialis
spinalis dorsi
sternohyoid
sternothyroid
styloglossus
stylohyoid
temporalis
thyrohyoid
transverse jugular vein
transversus abdominis
transversus costarum
transversus thoracis

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

TABLE 7.4 Muscles of the Head and Trunk

Name	Origin	Insertion	Main Actions
Digastric	Mastoid process of temporal and jugular process of occipital	Ventromedial surface of dentary	Depresses mandible
External intercostals	Posterior margin of a rib	Anterior margin of the adjacent posterior rib	Protracts ribs, increasing diameter of thorax
External oblique	Posterior 9 or 10 ribs and lumbodorsal fascia	Mainly on linea alba from sternum to pubis, by aponeurosis	Constricts abdomen
Genioglossus	Medial surface of dentary	Tongue; posterior fibers insert on basihyoid and ceratohyoid	Depresses tongue; draws root of tongue anteriorly; curls tip of tongue ventrally
Geniohyoid	Ventromedial surface of dentary, just posterior to symphysis	Ventral surface of basihyoid	Draws hyoid anteriorly
Hyoglossus	Lateral part of ventral surface of basihyoid	Tongue	Depresses and retracts tongue
Iliocostalis	Lateral surface of ribs	Lateral surface of more anterior ribs	Draws ribs together
Internal intercostals	Anterior margin of a rib	Posterior margin of the adjacent anterior rib	Retracts ribs, decreasing diameter of thorax
Internal oblique	Lumbodorsal fascia and iliac crest	Linea alba, by aponeurosis	Constricts abdomen
Lingualis proprius	Intrinsic musculature of tongue consists of several bundles arranged mainly in longitudinal, transverse, and vertical groups. These attach to integument of tongue and insertion fascicles of extrinsic muscles of tongue (e.g., genioglossus, hyoglossus, styloglossus). Tongue musculature responsible for many complex movements, among others those during mastication and deglutition.		
Longissimus capitis	Prezygapophyses of 4^{th}–7^{th} cervical vertebrae	Mastoid process of temporal	Flexes head laterally
Longissimus dorsi			Extends vertebral column
medial division	Sacral and caudal vertebrae	More anterior lumbar, sacral, and caudal	
lateral division	Ilium and deep layer of lumbodorsal fascia	More anterior lumbar and thoracic vertebrae	
Longus colli	Ventral surface of first 6 thoracic vertebrae; slips from cervical vertebrae	Transverse processes of all cervical vertebrae	Flexes neck laterally and ventrally
Masseter	Zygomatic arch	Ventral part of masseteric fossa of dentary	Elevates mandible
Multifidus	Various parts of more posterior sacral, lumbar, thoracic, and cervical vertebrae	Neural processes of more anterior vertebrae	Acting singly: flexes vertebral column laterally; acting with other side multifidus: extends vertebral column
Mylohyoid	Medial surface of dentary	Midventral raphe; posterior fibers to basihyoid bone	Elevates floor of oral cavity; draws hyoid anteriorly
Pterygoid	Pterygoid blade of skull	Medial surface of angular region of dentary	Elevates mandible
Rectus abdominis	Pubis	Costal cartilages and sternum	Compresses abdomen; draws ribs and sternum posteriorly, flexing the trunk
Scalenus	Ribs	Transverse processes of all cervical vertebrae	Flexes neck; or draws ribs anteriorly
Semispinalis capitis	Prezygapophyses of 3^{rd}–7^{th} cervical and 1^{st}–3^{rd} thoracic vertebrae	Medial third of nuchal crest	Elevates head
Semispinalis cervicis	Neural processes of 7^{th} cervical and 1^{st}–3^{rd} thoracic vertebrae, prezygapophyses of 2^{nd}–5^{th} thoracic vertebrae	Medial third of nuchal crest	Elevates head

Continued

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

TABLE 7.4 *Continued*

Name	Origin	Insertion	Main Actions
Serratus dorsalis caudalis	Middorsally from neural processes of lumbar vertebrae	Posterior 4 or 5 ribs	Draws ribs posteriorly
Serratus dorsalis cranialis	Middorsal raphe between axis and 10th thoracic vertebrae, by aponeurosis	Lateral surface of first 9 ribs	Draws ribs anteriorly
Spinalis dorsi	Neural spines of 10th–13th thoracic vertebrae	Cervical and more anterior thoracic vertebrae	Extends vertebral column
Splenius	Anterior middorsal line	Nuchal crest	Acting singly: flexes head laterally; acting with other side splenius: elevates head
Sternohyoid	1st costal cartilage and manubrium of sternum	Basihyoid	Draws hyoid posteriorly
Sternomastoid	Anterior surface of manubrium of sternum	Lateral portion of nuchal crest of skull and mastoid process of temporal	Acting singly: flexes neck laterally; acting with other side sternomastoid: depresses snout
Sternothyroid	1st costal cartilage	Posterolateral surface of thyroid cartilage of larynx	Draws larynx posteriorly
Styloglossus	Mastoid process of temporal and stylohyoid	Tongue	Elevates and retracts tongue
Stylohyoid	Lateral surface of stylohyoid	Ventral surface of basihyoid	Draws basihyoid dorsally
Temporalis	Fascia covering muscle, temporal fossa of skull	Coronoid process of dentary	Elevates mandible
Thyrohyoid	Lateral surface of thyroid cartilage of larynx	Thyrohyoid	Draws hyoid posteriorly and dorsally
Transversus abdominis	Costal cartilage of vertebrocostal and vertebral ribs, transverse processes of lumbar vertebrae, ventral margin of ilium	Linea alba	Constricts abdomen
Transversus costarum	Lateral margin of sternum	1st rib and costal cartilage	Draws ribs anteriorly
Transversus thoracis	Dorsolateral margin of sternum, between attachment of ribs 3–8	Costal cartilages near their attachment to ribs	Draws ventral portion of ribs posteriorly

SECTION IV: DIGESTIVE AND RESPIRATORY SYSTEMS

Salivary Glands

The cat has five pairs of salivary glands, two of which—the **parotid** and **mandibular glands**—are easily observed (Figure 7.39). They have already been noted in connection with the musculature of the throat. The parotid gland, lying almost directly ventral to the ear, is the largest. It is irregular, with obvious lobules and an elongated, tapered ventral portion. The smaller mandibular gland, smoother and nearly oval, lies just posterior to the ventral part of the parotid gland.

Note that three veins come together in this region to form the external jugular vein (Figure 7.39). The most dorsal tributary, the **maxillary vein**, turns dorsally, crosses the anterior part of the mandibular gland, and then passes deep to the parotid gland. **Lymph nodes** are also present in this region and may be confused with the salivary glands, but lymph nodes are typically smaller and, as they lack lobules, have a smoother surface. Usually, two are present ventral to the parotid and mandibular glands. Often there seems to be only a single large node that is crossed by the **linguofacial vein**, but careful dissection will reveal two nodes, with the vein passing between them (Figure 7.39).

Examine the ducts of the parotid and mandibular glands. The **parotid duct** is the thick, whitish strand crossing over the middle part of the **masseter muscle** and extending toward the upper lip. Also crossing the masseter are two branches of the **facial nerve**, the dorsal

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

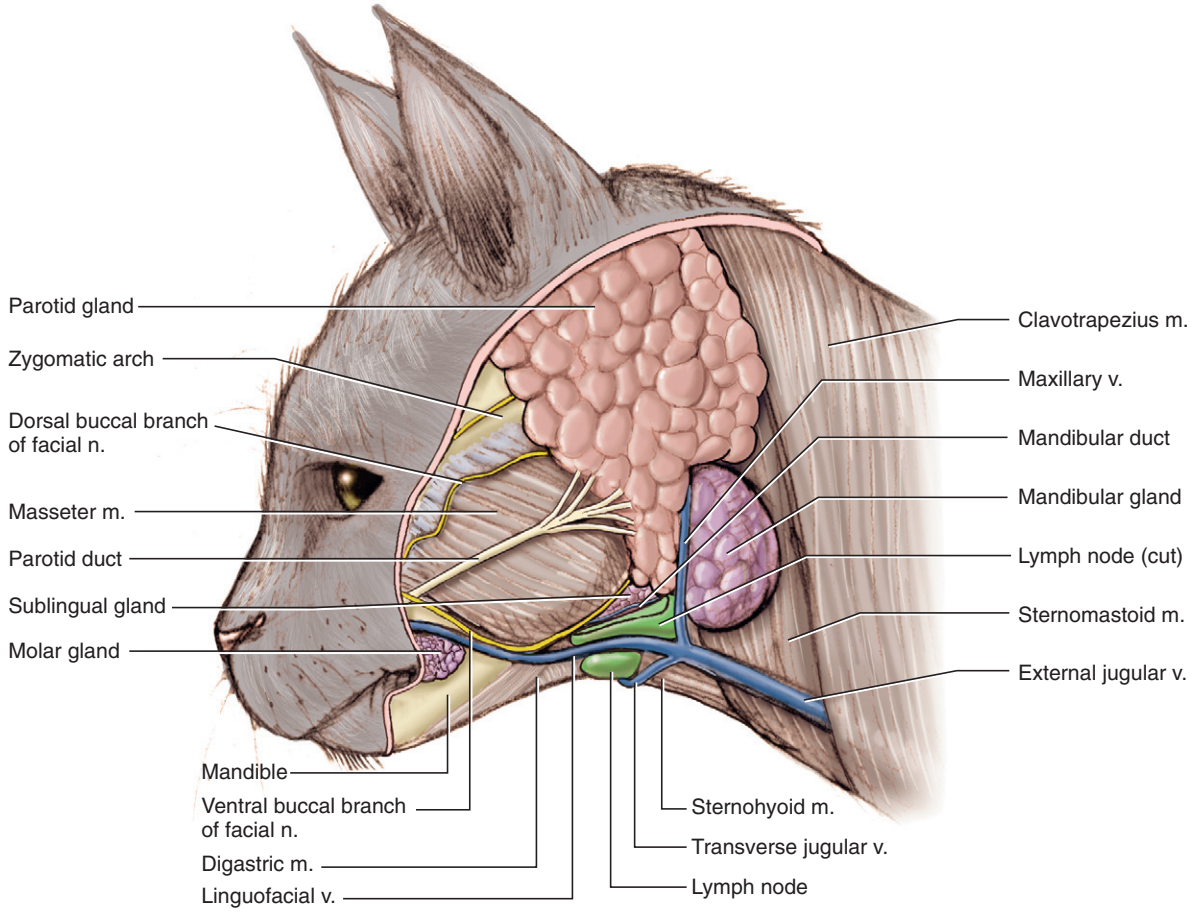


FIGURE 7.39 Muscles and other structures of the neck and head of the cat in lateral view.

buccal and ventral buccal branches (Figure 7.39), which are thinner than the duct. One branch lies dorsal and the other ventral to the duct. If you were indelicate in removing the skin, you may have already taken off the duct and nerves.

The **mandibular duct** emerges from the anteroventral part of the mandibular gland, just dorsal to the lymph node. Dissect carefully in this region. The duct will appear as a whitish strand, thinner than the parotid duct, that passes ventral to a small glandular mass. This is the long and narrow **sublingual gland** (Figure 7.57). Its posterior end usually abuts against the mandibular gland and may initially be confused as an extension of that gland. Tugging the anterior end of the sublingual gland will reveal that it is more extensive than it at first appears. The duct of the sublingual gland is difficult to discern grossly.

Return to the mandibular duct. Dissect the connective tissue binding it by gently pulling the duct taut with forceps and using a needle; a #11 scalpel blade, worked backward (i.e., the noncutting edge) also works very well. The proximal part of the duct crosses the surface of the **digastric muscle** as the latter turns dorsally toward the mastoid process of the skull. Continue dissecting anteriorly to reveal the duct and digastric. Note how the duct crosses the dorsal surface of the digastric and then passes medial to it. At this point, approach the digastric from the ventral surface of the jaw. Reflect and separate it from the mylohyoid. You should easily locate the mandibular duct as it passes deep to the edge of the mylohyoid. Reflect the mylohyoid (which was bisected earlier; see page 180 and Figure 7.38) to see the duct continuing anteromedially. The **lingual nerve** crosses the duct anteriorly (Figure 7.57). While studying this region, review the hypoglossal nerve (see also Figure 7.38). It is larger than the mandibular duct and extends almost parallel to it, but farther posteroventrally.

Oral Cavity and Pharynx

Once the salivary glands and their ducts have been examined, the **oral cavity** may be opened. To do this, the

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

mandible must be spread apart and the tongue pulled ventrally. Begin by separating the jaws, as follows. Locate the position of the symphysis, which lies between the two middle incisor teeth of the mandible. Place the edge of a fresh scalpel blade between the incisors on the anteroventral margin of the mandible and rock it back and forth. The blade will soon pass into the symphysis, separating the dentaries. Do not push hard on the scalpel. A rocking motion with steady, gentle pressure and patience are all that are needed. Place a finger on the dull side of the blade to help guide the scalpel.

When you have passed through the symphysis, use your fingers (but be careful; the cat's teeth are sharp) to spread the dentaries apart. One of them will probably break. Cut through the musculature and other tissues attaching to the medial surface of each dentary as far back as about the level of the lymph nodes. Then pull the **tongue** down through the dentaries to give you a clear view into the oral cavity.

In its broad, everyday sense, the **mouth** includes the structures such as the tongue and the teeth. In a strict sense, however, these structures are part of the oral cavity. The mouth is only the part between the **labia** (sing., **labium**) or lips. The oral cavity is subdivided into the **vestibule**, between the lips and teeth, and the **oral cavity proper**, bounded by the teeth anteriorly and laterally (Figure 7.40). Posteriorly it extends to just beyond the level of the hard palate. The epithelial covering of the hard palate has roughened transverse ridges, the **palatal rugae**.

The tongue almost completely fills the oral cavity when the mouth is closed. Pull the tongue dorsally and note the **lingual frenulum**, a vertical, median flap attaching the tongue to the cavity floor (Figure 7.40). The surface of the tongue bears various projections or papillae (Figure 7.41). The **filiform papillae** are most numerous. Interspersed among them are the rounded **fungiform papillae**. The **vallate papillae** are set in the posterodorsal surface of the tongue, and the **foliate papillae** are along the side of the posterior end of the tongue.

The paired **palatine tonsils** are set partially within **tonsillar fossae**. Just anterior to the tonsillar fossae are the **palatoglossal arches**, lateral folds that may be made more prominent by pulling the tongue downward. In the adult these arches mark the end of the oral cavity. Thus, the oral cavity extends somewhat beyond the level of the hard palate (Figure 7.40). The bones of the hyoid apparatus that pass to the base of the skull are embedded within the palatoglossal arches, as are small muscles that assist in swallowing. Extend the cuts made to open the oral cavity farther posteriorly to the level of the palatoglossal arches, but do not cut through the hyoid apparatus. This provides a better view of the oral cavity and **pharynx**.

The pharynx is the passage common, in part, to both the digestive and respiratory systems. It extends from a line through the posterior edge of the hard palate to a line through the posterior boundary of the larynx. The anterior part of the pharynx is subdivided into dorsal and ventral portions by the **soft palate**, the fleshy posterior continuation of the hard palate. The region dorsal to the soft palate is the exclusively respiratory **nasopharynx**; that ventral to the soft palate is the dominantly digestive **oropharynx** (which therefore lies posterior to the oral cavity). Posterior to the soft palate these become continuous and extend posteriorly to the **laryngopharynx**, which communicates with the larynx posteroventrally and the esophagus posterodorsally (Figure 7.40). Make a median slit in the soft palate to expose the nasopharynx. Anteriorly, it leads to the **choanae**. The opening of the **auditory tube** (which leads to the middle ear) lies on the dorsolateral wall of the nasopharynx. However, it is often swollen with fluid and may be difficult to find.

The **esophagus** is the muscular tube of the digestive system that extends from the laryngopharynx to the stomach. The **larynx** is the chamber at the anterior end of the **trachea** or windpipe (Figure 7.38) and is formed from several cartilages. The opening into the larynx is the **glottis**, which is guarded by the **epiglottis**, the plough-like, cartilaginous structure at the base of the tongue. The epiglottis, which is supported by an **epiglottal cartilage**, is flipped back to cover the glottis during swallowing, so that food passes posteriorly through the laryngopharynx and into the esophagus. Using a bent probe, flip the epiglottis forward and slide the probe posteriorly. It will pass through the glottis and enter the trachea. Palpate the trachea to verify this.

Cartilages that contribute to the larynx include the **thyroid**, **cricoid**, a pair of **arytenoid cartilages**, and the epiglottal cartilage just mentioned. Examine them by observing the throat region in ventral view. The thyroid is the largest cartilage. It was noted in connection with the thyrohyoid and sternothyroid muscles (see page 200 and Figures 7.38, 7.40, and 7.57). The thyroid is incomplete dorsally. Anteriorly, it contacts the thyrohyoid of the hyoid apparatus. The epiglottis rests against the anteroventral part of the thyroid. The cricoid lies slightly distal to the thyroid and forms a complete ring, but is narrower ventrally than dorsally. The **cricothyroid muscle** extends between these cartilages (Figure 7.38). Separate the larynx from surrounding tissue and observe its dorsal surface. The arytenoids (Figure 7.40) are small cartilages that help complete the larynx dorsally, anterior to the cricoid cartilage.

Make a midventral slit through the larynx and spread it open. Two folds of tissue are present on each side of the larynx. The **vocal cords** are the more posterior folds, extending between the arytenoid and thyroid cartilages (Figure 7.40). The glottis lies between them. The **false**

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

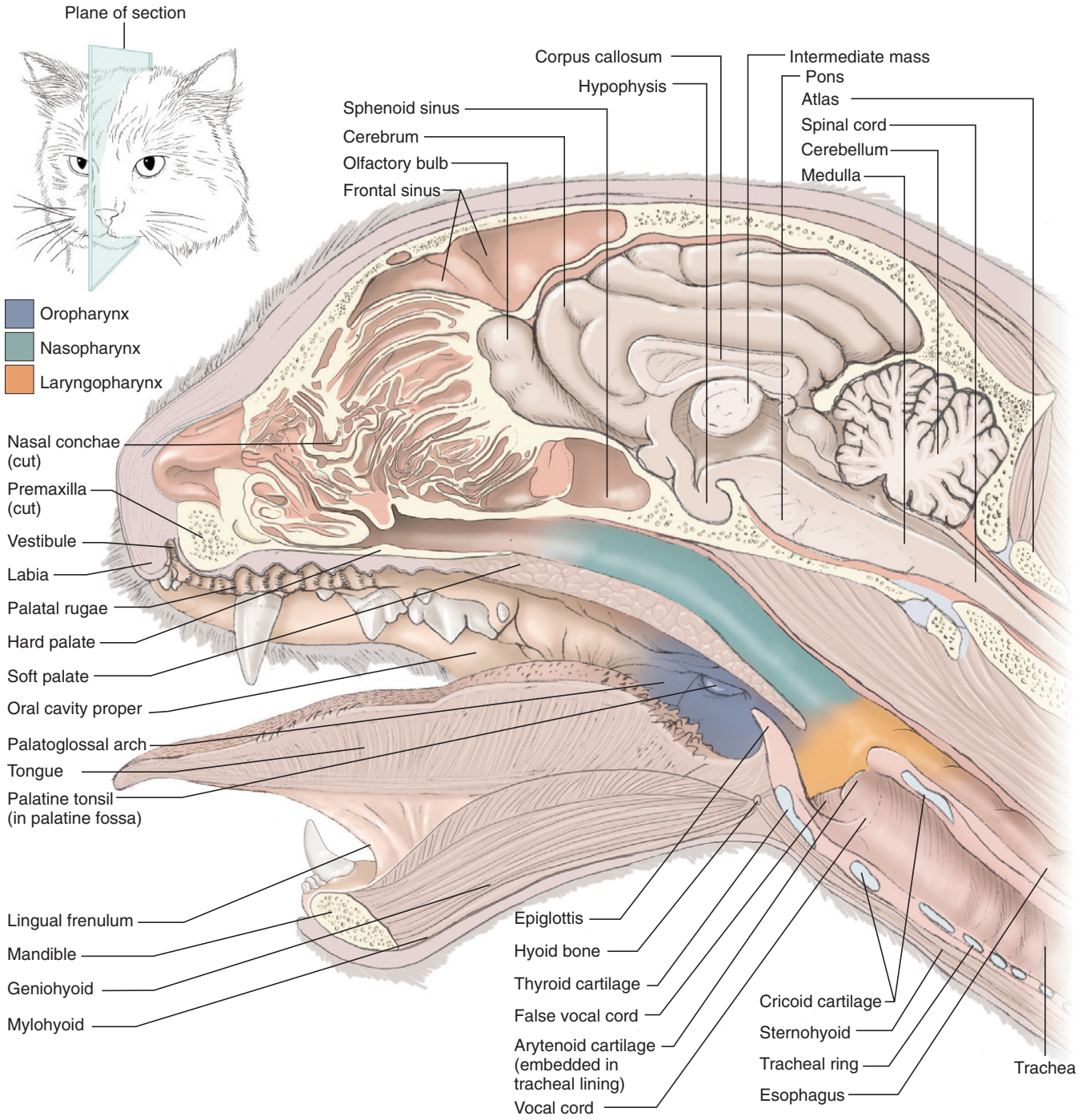


FIGURE 7.40 Head of the cat in sagittal section.

vocal cords are an accessory pair of folds, extending between the arytenoid and epiglottal cartilages. They are larger, looser, and lie anterior to the vocal cords.

The **tracheal cartilages** are C-shaped, dorsally incomplete cartilaginous elements that keep the trachea open (Figures 7.38 and 7.40). The esophagus lies dorsal to the trachea. To examine the rest of the respiratory system, it will be necessary to open the thorax.

The **thorax** is the region that contains the **thoracic cavity**, the anterior part of the body cavity or coelom. The thoracic cavity and **abdominopelvic cavity** (the posterior part of the coelom) are separated by a muscular partition, the **diaphragm** (Figure 7.42). The thoracic cavity is subdivided into three cavities: left and right pleural cavities, each containing a **lung**, and a median space, the **mediastinum**, which contains most of the

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

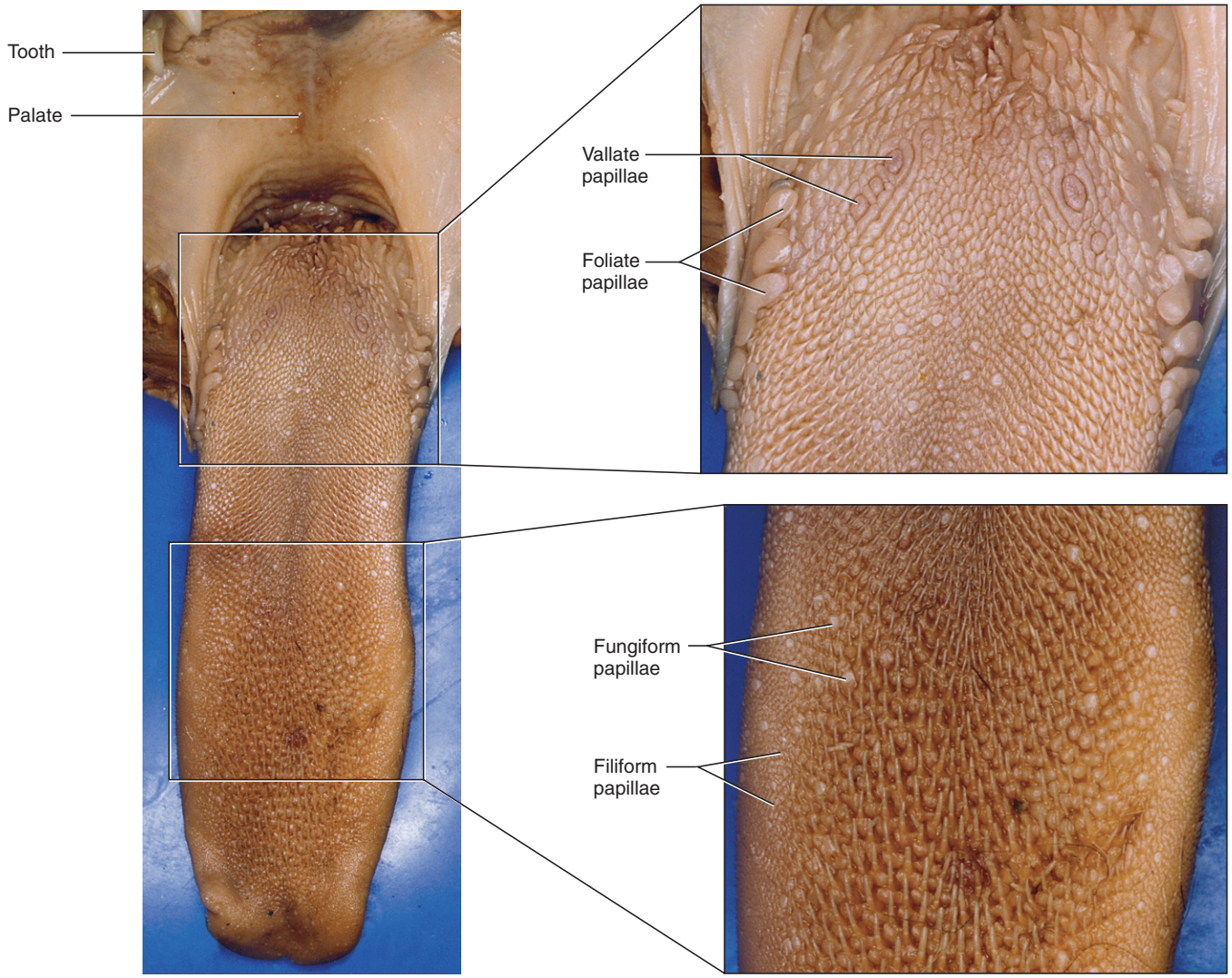


FIGURE 7.41 Tongue of the cat with blowups showing detail of the taste buds.

other structures that lie in or pass through the thorax (such as the heart, esophagus, trachea, and nearly all the vessels and nerves that pass through this region).

Subdivision of the thoracic cavity is due to the presence of thin epithelial membranes that line the inside wall of the cavity and cover the structures that lie within it. Enclosed body cavities (i.e., those that do not communicate with the exterior environment) such as the thoracic cavity are lined by serous epithelium, a membrane that produces a watery, lubricating secretion to help reduce friction between structures lined or covered by the membrane. The serosa of the thoracic cavity is termed **pleura**. There are two sheets of pleura, one on the right side and the other on the left. Portions of the pleura are designated based on position. That portion that lines the inside of the cavity is **parietal pleura**, whereas the portion that envelops the lung is **visceral pleura**. As noted, these are actually formed by one continuous sheet. The parietal pleura lines the inside of the cavity, but near the sagittal midline it reflects, so that it then passes to cover the lung. Where the right- and left-side pleura meet near the midline, they form a double layer termed the **mediastinal septum**. The mediastinum is the space or potential space between this double layer. Various structures, as noted earlier, may occupy this space, but in places the mediastinal septum remains as a double layered structure.

Open the right side of the thorax first by making a longitudinal cut about 1 cm to the right of the midventral line. Begin posteriorly, at about the midpoint of the xiphihumeralis muscles. This position should be just anterior to the diaphragm. You will be cutting through costal cartilages and ribs, as well as musculature, so use a strong pair of scissors. Spread open the thorax and locate the diaphragm. Now cut laterally, following along the anterior surface of the diaphragm. Extend the cut as

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

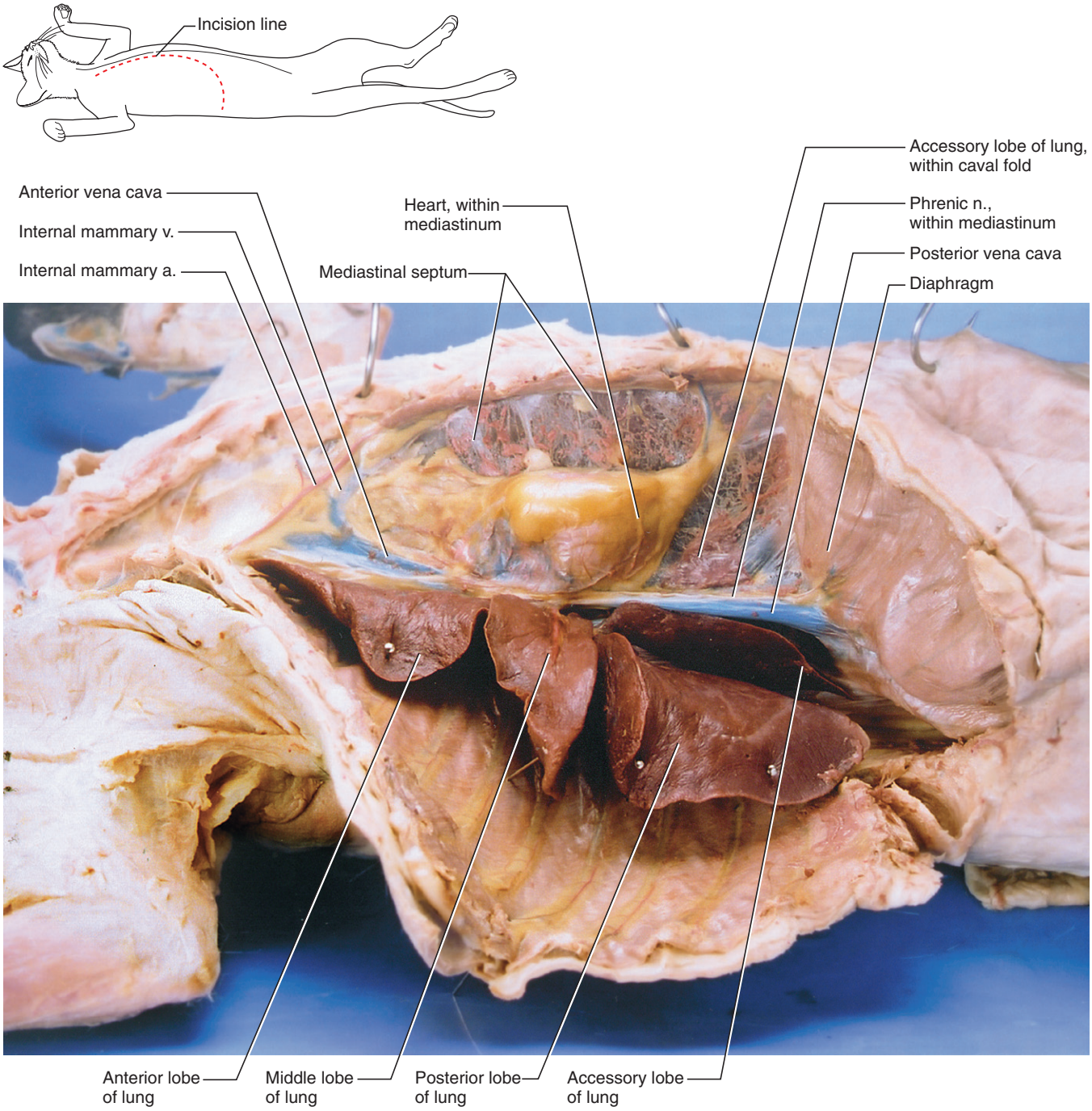


FIGURE 7.42 Right pleural cavity of the cat in lateral and slightly ventral view.

far dorsally as you can. Spread open the thorax further and nip the dorsal end of each rib, beginning posteriorly. This will allow you to push open the right side of the thorax, exposing the right pleural cavity and lung (Figures 7.42–7.44).

Examine the right pleural cavity. It is really only potentially a cavity, because it is filled in life by the lung. Its walls are lined by parietal pleura, whereas the lung is covered by visceral pleura (Figure 7.44). The parietal pleura is clearly visible on the inside of the thorax, where it covers the musculature (including the diaphragm) and ribs. You cut through it in exposing the thorax. In addition, the parietal pleura forms the medial wall of the pleural cavity. Between the medial walls of the right and left pleural cavities lies the mediastinum. The large bulge within it is the heart. Identify the mediastinal

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

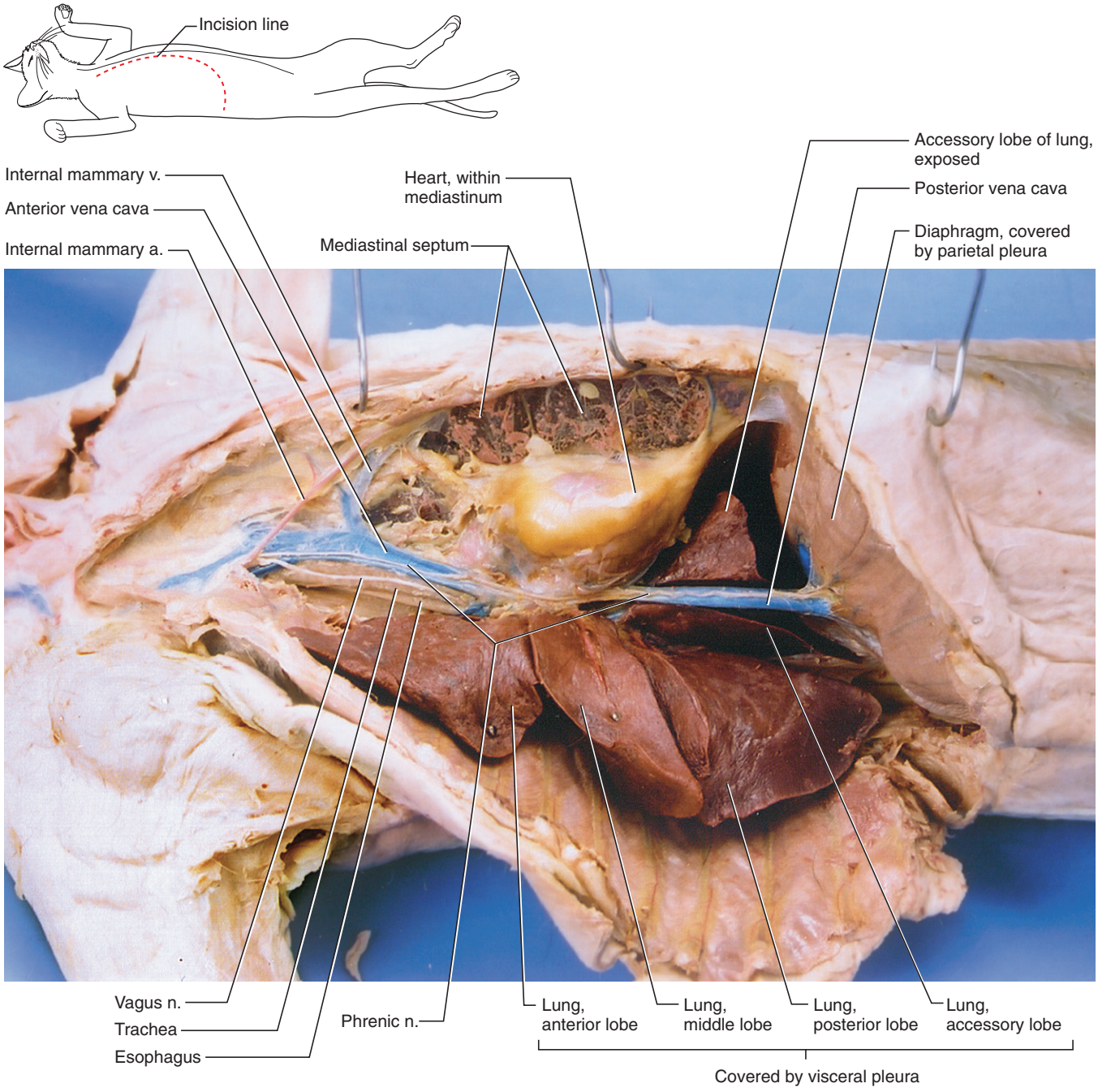


FIGURE 7.43 Deeper dissection of the right pleural cavity of the cat in lateral and slightly ventral view.

septum, which occurs where the pleurae of the right and left pleural cavities meet at the midline. Lift the sternum to observe the septum, but do not damage it (Figures 7.42 and 7.43).

The right lung consists of **anterior**, **middle**, **posterior**, and **accessory lobes**. The accessory lobe passes dorsal and then medial to a large vein, the **posterior vena cava**. This lobe may not be apparent at first because it lies in the **caval fold**, a pocket-like expansion of the mediastinal septum just posterolateral to the heart (Figures 7.42 and 7.43). Dissect the caval fold to expose the accessory lobe and the vena cava (Figure 7.43). The lung is suspended in the pleural cavity by the **pulmonary ligament**, a flat, broad, sheet-like connective tissue. To view it, pull the posterior lobe of the lung ventrally, and examine in lateral view the region dorsal to the lobe (Figure 7.44).

Next, push the lung laterally and look between the lung and mediastinal wall. At about the middle of its medial surface, a fold of pleura will be seen passing

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

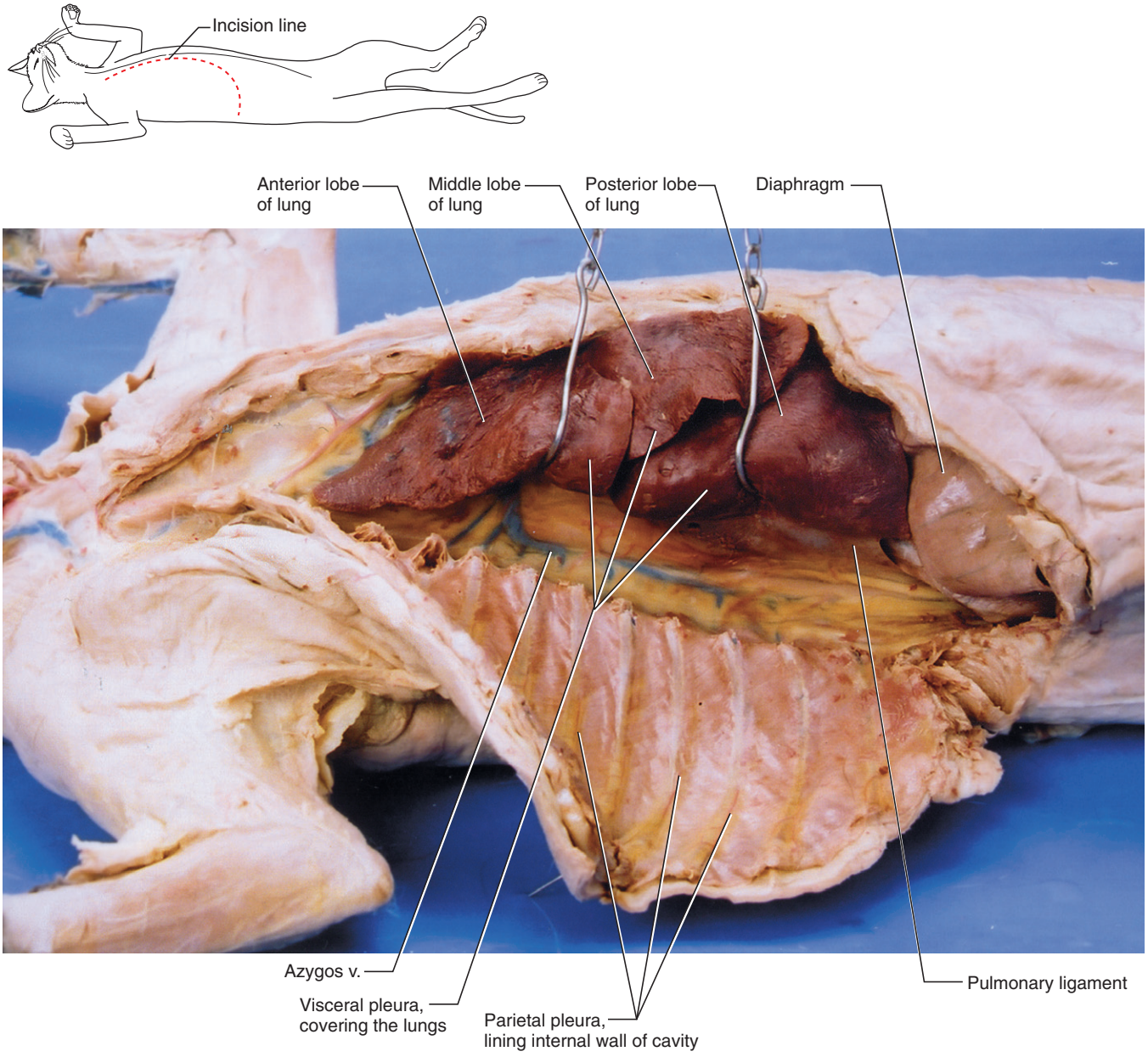


FIGURE 7.44 Deeper dissection of the right pleural cavity, with right lung lifted from dorsal wall, of the cat in lateral and slightly ventral view.

from the lung to the mediastinal wall. This fold is part of the pulmonary ligament. Various structures (such as the pulmonary vessels and the bronchus), collectively forming the **root of the lung**, pass through it.

Examine the mediastinal wall just ventral to the root of the lung. You should discern a thin, whitish strand extending anteroposteriorly. This is the **phrenic nerve**, which lies in the mediastinum and passes to the diaphragm (Figure 7.43). Using a needle, expose the phrenic nerve and follow it posteriorly as it passes along the ventral surface of the posterior vena cava. Also follow the nerve anteriorly as it passes along the mediastinum anterior to the heart. Break through into the mediastinum as you do so. Very delicately, clear away fat and connective tissue. The large vessel injected with blue latex is the **anterior vena cava**. Dorsal to it is the trachea; its cartilaginous elements should be easily recognizable. Note the **vagus nerve**, extending along the lateral surface of the trachea. Dorsal and slightly to the left of the trachea is the esophagus (Figure 7.43). Farther posteriorly, the esophagus passes through the diaphragm and joins the stomach. In contrast, the trachea remains within the thorax and bifurcates near the level of the sixth rib into right and left **primary bronchii**. Postpone their

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

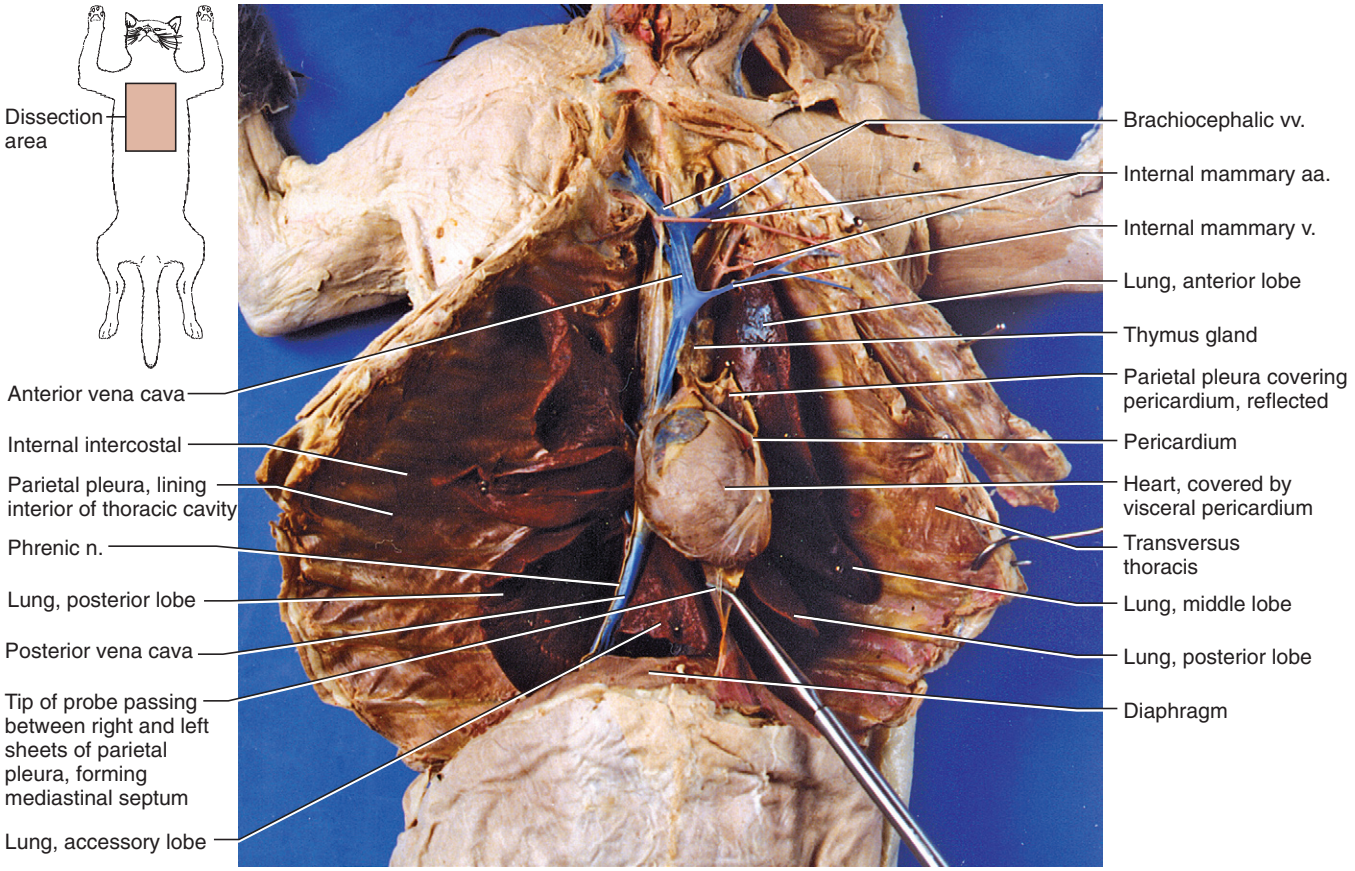


FIGURE 7.45 Thoracic cavity of the cat in ventral view.

study until the heart has been examined. Each bronchus in turn branches into **secondary** and **tertiary bronchii**, which further branch into bronchioles that end in the tiny respiratory structures of the lungs, the alveoli. The bronchioles and alveoli, however, cannot be easily dissected and observed grossly.

Open the left pleural cavity by making a longitudinal cut to the left of the midventral line and by repeating the procedures just described for the right plural cavity. This method produces a median flap that leaves the sternum intact. Examine the left lung, and identify the anterior, middle, and posterior lobes (Figure 7.45). The left lung lacks an accessory lobe. Find the left phrenic nerve, just ventral to the root of the lung.

Pericardial Cavity

Cut the median strip ventrally and break through the pleura ventral to the heart so you can lift the sternum (Figure 7.45). Be careful not to injure the internal mammary vessels passing to the inside of the strip. Peel the pleura away from the heart—there may be a considerable layer of fat deep to the pleura. Carefully clear the fat to reveal that the heart sits in its own space, the **pericardial cavity**, which is covered by a tough layer of **pericardium**. Note the great vessels of the heart anteriorly by cleaning away fat, but do not examine them at this time. Lift the apex of the heart (its posterior end) to better appreciate the extent of the accessory lobe of the right lung. With a pair of scissors, pierce the pericardium and cut it longitudinally to expose the surface of the heart, itself covered by **visceral pericardium** (Figure 7.45), while the inner surface of the pericaridium is lined by **parietal pericardium**.

Abdominopelvic Cavity

The abdominopelvic cavity forms the rest of the coelom posterior to the diaphragm and contains most of the structures of the digestive and urogenital systems. Open the abdominopelvic cavity by making a longitudinal incision, using scissors, about 1 cm to the right of the midventral line. Then cut laterally along the posterior margin of the diaphragm and spread open the muscular walls of the abdomen (Figure 7.46).

The abdominopelvic cavity and its contained structures are lined or covered with serous epithelium termed **peritoneum**. That portion lining the walls of the cavity

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

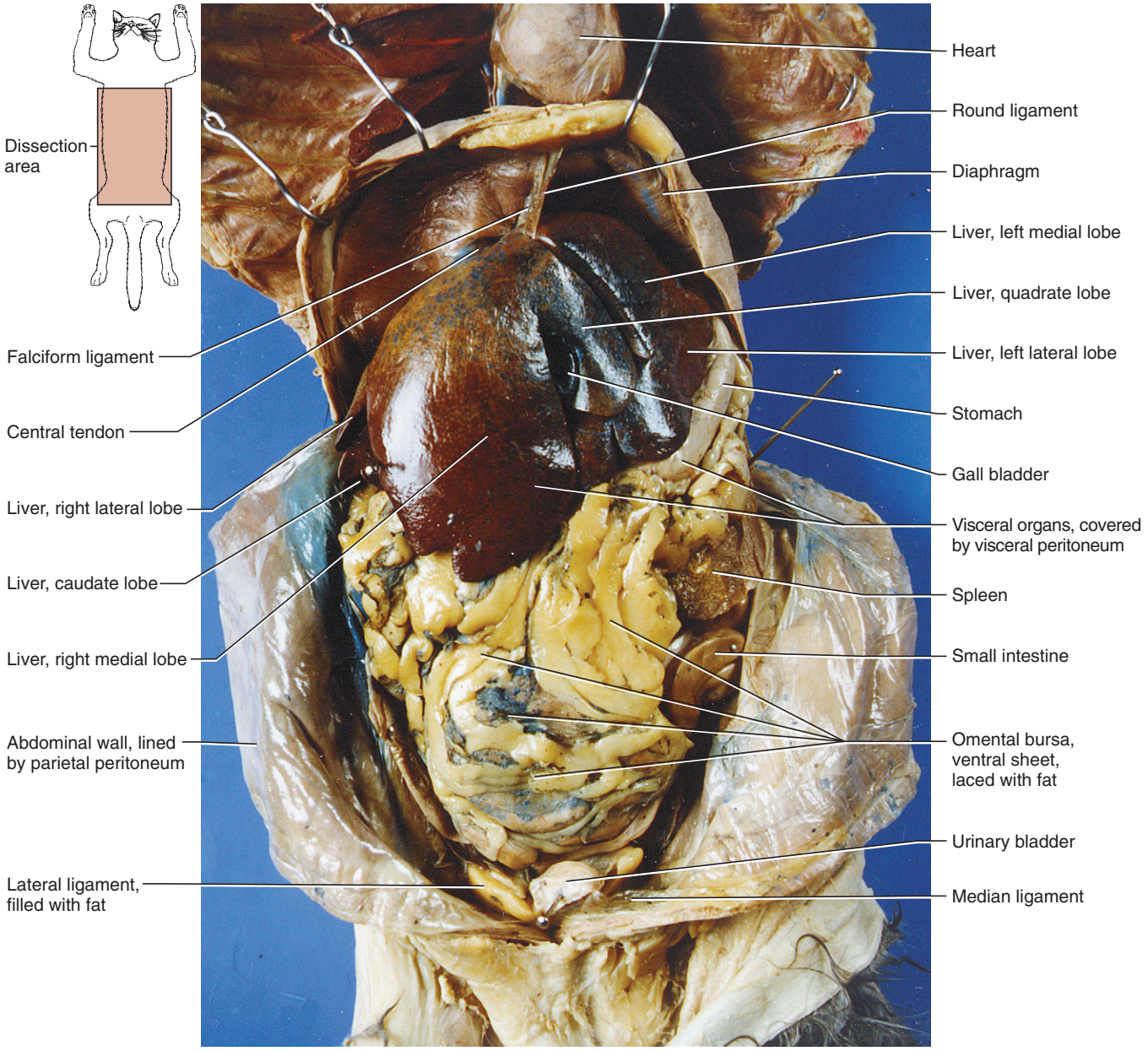


FIGURE 7.46 Abdominopelvic cavity of the cat in ventral view, with diaphragm reflected.

is **parietal peritoneum** and that covering structures within the cavity is **visceral peritoneum**. The peritoneum actually represents two separate sheets, each of which encloses separate cavities in the embryo. These cavities are the right coelom and left coelom, and the embryonic gut lies between them. Near the midsagittal plane, dorsal and ventral to the embryonic gut, the peritoneum of the right and left coela lie adjacent to each other, forming a sheet-like, double layer (similar to the pleurae of the thoracic cavity) of peritoneum that is termed a *mesentery*. Other organs, as they arise and enlarge in the embryo, come to occupy a position between the two layers and demarcate separate sections of mesentery. Subsequently in development, most of the ventral mesentery breaks down, creating a single space from the two originally separate coela. Whereas adults retain only small remnants of the ventral mesentery, nearly all the dorsal mesentery remains. Mesenteries serve mainly to support structures in the abdominopelvic cavity by anchoring them to the body wall (either directly or by way of other mesenteries) and to provide a channel for the passage of nerves and vessels. Examine an inside wall of the abdominopelvic cavity to observe parietal peritoneum.

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

Pressed tightly to the posterior surface of the diaphragm is the **liver**. It is covered by visceral peritoneum. Spread apart the liver and diaphragm. This will pull taut the **falciform ligament** (an example of ventral mesentery), which passes from the diaphragm to the liver and separates the liver into left and right halves. In overweight cats the falciform ligament may be hard to distinguish because it is very fatty. The free ventral edge of the falciform ligament may contain a slight expansion, the **round ligament**. The fibers of the diaphragm converge toward its center and insert on the **central tendon**, which may be difficult to discern. To see it, separate the liver and diaphragm and observe the posterior surface of the diaphragm. Run a finger along the anterior surface of the diaphragm, toward its center, to the left of the heart. You should be able to make out your finger through the translucent central tendon. The **coronary ligament** is a very short structure between the diaphragm and liver on either side of the falciform ligament, and binds the liver tightly to the diaphragm and lateral body wall.

As noted earlier, the falciform ligament separates the liver into right and left halves, each of which is further subdivided (Figures 7.46 and 7.47). The **right medial lobe** is considerably larger than the **left medial lobe**. Between these lobes is the small **quadrate lobe**. It is separated from the right medial lobe by the greenish, sac-like **gall bladder**. The quadrate and right medial lobes are connected anterior to the gall bladder, and in some specimens posterior to it as well. The **left lateral lobe** is larger than the **right lateral lobe**, which is partly hidden by the right medial. Lift the right lateral lobe to reveal the **caudate lobe**. The caudate lobe extends medially to the left, passing dorsal to the lesser omentum and hepatic portal vein (see later), as a smaller component. This portion and its relationship to the main part of the caudate lobe is best viewed once the remaining structures have been examined, as shown in Figure 7.58. Some authors consider the main portion of the caudate lobe as part of the right lateral lobe, and thus subdivide the latter into anterior and posterior portions, and restrict the caudate lobe only to the smaller medial extension described earlier. However, our designations here follow the scheme of Holmberger and Walker (2004) for the cat (and Evans, 1993, for the dog).

The **stomach** is the large, light-colored, sac-like organ partially exposed posterior to the left lateral lobe of the liver (Figure 7.46). Dorsal to the edge of this lobe, near the midline, find the esophagus passing through the diaphragm and into the stomach. The stomach's long, convex surface is the **greater curvature;** its shorter, concave surface is the **lesser curvature**. Distally, toward the right, the stomach constricts into the **pyloric sphincter**, the muscular, valve-like separation between the stomach and the duodenum. Make a slit in the ventral wall of the stomach and note the folds or **rugae** that line its inner walls. The large dark organ to the left of the stomach is the **spleen**.

Posterior to the stomach, the abdominopelvic cavity is covered ventrally by the **omental bursa**, a large, double-layered, fat-laced mesentery that covers the **intestines** like an apron (Figure 7.46). The bursa is a sac-like structure formed from the **mesogaster** or greater omentum, which is part of the dorsal mesentery. Its structure will be discussed shortly. The omental bursa extends posteriorly to the **urinary bladder**, the light-colored, median, sac-like organ lying ventrally. If it is empty, it resembles a collapsed balloon. The mesentery passing from the bladder to the midventral wall, just to the left of the incision made to open the abdominopelvic cavity, is the **median ligament** (Figure 7.46). The bladder is also supported by **lateral ligaments**, one on either side, that are often filled by wads of fat.

Return to the anterior part of the abdominopelvic cavity and spread apart the stomach and liver (Figure 7.48). The mesentery extending from the lesser curvature of the stomach and duodenum to the liver is the **lesser omentum** (another example of ventral mesentery), which is divided into two portions. One part, the **hepatogastric ligament**, passes from the lesser curvature to the liver. The other, passing from the proximal part of the duodenum to the liver, is the **hepatoduodenal ligament**, which appears to head toward the gall bladder. Various structures pass through the lesser omentum, including the **common bile duct** and the **hepatic artery**. These will be considered later.

The remaining mesenteries associated with the digestive system are mainly part of the dorsal mesentery. Similar subdivisions as were noted for the dogfish may be recognized, but they are more complex in the cat. The most conspicuous part is the mesogaster, which as previously mentioned forms a double-layered, sac-like omental bursa that is draped over the intestines. The greater omentum consists mainly of two sheets. The ventral sheet attaches to the greater curvature of the stomach and extends posteriorly (Figure 7.46). Near the urinary bladder the sheet curves dorsally and extends back toward the stomach as the dorsal sheet. The greater omentum is delicate and should be handled carefully. Slowly lift its posterior end away from the intestines (you will also lift the spleen) to see the dorsal sheet, which passes dorsal to the stomach (Figure 7.49). Just posterior to the stomach, the dorsal sheet contains glandular material, the **tail of the pancreas**, but do not examine it now. The omental bursa is this sac-like part of the greater omentum. Within it is the potential space, normally closed, known as the **lesser peritoneal cavity**. It communicates with the abdominopelvic cavity via the **epiploic foramen**, which will be described shortly. Part of the greater omentum, the **gastrosplenic ligament**,

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

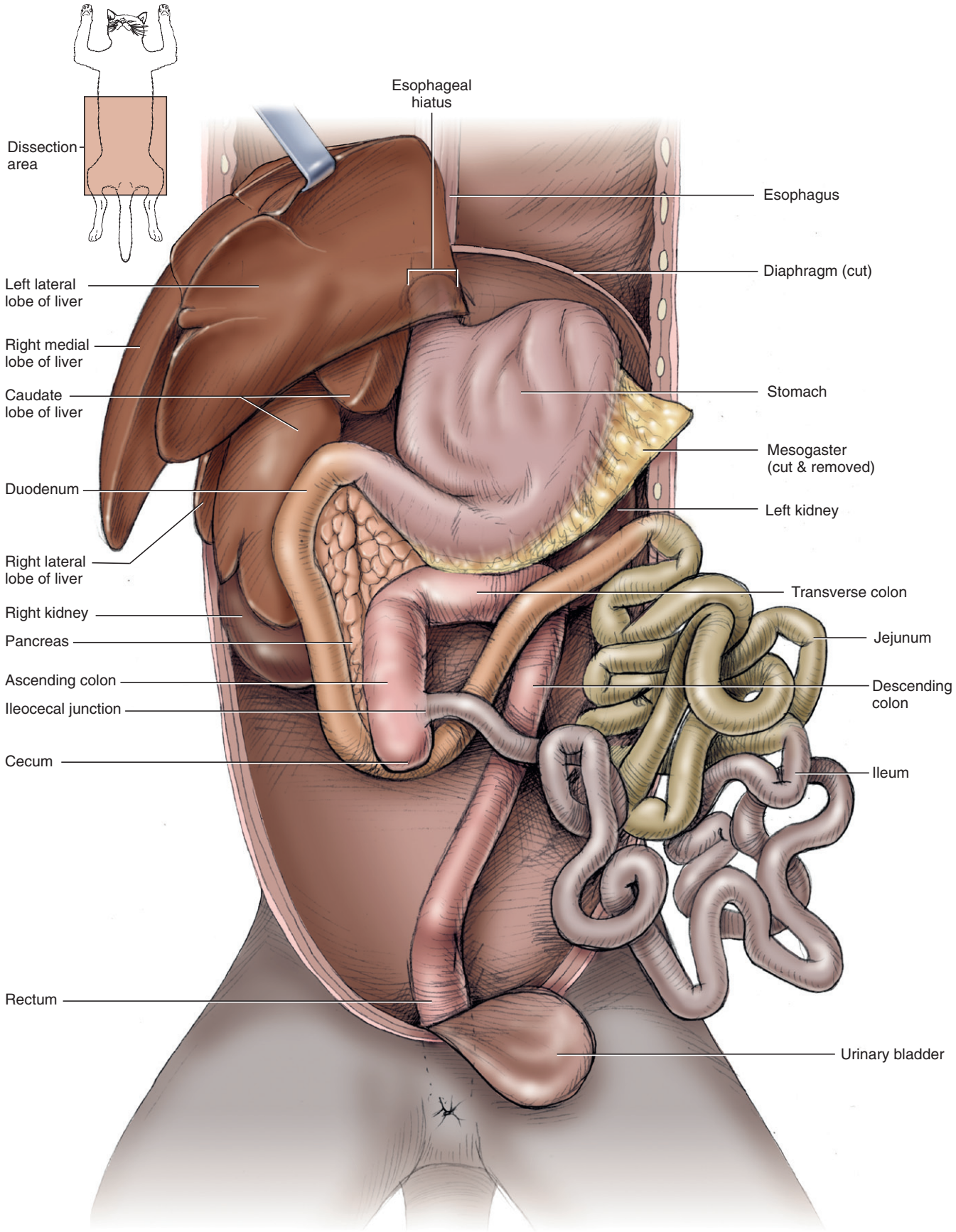


FIGURE 7.47 Diagrammatic illustration of the viscera of the cat in ventral view, with liver reflected to show arrangement of intestines.

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

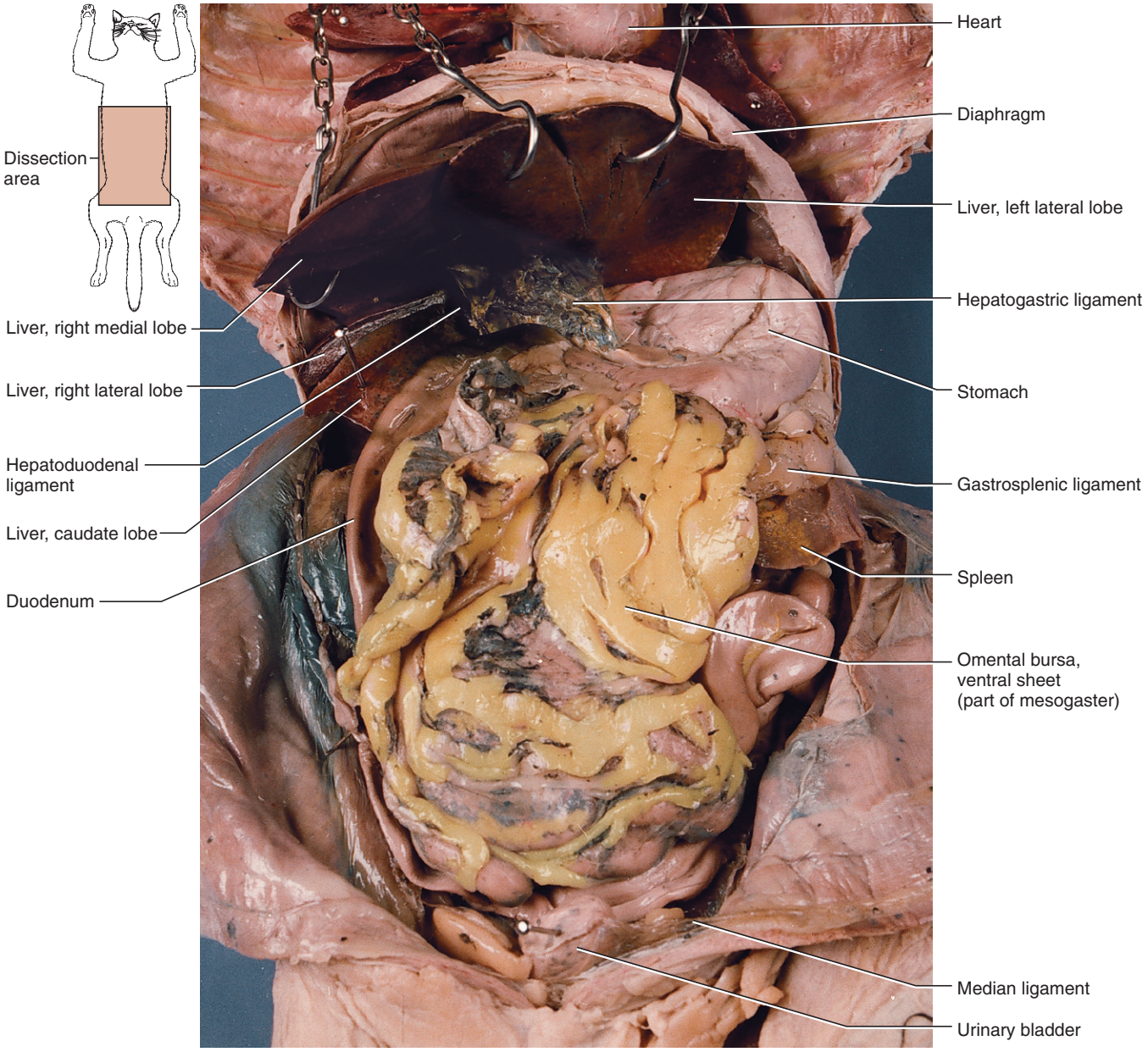


FIGURE 7.48 Abdominopelvic cavity of the cat in ventral view, with liver reflected.

stretches between the stomach and the spleen (Figure 7.46).

Return to the pyloric sphincter and trace the digestive tract distally without tearing through any mesenteries. Use Figure 7.47 to locate the structures described. The small intestine fills nearly all the abdominopelvic cavity posterior to the liver and stomach. It is subdivided into three parts. The **duodenum** is the short initial or proximal segment, comprising the first loop of the small intestine. The rest of the small intestine is subdivided into the middle **jejunum** and the distal **ileum**. The small intestine is tightly coiled and ends toward the right posterior part of the abdominal cavity, where it passes into the large intestine or **colon**. A very short segment of the colon continues posterior to its union with the small intestine as the blind-ended **cecum**. The main part of the colon includes the **ascending colon**, which extends anteriorly on the right side; the **transverse colon**, which passes from right to the left; and the **descending colon**, which extends posteriorly on the left side. Note that the duodenum loops dorsal to the colon and that the jejunum and rest of the small intestine pass ventrally to the rest of the colon. This position is due to rotation of the intestine during embryonic development. The colon

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

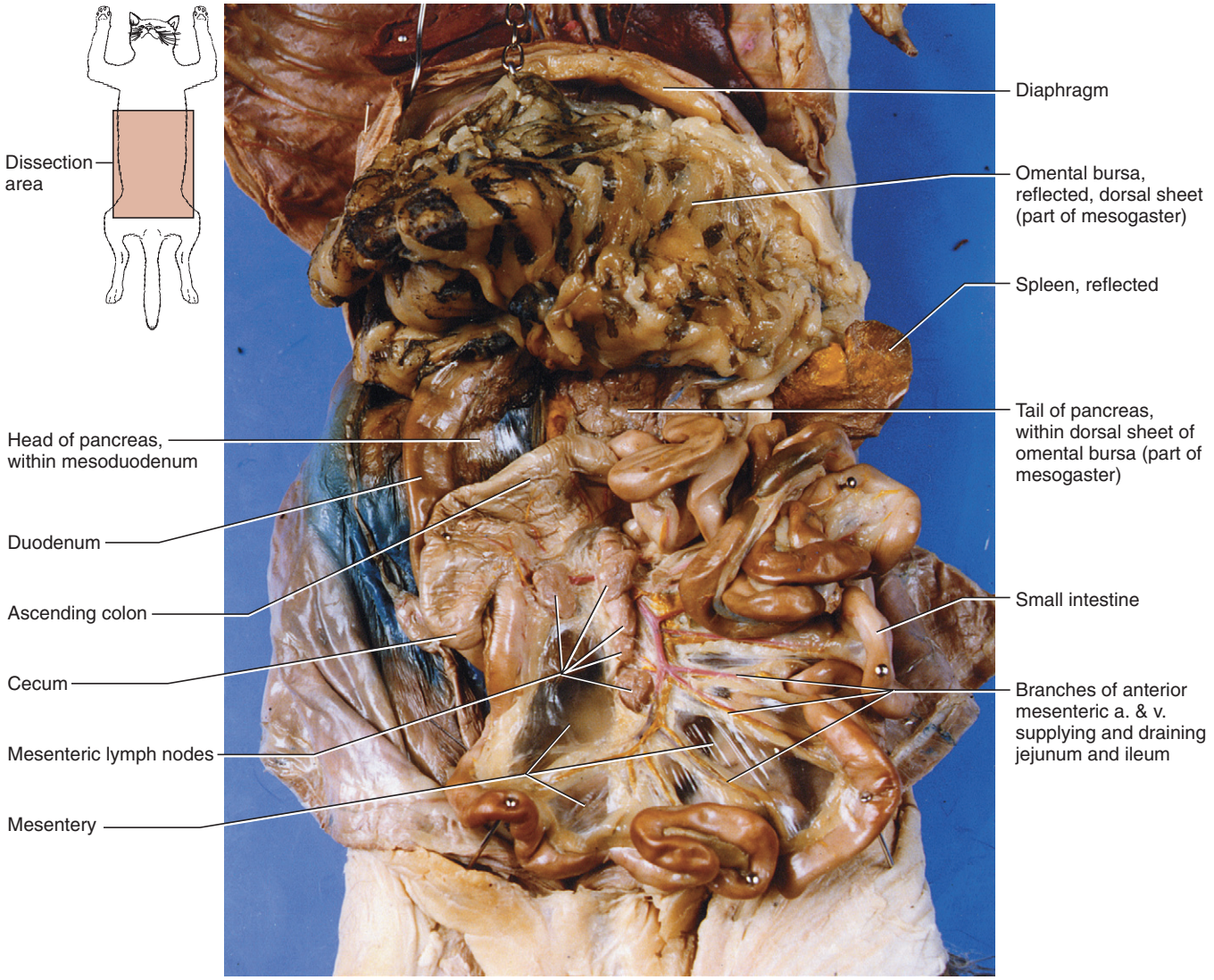


FIGURE 7.49 Abdominopelvic cavity of the cat in ventral view, with omental bursa and spleen reflected.

continues as the **rectum**, which lies in the pelvic canal and leads to the **anus**.

Lift the coils of the small intestine to reveal the descending colon, extending posteriorly, on the left side of the abdominopelvic cavity (Figure 7.50). Pull it gently to see that it is suspended by the **mesocolon**, which has a broad attachment to the middorsal body wall. The rectum is supported by the **mesorectum**.

The duodenum extends posteriorly along the right side of the abdominopelvic cavity and then turns anteromedially. Lift the duodenum to reveal the caudate lobe of the liver. Gently tug the duodenum ventrally and note that it is supported by the **mesoduodenum** (Figure 7.50), within which is the **head of the pancreas**. The **duodenocolic ligament**, a small, triangular mesentery with a free posterior margin, extends between mesoduodenum and mesocolon.

Examine the caudate lobe of the liver. The large oval swelling posterior to it is the right **kidney**. Lift the posterior end of the caudate lobe. The **hepatorenal ligament**, a small triangular mesentery, extends between the posteromedial end of the caudate lobe and the peritoneum covering the kidney (Figure 7.50).

The jejunum and ileum, the middle and distal parts of the small intestine, are supported by the **mesentery** proper (Figure 7.49). The mesentery has only a restricted attachment to the middorsal body wall, but it fans out to support all but the duodenal portion of the small intestine. Gently spread the coils of the intestine to see the mesentery clearly. Note the small **mesenteric lymph nodes** and the vessels within it.

The gall bladder is a sac used for bile storage. The various ducts associated with the gall bladder and liver are greenish, like the gall bladder itself. The ducts pass

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

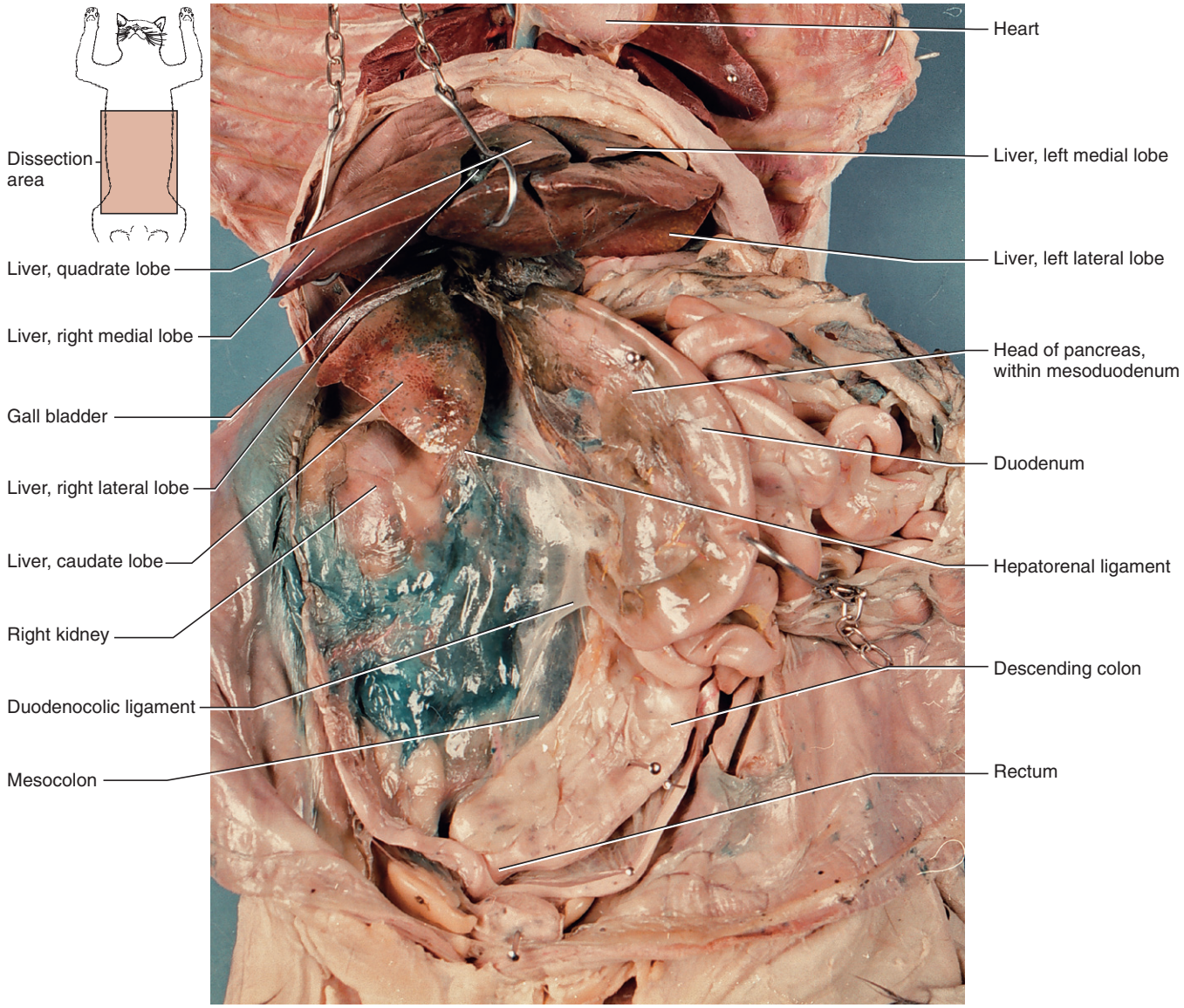


FIGURE 7.50 Abdominopelvic cavity of the cat in ventral view, with liver, intestines, and pancreas reflected.

to the duodenum through the lesser omentum. To view these structures, carefully dissect the lesser omentum near the caudate lobe of the liver and the gall bladder. Do not injure the vessels that are also present in the lesser omentum. The **cystic duct** (Figure 7.58) is the duct of the gall bladder. It extends a short distance toward the duodenum before it is joined by usually two **hepatic ducts** from the liver. The confluence of the cystic and hepatic ducts forms the **common bile duct**, which continues to the duodenum. Follow the common bile duct to its entrance into the duodenum.

Return to the ventral sheet of the omental bursa and cut across its attachment to the stomach. Examine the dorsal sheet and distinguish the tail of the pancreas (Figure 7.49). Follow the tail toward the right, noting that it is partly tucked behind the stomach and then curves ventrally along the medial side of the duodenum, within the mesoduodenum, as the head of the pancreas. The pancreas consists of endocrine and exocrine glandular tissue. Of the two, the exocrine portion makes by far the larger part (the endocrine portion consists of small pockets of tissue termed *islets of Langerhans*, which cannot be distinguished grossly). The pancreas has two ducts that carry its exocrine secretion to the duodenum. The main **pancreatic duct** passes, together with the bile duct, to the duodenum. Find it in this region and trace it for a short distance into the head of the pancreas by carefully scraping away pancreatic tissue.

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

Key Terms: Digestive and Respiratory Systems

abdominopelvic cavity
anterior vena cava
anus
arytenoid cartilages
ascending colon
auditory tube
bronchus: primary, secondary, tertiary (plur., **bronchii**)
caval fold
cecum
central tendon
choanae
colon
common bile duct
coronary ligament
cricoid cartilage
cricothyroid muscle
cystic duct
descending colon
diaphragm
digastric muscle
duodenocolic ligament
duodenum
epiglottal cartilage
epiglottis
epiploic foramen
esophagus
facial nerve
falciform ligament
false vocal cords
filiform papillae
foliate papillae
fungiform papillae
gall bladder
gastrosplenic ligament
glottis
greater curvature
hepatic artery
hepatic ducts
hepatoduodenal ligament
hepatogastric ligament
hepatorenal ligament
ileum
intestines
jejunum
kidney
labia (sing., **labium**; lips)
laryngopharynx
lateral ligaments
lesser curvature
lesser omentum
lesser peritoneal cavity
lingual frenulum
lingual nerve
linguofacial vein (anterior facial vein)
liver: caudate lobe, left lateral lobe, right lateral lobe, right medial lobe, left medial lobe, quadrate lobe
lung: anterior, middle, posterior, accessory lobes
lymph nodes
mandibular duct
mandibular gland
maxillary vein (posterior facial vein)
median ligament
mediastinal septum
mediastinum
mesenteric lymph nodes
mesentery
mesocolon
mesogaster (greater omentum)
mesoduodenum
mesorectum
mouth
nasopharynx
omental bursa
oral cavity (= **oral cavity proper** + **vestibule**)
oral cavity proper
oropharynx
palatal rugae
palatine tonsils
palatoglossal arches
pancreas: head, tail
pancreatic duct
parietal pericardium
parietal peritoneum
parietal pleura
parotid duct
parotid gland
pericardial cavity
pericardium
peritoneum
pharynx
phrenic nerve
pleura
posterior facial vein
posterior vena cava
pulmonary ligament
pyloric sphincter
rectum
root of the lung
round ligament
ruga (plur., **rugae**)
soft palate
spleen
stomach
sublingual gland
thoracic cavity
thorax

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

thyroid cartilage
tongue
tonsillar fossae (tonsillar pits)
trachea
tracheal cartilages
transverse colon
urinary bladder
vagus nerve
vallate papillae
vestibule
visceral pericardium
visceral peritoneum
visceral pleura
vocal cords

SECTION V: CARDIOVASCULAR SYSTEM

Heart

The **heart** lies within the pericardial cavity, which is isolated from the mediastinum by the **pericardium** (see page 212). To complete the study of the heart and its vessels, remove the pericardium carefully, especially near the roots of the lungs and where the great vessels leave the heart (see Figure 7.45). The heart has a flattened, anterior **base** and a pointed, posterior **apex**. Within the heart are the left and right **atria** (sing., **atrium**) anteriorly and the left and right **ventricles** posteriorly. The small arteries and veins on the surface of the heart are the **coronary arteries** (red) and **veins** (blue), which respectively supply and drain the heart (see Figure 7.45).

On the ventral surface of the heart, the separation of the ventricles is marked by the **interventricular groove**, which passes anteriorly on the left to posteriorly on the right and is often filled with fat. A similar interventricular groove is also present on the dorsal surface of the heart. The separation between the atria and ventricles is represented by the **coronary sulcus**, which is also usually filled with fat. The lateral extension of each atrium is the **auricle** (Figures 7.52 and 7.53), which has scalloped margins and is usually darker than the rest of the heart tissue. The great vessels that leave the heart anteriorly pass between the left and right auricles.

Before examining the other structures of the cardiovascular system, it is useful to review the basic flow of blood. Oxygen-depleted blood from the body returns to the right atrium through the **anterior** and **posterior venae cavae** (sing., **vena cava**). From there, it is pumped to the right ventricle, which pumps it through the pulmonary arteries to the lungs for reoxygenation. From the lungs, oxygenated blood returns to the heart via the pulmonary veins to the left atrium. The blood then enters the left ventricle, which pumps it through the aorta and arteries to the rest of the body. Note that a vessel is defined based on the direction of blood flow within it (toward or away from the heart), not on the type of blood it carries (oxygenated or oxygenated-depleted). A *vein* carries blood toward the heart, and an *artery* carries blood away from the heart.

Vessels

Main Vessels Associated with the Heart

The great vessels leave the base of the heart (Figures 7.45 and 7.55). The **pulmonary trunk** leads from the right ventricle. It is located on the middle part of the ventral surface and angled toward the left. The **aorta**, carrying blood from the left ventricle, extends anteriorly just dorsal to the pulmonary trunk and medial to the right auricle. It curves sharply to the left as the **aortic arch**, and then posteriorly, passing dorsal to the root of the left lung, as the **thoracic aorta** (Figure 7.51). Dissect carefully between the aortic arch and pulmonary trunk to find a tough ligamentous band connecting these vessels. This is the **ligamentum arteriosum**, a remnant of the ductus arteriosus, through which blood was shunted in the fetus.

The pulmonary trunk is very short and divides almost immediately into left and right **pulmonary arteries** (injected with blue latex). The left pulmonary artery is clearly discernable as it passes laterally to the left lung. The right pulmonary artery passes under the aortic arch to reach the right lung. Blood from the lungs returns to the left atrium through left and right **pulmonary veins** (injected with red latex), which are easily seen ventrally on the roots of the lungs (Figure 7.51). Blood from the body returns to the heart via the venae cavae. The **anterior vena cava**, draining the region anterior to the diaphragm has already been noted during dissection of the mediastinum. The **posterior vena cava** drains the regions posterior to the diaphragm. Lift the right side of the heart and note these vessels entering the right atrium (Figures 7.42, 7.43, and 7.53).

The peripheral distribution, including the main branches and tributaries, of vessels that leave the heart is treated in the following sections. Diagrams that summarize the patterns are provided at the end of this section in Figures 7.64 through 7.67.

Vessels Anterior to the Diaphragm

The vessels described here are branches of the aortic arch and thoracic aorta and tributaries of the anterior vena cava, which, respectively, mainly supply and drain the regions of the body anterior to the diaphragm. The summit of the aortic arch gives rise to two main vessels (Figures 7.55 and 7.56). The larger, on the right, is the **brachiocephalic artery**; the other is the **left subclavian artery**. The anterior vena cava lies just to the right of the brachiocephalic artery. To trace these vessels anteriorly,

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

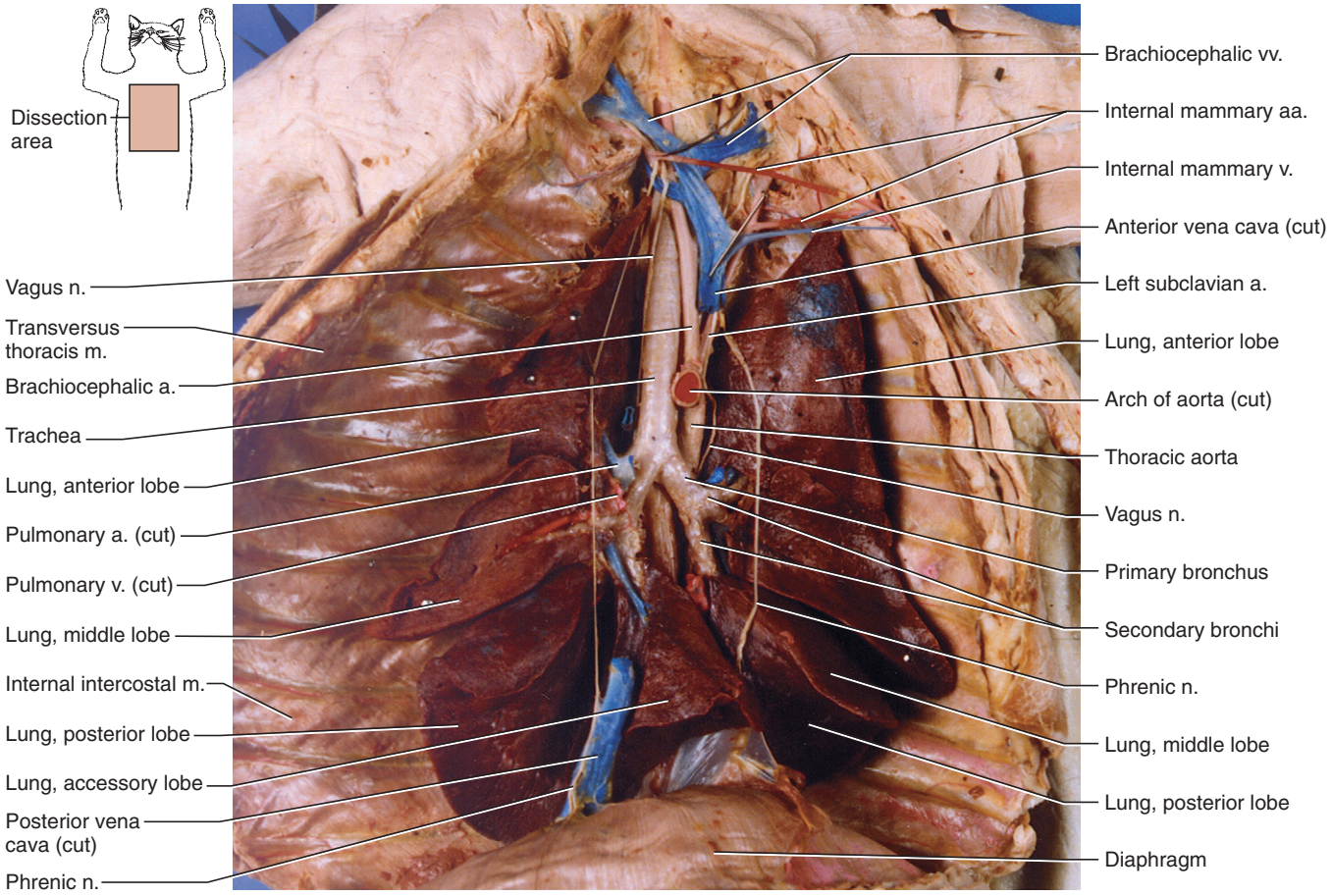


FIGURE 7.51 Thoracic cavity of the cat in ventral view, showing respiratory system, vessels, and nerves.

remove the connective tissue (including the thymus, which may be rather large in younger specimens) and fat associated with them, but avoid injuring the nerves.

Begin by tracing the main tributaries of the anterior vena cava (Figures 7.53 and 7.54). One or two small branches arise from the anterior vena cava, but its most posterior branch is the **azygos vein** (Figures 7.44, 7.52–7.54) from the dorsal surface of the vena cava; lift the heart to observe it. The azygos passes a very short distance dorsally, turns abruptly posteriorly, and then passes dorsal to the root of the right lung along the right side of the body. It mainly drains the intercostal areas posterior to the heart through the **intercostal veins** from both sides of the body. The anterior intercostal areas are drained by the **highest intercostal veins**. That of the right side often enters the anterior part of the azygos, but may enter the vena cava directly, a short distance anterior to the azygos. The left highest intercostal vein typically enters the left side of the vena cava between the second and third ribs. The **intercostal arteries** and **highest intercostal arteries** that supply these areas extend closely in parallel with the veins; their origins are considered later.

The next large branch, the **internal mammary vein**, enters the ventral surface of the anterior vena cava. It is a short trunk formed from the confluence of **left** and **right internal mammary veins**, which pass along the inner wall of the chest on either side of the sternum (Figure 7.45). The **left** and **right internal mammary arteries** extend, for most of their length, parallel to the veins. A short distance anterior to the internal mammary vein, the anterior vena cava is formed by the confluence of the **left** and **right brachiocephalic veins**. The tributaries of the brachiocephalic veins are similar but usually not symmetric. The **costocervical + vertebral trunk,** a large vein formed by the confluence of the **costocervical vein** and **vertebral vein**, commonly enters the right brachiocephalic dorsolaterally just before or very near the union of the right and left brachiocephalic veins. On the left side, the costocervical + vertebral trunk usually enters the left brachiocephalic slightly more anteriorly. In either case, the trunk curves dorsally. Follow the trunk to observe its tributaries. The vertebral vein heads almost directly anteriorly, whereas the costocervical heads mainly laterally and then posteriorly. In some specimens the right costocervical and vertebral veins

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

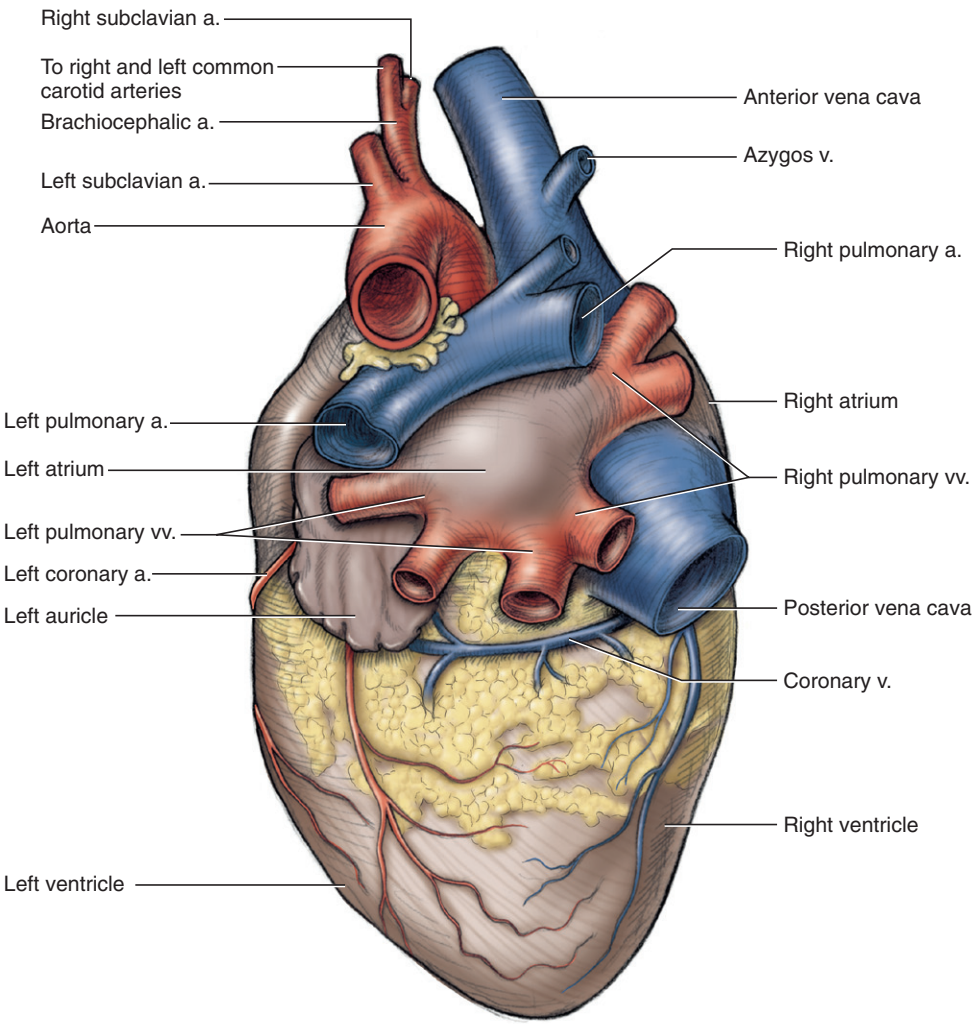


FIGURE 7.52 Heart and vessels of the cat in dorsal view.

have separate entrances, as is shown in the right side of Figure 7.54.

The brachiocephalic vein is formed by the **subclavian vein** and **bijugular trunk,** large vessels that unite just medial to the first rib. The subclavian passes laterally and helps drain the forelimb. The bijugular trunk is a very short vessel formed by the large **external jugular vein** and the much smaller **internal jugular vein**. The external jugular passes anteriorly along the lateroventral surface of the neck, whereas the internal jugular vein passes more medially along the neck. The internal jugular primarily drains the palate, pharynx, and inside of the skull, and may not be injected. In some individuals, the internal and external jugular veins unite at about the same level as the subclavian; in others, the internal jugular may even join the brachiocephalic vein. Thus, you will not necessarily be able to identify vessels based only on branching patterns; it is good practice to follow them distally toward the structures they serve. Do not confuse the internal jugular veins with the very small ventral thyroid vein. Although the latter is usually injected, it is a median unpaired vessel in the throat region. You will find an internal jugular vein lying just lateral to a common carotid artery (see later), whereas the ventral thyroid lies between the right and left common carotid arteries and empties into one of the brachiocephalic veins.

The external jugular helps drain two main areas, the forelimb and the external structures of the head. Drainage of the forelimb is accomplished through its first main tributary, the **transverse scapular vein**. As was observed earlier (page 185), this vessel enters the external jugular at about the level of the front of the shoulder. A main tributary of the transverse scapular is the **cephalic vein**, also observed earlier passing along the lateral surface of the forelimb (pags 179 and 181). Farther anteriorly the external jugular has three main tributaries, but their branching patterns vary (Figure 7.39). Often,

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

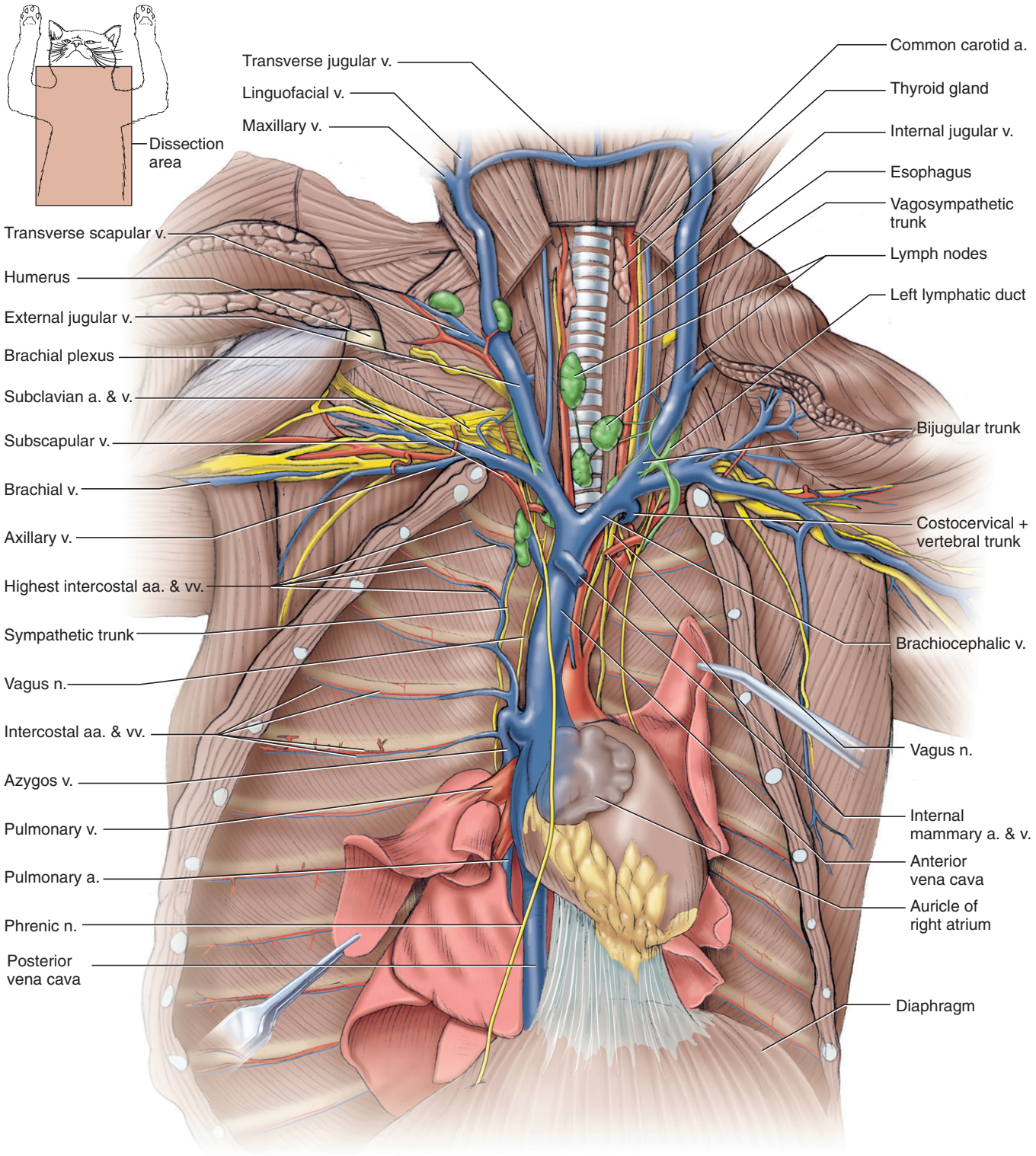


FIGURE 7.53 Vessels and nerves anterior to the heart of the cat in ventral view.

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

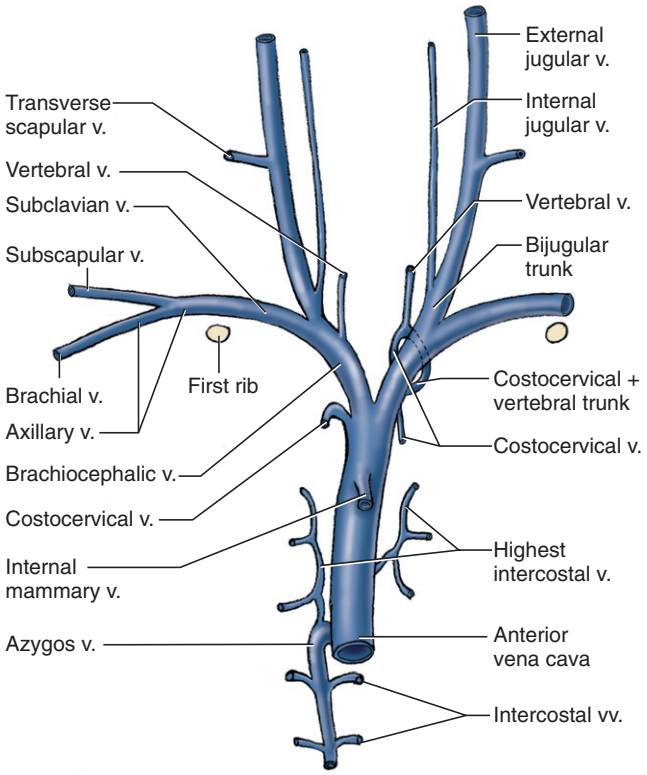


FIGURE 7.54 Schematic illustration of the veins anterior to the heart of the cat in ventral view.

they converge close together to form the external jugular. The **transverse jugular vein** forms a ventral link between the left and right external jugular veins, and helps drain the neck. The **linguofacial vein** passes anteriorly to the face and lower jaw. The **maxillary vein** extends anterodorsally, crosses the mandibular gland, and passes deep to the parotid gland (see page 181).

Return to the aortic arch, and reidentify the brachiocephalic and left subclavian arteries (Figures 7.55 and 7.56). Just to the left of the subclavian, two slender **intercostal arteries** usually arise from the arch to help supply the more anterior intercostals regions. Follow the aorta as it curves posteriorly and dorsally. Lift the left lung to observe the remaining intercostal arteries that arise from the thoracic aorta and are accompanied by the intercostal veins, which were just described. The left subclavian artery eventually supplies the left forelimb, but before doing so gives off various substantial branches that supply other structures in the trunk and neck (as does the right subclavian artery). Tracing of these branches is deferred until the branches of the brachiocephalic artery have been studied.

The brachiocephalic artery heads anteriorly, just medial to the anterior vena cava. At about the level of the internal thoracic vein, it gives rise to three branches, the right **subclavian artery**, and the **right** and **left common carotid arteries**. The subclavian lies most laterally, and the common carotids pass anteriorly on either side of the trachea. The arteries pass deep to the anterior vena cava and brachiocephalic veins. The left common carotid sometimes arises independently, with the right common carotid and right subclavian arising farther distally from a very short common trunk. All three arteries, however, may arise very close together.

As the common carotids ascend the neck, they send out various small branches to supply the thyroid gland, muscles, and lymph nodes. Note the nerves present in this region. The **phrenic** and **vagus nerves** were observed passing through the thorax (Figures 7.42 and 7.43). In the cervical region, the vagus and the anterior extension of the **sympathetic trunk** (Figure 7.53) form the **vagosympathetic trunk**, which is bound together with the common carotid artery and internal jugular vein by a tough connective sheath. The vagus and sympathetic trunk separate near the branching of the brachiocephalic artery. The sympathetic trunk extends anteroposteriorly along the dorsal wall of the thorax, crossing ventral to the intercostal arteries and veins. Carefully dissect it out, and note the series of small ganglia along its course.

Follow one of the common carotids as it approaches the skull, near which it divides. Its main branch is the **external carotid artery**, which is as wide as the common carotid artery, so the division is not readily apparent (Figure 7.57). Find the branching point as follows. A short distance posterior to the masseter muscle, locate the **hypoglossal nerve**, which was observed earlier (page 202). The nerve crosses the very proximal part of the external carotid artery, so the division of the common carotid occurs just posterior to the nerve. Carefully dissect along the dorsal surface of the common carotid, just posterior to the hypoglossal nerve. In most mammals three small arteries usually arise in very close proximity. These are the internal carotid, and the **occipital** and **ascending pharyngeal arteries**; the last two usually arise by a short, common trunk. These arteries can be dissected, but they may be difficult to find because they are small, are closely bound by connective tissue, and in the cat one of the arteries, the internal carotid artery, is largely occluded and represented by a whitish strand, the **internal carotid ligament**. (Only the proximal portion of the internal carotid artery is occluded. Its distal part, within the skull, remains functional, receiving blood via anastomoses with other arteries, such as the maxillary and ascending pharyngeal.) The arteries and ligament pass anterodorsally with the ligament being most posterior of the three. Thus, even though they arise almost together with the internal carotid ligament, the occipital and ascending pharyngeal arteries are actually the first branches of the external carotid artery. The ligament extends nearly dorsally, and so is not visible in Figure 7.57. These three small vessels may

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

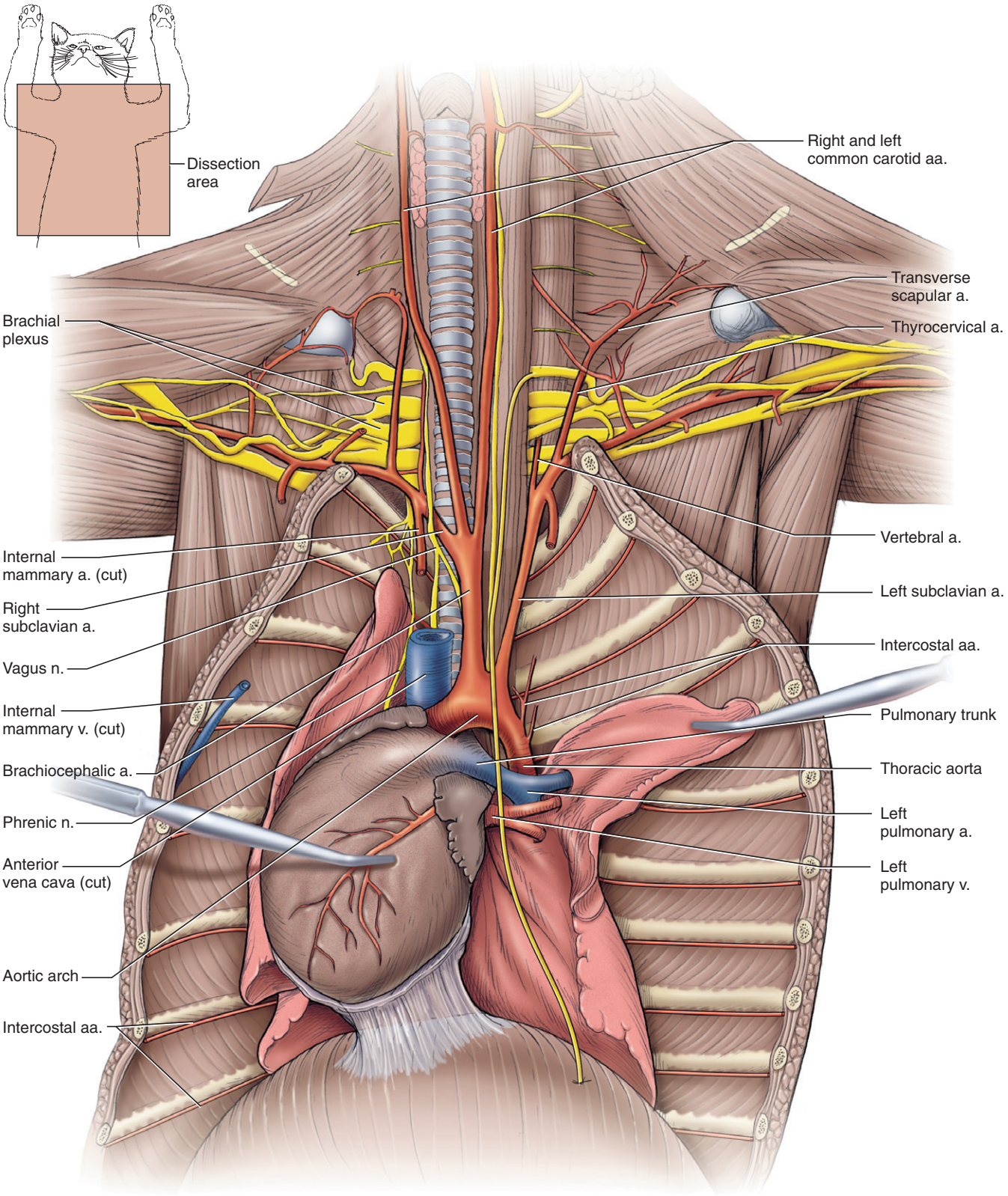


FIGURE 7.55 Arterial and partial venous systems and nerves anterior to the heart of the cat in ventral view.

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

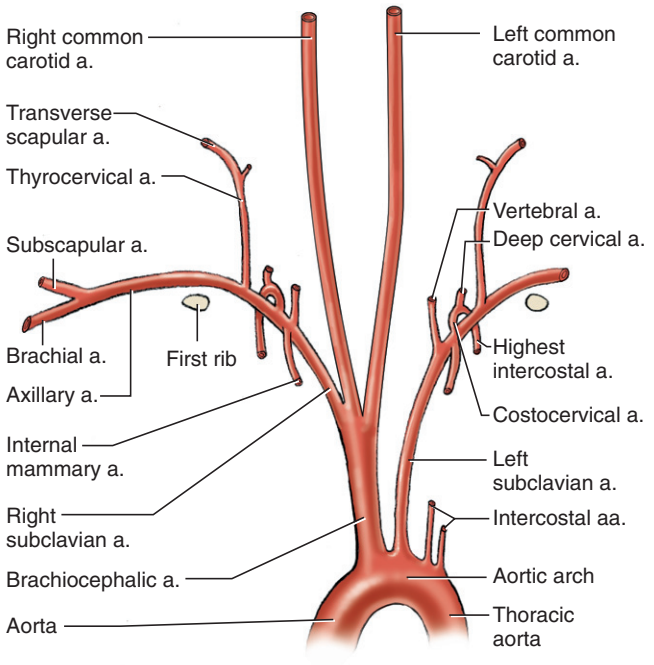


FIGURE 7.56 Schematic illustration of the arteries anterior to the heart of the cat in ventral view.

be observed, but this requires time and delicate dissection. If you cannot find them, use the hypoglossal nerve as a landmark to indicate the beginning of the external carotid.

The distribution of the main superficial vessels on the skull may be examined next. Anterior to the hypoglossal nerve, the external carotid gives rise to the **lingual artery**, which passes anteromedially toward the base of the tongue. The lingual artery is also crossed by the hypoglossal nerve. The external carotid continues as a large vessel and soon gives rise to the **facial artery**, which passes anteriorly along the ventral margin of the masseter muscle and subdivides into various branches to supply the jaws and facial structures. The external carotid continues dorsally, deep to the mandibular gland. Follow it by dissecting between the ventral parts of the mandibular and parotid glands. It gives rise first to the **posterior auricular artery**, a fairly large branch that extends dorsally posterior to the ear, and then the **superior temporal artery**, a smaller branch, extending dorsally anterior to the ear. The superficial temporal divides into the **anterior auricular artery** and **transverse facial artery**. After it gives off the superficial temporal, the external carotid continues as the **maxillary artery**, a large vessel that passes into the dorsal part of the masseter muscle to supply orbital and palatal regions.

The regions supplied by the arteries discussed in the preceding paragraph are drained by veins that extend mainly parallel to the arteries but with slightly different branching patterns. Return to the external jugular vein and trace it forward toward the skull. Three large vessels were noted in connection with the beginning of the external jugular on page 204 and Figure 7.39. These branches will now be considered in detail. The external jugular is formed by the confluence of the **maxillary vein** and **linguofacial vein**. The latter extends anteriorly between the two prominent lymph nodes lying ventral to the salivary glands (see page 204 and Figure 7.39). The **transverse jugular vein** enters the very proximal end of the linguofacial vein, although in some individuals the transverse facial, linguofacial, and maxillary veins appear nearly to branch from the same point. Follow the linguofacial anteriorly. It is formed by the union of the **facial vein**, which extends along the ventral margin of the masseter muscle, and the **lingual vein**, which extends ventromedially in draining the mandible, lower lip, and tongue. The maxillary vein extends dorsally deep to the parotid gland. Follow it, dissecting away potions of the gland as necessary, to see the **posterior auricular vein**, from behind the ear, entering the maxillary. The latter continues a short distance anterodorsally to receive the **superficial temporal vein** and then continues deep to the posterodorsal margin of the masseter muscle. The superficial temporal receives the **anterior auricular vein** from in front of the ear and continues anteriorly toward the eye as the **transverse facial vein**.

Finally, consider the branches of the subclavian arteries and veins (Figures 7.53–7.56). These vessels help supply and drain the forelimbs, as well as regions of the neck and thorax. Trace them on the side opposite that on which the forelimb muscles were dissected. For the most part, it is easier to find the arteries and then note the corresponding veins, which extend beside them but are not injected.

The subclavian artery and vein pass toward the forelimb laterally, just in front of the first rib. Follow the subclavian artery. Just before it passes out of the thorax, it gives rise to four arteries. Dissect around the artery to find these branches. The **internal mammary artery** arises from the ventral surface of the subclavian artery and extends posteriorly. The left and right internal mammary arteries converge toward the ventral midline, and pass along either side of the sternum in parallel with the internal mammary veins, noted earlier (see page 212). If you have trouble locating its origin, follow the artery proximally to the subclavian artery from the midventral strip of the thorax. Note that the internal mammary vein empties into the anterior vena cava and not the subclavian vein. The **costocervical artery** arises from the posterodorsal surface of the subclavian almost opposite to the internal mammary artery. The costocervical is a short trunk that soon branches into two vessels. The **highest intercostal artery** is the smaller branch. It passes back over the medial surface of the first rib onto the anterior

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

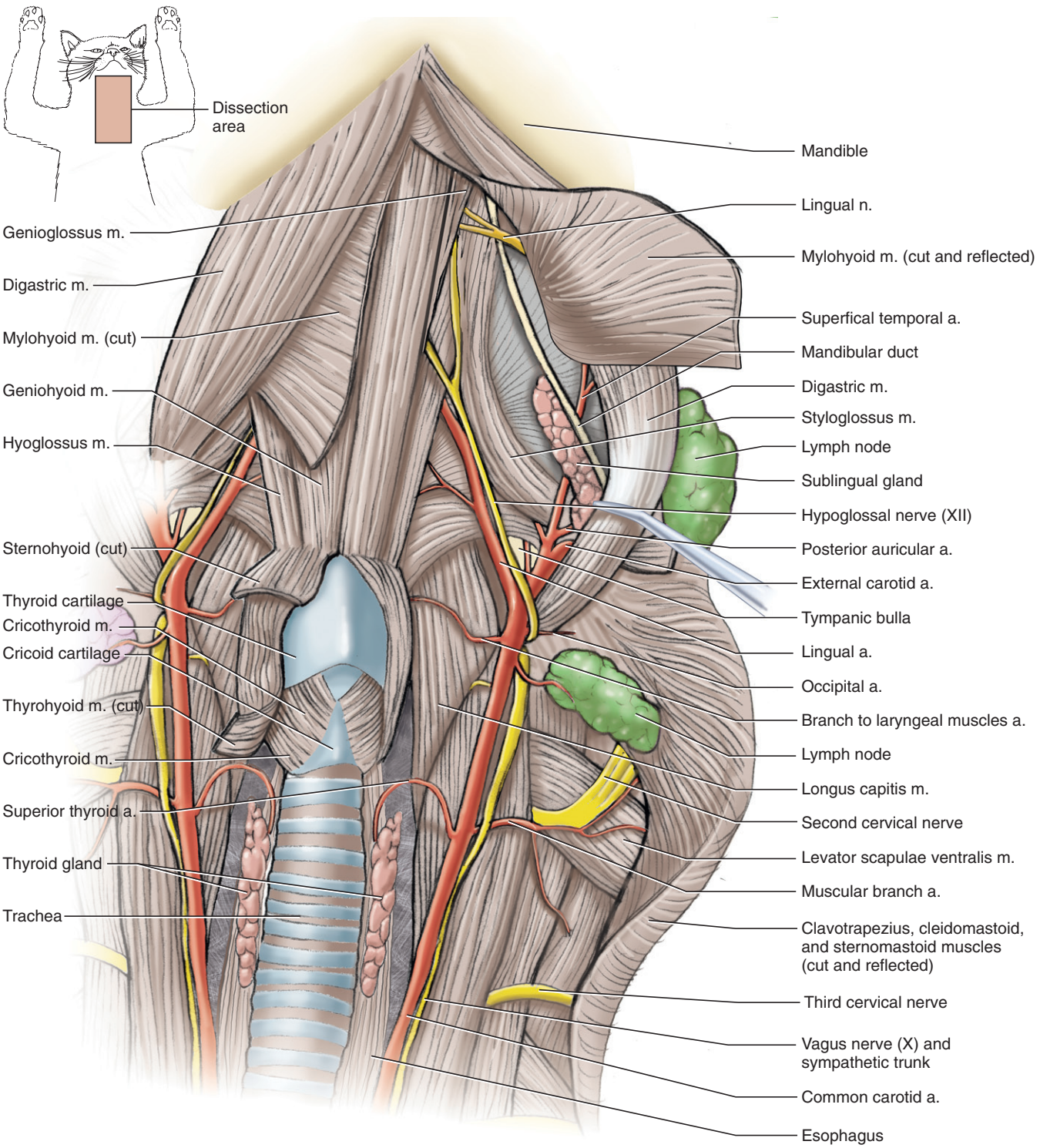


FIGURE 7.57 Branches of the common carotid artery, and muscles and nerves of the throat region of the cat in ventral view.

Downloaded From Vet-e-Books.com

part of the thorax. The other, larger branch is the **deep cervical artery**, which extends almost directly dorsally to supply deep neck muscles.

The other two arteries, the **vertebral** and **thyrocervical arteries**, can be exposed by gently pulling the subclavian posteriorly and carefully dissecting along its anterior surface. The vertebral artery is more medial and passes anteriorly and dorsally. The thyrocervical artery is more lateral. It passes anteriorly deep to the subclavian vein and then for a short distance follows along the dorsolateral side of the external jugular vein. It gives off a small medial branch toward the thyroid and then passes laterally as the **transverse scapular artery**, in company with the transverse scapular vein, at about the level of the anterior part of the shoulder.

Just anterior to the first rib, the subclavian artery and vein pass from the thorax into the axilla (armpit) as the **axillary artery** and **vein**. These vessels and their branches extend toward the forelimb in company with the complex of nerves termed the *brachial plexus*, which was examined briefly in Section III (see pages 185 and 186), so the vessels require careful dissection. The axillary artery sends out various branches, mainly to surrounding pectoral musculature, before it branches into two large vessels, the **brachial artery**, which continues onto the medial surface of the brachium, and the **subscapular artery**, which extends into the musculature toward the anterior part of the shoulder. The axillary vein receives the **subscapular vein**. Distally it follows the subscapular artery, but it enters the axillary vein more proximally than the origin of the subscapular artery from the axillary artery. The axillary vein continues distally, receiving tributaries from the surrounding musculature, and passes onto the medial surface of the brachium as the **brachial vein**.

Vessels Posterior to the Diaphragm

The vessels considered here mainly supply and drain the musculature and organs in the posterior part of the body. Trace the **posterior vena cava** posteriorly from the heart (Figures 7.42, 7.43, 7.45, 7.46, 7.53, and 7.54). It passes through the diaphragm and enters the liver. It receives several **hepatic veins** that drain the liver. Scrape away some of the liver, just anterior to its quadrate lobe, to expose the veins. The posterior vena cava continues through the liver. It emerges into the abdominopelvic cavity from beneath the caudate lobe of the liver, passes between the left and right kidneys, and continues posteriorly (Figures 7.58 and 7.59). Return to the thoracic aorta and, lifting the left lung, trace it posteriorly (Figure 7.51). It passes through the diaphragm and into the abdominopelvic cavity as the **abdominal aorta**, and extends posteriorly to the left of the posterior vena cava (Figure 7.58).

Push the digestive tract and spleen to the right, so you can view the abdominal aorta from the left side. Immediately on passing through the diaphragm, it gives rise to the **celiac artery** and then the **anterior mesenteric artery**, both large, unpaired vessels that mainly supply the viscera (Figure 7.58). With the viscera pushed to the right, these vessels pass directly laterally toward the right. They will be traced shortly. The veins that drain these structures are part of the **hepatic portal system** and are also discussed later. Careful dissection will reveal several ganglia along the ventral surface of the aorta between the origins of these arteries. Continue to follow the aorta posteriorly. The next large branches of the aorta are the paired **renal arteries**. Remove the peritoneum covering the kidneys and follow the right and left renal arteries as they pass toward the central part of the medial surface of each kidney. As the right kidney lies slightly anterior to the left kidney, the right renal artery is slightly anterior to the left renal artery. The **renal veins** (Figures 7.58 and 7.59), of which the left is usually larger, follow the renal arteries.

Between the anterior mesenteric and renal arteries, the aorta usually gives rise to slender and paired **adrenolumbar arteries**, which may also arise from the renal arteries (Figures 7.58 and 7.60). On each side, the adrenolumbar artery supplies and passes the small, nodular **adrenal gland**. The right adrenal gland lies between the anterior end of the kidney and the vena cava, and the left adrenal gland lies between the kidney and the aorta. Remove the fat and tissue from around the glands to expose them. Lifting the kidneys, follow the adrenolumbar arteries. They continue onto the dorsal wall of the abdominal cavity. The **adrenolumbar veins** accompany the arteries. They may empty into the posterior vena cava or the renal veins (Figures 7.58 and 7.59).

Posterior to the renal arteries, the aorta gives rise to paired gonadal arteries, **internal spermatic arteries** in the male and **ovarian arteries** in the female (Figures 7.58 and 7.60). In the female they pass almost directly laterally to the ovaries, which lie at the anterior end of each uterine horn, the paired proximal extensions of the uterus (Figure 7.71). In the male, however, the internal spermatic arteries extend posteriorly, through the abdominal wall (by way of the inguinal canal) to the scrotum, which contains the testes (Figures 7.58 and 7.70). The **right ovarian** and **internal spermatic veins** closely follow the corresponding arteries to enter the posterior vena cava. On the left side, however, the proximal portions of the artery and vein are farther apart because the vein enters the renal vein.

The next aortic branch, the **posterior mesenteric artery**, is an unpaired vessel arising from the ventral surface of the aorta that helps supply the viscera. Its peripheral distribution is discussed later. Almost immediately posterior to the origin of the inferior mesenteric artery, the aorta gives rise to the paired **deep circumflex**

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

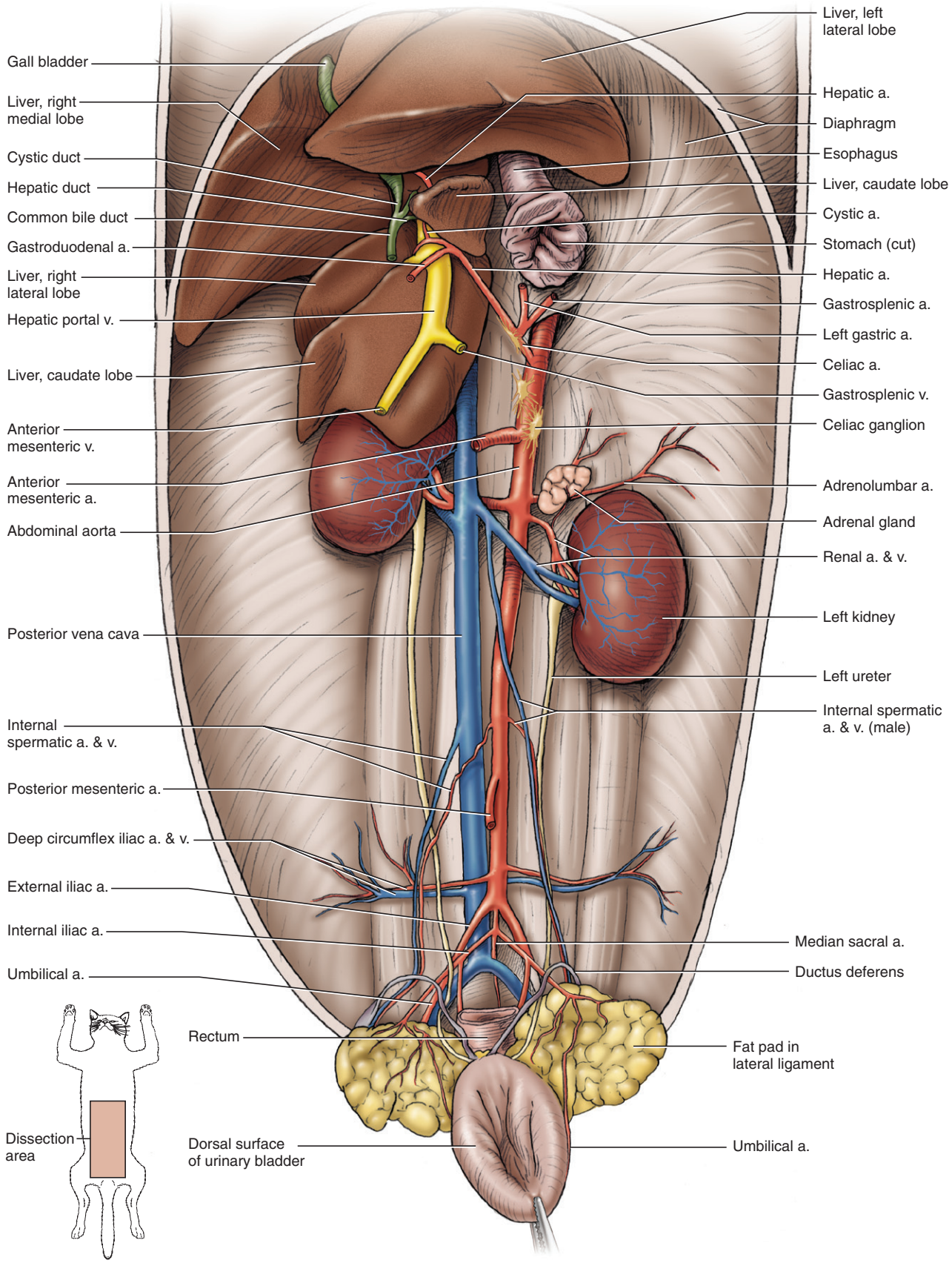


FIGURE 7.58 Abdominopelvic cavity of the cat showing arteries and veins posterior to the heart, with most of the digestive system removed and urinary bladder reflected, in ventral view.

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

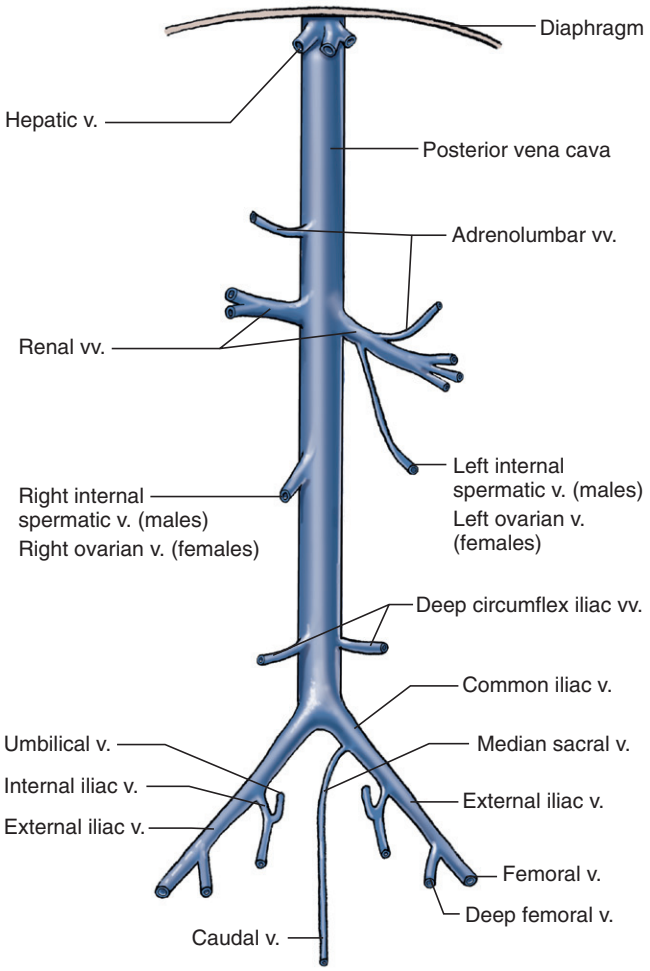


FIGURE 7.59 Schematic illustration of the veins posterior to the heart of the cat in ventral view.

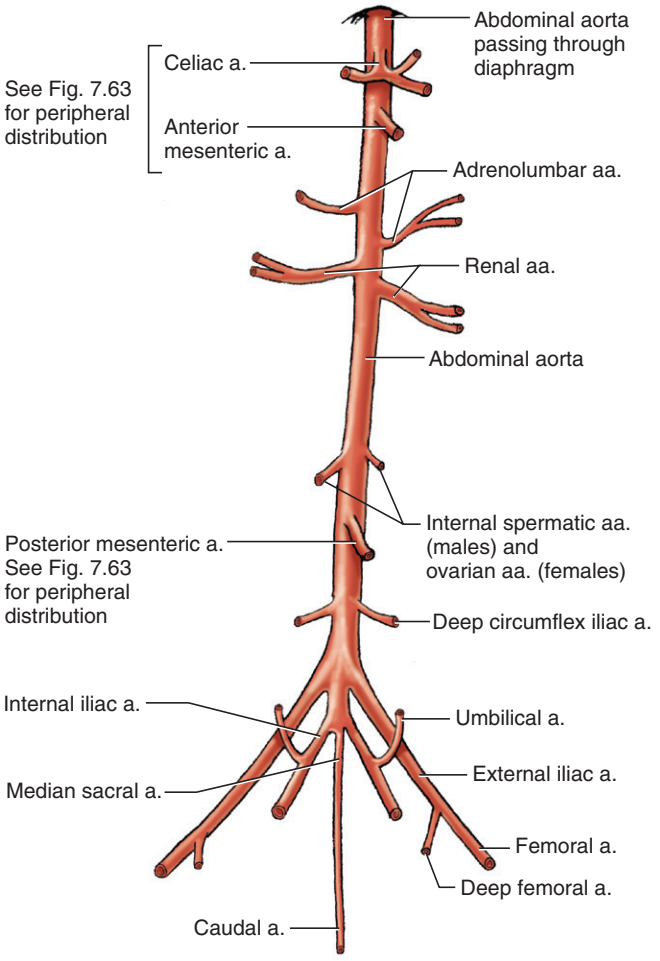


FIGURE 7.60 Schematic illustration of the arteries posterior to the heart of the cat in ventral view.

iliac arteries. The **deep circumflex iliac veins** closely follow the arteries to enter the posterior vena cava.

Just beyond these vessels, the aorta gives rise to two large branches, the **external iliac arteries**, which extend posterolaterally into each hind limb. The aorta continues as a narrower vessel for a very short distance before giving off the **internal iliac arteries**, which also extend posterolaterally but are smaller than the external iliacs. Follow the internal iliacs for a short distance to see that they give off branches to the pelvic viscera. Past the origin of the internal iliacs, the aorta continues as the small **median sacral artery** and then enters the tail as the **caudal artery** (but you will not look for it).

In contrast to the similar branching patterns of most of the paired arteries and veins of the aorta and posterior vena cava, the patterns of the iliac arteries and veins differ. Near the origin of the external iliac arteries, the posterior vena cava begins with the confluence of two large tributaries, the **common iliac veins**. Each common iliac vein, in turn, is formed by confluence of the **internal** and **external iliac veins**. The **median sacral vein**, which accompanies the median sacral artery, usually joins one of the common iliac veins, and continues in the tail as the **caudal vein**.

Return to the external iliac arteries and follow one of them distally. It passes through the abdominal wall and enters the hind limb as the **femoral artery**. Just before it passes through the body wall, it gives rise from its medial surface to the **deep femoral artery**. The latter gives rise to several branches and then passes deep into the medial side of the thigh (see also Figure 7.32). The internal iliac artery mainly supplies muscular and visceral structures in the pelvic canal. Its first branch, the **umbilical artery**, supplies the urinary bladder. The **femoral vein** and **deep femoral vein** empty into the external iliac vein. The **umbilical vein** usually empties into the internal iliac vein.

Vessels Associated with the Viscera

In this section, the vessels that supply and drain the viscera are examined. The arterial system consists of three vessels, the celiac, anterior mesenteric, and

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

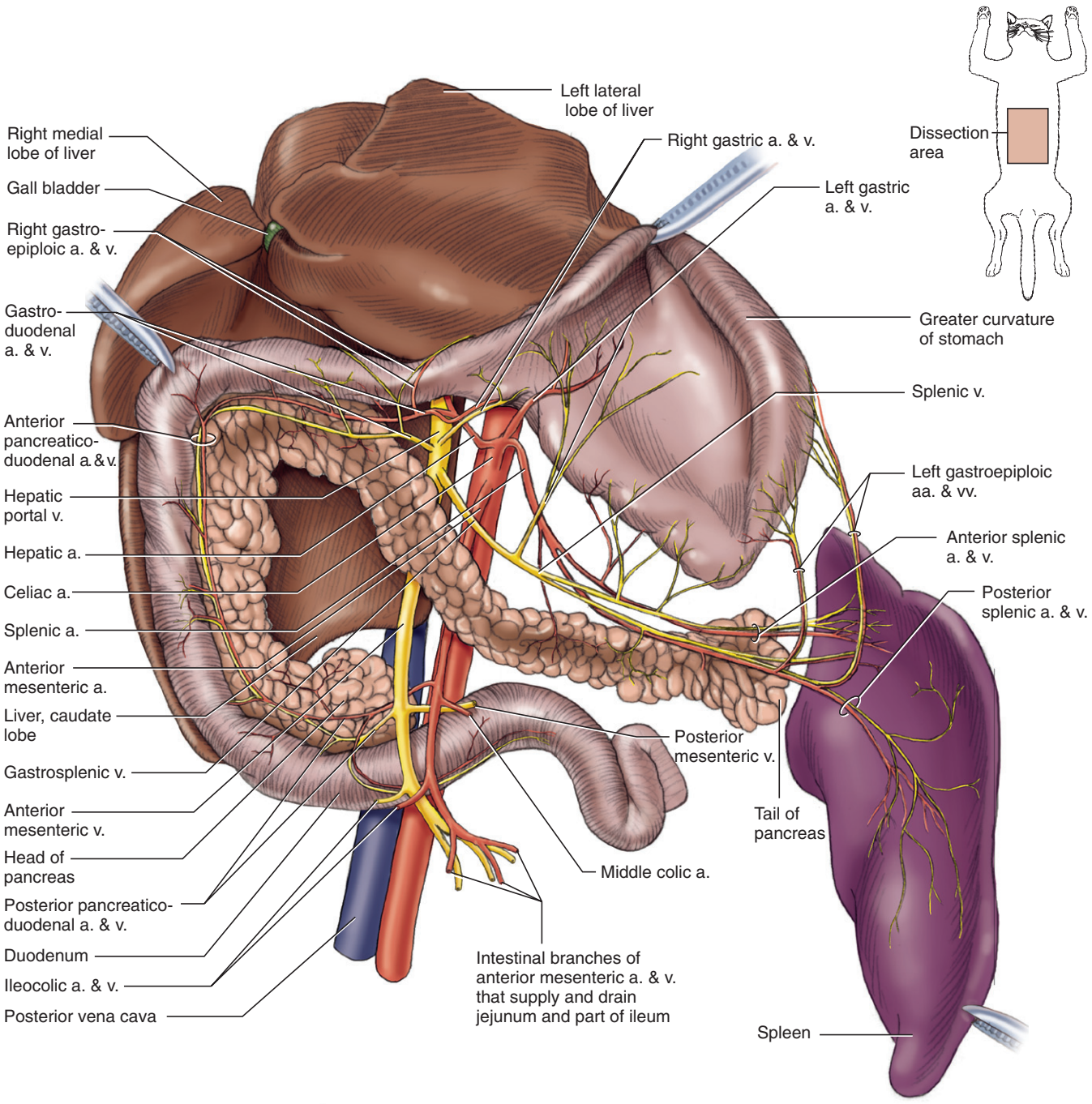


FIGURE 7.61 Detail of vessels of the viscera, showing liver (reflected), stomach, duodenum, pancreas, and spleen (reflected) of the cat in ventral view.

posterior mesenteric arteries, and their branches. Their origins from the aorta have already been identified. The structures supplied by these arteries are drained by tributaries that ultimately form the hepatic portal vein, which returns blood to the liver (Figures 7.58, 7.61, and 7.62). The hepatic portal vein breaks up into capillaries within the liver. These recollect into several hepatic veins, which then enter the posterior vena cava.

Reflect the viscera to the right, and locate the origins of the celiac and anterior mesenteric arteries as they first arise from the aorta, as it emerges through the diaphragm, and extend toward the right. The celiac is a short trunk that divides into three branches. Two of these, the **hepatic** and **left gastric arteries**, slant anteriorly toward the right in this view. The third, the **splenic artery**, is the largest and extends almost directly toward

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

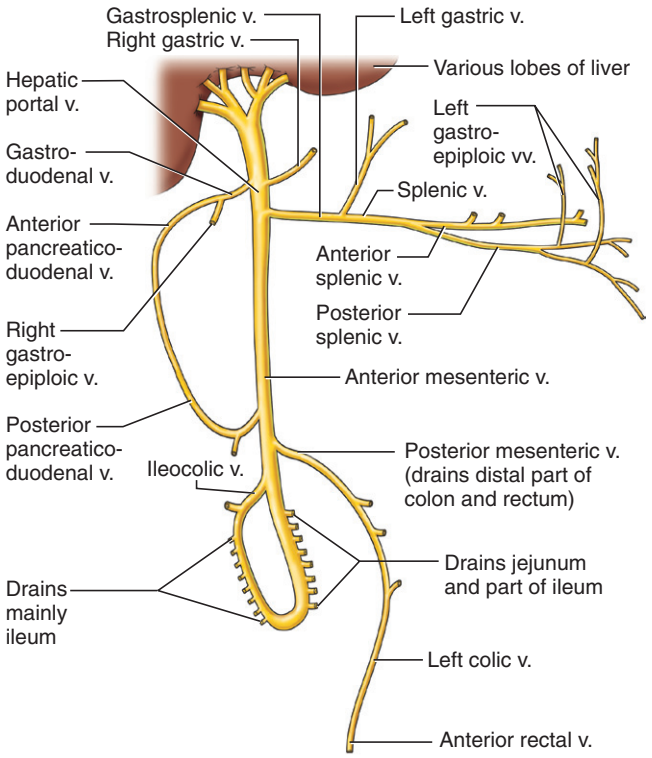


FIGURE 7.62 Schematic illustration of the hepatic portal system of the cat in ventral view.

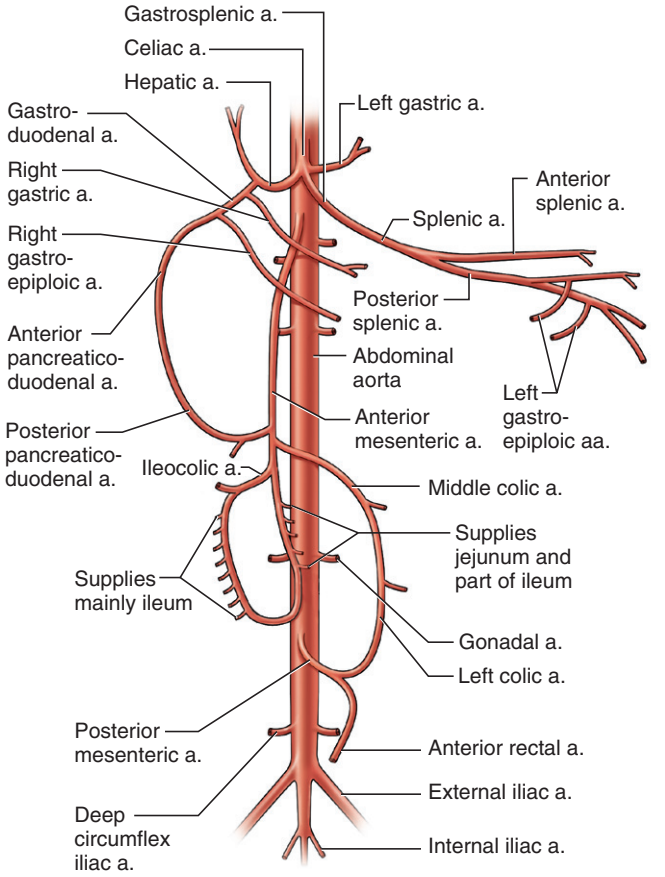


FIGURE 7.63 Schematic illustration of the visceral arterial system of the cat in ventral view.

the right. You can easily follow the hepatic for about 2 cm in this view, but change perspective to follow it more distally.

Reflect the viscera (including the duodenum and head of the pancreas) to the left, and locate the hepatic portal vein, sitting primarily on the caudate lobe of the liver, and the common bile duct as it extends toward the duodenum; these structures were exposed earlier (page 214; see also Figure 7.58). The hepatic portal vein is difficult to see if it is not injected. Carefully dissect along the hepatic portal vein, freeing it as much as possible from connective tissue without destroying any of its branches. (In some specimens the vein is injected with yellow latex, which greatly facilitates dissection.) In doing so, you should reveal the hepatic artery (Figures 7.61 and 7.63). Ascertain that this is indeed the hepatic artery by reflecting the viscera to the right again, gently but firmly grasping the hepatic artery with blunt forceps, and then reflecting the viscera to the left again, thus verifying that the gripped vessel is the one you saw from the other view. This method of using forceps to identify a vessel can be used to advantage in many situations.

Follow the hepatic artery anteriorly. Near the anterior margin of the caudate lobe, it usually gives off several branches, three of which can be followed into the lobes of the liver. The fourth, the **gastroduodenal artery**, follows the common bile duct as it heads toward the duodenum. Trace it until it divides into posteriorly curving and anteriorly curving branches dorsal to the pylorus. The posterior branch, the **anterior pancreaticoduodenal artery**, passes between the duodenum and pancreas. The anterior branch, the **right gastroepiploic artery**, passes to the distal part of the greater curvature of the stomach.

Follow the right gastroepiploic artery with the duodenum in natural position but with the stomach reflected anteriorly (i.e., so you view its dorsal surface). The arteries are followed closely by corresponding veins. Trace the right **gastroepiploic vein** and **anterior pancreaticoduodenal vein**; their confluence forms the **gastroduodenal vein**, which enters the hepatic portal vein.

With the stomach reflected anteriorly, gently pull the tail of the pancreas posteriorly. Dissect away the connective tissue and fat between the pancreas and stomach to reveal a system of arteries and veins. Then, reflect the viscera to the right and grasp the left gastric artery with forceps, and again reflect the stomach anteriorly. Trace the left gastric artery as it passes onto the lesser

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

curvature of the stomach. The **left gastric vein** accompanies the artery.

The splenic artery passes to the left toward the spleen (verify this by reflecting the viscera to the right and grasping the vessel with forceps). The **gastrosplenic vein**, which accompanies the splenic artery, is conspicuous even in uninjected specimens. It is formed by the confluence of the gastric vein and the **splenic vein**. Follow the splenic artery and vein. After one or two small branches to the stomach, the vein and artery divide. Follow the vein first, with both the stomach and spleen reflected anteriorly. In this view, one tributary, the **anterior splenic vein**, heads almost directly laterally and drains the left side of the spleen; the other, the **posterior splenic vein**, passes posterolaterally and drains the right side of the spleen. The **anterior** and **posterior splenic arteries** also follow this pattern, but the anterior splenic artery lies deep to the vein and is not apparent at first. Trace the posterior splenic artery and vein into the spleen. Some of their branches will be seen to stretch across to the greater curvature of the stomach. These are **the left gastroepiploic arteries** and **veins**.

Work your way back proximally along the gastrosplenic vein. Its confluence with the **anterior mesenteric vein**, oriented nearly anteroposteriorly, forms the hepatic portal vein. Dissect along the anterior mesenteric vein for about 3 cm. With the viscera reflected to the right, trace the anterior mesenteric artery as it angles posteriorly to the right. Note the anterior mesenteric vein converging toward the artery. Continue to expose the anterior mesenteric artery. You will need to move through the coils of the intestines individually and tear the mesentery binding the coils together. As the artery and vein extend distally, they give off numerous branches, which mainly supply and drain the jejunum, ileum, cecum, and proximal portion of the colon, as described later.

Two proximal branches of the anterior mesenteric artery should be traced. They often arise in close proximity, and either may have the more proximal origin (see Figures 7.61 and 7.63). The **posterior pancreaticoduodenal artery** extends to the distal part of the duodenum and head of the pancreas. It passes anteriorly and anastomoses with the anterior pancreaticoduodenal artery. If you have trouble tracing the posterior pancreaticoduodenal artery from the anterior mesenteric, begin by tracing the anterior pancreaticoduodenal artery posteriorly, and then follow the posterior pancreaticoduodenal artery to the anterior mesenteric artery. The artery is accompanied by the **posterior pancreaticoduodenal vein**, which empties into the anterior mesenteric vein.

The other branch of the anterior mesenteric artery is the **middle colic artery** (Figures 7.61 and 7.63). It gives off various branches, mainly supplying the distal part of the transverse colon and proximal part of the descending colon. Its main part continues posteriorly along the medial side of the descending colon and anastomoses with a branch of the posterior mesenteric artery (see later). The vein that accompanies the middle colic artery proximally is the **posterior mesenteric vein**, which empties into the anterior mesenteric vein near the entrance of the posterior pancreaticoduodenal vein.

Another readily recognizable branch of the anterior mesenteric artery arises just distal to the middle colic. This is the **ileocolic artery** (Figures 7.61 and 7.63), which extends initially toward the right. It is accompanied by the **ileocolic vein**, which empties into the anterior mesenteric vein. The artery's proximal branches mainly supply the ascending colon and proximal part of the transverse colon, but the vessel then turns posteriorly to supply the distal part of the ileum and eventually anastomoses with the distal end of the anterior mesenteric artery. Once the ileocolic has branched off, the anterior mesenteric artery continues posteriorly, giving rise to numerous branches that supply the jejunum and ileum (as shown in Figure 7.49). These vessels anastomose with each other, forming loops or arcades.

Next, trace the **posterior mesenteric artery**. It is the smallest and least complexly branched of the arteries that supply the viscera. Usually, the posterior mesenteric artery forms a short trunk that branches into the **left colic artery** and the **anterior rectal artery**. The left colic passes anteriorly on the surface of the descending colon and anastomoses with the middle colic artery. The anterior rectal artery passes posteriorly to supply the distal end of the colon and the rectum. These arteries are accompanied by the posterior continuation of the posterior mesenteric vein, which sequentially becomes the **left colic vein** and the **anterior rectal vein**.

Text continued on page 238

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

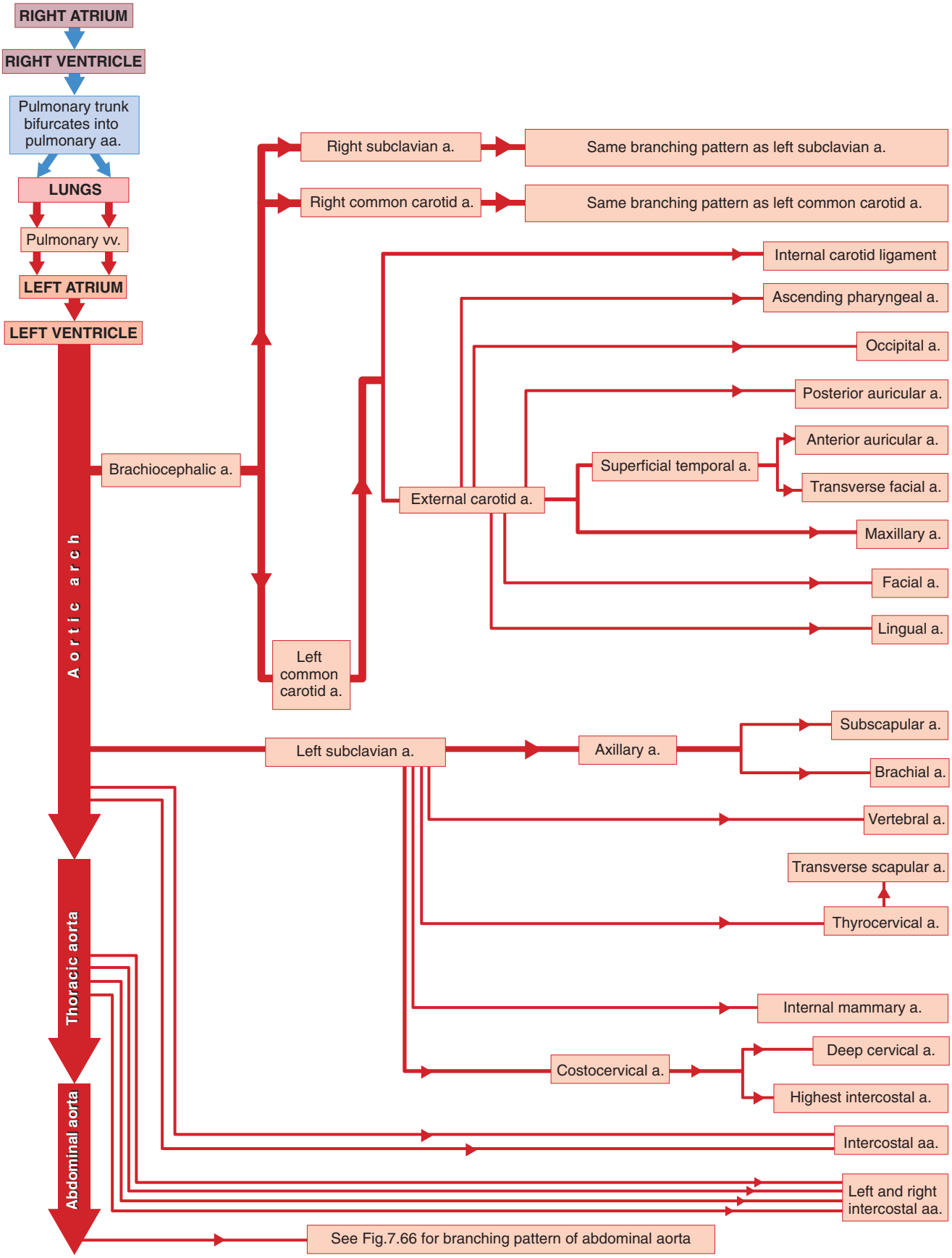


FIGURE 7.64 Flow chart diagram of the arterial system anterior to the heart of the cat.

Downloaded From Vet-e-Books.com

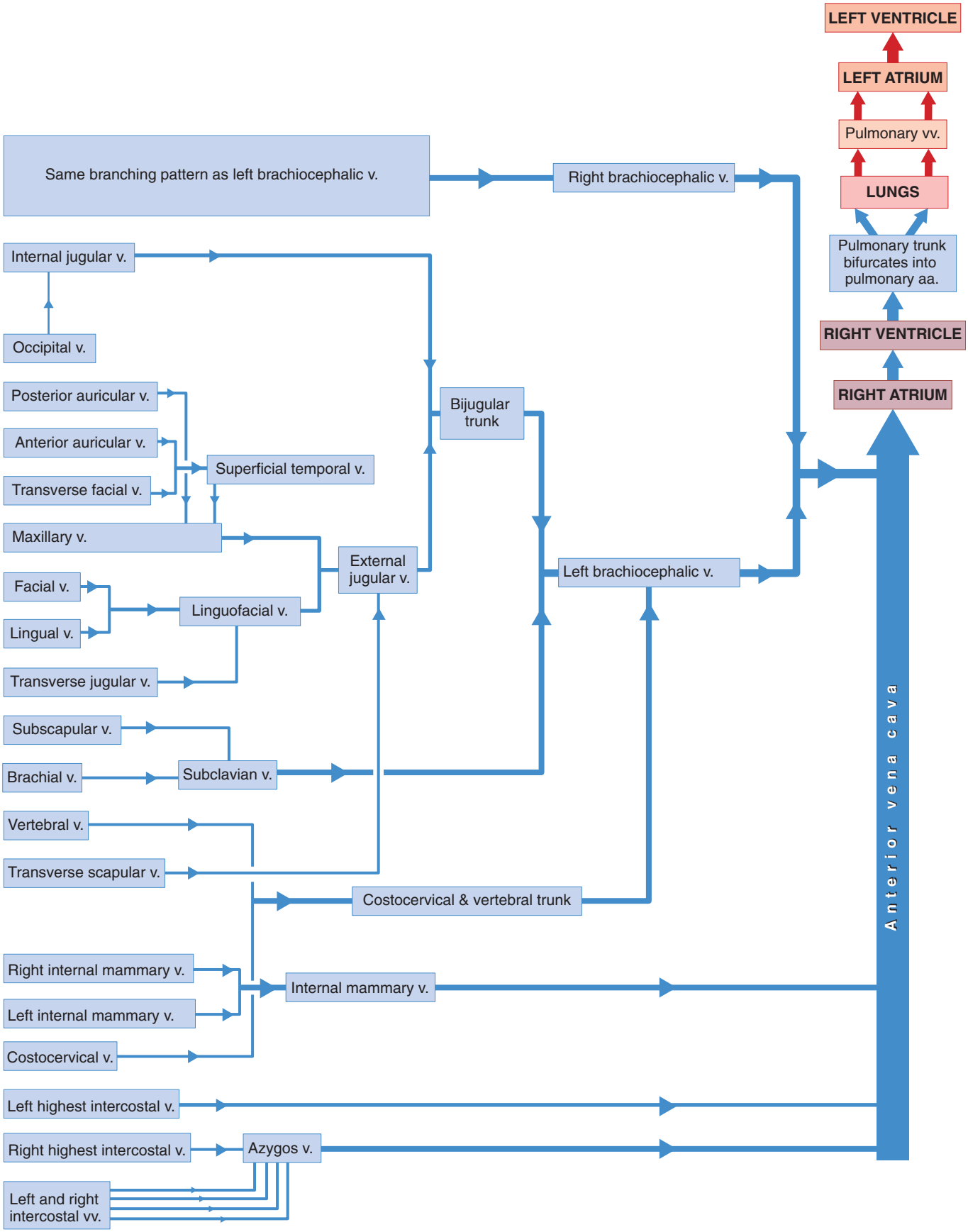


FIGURE 7.65 Flow chart diagram of the venous system anterior to the heart of the cat.

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

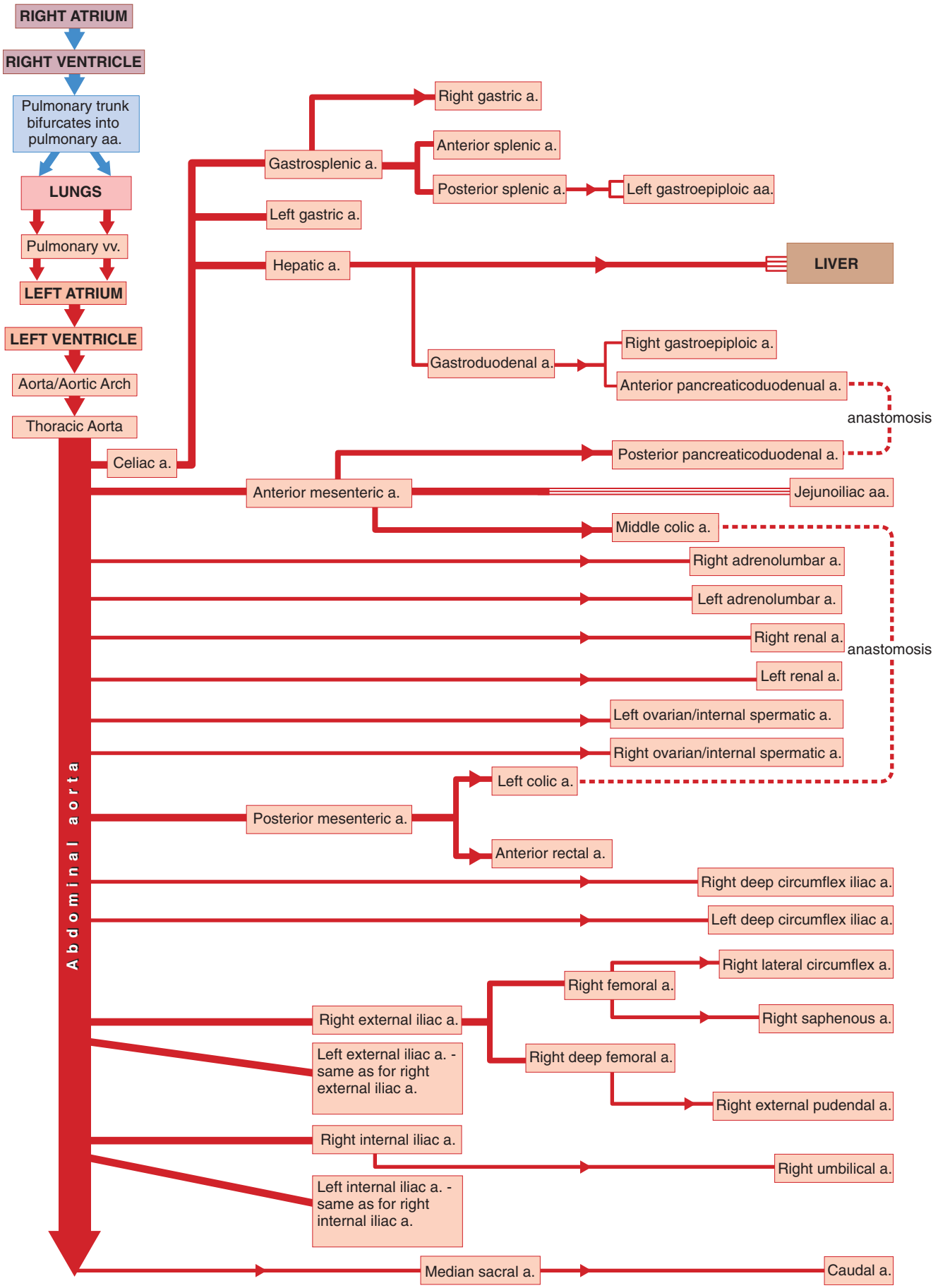


FIGURE 7.66 Flow chart diagram of the arterial system posterior to the heart of the cat.

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

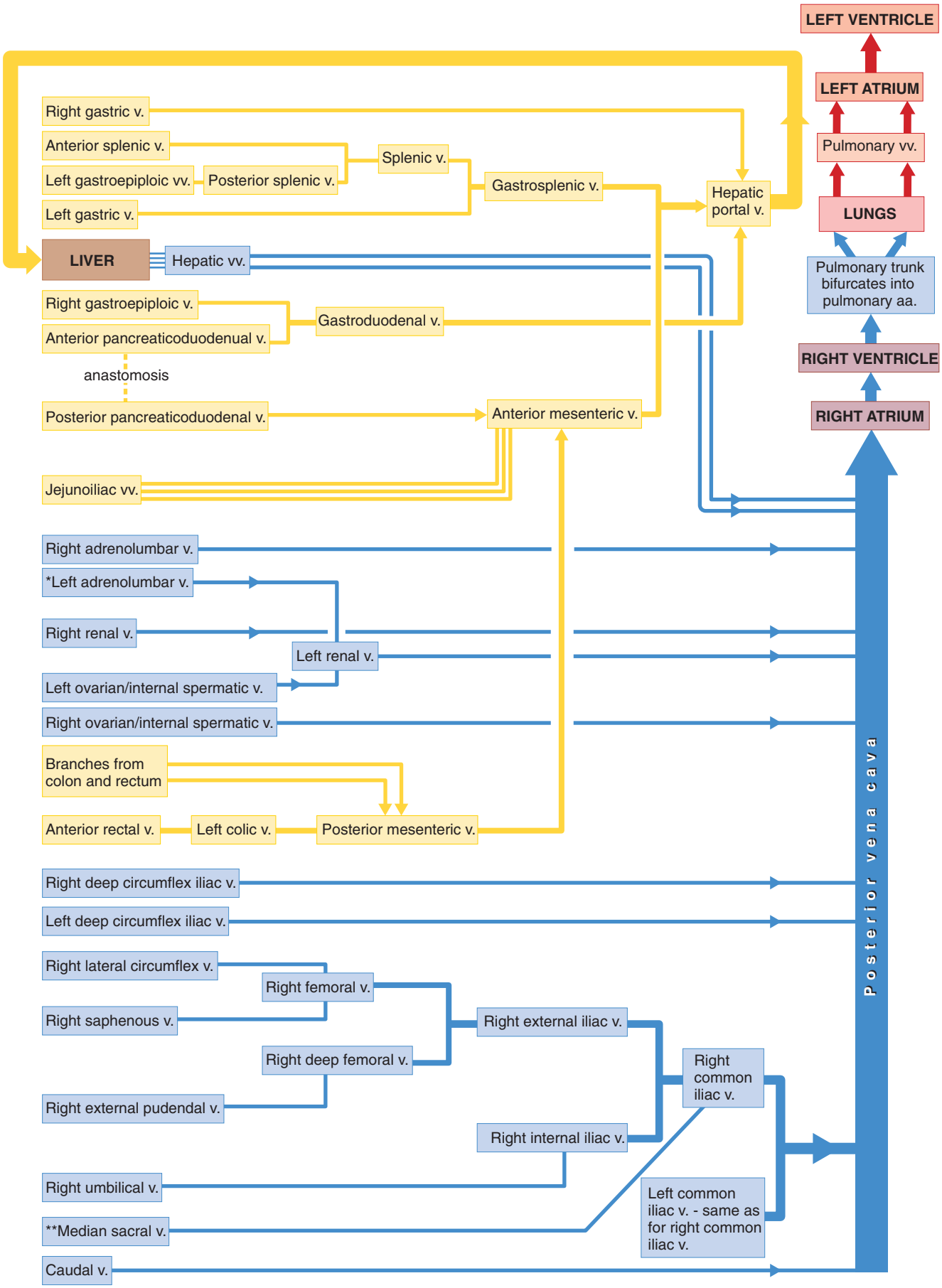


FIGURE 7.67 Flow chart diagram of the venous system posterior to the heart of the cat. *May instead enter the posterior vena cava directly. **May instead enter the left common iliac vein.

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

Key Terms: Cardiovascular System

abdominal aorta
adrenal gland
adrenolumbar artery
adrenolumbar vein
anterior auricular artery
anterior auricular vein
anterior mesenteric artery
anterior mesenteric vein
anterior pancreaticoduodenal artery
anterior pancreaticoduodenal vein
anterior rectal artery
anterior rectal vein
anterior splenic artery
anterior splenic vein
anterior vena cava
aorta
aortic arch
apex of heart
ascending pharyngeal artery
atrium (plur., **atria**)
auricle
axillary artery
axillary vein
azygos vein
base of heart
brachial artery
brachial vein
brachiocephalic artery
brachiocephalic vein
cardiac vein
caudal artery
caudal vein
celiac artery
cephalic vein
common carotid artery
common iliac vein
coronary artery
coronary sulcus
coronary vein (cardiac vein)
costocervical artery
costocervical vein
costocervical + vertebral trunk
deep cervical artery
deep circumflex iliac artery
deep circumflex iliac vein
deep femoral artery
deep femoral vein
external carotid artery
external iliac artery
external iliac vein
external jugular vein
facial artery
facial vein
femoral artery
femoral vein
gastroduodenal artery
gastroduodenal vein
gastroepiploic vein
gastrosplenic vein
heart
hepatic artery
hepatic portal system
hepatic portal vein
hepatic vein
highest intercostal arteries
highest intercostal veins
hypoglossal nerve
ileocolic artery
ileocolic vein
intercostal artery
intercostal vein
internal carotid artery
internal carotid ligament
internal iliac artery
internal iliac vein
internal jugular vein
internal mammary artery
internal spermatic artery
internal spermatic vein
interventricular groove
left colic artery
left colic vein
left gastric artery
left gastric vein
left gastroepiploic artery
left gastroepiploic vein
ligamentum arteriosum
lingual artery
lingual vein
linguofacial vein (anterior facial vein)
maxillary artery
maxillary vein (posterior facial vein)
median sacral artery
median sacral vein
middle colic artery
occipital artery
ovarian artery
ovarian vein
pericardial cavity
pericardium
phrenic nerve
posterior auricular artery
posterior mesenteric artery
posterior mesenteric vein
posterior pancreaticoduodenal artery
posterior pancreaticoduodenal vein
posterior splenic artery
posterior splenic vein

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

posterior vena cava
pulmonary arteries
pulmonary trunk
pulmonary vein
renal artery
renal vein
right gastroepiploic artery
splenic artery
splenic vein
subclavian artery
subclavian vein
subscapular artery
subscapular vein
superior temporal artery
superior temporal vein
sympathetic trunk
thoracic aorta
thyrocervical artery
transverse facial artery
transverse facial vein
transverse jugular vein (hyoid venous arch)
transverse scapular artery
transverse scapular vein
umbilical artery
umbilical vein
vagosympathetic trunk
vagus nerve
ventricle
vertebral artery
vertebral vein

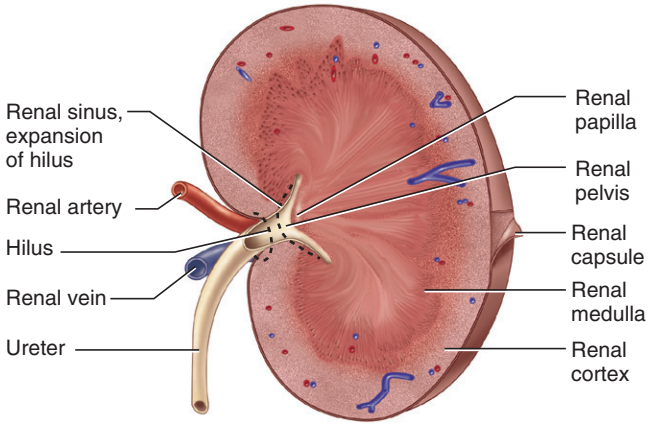


FIGURE 7.68 Frontal section through left kidney of the cat.

SECTION VI: UROGENITAL SYSTEM

The urogenital system includes the excretory and reproductive systems, which perform distinct roles. The excretory system functions mainly in helping to maintain homeostasis by maintaining water balance and ridding the body of nitrogenous waste products. The reproductive system functions in producing gametes (sperm or ova), meeting all the needs of the fetuses during gestation (in the female), and maintaining gender-specific features, mainly through the production of hormones. Despite the fact that the two systems are distinct, their accessory structures, particularly in the male, become intimately associated. Thus, it is convenient to consider them together as the *urogenital system*.

Excretory System

The **kidneys** (Figures 7.58, 7.68, 7.69, and 7.71), the main organs of the excretory system, were exposed during the dissection of the cardiovascular system. They are retroperitoneal, lying dorsal to the parietal peritoneum in the lumbar region. The kidneys are surrounded by considerable fat that protects them from mechanical injury. Note that the left kidney lies slightly posterior to the right kidney, which abuts anteriorly against the caudate lobe of the liver.

Each kidney is bean-shaped and covered by a thin, tough, fibrous **renal capsule**. The **hilus** is a medial indentation through which the **ureter** and blood vessels pass. Follow one of the ureters posteriorly toward the **urinary bladder**. It passes dorsal to the **ductus deferens** in the male (Figure 7.69) and **uterine horn** in the female (Figure 7.71; see later), and then through the fat of the lateral ligament to enter the dorsal surface of the urinary bladder. Dissect carefully through the fat; recall that the umbilical artery was also traced to the bladder (page 230). The urinary bladder is a sac-like reservoir for urine. Its broad anterior portion gradually narrows posteriorly into the **urethra**, a narrow tube that passes through the pelvic canal (see later).

Return to one of the kidneys, preferably the left. Remove the renal capsule, cutting carefully around the structures passing through the hilus. Section the kidney in the frontal plane (i.e., so that you have dorsal and ventral halves) and examine one of the sectioned surfaces (Figure 7.68). The substance of the kidney is subdivided into a lighter peripheral zone, the **renal cortex**, and the darker **renal medulla**. The medullary portion constitutes a **renal pyramid**, which tapers toward the hilus into the **renal papilla**.

The ureter and renal vessels enter the hilus, which expands within the kidney into a space termed the **renal sinus**. The expanded proximal portion of the ureter within the kidney is the **renal pelvis**. If it is not evident in the section you are studying, examine the other half of the kidney.

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

Key Terms: Excretory System

ductus deferens
hilus
kidneys
renal capsule
renal cortex
renal medulla
renal papilla
renal pelvis
renal pyramid
renal sinus
ureter
urethra
urinary bladder
uterine horn

Male Reproductive System

The paired **testes** (Figure 7.69) are the male gonads and lie in the **scrotum**, which is a skin-covered sac just ventral

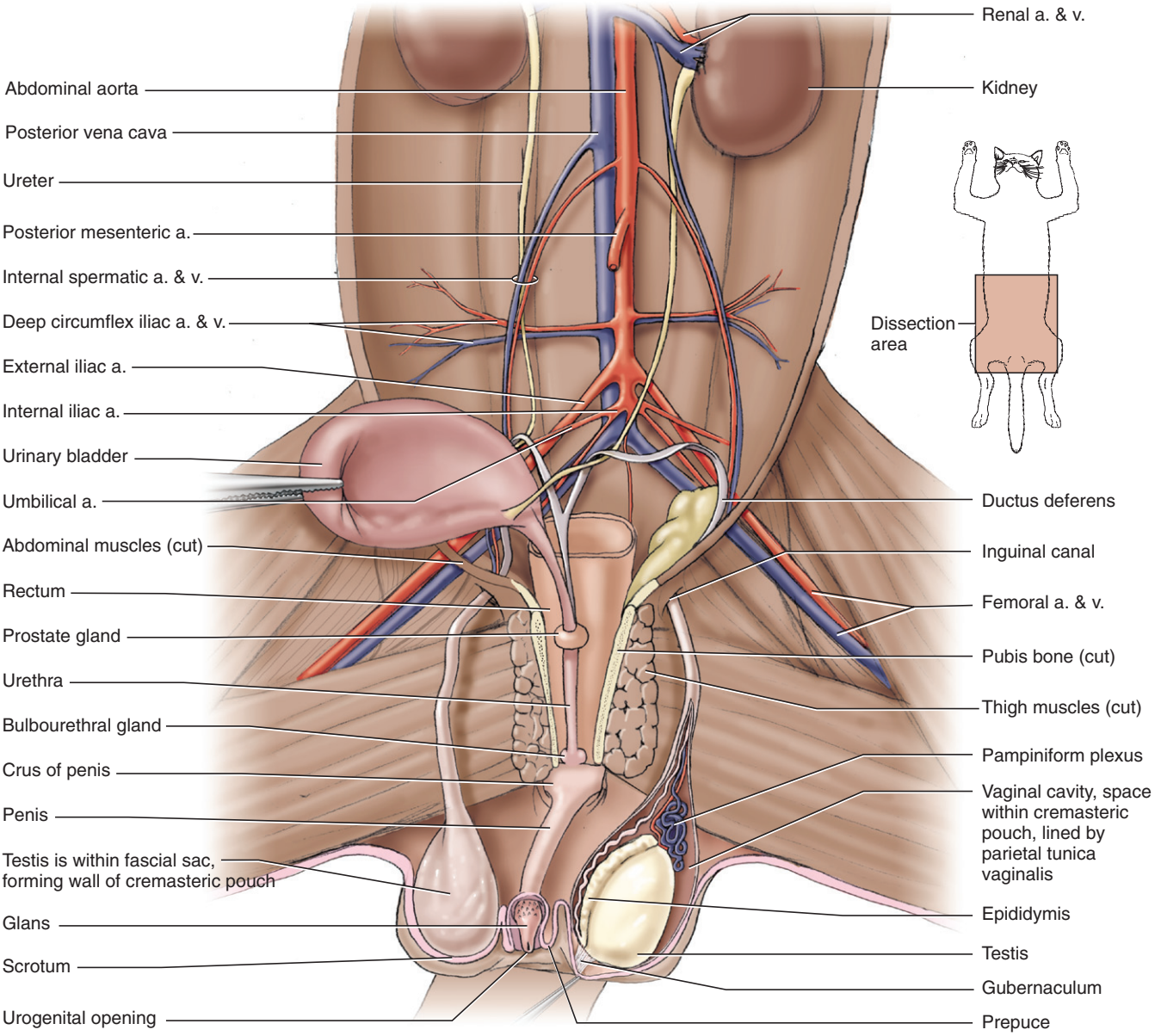


FIGURE 7.69 Abdominopelvic cavity of the male cat with the viscera removed and urinary bladder reflected to the right to show vessels and urogenital structures, in ventral view. Structures within the vaginal cavity, such as the left side testis, epididymis, and vessels, are covered by visceral tunica vaginalis.

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

to the anus. Externally, the **penis**, the copulatory organ, lies midventrally with respect to the scrotum. Skin the scrotum by making a small incision toward the ventrolateral side of one of the testes. Extend the incision longitudinally and peel the ventral skin of the scrotum. This exposes the left and right **cremasteric pouches**, sac-like extensions of the abdominal cavity in which the testes descend from their abdominal position in the embryo.

The testes, as well as other structures, are contained within the pouches. The posterior end of each pouch contains a testis and so is expanded. Follow the pouches anteriorly. Each narrows into a thin tube that passes toward the abdominal wall along the ventral surface of the pelvis, just to one side of the pubic symphysis, and passes through the wad of fat present in the groin. You were cautioned against removing this fat during skinning of the cat precisely because the cremasteric pouches pass through it. Now, follow the pouches, teasing away the fat as needed.

The penis will still have its sheath of skin attached. Remove it by making a cut through the sheath and picking through the connective tissue with needle and forceps. Work your way anteriorly until you have exposed the penis and can appreciate that it passes toward the pelvic canal.

Return to the posterior end of one of the pouches, slit its ventral surface longitudinally, and continue the cut onto its narrowed portion. The space within the pouch, the **vaginal cavity**, is analogous to the space of the abdominal cavity. It is lined by **parietal tunica vaginalis**. The structures within the pouch are covered by **visceral tunica vaginalis**. The **mesorchium** is the mesentery supporting these structures. The most notable structure within the pouch is the testis. Pull the posterior end of the cremasteric pouch. The short connective tissue extending to the testis is the **gubernaculum**.

The **epididymis** is a thin, flattened band of tissue on the dorsomedial part of the testis. It consists of expanded head and tail regions and a central, narrower body. As it may be difficult to discern the epididymis in ventral view, turn the testis over by reflecting its lateral surface dorsally. The concave margin of the epididymis is easily apparent. Grasp it with a forceps and return the testis to its anatomical position.

Spermatozoa, the male gametes, from the testis pass through the head, body, and tail of the epididymis and then enter the strand-like **ductus deferens**, which passes mainly along the medial side of the testis. This portion of the ductus is highly convoluted. A thicker strand-like structure passes to the anterior end of the testis. This is the **pampiniform plexus**, formed by the intertwining of the convoluted distal ends of the internal spermatic artery and vein. Follow the artery, vein, and ductus deferens anteriorly by slitting the narrow part of the cremasteric pouch. These structures, bound together by the visceral tunica vaginalis, constitute the **spermatic cord**. The cord passes through the **inguinal canal**, a short passageway in the abdominal wall, into the abdominopelvic cavity. Within the abdominopelvic cavity, the vessels and ductus deferens go their separate ways. The vessels extend anteromedially. The ductus deferens loops around the ureter and then extends posteromedially, passing through the fat within the lateral ligament of the urinary bladder. Locate the ductus on the other side so that both ducti deferentes may be traced as they extend into the pelvic canal and meet the urethra (see later).

Opening the Pelvic Canal

The pelvic canal must be opened in order to continue following the structures of the urogenital system. Doing so involves cutting through the pelvic symphysis, which is fairly easy, as the symphysis is not fused. Finding the symphysis, however, can be tricky. The most direct way is to continue the incision cut through the body wall posteriorly, all the way to the symphysis. In doing so, try to cut along the midsagittal plane (recall that originally you cut to one side of the midsagittal plane). Exposing the bladder and urethra may help, as the latter, which lies more or less midsagittally, can serve as a guide. When you find the anterior end of the pelvis, attempt to push through the symphysis with a scalpel. (Scraping the pubes a little can help show the symphysis as distinct from the bones.) If you are not precisely on the symphysis, the scalpel will meet with resistance. Do not attempt to force the scalpel through. Instead, move it over slightly to one side or the other and try again; it will pass through fairly easily if it is on the symphysis. Keep trying until you cut through the symphysis. Spread the symphysis by grasping the thighs and twisting them dorsally.

Once the pelvic canal has been opened, follow the urethra posteriorly, clearing away connective tissue and fat as you do so. Just within the canal, the urethra seems to expand laterally. Careful dissection reveals that the expansion is actually the **prostate gland**. Return to the ducti deferentes and trace them through the canal. They converge and pass along the dorsal surface of the urethra. The prostate gland surrounds their entrance into the urethra. The urethra continues posteriorly and enters the penis very near the end of the pelvic canal.

The penis is formed by three columns of erectile tissue that, when filled with blood, cause its erection (Figure 7.70). The **corpus spongiosum** is the middorsal column; the urethra is embedded within it. Posteriorly the corpus forms the free end of the penis, the **glans penis**, from which the urethra emerges. The other two columns, the **corpora cavernosa**, lie side by side on the ventral surface. The dorsal position of the urethra and corporus spongiosum is a peculiarity of the posterior-pointing penis of the cat. In most other mammals the urethra and corpus

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

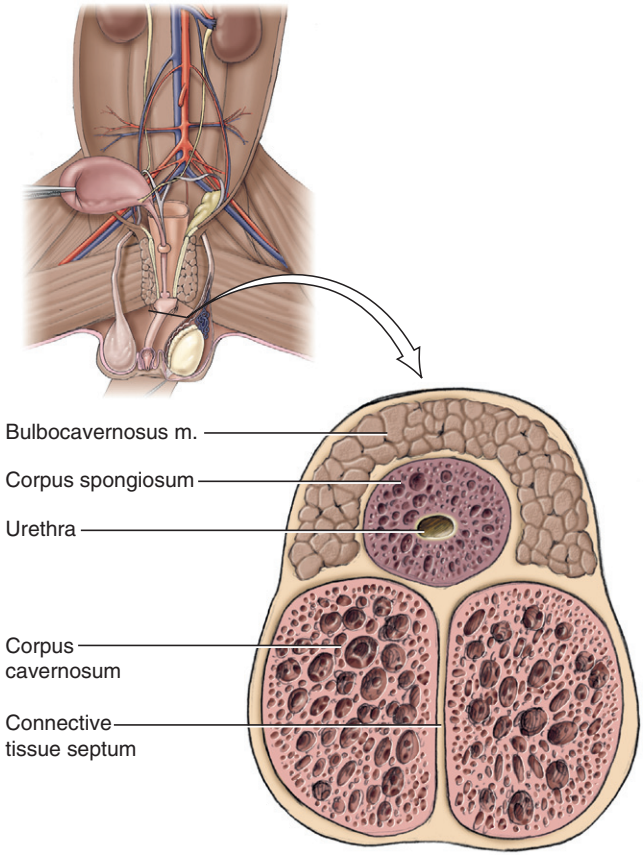


FIGURE 7.70 Cross-section through the penis of the cat.

lie ventrally, and the corpora cavernosa are dorsal. Posteriorly, the corpora cavernosa diverge laterally as the **crura** (sing., **crus**) of the **penis**, which anchor the organ to the ischia. The small, paired **bulbourethral glands** lie just dorsal to the crura. Cut and reflect a crus to see them. Then section the penis near its center to view the three columns of spongy tissue. The **os penis** is a small bone (3–7 mm long) lying in the glans penis.

Key Terms: Male Reproductive System

bulbourethral glands
corpora cavernosa
corpus spongiosum
cremasteric pouches
crus (plur., **crura**) of **penis**
ductus deferens
epididymis
glans penis
gubernaculum
inguinal canal
mesorchium
os penis (baculum)
pampiniform plexus
parietal tunica vaginalis
penis
prostate gland
scrotum
spermatic cord
testis (plur., **testes**)
vaginal cavity
visceral tunica vaginalis

Female Reproductive System

The small, oval **ovaries** are the female gonads (Figure 7.71) and lie in the abdominal cavity just posterior to the kidneys. Follow the ovarian artery and vein of one side to an ovary. As in most vertebrates, ova produced by the ovaries pass posteriorly through paired tubes that have become longitudinally differentiated into several distinct regions in mammals. The **uterine tube**, the most anterior portion, is a thin, convoluted tube lying lateral to the ovary. Its proximal end enlarges into the **infundibulum**, which forms a hood-like expansion over the anterior end of the ovary. Its margin bears **fimbriae**, frill-like projections that help ensure the ovum passes through the **ostium tubae**, which is the opening of the infundibulum, and into the uterine tube.

Each uterine tube leads posteriorly into the larger **uterine horn**. These uterine horns will be narrow unless the female is gravid or has previously carried a litter. The horns of each side pass posteromedially and merge dorsal to the urinary bladder. The short, tough **ovarian ligament** anchors the ovary and the anterior end of the horn. At first glance, however, it appears to form a connection between the uterine horn and ovary. Thus, carefully follow the uterine horn into the uterine tube.

The union of the uterine horns posteriorly form the **body** of the **uterus**, a wider canal that then leads into the **vagina**. As there is no external division of these structures, their separation will be seen when they are opened. Note that the ureters pass dorsal to the uterine horns.

The reproductive tract is supported by various mesenteries. The main supporting structure is the **broad ligament**, of which several portions are recognized. Lift the reproductive structures to clearly observe the following mesenteries. The portion of the broad ligament supporting the ovary is the **mesovarium**. The **mesosalpinx** attaches to the uterine tube, and the **mesometrium** attaches to the uterus, including the uterine horn. Lift the uterine horn near its center and tug it medially, as shown in Figure 7.71. The **round ligament** is the fibrous band in the mesometrium that extends diagonally from the uterine horn posterolaterally toward the body wall. Also, note the **suspensory ovarian ligament**, which supports the ovary anteriorly, as it extends to the dorsal body wall just lateral to the kidney.

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

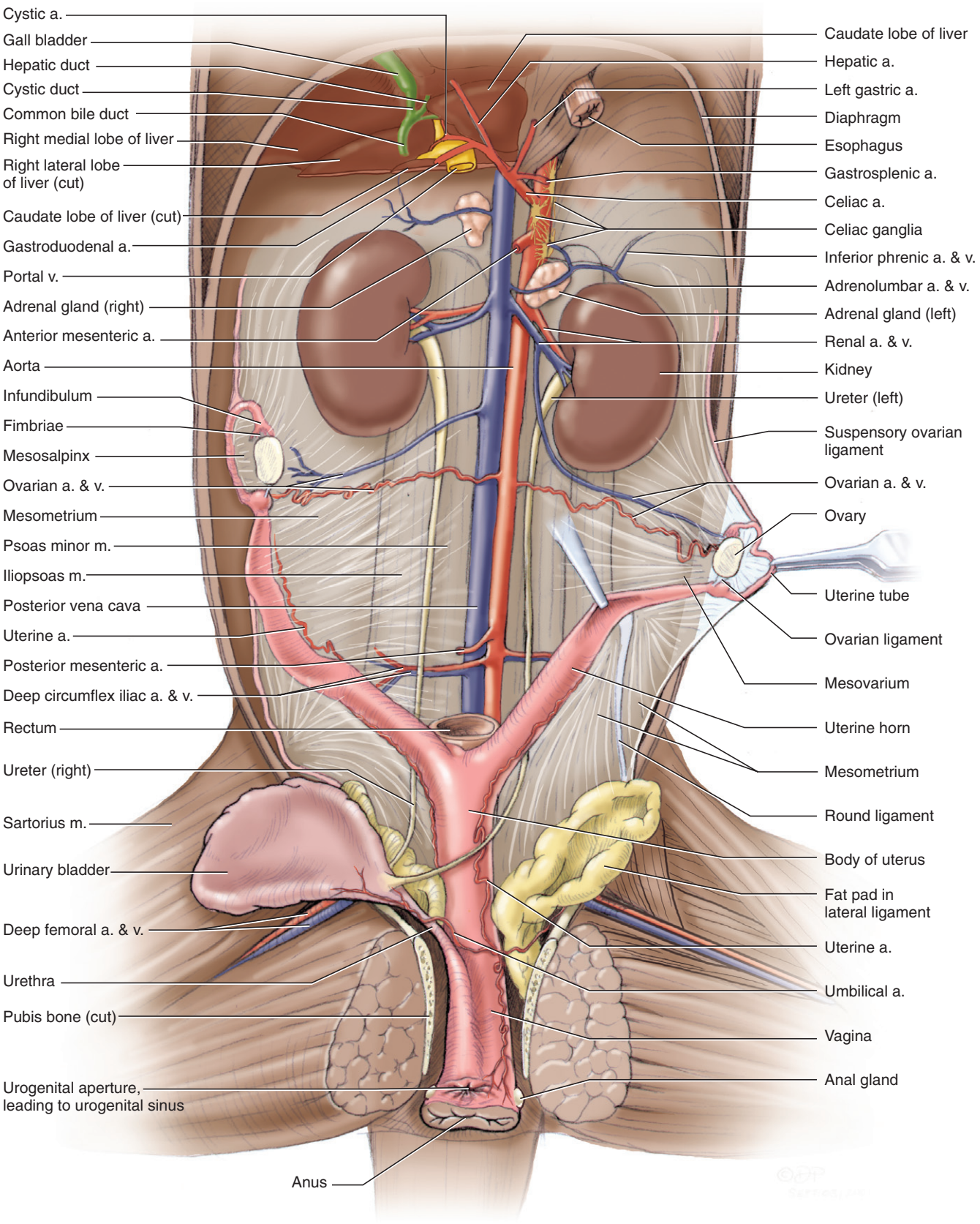


FIGURE 7.71 Abdominopelvic cavity of the female cat with many of the viscera removed and urinary bladder reflected to the right to show vessels and urogenital structures, in ventral view.

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

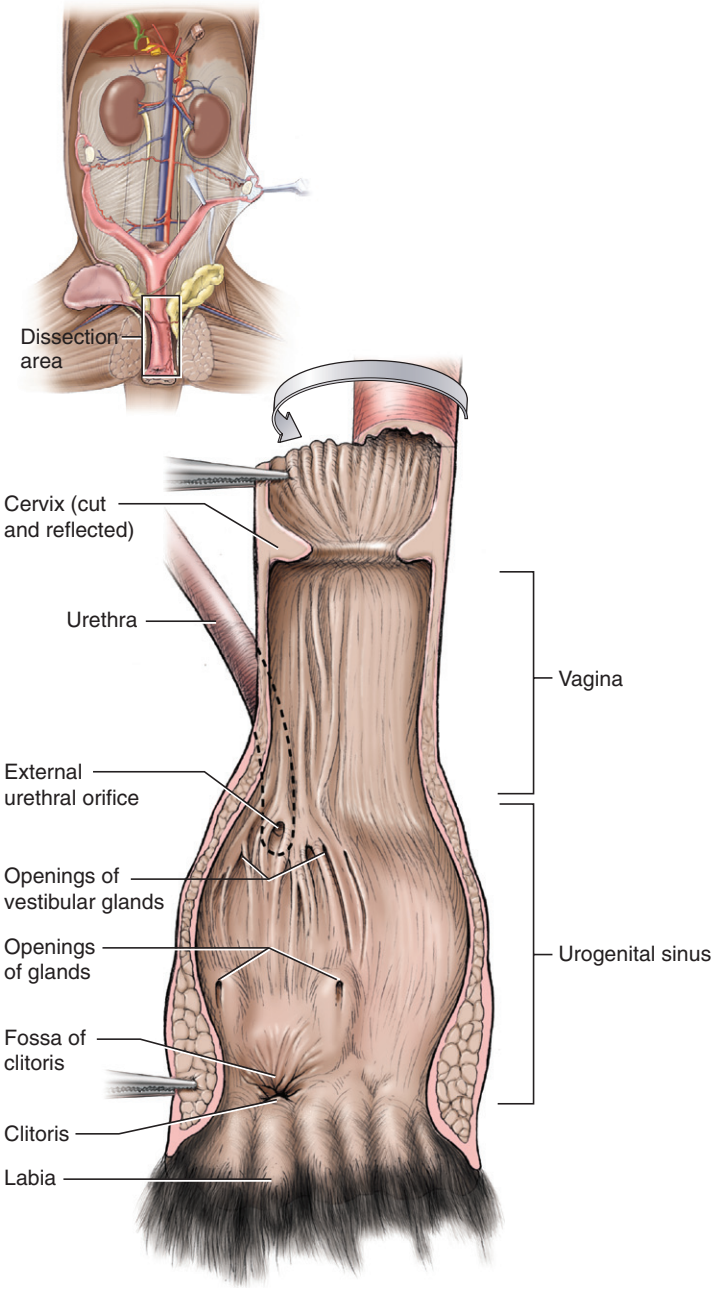


FIGURE 7.72 Distal portion of female urogenital tract of the cat in ventral view. The tract has been cut along its lateral margin and opened to reveal the internal anatomy.

Open the pelvic canal by cutting through the pubic symphysis following the instructions given for the male on page 241. Pick away connective tissue to reveal and separate the structures passing through the canal (Figure 7.71). The urethra and vagina unite toward the posterior end of the pelvic canal to form a common passageway, the **urogenital sinus**, which opens to the outside through the **urogenital aperture**. Dissect dorsal to the vagina and urogenital sinus to separate them from the rectum. On each side, dissect the tissue lateral to the rectum, very near the anus, to reveal the **anal glands**. Then completely separate the urogenital sinus from the rectum so that it can be turned over. Make a slit along one side of the body of the uterus, vagina, and urogenital sinus, and spread the flaps apart (Figure 7.72). Find the **urethral orifice**, the entrance of the urethra. The vagina extends anteriorly from this point to the **cervix** of the uterus, which is the distally tapered, sphincter-like portion of the uterus. Directly posterior to the urethral orifice, and just before the urogenital aperture, lies the small **clitoris**, which may be difficult to see. It is the female homologue of the penis and generally considerably smaller, but in hyaenas it exceeds the penis in size.

The **mammary glands** are important reproductive structures in mammals. They were observed beneath the skin of the thorax and abdomen during skinning of the cat (see page 179).

Key Terms: Female Reproductive System

anal glands
body of the uterus
broad ligament
cervix of the uterus
clitoris
fimbriae
infundibulum
mammary glands
mesometrium
mesosalpinx
mesovarium
ostium tubae
ovarian ligament
ovary
round ligament
suspensory ovarian ligament
urethral orifice
urogenital aperture (vulva)
urogenital sinus (vaginal vestibule, urogenital canal)
uterine horn
uterine tube (fallopian tube)
vagina

SECTION VII: BRAIN AND CRANIAL NERVES

Meninges

In comparative anatomy courses, the brain and cranial nerves of a sheep, rather than of a cat, usually are studied. There are two main reasons for this. First, the cat brain is small and many of its structures, particularly the

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

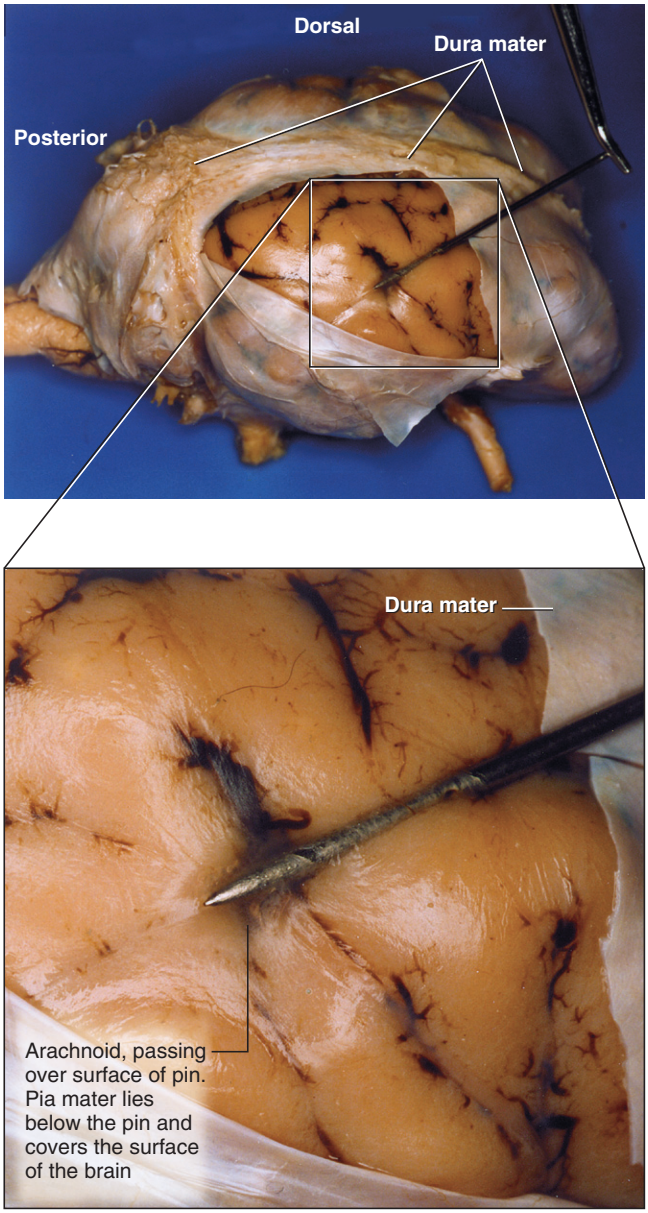


FIGURE 7.73 Right lateral view (anterior to right of page) of the sheep brain showing meninges. The dura mater has been partially cut and reflected to reveal deeper meninges. Blowup shows the pin passing deep to the arachnoid mater.

nerves, are extremely difficult to find. Second, the brain of the cat would have to be carefully removed from the skull, which requires patience and the proper tools. To avoid these problems, the mammalian brain should be studied using a prepared sheep brain. Illustrations of the sheep brain (Figures 7.73–7.77) are provided here, as well for the cat (Figures 7.78 and 7.79). Compare the structures in the cat in these illustrations with those you observe in the sheep brain.

The brain is surrounded by three membranes, or **meninges** (sing., **meninx**), which protect and isolate it (Figure 7.73). The thickest is the **dura mater**. It fuses with the periosteum of the bones enclosing the cranial cavity and is usually left on the skull when the brain is removed, although a ventral portion of the dura mater, covering the hypophysis, is present in most specimens. If your specimen still has the dura mater adhering to it, carefully remove it, but keep its ventral and posteroventral portions. Some specimens that preserve the dura mater also preserve the branching of the trigeminal nerve (see later). In lateral view, this is a large, Y-shaped, horizontal structure lateral to the hypophysis. If present, sever the nerve just before it branches.

The other meningeal layers are the **pia mater**, a thin layer adhering to the surface of the brain, and the **arachnoid mater**, lying between the dura and pia. The arachnoid largely remains with the dura mater in the cranial cavity of the skull.

Telencephalon

The **telencephalon** includes the **cerebrum** and **olfactory bulbs** (Figures 7.74 and 7.75). It is greatly expanded in mammals, due mainly to the enormous size of the cerebrum. Indeed, the largest parts of the brain are the **cerebral hemispheres**, which lie dorsally and together comprise the cerebrum. The **cerebellum** (part of the **metencephalon**; see later) is another prominent part of the brain, and lies posterior to the cerebrum (Figure 7.74). The surface of the cerebrum bears numerous folds, the **gyri** (sing., **gyrus**), separated by grooves or **sulci** (sing., **sulcus**). Right and left cerebral hemispheres are separated by the deep **longitudinal cerebral fissure** (Figure 7.75). Gently spread the hemispheres to reveal the **corpus callosum**, a white structure consisting of fibers that connect the hemispheres.

The elongated, flattened olfactory bulbs lie anteroventrally on the telencephalon (Figures 7.74 and 7.76). A band of fibers, the **olfactory tract**, continues posteriorly from the olfactory bulb and almost immediately separates into **lateral** and **medial olfactory striae**. The medial olfactory stria extends posteromedially, whereas the lateral olfactory stria extends posterolaterally. Each stria is accompanied by a gyrus, and only the lateral olfactory stria is easily discernable. It continues posteriorly into the **piriform lobe**, which is separated from the rest of the cerebrum by the **rhinal sulcus** (Figure 7.74).

Diencephalon

The greatly expanded cerebrum covers the roof of the **diencephalon**, so that without dissection only the **hypothalamus**, or floor of the diencephalon, may be clearly observed (Figure 7.76). The **optic chiasm**, at the anterior end of the hypothalamus, represents a partial decussation of the **optic nerves**. Just posterior to the optic chiasm,

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

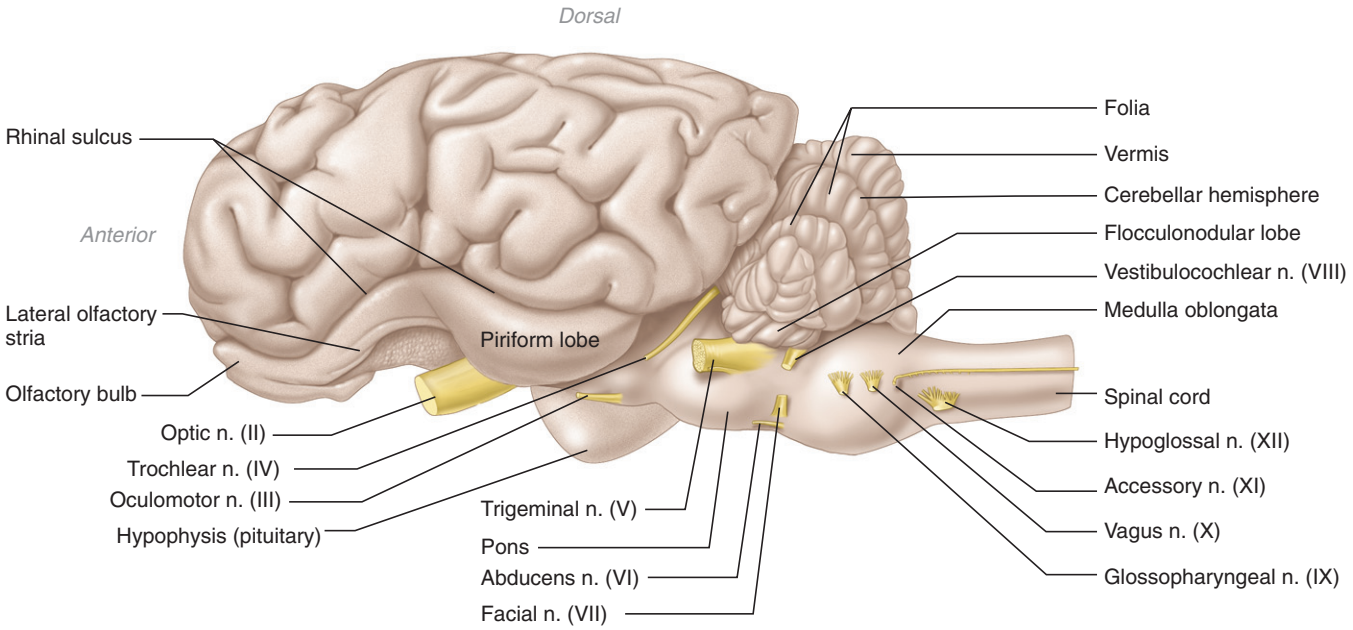


FIGURE 7.74 Left lateral view of the sheep brain and cranial nerves, with dura mater and arachnoid mater removed.

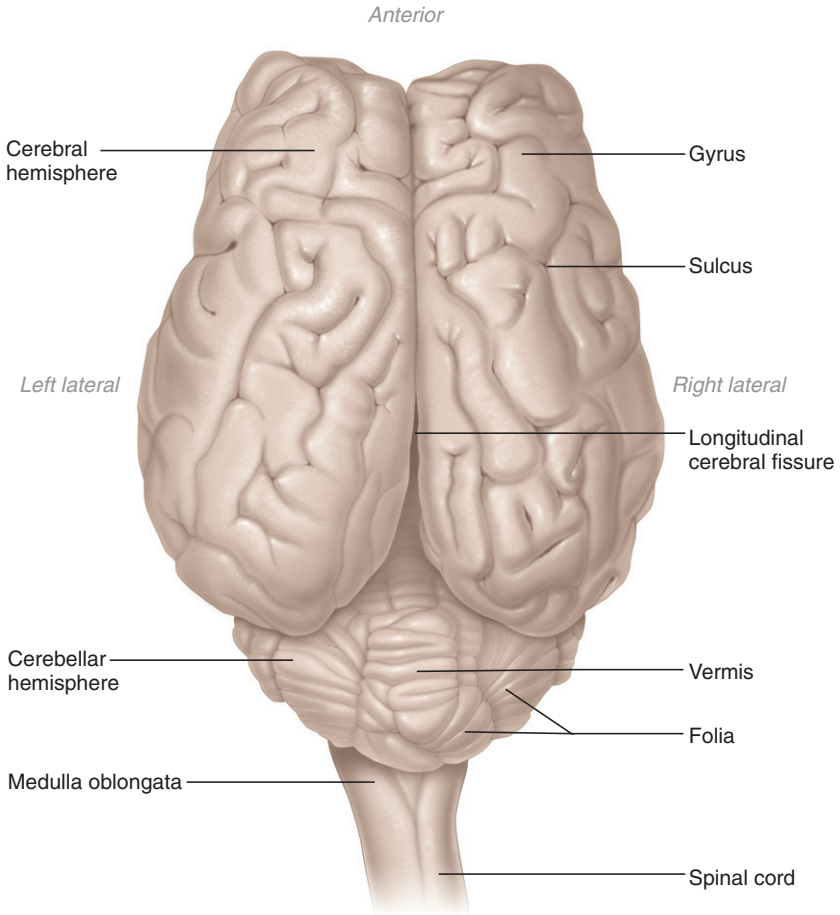


FIGURE 7.75 Dorsal view of the sheep brain, with dura mater and arachnoid mater removed.

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

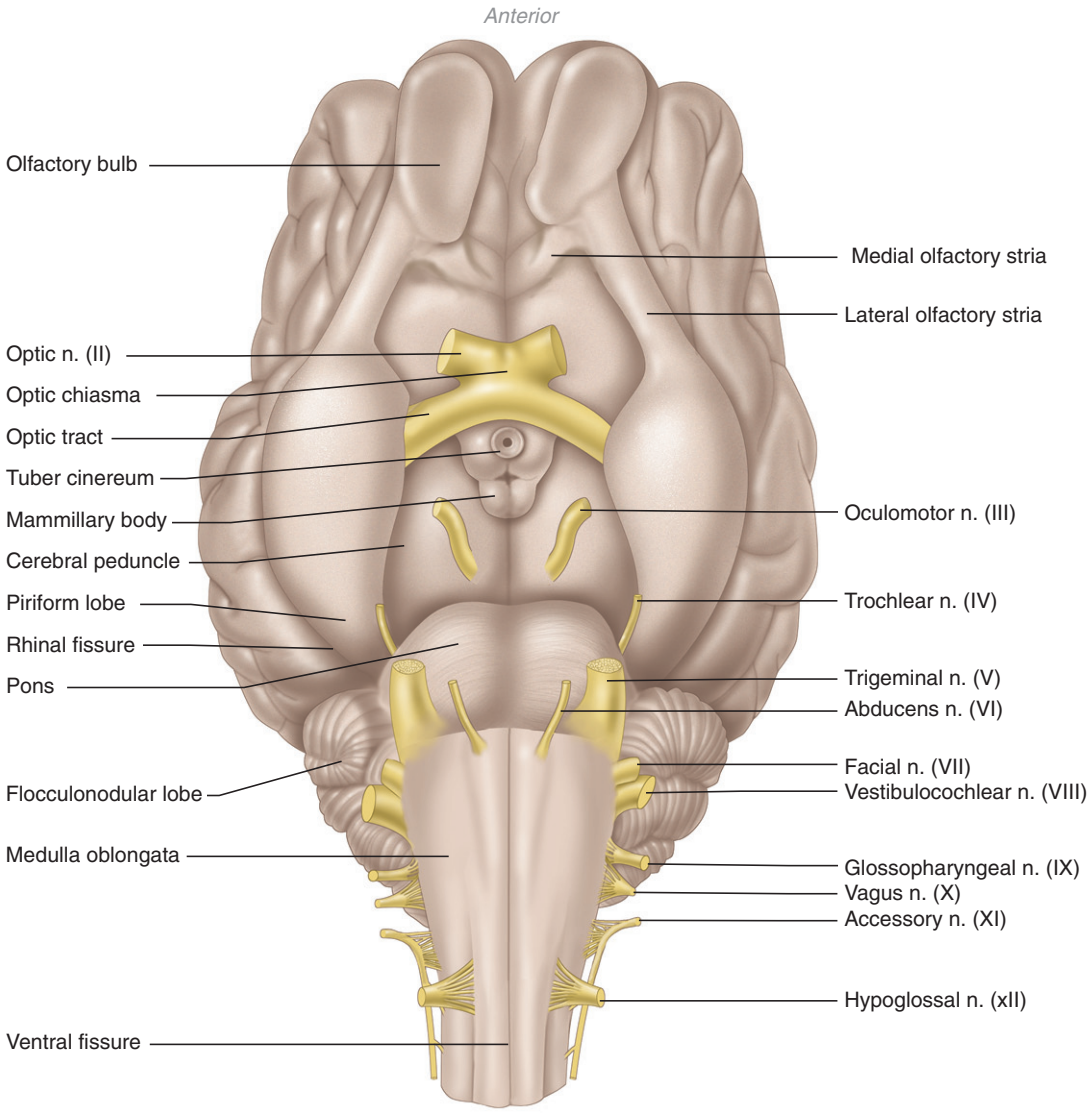


FIGURE 7.76 Ventral view of the sheep brain and cranial nerves, with dura mater and arachnoid mater removed.

a thin, delicate stalk, the **infundibulum**, suspends the **hypophysis** (Figure 7.77). In prepared specimens, the hypophysis and infundibulum may be missing. Remove them if present in your specimen. The opening for the infundibulum is a continuation of the **third ventricle** (see later). The area of the hypothalamus adjacent to the opening is the **tuber cinereum** (Figure 7.76). Immediately posterior to the tuber are the paired **mammillary bodies** (which may appear as a single rounded structure), which mark the posterior end of the hypothalamaus.

The dorsal part of the diencephalon is formed by the **epithalamus**. To see it, observe the brain in dorsal view, spread apart the cerebral hemispheres, and make a longitudinal cut through the corpus callosum. The epithalamus lies mainly ventral to the latter's posterior portion. Remove its roof, the **tela choroidea**, to reveal the third ventricle, the narrow cavity of the diencephalon. The slightly thickened posterolateral margin of the ventricle forms the **habenula** on each side. These margins converge posteriorly toward the midline, and form the **habenular commissure**, which is more readily discernible in sagittal section (Figure 7.77). The rounded **pineal gland** lies posterior to the commissure.

The walls of the **thalamus**, the lateral portions of the diencephalon, are mainly lateral to the dorsal margins of the third ventricle, but their extent is difficult to appreciate. Part of the thalamus, the **intermediate mass** (see later), extends across the third ventricle to connect the left thalamus and right thalamus (Figure 7.77). You

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

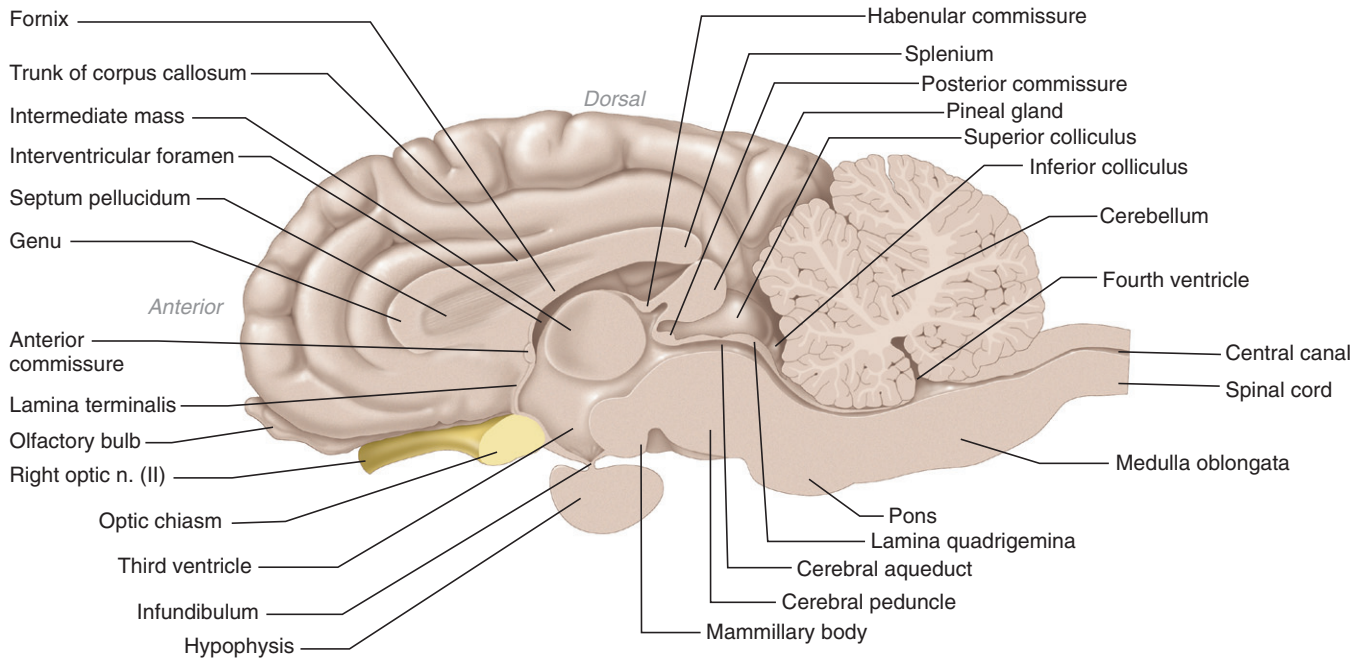


FIGURE 7.77 Sagittal section of sheep brain.

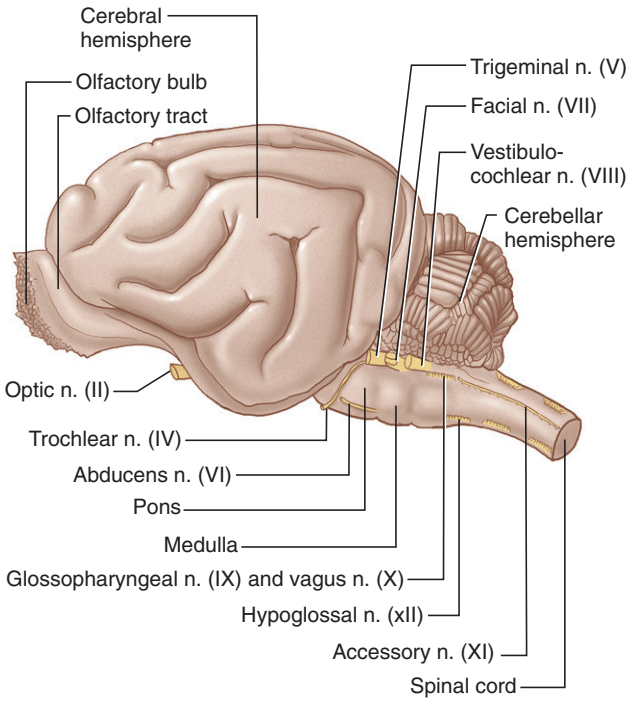


FIGURE 7.78 Left lateral view of the cat brain and cranial nerves, with dura mater and arachnoid mater removed.

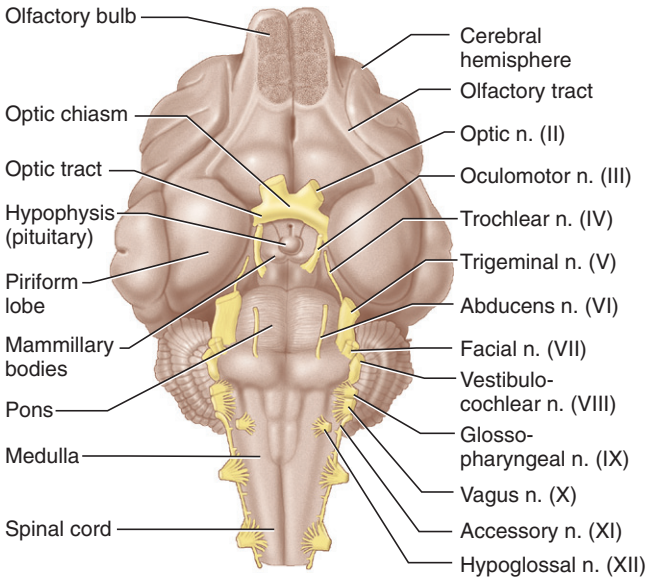


FIGURE 7.79 Ventral view of the cat brain and cranial nerves, with dura mater and arachnoid mater removed.

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

may have cut through it during exposure of the third ventricle. The positional relationships of these structures will be examined again in sagittal view.

Mesencephalon

The **tectum**, or roof, of the mesencephalon was partially exposed during dissection of the third ventricle. To see it more completely, spread the cerebral hemispheres from each other, as well as from the cerebellum. The tectum is characterized by two paired, prominent swellings that together form the **corpora quadrigemina**, which sit on the **lamina quadrigemina** (the latter will be seen in sagittal section). The two anterior swellings, the **superior colliculi**, are the larger, well-rounded structures that lie just posterior to the pineal gland. The **inferior colliculi** are the smaller, flattened structures that protrude from the posterior end of the superior colliculi. The **trochlear nerves** arise from the dorsal surface of the mesencephalon just posterior to the inferior colliculi.

Examine the brain in ventral view (Figure 7.76). The floor of the mesencephalon is formed by the cerebral peduncles, slightly elevated regions lateral and posterior to the mammillary bodies. The relatively wide and flattened **oculomotor nerve** arises from the surface of each cerebral peduncle.

Metencephalon

The **metencephalon** consists mainly of two regions. Dorsally is the cerebellum (Figures 7.74 and 7.75). Its surface is highly folded into **folia**, which are separated by **sulci**. The median part of the cerebellum is the **vermis**. The **cerebellar hemispheres** lie on either side of the vermis. A **flocculonodular lobe** may be distinguished on the ventrolateral part of each hemisphere. On the ventral surface, the metencephalon consists of the **pons**, a rounded region of transverse fibers posterior to the cerebral peduncles. On each side, the **trigeminal nerve** arises laterally from the posterolateral part of the pons. Distally the trigeminal has three main branches: the ophthalmic, maxillary, and mandibular nerves, which are often respectively abbreviated as V_1, V_2, and V_3 (Table 7.4).

Myelencephalon

The **myelencephalon** consists of the **medulla oblongata**, which forms the brain posterior to the metencephalon and connects to the spinal cord (Figures 7.76 and 7.77). The **ventral fissure** is the median ventral groove of the medulla. To either side are narrow longitudinal bands termed **pyramids**. Lateral to the anterior part of each pyramid, and just posterior to the pons, lies a **trapezoid body**.

The remaining cranial nerves are mainly associated with the medulla oblongata, but some of them may be difficult to discern if the meninges have been stripped. Thus, identify the stumps of these nerves before removing the meninges. The nerves to be identified are the **abducens**, **facial**, **vestibulocochlear**, **glossopharyngeal**, **vagus**, **accessory**, and **hypoglossal nerves** (Figures 7.74, 7.76, and 7.80).

An abducens nerve arises from the anterior part of the medulla, between the trapezoid body and pyramid. The facial nerve arises lateral to the trapezoid body just posterior to the trigeminal nerve, and the vestibulocochlear nerve arises slightly more dorsally, from beneath the flocculonodular lobe. The glossopharyngeal, vagus, and accessory nerves arise in sequence and more posteriorly from the lateral surface of the medulla. The hypoglossal nerve arises farther posteriorly and ventrally. If the meninges have been stripped from the medulla, however, it will be extremely difficult to identify these nerves.

One method of exposing the nerves is to make a midventral cut through the meninges using fine scissors. Begin posteriorly and work your way forward. When you reach the level of the abducens nerves, carefully reflect the meninges. As you peel the meninges back, look for a series of fine rootlets arising from the ventrolateral surface of the posterior part of the medulla. These rootlets merge to form the hypoglossal nerve. Separate it from the meninges and continue peeling the latter. Soon you will note the glossopharyngeal, vagus, and accessory nerves. The accessory will probably be the most prominent at first, because it forms a longitudinal nerve adjacent to the surface of the medulla. Follow it forward, and you will find the stumps of the three nerves arising very close to each other. The glossopharyngeal and vagus arise by a series of small rootlets, so they may not be readily discernable. The accessory nerve arises as a series of very fine rootlets along the posterior part of the medulla. Posterior to it, your specimen may preserve the first spinal nerve. Its origin appears similar to that of the hypoglossal nerve.

Examine the dorsal surface of the medulla. A good part of its roof is covered by a **tela choroidea**. Remove it to expose the fourth ventricle, the cavity within the medulla that continues forward under the cerebellum. This part of the roof of the fourth ventricle is covered by a separate membranous structure, the **medullary velum**.

Sagittal Section of the Brain

With a new scalpel blade, make a sagittal section through the brain by extending the section made earlier to expose the third ventricle. Carefully continue the section ventrally and posteriorly using the pineal body, superior colliculi, and middle of the vermis as guides to the midsagittal plane of the brain.

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

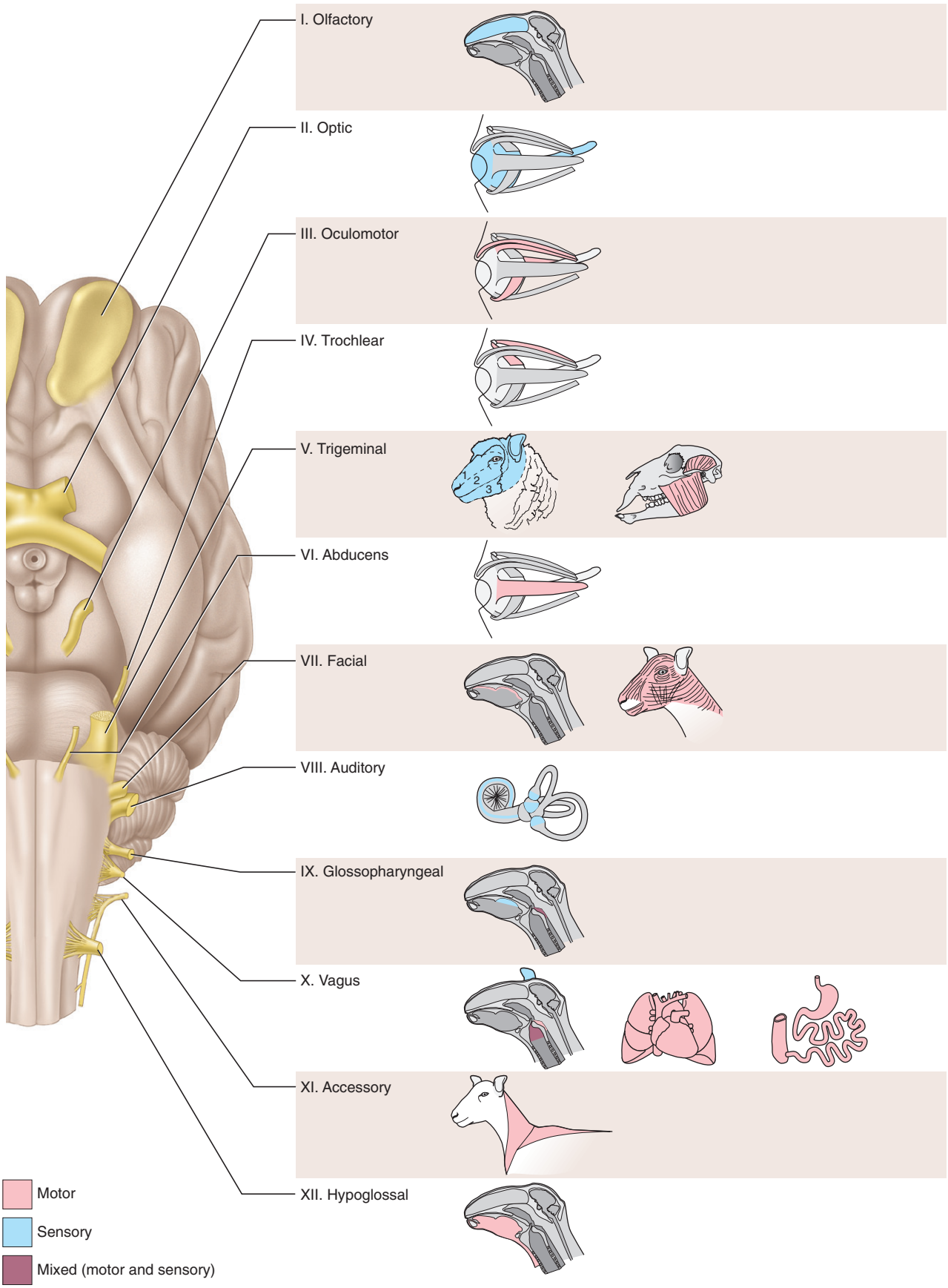


FIGURE 7.80 Cranial nerves and the structures they innervate.

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

Examine one of the halves in sagittal view (Figure 7.77) and note the great extension of the cerebrum. The **corpus callosum** (see also earlier), the structure allowing communication between the cerebral hemispheres, is also clearly revealed. Its anterior, curved part is the **genu**, its posterior part the **splenium**, and between them dorsally is the **trunk** of the corpus callosum. The **fornix** curves anteroventrally from near the splenium. The **septum pellucidum** is a thin, vertical, shiny partition between the corpus callosum and fornix. Most sagittal sections do not coincide precisely with the midsagittal plane, and so the septum remains on one or the other half of the brain. If it is absent on the half you are examining, you will see a cavity, the **lateral ventricle** of the cerebral hemisphere; check the other half for the septum. You may break through the septum into the other lateral ventricle.

Below the ventral part of the fornix is the **anterior commissure**, a small, rounded structure representing a group of fibers. The **lamina terminalis**, forming the anterior wall of the third ventricle, extends ventrally from the anterior commissure to the **optic chiasm**, which is oval in section. The third ventricle lies mainly ventral to the fornix and splenium of the corpus callosum. Note that it is narrow but dorsoventrally high. The circular intermediate mass, noted earlier, extends across the third ventricle and connects the thalami that form the right and left sides of the diencephalon. Each lateral ventricle communicates with the third ventricle through the **interventricular foramen**, located just anterior to the intermediate mass. Identify the **mammillary body** ventrally on the hypothalamus and, more posteriorly, the **cerebral peduncle** and **pons**.

Identify the **pineal body** and the **habenular commissure** in section. Note the **posterior commissure** extending between the pineal body and the **lamina quadrigemina** (mentioned earlier) of the mesencephalon. Posterior to the intermediate mass, the third ventricle communicates with the **cerebral aqueduct**, a narrow passageway that extends posteriorly beneath the lamina quadrigemina and then into the fourth ventricle. The latter, in turn, extends back into the **central canal** of the spinal cord.

Examine the section through the cerebellum and observe how the white matter, the **arbor vitae**, branches into the surrounding gray matter. The roof of the fourth ventricle is formed by the **medullary velum** anteriorly and the **tela choroidea** posteriorly, but these structures were probably removed during exposure of the fourth ventricle. Note how the cerebellum attaches to the rest of the brain on each side of the fourth ventricle via a series of fiber tracts or peduncles. Make a frontal section through the peduncles to remove the cerebellum. The posterior curved part of the section consists of the **posterior cerebellar peduncle**. Anteriorly there are two peduncles. The **middle cerebellar peduncle** is slightly larger than and lateral to the **anterior cerebellar peduncle**.

Cranial Nerves

The stumps of the 12 cranial nerves have already been identified during the dissection of the brain, but their peripheral distribution cannot easily be followed. Figure 7.80 provides a summary of the cranial nerves, their origin from the brain, and their peripheral distribution. Table 7.5 indicates the foramina through which the cranial nerves leave the skull. Review the names and numbering sequence for the nerves, as well as the foramina through which they pass.

TABLE 7.5 Cranial Nerves and Associated Foramina of the Sheep

Cranial Nerve		Foramen
Number	**Nerve**	
I	Olfactory nerve	Cribriform formina of the cribriform plate
II	Optic nerve	Optic canal
III	Oculomotor nerve	Orbital fissure[1]
IV	Trochlear nerve	Orbital fissure[1]
V	Trigeminal nerve	
V_1	Ophthalmic nerve	Orbital fissure[1]
V_2	Maxillary nerve	Foramen rotundum[1]
V_3	Mandibular nerve	Foramen ovale
VI	Abducens nerve	Orbital fissure[1]
VII	Facial nerve	Internal acoustic meatus, then stylomastoid foramen[2]
VIII	Vestibulocochlear nerve	Internal acoustic meatus[3]
IX	Glossopharyngeal nerve	Jugular foramen
X	Vagus nerve	Jugular foramen
XI	Accessory nerve	Jugular foramen
XII	Hypoglossal nerve	Hypoglossal canal, then jugular foramen

[1]*The orbital fissure and foramen rotundum fuse to form a single foramen orbitorotundum in the sheep; see Figure 7.S1.*
[2]*The main part of the facial nerve passes through the inner ear and middle ear before emerging from the stylomastoid foramen.*
[3]*As the vestibulocochlear supplies structures of the inner ear, it does not leave the skull.*

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

Key Terms: Brain and Cranial Nerves

abducens nerve
accessory nerve
anterior commissure
arachnoid mater
arbor vitae
central canal
cerebellar hemispheres
cerebellar peduncle, anterior, middle, and posterior
cerebellum
cerebral aqueduct (aqueduct of Sylvius)
cerebral hemispheres
cerebral peduncle
cerebrum
corpora quadrigemina
corpus callosum
diencephalon
dura mater
epithalamus
facial nerve
flocculonodular lobe
folia
fornix
genu
glossopharyngeal nerve
gyrus (plur., **gyri**)
habenula
habenular commissure
hypoglossal nerve
hypophysis
hypothalamus
inferior colliculi
infundibulum
intermediate mass (massa intermedia)
interventricular foramen (foramen of Munro)
lamina quadrigemina
lamina terminalis
lateral olfactory stria
lateral ventricle
longitudinal cerebral fissure
mammillary body
medial olfactory stria
medulla oblongata
medullary velum
meninx (plur., **meninges**)
metencephalon
myelencephalon
oculomotor nerve
olfactory bulbs
olfactory tract
optic chiasm
optic nerves
pia mater
pineal body
pineal gland
piriform lobe
pons
posterior commissure
pyramids
rhinal sulcus
septum pellucidum
splenium
sulcus (plur., **sulci**)
superior colliculi
tectum
tela choroidea of diencephalon
tela choroidea of myelencephalon
telencephalon
thalamus
third ventricle
trapezoid body
trigeminal nerve
trochlear nerve
trunk of corpus callosum
tuber cinereum
vagus nerve
ventral fissure
vermis
vestibulocochlear nerve (auditory nerve, octaval nerve)

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

CHAPTER

8

Reptile Skulls and Mandibles

INTRODUCTION

The great taxonomic richness of reptiles—including such forms as turtles, alligators, lizards, snakes, and birds—is reflected in the enormous anatomical variation present in this clade. This chapter treats the cranial skeleton, including the skull and mandible, of representative forms of the major reptilian clades that are not covered in a separate chapter: a turtle, lizard, snake, alligator, and tyrannosaurid dinosaurs. The skull and mandible of a bird are discussed in Chapter 9. The taxa covered represent the main subdivisions of Reptilia, with the turtle representing the anapsid condition (as has been traditionally done, but see later) and the remaining forms representing variations of the diapsid condition (see Chapter 1). Although the specific examples discussed here may not be available for study, a closely related form is likely at your disposal and sufficient for appreciating at least the more general aspects of the cranial skeletal anatomy. In most cases, it will also be possible to follow more detailed anatomical features, such as conformation of individual bones and foramina. The exception is the tyrannosaurid skull, which is unlikely available for direct study.[1] Still, the exercise of identifying the main bones and features of the skull using accompanying figures allows an understanding of the basic pattern and some of the specific features that characterize a main reptilian clade.

SECTION I: TURTLE SKULL AND MANDIBLE

Turtles (Testudines) are traditionally considered representative of the anapsid condition, in which the lateral temporal region of the skull is unfenestrated, reflecting the ancestral amniote condition. Turtles, along with several fossil groups, are included in Parareptilia, which includes the basal members of Reptilia. However, it is not certain that turtles are basal reptilians to be grouped with other parareptilians; they may be diapsids. As noted in Chapter 1, the position of turtles is hotly debated and may be the most controversial current taxonomic problem in vertebrate systematics. The main taxon discussed here is *Chelydra serpentina*, the common snapping turtle. As in most turtles, its temporal region is derived, so the skull of *Chelonia mydas*, the green sea turtle, is used as an example of the more stereotypical anapsid condition, as well as to supplement aspects of anatomical detail.

Observe the skull of *Chelydra serpentina* and identify the structures described below. Many of the sutures between the bones are difficult to discern, but the position of the bones will be apparent from the following descriptions and figures. The sutural patterns of most other turtle species you are likely to have at your disposal will differ slightly, but most of the bones should still be identifiable. Another consideration is that there may be considerable tissue covering, thus obscuring some of the features noted. If so, you will need to clear it away.

In lateral view (Figure 8.1a and 8.4a), note the relatively short **rostrum** and anteriorly placed **orbits**. Anteriorly, the **naris** (in life the opening is separated by soft tissue into left and right nares) is bounded by the **maxillae** laterally, the **premaxillae** ventrally, and the **prefrontals** dorsally. The **nasals**, present in most other tetrapods, are usually absent in turtles (nasals are present, for example, in the earliest known fossil turtle, *Odontochelys*; see Li et al., 2008). Also absent in *Chelydra*, as in nearly all other turtles, are teeth. Instead, these structures are replaced functionally by a beak covered by the keratinous **rhamphotheca**, anchored to the ventral margin of the maxillae and premaxillae, as well as to the lower jaw (Figure 8.2). Teeth are present in early turtles: for example, in the roof of the oral cavity of *Proganochelys* (see Reisz and Head, 2008) and as a marginal series and within the oral cavity of *Odontochelys* (Li et al., 2008).

[1]Casts, though expensive, are available.

© 2010 Elsevier Inc.

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

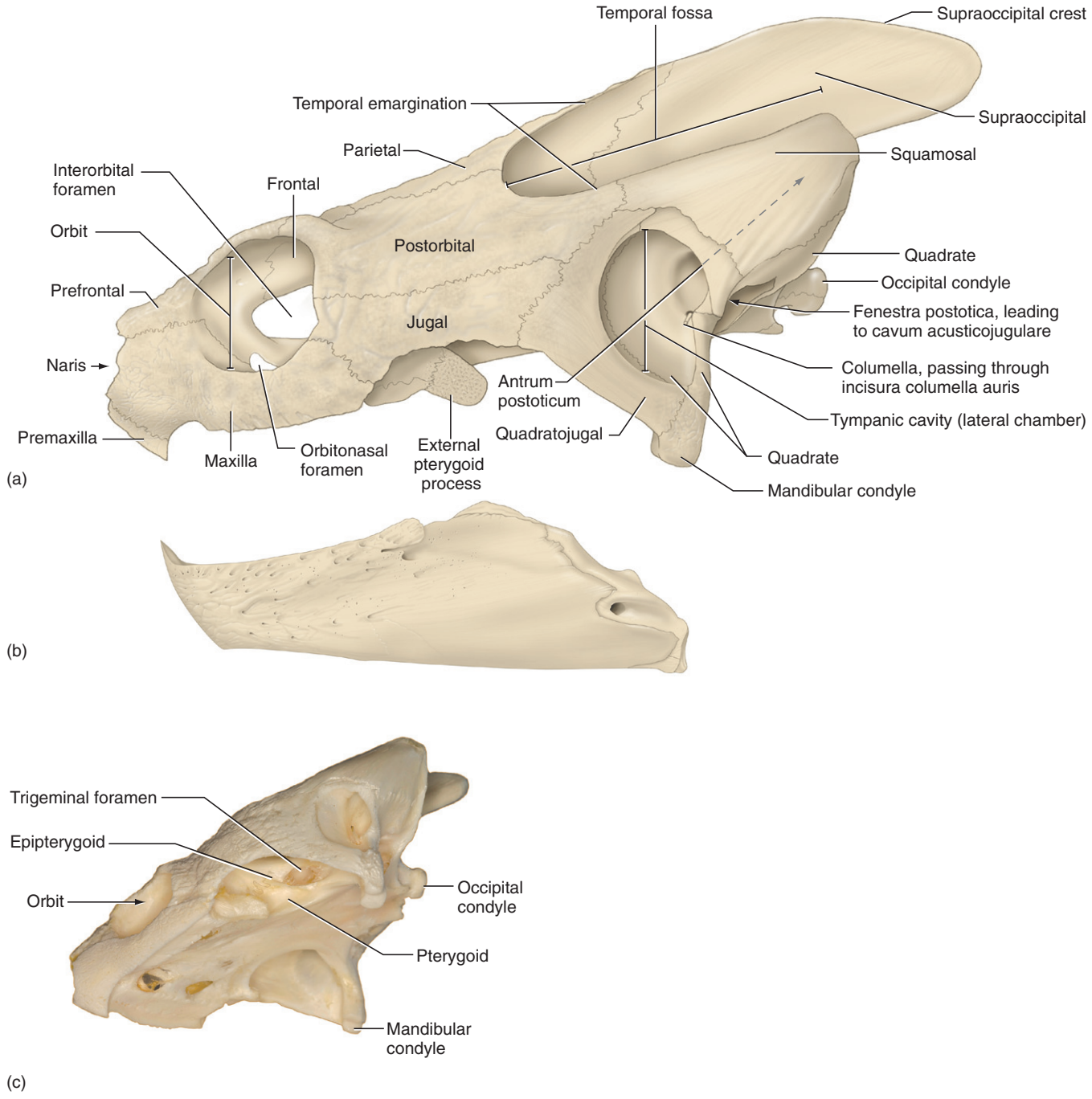


FIGURE 8.1 Skull and mandible of the snapping turtle; (a) skull in lateral view; (b) mandible in lateral view (see Figure 8.6 for labels); and (c) skull in ventrolateral view.

The margin of the orbit (Figures 8.1a and 8.3a) is formed by the maxilla and prefrontal, as well as the **postorbital** and **jugal** (in some species the frontal may make a small contribution to the orbit). The lacrimal, a bone commonly bordering the orbit in other amniote skulls, is missing in turtles (except possibly *Proganochelys*; see Gaffney, 1979). A large opening, the **interorbital foramen**, is present on the medial wall of the orbit. The foramen is paired with another on the medial wall of the orbit of the other side of the skull. In life, much of the foramen is filled with cartilage (some may still be present in your specimen), through which several structures pass (e.g., optic nerve; portions of the eye muscles, oculomotor and trochlear nerves; a branch of the trigeminal nerve). A smaller opening, the **orbitonasal foramen**, is visible on the floor of the orbit for passage

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

of an artery between the orbital and nasal regions. Look posteriorly into the orbit to view the braincase, which supports the brain and covers it ventrally, posteriorly, and, partially, laterally with bony elements, which will be described later. The space within the braincase is the **cranial cavity** (Figure 8.4b). Parts of the braincase are not ossified, with the sphenoid and ethmoid regions being mainly cartilaginous. The rest of the brain is covered dorsally by the **epipterygoid** (see later) and bones of the skull roof (Figures 8.1, 8.3a, and 8.4). The **parietal** forms the roof of the skull posterior to the frontal and extends into the prominent, blade-like **supraoccipital crest** of the **supraoccipital**. The parietal and supraoccipital also extend lateroventrally to help cover the brain.

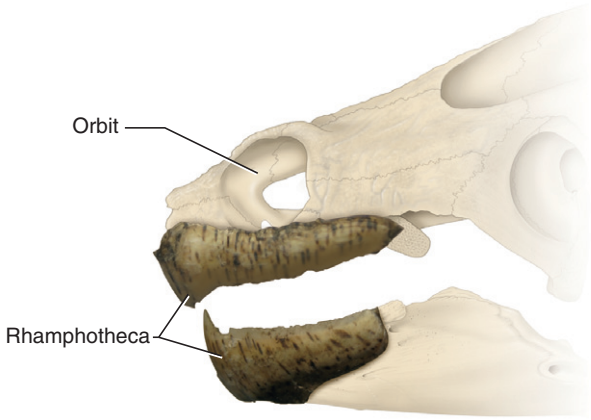


FIGURE 8.2 Anterior part of skull and mandible of the snapping turtle showing rhamphotheca.

The temporal region lies posterodorsally. The skull of turtles is commonly considered as an example of an anapsid skull because there is no definite opening, or **temporal fenestra**, in the lateral skull roof posterior to the orbit (one exception is the fossil *Crossochelys*; a supratemporal fenestra is present but it is almost certainly not homologous with the supratemporal fenestra of other reptiles). This anapsid condition is best observed in a sea turtle (Figure 8.4). In most turtles, however, the posterior margin of the skull is emarginated, forming a large notch, the **temporal emargination** (Figures 8.1a and 8.3a). The large jaw-closing or adductor musculature is located here, and the emargination is related to the attachment and bulging of this musculature. The space occupied by the musculature is the **temporal fossa**, and

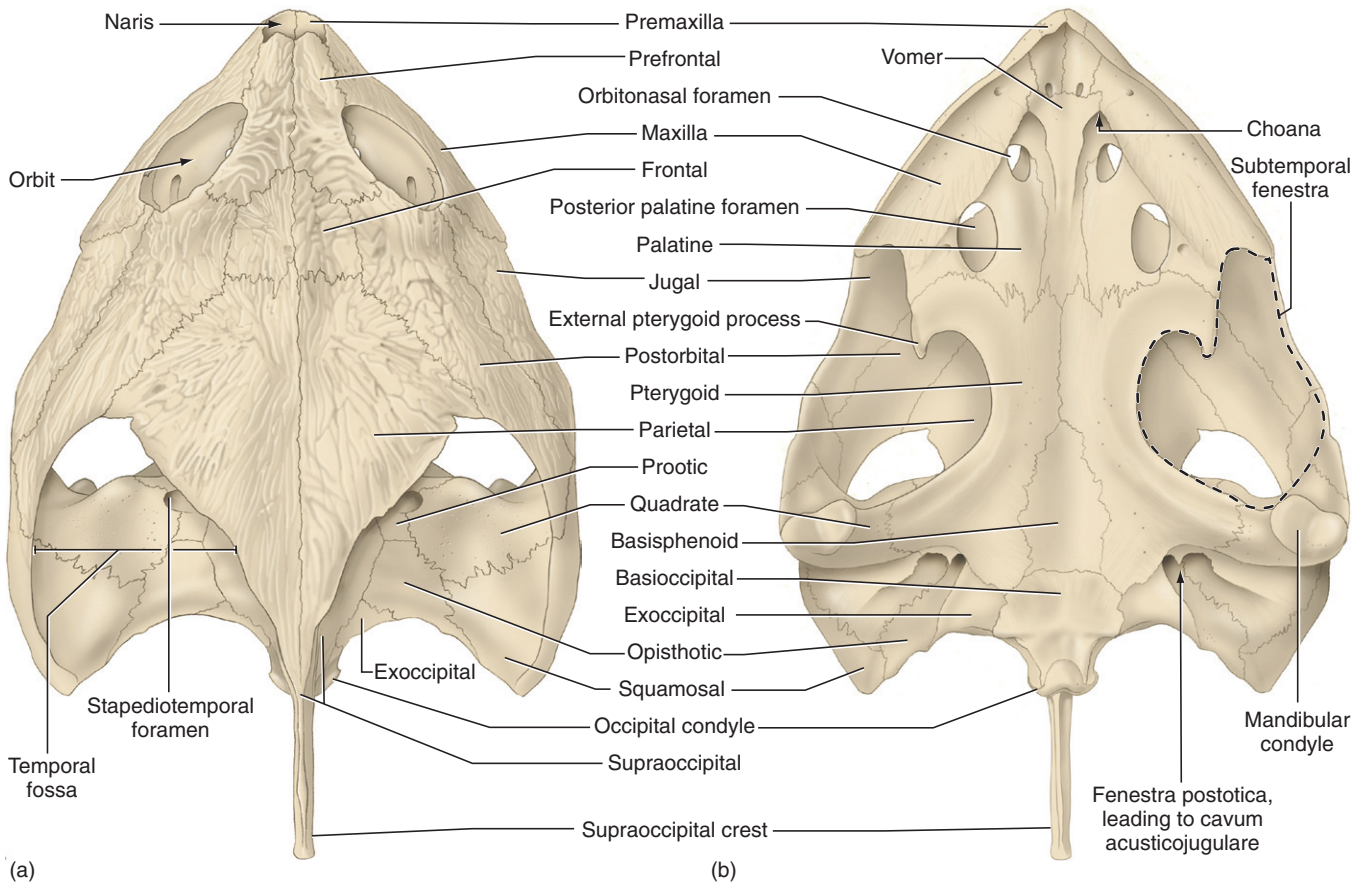


FIGURE 8.3 Skull of the snapping turtle in (a) dorsal and (b) ventral views.

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

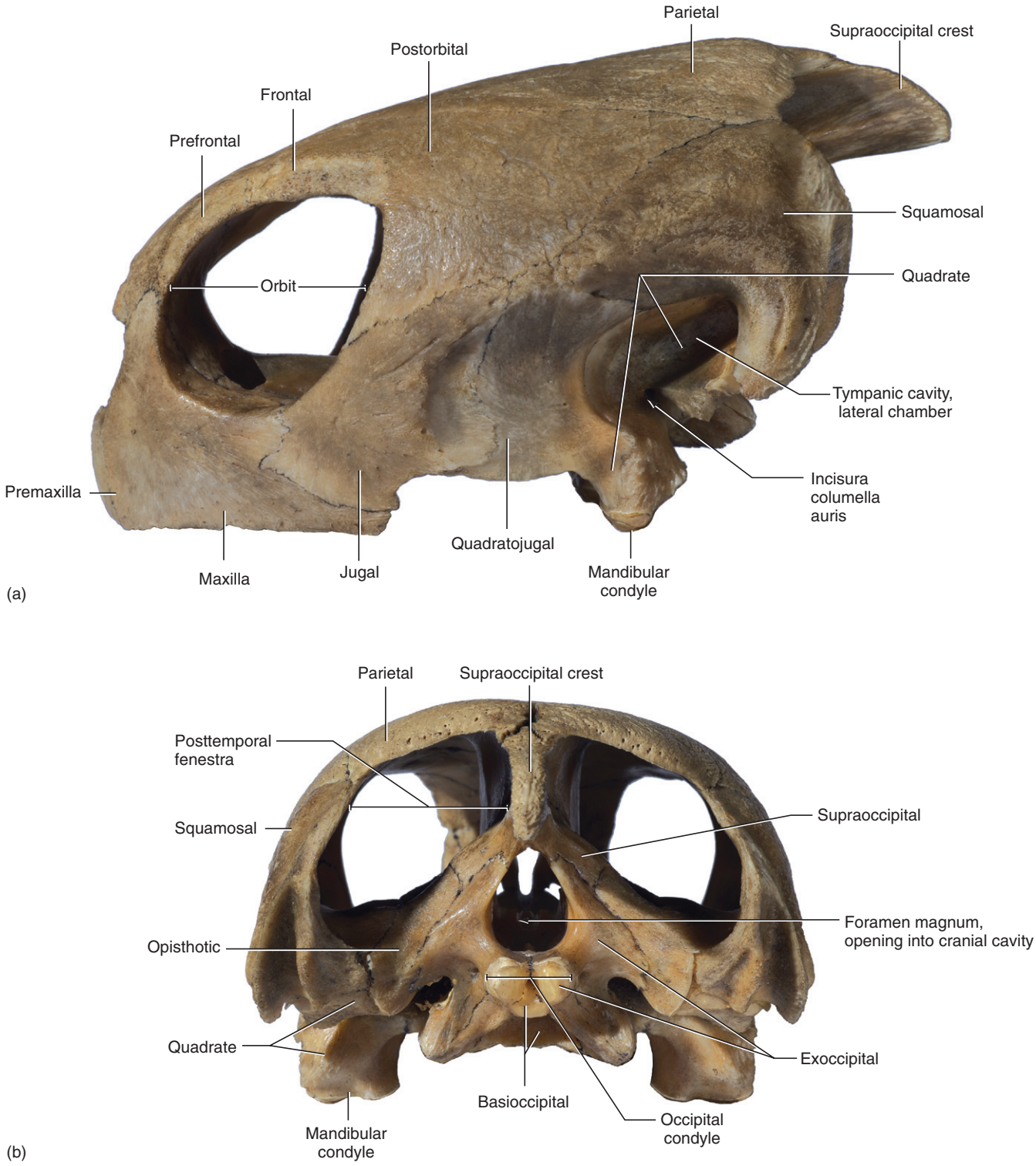


FIGURE 8.4 Skull of the sea turtle in (a) lateral and (b) posterior views.

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

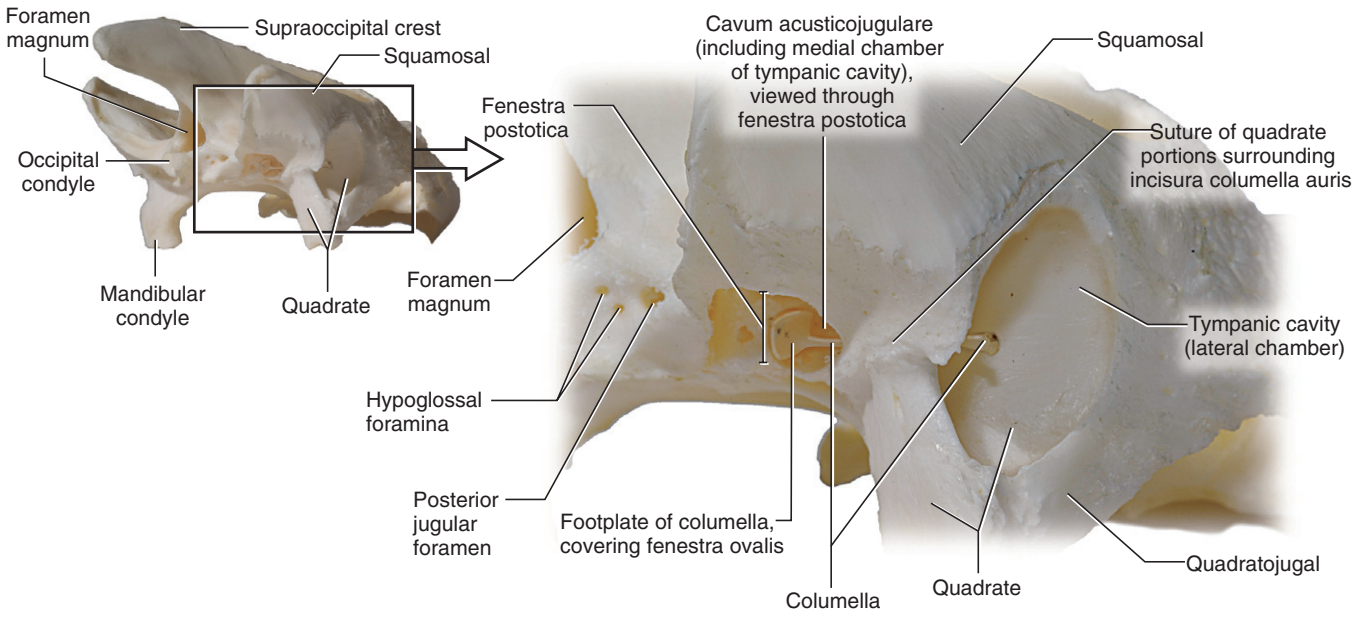


FIGURE 8.5 Skull of the snapping turtle in posterolateral view.

the walls forming the fossa provide much of the origin for the musculature. Compared to the sea turtle, in which the fossa is almost entirely covered over (Figure 8.4a), it is apparent that emargination has occurred mainly in the parietal. In *Chelydra* the margin is formed by the parietal and postorbital anteriorly and the **squamosal** posteriorly (but this may differ in other turtles). Note that the squamosal forms the posterodorsal corner of the skull. The depressor mandibulae muscle, which opens the jaw, takes origin from the posterolateral and posterior surfaces of the squamosal.

Ventral to the anterior part of the squamosal is a large, somewhat oval or kidney-shaped depression, notched posteriorly. This is the **tympanic cavity**, which is formed almost entirely by the **quadrate** and contains the middle ear (Figures 8.1a and 8.4a). Posteriorly, a small and delicate rod-like bone (it may be absent in your specimen) projects into the cavity. This is the most distal portion of the **columella** (or stapes; Figures 8.1a and 8.5) and it is continued laterally by a cartilaginous portion, the extracolumella (which will almost certainly not be preserved in your specimen), to the eardrum or tympanum (but see later for *Chelonia*), which is attached to the margin of the tympanic cavity. To provide greater stability for the placement of the columella, the quadrate constricts around (as in sea turtles) and in some cases (as in *Chelydra*) completely surrounds it, thus forming a passageway, the **incisura columella auris**. The suture indicating where the ends of the quadrate meet to form the incisura can be seen just posterior to the columella in *Chelydra* (Figure 8.5). In surrounding the columella, the quadrate subdivides the middle ear into a lateral and medial chamber. This is distinct from the typical condition of the middle ear in other tetrapod skulls. We have already noted the lateral chamber in the *Chelydra* skull. The medial portion is traversed by the medial end of the columella, once it has passed through the incisura, to reach the inner ear (Figure 8.5). The medial end of the columella expands into a circular footplate that covers the **fenestra ovalis**. The medial chamber is best viewed in posterior view through the **fenestra postotica**, which is, however, probably covered by tissue and may have to be prepared (Figure 8.5).

Return to a lateral view (Figure 8.1a). Posterodorsally the tympanic cavity is continuous with a second cavity, the **antrum postoticum**, which is formed mainly by the squamosal. To see it, look posteriorly into the tympanic cavity. The antrum serves to enlarge the middle ear cavity and thus to control the range of sounds that can be heard. In general, the more terrestrial a turtle, the larger is its antrum. Given that the antrum is filled with air, all turtles that dive deeply need to reduce its size and thicken its walls—in marine turtles the antrum is quite small. As well, *Chelonia* lacks a tympanic membrane, and the tympanic cavity is mainly filled with a fatty tissue, which according to Rieppel (1993) apparently compensates for the relative vacuum resulting in the middle ear during diving (and it may also be related to solving the problem of acoustic impedance in aquatic tetrapods).

The quadrate continues ventrally below the tympanic cavity to form the **mandibular condyle**, which articulates with the lower jaw (Figures 8.1a, 8.3b, and 8.4). The **quadratojugal** articulates with the quadrate here and

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

extends dorsally, curving around the anterior margin of the tympanic cavity, to articulate with the jugal, postorbital, and squamosal. The ventral margin of the skull posterior to the orbit is formed by the quadratojugal and jugal, and is concave. Tilt the skull to observe the braincase ventral to this margin (Figure 8.1c). A large oval opening, probably covered by tissue, will be visible. This is the **trigeminal nerve foramen**, which communicates between the cranial cavity and temporal fossa and transmits the abducens nerve, the mandibular artery, and two branches of the trigeminal nerve. The small epipterygoid, noted earlier, helps form the braincase. It is located anterior to the foramen and contributes to its anterior margin. The epipterygoid lies between the parietal and pterygoid, but is fused in adult individuals of *Chelydra* (but not in all turtles) and is not apparent as an individual element.

Observe the skull in dorsal view and note the position and form of the bones already described (Figure 8.3a). Consider the edges of the temporal emarginations. These define the **posttemporal fenestrae**, paired openings that face posteriorly and are best appreciated in posterior view of a sea turtle skull (Figure 8.4b). They are less apparent, though still present, in *Chelydra*. In dorsal view (Figure 8.3a), note the medial extensions of the quadrates and squamosals and the lateral extension of the supraoccipital. Between these extensions, at the back of the skull, note the **opisthotic** posteriorly and the smaller **prootic** anterior to it. These bones contain the inner ear. The small triangular wedge between the posterior parts of the opisthotic and supraoccipital is the **exoccipital**. The **stapediotemporal foramen**, through which the stapedial artery passes, lies between the quadrate and prootic bones.

In ventral view, note again the edentulous maxillae anteriorly, each with a sharp-edged ventral margin (Figure 8.3b). They help form the palate, along with the premaxillae, **vomer**, **palatines**, and **pterygoids**. There is usually considerable fibrous tissue adhering to the anterior part of the palate. The nasal cavities emerge onto the palate through the **choanae** (the internal openings of the nasal cavities). Although the bony naris is a single opening, the nasal cavities are paired, separated mainly by cartilage (which may be observed by looking through the choana). The ventral opening of the orbitonasal foramen is located just posterolateral to the choana. A larger opening, the **posterior palatine foramen**, lies posterior to the orbitonasal foramen and transmits the infraxillary artery. The pterygoids are clearly the largest palatal elements. They curve posteriorly to meet the quadrates laterally and the basicranial elements more medially. Along with the maxilla, jugal, quadratojugal, and quadrate, the pterygoid helps define the **subtemporal fenestra**, the ventral opening of the temporal fossa through which the adductor musculature (in addition to the mandibular artery and a branch of the trigeminal nerve) descends to insert on the lower jaw. Note the **external pterygoid process** (also visible in lateral view, Figure 8.1a) of the pterygoid bone. It forms a nearly vertical plate with a flat, lateral surface that acts as a guide for the lower jaw during jaw closing.

The **basisphenoid** and **basioccipital** are the midline elements between and posterior to, respectively, the posterior ends of the pterygoid (Figure 8.3a). These bones help support the brain ventrally. The basisphenoid includes the **parasphenoid** in most turtles. We note the parasphenoid (a dermal bone of the braincase), even though it is not present as a separate element, because it is generally a conspicuous element in some tetrapod skulls. The basioccipital forms the ventromedial part of the **occipital condyle** (Figures 8.3b and 8.4b), which articulates with the first cervical vertebra (or atlas). The condyle is completed by the exoccipitals (Figure 8.4b). The **foramen magnum**, the large opening through which the spinal cord passes, lies dorsal to the condyle (Figures 8.4b and 8.5). The exoccipital also contributes to the basicranium ventrally, extending laterally from the basioccipital, and the posterior surface of the skull, which is pierced (Figure 8.5) by three openings, two small and medial **hypoglossal foramina** and a larger and lateral **posterior jugular foramen**. The large opening on each side of the basicranium is the fenestra postotica, mentioned earlier with regard the medial part of the columella. The fenestra leads into a spacious cavity, the **cavum acusticojugulare**. In addition to the columella, and thus the medial portion of the middle ear, it contains several vessels and nerves, such as the glossopharyngeal, hyomandibular, and vagus (which exits through the fenestra postotica).

The palatal and braincase bones on the underside of the skull (Figure 8.3b) are all solidly fused and are unable to move relative to each other and the skull roof. Thus, the turtle skull is termed akinetic. Movement between components of the skull is possible in other reptiles. Such skulls are regarded as kinetic and will be considered in Section II and in Chapter 9.

The lower jaw of reptiles is composed of left and right rami, each formed by several bones, rather than the single bone that occurs in mammals. As for the skull, many of the sutures are fused in the adult so the limits of the individual bones are not easily discernable. Examine a lower jaw ramus of *Chelydra* in lateral view and identify the **dentary** anteriorly (Figure 8.6a). It is the largest bone and occupies nearly the entire lateral surface. Anteriorly the left and right dentaries are fused at the **mandibular symphysis** (Figure 8.6b). The **coronoid** has a small lateral exposure, forming the dorsalmost tip of the jaw ramus, the **coronoid process**. The process serves as an insertion site for some of the adductor musculature, mainly by way of a strong central

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

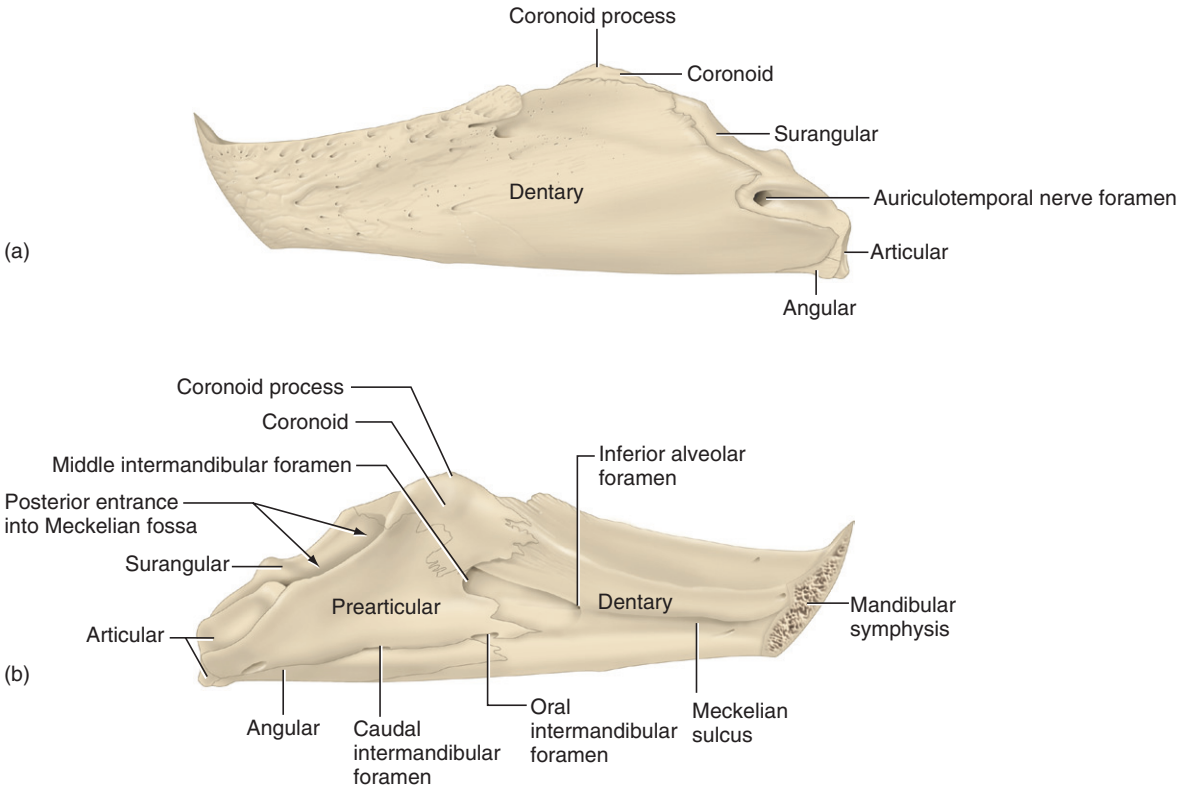


FIGURE 8.6 Mandible of the snapping turtle in (a) lateral and (b) medial views.

tendon termed the bodenaponeurosis. The **surangular** is exposed along the posterodorsal margin of the dentary. Posteriorly, it contributes a small, lateral portion to the **Meckelian fossa** (see later) and bears a conspicuous opening, the **auriculotemporal nerve foramen**, which communicates medially with the fossa and transmits a branch of the mandibular nerve.

Posteroventrally, the **angular** and **articular** have small lateral exposures.

Examine the ramus in medial view (Figure 8.6b). The dentary forms approximately the anterior half of the ramus in this view. The **Meckelian sulcus** is the longitudinal groove on the medial surface of the dentary. It contains the embryonic **Meckel's cartilage**, remnants of which may be present in your specimen. The posterior end of Meckel's cartilage ossifies as the articular, which bears a smooth surface forming most of the articulation (the surangular contributes a small lateral portion) with the quadrate of the skull. The area posterior to the articular surface serves for insertion of the depressor mandibulae muscle, which opens the jaw. The Meckelian fossa, noted earlier, is the large space between the medial and lateral walls of the posterior part of the mandible, and serves for attachment of adductor musculature.

On the dentary, follow the Meckelian sulcus posteriorly where it becomes continuous with the Meckelian fossa, which is covered medially mainly by the flat and sheetlike **prearticular**, the largest bone in medial view after the dentary. The posterior entrance into the fossa (Figure 8.6b) is a large oval opening on the posterodorsal surface of the mandible, between the coronoid process and the quadrate. The anterior entrance into the fossa is the conspicuous **middle intermandibular foramen**. Through it pass a branch of the mandibular nerve and Meckel's cartilage. Just anterior to this foramen along the dorsal margin of the Meckelian sulcus is a smaller opening, the **inferior alveolar foramen**, which is the entrance into the inferior alveolar canal through which passes a branch of the mandibular nerve.

The coronoid and angular are dorsal and ventral, respectively, to the prearticular. These bones were seen in lateral view, but they have much broader medial exposures. The surangular, also noted as having a small exposure in lateral view, is a large sheet-like bone, most of which extends medial to the dentary and forms much of the lateral wall of the Meckelian fossa. The surangular is largely covered in medial view by the prearticular. Two small foramina are usually apparent along or near the suture between the prearticular and angular. The **oral intermandibular foramen** for a branch of the mandibular nerve is the more anterior. The other is the **caudal intermandibular foramen** for another branch of the same nerve.

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

Key Terms: Turtle Skull and Mandible

angular
antrum postoticum
articular
auriculotemporal nerve foramen
basioccipital
basisphenoid
caudal intermandibular foramen
cavum acusticojugulare
choana (plur., **choanae**)
columella
coronoid
coronoid process
cranial cavity
dentary
epipterygoid
exoccipital
external pterygoid process
fenestra ovalis
fenestra postotica
foramen magnum
hypoglossal foramina
incisura columella auris
inferior alveolar foramen
interorbital foramen
jugal
mandibular condyle
mandibular symphysis
maxillae
Meckel's cartilage
Meckelian fossa
Meckelian sulcus
middle intermandibular foramen
naris (plur., **nares**)
nasal
occipital condyle
opisthotic
oral intermandibular foramen
orbit
orbitonasal foramen
palatine
parasphenoid
parietal
posterior jugular foramen
posterior palatine foramen
postorbital
posttemporal fenestrae
prearticular
prefrontal
premaxillae
prootic
pterygoid
quadrate
quadratojugal
rhamphotheca
rostrum
squamosal
stapediotemporal foramen
subtemporal fenestra
supraoccipital
supraoccipital crest
surangular
temporal emargination
temporal fenestra
temporal fossa
trigeminal nerve foramen
tympanic cavity
vomer

SECTION II: IGUANA SKULL AND MANDIBLE

The skull of *Iguana iguana*, the green iguana, appears much less solid than those of the turtle and alligator. The orbits are large openings, as are the supratemporal and infratemporal fenestrae. As noted later, the latter is unbounded ventrally due to loss of the lower temporal bar. As well, the openings into the nasal cavities and on the palatal surfaces are conspicuous, and the braincase is less ossified. These features are present generally in lizards, but in the burrowing and largely legless lizards the skull appears more solid, which reflects the use of the skull in such activities.

The loss of the lower temporal bar in lizards (and snakes) is generally associated with increased movement among elements of the skull. Skulls with the capacity to undergo such movements are said to be **kinetic**. The skull of the iguana described here, however, is incapable of such movements, and so is **akinetic**. Nonetheless, it is worth noting the types of kinesis possible in lizards and identifying the positions of the joints allowing kinesis where appropriate. First, the skull is described, to allow familiarity with the various bones involved in kinesis.

Examine the skull of *Iguana iguana* in lateral view (Figure 8.7a). The **maxilla** is a large bone that forms much of the rostrum. The **premaxilla** is a single bone (formed by fusion of paired premaxillae) lying anterior to it. These bones bear a marginal row of teeth. The premaxilla sends a median process posteriorly between the **nares**, the anterior openings of the nasal cavities. The maxilla forms the lateral margin of each naris, with the midline nasal bones forming the posterior margin. A small **septomaxilla** may be seen through the naris, within the nasal cavity, and supports the cartilaginous nasal capsule.

The **orbit** is bounded anteriorly by the **lacrimal**. The **lacrimal foramen** lies just medial to the orbit's margin.

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

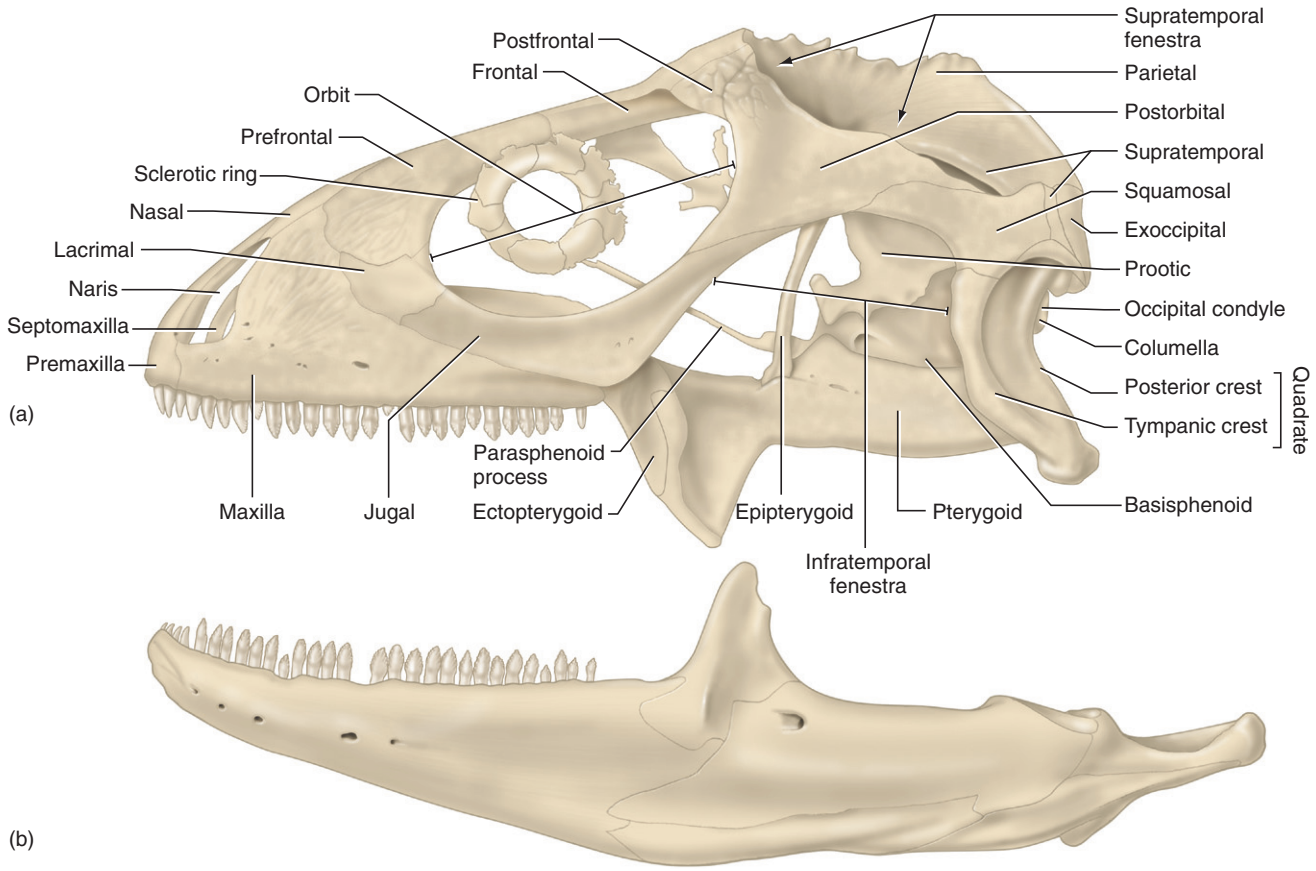


FIGURE 8.7 Skull and mandible of the iguana (a) skull in lateral view; (b) mandible in lateral view (see Figure 8.11 for labels).

The margin is completed by the **prefrontal**, **frontal**, **postfrontal**, **postorbital**, and **jugal**. Note the extensive contact between the jugal and maxilla. The small postfrontal is wedged between the frontal and postorbital. The large interorbital opening is filled in life by a network of cartilages and membranous septa that form the interorbital septum and the anterior, nonosseous part of the braincase.

The frontal and **parietal**, both single elements, meet at the **parietal foramen** (Figure 8.8a). It is along the suture between the frontal and parietal that mesokinetic movement (see the section, "Kinesis in Lizard Skulls") occurs in several other kinds of lizards. The parietal forms much of the roof of braincase and of the medial margin of the **supratemporal fenestra** (Figures 8.7a and 8.8). The fenestra is bounded ventrally mainly by the postorbital and **squamosal**, with the **supratemporal** contributing a slender process. Posteriorly, the parietal curves ventrally and laterally to form the posterior margin of the fenestra, and its lateral surface provides origin sites for some of the adductor musculature that closes the lower jaw.

The parietal contacts the squamosal (Figure 8.7a). Posterior to this contact, the squamosal meets the supratemporal, which also continues anteriorly, partly covered by the squamosal, to contact the parietal. The **exoccipital** lies posterior to the supratemporal. This portion of the exoccipital is the **paraoccipital process** of the occipital (see Figure 8.10). Ventral to these bones (Figure 8.7a) lies the **quadrate**, a large, curved, and posteriorly concave bone. It is at this point that streptostylic movement (see "Kinesis in Lizard Skulls") between the quadrate and the other skull bones is possible in several other lizards. The anterior margin of the quadrate bears a curved, laterally projecting **tympanic crest** (see also Figure 8.10), to which the anterior part of the tympanic membrane is attached. The broad anterior surface of the quadrate is a site of origin for adductor musculature. Its posterior surface, subdivided by the **posterior crest** (see also Figure 8.10), helps bound the cavity of the middle ear. The lateral end of the slender **columella** (which may not be preserved in your specimen) is visible just posterior to the posterior crest (Figure 8.7a). The ventral surface of the quadrate bears the **mandibular condyle** for articulation with the lower jaw.

Anterior to the quadrate is the **infratemporal fenestra**. It is bounded dorsally by the squamosal and postorbital and anteriorly by the jugal. It is unbounded

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

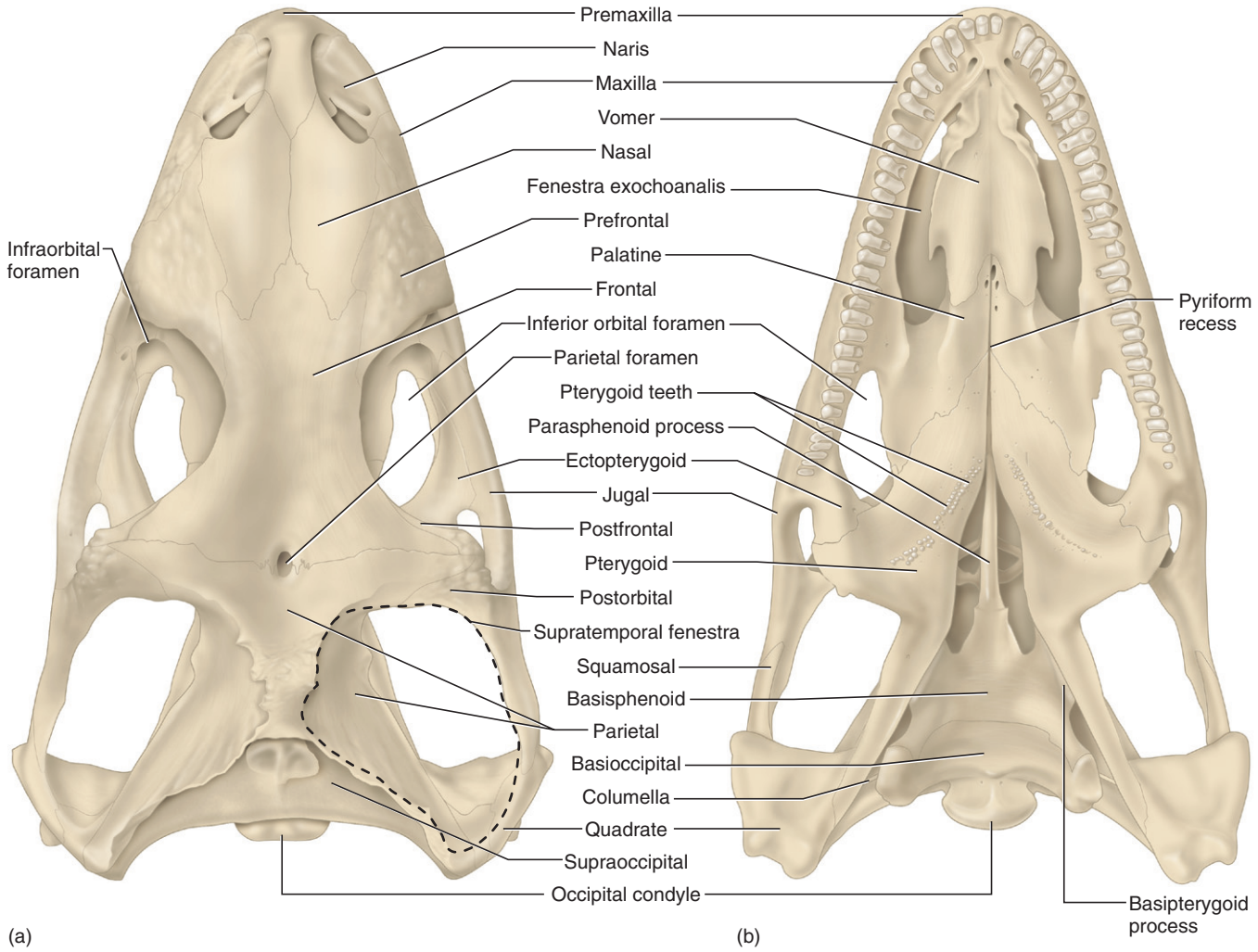


FIGURE 8.8 Skull of the iguana in (a) dorsal (sclerotic ring removed) and (b) ventral views.

ventrally, as the quadratojugal has been lost (in an evolutionary sense). In lateral view, particularly when figured, it may appear that there is a ventral bar, but this is not the diapsid lower temporal bar formed mainly by the jugal and quadratojugal (Figure 1.9), as in, for example, the alligator (Figure 8.12). Lizards (as well as snakes) have lost this bar. Rather, careful observation reveals that the structure that appears to enclose the fenestra ventrally is the **quadrate process** of the **pterygoid**, a bone of the palate (Figure 8.9). This part of the pterygoid extends between the conspicuous **descending flange** of the pterygoid, just posterior to the tooth row, and the medial surface of the quadrate.

The ossified **braincase**, enclosing the **cranial cavity**, is visible in lateral view through the supratemporal and infratemporal fenestrae (Figure 8.9). It covers the posterior part of the brain (which anteriorly is covered by the mainly nonosseous braincase). Dorsally in this region, the brain is covered by the parietal, which also sends a flange ventrally to cover the brain dorsolaterally. Ventral to this is a unit of bone, the braincase proper, which is composed of several elements, but these elements are almost always solidly fused to each other, so that the sutures between them are very difficult to discern. The lateral surface of the unit provides origin sites for adductor musculature. Its posterodorsal portion is formed by the **supraoccipital** (which is more broadly exposed in posterior view; Figure 8.10), but is largely covered in lateral view by the parietal (Figure 8.9).

Most of the rest of the lateral wall, better exposed in lateral view, is formed by the **prootic**, which houses part of the inner ear (Figures 8.7a and 8.9). The medial portion of the exoccipital, which contains the **opisthotic** (also housing the inner ear and sometimes a separate element, as in the turtle), contributes a small portion to the lateral wall of the braincase. More ventrally, but largely hidden behind the quadrate process of the pterygoid (as well as the quadrate), the ventral part of the braincase is formed

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

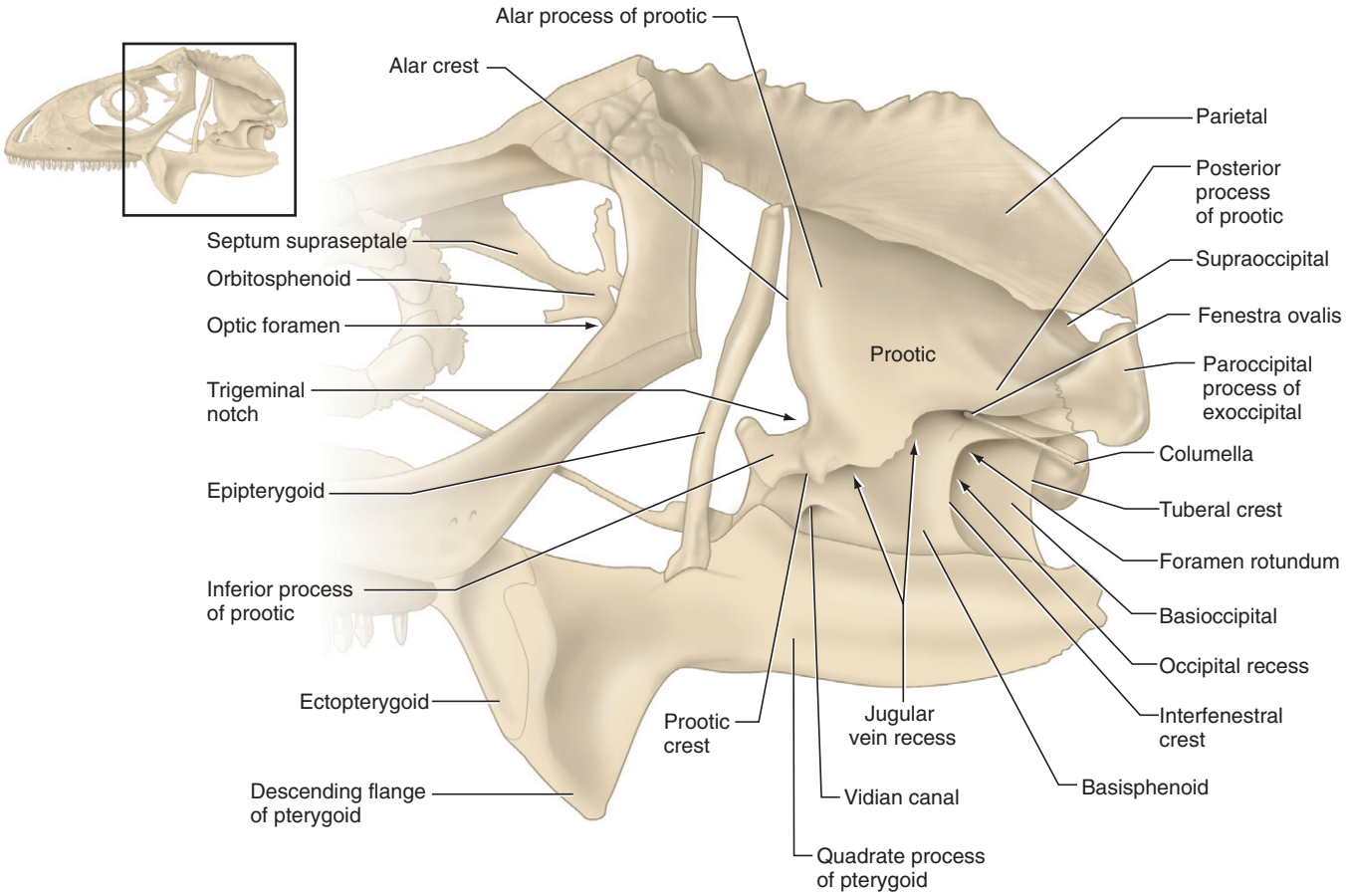


FIGURE 8.9 Skull of the iguana in lateral view showing detail of braincase region with the quadrate, squamosal, supratemporal, and parts of the postorbital and jugal removed.

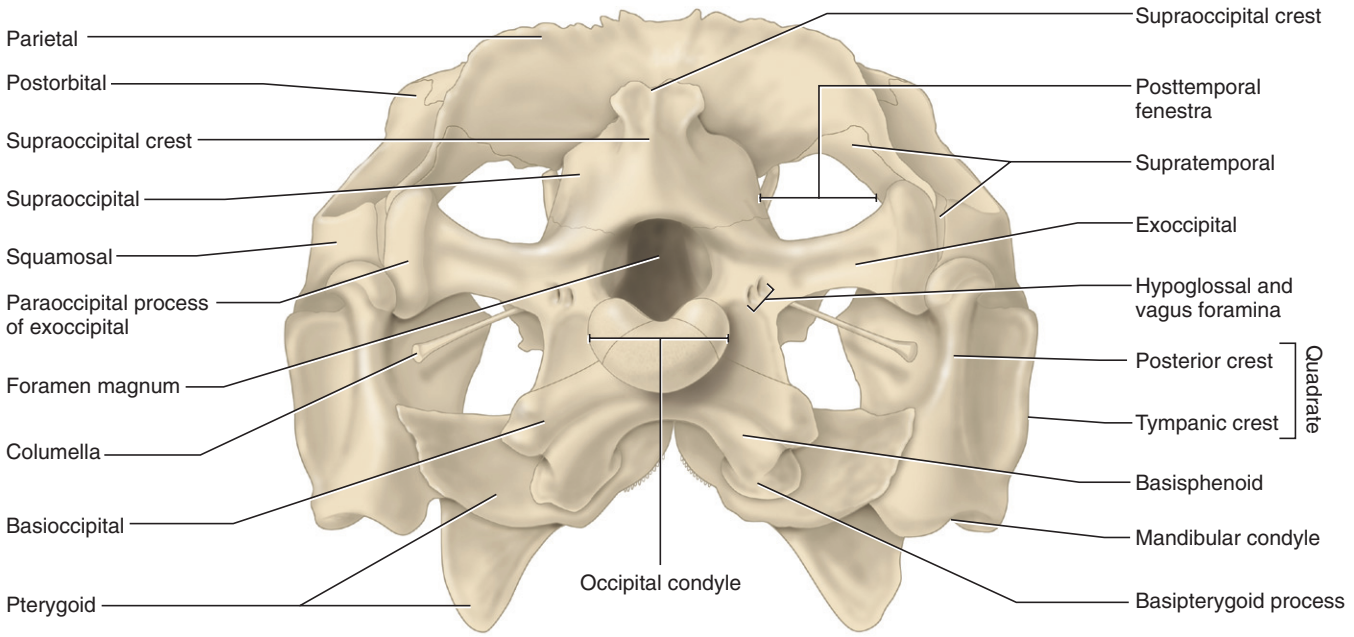


FIGURE 8.10 Skull of the iguana in posterior view.

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

mainly by the **basioccipital** and **basisphenoid**, which are considered later. The prootic sits above these latter two bones, and has three processes (Figure 8.9). The **alar process** extends dorsally and is bounded anteriorly by the **alar crest**. The **inferior process** lies anteroventrally and forms a hook-shaped process. The **trigeminal notch** is formed where the alar and inferior processes meet. The trigeminal nerve passes along the ventral part of the notch. The **posterior process** of the prootic extends posterolaterally to meet the paraoccipital process of the exoccipital. The ventral margin along the inferior and posterior processes forms a sharp **prootic crest** formed by the prootic and, posteriorly, the exoccipital. Medial to the crest is a deep recess, the **jugular vein recess**, along which passes the internal jugular vein. The recess is part of the middle ear and contains the **fenestra ovalis**, which is formed by these bones and covered by the footplate of the collumela. Just ventral to this region is the curved **interfenestral crest**, medial to which is another recess (the occipital recess) that is also part of the middle ear and dorsally contains the **foramen rotundum** (transmitting the glossopharyngeal nerve). This recess is bounded posteriorly by the **tuberal crest**, formed by the exoccipital and basioccipital.

The anteroventral part of the basisphenoid forms a short anterior process, from which the elongated and slender **parasphenoid process** slopes anterodorsally and underlies the interorbital septum (Figure 8.8b). The posterior opening of the **vidian canal** lies on the lateral surface of the basisphenoid, just medial and slightly posterior to the dorsal ridge of the quadrate process of the pterygoid bone. The **epipterygoid**, a slender and nearly vertically oriented bar of bone, extends from a notch on the pterygoid to the ventrolateral margin of the parietal, forming a cylindrical, strut-like brace between these bones.

Within the posterior part of the orbit is the delicate **orbitosphenoid** (Figure 8.9), which bears several processes. Anterodorsally it meets a partially calcified **septum supraseptale**, an anterior plate-like expansion of a cartilaginous bar, which is not preserved, that extends along the ventral surface of the parietal and frontal bones. The septum is suspended from the frontal bone. The orbitosphenoid anteriorly bears a C-shaped notch, which forms the posterior margin of the **optic foramen**. The planum and orbitosphenoid are usually the only preserved elements of a complex of interconnected cartilaginous bars. The openings formed by these bars are covered by membrane. The structures approximately posterior to the septum and orbitosphenoid constitute the anterior part of the braincase, which, as noted earlier, is mainly membranous rather than osseous. The structures ventral to the septum and anterior to the orbitosphenoid comprise the interorbital septum.

Examine the skull in dorsal view (Figure 8.8a). Many of the bones observable in this view have already been discussed, but examine their form and positional relationships. Among them are the premaxilla, maxilla, nasal, jugal, prefrontal, postfrontal, frontal, parietal, and squamosal. Note as well the openings in the skull that have already been mentioned: the nares, orbits, and supratemporal fenestrae, and one that has not, the parietal foramen that lies midsagittally between the frontal and parietal bones. In those lizards that exhibit mesokinesis (at the frontoparietal suture; see "Kinesis in Lizard Skulls"), the parietal foramen is usually shifted away from the frontoparietal suture, and commonly lies entirely within the parietal. Identify the large **inferior orbital foramen**. It lies on the palatal surface of the skull, but is observable through the orbit. Just anterior and dorsal to the anterior margin of the inferior orbital foramen is the **infraorbital foramen**.

Examine the skull in ventral view (Figure 8.8b). The premaxilla and maxillae form the marginal rim of the rostrum and bear the marginal series of **teeth**. The teeth are borne by the medial surfaces of these bones, a condition termed *pleurodont*, rather than being set in sockets. Posterior to the premaxilla are the paired **vomers**, which form the anterior part of the palate. The vomers are concave ventrally and constricted anteriorly. Laterally the vomer forms most of the medial margin of the anteroposteriorly elongated **fenestra exochoanalis**. The maxilla bounds this fenestra laterally. The **palatine** lies posterior to the vomer and forms the posterior margin of the fenestra. The palatine has a lateral process that contacts the maxilla. Posterior to this contact, the palatine forms the anterolateral margin of the inferior orbital foramen, with the maxilla forming the anterolateral margin. Posteriorly the palatine contacts the pterygoid. It is in this region that hypokinetic movement is possible in kinetic skulls (see "Kinesis in Lizard Skulls"). The left and right palatines may approach each other closely and touch each other at the midline (perhaps with advancing age), but are generally separated from each other by the narrow **pyriform recess**, which widens posteriorly between the pterygoids (Figure 8.8b). The palatine's dorsal surface forms the posterior floor of the nasal cavity and anterior floor of the orbit. Laterally it meets the prefrontal, jugal, and lacrimal. The infraorbital foramen is located where these bones meet, with the palatine forming most of its margin.

The paired pterygoids are large elements (Figure 8.8b). Each extends posteriorly from the palatine, with its lateral margin forming the posteromedial margin of the inferior orbital foramen. More medially, the pterygoid bears a short, slightly curved row of **pterygoid teeth**. In this region, the left and right pterygoids become more widely separated at the midline, reflecting the

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

increased size of the pyriform recess. Posterior to the inferior orbital foramen, the pterygoid extends laterally and curves ventrally to form a large descending flange. Here it meets the **ectopterygoid** (see also Figure 8.9), a relatively short bone that extends dorsally to meet the maxilla and jugal. The ectopterygoid helps form the rest of the margin of the inferior orbital foramen. Farther posteriorly, the pterygoid becomes mediolaterally compressed and extends posterolaterally to contact the quadrate. This is the quadrate process of the pterygoid and has been noted already.

Between the quadrate processes lie the unpaired elements that form the ventral part of the osseous braincase, the basisphenoid and, more posteriorly, the basioccipital (Figure 8.8b). The basisphenoid bears a pair of anterolaterally projecting **basipterygoid processes** that meet the pterygoid bones. Between them is an anterior projection from which the parasphenoid process extends. The latter structure may be observed though the pyriform recess. Posteriorly, the basisphenoid constricts (the degree of constriction may vary) and then widens again to contact the basioccipital along a mainly anteriorly convex suture. The basioccipital extends laterally to form a pair of stout processes. Between them is the **occipital condyle** for articulation with the atlas of the vertebral column. The basioccipital forms the midventral portion of the occipital condyle. The dorsal surface of each lateral projection of the basioccipital is deeply excavated to help form the occipital sinus, which was considered earlier. The posterior end of the basioccipital curves dorsally to form the ventral part of the occiput.

Observe the skull in posterior view (Figure 8.10). In this view, it becomes clear that the braincase is a central structure surrounded all but ventrally by a covering of other bony elements. The **foramen magnum** is the central and nearly circular opening through which the spinal cord passes to reach the brain. The occipital condyle lies ventral to the foramen. Its midventral portion is formed by the basioccipital (which thus contributes to the margin of the foramen magnum) and its lateral portions by the exoccipitals (which form the lateral margins of the foramen). Several foramina open just lateral to the dorsal part of the occipital condyle. Usually there are four, a relatively large dorsal **vagus foramen**, for the vagus nerve, and three smaller **hypoglossal foramina** that transmit divisions of the hypoglossal nerve.

Laterally each exoccipital sends out a stout paraoccipital process that contacts the quadrate, supratemporal, and parietal (see also Figures 8.7a, in which it is the portion labeled as exoccipital, and 8.9). The supratemporal is a delicate, sliver-like bone adhering to the anteromedial surface of the parietal, but it is difficult to discern. Its ventral end passes anterior to the parietal and has a small exposure in lateral view (Figure 8.7a). The supraoccipital is a large median bone, bearing a raised median **supraoccipital crest**, forming the posterodorsal part of the osseous braincase (Figures 8.9 and 8.10). It contacts the parietal dorsally, where the sliding action of the metakinetic joint occurs in kinetic skulls (see "Kinesis in Lizard Skulls"). The supraoccipital contacts the exoccipitals laterally. The axis of rotation in metakinetic skulls passes through the lateral ends of the exoccipitals. Ventrally the supraoccipital forms the margin of the foramen magnum. On either side of the supraoccipital is a **posttemporal fenestra**, bounded by the supraoccipital, parietal, supratemporal, and exoccipital (Figure 8.10).

As in other reptiles, the lower jaw is composed of several bones. Examine the lower jaw in lateral view (Figure 8.11a). The **dentary** is the large bone making up the anterior half of the lower jaw and bearing all the lower teeth. Posteriorly the dentary contacts the **coronoid** dorsally, the **surangular** centrally, and the **angular** ventrally. The coronoid is a relatively small bone with a dorsal projection, the **coronoid process**. The coronoid serves largely for insertion of the parts of the adductor musculature. Posteroventrally the coronoid contacts the surangular. The surangular and angular are relatively large and form much of the dorsal and ventral surfaces of the posterior half of the lower jaw. The conspicuous **anterior surangular foramen** lies on the anterodorsal surface of the surangular. Parts of the adductor musculature insert on the dorsal and lateral surfaces of the surangular. Posterior to the surangular and angular is the **articular**, which bears the smooth and concave surface for articulation with the quadrate. The articular extends posteriorly as the **retroarticular process** that ends as a tubercle onto which the depressor mandibulae, the muscle that opens the jaws, inserts. The lateral border of the retroarticular process is the **tympanic crest**, to which is attached the skin covering the middle ear. Extending medially and slightly ventrally is a second, triangular projection, the **angular process**, which projects slightly ventral to the retroarticular process in lateral view. The pterygoid musculature inserts on much of the ventral surface of the articular bone, including its retroarticular and angular processes.

Examine the lower jaw in medial view (Figure 8.11b) and follow the angular ventrally as it curves onto the medial surface. Here it extends anteriorly, forming the rounded ventral margin of the **mandibular fossa**, and continues forward to contact the **splenial** and the two ventral processes of the coronoid. The surangular has a small exposure between the coronoid and articular. The angular also curves ventrally from the lateral to medial surfaces, where it has a small exposure ventrally.

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

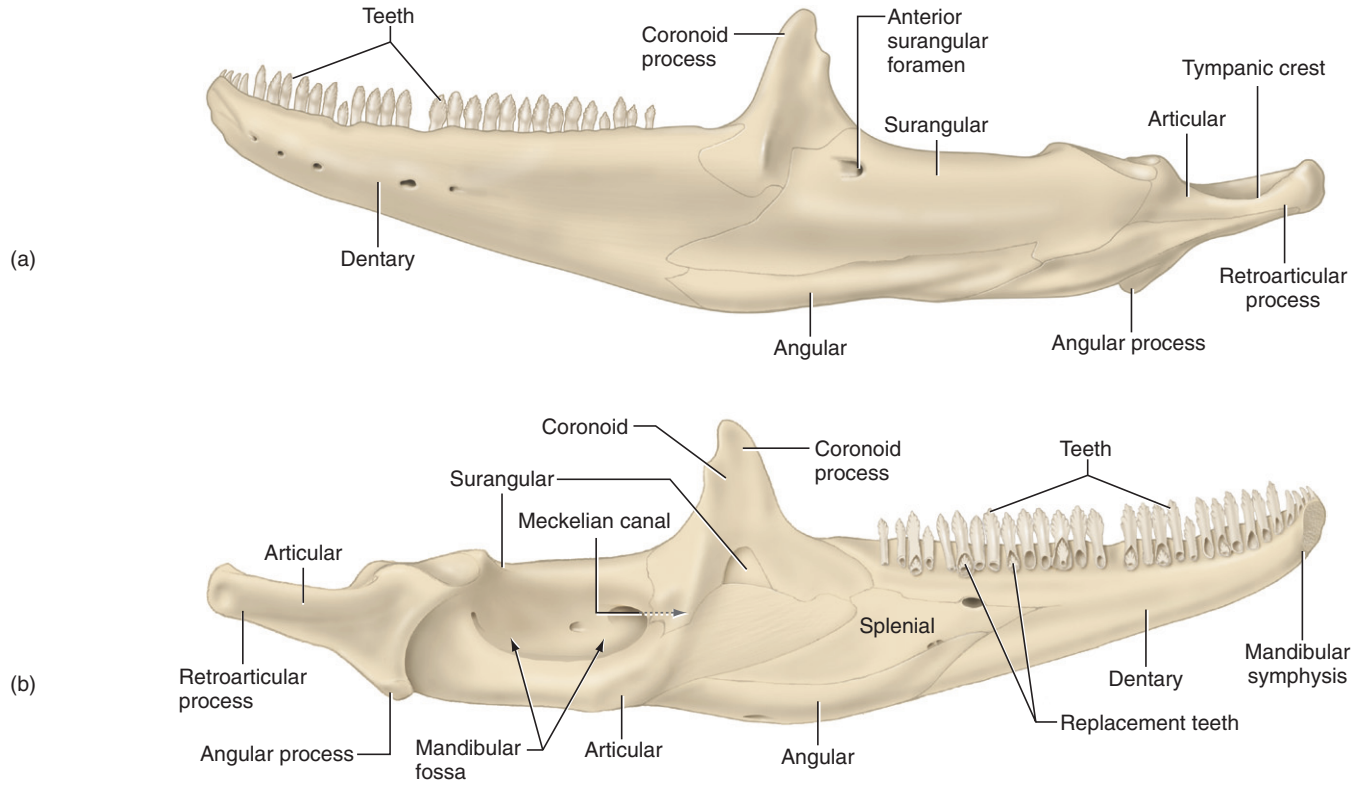


FIGURE 8.11 Mandible of the iguana in (a) lateral and (b) medial views.

Anteriorly it meets the splenial. The latter, exposed only on the medial surface of the lower jaw, tapers anteriorly, where it contacts the dentary, which completes the rest of the lower jaw. Examine the base of the teeth—you should observe several smaller replacement teeth emerging from the dentary (Figure 8.11b).

Reexamine the mandibular fossa. It is an expansive, anteroposteriorly elongated opening leading into the **Meckelian canal**, a passage that extends anteriorly into and through the dentary. Much of the lower jaw may thus be viewed as a tubular structure, with its bones forming the walls surrounding the canal. The canal contains **Meckel's cartilage**, which extends through the length of the canal. Posteriorly, Meckel's cartilage lies ventrally within the mandibular fossa. It passes anteriorly through the canal, which opens onto the anteromedial surface of the dentary in the region of the **mandibular symphysis**. The cartilage exits through this opening and into the cutaneous tissue of the symphyseal region. The medial wall and dorsal margin of the mandibular fossa are formed by the surangular.

Kinesis in Lizard Skulls

The main types of kinesis described for lizards (see Metzger, 2002, for a detailed review) are mesokinesis, metakinesis, hypokinesis, and streptostyly. Mesokinesis involves movement of the rostrum dorsally and ventrally through a transverse axis passing through the suture between the frontal and parietal bones. Hypokinesis involves similar movements through a transverse or oblique axis passing through the palate between the pterygoid and both the palatine and ectopterygoid bones. The rostrum may thus be moved dorsally (dorsiflexion) and ventrally (ventroflexion) through the mesokinetic and hypokinetic joints. Metakinesis refers to a sliding movement of the supraoccipital and the parietal through a transverse axis passing through the paraoccipital process of the exoccipital. Streptostyly is the anteroposterior swinging movement of the quadrate around its dorsal attachment to other skull elements (principally the squamosal and supratemporal).

The classic model of kinesis involves protraction (swinging forward) of the quadrate, pushing the basal unit (the pterygoid bone) anteriorly, which in turn causes dorsiflexion of the rostrum through the mesokinetic and hypokinetic joints. This movement causes the parietal bone to be depressed, which is made possible by the metakinetic joint. The combination of mesokinesis and metakinesis is termed amphikinesis. These movements are reversed by retraction of the quadrate, pulling the basal unit backward and causing ventroflexion of the rostrum.

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

This model (the quadratic-crank model), for many years considered as describing the typical kinetic abilities of lizards in general, is currently viewed as one of the possible conditions among lizards. One problem is that parts of the sequence of movements described earlier have been difficult to determine experimentally, either qualitatively or quantitatively. In many cases, the potential for kinesis is determined mainly through manipulation of skulls, but experimental evidence for particular movements is lacking or ambiguous. For example, hypokinesis has not been quantified experimentally, yet it must occur, in combination with mesokinesis, if the rostrum is to be dorsiflexed and ventroflexed as a unit. Studies have also failed to show metakinetic movements in some taxa that, based on skull manipulations, would be expected to possess this ability—and thus that mesokinetic and metakinetic movements are always correlated with each other. Other studies indicate that both mesokinesis and streptostyly may occur together but that they are not kinematically linked with each other; and that streptostyly can occur without causing mesokinesis. The picture that is emerging is that the classic model is not a generalized model widely applicable to lizards that display some form of kinesis. Rather, it seems restricted to some taxa, whereas others have different kinetic abilities.

The functional significance of kinesis is not entirely clear, although numerous hypotheses have been proposed. It seems that the function(s) may be specific to the kinds of movement possible in and the probably dietary habits of any particular group of taxa; in other words, it is inappropriate to generalize. Among the hypotheses advanced for streptostyly are increased gape, increased mechanical advantage for some jaw adductor musculature, efficiency of intraoral transport, cropping (in herbivorous lizards), and shearing of prey. The following are a sample of hypotheses advanced for mesokinesis: increased gape, decrease in duration of gape, prey subjugation, increased bite force, and control during jaw prehension. Metzger (2002) provides a comprehensive review of these and other aspects of kinesis.

Key Terms: Iguana Skull and Mandible

alar crest
alar process of **prootic**
angular
angular process of **articular**
anterior surangular foramen
articular
basioccipital
basipterygoid processes
basisphenoid
braincase
columella
coronoid
coronoid process
cranial cavity
dentary
descending flange of **pterygoid**
ectopterygoid
epipterygoid
exoccipital
fenestra exochoanalis
fenestra ovalis
foramen magnum
foramen rotundum
frontal
hypoglossal foramina
inferior orbital foramen
inferior process of **prootic**
infraorbital foramen
infratemporal fenestra
interfenestral crest
interorbital opening
jugal
jugular vein recess
lacrimal
lacrimal foramen
mandibular condyle
mandibular fossa
mandibular symphysis
maxilla
Meckel's cartilage
Meckelian canal (mandibular canal)
nares (sing., **naris**)
occipital condyle
opisthotic
optic foramen
orbit
orbitosphenoid
palatine
paraoccipital process of **exoccipital**
parasphenoid process
parietal
parietal foramen
posterior crest of **quadrate**
posterior process of **prootic**
postfrontal
postorbital
posttemporal fenestra
prefrontal
premaxilla
prootic
prootic crest
pterygoid
pterygoid teeth
pyriform recess
quadrate
quadrate process of **pterygoid**

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

retroarticular process of **articular**
septomaxilla
septum supraseptale
splenial
squamosal
supraoccipital
supraoccipital crest
supratemporal
supratemporal fenestra
surangular
teeth
trigeminal notch
tuberal crest
tympanic crest of **articular**
tympanic crest of **quadrate**
vagus foramen
vidian canal
vomer

SECTION III: SNAKE SKULL AND MANDIBLE

Snakes, as noted in Chapter 1, are a group of lizards, and the snake skull represents a modified diapsid type. As is typical of lizards, the skull of snakes appears less solid than in other reptiles considered here, with several large openings and spaces between the bony elements. In snakes, however, these features are taken to extremes, with the result that the snake skull, and the jaws in particular, exhibit extensive mobility. These adaptations allow snakes to feed on relatively large prey. The main features of the snake skull are described in the following, based on the skull of *Python molurus*, the Indian (or Burmese) python, but several of the features noted apply to snakes in general, at least in terms of the typical morphology of the bony elements and their relationship to each other. In contrast to the other skulls described in this and other chapters, the skeletal elements of the skull are usually quite readily discernable, because in snakes most of the bones are not solidly fused together.

Examine the skull in lateral view (Figure 8.12a). In contrast to the other skulls discussed in Chapter 8, the braincase is readily observable and it is apparent that several bones are absent. Indeed, many of the bones of the skull roof, as well as of other parts of the skull, have been lost in snakes, including the lacrimal, jugal, postfrontal, squamosal, and postparietal; the quadratojugal, a bone of the palatal region, is also lost (for some bones, however, it is unclear whether they are missing or

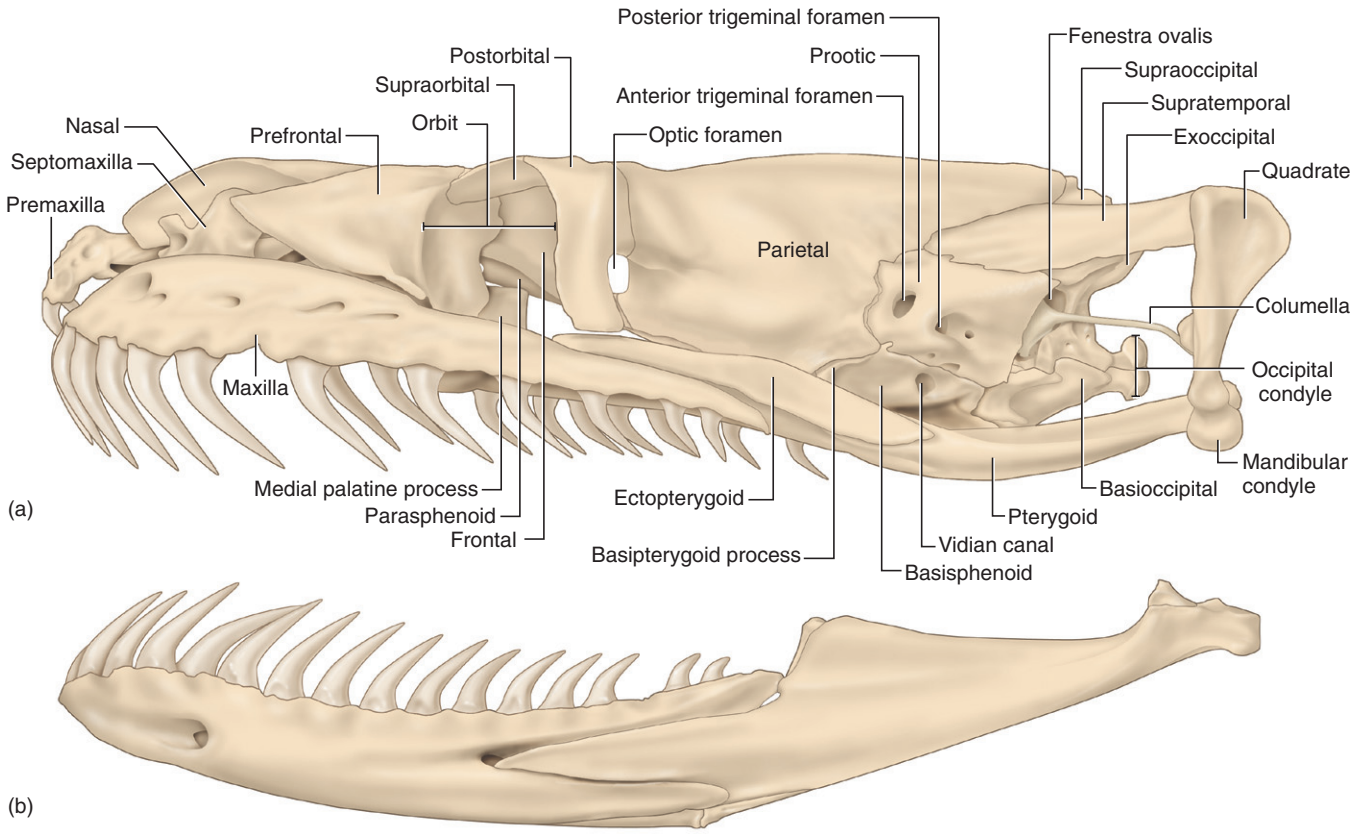


FIGURE 8.12 Skull and mandible of the python; (a) skull in lateral view; (b) mandible in lateral view (see Figure 8.15 for labels).

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

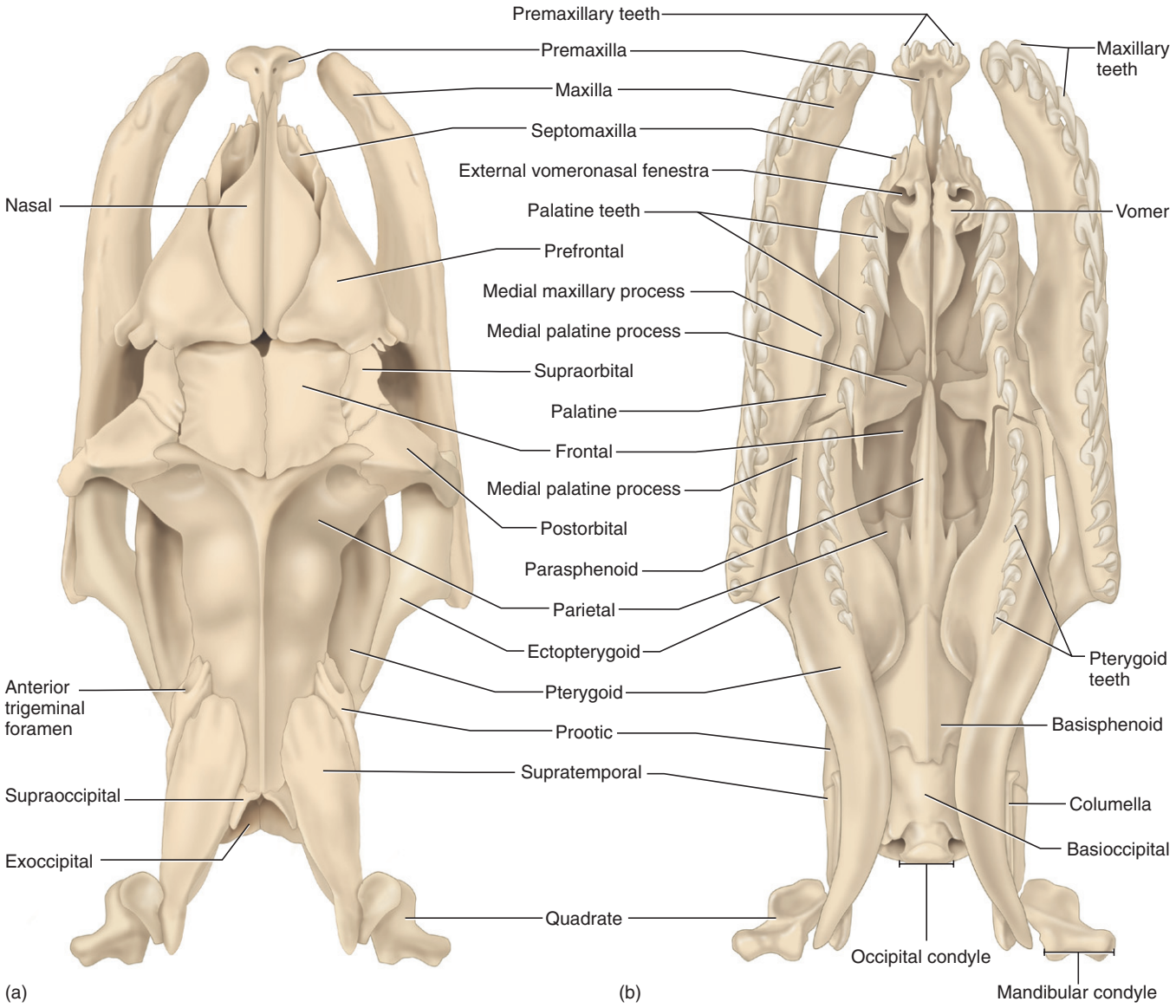


FIGURE 8.13 Skull of the python in (a) dorsal and (b) ventral views.

indistinguishably fused to other elements; see Scanlon, 2005, for further discussion). In effect, the extensive mobility of the skull of snakes reflects the loss of many of these elements, particularly of elements in the temporal region. In snakes, both the upper and lower temporal bars have been lost, whereas in other diapsid skulls the temporal bars typically form struts across the temporal regions and tend to restrict movement. Mobility is also made possible by the types of joints present among skeletal elements. Rieppel (1993) noted that mobility was not achieved by further elaboration of synovial joints (the mandibular joint and the links in the ear region are the only synovial joints in the snake head), but by the presence of relatively loose connections held together by soft tissue (mainly ligamentous) attachments. The kinematic linkage system of elements permitting kinesis are more numerous and complex than in the lizard skull, and the interested reader may refer to Frazzetta (1966) and Cundall (1987) for further details.

The **frontals** and (particularly) the **parietals**, originally bones of the skull roof, have expanded ventrally to help form the walls of the solid braincase, which houses the brain (Figures 8.12a and 8.13a). The **postorbital** extends laterally from between the contact of the frontal and parietal and then turns ventrally to form the posterior margin of the **orbit**. The ventral end of the postorbital has a ligamentous attachment to the bony elements ventral to it. The **supraorbital** (Figure 8.13a), a small, flattened bone, lies anterior to it. The frontal forms much of the medial wall of the orbit. The conspicuous **optic**

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

foramen, for the optic nerve, lies between the frontal and parietal (Figure 8.12a).

The rostral end of the skull is formed laterally by the triangular (in dorsal view) **prefrontals** and the smaller **septomaxillae**. The **nasals** lie dorsally between these elements. The nasal is a wide and horizontally flat bone dorsally. Note its descending lamina, along its medial portion. The laminae of the nasals lie adjacent to each at the midline, separating the nasal cavities, and extend farther anteriorly than the dorsal portions to contact the **premaxilla** (representing the two fused premaxillae), which bears **premaxillary teeth**. Ventrally (Figure 8.13b), the **vomers** (described in further detail later) underlie these bones. The unit formed by these bones is generally termed the snout, and it can move about the nasofrontal joints. As this movement occurs anterior to the orbit, the skull is considered to be **prokinetic**.

Consider the prefrontal again. Its dorsal portion is a curved triangular plate, but its posterior portion extends ventrally and forms the anterior wall of the orbit. A **lacrimal foramen** perforates the lateroventral surface of this posterior portion of the prefrontal. The other element forming the wall of the orbit, ventrally and posterior to the prefrontal is the medial process of the **palatine**, which is discussed later.

Return to the parietal in lateral view (Figure 8.12a). Posteriorly, it contacts the **prootic**, which bears several openings. The large anterior opening is the **anterior trigeminal foramen**, for the maxillary nerve, and the large posterior opening is the **posterior trigeminal foramen**, for the mandibular nerve. The slender region separating these openings was considered by Rieppel and Zuman (2001) to represent the laterosphenoid (but see comments in Scanlon, 2005). The much smaller opening posterior to the posterior trigeminal foramen is the **facial foramen**, for the nerve of the same name. Ventral to these foramina, the posterior opening for the **vidian canal** pierces the basisphenoid. The posterior edge of the prootic and the anterior edge of the **opisthotic** (which is fused with the **exoccipital**) form the **fenestra ovalis**, the entrance into the inner ear, which is covered by the footplate of the **columella** (or stapes). The distal end of the columella, however, contacts a process of the **quadrate** (Figure 8.14) by way of a cartilaginous extension. This is in marked contrast to the condition described for the other reptile skulls, in which the columella, usually via a different cartilaginous extension (the extracolumella), contacts a tympanic membrane or eardrum. Snakes lack a tympanic membrane and it has been suggested that their ears mainly detect ground vibrations, as well as low-frequency airborne vibrations.

This posterior part of the skull of snakes is also distinct in the suspension of the lower jaw. Note the **supratemporal**, mainly contacting the prootic and parietal, but also the **supraoccipital** and exoccipital (which have small exposures in lateral view) and extending posteriorly to articulate with the quadrate (Figures 8.12, 8.13a, and 8.14). In the other reptile skulls described here, the quadrate is generally partially buttressed by the squamosal (as well as other elements; for examples, see Figures 8.1a, 8.7a, and 8.16a), which is absent in the snake. The supratemporal, if present as an independent element, generally has a small contact with the quadrate (compare, for example, the condition described for the iguana, Figures 8.7a and 8.10). In most snakes, however, the supratemporal is a long, flattened, and beam-like element that helps support the quadrate, which is streptostylic; that is, it is movable at its dorsal attachment (see "Kinesis in Lizard Skulls," earlier). Ventrally, the quadrate contacts the **pterygoid**, but via a looser articulation than in lizards. The ventral end of the quadrate bears the **mandibular condyle** for articulation with the lower jaw.

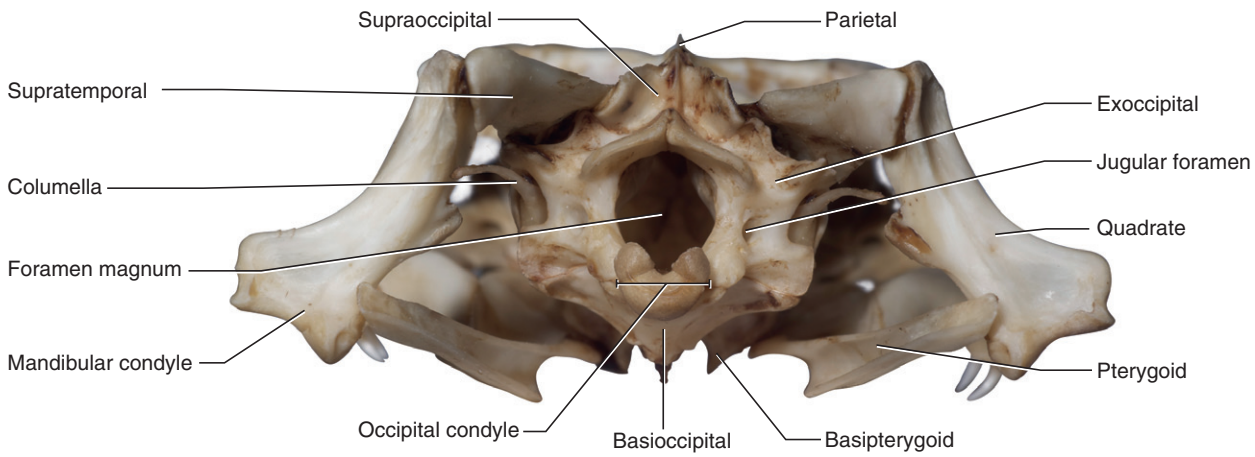


FIGURE 8.14 Skull of the python in posterior view.

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

The posterior surface of the skull (Figure 8.14), or occiput, has a large central opening, the **foramen magnum**, through which the spinal cord passes to join the brain. The **occipital condyle**, for articulation with the first vertebra (atlas) of the vertebral column, lies ventral to the foramen. The condyle is formed by the exoccipitals laterally and the **basioccipital** ventrally. The exoccipitals form most of the margin of the foramen magnum (the basioccipital contributes a small ventral portion) and they extend dorsal to the foramen, thereby excluding the supraoccipital, which forms the dorsal part of the occiput. The **jugular foramen**, for the vagus nerve, lies lateral to the foramen magnum. Note how the supratemporal extends posteriorly, contacting the supraoccipital and exoccipital and, at its posterolateral surface, the quadrate.

In ventral view (Figure 8.13b), the basioccipital forms the posterior part of the basicranium. Anterior to it is the **basisphenoid**, which bears a sharp, midventral ridge that serves for muscular insertion. The palatal region of snakes is commonly considered as comprising palatomaxillary arches, on each side composed of a medial ramus and a lateral ramus. The medial ramus consists of the pterygoid, noted earlier, and **palatine**, and the lateral ramus includes the **maxilla** and **ectopterygoid**. Due to the absence of bony cross connections among left and right elements of the palatal region, the kinematic linkages can move independently. This allows the elements of the palate to specialize for prey capture and swallowing. Typically, the lateral palatomaxillary arches are used for capture, whereas the left and right medial palatomaxillary arches are moved alternatively to "walk" (often termed "pterygoid walk") over prey, sending it back for swallowing.

Examine the posterior end of the skull in ventral view. On either side of and ventral to the basicranium, the pterygoids bow medially from their articulation with the quadrates. Follow one of the pterygoids anteriorly. At about its midlength, it expands transversely and then narrows again into its anterior half. This latter portion bears a row of (six to 10) **pterygoid teeth** and then contacts the palatine. Just medial and dorsal to the last teeth, the pterygoid articulates with the **basipterygoid process** (or basitrabecular process) of the basisphenoid (though it may not be homologous to the basipterygoid process of the iguana). The palatine continues anteriorly from the pterygoid. It also bears a row of (usually six) **palatine teeth** and is bound loosely to the vomer and septomaxilla, bones which were noted earlier. Just anterior to the pterygopalatine joint, the palatine bears lateral and medial processes. The **lateral palatine process** is barely visible in ventral view because it passes dorsal to the **medial maxillary process** of the maxilla. These bones are loosely connected here and the joint permits sliding and rotation between these bones. The lateral palatine process also contacts the prefrontal in the ventral orbital wall. The **medial palatine process** extends dorsomedially toward the ventral surface of the braincase. The dorsal surface of this process was noted earlier in lateral view on the floor of the orbit.

The maxilla is an elongated bone, dorsoventrally high anteriorly and tapered posteriorly, that usually bears 18 **maxillary teeth**. The maxilla articulates with the ventral margin of the prefrontal anteriorly (Figure 8.12a). Its medial maxillary process, contacting the palatine, has already been described (Figure 8.13b). Posteriorly the maxilla articulates with the ectopterygoid along a fairly extensive surface (Figures 8.12a and 8.13b). Note that the ectopterygoid extends farther anteromedially than anterolaterally. The maxilla and ectopterygoid are tightly bound at the anteromedial extension of the ectopterygoid, but the maxilla may rotate about this point. Posteriorly, the ectopterygoid passes posteromedially to form an essentially immobile articulation with the pterygoid (Figures 8.12a and 8.13b).

Consider the region between the pterygoid and palatine in ventral view (Figure 8.13b). The **parasphenoid** is a slender, elongated, midventral element extending anteriorly from the basisphenoid. The parasphenoid tapers anteriorly and contacts the vomers. On either side, the parasphenoid contacts the frontal. Also note the parietal in this view, extending ventrally to contact the basisphenoid on either side of the skull. The vomer consists of a vertical plate posteriorly, where it contacts the parasphenoid. The plates of the right and left vomers are in contact throughout their length and articulate with the nasals. Farther forward, the vomer expands to form a ventral horizontal flange that extends laterally toward the palatine. This flange constricts anteriorly, but the vomer expands again to help form a conspicuous opening, the **external vomeronasal fenestra**. The septomaxilla, contacting the vomer laterally, contributes to the margin of the fenestra. The vomer then contacts the premaxilla. The external vomeronasal fenestrae allow access to the vomeronasal (or Jacobson's) organs. These are olfactory structures formed from the medioventral part of the olfactory epithelium of the nasal cavities, and are present in many tetrapods (though usually absent in aquatic forms). In lizards, including snakes, they usually form distinct, sac-like structures with their own entrance into the oral cavity. These are the structures that snakes use in combination with their forked tongue as it darts into and out of the oral cavity. Odorants adhere to the tongue, which is then brought into close proximity with the external vomeronasal fenestrae.

Examine the mandible. As usual in reptiles, it is formed from several bony elements: the **dentary**, **splenial**, **angular**, **coronoid**, and **compound bone**. The latter represents a fusion of the **surangular**, **prearticular**, and **articular**, although some of the sutures between these

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

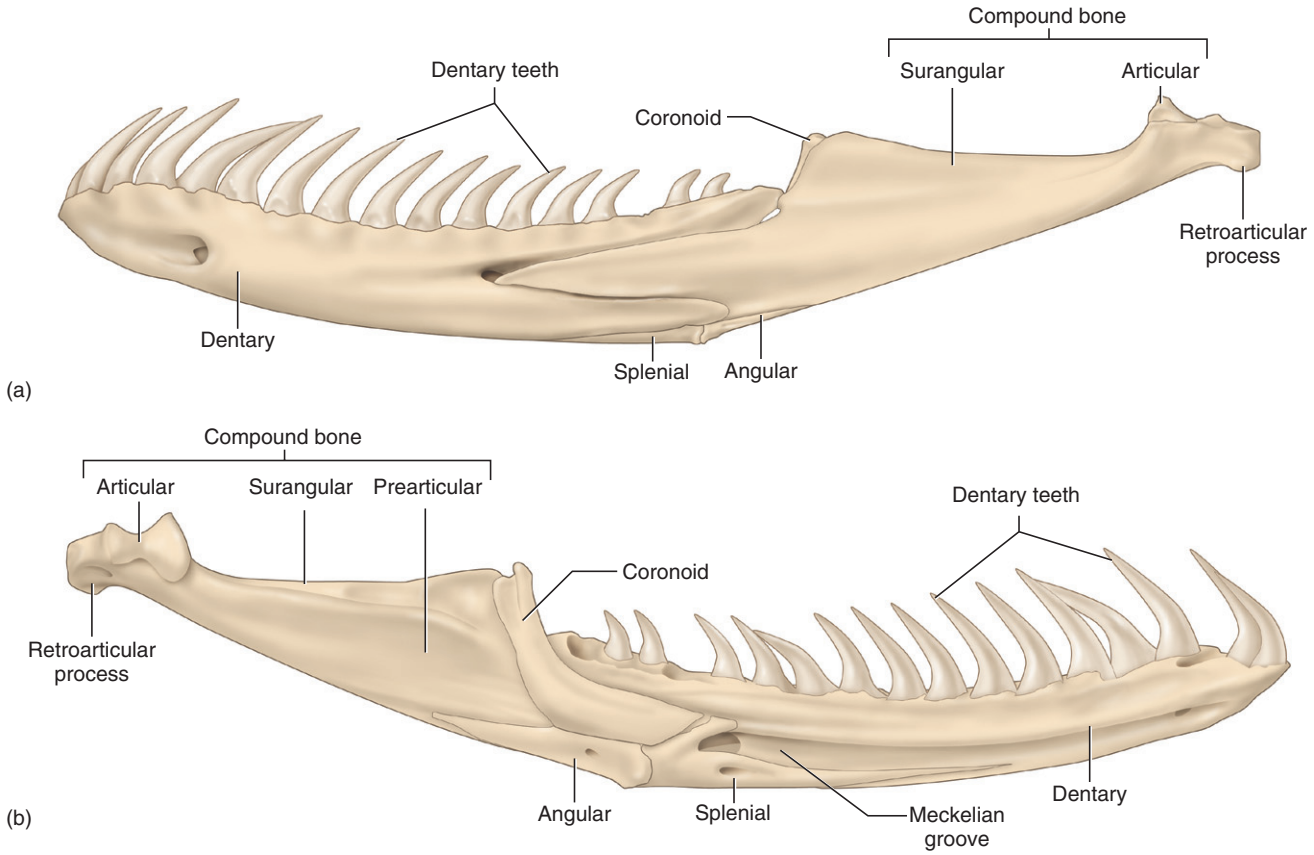


FIGURE 8.15 Mandible of the python in (a) lateral and (b) medial views.

bones may be partly visible. In lateral view (Figure 8.15a), the anterior half of the mandible is formed mainly by the dentary, which bears all the lower or **dentary teeth**. Posteriorly, the dentary bifurcates into dorsal and ventral laminae, between which the dentary articulates mainly with the surangular portion of the compound bone. Ventrally, the dentary contacts the angular. In medial view (Figure 8.15b), the dentary forms most of the anterior part of the mandible. Firmly attached to its ventromedial surface is the splenial, which is a delicate, splint-like, and anteriorly tapering bone for much of its length, though its posterior end is expanded. The splenial helps form the margin of the **Meckelian groove**, which extends along the medial surface of the dentary. **Meckel's cartilage**, which is unlikely preserved, extends along the groove and passes posteriorly between the lateral and medial surfaces of the mandible. The dentary contacts the coronoid posteriorly, whereas the splenial contacts the angular. The coronoid, which has a small exposure in lateral view (Figure 8.15a), is more broadly exposed medially and consists of anterior and vertical portions that cover the compound bone (Figure 8.15b). The angular, already noted, has a small lateral exposure, but a larger medial exposure. Anteriorly, it articulates with the dentary, splenial, and coronoid; posteriorly, it articulates with the compound bone.

The compound bone forms much of the posterior half of the mandible. For much of its length, it consists of medial and lateral lamellae, representing the prearticular and surangular, respectively; these elements fuse dorsal and ventral to Meckel's cartilage during ontogeny and generally are referred to as the prearticular and surangular processes of the compound bone. The surangular process rises farther dorsally than the prearticular process. The articular represents the posterior part of the compound bone. It bears the articular surface forming the jaw joint with the quadrate of the skull. Posterior to it is a short **retroarticular process**.

The lower jaws are united anteriorly by soft tissue at the symphysis, rather than by bony fusion. The tips of the lower jaws may therefore move independently. Each lower jaw comprises two functional units, one including the dentary and splenial, and the other including the angular, compound, and coronoid. These components are functionally divided at the intramandibular joint, which permits movement between them: the dentary and splenial may move dorsoventrally and lateromedially at this joint.

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

Key Terms: Snake Skull and Mandible

angular
anterior trigeminal foramen
articular
basioccipital
basipterygoid process
basisphenoid
columella
compound bone
coronoid
dentary
dentary teeth
ectopterygoid
exoccipital
external vomeronasal fenestra
facial foramen
fenestra ovalis
foramen magnum
frontal
jugular foramen
lacrimal foramen
lateral palatine process of palatine
mandibular condyle
maxilla
maxillary teeth
Meckel's cartilage
Meckelian groove
medial maxillary process of maxilla
medial palatine process of palatine
nasal
occipital condyle
opisthotic
optic foramen
orbit
palatine
palatine teeth
parasphenoid
parietal
posterior trigeminal foramen
postorbital
prearticular
prefrontal
premaxilla
premaxillary teeth
prokinetic
prootic
pterygoid
pterygoid teeth
quadrate
retroarticular process
septomaxilla
splenial
supraoccipital
supraorbital
supratemporal
surangular
vidian canal
vomers

SECTION IV: ALLIGATOR SKULL AND MANDIBLE

The skull of *Alligator mississippiensis*, the American alligator, has an overall long and low appearance owing mainly to its elongated and flattened rostrum, as occurs generally in crocodylians. Posteriorly, the roof of the skull forms a nearly flat table. Although there are more openings in the temporal region compared to the turtle skull, the alligator skull appears more solid than in lizards and snakes. The dorsal surface of the skull has a sculpted texture, with many furrows interspersed among numerous irregular ridges. This pattern is the result of dermal ossifications or osteoderms that adhere to the bones covering the skull dorsally.

Examine the skull in lateral view (Figure 8.16a). Most of the rostrum consists, on either side, of the **maxilla**, with a small anterior contribution made by the **premaxilla**. These two bones bear all the **teeth** in a single marginal series. The teeth are set in sockets of the bone, a condition termed *thecodont*. The **naris** is positioned dorsally near the tip of the snout. More posteriorly, the **orbit** is dorsally placed as well. It faces dorsolaterally and so appears as an elongated opening. Internally, the left and right orbits appear to be continuous, but in life they are separated mainly by a cartilaginous and plate-like **interorbital septum** (Figure 8.17). A large osteoderm, the **palpebral**, ossifies in the eyelid (Figures 8.16a and 8.17); this bone is often lost in specimens. The dorsal position of the eye and nostril are adaptations to the crocodylian lifestyle, allowing the animal to remain almost completely underwater, while continuing to see and breathe.

The **jugal** forms the orbit's ventral margin and shares an extensive contact with the maxilla (Figure 8.16a). Ventrally the jugal meets the **ectopterygoid**, which sends a stout, conspicuous descending process ventrally to meet the transverse process of the **pterygoid** (see later). The **lacrimal** is a smaller bone medial to the jugal and forms the anterior margin of the orbit. The opening for the **lacrimal canal** is visible just inside the margin of the orbit (Figure 8.17). The dorsal margin of the orbit is formed by the **prefrontal**, **frontal**, and **postorbital** (Figure 8.16a). A cylindrical bony bar, formed by the descending process of the postorbital and ascending process of the jugal and slightly inset from the surrounding bony elements, defines the orbit posteriorly. A vascular foramen pierces this bar dorsally (Figures 8.16a and 8.17).

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

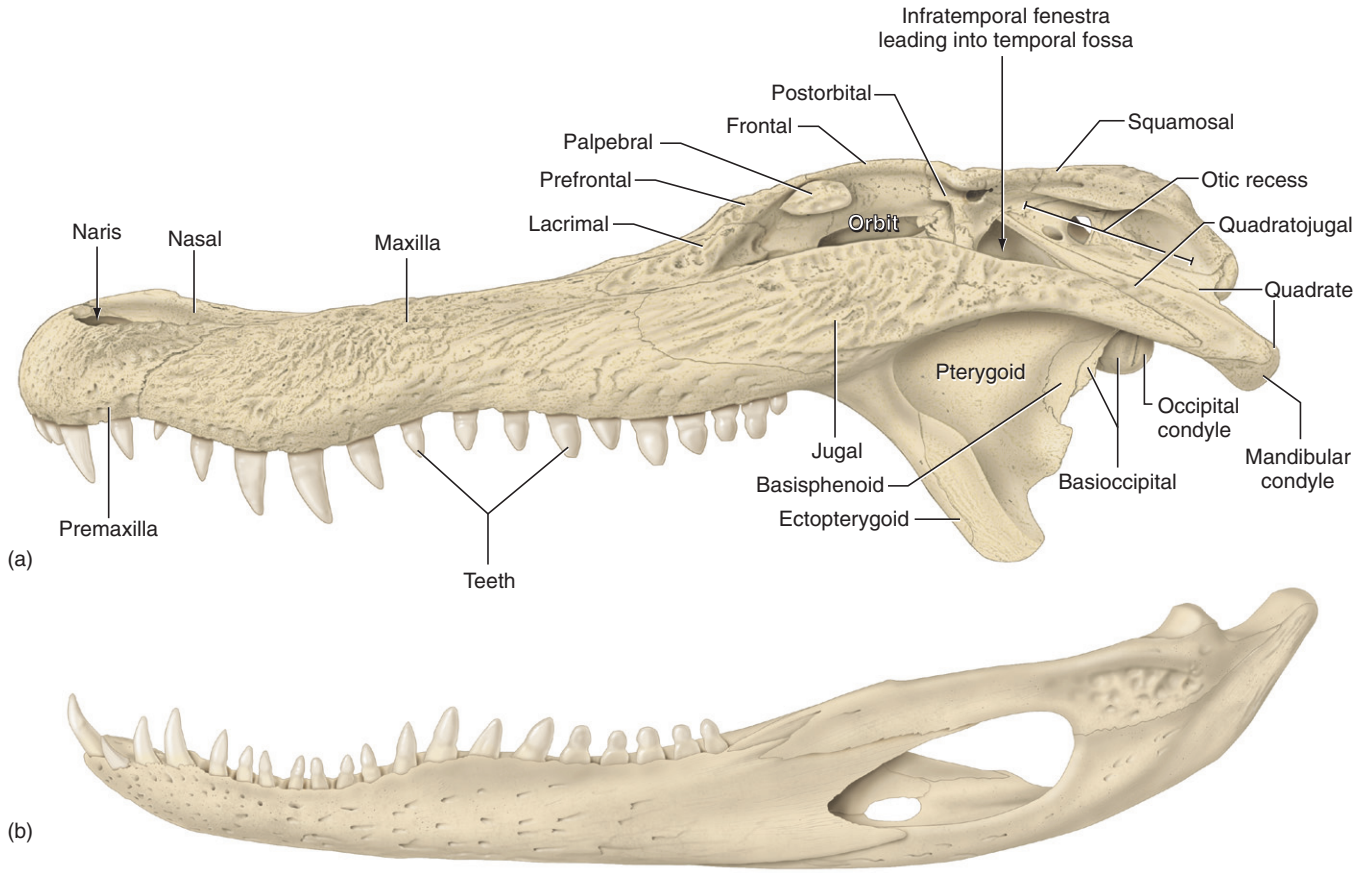


FIGURE 8.16 Skull and mandible of the alligator; (a) skull in lateral view and (b) mandible in lateral view (see Figure 8.20 for labels).

The **infratemporal fenestra**, approximately triangular in outline, lies posterior to this bar and leads into the **temporal fossa** (Figure 8.16a). The fenestra is bounded ventrally mainly by the jugal, which tapers posteriorly and nearly reaches the **mandibular condyle** (see later). The **quadratojugal** contributes to the ventral margin of the fenestra posteriorly and its slender ascending process forms the fenestra's posterior margin. The **supratemporal fenestra**, described later, is not visible in lateral view, but can be seen in dorsal view (Figure 8.18a). The quadratojugal (Figure 8.16a) shares an extensive suture with the **quadrate**, which slopes posteroventrally to form the mandibular condyle for articulation with the lower jaw.

Posterodorsally, the quadrate articulates with the **squamosal**, which continues onto the roof of the skull (Figures 8.16a–8.18a). The region of the skull bounded by the squamosal and quadrate bones forms a depression, the **otic recess**, across which is stretched the tympanic membrane or eardrum (Figure 8.16a). Medial to it is the middle ear. The conspicuous **otic aperture** is a large opening through which the **columella** (or stapes) passes. The columella is a fine, needle-like element that extends to the inner ear (Figure 8.17). It may not be preserved in your specimen. The middle ear cavity is continuous with a complex series of interconnected passages and sinuses (or cavities) within many of the bones in the posterior part of the skull (e.g., the quadrate, **exoccipital**, **supraoccipital**) and even the **articular** of the lower jaw (see later). An example of such passages is the **preotic foramen**, the opening leading into the cavity within the quadrate. This foramen is the smaller circular opening just anterior to the otic aperture (Figure 8.17). Another opening into quadrate is the **foramen aereum** (Figure 8.19). The latter lies on the posterodorsal surface of the quadrate, just dorsal to the mandibular condyle. The cavity of the quadrate communicates with the cavity within the articular bone of the lower jaw by way of a fibrous tube, the siphonium (which is not preserved). The system of cavities of the right and left sides of the skull are also interconnected through ventral passages in the **basioccipital** and **basisphenoid**, which are discussed later, and a dorsal passage, the **transverse canal**, between the two middle ear cavities (Figure 8.17). You should be able to see the transverse canal by peering into the dorsal part of the otic aperture. In addition, the system of cavities is connected to the pharynx by eustachian tubes. Although internally

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

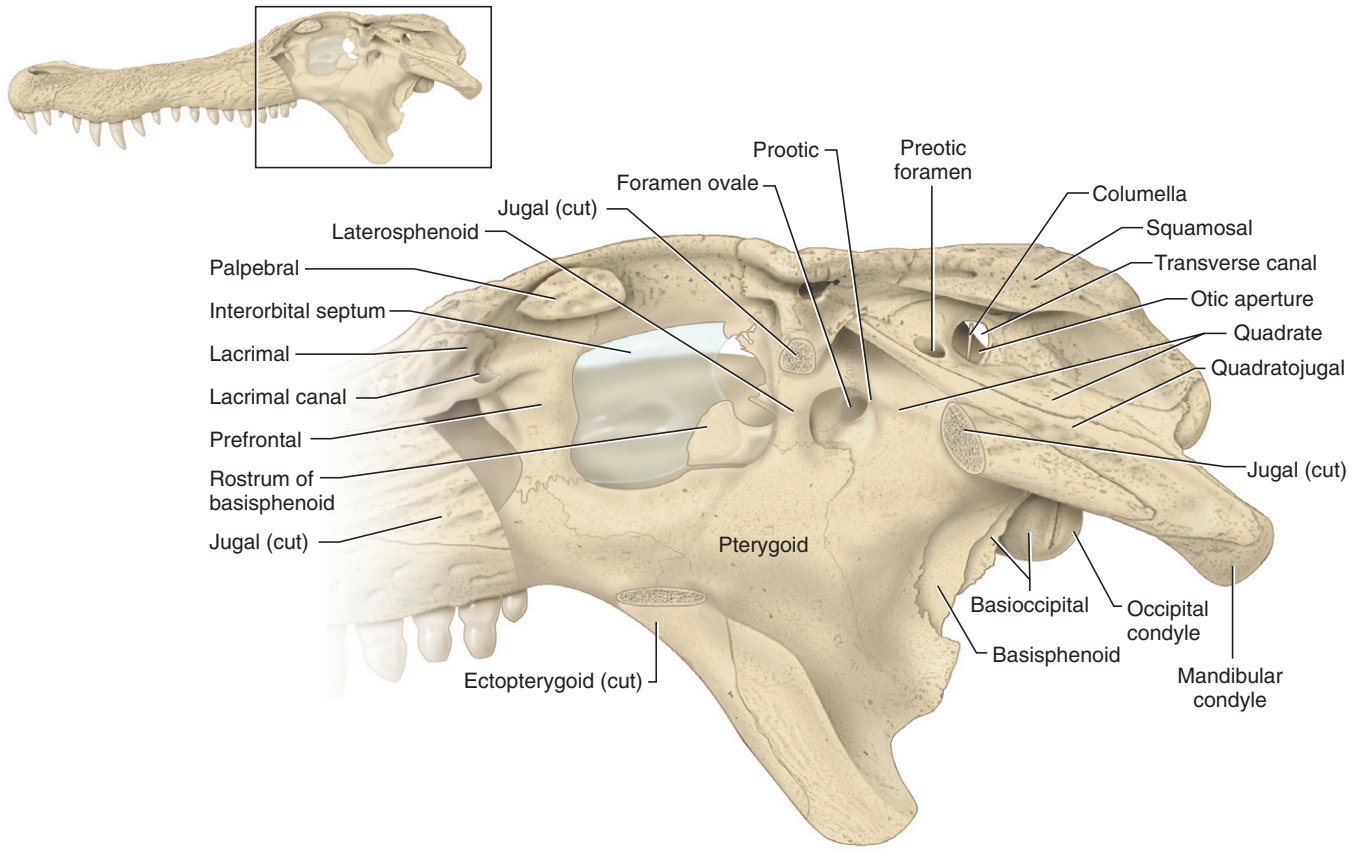


FIGURE 8.17 Skull of the alligator in lateral view, showing detail of braincase region with most of the jugal and small parts of the postorbital and maxilla removed.

complex, these passages open externally by a median and a pair of lateral eustachian foramina, as noted below in ventral view.

Ventral to the otic region, the quadrate forms a considerable portion of the wall of the temporal fossa and provides origin areas for the adductor musculature that closes the jaw. Crests and rugose areas that serve for tendons of this musculature may be observed on the quadrate. The quadrate forms the posterior margin of the large **foramen ovale** (Figure 8.17) through which the trigeminal nerve passes. The anterior margin is formed by the **laterosphenoid**, a bone that forms much of the anterior wall of the braincase. The anterior part of each laterosphenoid turns medially but the left and right laterosphenoids meet only briefly at the midline, so that a large opening is left between them. The opening dorsal to their meeting is roofed over by the frontal, forming a rounded passage for the olfactory tracts of the brain. Ventral to this, two notches are present along the anterior margin of the laterosphenoid (Figure 8.17). The optic nerve passes through the dorsal notch and the oculomotor nerve passes through the ventral notch. Medial to this notch is the vertical plate of the basisphenoid, termed the **rostrum** of the **basisphenoid**. The rostrum is actually an ossification of the **parasphenoid**, which fuses completely to the basisphenoid in adults. It helps form the interorbital septum between the orbits. The rest of the septum is cartilaginous and was noted earlier. Portions of the basisphenoid are also exposed posteriorly between the quadrate and pterygoid and ventrally posterior to the pterygoid. Although the basisphenoid is a fairly large bone, much of it is covered laterally by the laterosphenoid and pterygoid.

The pterygoid is a large bone. Ventral to the foramen ovale it forms a nearly vertical plate that curves laterally to meet the ectopterygoid. A process of the pterygoid extends anteriorly, past the rostrum of the basisphenoid, to contact the **palatine** and the prefrontal. The pterygoid also contributes significantly to the palate, which is considered later. The **prootic**, associated with the inner ear, is also largely covered laterally. A small exposure is present between the quadrate and pterygoid along the posteroventral margin of the foramen ovale, which it helps to form (Figure 8.17).

Examine the skull in dorsal view (Figure 8.18a). The premaxillae form the tip of the rostrum and almost

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

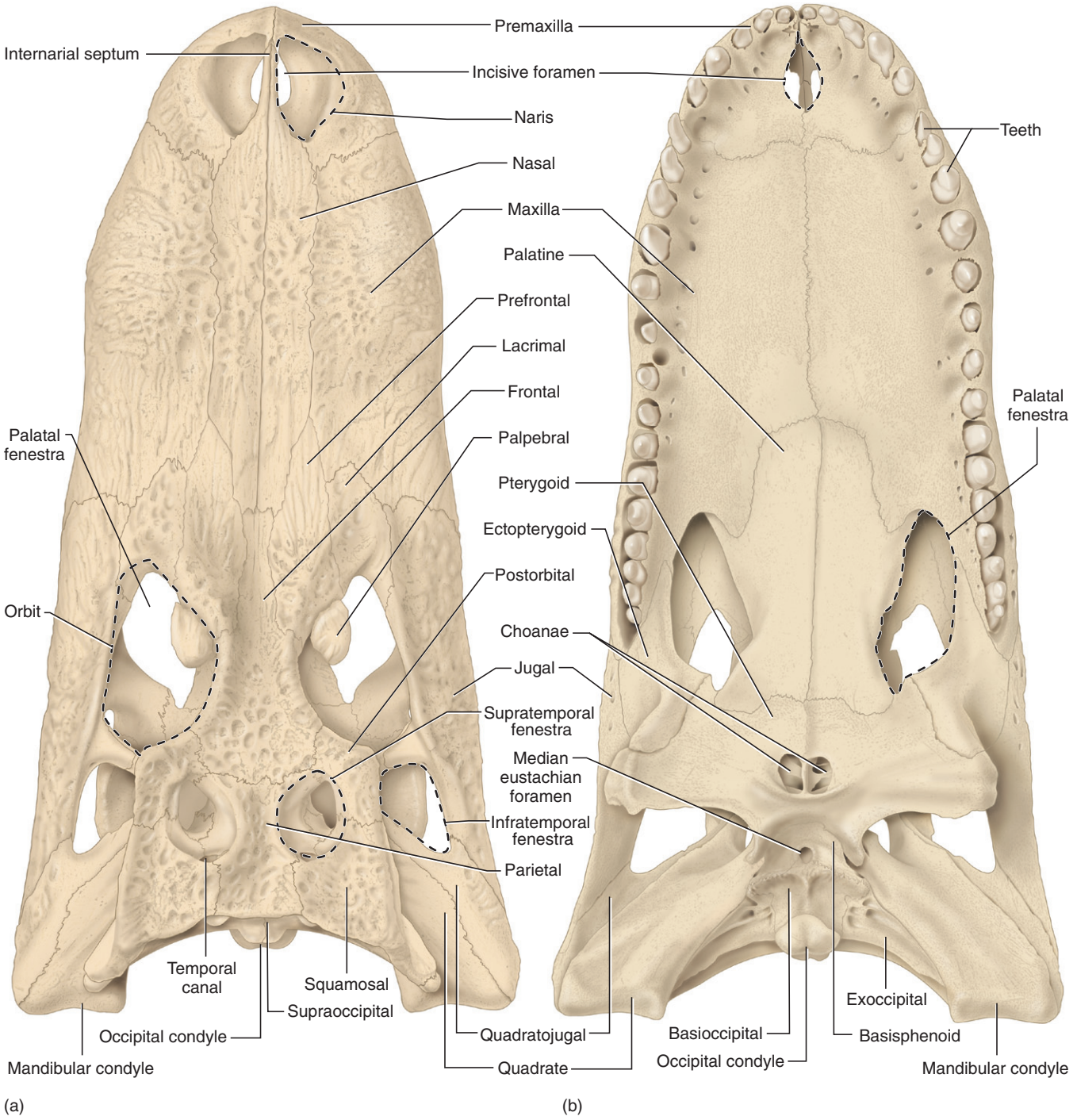


FIGURE 8.18 Skull of the alligator in (a) dorsal and (b) ventral views.

completely encircle the nares. A thin, bony **internarial septum** is formed mainly by the narrow, elongated **nasals**, which follow the premaxillae posteriorly. Observe the **incisive foramen** through the naris. The foramen opens on the ventral surface of the palate and will be discussed again later. The maxillae lie lateral to the nasals. Note again the bones that encircle the orbit: the lacrimal, prefrontal, frontal, postorbital, and jugal. The frontal is a single element, narrowed between the orbits and sending an elongated anterior process to meet the nasal. Posteriorly, it is sutured to the **parietal**. The parietal, postorbital, and squamosal delimit the supratemporal fenestra, the dorsal opening of the diapsid skull, which in crocodylians characteristically lies in the

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

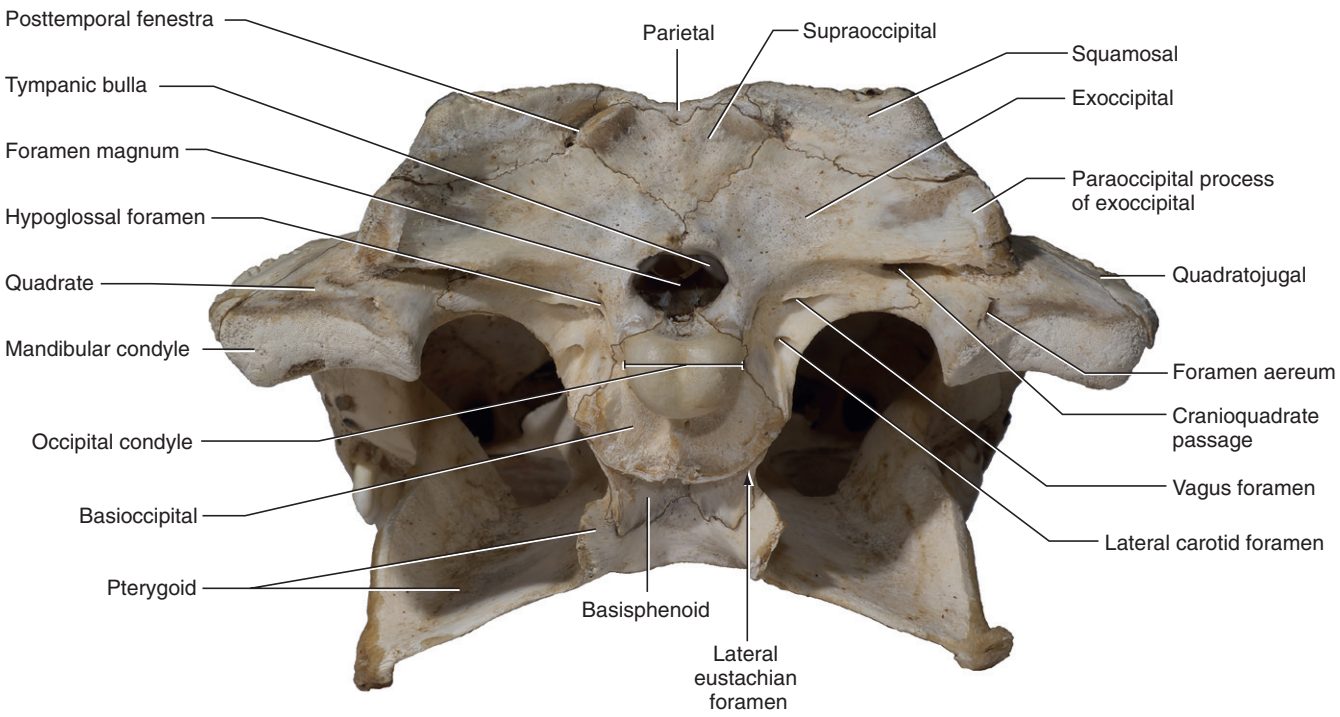


FIGURE 8.19 Skull of the alligator in posterior view.

horizontal plane and is visible only in dorsal view. The fenestra leads ventrally into the spacious temporal fossa. A second, much smaller opening, the **temporal canal**, emerges just within the posterior margin of the supratemporal fenestra. The infratemporal fenestra is also visible in dorsal view lateral to the supratemporal fenestra and posterior to the orbit. The large **palatal fenestra**, opening onto the ventral surface of the skull, is clearly seen through the orbit. Note again other bones described in lateral view (quadrate and quadratojugal), as well as the bar, between the orbit and infratemporal fenestra, formed by the jugal and postorbital.

In ventral view (Figure 8.18b), the most conspicuous feature is the length and form of the palate. This palate, forming the roof of the oral cavity, is not the original, or primary, palate present in such reptiles as lizards. In crocodylians the bones forming the primary palate have been modified to form a bony shelf, the secondary palate, ventral to the primary palate. This has been accomplished mainly through downfolding and inturning of the premaxillae, maxillae, and palatines. Together with the pterygoids, these bones form the secondary palate; the secondary palate of mammals is an independently derived, but only slightly differently constructed, analogous structure. The function of the secondary palate is to extend the **choanae**, the posterior openings of the nasal cavities, far posteriorly, thereby separating the oral cavity from the nasal passages, a feature that allows crocodylians to continue breathing while the oral cavity is engaged with prey. The incisive foramen, noted briefly in dorsal view of the skull, is a single opening between the premaxillae (Figure 8.18b). The much larger maxillae follow the premaxillae posteriorly. Both of these bones bear conical teeth, set in a single marginal series in deep sockets in the bone, a condition termed *thecodont*.

The palatines, narrower than the maxillae, form the medial margins of the palatal fenestrae and contact the pterygoids posteriorly (Figure 8.18b). The choanae lie far back between the pterygoids and are separated by a bony septum. The right and left pterygoids are solidly fused posterior to the choanae. The pterygoid expands laterally into a transverse flange that meets the ectopterygoid, which extends anterolaterally to meet the maxilla. These three bones form the rest of the margin of the palatal foramen. The basioccipital, forming the **occipital condyle**, which articulates with the axis, can be seen posterior to the choanae. The eustachian foramina open in this region. The **median eustachian foramen** is large enough to be seen easily, opening between the basisphenoid and basioccipital (Figure 8.18b), but the two **lateral eustachian foramina**, which are narrow, slit-like openings, are not (their position is indicated in Figure 8.19). Lateral to the occipital condyle the exoccipitals form narrow wedges that contact the quadrates. The mandibular condyles form the posterolateral corners of the skull. Note as well the quadratojugals.

Examine the occiput, the posterior part of the skull, which is formed by several bones (Figure 8.19). Locate

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

the occipital condyle, formed solely by the basioccipital, which continues ventral to the condyle as a nearly flat plate with a curved ventral margin. The thin, posterior portion of the basisphenoid lies immediately ventral to it, flattened against the posterior surface of the pterygoid and assuming its curved surface. The eustachian foramina, mentioned earlier, lie between this laminar portion of the basisphenoid and the basioccipital. The **foramen magnum** is the large, nearly circular opening dorsal to the occipital condyle. The paired exoccipitals lie to either side of and complete the margin of the foramen magnum (Figure 8.19).

The exoccipital includes the **opisthotic**, a bone of the middle ear that is present as an individual element in some other reptile skulls. It helps form the **tympanic bulla** (to which the prootic also contributes), a medial swelling containing the inner ear, which may be viewed through the foramen magnum. The exoccipital is a large bone that extends laterally over the mandibular condyle. Its lateral portion is the **paraoccipital process** (which also has a small exposure in lateral view). Several foramina piercing the exoccipital may be noted. A group of foramina is clustered together just lateral to the condyle. The more medial of the two small medial foramina is the **hypoglossal foramen** and transmits the hypoglossal nerve. Laterally is the large **vagus foramen**, for the vagus nerve. The **lateral carotid foramen**, nearly as large, is ventral to the vagus foramen and serves for passage of the internal carotid artery. Farther laterally, ventral to a prominent crest on the paraoccipital process, is the **cranioquadrate passage**. This lies between the exoccipital and quadrate bones and extends anteriorly into the middle ear. It transmits the orbitotemporal artery and lateral cephalic vein, as well as the main branch of the facial nerve. Just ventral and slightly lateral to the opening of the cranioquadrate passage is the small foramen aereum. This opening, entirely within the quadrate, was mentioned earlier in connection with the continuation of the cavity of the quadrate with that of the articular bone of the lower jaw.

Dorsally the occiput is completed by the median **supraoccipital** (which does not contribute to the margin of the foramen magnum) and laterally by the squamosal (Figure 8.19). The latter has an extensive suture with the exoccipital. A **posttemporal fenestra** lies where these three bones meet, high on each side of the occiput. The fenestra is small and effectively occluded by cartilage, in contrast to the spacious openings present in the turtle and iguana.

Examine the lower jaw (Figure 8.20). As in other reptiles, each half is formed by several bones. The **dentary**, as usual, is the large anterior bone. It bears all the teeth, conical and set in sockets like the upper teeth. In lateral view (Figure 8.20a), the dentary extends far posteriorly and bifurcates to form the anterior margin of the **external mandibular fenestra**. The **surangular** extends dorsal to the fenestra, whereas the **angular** lies ventral to it. These bones meet posterior to the fenestra. Posteriorly, the surangular forms the lateral margin of the surface that articulates with the quadrate of the upper jaw. The **articular** has a small exposure in lateral view, forming the posterior margin of the articular surface for the quadrate and the dorsal surface of the **retroarticular process**. The angular extends farther back onto the retroarticular process of the lower jaw and forms its ventral margin. Anteriorly, the angular extends far forward as a narrow tapered process along the ventral edge of the lower jaw, wedged between the dentary and **splenial**. The latter, broadly exposed in medial view, forms a narrow strip medial and just posterior to the teeth. Several bones forming the medial surface of the lower jaw are visible through the external mandibular fenestra. The ventral bone is the angular, forming the ventral margin of the **caudal intermandibular foramen**. The splenial forms the dorsal margin of the foramen in lateral view. The **coronoid**, tapering posteriorly, lies dorsal to these bones.

Examine the lower jaw in medial view (Figure 8.20b). The dentary has a triangular exposure anteriorly, but much of the middle third of the lower jaw, including its dorsomedial edge, is covered by the splenial. The **oral intermandibular foramen** opens on the splenial ventral to the more posterior teeth. Posteriorly, the splenial meets the angular ventrally, forming with it the margin of the caudal intermandibular foramen; the splenial also meets the coronoid dorsally. The latter does not reach the dorsal margin of the lower jaw, but forms the anterodorsal margin of the opening of the **mandibular adductor fossa**. The angular is long and transversely wide ventrally but tapers dorsally, and contacts the surangular laterally. Its dorsal surface bears nearly all the mandibular adductor fossa. Posterior to the fossa, the angular contacts the articular and contributes to the retroarticular process. The articular forms a triangular, anteroventrally tapering, wedge-like bone. Its anterodorsal part forms most of the smooth articular surface for the quadrate of the skull, and its posterodorsal portion forms much of the retroarticular process. A narrow notch medially separating these two portions is pierced by the foramen aereum (recall that the quadrate also has a foramen aereum).

The spacious mandibular adductor fossa is a large trough that opens dorsally and medially from the posteromedial surface of the lower jaw. The margin of its opening is formed by the coronoid, angular, articular, and surangular. **Meckel's cartilage** (only a small posterior portion is usually preserved) extends anteriorly from the anteroventral tip of the articular, passing along a sulcus on the trough-like floor of the fossa. The fossa and cartilage continue forward into the spacious **Meckelian canal**, which is bounded laterally by the dentary

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

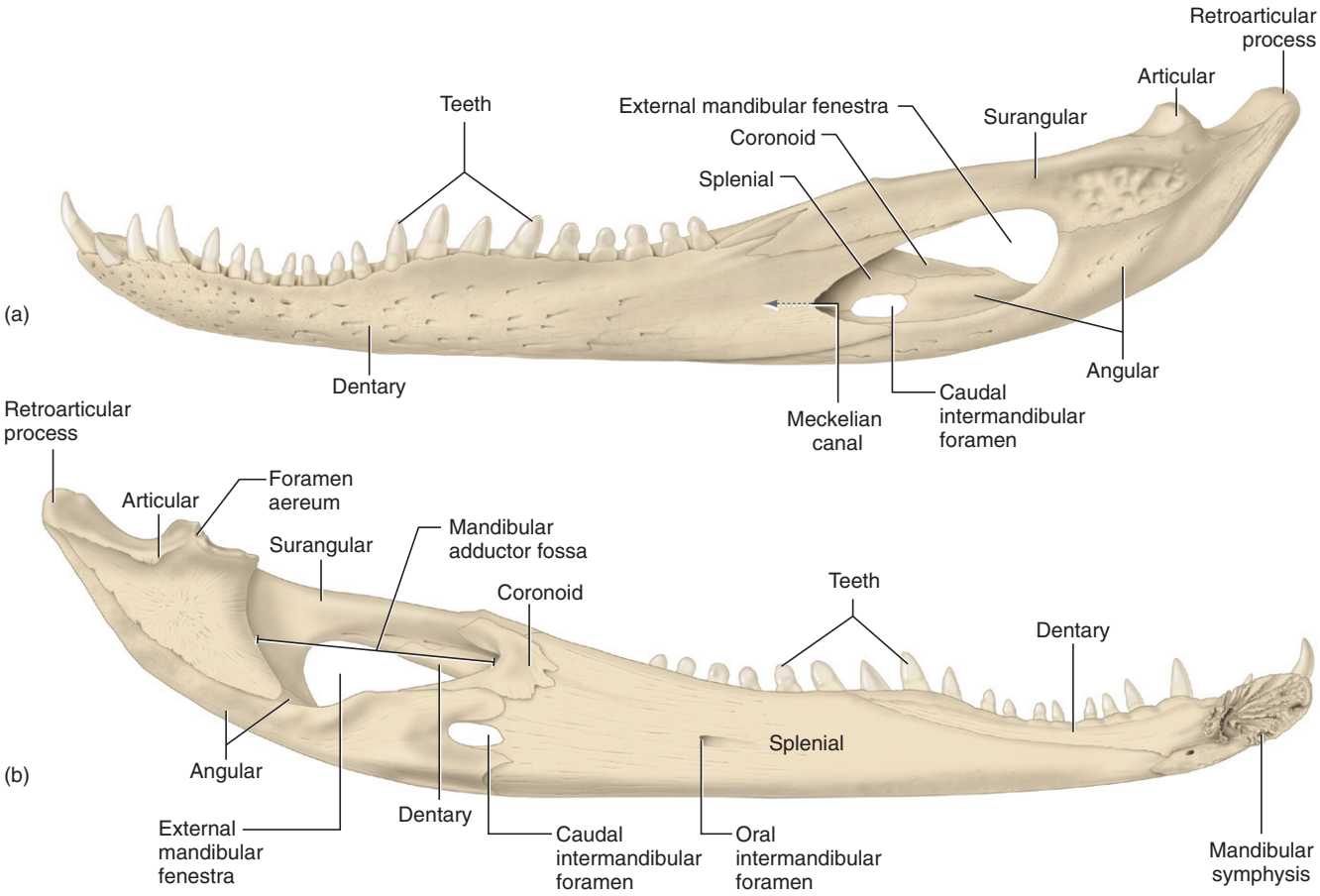


FIGURE 8.20 Mandible of the alligator in (a) lateral and (b) medial views.

and medially by the splenial. The canal is easily appreciated by observing anteriorly through the external mandibular fenestra. A stout process of the angular, projecting medially along the posteroventral margin of the opening of the fossa, provides an insertion site for the mandibular adductor musculature. The ventral portions of the retroarticular process provide insertion sites for the pterygoid musculature. The depressor mandibulae musculature, which opens the jaws, inserts more dorsally on the retroarticular process.

Key Terms: Alligator Skull and Mandible

angular
articular
basioccipital
basisphenoid
caudal intermandibular foramen
choanae
columella
coronoid
cranioquadrate passage
dentary
ectopterygoid
exoccipital
external mandibular fenestra
foramen aereum of articular
foramen aereum of quadrate
foramen magnum
foramen ovale
frontal
hypoglossal foramen
incisive foramen
infratemporal fenestra
internarial septum
interorbital septum
jugal
lacrimal
lacrimal canal
lateral carotid foramen
lateral eustachian foramina
laterosphenoid
mandibular adductor fossa
mandibular condyle
maxilla
Meckel's cartilage

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

Meckelian canal (mandibular canal)
median eustachian foramen
naris (plur., **nares**)
nasal
occipital condyle
opisthotic
oral intermandibular foramen
orbit
otic aperture
otic recess
palatal fenestra
palatine
palpebral
paraoccipital process of exoccipital
parasphenoid
parietal
postorbital
posttemporal fenestra
prefrontal
premaxilla
preotic foramen
prootic
pterygoid
quadrate
quadratojugal
retroarticular process
rostrum of **basisphenoid**
splenial
squamosal
supraoccipital
supratemporal fenestra
surangular
teeth
temporal canal
temporal fossa
transverse canal
tympanic bulla
vagus foramen

SECTION V: DINOSAUR SKULL AND MANDIBLE

Although it is unlikely that you will have the opportunity to directly examine a nonavian dinosaur skull, several of its more notable features may be appreciated on illustrations. Doing so will permit a broader scope in our consideration of reptile skulls, particularly of Archosauria. As noted in Chapter 1, dinosaurs belong to Archosauromorpha, one of the two main clades of Diapsida, the other being Lepidosauromorpha. Living archosauromorphs belong to Archosauria and includes crocodylians and birds, the skulls of which are also described here (Section IV and Chapter 9, respectively), but the group has a rich fossil representation. The main archosaur divisions are the two lineages leading to crocodylians on the one hand and the dinosaurs on the other. Several archosaur synapomorphies are better appreciated in some nonavian dinosaurs than in living archosaurs, and hence we present a description here of the cranial skeleton of two tyrannosaurid theropod dinosaurs, *Albertosaurus libratus* and *Tyrannosaurus rex*. Among the skeletal features characteristic of archosaurs are an antorbital fenestra, antorbital fossa, laterosphenoid, and external mandibular fenestra (the last two were noted in the alligator).

Using Figures 8.21 through 8.24, follow the descriptions for these theropods. Among the more notable features of the long, high, and narrow skull is its open appearance, due to the presence of many fenestrae, and long rostrum (Figure 8.21a, c). The diapsid nature of the skull is clearly evident: the **infratemporal** (Figure 8.21a) and **supratemporal** (Figure 8.21c) **fenestrae** are conspicuous openings.

Consider the anterior end of the skull. The **maxilla** is a large bone contacting the **premaxilla** anteriorly and the **nasal** dorsally. The premaxilla and nasal contribute to the margin of the **naris**, the external opening of the nasal cavity. The right and left nares are separated by narial processes of these two bones. The maxilla and premaxilla bear a single marginal series of **teeth**, which are set in sockets within the bone, the *thecodont* condition as already noted for the alligator. Those implanted in the maxilla are long, curved, and dagger-like. Those in the premaxillae are smaller and incisiform (Figures 8.21a and 8.22).

The maxilla's posterior edge is concave, forming the anterior margin of the large **antorbital fenestra** (Figure 8.21a), which is a synapomorphy of archosaurs, as noted earlier and in Chapter 1. The rest of the margin is formed by the **jugal** and **lacrimal**. The fenestra lies in the **antorbital fossa**, a recessed region of the bony surface of the rostrum. The fossa is also developed early in the history of archosaurs, but the fossa and antorbital fenestra have been secondarily lost in later crocodylians, and thus was not noted in the description of the alligator. Much of the bony surface surrounding the fossa has a sculptured texture. The smaller **maxillary fenestra**, also within the antorbital fossa, lies anterior to the antorbital fenestra, but this feature is a synapomorphy of more derived theropod dinosaurs.

The lacrimal is a conspicuous element, contributing to the dorsal surface of the skull (Figure 8.21a, c) and the margin of the antorbital fossa, as already noted. Its posteroventral portion forms a bony bar between the antorbital fenestra and the **orbit**, the smaller, somewhat elliptical opening that houses the eyeball. The **lacrimal pneumatic recess** is visible near the posterodorsal edge of the antorbital fossa (Figure 8.21a). A prominent protuberance, the corneal process of the lacrimal, projects dorsolaterally, overhanging the region of the lacrimal

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

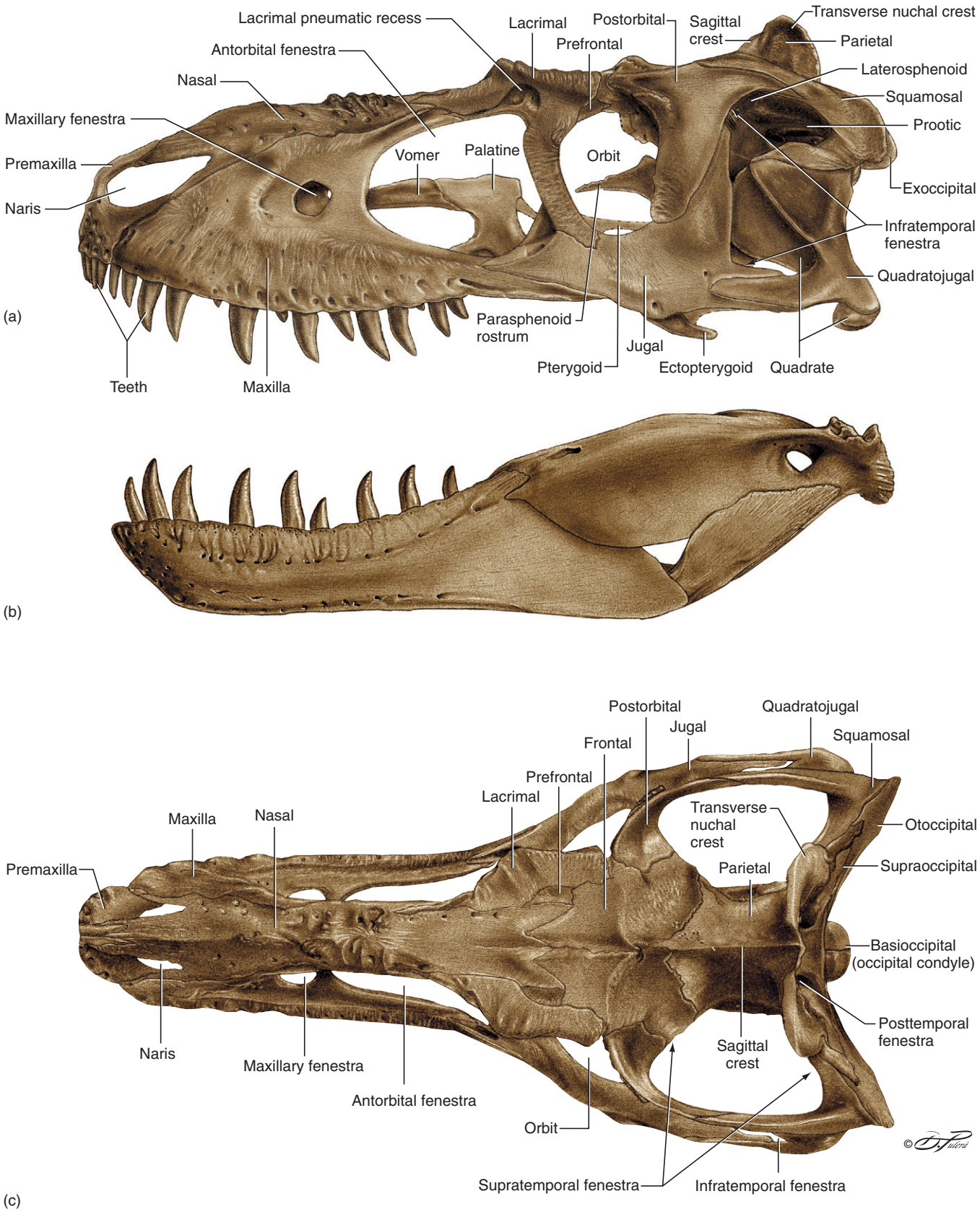


FIGURE 8.21 Skull of *Albertosaurus libratus* in (a) lateral and (c) dorsal views; and mandible in (b) lateral view (see Figure 8.24 for labels).

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

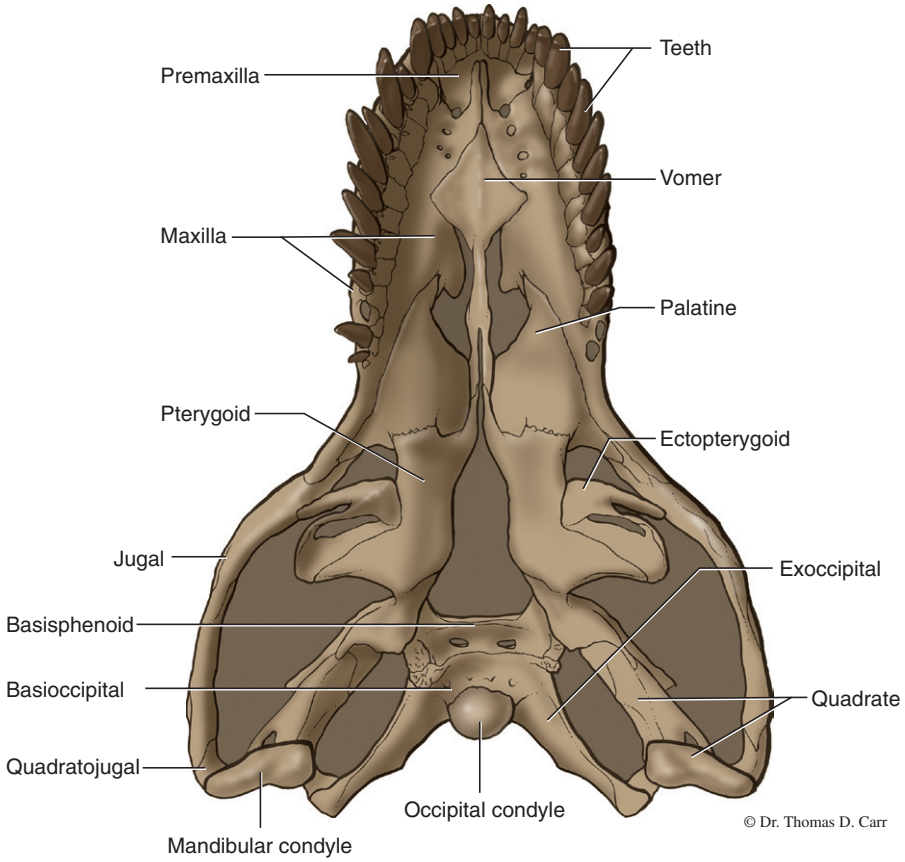


FIGURE 8.22 Skull of *Tyrannosaurus rex* in ventral view.

pneumatic recess in *Albertosaurus* (but not *Tyrannosaurus*). The descending portion of the lacrimal meets the jugal ventrally, a large bone forming the cheek region and contributing to the margin of the orbit. Anteriorly, the jugal also contacts the maxilla. Posteriorly it articulates with the quadratojugal. Posterodorsally, it sends a stout triangular flange that meets a similar descending flange of the **postorbital**. Together, these flanges form a stout partition between the orbit and the infratemporal fenestra.

The postorbital contributes to the dorsal surface of the skull, but does not meet the lacrimal in *Albertosaurus* (in contrast to adult *Tyrannosaurus*; not figured). These two bones are separated by a narrow space, the supraorbital sulcus. The small **prefrontal** forms the anterodorsal margin of the orbit, but has a larger dorsal exposure. Posteriorly the postorbital meets the **squamosal** (Figure 8.21a, c). The infratemporal fenestra is oddly shaped in these dinosaurs, as it is constricted near its middle. This is due to anterior extensions of the squamosal and **quadratojugal** that nearly bisect the infratemporal fenestra, thereby resulting in the constriction that produces dorsal and ventral openings.

The more anterior part of the **quadrate** is exposed through the ventral part of the fenestra, but much of the rest is obscured in lateral view by the quadratojugal and squamosal (Figure 8.21a). The quadrate extends posteroventrally to form the mandibular condyle for articulation with the lower jaw. It also has a small exposure just behind the posterodorsal part of the quadratojugal. Anteriorly the quadrate contacts the **pterygoid**.

The osseous portion of the braincase lies in the posterior part of the skull. It includes bones that surround and protect the dorsal, lateral, ventral, and posterior surfaces of the brain. A portion of this osseous braincase is visible through the dorsal part of the infratemporal fenestra. The main part of the bony mass visible is the **prootic**, which also houses part of the inner ear. The **laterosphenoid** has a small exposure anterior to the prootic (Figure 8.21a). The laterosphenoid is an ossification that helps form the anterolateral walls of the braincase. It was also noted in the alligator and is an early development in the history of archosaurs. The small **epipterygoid** contributes to the braincase in this region but is not visible due to the bar formed by the postorbital and the jugal (the position of some of these bones

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

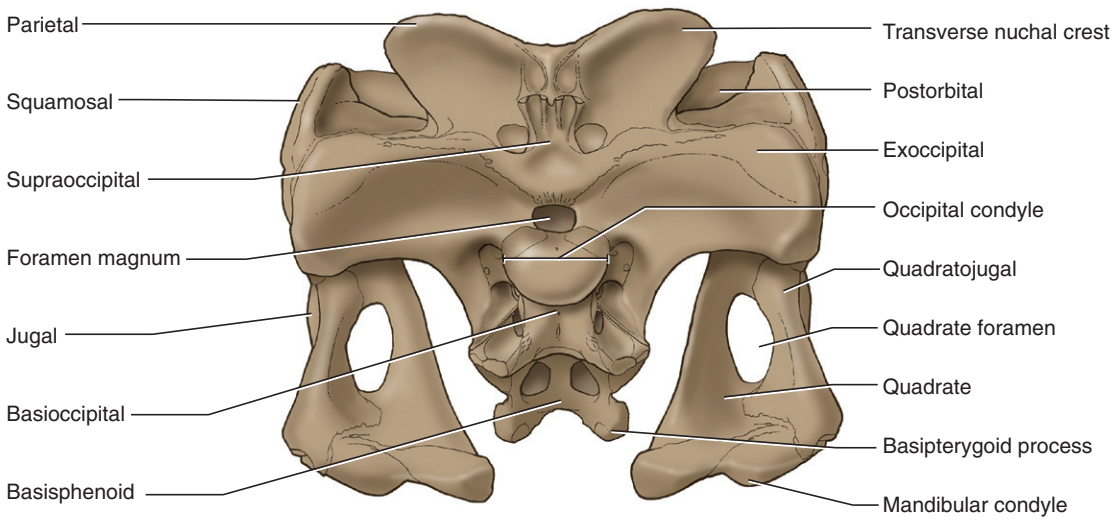
is more clearly observable in the skull of the alligator; see Figure 8.17).

The dorsal part of the braincase is formed by the **frontal** and **parietal** (Figure 8.21c). The parietal bears a median **sagittal crest**, which extends posterodorsally and meets the tall **transverse nuchal crest** (Figure 8.21a, c). Ventrally the osseous braincase is formed mainly by the **basioccipital** and **basisphenoid** (Figure 8.22). A median blade-like **parasphenoid rostrum** projects anterior to the basisphenoid (Figure 8.22a), as similarly occurs in the alligator, but in which the parasphenoid is completely fused to the basisphenoid in adults, and was termed the rostrum of the basisphenoid.

In dorsal view (Figure 8.21c), note how open the skull appears. The fenestrae previously described are all clearly evident. In addition, note the supratemporal fenestrae, one on either side in the posterior region of the skull. As in the alligator, they are almost entirely in the frontal plane and so visible in dorsal view, but they are much larger. Anteriorly, the nasals are narrow, elongated bones that contact the frontal, lacrimal, and prefrontal. The nasals tend to fuse to each other, with only partial separation between them, whereas the parietals fuse solidly to each other with no trace of a suture. The frontal contacts the postorbital posterolaterally and the parietal posteriorly. A ridge occurs where the frontal and parietal bones meet. The prominence of the transverse nuchal crests is easily appreciated in this view. The margin of the supratemporal fenestra is formed by the postorbital, frontal, parietal, and squamosal.

The occiput or posterior surface of the skull, which covers the brain posteriorly, is partly visible in dorsal view (Figure 8.21c). The **posttemporal fenestra** is much smaller than in the snapping turtle and iguana. The **supraoccipital** is the median bone dorsal to the **foramen magnum**, the opening through which the spinal cord joins the brain (Figure 8.23). This bone forms the dorsal margin of the foramen, and contacts the parietal dorsally and the **exoccipitals** laterally (Figure 8.23). The exoccipital is a combination of the fused exoccipital and **opisthotic**. These bones tend to remain separate in some reptiles, such as turtles, but are fused together in others. In the latter case, the unit is generally termed an exoccipital in the iguana and alligator. Anatomists differ on the term applied to this structure in dinosaurs, with some following the typical reptilian designation as exoccipital, as is done here. Others, however, follow the specific terminology applied to birds for dinosaurian anatomy, and term it the otoccipital. This term perhaps more accurately reflects the compound nature of the bone in referring to the otic (or ear, for the opisthotic, which helps house the inner ear) and occipital (for the exoccipital). The lateral portion of the exoccipital is the **paraoccipital process**. The basioccipital forms the ventral bone of the occiput, but also has a ventral exposure (see Figure 8.22). It forms most of the spherical **occipital condyle**, which articulates with the first vertebrae of the vertebral column. The basisphenoid, which lies anterior to the basioccipital, may also be observed in posterior view (Figure 8.23). The exoccipital contributes a small dorsolateral portion to the condyle. The quadrate extends ventrally and forms the **mandibular condyle**. The quadrate contacts the quadratojugal medially. The **quadrate foramen** lies between these bones.

In ventral view (Figure 8.22), the palate is formed anteriorly by the maxillae, premaxillae, and **vomer**, a narrow compound bone that has a diamond-shaped expansion anteriorly. The triangular **palatines** follow



© Dr. Thomas D. Carr

FIGURE 8.23 Skull of *Albertosaurus libratus* in posterior view.

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

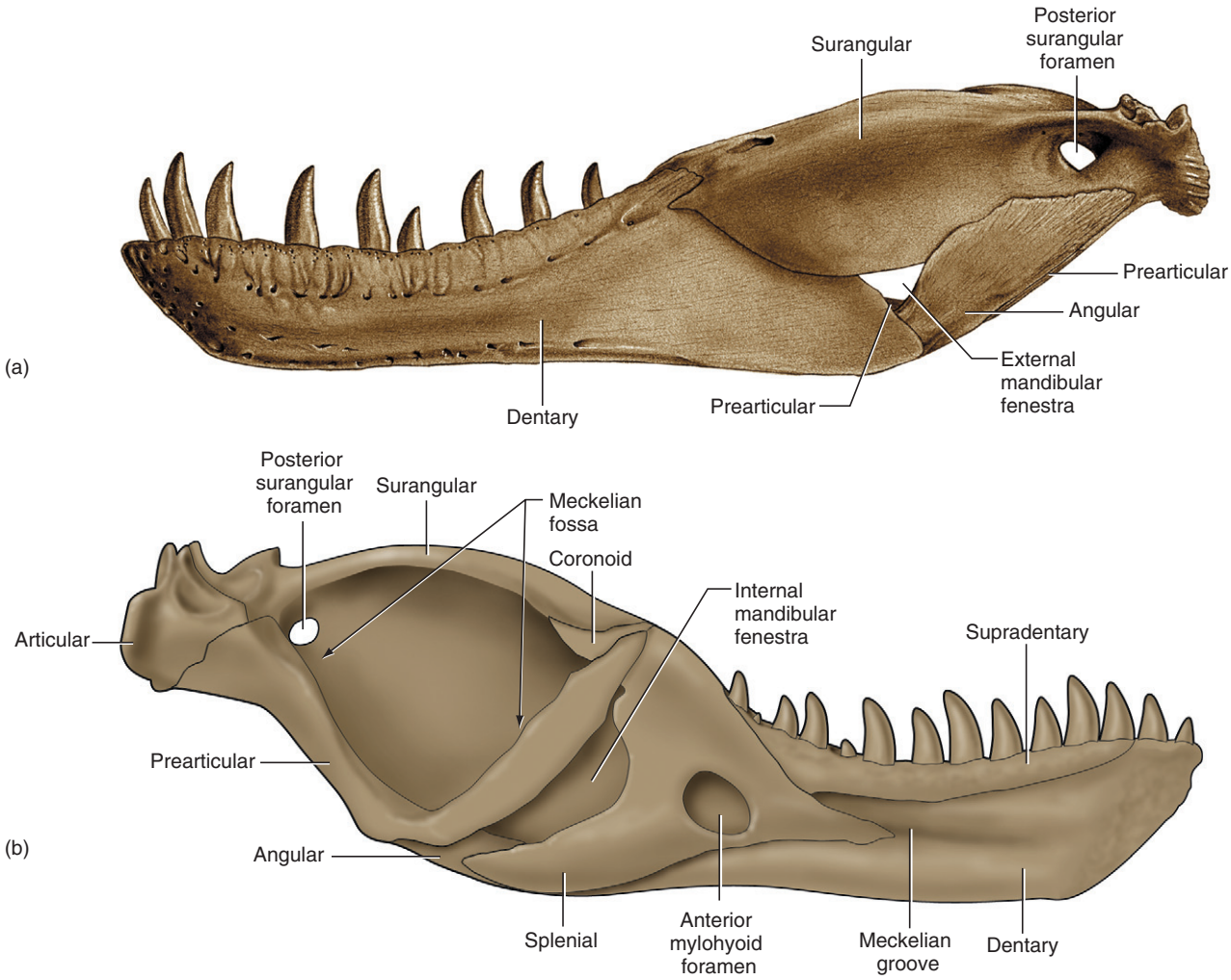


FIGURE 8.24 Tyrannosaurid mandibles; (a) mandible of *Albertosaurus libratus* in lateral view and (b) mandible of *Tyrannosaurus rex* in medial view.

posteriorly and help enclose the **choanae**, the internal openings of the nasal cavities. The choanae are farther back than in the turtle and iguana, but not as far as in the alligator (compare with Figure 8.18b). Farther posteriorly, each pterygoid, a large bone, contacts the **ectopterygoid** laterally, and then constricts. At this point, the pterygoid articulates medially with the basisphenoid, which helps form the basicranium with the basioccipital. The exoccipitals, extending posterolaterally from either side of the basioccipital, contribute to the basicranium and form much of the occiput, as noted earlier. The posterior end of the pterygoid articulates with the quadrate.

Examine the mandible. Three bones have prominent exposures in lateral view (Figure 8.24a). The **dentary** is the large anterior bone forming at least half of the mandible, and bears the teeth. The **surangular**, also large, lies posterodorsally, and the smaller **angular** lies posteroventrally. Between these three bones is the **external mandibular fenestra**, a characteristic feature of archosauromorphs that was also noted in the alligator. Another prominent opening, the **posterior surangular foramen**, pierces the posterior part of the surangular. The **prearticular**, which lies mainly on the medial surface of the mandible (see later) and can be seen through external mandibular fenestra, has a small lateral exposure as a elongated strip along the ventral margin of the angular. The **articular** forms most of the surface that articulates with the quadrate of the skull to form the jaw joint (the surangular contributes a small anterolateral portion). It has a small exposure posterior to the surangular and will be seen more clearly in medial view. The region of the mandible posterior to the articular surface is the **retroarticular process**, which is much smaller than in the alligator.

In medial view (Figure 8.24b), the dentary contributes mainly to the anterior third of the mandible. Dorsal to it and forming the medial border of the tooth row is the

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

thin, narrow **supradentary**. This bone continues posteriorly, covered by the **splenial** and prearticular, to fuse with the small triangular **coronoid**. The general consensus among theropod specialists is that the supradentary is probably not a distinct bone and thus that it is an anterior extension of the coronoid. The splenial is an approximately arrowhead-shaped bone. It encloses the **anterior mylohyoid foramen** and helps form the medial wall of the **Meckelian fossa**, the large space into which adductor musculature descends. Its notched posterior margin forms the anterior margin of the **internal mandibular fenestra**. The anterior tip of the splenial contacts the dentary anteriorly. Its anterodorsal portion overlaps the supradentary before contacting the prearticular. Posteroventrally the splenial helps form the ventral margin of the mandible and contacts the angular. The prearticular is a dorsally-open crescentic or boomerang-shaped bone. Its dorsal edge forms the ventral margin of the Meckelian fossa, and its central portion meets the angular ventrally. Its anterodorsally oriented arm meets the coronoid and overlaps the supradentary. The anterior margin of this arm helps form the internal mandibular fenestra. The posterodorsally oriented arm of the prearticular articulates with the articular. Between the articular surface and retroacticular process, the small **foramen aereum** (not illustrated) pierces the dorsal surface of the articular and communicates with the internal cavity of the articular. The triangular coronoid is wedged between the prearticular and surangular, and forms the anterodorsal margin of the Meckelian fossa. The surangular, already noted in lateral view, also has a broad exposure in medial view. This surface forms the lateral wall of the Meckelian fossa. The dorsal edge of the surangular arches medially over the fossa, forming its dorsal margin.

Key Terms: Dinosaur Skull and Mandible

angular
anterior mylohyoid foramen
antorbital fenestra
antorbital fossa
articular
basioccipital
basisphenoid
choanae
coronoid
dentary
ectopterygoid
epipterygoid
exoccipital
external mandibular fenestra
foramen aereum
foramen magnum
frontal
infratemporal fenestra
internal mandibular fenestra
jugal
lacrimal
lacrimal pneumatic recess
laterosphenoid
mandibular condyle
maxilla
maxillary fenestra
Meckelian fossa
naris
nasal
occipital condyle
opisthotic
orbit
palatine
paraoccipital process
parietal
posterior surangular foramen
postorbital
posttemporal fenestra
prearticular
prefrontal
premaxilla
prootic
pterygoid
quadrate
quadrate foramen
quadratojugal
retroarticular process
rostrum of **parasphenoid**
sagittal crest
splenial
squamosal
supradentary
supraoccipital
supratemporal fenestrae
surangular
teeth
transverse nuchal crest
vomer

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

CHAPTER

9

The Pigeon

INTRODUCTION

The pigeon, *Columba livia*, belongs to Aves, or birds. Although birds have long been recognized as the flying, feathered vertebrates, recent fossil discoveries—among the more exciting paleontological developments of the last few decades—have revealed that feathers first evolved in several groups of theropod dinosaurs. Feathers are therefore not unique to birds and can no longer be used to diagnose them as a group. Nonetheless, birds are the only living vertebrates with feathers. The terms Aves and birds have long been used to refer to the same group of amniotes, but they are not precisely synonymous. Aves are considered the group that includes the ancestor of living birds and all of its descendants. However, the fossil remains of much more primitive birds have long been known to science.

Indeed, birds have a long fossil record, beginning with the earliest bird, the Late Jurassic *Archaeopteryx lithographica*. The group including *Archaeopteryx* and all other birds is termed Avialae and is recognized by development of the forelimbs into wings. The fossil record documents several substantial radiations during the Jurassic and Cretaceous Periods, of which many became extinct. As examples, Confuciusornithidae (a group of toothless, flying birds that still had mainly separate digits in the manus and a pair of long ornamental tail feathers in, presumably, males), Hesperornithiformes (a group of flightless, diving birds with the forelimb represented only by a splint-like humerus), and Ichthyornithiformes (a group of ancient flying birds) may be mentioned. These groups had all become extinct by the end of the Cretaceous.

Modern birds, or Aves, began their radiation during the Cretaceous. They are among the most numerous of vertebrate groups, having diversified to include at least 9,700 living species (and molecular studies suggest that there might be twice as many species as currently recognized). Aves are characterized by complete loss of teeth and a very large sternal keel. They are subdivided into Palaeognathae and Neognathae, which are differentiated primarily on palatal features. The paleognaths include two lineages, the flightless ratites (e.g., ostriches, emus, rheas, cassowaries) and the tinamous.

Ratites and tinamous comprise some 54 living species, so most of present-day avian diversity is represented by the neognaths. Twelve main lineages are recognized, but their interrelationships are largely unresolved. Among these may be mentioned the sister groups Anseriformes (ducks, geese, swans) and Galliformes (chickens, grouse, pheasants, turkeys), which together apparently form the outgroup to other neognaths. Procellariformes (albatrosses, petrels, and shearwaters), Pelicaniformes (pelicans, gannets, cormorants), Sphenisciformes (penguins), Gaviformes (loons), and Podicipediformes (grebes) are part of another lineage, as are Falconiformes (eagles, falcons, ospreys) and Strigiformes (owls). Passeriformes, the great group of songbirds, together with Piciformes (barbets, toucans, woodpeckers) and Coraciiformes (hoopoes, hornbills, kingfishers) represent yet another lineage. The pigeon is included with doves in the Columbiformes, which is part of the lineage including Charadriiformes (auks, curlews, snipes, terns, gulls, puffins), Ardeidae (bitterns, egrets, herons), and Gruiformes (cranes, coots, rails, bustards).

SECTION I: SKELETON

The structure of birds, most of which can fly, has been highly modified to meet the demands of flight. The skeleton has a number of such modifications, most obviously perhaps in the forelimbs, which are adapted to form a bony frame for the wings (Figure 9.3). Also, however, the skeleton has undergone changes to reduce weight, clearly an advantage in a flying animal, and mobility, which gives the wings a rigid support. Several

© 2010 Elsevier Inc.

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

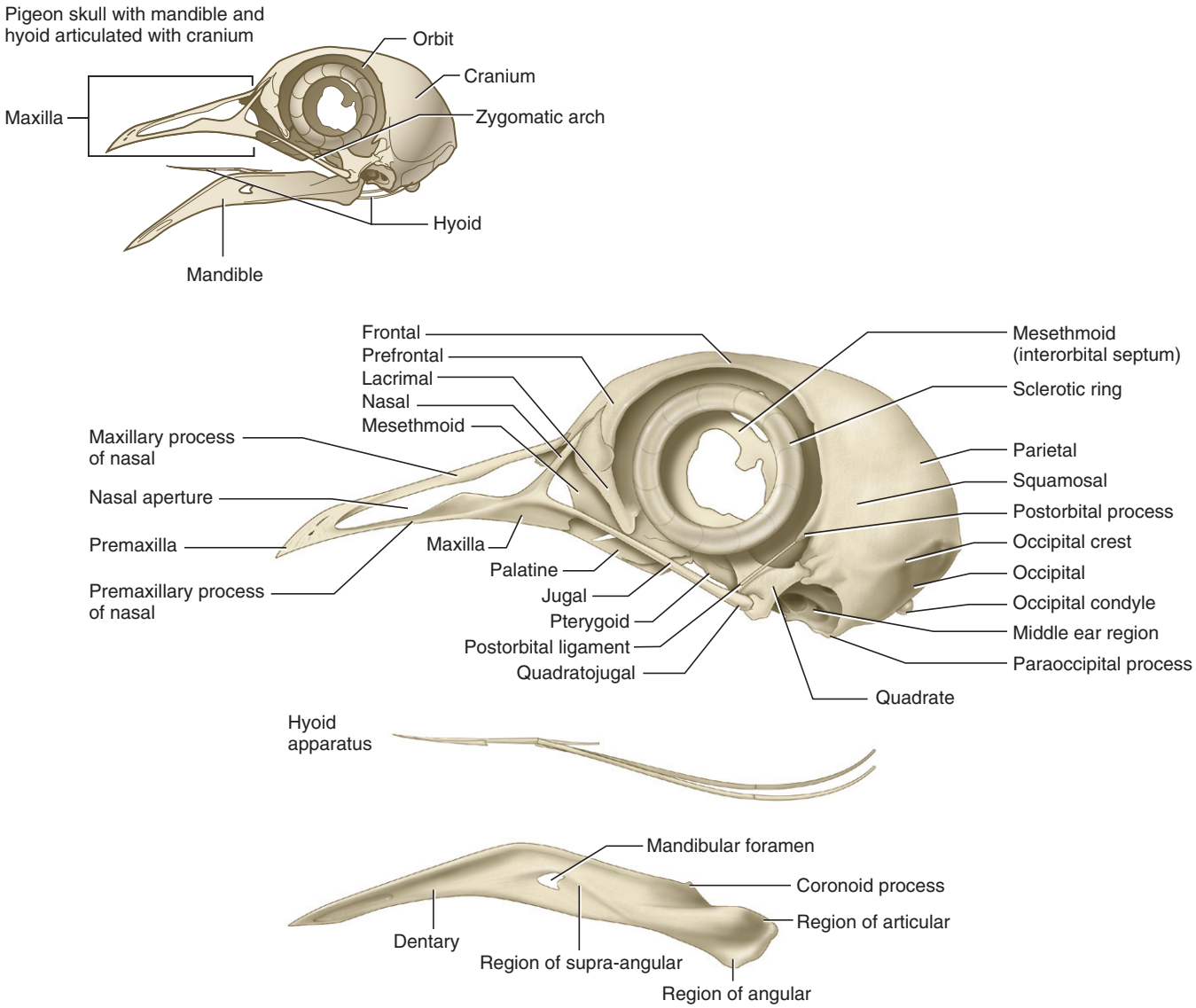


FIGURE 9.1 Skull of the pigeon in left lateral view. Inset figure shows elements in position, and large illustration indicates detail.

bones of many birds are pneumatic—hollow and containing extensions of the respiratory system's air sacs, described in more detail later (Figure 9.4).

Skull, Mandible, and Hyoid Apparatus

The bones of the skull (Figures 9.1 and 9.2) are extensively fused to provide strength while minimizing weight. As the sutures are often obliterated, it is difficult to distinguish many of the bones in an adult individual. Attempting to identify each bone is, at this level of study, impractical, and it is more useful to examine various regions of the skull.

Among the more notable features of the skull are the large **cranium**, enclosing the enlarged brain of birds, and **orbits**, which house the large eyes (Figures 9.1 and 9.3). The latter reflect the importance of sight in birds. The skull is a modified diapsid type (see Chapter 1): in modern birds the upper temporal arch has been lost, so the supratemporal and infratemporal fenestrae have merged to form a single opening. Further, the latter has merged with the orbit. The slender, rod-like **zygomatic arch** (jugal bar; see later) forms the ventral margin of the opening. This pattern is convergent on that of mammals, but has, of course, been independently acquired.

Examine the orbits. The often incomplete, bony septum between the orbits is formed by the **mesethmoid**. The **sclerotic ring** is a circle of small bones that support the eyeball. The **postorbital process** lies at the posteroventral margin of the orbit. The cranium, posterior to the orbits, is composed of paired **frontals** that cover most of the roof of the skull, **parietals**, smaller rectangular bones,

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

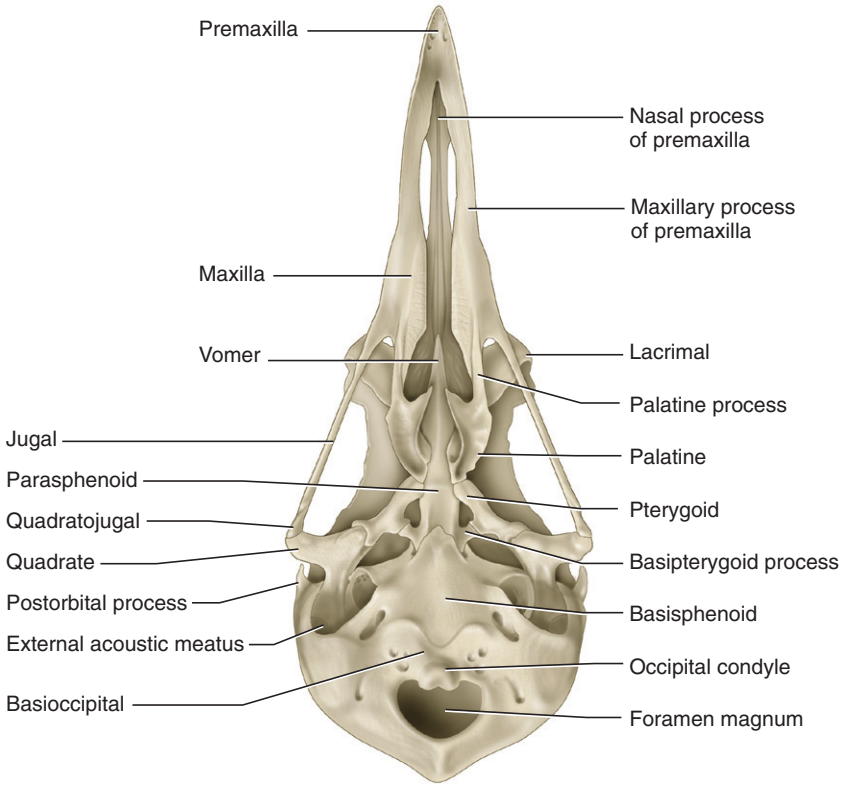


FIGURE 9.2 Skull of the pigeon in ventral view.

and **squamosals** on the lateral wall of the cranium, and, posteroventrally, the **occipital**, which is formed from several bones fused into a single unit. These cranial bones can usually be identified, although the sutures between them are often indistinguishable.

The **quadrate** lies toward the ventral part of the orbit and is mobile in birds. It has a prominent orbital process, as well as an otic process, which contacts the cranium. Just ventral to this contact is a large, oval depression, the **auditory meatus**, which is bounded posteroventrally by the **paroccipital process** and leads into the **middle ear**. The bony region, pierced by various foramina, visible within the meatus contains the inner ear. The quadrate has a ventral process that articulates with the **mandible** to form the jaw joint.

The **foramen magnum** is the large opening in the occipital. At its anterior edge is the single **occipital condyle**. Anterior to the occipital condyle lies the **basioccipital** (Figure 9.2), one of the components of the occipital. The **basisphenoid** lies anterior to the basioccipital and has a tapered anterior end. The **parasphenoid** lies anterior to this tapered end of the basisphenoid. The **basipterygoid processes**, one on either side, extend anterolaterally from the posterior end of the parasphenoid and contact the **pterygoid**, each of which articulates anteriorly with a **palatine**.

Anterior to the orbit, a complex of bones form the upper jaw and support the **bill** (Figures 9.1–9.3). This complex is the **maxilla**[1] (see, for example, Baumel and Witmer, 1993; Zusi, 1993), and it includes the **nasals**, **premaxillae**, and **maxillae** (in this sense, as single bony elements). From its dorsal contact with the frontal, each nasal sends out two slender processes, one contacting the maxilla, the other contacting the premaxilla. The latter is a large element forming most of the dorsal and ventral portions anterior part of the upper jaw. Near its dorsal articulation with the nasal, the premaxillae can, in life, bend or flex slightly dorsally in many birds (see later). The maxilla forms most of the posterior part of the upper jaw ventrally and contacts the palatine posteriorly. Finally, note again the zygomatic arch, a slender bridge between the maxilla anteriorly and the quadrate posteriorly. It is formed almost entirely by the jugal; a small posterior contribution is made by the **quadratojugal**.

The mandible or lower jaw is composed of several bones, but they are difficult to distinguish. The **dentary** forms nearly the anterior half of the mandible. Its posterior end coincides roughly with the **mandibular foramen**.

[1]The use of upper mandible (rather than maxilla) for the upper jaw and lower mandible for the lower jaw is common in bird guides, such as Sibley (2000) and Alderfer and Dunn (2007).

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

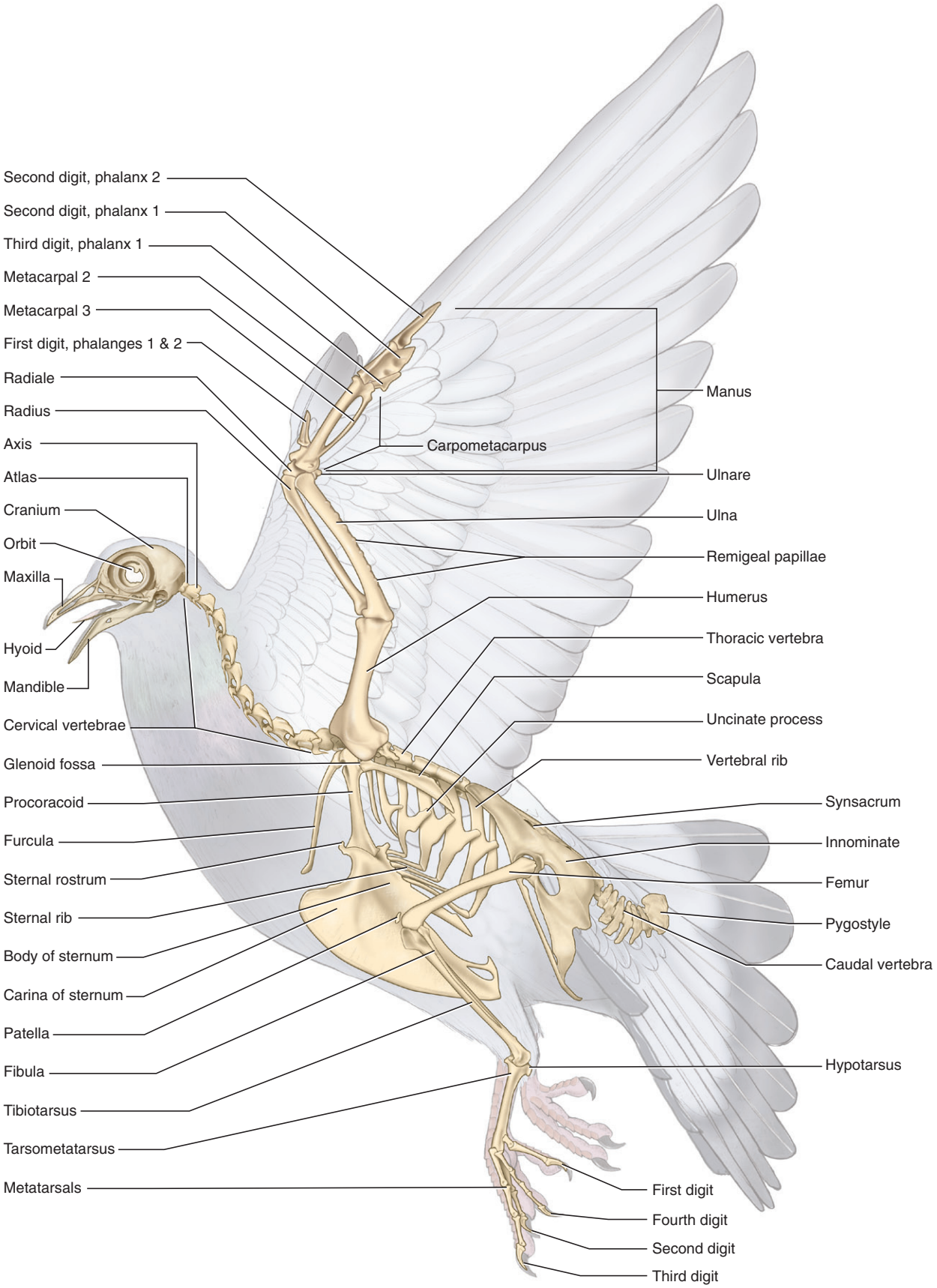


FIGURE 9.3 Skeleton of the pigeon in left lateral view, superimposed on body outline.

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

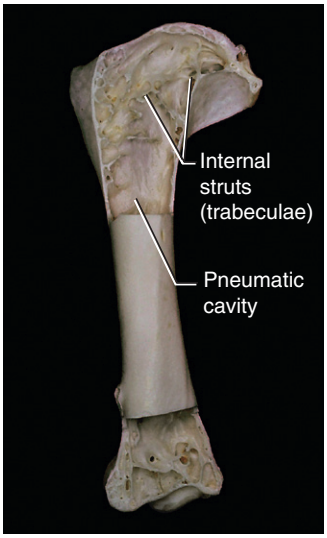


FIGURE 9.4 Humerus of pigeon with proximal and distal ends sectioned to reveal internal structure.

Most of the lateral surface posterior to the foramen is formed by the **supra-angular**. The **angular** is a smaller bone ventral to the supra-angular. The **articular** is a small element that articulates with the quadrate of the skull. Two other bones are present but are on the medial surface of the mandible.

The **hyoid apparatus** (Figure 9.1) is a slender, elongated, Y-shaped structure that supports the tongue. It is formed by various elements, but they are difficult to distinguish and are not considered separately.

The capacity of some skull elements (in addition to the lower jaw) of birds to move relative to each other was noted briefly earlier (and for other reptiles in Chapter 8). Such ability is termed **kinesis** and several types (such as prokinesis, amphikinesis, and rhynchokinesis; see Gussekloo et al., 2001, for further details) may occur in modern birds, allowing them to move the upper jaw or part of it. Indeed, as noted by Zusi (1993), the manipulation of objects by the bill involves the motion of both upper and lower jaws. The movement of the entire upper jaw is termed **prokinesis**. The mechanism allowing this movement includes the quadrates, pterygoids, palatines, zygomatic arches, as well as muscles and ligaments. Prokinesis is initiated by rotation of the quadrates, which imparts motion to the zygomatic arches, palatal complex (including the pterygoids and palatines), and the upper jaw. The palatal complex is divided functionally at the joint between the pterygoids and palatines, where these bones can slide against the parasphenoid (see Figure 9.2). The nasofrontal and palatomaxillary joints are also involved. These are thin, flexible joints that function as hinges about which rotation may occur. Elevation of the upper jaw is induced when muscles pull the quadrate anterodorsally. This results in anterior displacement of the zygomatic arch and pterygoid (and hence the palatine). In turn, these elements press against the upper jaw and rotate it about the nasofrontal (or prokinetic) joint. Posteroventral rotation of the quadrate reverses these motions to depress the upper jaw.

Postcranial Skeleton

Vertebrae

The vertebral column (Figure 9.3) normally includes 14 **cervical**, 5 **thoracic**, 6 **lumbar**, 2 **sacral**, and 15 **caudal vertebrae**. The column of the pigeon, as with most birds, is notable for its degree of fusion, with the exception of the cervical vertebrae. The atlas and axis are followed by 12 other cervical vertebrae, all fully mobile. The forelimbs of most birds are so specialized for flight that they are unavailable for other functions such as grooming or obtaining food. The long, mobile, S-shaped neck allows some of the functions usually performed by the forelimbs in other vertebrates. The last two cervicals bear small, floating **ribs** that do not attach to the **sternum** (see later). Nearly all the other cervical vertebrae also bear ribs, but they are fused to the vertebrae.

There are five thoracic vertebrae, the first four of which are fused together. The thoracics each bear a pair of ribs. The fifth thoracic is fused to the first of the six lumbar vertebrae, which are all fused together and incorporated into the **synsacrum** (see later), as are the two sacral vertebrae. Of the 15 caudal vertebrae, the first five are incorporated into the synsacrum, the following six are free and mobile, and the last four are fused together to form the **pygostyle** (Figures 9.5 and 9.6). The extensive fusion of sections of the vertebral column posterior to the neck renders the trunk rather rigid. This inflexibility may be a feature that helps to reduce weight, as it decreases the need for extensive musculature to maintain a streamlined and rigid posture during flight.

Ribs

There are several types of ribs (Figure 9.3). As noted earlier, independent ribs are associated with the last two cervical vertebrae. These ribs do not reach the sternum and are often referred to as floating ribs (or bicipital cervical ribs). The five ribs associated with the thoracic vertebrae are each formed from a robust, dorsal element, a **vertebral rib**, and a more slender, ventral element, a **sternal rib**. The vertebral rib, as its name implies, extends from the vertebra and articulates with the sternal rib, which in turn articulates with the sternum. In some specimens the last vertebral rib may articulate with the sternal rib of the preceding rib. Note the prominent, posteriorly projecting **uncinate processes**, which overlap the subsequent vertebral rib and help brace the ribs.

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

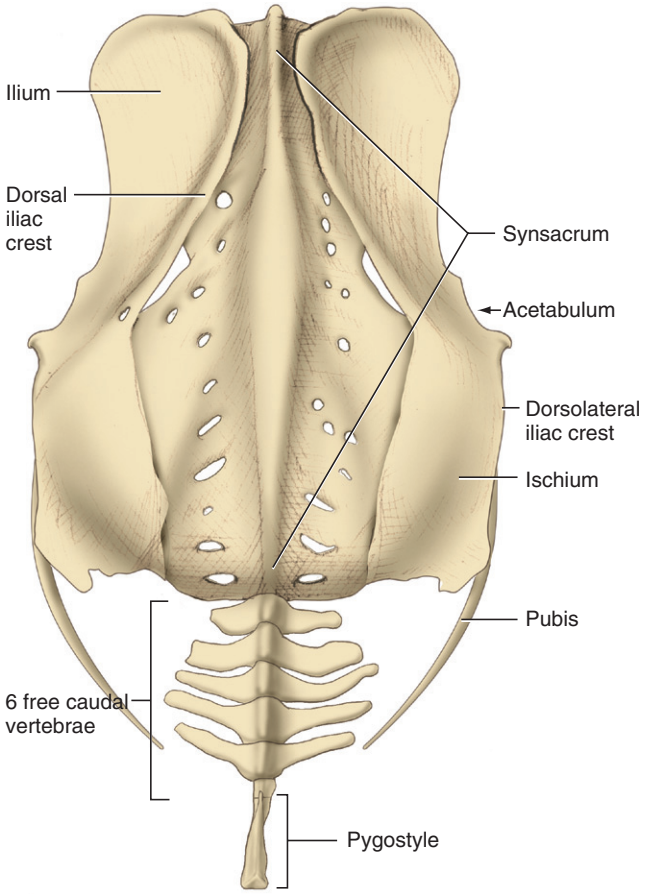


FIGURE 9.5 Posterior part of vertebral column and pelvis of the pigeon in dorsal view.

Sternum

The **body** of the **sternum** (Figures 9.3 and 9.12) is a large, curved plate of bone. Its most prominent feature is an extremely large vertical plate, the **carina** or keel. The body articulates anteriorly with the **procoracoids** (see later) and more posteriorly with the sternal ribs. The large **caudolateral process** projects posteriorly from behind the articular surfaces for the sternal ribs and helps form the **sternal notch**.

Pectoral Girdle and Forelimb

The pectoral girdle of birds is modified to produce a rigid and stable brace for the requirements of flight. These modifications are so pronounced that they usually are retained even in birds that are secondarily flightless. For example, the **scapula**, **procoracoid**, and **furcula** are tightly bound near the shoulder joint; the procoracoid is a stout, elongated element bracing the forelimbs against the sternum.

The scapula (Figures 9.3 and 9.12) is an elongated, blade-like bone that narrows anteriorly. Its anterior end forms part of the **glenoid fossa**, which articulates with the **humerus**.

The procoracoid (Figures 9.3, 9.10, and 9.12) is a stout bone. Its posterodorsal surface articulates with the scapula and completes the glenoid fossa. Dorsomedially, it articulates with the furcula (see later). The procoracoid widens ventrally and articulates with the body of the sternum, thus acting as a strut between the sternum and shoulder joint. The **triosseal canal** is a bony passage formed in many birds by three bones (hence its name)—usually the scapula, procoracoid, and furcula—that serves as the passage for the tendon of the **supracoracoideus muscle** (see later). In the pigeon, however, the

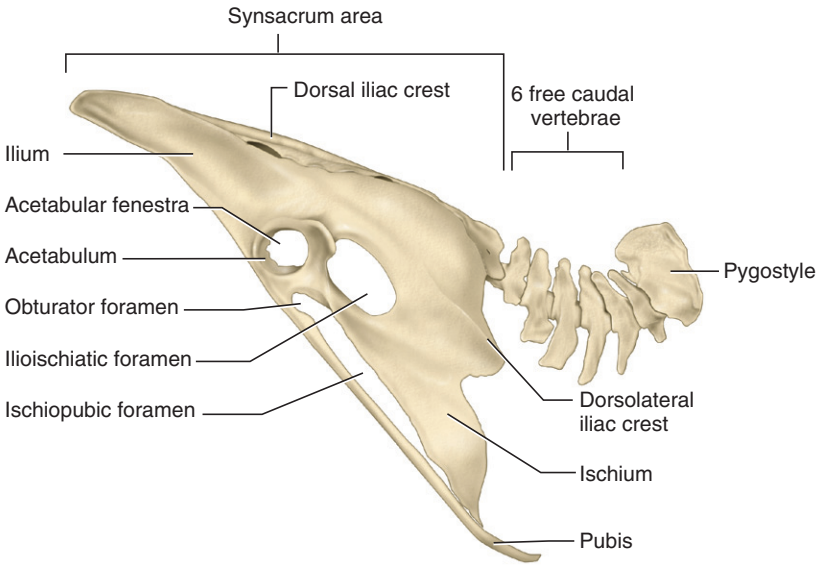


FIGURE 9.6 Posterior part of vertebral column and pelvis of the pigeon in left lateral view.

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

canal is formed only by the procoracoid. It is an oval opening located near the dorsal end of the procoracoid, just ventral to its articulation with the furcula.

The furcula (or wishbone) is a structure formed by the ventral fusion of the right and left clavicles and the median interclavicle. It is present in the pigeon, but in some species the clavicles remain unfused. In many mounted skeletons, a ligament extends between the ventral end of the furcula and the anterior end of the carina of the sternum.

The forelimb (Figure 9.3) consists of a stout proximal humerus, followed by the longer **radius** and **ulna**. The radius is the straighter, more slender bone. The ulna is bowed and has a short **olecranon process** proximally. Its posterior margin has several **remigeal papillae**, knob-like markings for the attachment of flight feathers. The manus consists, as usual, of carpals, metacarpals, and phalanges, but these have been highly modified in birds. Two **carpals** remain unfused: the **ulnare**, a slender bone that articulates with the ulna, and the **radiale**, which articulates with the radius. These carpals are followed by the **carpometacarpus**, an elongated element composed of several carpals, proximally, and three metacarpals fused together.

There has been considerable debate over the homology of the digits of birds, with some researchers considering them homologous with digits 1, 2, and 3 (as is typical of theropod dinosaurs) and other researchers considering them homologous with digits 2, 3, and 4. Recent morphological and developmental analyses suggest that the digits of birds represent digits 1, 2, and 3. The two elongated structures of the manus are **metacarpal II** (robust and nearly straight) and **metacarpal III** (slender and bowed). Although it is difficult to discern, **metacarpal I** (the alular metacarpal) is fused into the proximal end of the carpometacarpus, along with the carpals. The phalanges are also highly modified. Those of the alular digit are represented by the short, triangular fused element, including **phalanges 1** and **2**, at the proximal end of the carpometacarpus. **Phalanges 1** and **2** of digit 2 extend distally from metacarpal II. A small triangular element at the articulation between the carpometacarpus and phalanx 1 of digit 2 is **phalanx 1** of digit 3.

Pelvic Girdle and Hind Limb

The pelvis (Figures 9.3, 9.5, and 9.6) includes left and right **innominate** bones, each of which is formed by an **ilium**, **ischium**, and **pubis**. The ilium is the largest element, forming the dorsal half of the pelvis. It has two distinct regions: an anterior concave region and a posterior convex region (in dorsal view). The posterior part of the **dorsal iliac crest** separates these regions, just dorsal to the **acetabulum**, the depression that receives the head of the femur (see later). The crest continues posteriorly as the **dorsolateral iliac crest**. The ischium lies ventral to the posterior part of the ilium. The separation between these bones is marked roughly by the **ilioischiadic foramen**. The acetabulum is directly anterior to it. Note that the floor of the acetabulum has an opening, the **acetabular fenestra**. The curved pubis is a very slender and elongated bone extending posteroventrally from the acetabulum, along the ventral margin of the ischium. Two other openings may be noted. The **obturator foramen** lies anteriorly between the pubis and ischium; the long and narrow **ischiopubic fenestra** lies more posteriorly.

A notable feature of birds is that the pelvis is solidly and extensively fused to the synsacrum, the posterior series of fused and expanded vertebrae (see earlier). The whole unit, pelvis and synsacrum together, form a rigid platform for muscles of the hind limb and tail, and is part of the system that helps a bird to maintain a stable, streamlined posture during flight.

The hind limb (Figure 9.3) includes several bones. The **femur** is the proximal bone. It is followed by the longer **tibiotarsus**, which is formed by fusion of the tibia and several tarsals. Articulating anteriorly between the femur and tibiotarsus is the small **patella**. A slender, splint-like **fibula** lies along the lateral surface of the tibiotarsus. Several tarsals and the second, third, and fourth **metatarsals** fuse together to form the **tarsometatarsus**, which bears a protuberance, the **hypotarsus**, on its posteroproximal surface. **Metatarsal I** articulates with the posterodistal surface of the tarsometatarsus. There are four digits in the **pes**, each ending in a claw. The first, or **hallux**, has two **phalanges** and is oriented posteriorly; the three remaining digits point anteriorly. This arrangement, the most common among birds, represents the anisodactyl condition. Other arrangements include the zygodactyl (digits 1 and 4 are reversed) heterodactyl (digits 1 and 2 are reversed), syndactyl (digits 2 and 3 are fused together for much of their length), and pamprodactyl (digits 1 and 4 pivot between facing anteriorly and posteriorly) conditions. Digit 2 has three phalanges, digit 3 has four phalanges, and digit 4 has five phalanges.

Key Terms: Skeleton

acetabular fenestra
acetabulum
angular
articular
auditory meatus
basioccipital
basipterygoid processes
basisphenoid
body of **sternum**
bill (beak)

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

carina (keel)
carpals
carpometacarpus
caudal vertebrae
caudolateral process
cervical vertebrae
dentary
dorsal iliac crest
dorsolateral iliac crest
femur
fibula
foramen magnum
frontals
furcula
glenoid fossa
hallux
humerus
hyoid apparatus
hypotarsus
ilioischiadic foramen
ilium
innominate
ischiopubic fenestra
ischium
jugal
kinesis
lumbar vertebrae
mandible
mandibular foramen
maxilla (as a complex forming the upper jaw)
maxillae (as single bony elements)
mesethmoid
metacarpal I (alular metacarpal)
metacarpal II (major metacarpal)
metacarpal III (minor metacarpal)
metatarsal I
metatarsals
middle ear
nasals
obturator foramen
occipital
occipital condyle
olecranon process
orbits
palatine
parasphenoid
parietals
paroccipital
patella
pes
phalanges
postorbital process
premaxilla
procoracoid
prokinesis
pterygoid
pubis
pygostyle
quadrate
quadratojugal
radiale
radius
remigeal papillae
ribs
sacral vertebrae
scapula
sclerotic ring
squamosals
sternal notch
sternal rib
sternum
supra-angular
supracoracoideus muscle
synsacrum
tarsals
tarsometatarsus
thoracic vertebrae
tibiotarsus
triosseal canal
ulna
ulnare
uncinate process
vertebral rib
zygomatic arch

SECTION II: EXTERNAL ANATOMY

The **bill** (or beak) is the most prominent feature of the head (Figure 9.7). It includes the maxilla and mandible, which are covered by a horny sheath or **rhamphotheca**. Open the mouth and note the absence of teeth. The **nares** (sing., **naris**) pierce the maxilla. Immediately posterior to them is the **operculum**, a soft swelling of the integument. The eyes are large, as would be expected in a vertebrate that depends largely on vision. The **external acoustic meatus**, leading to the tympanic membrane of the ear, lies posterior and just ventral to the level of the eye, but is concealed by **feathers**.

The most obvious feature of birds is the presence of feathers, which in most birds serve primarily for flight and temperature control and will be examined in more detail later. The **neck** appears shorter than it really is (see Section I), but this is due to the covering of feathers. The **forelimbs** are strongly modified to form wings. Spread the wings and note the prominence of the feathers. In contrast, the distal part of the hind limb, including the pes, is covered by horny **scales**.

The dorsal region is the **dorsum**, whereas the ventral region includes the expanded **breast** anteriorly and the

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

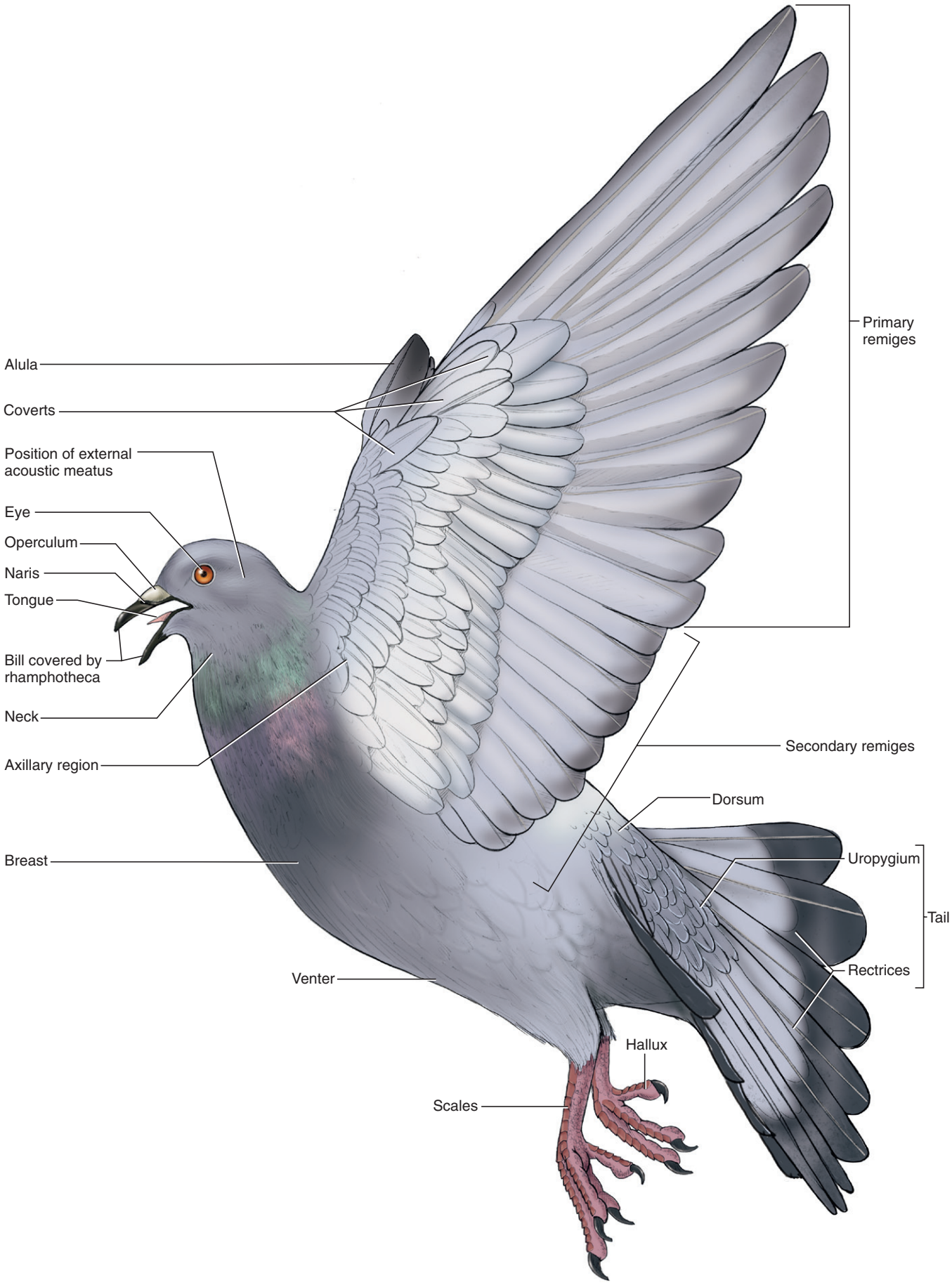


FIGURE 9.7 External features of the pigeon, with forearm (wing) abducted, in left lateral view.

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

venter or belly posterior to it. At the posterior end of the body, the **tail** includes the short, fleshy **uropygium**, as well as the feathers extending from it. Spread the feathers on the dorsal surface of the uropygium to reveal the **uropygial gland** (Figure 9.11). The gland produces an oily secretion used in preening that protects the feathers. Spread the ventral tail feathers and note the slit-like opening of the **cloaca** (Figure 9.14).

There are several types of feathers in birds, but only the larger **contour feathers** are described here. Contour feathers are those that are typically thought of as feathers, such as the flight feathers on the wings and tail, as well as smaller feathers that cover much of the body. Examine a contour feather (Figure 9.8) from the wing of the pigeon. Note the central **shaft** or quill. The **calamus** is the hollow, basal part of the quill, and the **rhachis** is the part bearing **barbs**, the tiny, parallel structures that branch from the rhachis. Numerous **barbules** branch out from each barb, and each barbule bears tiny **hooklets** that interlock with hooklets of adjacent barbules to help maintain the shape and structure of a feather. Magnification is required to observe barbules and hooklets. The barbs are arranged in two **vanes**. The vanes are usually symmetric around the rhachis in most contour feathers covering the body, but are asymmetric in most of the flight and, to a lesser degree, tail feathers. In flight feathers, the vane facing the leading edge of the wing is narrower than at the trailing edge.

Feathers are designated by their position on the body, and there are numerous different types. Here, only the more typical ones important in flight on the tail (Figure 9.7) and wing (Figure 9.9) are distinguished. The **remiges** (sing., **remex**) are the large feathers of the wing. On the trailing edge of the wing, the **primary remiges** (or, simply, primaries) are the feathers attaching to the distal end of the wing, the carpometacarpus and phalanges, and are numbered from 1 to 9 in proximal to distal order. Those attaching to the ulna are the **secondary remiges**, of which there are usually 15, numbered in distal to proximal order. The **tertiary remiges**, usually four in number, lie proximal to the most proximal secondaries. The **coverts**, which vary in size, cover nearly all the

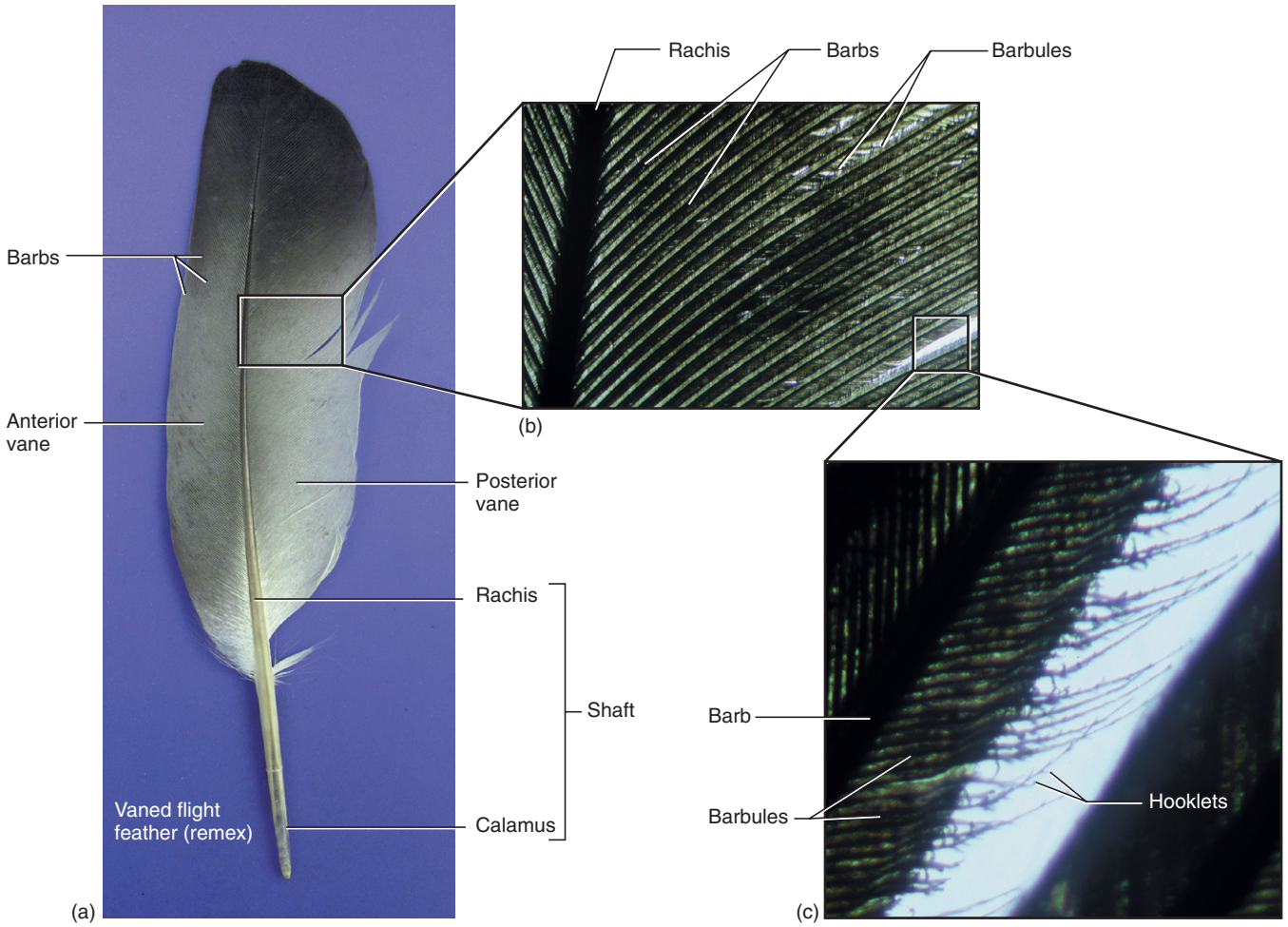


FIGURE 9.8 (a, b, c) Feather of the pigeon, with blowups showing successively finer detail of structures.

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

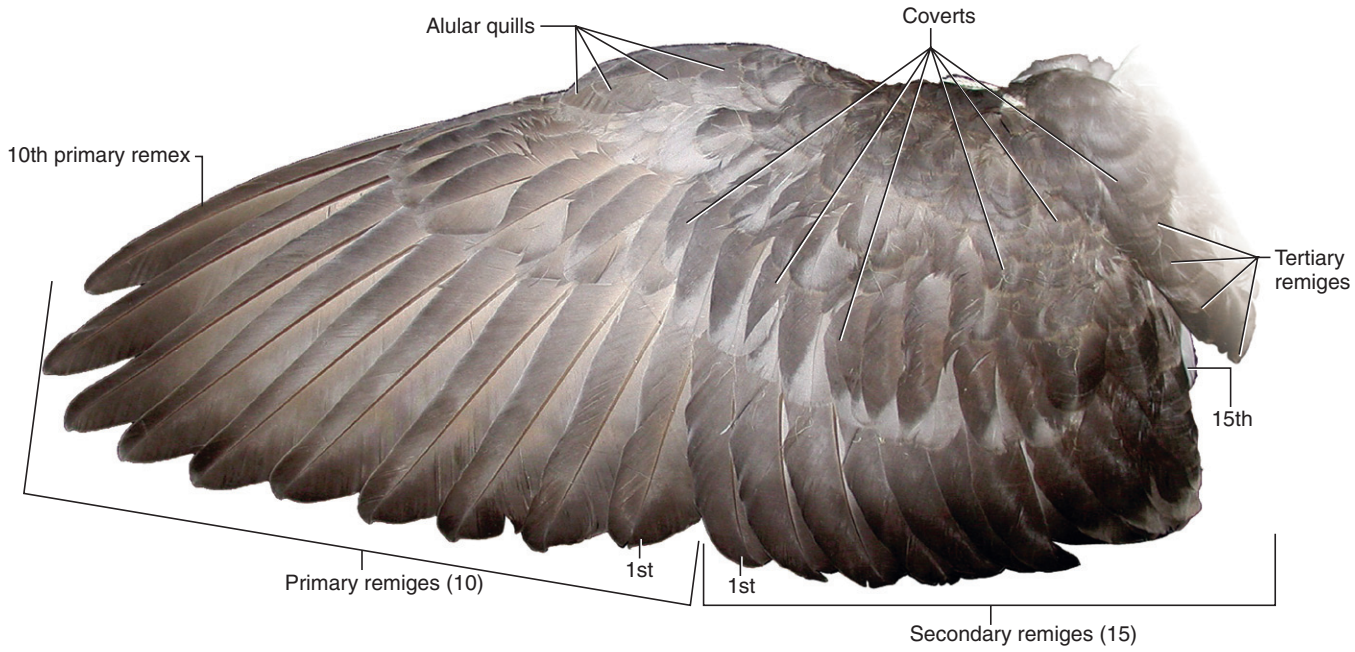


FIGURE 9.9 Extended left wing of the pigeon, in dorsal view, showing arrangement of feathers.

remainder of the wing. The exception is a small patch of (usually four) **alular quills**, which arise from the alular phalanx and together form the **alula** or bastard wing. Though relatively small, the alula is an extremely important flight structure that helps avoid stalling during low velocity flight. The feathers of the tail are termed **rectrices** (sing., **rectix**).

Key Terms: External Anatomy

alula (bastard wing)
alular quills
barbs
barbules
bill (beak)
breast
calamus
cloaca
contour feathers
coverts
dorsum
external acoustic meatus
eyes
feathers
forelimbs
hooklets
nares (sing., **naris**)
neck
operculum
primary remiges
rectrices (sing., **rectix**)
remiges (sing., **remex**)
rhacis
rhamphotheca
scales
secondary remiges
shaft
tail
tertiary remiges
uropygial gland
uropygium
vanes
venter

SECTION III: MUSCULATURE

As the flight and wing musculature are among the more interesting features of the pigeon, they are the focus of this dissection. To study the musculature, the skin must be removed. Begin by brushing aside the feathers from the midventral surface of the thoracic region. Note that there are no feathers attached at the midline. Make a longitudinal incision through the skin, but work carefully, as it is quite thin. Extend the incision from the cloaca anteriorly to the anterior part of the breast, and then spread the skin, separating it from the underlying tissue using a blunt probe. In most places the skin will come off readily, but in some spots muscular slips attach to the skin, and must be cut through. You will reveal the **pectoralis** (Figure 9.10), the largest and most superficial of the flight muscles. At the anterior part of

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

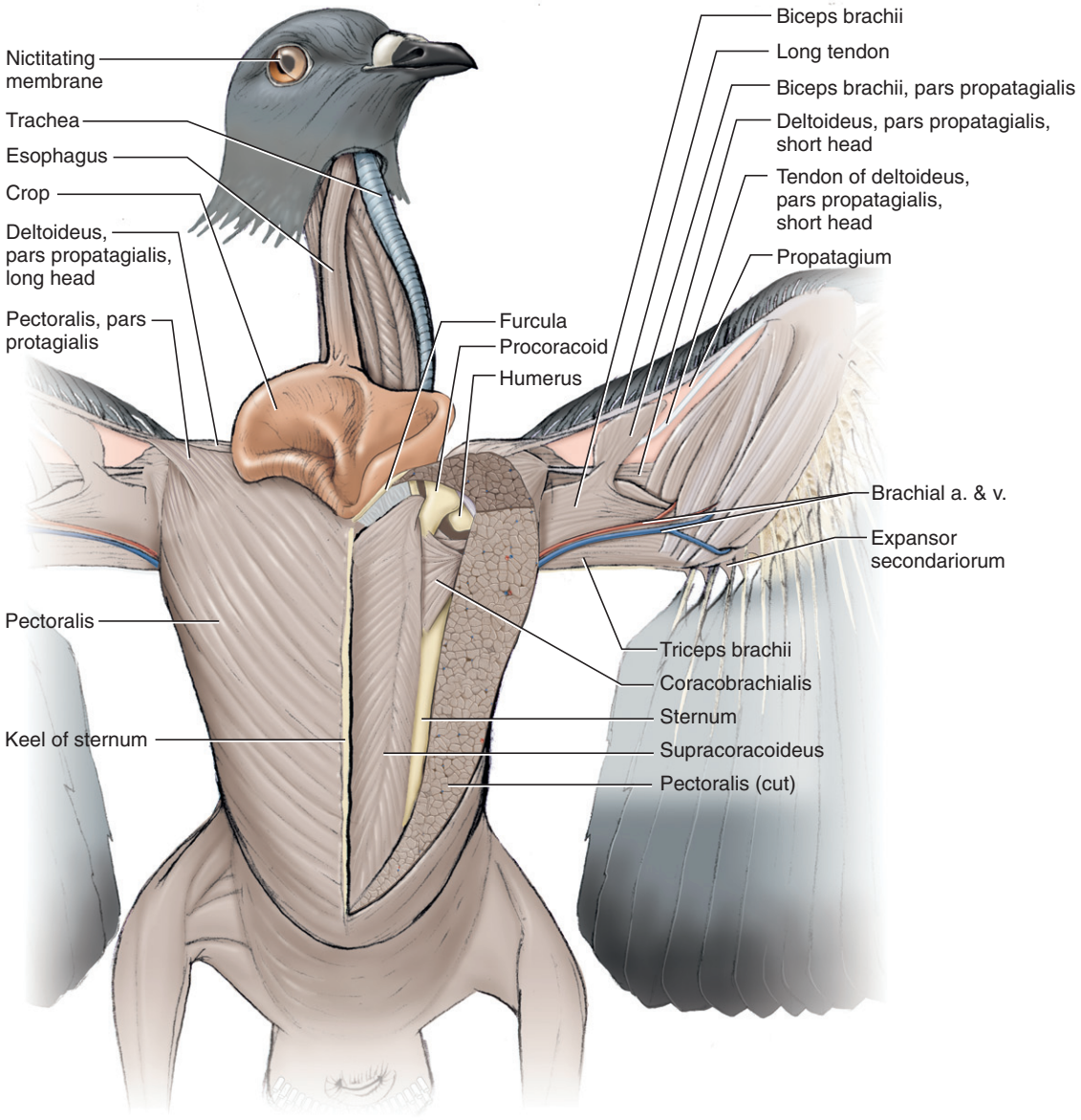


FIGURE 9.10 Pectoral and wing musculature of the pigeon in ventral view. Left-side pectoralis muscle cut away to show underlying structures.

the pectoralis lies the thin-walled **crop**, a sac-like specialization of the **esophagus** (see later) that is used to store food. Carefully continue the incision anteriorly, being careful not to injure the crop, to just below the bill. Skin the neck, but do not damage vessels.

Several folds of skin form the wing surface. The large fold between the shoulder and carpus, forming the leading edge of the wing, is the **propatagium**. Several delicate muscles and tendons lie within it. A large **postpatagium** projects posteriorly from the ulna. With the wing outstretched, gently push back on the leading edge of the propatagium. The tension you feel is due to the **long tendon** (see later). Begin skinning the wing ventrally, near the central part of the brachium, and work your way anteriorly. As you approach the leading edge, be watchful of the tendon, a thin, whitish strand, and uncover it. Proceed to skin the rest of the wing up to the carpus. Then continue skinning the dorsal surface of the wing and body.

The dominance of the pectoralis can now be appreciated. It arises from the sternum and, being the main depressor of the wing, inserts mainly on the humerus. The shoulder is covered mainly by several parts of the **deltoideus** muscle (Figures 9.9 and 9.11). Anteriorly, the deltoid is represented by the pars propatagialis, a single hypertrophied belly consisting of **long** and **short heads**.

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

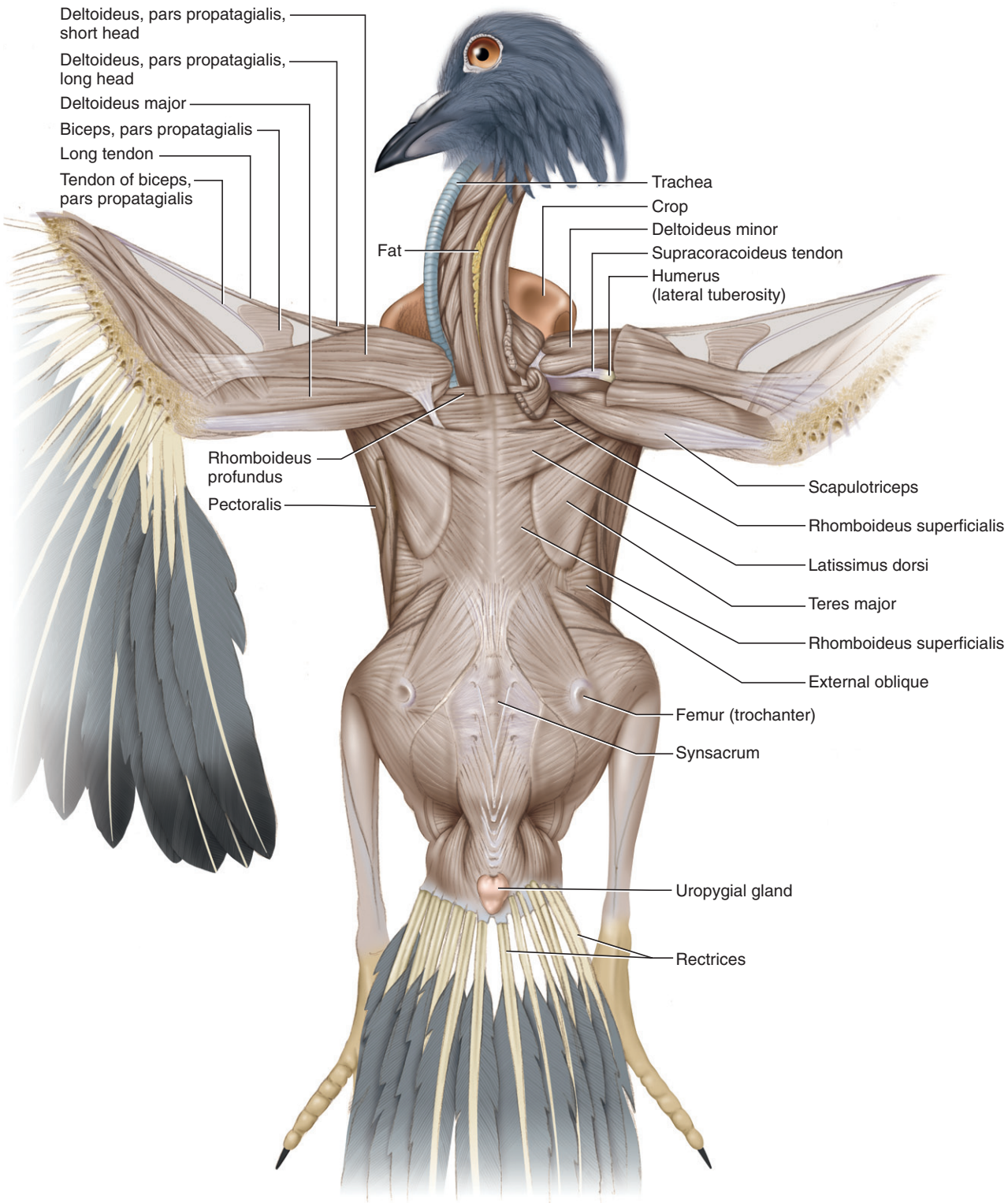


FIGURE 9.11 Musculature of the pigeon in dorsal view.

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

The long head is the smaller, anterior, sheet-like portion. The more posterior short head is thicker. The long head is just anterior to a small, triangular slip of the pectoralis that inserts on the common belly of the pars propatagialis. The tendon of the long head, the long tendon noted earlier, extends laterally toward the carpus and divides into two separate tendons, but these may be difficult to discern. Distally, the short head forms a tendinous sheet that mainly spreads to cover the muscles on the antebrachium. The **biceps brachii** muscle covers the anteromedial part of the brachium. The pars propatagialis is a slip of the biceps and arises from its anterior edge. Anteriorly, the pars propatagialis fuses with the tendon of the long tendon. Its distal end gives rise to a tendon that angles distally to fuse with one of the divisions of the long tendon. The wing muscles described in this paragraph, except the biceps brachii, serve mainly to alter tension of the wing surface. They are commonly referred to as tensors and play a significant role in flight aerodynamics.

Several other wing muscles may be noted. Just posterior to the short head of the pars propatagialis of the deltoideus is the **deltoideus major**, which pulls the humerus medially and posteriorly. The triceps brachii has three portions, but only two of them, the **scapulotriceps** and **humerotriceps**, can be readily identified. The third, the coracotriceps, is a small muscle arising from the tendon of the **expansor secundariorum**. This tendon extends from the axilla, or armpit, along the posterior edge of the triceps brachii. Carefully dissect the margin of the postpatagium to find the small and delicate muscular portion, which fans onto the quills of the secondary remiges. The expansor secundariorum acts to spread the secondaries.

The main elevator of the wing is the **supracoracoideus**, which lies deep to and is covered entirely by the pectoralis. To expose it, make a cut through the pectoralis near its center and at right angles to the fiber direction, but do so only a few millimeters at a time. Spread the incision as you cut. This will help avoid damaging the underlying supracoracoideus. Once you have cut through the pectoralis and identified the supracoracoideus, cut out a large portion of the pectoralis to expose the supracoracoideus (Figures 9.9 and 9.12). Its fibers converge toward the middle of the muscle and extend to a stout anterolaterally directed tendon that passes through the triosseal canal onto the dorsal surface of the humerus. This acts as a pulley system, through which the wing is elevated mainly by a muscle, the supracoracoideus, that lies ventral to the wing. This arrangement enhances stability for flight by maintaining the center of gravity below the wings. To see the tendon of the supracoracoideus (Figures 9.9–9.12), cut the deltoideus major and the pars propatagialis of the deltoideus near their center and reflect them. You will uncover the **deltoideus minor**, which contributes to elevation of the wing. The tendon passes just posterior to the posterior margin of the deltoideus minor.

Other musculature that may be noted without much further effort includes the **rhomboideus superficialis** and **rhomboideus profundus**, which extend between vertebral spines and the scapula. The superficialis covers all but the anterior most portion of the profundus. The **latissimus dorsi** is a relatively small muscle extending laterally from the middorsal line. These muscles form part of the complex of muscles that help support and stabilize the shoulder. Although there are several other back muscles, an interesting condition in birds is the relative lack or smaller size of the back musculature as compared, for example, with that of the cat. Strength and stability of the trunk is not compromised, however, as the skeletal elements are firmly fused together (see earlier), and this in turn allows the musculature to be reduced to minimize weight.

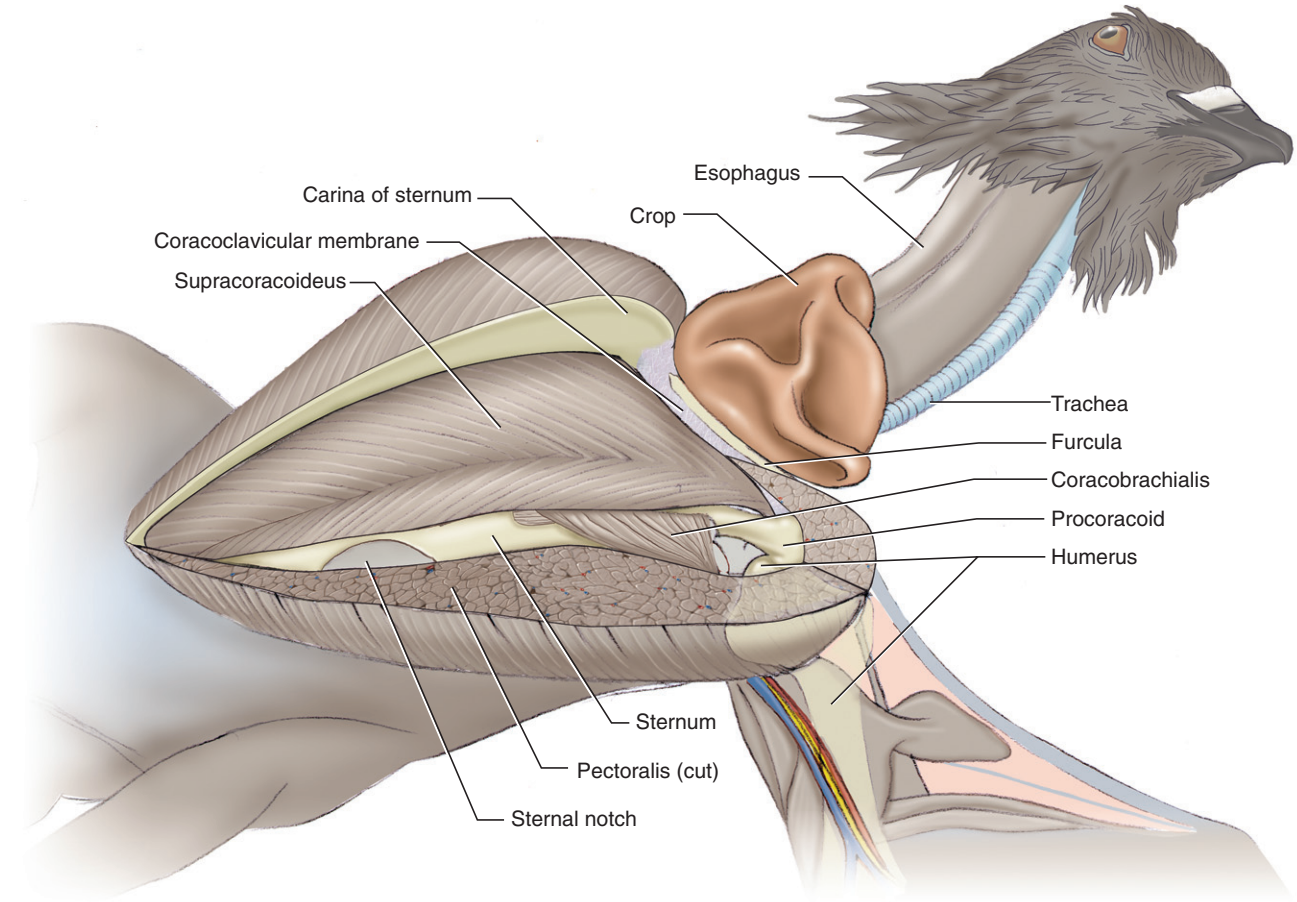
Key Terms: Musculature

biceps brachii
crop
deltoideus
deltoideus major
deltoideus minor
esophagus
expansor secundariorum
humerotriceps
latissimus dorsi
long tendon of **long head, pars propatagialis** of **deltoideus**
pars propatagialis of **biceps brachii** (biceps slip, biceps propatagialis, patagial accessory)
pars propatagialis, long and **short heads** of **deltoideus**
pectoralis
postpatagium
propatagium
rhomboideus profundus
rhomboideus superficialis
scapulotriceps
supracoracoideus

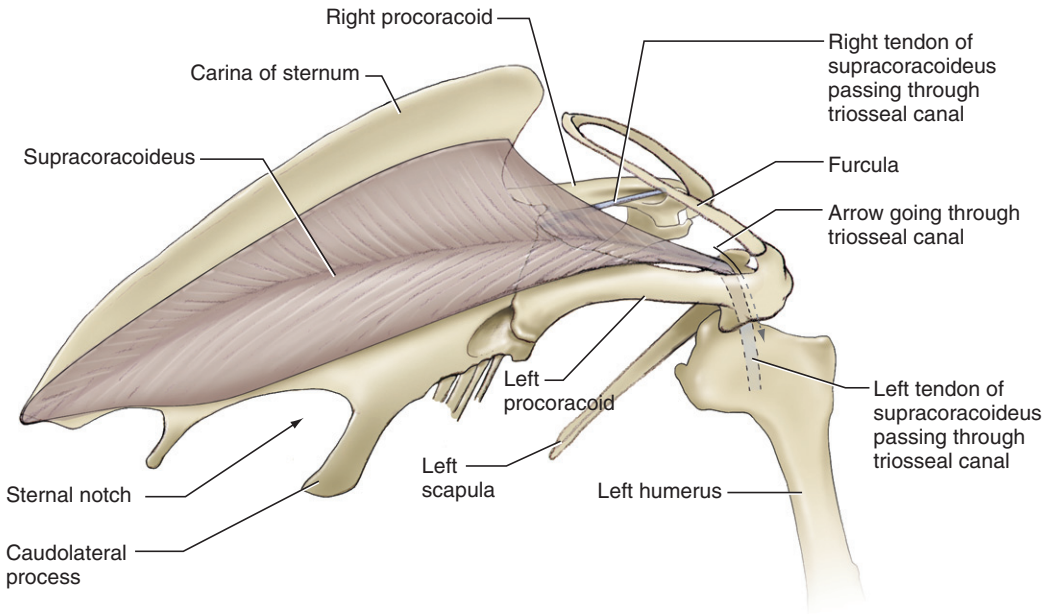
SECTION IV: BODY CAVITY, VISCERA, AND VESSELS

The sternum and pectoral musculature must be removed to examine the structures within the body cavity, including viscera and blood vessels. Unfortunately, removal of the sternum and muscles as described next often obliterates much of the extensive respiratory system, the air sacs that form auxiliary air pathways in the avian

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com



(a)

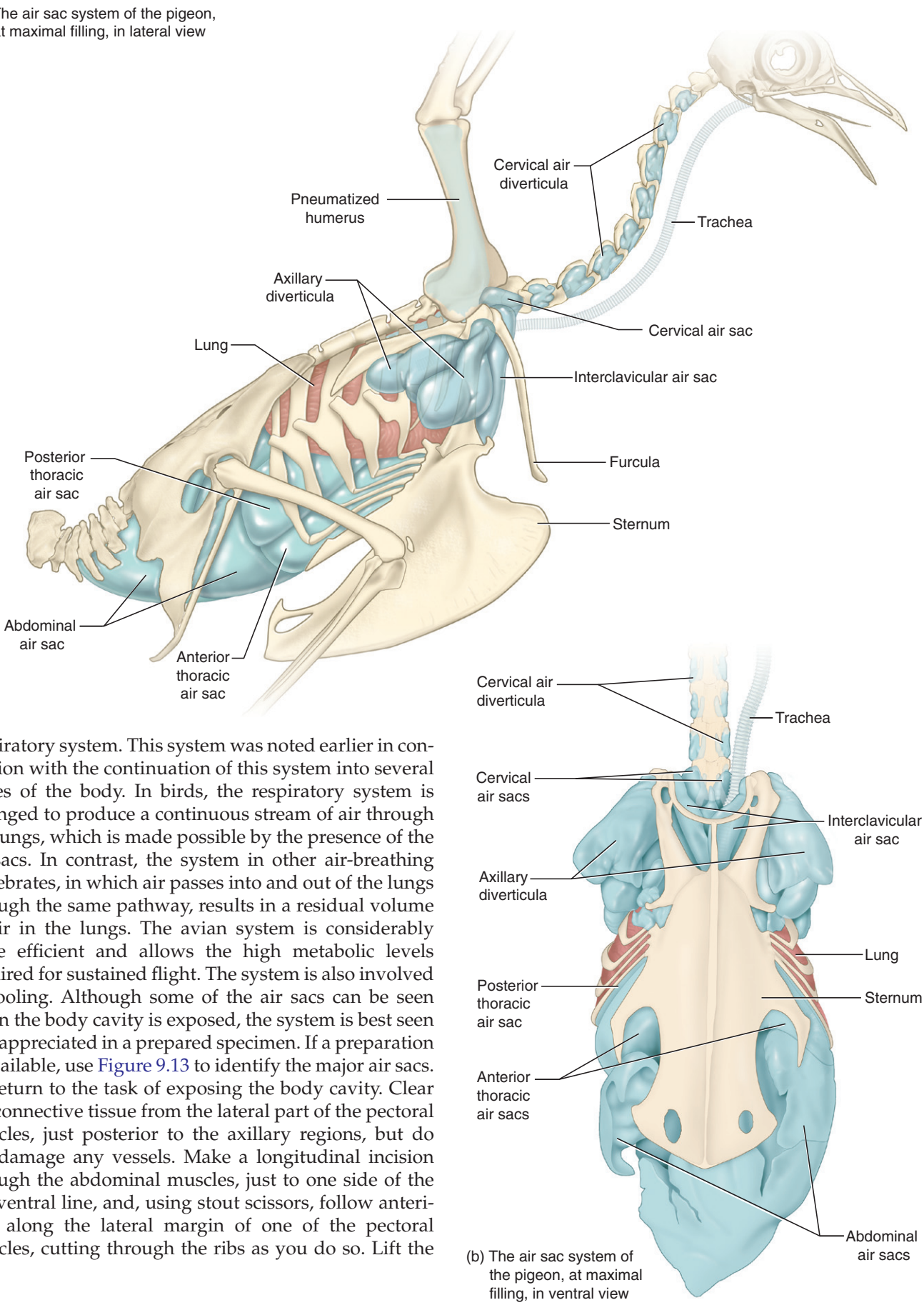


(b)

FIGURE 9.12 Pectoral musculature of the pigeon in left ventrolateral view. (a) Left-side pectoralis muscle cut away. (b) Sternum and appendicular skeleton isolated to show supracoracoideus muscle and the course of its tendon through the triosseal canal.

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

FIGURE 9.13 The airs sac system of the pigeon in (a) left lateral and (b) ventral views.



respiratory system. This system was noted earlier in connection with the continuation of this system into several bones of the body. In birds, the respiratory system is arranged to produce a continuous stream of air through the lungs, which is made possible by the presence of the air sacs. In contrast, the system in other air-breathing vertebrates, in which air passes into and out of the lungs through the same pathway, results in a residual volume of air in the lungs. The avian system is considerably more efficient and allows the high metabolic levels required for sustained flight. The system is also involved in cooling. Although some of the air sacs can be seen when the body cavity is exposed, the system is best seen and appreciated in a prepared specimen. If a preparation is available, use Figure 9.13 to identify the major air sacs.

Return to the task of exposing the body cavity. Clear the connective tissue from the lateral part of the pectoral muscles, just posterior to the axillary regions, but do not damage any vessels. Make a longitudinal incision through the abdominal muscles, just to one side of the midventral line, and, using stout scissors, follow anteriorly along the lateral margin of one of the pectoral muscles, cutting through the ribs as you do so. Lift the

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

sternum as much as possible and clear the connecting tissue until you see the vessels that pass to the sternum, so that you will avoid damaging them. Using a sharp scalpel, cut through the anterior part of the pectorals, as shown in Figure 9.14. You will also need to cut (with stout scissors) through the furcula and coracoid. Repeat this procedure for the pectorals on the other side. You will then be able to lift the sternum with the pectoral musculature attached to it. Remove the sternum by clearing the connective tissue between it and the deeper structures. Cut through the vessels, the **pectoral arteries** and **veins** (Figure 9.14), extending to the breast as close to the sternum as possible.

Note the **heart** (Figure 9.14) lying anteriorly on the midline. Its four main chambers include the **left** and **right atria** (sing., **atrium**) and **left** and **right ventricles** (a very small **sinus venosus** is also present but will not be identified). The **lungs**, right and left, are tucked laterally to the heart. Probe to find them, and partially remove the serosa covering them to see their spongy texture. Posterior to the heart are the lobes of the **liver**; note that the right lobe is considerably larger than the left. Tucked deep to these lobes, on the left side, is the **gizzard**, the very muscular, distal portion of the complex, two-part **stomach** of birds. The glandular **proventriculus**, the anterior part of the stomach (though it is actually a modification of the distal part of the esophagus), continues posteriorly from the **esophagus** and lies deep to the heart, as does the posterior part of the **trachea**. These structures will be seen shortly (Figure 9.15). The highly coiled **small intestine** is relatively long, in contrast to the short and straight **large intestine** (Figures 9.16 and 9.17). The division between these structures is marked by the presence of a pair of small diverticula, the **colic ceca**.

Return to the heart (Figure 9.14). The **ascending aorta** arches anteriorly from the left ventricle and gives off the paired **brachiocephalic arteries** before curving to the right and posteriorly as the **aortic arch**. Each brachiocephalic soon divides into a smaller **common carotid artery** and larger **subclavian artery**. The common carotid is a short artery that extends anteriorly to the base of the neck, where it divides into several arteries. The most apparent branch is the **internal carotid artery**, which extends anteriorly along the midventral surface of the neck, close beside the other side's internal carotid. These vessels converge and continue together, deep to the musculature, toward the base of the neck. Each gives off several branches, including the external carotid artery. The other branch of the common carotid gives rise to several, mainly anastomosing, vessels that ascend the neck dorsal to the internal carotid, but it is not necessary to attempt to trace these. The subclavian artery extends laterally for a short distance (after the origin of the common carotid) before subdividing into the **axillary artery** and pectoral artery, already noted earlier. The latter is a large vessel that quickly branches into several smaller arteries to supply the extensive pectoral musculature. The axillary artery gives off several branches before continuing into the arm as the **brachial artery**.

Most of the regions supplied by these arteries are drained by veins that ultimately enter the **right** or **left anterior vena cava**, each of which is formed by the confluence of three large vessels, the **jugular**, **subclavian**, and **pectoral** veins. The jugular lies along the lateral surface of the neck, draining the head and neck. The right jugular is usually larger than the left. The subclavian vein is a short segment that mainly receives the **axillary vein**, which in turn receives the **basilic vein** from the arm. It is the basilic and not the **brachial vein** that follows the brachial artery. The brachial vein is represented by an anterior branch of the axillary that divides into two narrow vessels along the anterior margin of the brachial muscle. The pectoral vein, which divides further into branches much as those of the pectoral artery, usually enters the anterior vena cava but enters the subclavian in some specimens. The right anterior vena cava proceeds almost directly posteriorly to enter the sinus venosus, but the left anterior vena cava turns right and crosses the heart to enter the sinus venosus. The **posterior vena cava** (Figures 9.16–9.18) is a large vessel that drains the posterior part of the body. It can be found by lifting the lateral margin of the right atrium. Its branches will be followed shortly.

The **pulmonary trunk** leaves the right ventricle and almost immediately splits into **left** and **right pulmonary arteries** (Figures 9.14 and 9.15) to the lungs. The left pulmonary artery is easily apparent and can be found passing dorsal to the left brachiocephalic artery. There are two **right** and two **left pulmonary veins** that return blood from the lungs. These vessels enter the left atrium separately. They are not easy to find, but will be seen when the heart is removed (Figure 9.15).

Lift the heart and note the great vessels, just described, associated with it. Cut each vessel, and remove the heart. This will expose the lungs and allow you to follow the trachea and esophagus posteriorly (Figure 9.15). The trachea is held open by cartilaginous rings. More posteriorly it bifurcates into left and right **bronchi**, which extend into the lungs. The **syrinx** is the sound-producing organ located at the base of the trachea. Examine the cut vessels, and identify the pulmonary arteries and pulmonary veins. The latter exit the lungs just posterior to the entrance of the bronchi. There are two main veins on each side but it may be difficult to discern them. The pulmonary arteries enter the lungs somewhat anterior to the bronchi.

Remove the left lobe of the liver, being careful not to injure vessels external to it. Once it has been removed, you will be able to follow the esophagus to the stomach.

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

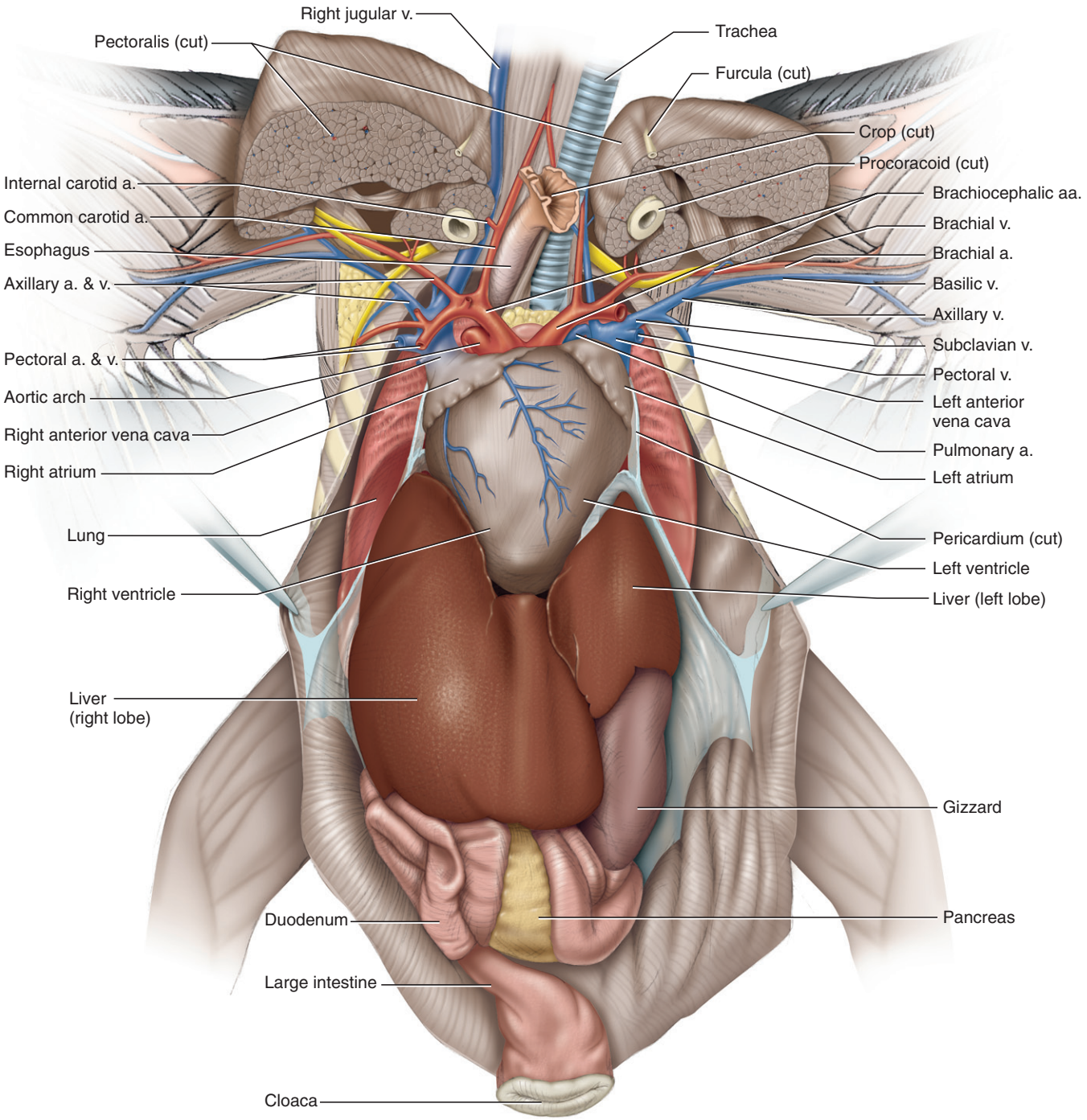


FIGURE 9.14 Trunk of the pigeon in ventral view. Pectoral musculature and sternum removed to reveal heart.

In birds, the stomach is a complex, two-part organ. The more proximal proventriculus secretes strong hydrochloric acid and digestive enzymes that begin the chemical digestion of food. The thicker, muscular gizzard performs most of the mechanical breakdown of food.

Next, examine the intestines. Note that they are bound by mesentery. Various vessels will be seen either supplying or draining the viscera. For the time being, identify the large **hepatic portal vein** (Figure 9.15) that extends between the viscera and the right lobe of the liver. Lift the lobe to note the entrance of the vein into the liver. Cut the portion (and only that portion) of the right lobe that is posterior to the entrance of the hepatic portal vein. You will now be able to follow the intestinal tract more easily. The **duodenum**, the first part of the **small intestine**, arises from the junction of the

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

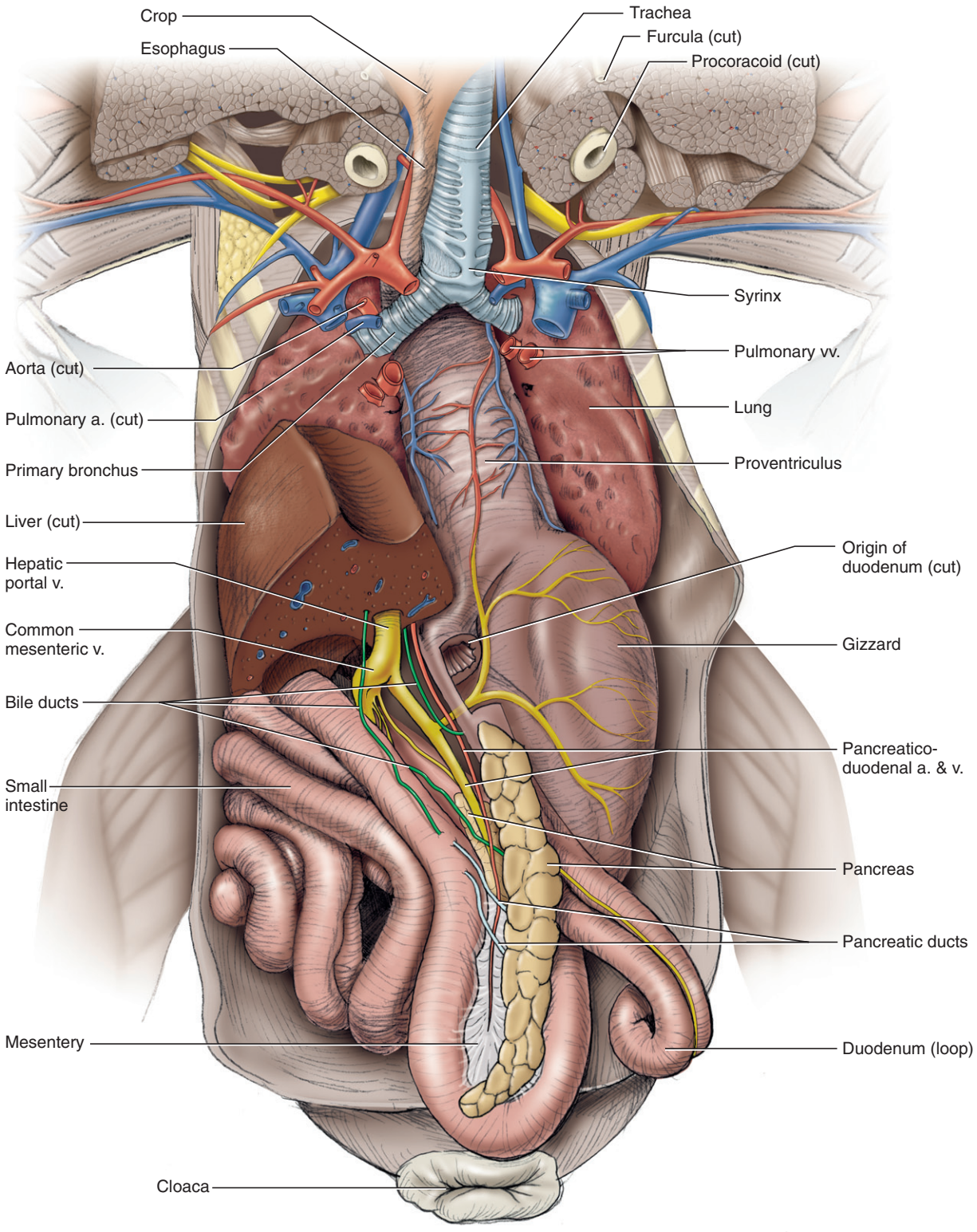


FIGURE 9.15 Trunk of the pigeon in ventral view. Pectoral musculature and heart removed to reveal viscera and vessels.

proventriculus and gizzard. It makes a long loop, consisting of ascending and descending portions that lie close together. Between them is the narrow, elongated **pancreas**. Follow the remaining part of the small intestine. It passes into the short and straight large intestine, which continues posteriorly into the cloaca. A pair of small **colic ceca** (sing., **cecum**) mark the division between the small and large intestines.

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

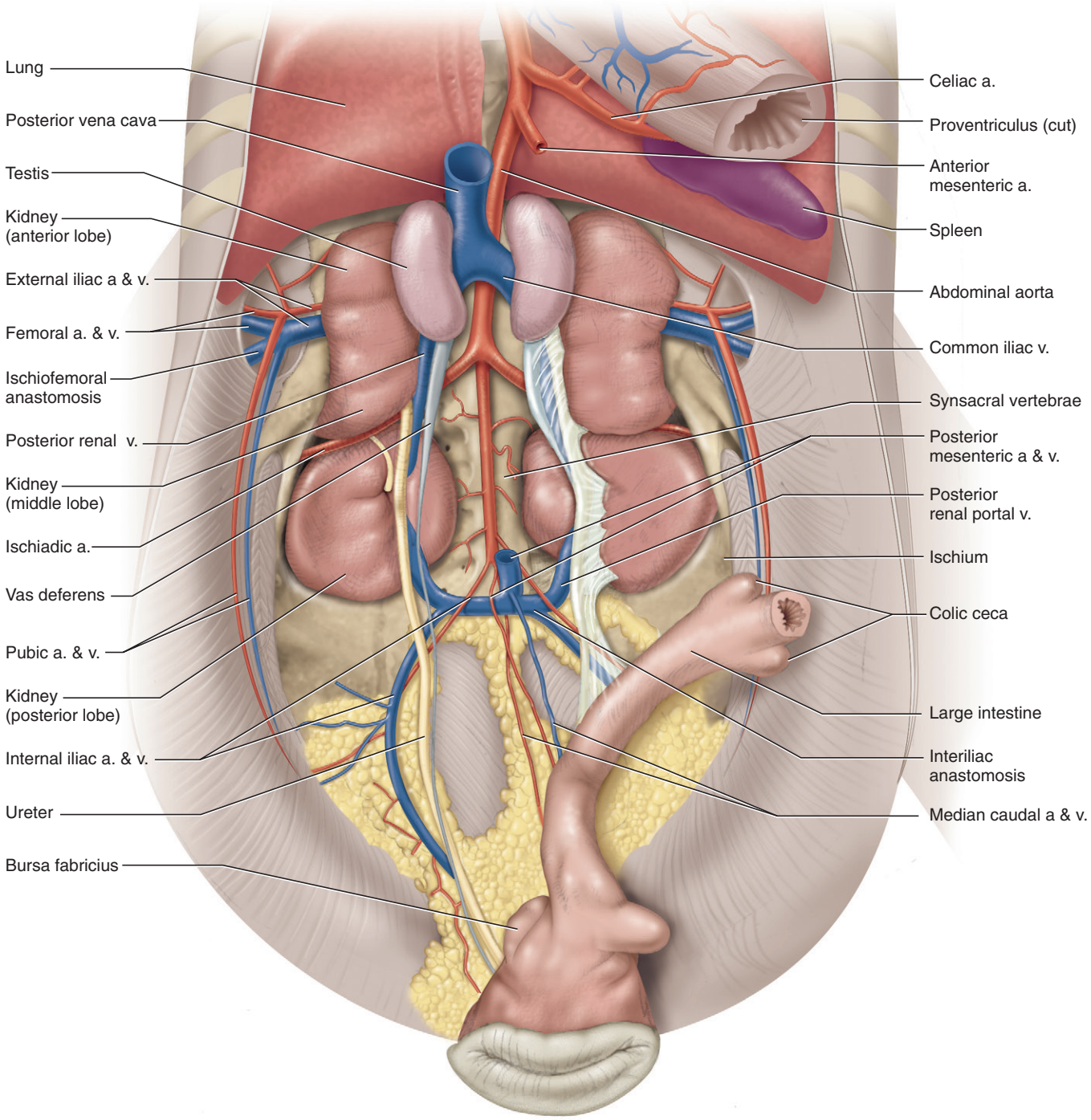


FIGURE 9.16 Posterior end of the pleuroperitoneal cavity of the male pigeon in ventral view. Gizzard and small intestine removed to show urogenital structures, viscera, and vessels.

Return to the duodenum. Carefully dissect the connective tissue between its ascending and descending portions and the pancreas. You will reveal several structures, including the bile ducts and pancreatic ducts (Figure 9.15). There are three of the latter, but only two are readily apparent. Also, you will reveal a large vein, the **pancreaticoduodenal vein**, accompanied by the smaller **pancreaticoduodenal artery**, associated with the pancreas.

Carefully uncoil the intestines to observe that the **posterior mesenteric vein**, a branch of the hepatic portal system, extends posteriorly and eventually joins the venous system of the posterior abdominal cavity (see Figures 9.16–9.18). Once the hepatic portal system has

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

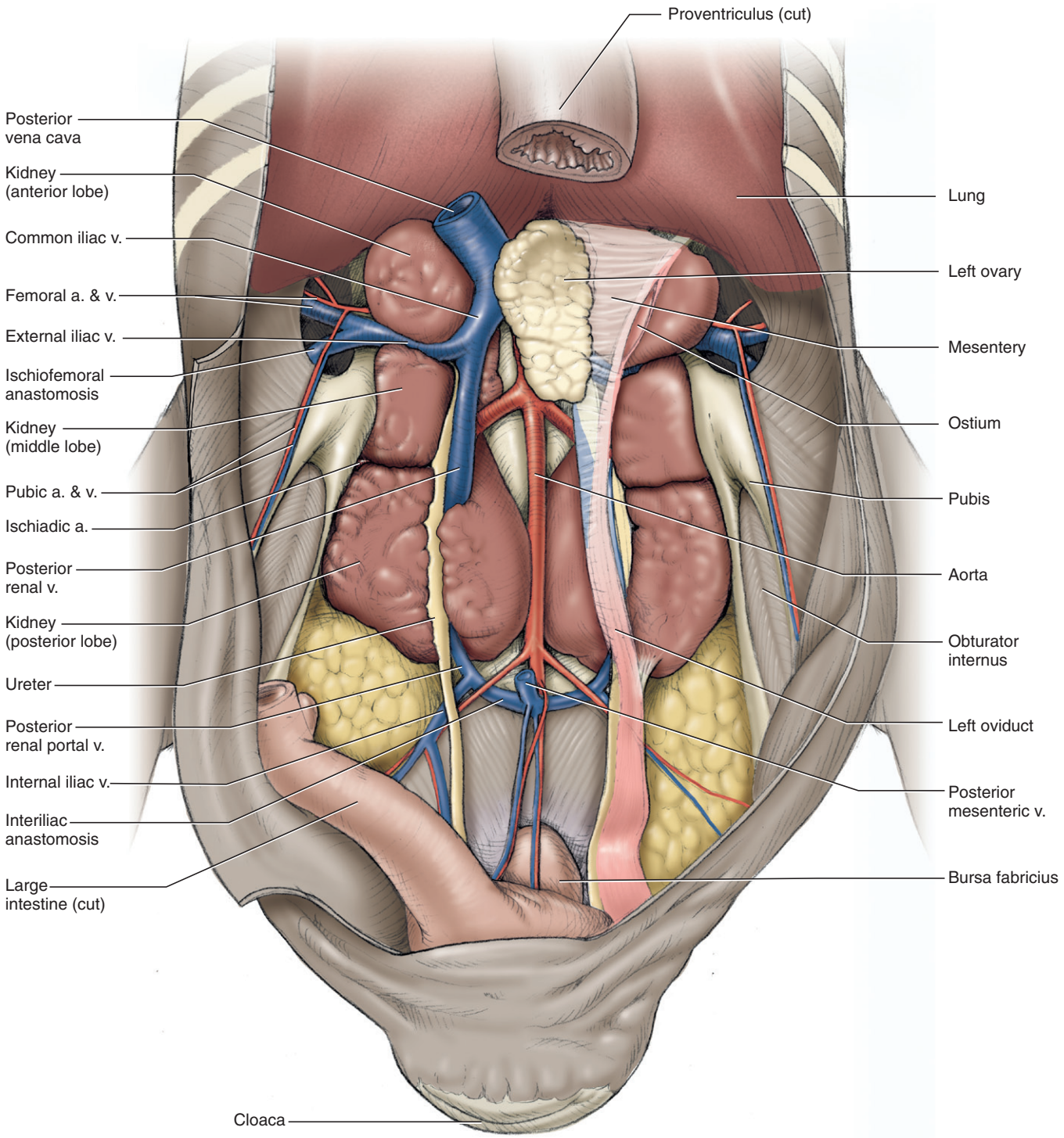


FIGURE 9.17 Posterior end of the pleuroperitoneal cavity of the female pigeon in ventral view. Gizzard and small intestine removed to show urogenital structures, viscera, and vessels.

been studied, find the point where the posterior vena cava, which returns blood from most of the body posterior to the heart, passes through the left lobe of the liver. This occurs dorsal to the entrance of the hepatic portal vein. Cut through the vena cava and remove the remainder of the liver. Cut through the distal end of the proventriculus, just dorsal to its union with the gizzard. Find the **celiac** and **anterior mesenteric arteries** (Figure 9.16) as they emerge from the aorta, just to the right of the distal end of the proventriculus. The ovoid, dark

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

spleen lies in this region as well and can vary in size. Follow the celiac artery, noting its main branches. Cut through them and the anterior mesenteric artery. Also cut through the posterior end of the small intestine, just anterior to the colic ceca, and the posterior mesenteric vein. Then remove the digestive tract.

Clear away connective tissue to expose the urogenital structures and the vessels lying on the dorsal wall of the abdominal cavity. Each **kidney** is superficially subdivided into three lobes by the vessels that pass through it. Males (Figure 9.16) possess a pair of approximately bean-shaped **testes**. Each lies on the anterior lobe of a kidney. In nonbreeding males, the testes are much smaller than in breeding males and may be difficult to identify. The **ductus deferens** carries semen from the testis to the cloaca. The ductus deferens leaves, slightly expanded, the dorsomedial side of the testis and extends posteriorly to the cloaca as a relatively straight, narrow tube. It is slightly wider and may be convoluted in breeding males. It passes for most of its length along the medial side of the **ureter**, the wider tube that carries urine from the kidneys to the cloaca. The ureter emerges from between the anterior and middle lobes of the kidneys. Near the cloaca, the ductus deferens crosses the surface of the ureter and extends to the cloaca, lateral to the ureter.

In females (Figure 9.17) only the left-side reproductive organs are present, those of the right side having degenerated soon after their initial formation. The **ovary** lies on the anterior end of the left kidney. Its morphology and size varies in accordance with the breeding season. The ovary contains numerous spherical **follicles** in various stages of development. Mature ova pass from the ovary and enter the oviduct through its anterior opening, the **ostium**. The **oviduct** is a relatively straight tubular structure (Figure 9.17) that becomes large and convoluted. It conducts the ovum to the cloaca and is subdivided into glandular portions that perform specific roles (such as secreting the shell membrane or the shell itself), but these portions are not identifiable grossly. The left and right ureters of the female are in the same position as in the male. A vestigial posterior portion of the right oviduct may be present along the posteromedial end of the right ureter.

Examine the region where the ureters and genital ducts enter the cloaca and note the **bursa fabricius** (Figures 9.16 and 9.17). The bursa is a dorsal outpocketing of the cloaca that has an important role in the immune system, particularly in young individuals, in which it is relatively large.

Return to the posterior vena cava and follow it posteriorly (Figures 9.16–9.18). It is formed at the level of the anterior part of the kidneys by the confluence of the **right** and **left common iliac veins**. An **anterior renal vein**, draining the anterior lobe of the kidney, enters each common iliac. The common iliac turns laterally between the anterior and medial lobes of the kidney. As it does so, it receives the **posterior renal vein**, a large vessel that extends posteriorly on the kidney with the ureter and ductus deferens in the male and the oviduct (left side only) in the female. The posterior renal vein arises from several branches in the posterior lobe of the kidney and receives a branch from the middle lobe of the kidney.

The **posterior renal portal vein** enters the posterior lobe of the kidney. To follow its path, as well as that of many other veins in this region, kidney tissue must be removed (Figure 9.18). Begin by exposing the posterior portions of the posterior renal vein. Then follow the posterior renal portal vein as it passes anteriorly through the kidney, deep to the posterior renal vein. Between the posterior and middle lobes of the kidney, the renal portal receives the **ischiadic vein**, which is the main vein of the hind limb. The paired **ischiadic arteries** lie ventral to the ischiadic veins and are easily seen. Trace the origin of one from the descending aorta. The artery supplies the middle and posterior lobes of the kidney. Follow the ischiadic vein laterally, but do not damage the superficial and narrow **pubic vein** and **artery** lying on the musculature along the pubic bone. The ischiadic vein, accompanied by the ischiadic artery, passes through the ilioischiadic foramen (Figure 9.6) as it enters the abdominal cavity from the hind limb.

Continue to follow the posterior renal portal vein. Between the anterior and middle lobes of the kidney, the renal portal vein unites with the external iliac vein to form the common iliac vein. The **anterior renal portal** vein enters almost directly opposite that of the posterior renal portal vein. Follow the external iliac vein laterally to its tributary, the **femoral vein**, which drains most of the anterior part of the thigh. The main vein of the hind limb is the ischiadic vein, but most of the blood is diverted to the femoral vein by the **ischiofemoral anastomosis**, a large vessel between the ischiadic and femoral veins. It appears as a large branch, larger indeed than the femoral, passing posteriorly deep to musculature. You may follow it by cutting through the musculature. Lastly, note the pubic vein, draining the lateral abdominal wall, near the origin of the external iliac. The **external iliac artery** lies deep to the external iliac vein. Carefully probe to find it. It gives rise to the **femoral artery**, supplying the hind limb, and the pubic artery, supplying the lateral abdominal wall. Trace the external iliac artery to its origin from the descending aorta. Farther anteriorly, note the **anterior renal artery**, which supplies the anterior and middle lobes of the kidney.

Examine the posterior end of the abdominal cavity. The posterior renal portal vein is formed by the confluence of the narrower **interior iliac vein** and the wider, transversely oriented **interiliac anastomosis**. The posterior mesenteric vein, which was cut during removal of

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

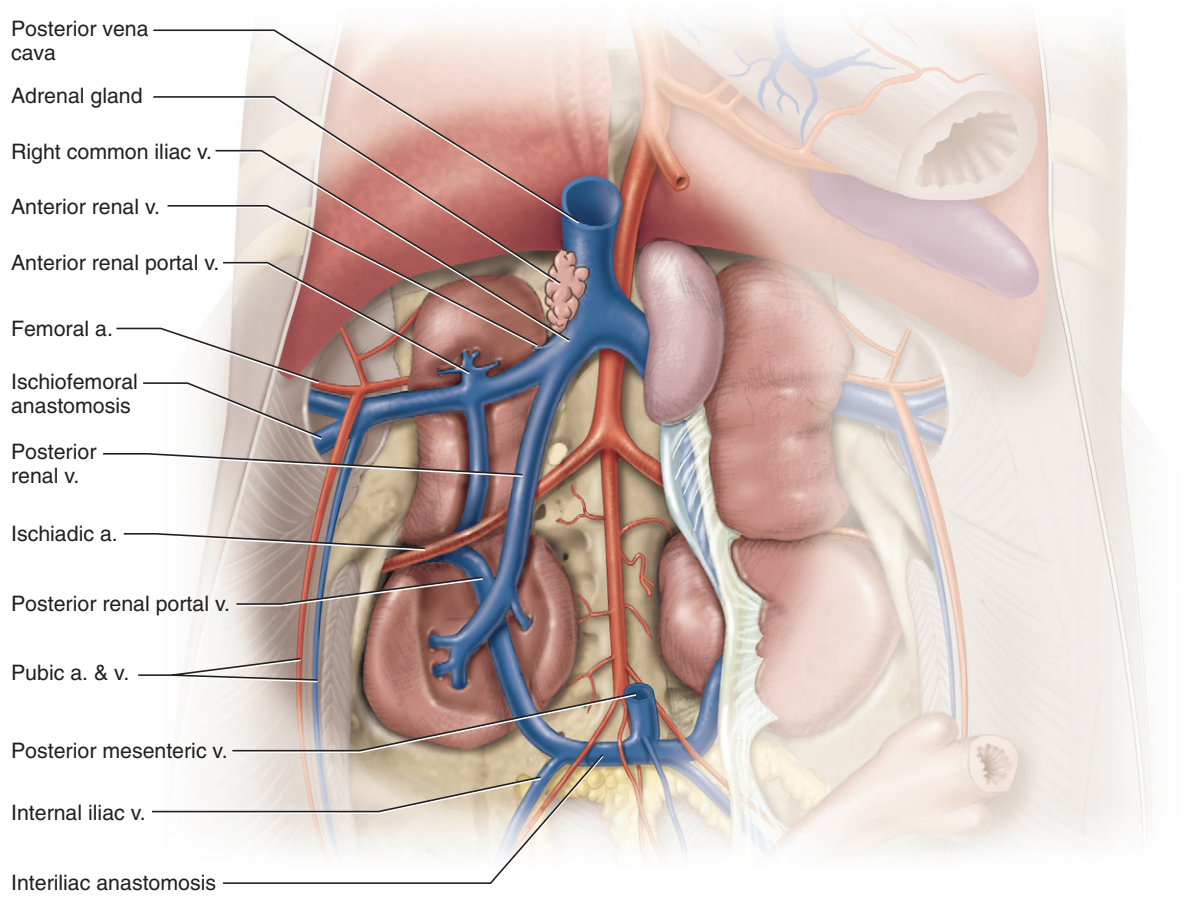


FIGURE 9.18 Posterior end of the pleuroperitoneal cavity of the (male) pigeon in ventral view. The right-side kidney has been dissected to reveal the pattern of renal and renal portal veins.

the intestines, arises from the middle of the interiliac anastomosis and passes anteriorly as part of the hepatic portal system. A small branch accompanies the **posterior mesenteric artery** to the posterior end of the large intestine. The narrow **median caudal vein** enters the interiliac anastomosis opposite the origin of the posterior mesenteric vein. The internal iliac vein drains the posterolateral region of the abdominal cavity. The **internal iliac artery** accompanies the internal iliac vein. Beyond the origin of the internal iliac arteries, the descending aorta continues posteriorly as the **median caudal artery**.

Key Terms: Body Cavity, Viscera, and Vessels

air sacs
anterior mesenteric artery
anterior renal artery
anterior renal portal vein
anterior renal vein
anterior vena cava, right and **left**
aortic arch
ascending aorta
atrium (plur., **atria**), **right** and **left**
axillary artery
axillary vein
basilic vein
brachial artery
brachial vein
brachiocephalic artery, right and **left**
bronchi
bursa fabricius
celiac artery
colic ceca
common carotid artery
common iliac vein, right and **left**
ductus deferens
duodenum
esophagus
external iliac artery
femoral artery
femoral vein
follicles
gizzard

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

heart
hepatic portal vein
interiliac anastomosis
interior iliac vein
internal carotid artery
internal iliac artery
ischiadic artery
ischiadic vein
ischiofemoral anastomosis
jugular vein
kidney
large intestine
liver
lungs
median caudal artery
median caudal vein
ostium
ovary
oviduct
pancreas
pancreaticoduodenal artery
pancreaticoduodenal vein
pectoral artery
pectoral vein
posterior mesenteric artery
posterior mesenteric vein
posterior renal portal vein
posterior renal vein
posterior vena cava
proventriculus
pubic artery
pubic vein
pulmonary artery, right and **left**
pulmonary trunk
pulmonary vein, right and **left**
sinus venosus
small intestine
spleen
stomach
subclavian artery
subclavian vein
syrinx
testes
trachea
ureter
ventricle, right and **left**

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

Selected References

Ahlberg, P. E. (1999). Something fishy in the family tree. *Nature*, *397*, 564–565.

Ahlberg, P. E., & Clack, J. A. (2006). A firm step from water to land. *Nature*, *440*(6), 747–749.

Ahlberg, P. E., Clack, J. A., Lukševič, E., Blom, H., & Zupiņš, I. (2008). *Ventastega curonica* and the origin of tetrapod morphology. *Nature*, *453*(26), 1199–1204.

Allis, T. (1855). *On the sclerotic ring of the eyes of birds and reptiles* (pp. 22). Coneystreet, York: H. Sotheran, Bookseller.

Arnason, U., Gullberg, A., & Janke, A. (2001). Molecular phylogenetics of gnathostomous (jawed) fishes: old bones, new cartilage. *Zoologica Scripta*, *30*(4), 249–255.

Arnason, U., Gullberg, A., Janke, A., Joss, J., & Elmerot, C. (2004). Mitogenomic analyses of deep gnathostome divergences: a fish is a fish. *Gene*, *333*, 61–70.

Baumel, J. J., King, A. S., Breazile, J. E., Evans, H. E., & Vanden Berge, J. C. (Eds.). (1993). *Handbook of Avian Anatomy: Nomina Anatomica Avium* (2nd ed.) (pp. 779). Cambridge: Publications of the Nuttall Ornithological Club 23.

Benton, M. J. (2004). Origin and relationships of Dinosauria (pp. 7–19). In D. B. Weishampel, P. Dodson, & H. Osmólska (Eds.), *The Dinosauria* (2nd ed.) (pp. 861). Berkeley: University of California Press.

Benton, M. J. (2005). *Vertebrate Palaeontology* (3rd ed.) (pp. 455). Malden: Blackwell Publishing Ltd.

Biasutto, S. N., Caussa, L. I., & Cirado del Rio, L. E. (2006). Teaching anatomy: cadavers vs. computers? *Annals of Anatomy*, *188*, 187–190.

Brochu, C. A. (1999). Phylogenetics, taxonomy, and historical biogeography of Alligatoroidea (pp. 9–100). In T. Rowe, C. A. Brochu, & K. Kishi (Eds.), *Cranial Morphology of* Alligator mississippiensis *and Phylogeny of Alligatoroidea*. Journal of Vertebrate Paleontology 19, Supplement to Number 2 (Society of Vertebrate Paleontology Memoir 6).

Brochu, C. A. (2002). Osteology of *Tyrannosaurus rex*: Insights from a nearly complete skeleton and high-resolution computed tomographic analysis of the skull. *Society of Vertebrate Paleontology Memoir*, *7*, 1–138; supplement to Journal of Vertebrate Paleontology 22(2).

Budd, G. E., & Olsson, L. (2007). Editorial: A renaissance for evolutionary morphology. *Acta Zoologica*, *88*, 1.

Carr, T. D. (1999). Craniofacial ontogeny in Tyrannosauridae (Dinosauria, Coelurosauria). *Journal of Vertebrate Paleontology*, *19*(3), 497–520.

Chiasson, R. B. (1962). *Laboratory Anatomy of the Alligator* (pp. 56). Dubuque: W. C. Brown Company.

Chiasson, R. B. (1966). *Laboratory Anatomy of the Perch* (pp. 53). Dubuque: Wm. C. Brown Publishers.

Chiasson, R. (1984). *Laboratory Anatomy of the Pigeon* (3rd ed.) (pp. 104). Dubuque: Wm. C. Brown Publishers.

Chiasson, R. B., & Radke, W. J. (1993). *Laboratory Anatomy of the Vertebrates* (pp. 224). Dubuque: Wm. C. Brown Publishers.

Conrad, J. L. (2008). Phylogeny and systematics of Squamata (Reptilia) based on morphology. *Bulletin of the American Museum of Natural History*, *310*, 1–182.

Cooper, G., & Schiller, A. L. (1975). *Anatomy of the Guinea Pig* (pp. 417). Cambridge: Harvard University Press.

Crouch, J. E. (1969). *Text-Atlas of Cat Anatomy* (pp. 399). Philadelphia: Lea & Febiger.

Cundall, D. (1987). Functional morphology. In R. A. Seigel, J. T. Collins & S. S. Novak (Eds.), *Snakes: Ecology and Evolutionary Biology* (pp. 106–140). New York: MacMillan.

Currie, P. H. (2003). Cranial anatomy of tyrannosaurid dinosaurs from the Late Cretaceous of Alberta, Canada. *Acta Palaeontologica Polonica*, *48*(2), 191–226.

Daeschler, E. B., Shubin, N. H., & Jenkins, F. A. (2006). A Devonian tetrapod-like fish and the evolution of the tetrapod body plan. *Nature*, *440*(6), 757–763.

Dawkins, R. (2004). *The Ancestor's Tale, A Pilgrimage to the Dawn of Life* (pp. 528). London: Weidenfeld and Nicholson.

Duelmann, W. E., & Trueb, L. (1994). *Biology of Amphibians* (pp. 670). Baltimore: The Johns Hopkins University Press.

Duncker, H. R. (1971). The lung air sac system of birds. *Advances in Anatomy, Embryology, and Cell Biology*, *45*(6), 1–171.

Duncker, H. R. (2004). Vertebrate lungs: Structure, topography and mechanics: A comparative perspective of the progressive integration of respiratory system, locomotor apparatus and ontogenetic development. *Respiratory Physiology & Neurobiology*, *144*, 111–124.

Durán, A. C., Fernández, B., Grimes, A. C., Rodríguez, C., Arqué, J. M., & Sans-Coma, V. (2008). Chondrichthyans have a bulbus arteriosus at the arterial pole of the heart: Morphological and evolutionary implications. *Journal of Anatomy*, *213*, 597–606.

Ecker, A. (1971). *The Anatomy of the Frog* (pp. 449). Translated by Haslam. Vaals: G. A. Asher & Company N. V.

Elbroch, M. (2006). *Animal Skulls: A Guide to North American Species* (pp. 726). Mechanicsburg: Stackpole Books.

Etheridge, R., & de Queiroz, K. (1988). A phylogeny of Iguanidae. In R. Estes, & G. Pregill (Eds.), *Phylogenetic relationships of the lizard families. Essays commemorating Charles L. Camp* (pp. 283–367). Stanford: Stanford University Press.

Evans, H. E. (1993). *Miller's Anatomy of the Dog* (3rd ed.) Philadelphia: W.B. Saunders Company.

Evans, S. (2003). The Deep Scaly Project, "Python molurus" (online), Digital Morphology. Accessed May 2009 at http://digimorph.org/specimens/Python_molurus/.

Fairman, J. E. (1999). *Prosauropod and Iguanid jaw musculature: A study on the evolution of form and function* (pp. 103). Unpublished Master of Arts Thesis. Johns Hopkins University.

Fastovsky, D. E., & Weishampel, D. B. (2009). *Dinosaurs: A Concise Natural History* (pp. 379). Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.

Fishbeck, D. W., & Sebastiani, A. (2008). *Comparative Anatomy, 2nd edition: Manual of Vertebrate Dissection* (pp. 474). Englewood: Morton Publishing Company.

Frank, E. T. B. (1934). *The Anatomy of the Salamander* (pp. 381). London: Oxford University Press.

Frazzetta, T. H. (1959). Studies on the morphology and function of the skull in the Boidae (Serpentes). Part I. Cranial differences between *Python sebae* and *Epicrates cenchris*. *Bulletin of the Museum of Comparative Zoology*, *119*(8), 451–472.

Frazzetta, T. H. (1966). Studies on the morphology and function of the skull in the Boidae (Serpentes). Part II. Morphology and function

© 2010 Elsevier Inc.

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

of the jaw apparatus in *Python sebae* and *Python molurus*. *Journal of Morphology*, *118*, 217–296.
Frost, D. R., Grant, T., Faivovich, J. N., Bain, R. H., Haas A., Haddad, C. F. B., et al. (2006). The amphibian tree of life. *Bulletin of the American Museum of Natural History*, *297*, 1–370.
Gaffney, E. S. (1972). An illustrated glossary of turtle skull nomenclature. *American Museum Novitates*, *2486*, 1–33.
Gaffney, E. S. (1979). Comparative cranial morphology of recent and fossil turtles. *Bulletin of the American Museum of Natural History*, *164*(2), 65–376.
Gans, C., & Parsons, T. S. (1964). *A Photographic Atlas of Shark Anatomy* (pp. 106). Chicago: The University of Chicago Press.
Gatesy, S. M., & Dial, K. P. (1993). Tail muscle activity patterns in walking and flying pigeons (*Columba livia*). *Journal of Experimental Biology*, *176*, 55–76.
George, J. C., & Berger, A. J. (1966). *Avian Myology* (pp. 500). New York: Academic Press.
Gilbert, S. G. (1973a). *Pictorial Anatomy of the Dogfish* (pp. 59). Seattle: University of Washington Press.
Gilbert, S. G. (1973b). *Pictorial Anatomy of the* Necturus (pp. 47). Seattle: University of Washington Press.
Gilbert, S. G. (1974). *Pictorial Anatomy of the Frog* (pp. 63). Seattle: University of Washington Press.
Gilbert, S. G. (1989). *Pictorial Anatomy of the Cat, Revised edition* (pp. 120). Toronto: University of Toronto Press.
Gilbert, S. G. (1991). *Atlas of General Zoology* (2nd ed.) (pp. 104). Minneapolis: Burgess Publishing.
Gilbert, S. G. (2000). *Outline of Cat Anatomy with Reference to the Human* (pp. 90). Seattle: University of Washington Press.
Goloboff, P. A., Catalano, S. A., Mirande, J. M., Szumik, C. A., Arias, J. S., Källersjö, M., et al. (2009). Phylogenetic analysis of 73 060 taxa corroborates major eukaryotic groups. *Cladistics*, *25*, 211–230.
Gosselin-Ildari, A. (2004). AmphibiaTree—Multiple Institutions, "Rana catesbeiana" (online), Digital Morphology. Accessed May 2, 2010 at http://digimorph.org/specimens/Rana_catesbeiana/.
Grigg, G., & Gans, C. (1993). Morphology and physiology of the Crocodylia. In C. G. Glas, G. J. B. Ross, & P. L. Beesley (Eds.), *Fauna of Australia, Vol. 2A, Amphibia and Reptilia* (pp. 1–439). Canberra: Australian Government Publishing Service.
Gussekloo, W. S., Vosselman, M. G., & Bout, R. G. (2001). Three-dimensional kinematics of skeletal elements in avian prokinetic and rhynchokinetic skulls determined by Roentgen stereophotogrammetry. *Journal of Experimental Biology*, *204*, 1735–1744.
Holtz, T. R. (2004). Tyrannosauroidea (pp. 111–136). In D. B. Weishampel, P. Dodson, & H. Osmólska (Eds.), *The Dinosauria* (2nd ed.) (pp. 861). Berkeley: University of California Press.
Homberger, D. G., & Walker, W. F., Jr. (2004). *Vertebrate Dissection* (9th ed.) (pp. 379). Belmont, CA: Brooks Cole.
Hurum, J. H., & Sabath, K. (2003). Giant theropod dinosaurs from Asia and North America: Skulls of *Tarbosaurus bataar* and *Tyrannosaurus rex* compared. *Acta Palaeontologica Polonica*, *48*(2), 169–190.
Iordansky, N. N. (1973). The Skull of the Crocodilia (pp. 201–262). In C. Gans & T. S. Parsons (Eds.), *Biology of the Reptilia* (Vol. 4) (pp. 539). London: Morphology D. Academic Press.
Kardong, K. V. (2009). *Vertebrates. Comparative Anatomy, Function, Evolution* (5th ed.) (pp. 779). Boston: McGraw-Hill Higher Education.
Kent, G. C., & Carr, R. K. (2001). *Comparative Anatomy of the Vertebrates* (9th ed.) (pp. 524). Boston: McGraw-Hill Higher Education.
King, A. S., & McLelland, J. (Eds.). (1985). *Form and Function in Birds* (Vol. 3) (pp. 522). London: Academic Press.
Laurin, M., Girondot, M., de Ricqlè, A. (2000). Early tetrapod evolution. *Trends in Ecology and Evolution*, *15*(3), 118–123.
Li, C., Wu, X.-C., Rieppel, O., Wang, L.-T., & Zhao, L.-J. (2008). An ancestral turtle from the Late Triassic of southwestern China. *Nature*, *456*(27), 497–501.
Liem, K. F., Bemis, W. E., Walker, W. F., Jr., & Grande, L. (2001). *Functional Anatomy of the Vertebrates. An Evolutionary Perspective* (3rd ed.) (pp. 703). Fort Worth: Harcourt College Publishers.
Maisey, J. G. (2001). Remarks on the inner ear of elasmobranchs and its interpretation from skeletal labyrinth morphology. *Journal of Morphology*, *250*, 236–264.
Marinelli, W., & Strenger, A. (1954). *Vergleichende Anatomie und Morphologie der Wirbeltiere* (pp. 308). Wien: Verlag Franz Deuticke.
Martin, A. (2001). The phylogenetic placement of Chondrichthyes: Inferences from analysis of multiple genes and implications for comparative studies. *Genetica*, *111*, 349–357.
Mason, M. J., & Narins, P. M. (2002). Vibrometric studies of the middle ear of the bullfrog *Rana catesbeiana*. II. The operculum. *Journal of Experimental Biology*, *205*, 3167–3176.
Mason, M. J., Lin, C. C., & Narins, P. M. (2003). Sex differences in the middle ear of the bullfrog (*Rana catesbeiana*). *Brain, Behavior and Evolution*, *61*, 91–101.
May, N.D. S. (1964). *Anatomy of the Sheep* (2nd ed.) (pp. 369). St. Lucia: University of Queensland Press.
Metzger, K. (2002). Cranial kinesis in lepidosaurs: Skulls in motion (pp. 15–46). In P. Aerts, K. D'Août, A. Herrel, & R. Van Damme (Eds.), *Topics in Functional and Ecological Vertebrate Morphology: A Tribute to Frits de Vree* (pp. 372). Maastricht: Shaker Publishing.
Mo, J.-Y., Xu, X., & Evans, S. E. (2010). The evolution of the lepidosaurian lower temporal bar: New perspectives from the Late Cretaceous of South China. *Proceedings of the Royal Society*, *B 277*(1679), 331–336.
Modesto, S. P., Scott, D. M., & Reisz, R. R. (2009). A new parareptile with temporal fenestration from the Middle Permian of South Africa. *Canadian Journal of Earth Sciences*, *46*, 9–20.
Müller, B. (1907). The air-sacs of the pigeon. *Smithsonian Miscellaneous Collections*, *50*, 365–420.
Müller, J. (2003). Early loss and multiple return of the lower temporal arcade in diapsid reptiles. *Naturwissenschaften*, *90*, 473–476.
Nelson, J. S. (2006). *Fishes of the World* (4th ed.) (pp. 601). Hoboken: John Wiley and Sons Inc.
Nickel, R., Schummer, A., Seiferle, E., Siller, W. G., & Wight, P. A. L. (1977). *Anatomy of the Domestic Birds* (pp. 202). New York: Springer-Verlag.
O'Connor, P. M. (2004). Pulmonary pneumaticity in the postcranial skeleton of extant Aves: A case study examining Anseriformes. *Journal of Morphology*, *261*, 141–161.
O'Keefe, F. R., Sidor, C. A., Larsson, H. C. E., Maga, A., & Ide, O. (2006). Evolution and homology of the astragalus in early amniotes: New fossils, new perspectives. *Journal of Morphology*, *267*, 415–425.
Oelrich, T. M. (1956). *The anatomy of the head of* Ctenosaura pectinata *(Iguanidae)* (pp. 122). Museum of Zoology, University of Michigan: Miscellaneous Publications, No. 94.
Oldham, J. C., & Smith, H. M. (1975). *Laboratory Anatomy of the Iguana* (pp. 106). Dubuque: W. C. Brown Company.
Olori, J. (2004). "Chelydra serpentine" (online), Digital Morphology. Accessed June 2008 at http://digimorph.org/specimens/Chelydra_serpentina/.
Osborn, Henry Fairfield. (1912). Crania of *Tyrannosaurus* and *Allosaurus*; integument of the iguanodont dinosaur *Trachodon*. *Memoirs of the American Museum of Natural History*, new series *1*(1–2), 1–54.
Pough F. H., Janis, C. M., & Heiser, J. B. (2002). *Vertebrate Life* (6th ed.) (pp. 699). New Jersey: Prentice Hall, Upper Saddle River.
Proctor, N. S., & Lynch, P. J. (1993). *Manual of Ornithology. Avian Structure & Function* (pp. 340). New Haven: Yale University Press.
Reisz, R. R., & Head, J. J. (2008). Turtle origins out to sea. *Nature*, *456*(27), 450–451.
Rieppel, O. (1990). The structure and development of the jaw adductor musculature in the turtle *Chelydra serpentina*. *Zoological Journal of the Linnean Society*, *98*, 27–62.

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

Rieppel, O. (1993). Patterns of diversity in the reptilian skull (pp. 344–390). In J. Hanken & B. K. Hall (Eds.), *The Skull Volume 2, Patterns of Structural and Systematic Diversity* (pp. 566). Chicago: The University of Chicago Press.

Rieppel, O., & Zaher, H. (2001). The development of the skull in *Acrochordus granulatus* (Schneider) (Reptilia: Serpentes), with special consideration of the otico-occipital complex. *Journal of Morphology*, *249*, 252–266.

Romer, A. S. (1997). *Osteology of the Reptiles* (pp. 772). Malabar: Krieger Publishing Company.

Romer, A. S., & Parson, T. S. (1986). *The Vertebrate Body* (6th ed.) (pp. 679). Philadelphia: Saunders College Publishing.

Rowe, T., Brochu, C., Colbert, M., Kishi, K., & Merck, J. (2003). "Alligator mississippiensis" (online), Digital Morphology. Accessed December 2008 at http://digimorph.org/specimens/Alligator_mississippiensis/adult/.

Scanlon, J. D. (2005). Cranial morphology of the Plio-Pleistocene giant madtsoiid snake *Wonambi naracoortensis*. *Acta Palaeontologica Polonica*, *50*(1), 139–180.

Shubin, N. H., Daeschler, E. B., & Jenkins, F. A. (2006). The pectoral fin of *Tiktaalik roseae* and the origin of the tetrapod limb. *Nature*, *440*(6), 764–771.

Sisson, S., & Grossman, J. D. (1953). *The Anatomy of the Domestic Animals* (4th ed.) (pp. 972). Philadelphia: W. B. Saunders Company.

Stach, T. (2008). Chordate phylogeny and evolution: A not so simple three-taxon problem. *Journal of Zoology*, *276*, 117–141.

Stuart, R. R. (1947). *The Anatomy of the Bull Frog* (3rd ed.) (pp. 30). Chicago: Denoyer-Geppert Company.

Trueb, L. (1973). Bones, frogs, and evolution (pp. 65–132). In J. L. Vial (Ed.), *Evolutionary Biology of the Anurans, Contemporary Research on Major Problems* (pp. 470). Columbia: University of Missouri Press.

Trueb, L. (1993). Patterns of cranial diversity among the Lissamphibia (pp. 255–343). In J. Hanken & B. K. Hall (Eds.), *The Skull Volume 2, Patterns of Structural and Systematic Diversity* (pp. 566). Chicago: The University of Chicago Press.

Vitt, L. J., & Caldwell, J. P. (2009). *Herpetology, an Introductory Biology of Amphibians and Reptiles* (3rd ed.) (pp. 697). Amsterdam: Academic Press.

Wake, M. H. (1979). *Hyman's Comparative Vertebrate Anatomy* (3rd ed.). Chicago: The University of Chicago Press.

Waller, G., Dando, M., & Burchett, M. (1996). *Sealife: A Complete Guide to the Marine Environment* (pp. 504). Washington: Smithsonian Institution Press.

Wedel, M. J. (2003a). The evolution of vertebral pneumaticity in sauropod dinosaurs. *Journal of Vertebrate Paleontology*, *23*(2), 344–357.

Wedel, M. J. (2003b). Vertebral pneumaticity, air sacs, and the physiology of sauropod dinosaurs. *Paleobiology*, *29*(2), 243–255.

Werneburg, I., & Sánchez-Villagra, M. R. (2009). Timing of organogenesis support basal position of turtles in the amniote tree of life. *BMC Evolutionary Biology*, *9*(82), 1–9.

White T. D., & Folkens, P. A. (2005). *The Human Bone Manual* (pp. 464). Amsterdam: Elsevier Academic Press.

Winchell, C. J., Sullivan, J., Cameron, C. B., Swalla, B. J., & Mallat, J. (2002). Evaluating hypotheses of deuterostome phylogeny and chordate evolution with new LSU and SSU Ribosomal DNA data. *Molecular Biology and Evolution*, *19*(5), 762–776.

Wischnitzer, S., & Wischnitzer, E. (2006). *Atlas and Dissection Guide for Comparative Anatomy* (6th ed.) (pp. 368). New York: W. H. Freeman and Company.

Witmer, L. (1997). The evolution of the antorbital cavity of archosaurs: a study in soft-tissue reconstruction in the fossil record with an analysis of the function of pneumaticity. *Society of Vertebrate Paleontology Memoir*, *3*, 1–73; supplement to Journal of Vertebrate Paleontology 17(1).

Witmer, L. (2010). *WitmerLab: 3D Visualization.* March-April 2010. http://www.oucom.ohiou.edu/dbms-witmer/3D-Visualization.html.

Wyneken, J. (2001). *The Anatomy of Sea Turtles* (pp. 172). U.S. Department of Commerce NOAA Technical Memorandum NMFS-SEFSC-470.

Zhu, M., Xiaobo, Y., & Janvier, P. (1999). A primitive fossil fish sheds light on the origin of bony fishes. *Nature*, *397*, 607–610.

Zug, G. R., Vitt, L. J., & Caldwell, J. P. (2001). *Herpetology: An Introductory Biology of Amphibians and Reptiles* (2nd ed.) (pp. 630). San Diego: Academic Press.

Zusi, R. L. (1993). Patterns of diversity in the avian skull (pp. 391–437). In J. Hanken & B. K. Hall (Eds.), *The Skull Volume 2, Patterns of Structural and Systematic Diversity* (pp. 566). Chicago: The University of Chicago Press.

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

Index

A

Abdomen, 176
Abdominal aorta, 228
Abdominal pores, 35–37
Abdominal vein
  in frog, 136–137, 145
  in mudpuppy, 110, 119
  in shark, 58
Abdominopelvic cavity, 207–208, 212–218
Abducens foramina, 28
Abducens nerve (CN VI)
  in cat, 249
  in shark, 65, 74
Abductor, defined, 39
Abductor caudae internus (coccygeus muscle), 189
Abductor cruris caudalis (tenuissimus), 189
Accessory lobe, lung, 210
Accessory nerve (CN XI)
  in cat, 249
  in shark, 74
Accessory process, 166
Accessory urinary duct, 62
Acetabular bone, 172
Acetabular fenestra, 293
Acetabular surface, 33–34
Acetabulum
  in cat, 172
  in frog, 132–133
  in mudpuppy, 94–95
  in pigeon, 293
Achilles tendon (calcaneal tendon), 194
Acoustic meatus
  in cat, 150, 154–155
  in pigeon, 294
Acousticolateral area, 72
Acromiodeltoid muscle, 181
Acromion process, 168
Acromiotrapezius, 179–181
Actinista, 11–13, 12f
Actinopteri, 10
Actinopterygii, 9f, 10, 11f, 79
Adductor, defined, 39
Adductor femoris, 189, 192
Adductor longus (adductor femoris longus), 189
Adductor mandibulae, 40
Adductor mandibulae anterior, 99
Adductor mandibulae externus, 99
Adductor mandibulae process, 30–31
Adrenal gland
  in cat, 228
  in frog, 140
Adrenolumbar artery/vein, 228
Afferent branchial arteries
  in lamprey, 24
  in mudpuppy, 119
  in shark, 45, 51
Afferent renal vein
  in mudpuppy, 119
  in shark, 56–58
Afferent spiracular artery, 40, 53–54
Agnathans, 7–8, 19
Air sacs, 300–302
Akinetic skull
  in iguana, 260
  in turtle, 258
Alar crest, 262–264
Alar process of prootic, 262–264
Albertosaurus libratus, 280
Alisphenoid, 153–154
Alligator mississippiensis, 273
Alula (bastard wing), 296–297
Alular quills, 296–297
Amiidae, 10, 11f
Amniota, 13f, 14, 15f
Amniote skulls and classification, 16–18
Amphibia, 12f, 14, 89, 127
Ampullae of Lorenzini, 38, 63–64
Anal fin, 81, 83
Anal glands, 244
Anapsid condition, 16
Anapsida, 17–18
Angle of rib, 168
Angular bone
  in alligator, 278
  in dinosaur, 284
  in iguana, 265
  in perch, 81
  in pigeon, 289–291
  in snake, 271–272
  in turtle, 259
Angular process, 155
Angular process of articular, 265
Anguloarticular bones, 81
Angulosplenial bone, 130–131
Annular cartilage
  in frog, 130
  in lamprey, 19
Antebrachium (forearm)
  in cat, 170, 176–177
  in frog, 133
Anterior, defined, xix–xx
Anterior auricular artery, 226
Anterior auricular vein, 226
Anterior border, of scapula, 168
Anterior cardinal veins
  in lamprey, 24–26
  in mudpuppy, 117
Anterior cerebellar peduncle, 251
Anterior chamber, of eye, 66
Anterior commissure, 251
Anterior cornu, 131
Anterior dorsal fin
  in lamprey, 21
  in perch, 81, 83
  in shark, 28, 31, 38
Anterior facial vein. *See* Linguofacial vein
Anterior intestinal artery, 54–56
Anterior intestinal vein, 56
Anterior lienogastric vein, 56
Anterior lobe, lung, 210
Anterior mesenteric artery
  in cat, 228
  in pigeon, 306–308
  in shark, 56
Anterior mesenteric vein, 233
Anterior mylohyoid foramen, 284–285
Anterior pancreaticoduodenal artery/vein, 232
Anterior rectal artery/vein, 233
Anterior renal artery, 308
Anterior renal portal vein, 308
Anterior renal vein, 308
Anterior semicircular duct, 67
Anterior splenic artery, 233
Anterior splenic vein, 233
Anterior surangular foramen, 265
Anterior trigeminal foramen, 270
Anterior utriculus, 67
Anterior vena cava
  in cat, 211–212, 220
  in frog, 142
  in pigeon, 303
Anterior ventrolateral artery, 54
Anterodorsal lateral line nerve (ADLLN), 74
Anteroventral lateral line nerve (AVLLN), 74
Anticlinal vertebra, 166–167
Antorbital canal (infraorbital canal), 153
Antorbital fenestra, 280
Antorbital fossa, 280
Antorbital process
  in mudpuppy, 95
  in shark, 28
Antorbital shelf, 28
Antrum postoticum, 257
Anura, 14, 127

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

Anus
in cat, 177, 216–217
in lamprey, 21
in perch, 83
in shark, 35–37
Aorta. *See also* Dorsal aorta; Ventral aorta
in cat, 220
in pigeon, 303
Aortic arch
in cat, 220
in pigeon, 303
Apex of heart, 220
Apomorphic traits, 3
Aponeurosis, 177
Aponeurotic attachment, 177
Appendicular musculature, 179–186
Appendicular skeleton, 93–95
Aqueous humor, 66
Arachnoid mater, 245
Arbor vitae, 251
Archinephric duct (Wolffian duct)
in frog, 140
in lamprey, 22
in mudpuppy, 113
in perch, 86–87
in shark, 62
Archosauromorpha, 15, 16f, 280
Arcualia, 7, 20, 23–24
Arm. *See* Brachium
Arterial system
of cat, 220–233
of cat (flow charts), 234f, 236f
of frog, 142–143
of lamprey, 24
of mudpuppy, 119–125
of perch, 88
of pigeon, 302–303
of shark, 50–56
Arteries. *See* Arterial system; *names of specific arteries*
Artery, defined, 220
Articular bone
in alligator, 274–275, 278
in dinosaur, 284
in iguana, 265
in perch, 81
in pigeon, 289–291
in snake, 271–272
in turtle, 259
Articular circumference, of radius, 170
Articularis coxae (capsularis), 192–193
Artificial groups, 3–4
Arytenoid cartilage, 206
Ascending aorta, 303
Ascending colon, 216–217
Ascending pharyngeal artery, 224–226
Ascending ramus of dentary, 155
Astragalus (talus; tibiale), 132–133, 174
Atlantal foramen, 165
Atlas
in cat, 165
in frog, 131
Atria, of heart
in cat, 220
in frog, 140–142
in lamprey, 24
in mudpuppy, 117
in perch, 88
in pigeon, 303
in shark, 50–51
Auditory meatus
in cat, 150
in pigeon, 289
Auditory nerve. *See* Vestibulocochlear nerve
Auditory tube (Eustachian tube)
in cat, 154, 206
in frog, 134–135
Auricle
of atrium, 220
of cerebellum, 72
Auricular artery, 226
Auricular vein, 226
Auriculotemporal nerve foramen, 258–259
Avemetatarsalia, 15, 16f
Aves, 15, 16f, 287
Avialae, 287
Axial skeleton, 93
Axillary artery
in cat, 228
in pigeon, 303
Axillary vein
in cat, 185, 228
in pigeon, 303
Axis, 165
Azygos vein, 221

B

Back. *See* Dorsum
Back muscles in cat, 199
Barbs, of feather, 296
Barbules, 296
Basal plate
in mudpuppy, 91
in shark, 28
Basal pterygiophore, 31
Basapophysis, 31
Base of heart, 220
Basibranchial bones, 91–92
Basibranchials, 31
Basicranium, 150–151
Basihyal, 31
Basihyoid bone, 155–156
Basilic vein, 303
Basioccipital bone
in alligator, 274–275
in cat, 150–151
in dinosaur, 283
in iguana, 262–264
in pigeon, 289
in snake, 271
in turtle, 258
Basipterygium, 82
Basipterygoid processes, 289
in iguana, 265
in snake, 271
Basisphenoid
in alligator, 274–275
in cat, 153–154
in dinosaur, 283
in iguana, 262–264
in pigeon, 289
in snake, 271
in turtle, 258
Basitrabecular processes, 28
Bastard wing (alula), 296–297
Beak (bill), 289, 294
Beaver, skull comparison of mammals, 157–176
Biceps brachii
in cat, 186
in pigeon, 298–300
Biceps femoris, 188
Biceps propatagialis. *See* Pars propatagialis
Biceps slip. *See* Pars propatagialis
Bicipital groove, 170
Bicipital tuberosity, 170
Bijugular vein, 222
Bile duct
in cat, 214, 217–218
in mudpuppy, 113
in shark, 47–49
Bill (beak), 289, 294
Blood vessels. *See* Arterial system; Venous system
Body
of dentary, 155
of ilium, 172
of sternum, 292
of stomach, 46–47
of uterus, 242
Body, of sternum, 168
Bones. *See names of specific bones*; Skeletal system
Brachial artery
in cat, 186, 228
in frog, 142
in mudpuppy, 121–125
in pigeon, 303
in shark, 54
Brachial vein
in cat, 186, 228
in frog, 142–143
in mudpuppy, 117
in pigeon, 303
in shark, 58
Brachiocephalic artery
in cat, 220–221
in pigeon, 303
Brachiocephalic vein, 221–222
Brachioradialis, 183
Brachium (arm)
in cat, 176–177
in frog, 133
Brain
in cat, 244–252
in lamprey, 23–24
in shark, 70–77
Braincase, 262
Branchial adductor muscle, 42–43, 45
Branchial arches
in perch, 79, 84
in shark, 28
Branchial arteries
in lamprey, 24
in mudpuppy, 119–121
in shark, 45, 51–54

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

Branchial basket, 19–20
Branchial branches of vagus nerve, 75
Branchial musculature, 39–40
Branchiohyoideus, 99, 101–102
Branchiomeric musculature, 40–43
Branchiostegal rays, 84
Breast, 294–296
Broad ligament, 242
Bronchi
  in cat, 211–212
  in pigeon, 303
Buccal papillae, 20–21
Bulbourethral glands, 241–242
Bulbus arteriosus
  in mudpuppy, 117, 119
  in perch, 88
Bulbus cordis, 140–142
Bursa fabricius, 308

C

Calamus, 296
Calcaneal tendon, 194
Calcaneum (calcaneus), 174
Calcaneum (fibulare), 132–133
Canals, of cat skull, 153–154. *See also names of specific canals*
Capitulum, of humerus, 170
Capitulum, of rib, 166, 168
Capsularis, 192–193
Cardiac vein (coronary vein), 220
Cardinal sinus, 58
Cardinal veins
  in lamprey, 24–26
  in mudpuppy, 117, 119
  in shark, 58
Cardiovascular system
  of cat, 220–239
  of frog, 140–145
  of lamprey, 24–26
  of mudpuppy, 117–125
  of perch, 88
  of pigeon, 303
  of shark, 50–59
Carina (keel), 292
Carnassial tooth, 151–153
Carnivores, 148
Carotid arch, 142
Carotid artery
  in cat, 224–226
  in frog, 142
  in mudpuppy, 119–121
  in pigeon, 303
  in shark, 52–53
Carotid body, 142
Carotid duct, 119–121
Carotid foramen, 28
Carpal bones
  in frog, 132
  in mudpuppy, 93–94
  in pigeon, 293
Carpometacarpus, 293
Carpus, 171
Cat
  brain and cranial nerves, 244–252
  cardiovascular system, 220–239
  cranial skeleton, 148–156
  digestive and respiratory systems, 204–220
  excretory system, 239
  external anatomy, 176–177
  female reproductive system, 242–244
  forelimb, 168–171
  forelimb muscles, 179–186, 186t–187t
  head and trunk muscles, 198–202
  hind limb, 172–174
  hind limb muscles, 188–194
  male reproductive system, 240–242
  muscular system, 177–202
  postcranial skeleton, 164–174
  skull comparison, 157–176
Caudal, defined, xix–xx
Caudal artery
  in cat, 230
  in lamprey, 24
  in mudpuppy, 121–125
  in pigeon, 308–309
  in shark, 56
Caudal fin
  in lamprey, 21
  in perch, 81–83
  in shark, 28, 31, 38
Caudal intermandibular foramen
  in alligator, 278
  in turtle, 259
Caudal ligament, 59
Caudal peduncle, 82
Caudal vein
  in cat, 230
  in lamprey, 26
  in mudpuppy, 119
  in shark, 56–58
Caudal vertebrae
  in cat, 164, 167
  in mudpuppy, 93
  in perch, 79, 81
  in pigeon, 291
  in shark, 31
Caudata, 14, 89
Caudate lobe, of liver, 214
Caudocruralis, 106
Caudofemoralis. *See* Gluteofemoralis
Caudolateral process, 292
Caudopuboischiotibialis, 106
Caval fold, 210
Cavum acusticojugulare, 258
Cecum, 216–217
Celiac artery
  in cat, 228
  in frog, 142
  in pigeon, 306–308
  in shark, 54–56
Celiacomesenteric artery
  in frog, 142
  in mudpuppy, 121–125
Central canal, 251
Central canal of spinal cord, 76
Central tendon, 214
Centrum, of vertebral body
  in cat, 164
  in perch, 81
  in shark, 31
Centrum of vertebral body, 93
Cephalic vein, 179, 181, 222–224
Cephalochordata, 1, 2f, 3–6
Ceratobranchial bones, 91–92
Ceratobranchials, 31
Ceratohyal, 31
Ceratohyal bone, 91–92
Ceratohyoid bone, 155–156
Ceratotrichia, 31
Cerebellar hemispheres, 249
Cerebellar peduncles (anterior, middle, and posterior), 251
Cerebellar ventricle, 76
Cerebellum
  in cat, 245
  in shark, 72
Cerebral aqueduct
  in cat, 251
  in shark, 76
Cerebral hemispheres
  in cat, 245
  in shark, 72
Cerebral peduncle, 251
Cerebrum
  in cat, 245
  in shark, 72
Cervical artery, deep, 226–228
Cervical vertebrae
  in cat, 164–166
  in mudpuppy, 93
  in pigeon, 291
Cervix, of uterus, 244
Chelonia mydas, 253
Chelydra serpentina, 253
Chimaeras, 10, 27
Choanae
  in alligator, 277
  in cat, 150, 206
  in dinosaur, 283–284
  in frog, 134–135
  in mudpuppy, 109–110
  in turtle, 258
Choanata, 11–13, 12f
Chondrichthyes, 9f, 10, 13
Chondrocranium
  in lamprey, 19
  in mudpuppy, 89, 91
  in shark, 28
Chondrostei, 10, 11f
Chordata, 2–5, 6f
Choroid, 65–66
Choroid plexus, 72
Ciliary body, 65–66
Circulatory system. *See* Cardiovascular system
Circumflex artery/vein, 189
Circumflex iliac artery/vein, 228–230
Clades, 2
Cladistics, 3
Cladogram, 2–3
  of Choanata, 13f
  of Chordata, 6f
  of Deuterostomata, 2f
  of Reptilia, 16f
  of Sarcopterygii, 12f
  of Teleostomi, 11f
  of Tetrapoda, 15f
  of Vertebrata, 9f

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

Clasper, 33–34, 38, 62
Classification
  amniote skulls, 16–18
  craniates and vertebrates, 7
  phylogeny, 1–4
  Vertebrata, 8–16
  vertebrate relatives, 4–7
Clavicle
  in cat, 168
  in frog, 131–132
Clavobrachialis, 179–181
Clavotrapezius, 179–181
Claw, 176–177
Cleidomastoid muscle, 181
Cleithrum, 82
Clitoris, 244
Cloaca
  in frog, 134, 139–140
  in lamprey, 21
  in mudpuppy, 96
  in pigeon, 294–296
  in shark, 35–37
Cloacal arteries, 121–125
Cloacal gland, 96, 113
Cloacal papillae, 113
Cloacal vein, 58
Coccygeofemoralis. *See* Gluteofemoralis
Coccygeus muscle, 189
Cochlea tibiae, 174
Coelom
  in cat, 207–208
  in lamprey, 22
  in shark, 45
Colic artery, 233
Colic ceca, 303–305
Colic vein, 233
Collector loop of gills, 51–52
Colon. *See also* Large intestine
  in cat, 216–217
  in shark, 47
Columbia livia, 287
Columella
  in alligator, 274–275
  in frog, 130, 135
  in iguana, 261
  in mudpuppy, 90–91
  in snake, 270
  in turtle, 257
Commissural artery (hypobranchial artery), 54
Common bile duct
  in cat, 214, 217–218
  in mudpuppy, 113
Common cardinal vein
  in lamprey, 24–26
  in mudpuppy, 117
  in shark, 58
Common carotid artery
  in cat, 224
  in pigeon, 303
Common iliac arteries, 142
Common iliac vein
  in cat, 230
  in mudpuppy, 119
  in pigeon, 308
Communicating iliac vein, 145
Compound bone, 271–272
Condyles
  of femur, 173
  of humerus, 170
  of tibia, 173–174
Condyloid canal, 154
Condyloid process, 155
Conjunctiva, 65
Connective tissue, types of, 177–178
Constrictor muscles, 40–41
Contour feathers, 296
Conus arteriosus
  in mudpuppy, 117
  in shark, 50–51
Coracoarcual muscles, 44
Coracobrachial muscles, 44
Coracobrachialis, 103
Coracobrachialis muscle, 186
Coracohyoid muscles, 44
Coracoid bar, 33
Coracoid cartilage, 93
Coracoid process, 168
Coracomandibular muscles, 43–44
Coracoradialis, 102–103
Cornea, 65–66
Coronary artery
  in cat, 220
  in shark, 52–54
Coronary ligament, 214
Coronary sulcus, 220
Coronary vein (cardiac vein), 220
Coronoid
  in alligator, 278
  in dinosaur, 284–285
  in iguana, 265
  in snake, 271–272
  in turtle, 258–259
Coronoid fossa, 170
Coronoid process
  in cat, 155, 170
  in frog, 130–131
  in iguana, 265
  in turtle, 258–259
Corpora cavernosa penis, 241–242
Corpus callosum, 245
Corpus callusum, 251
Corpus quadrigemina, 249
Corpus spongiosum, 241–242
Costal cartilage, 168
Costal demifacets, 166
Costal facet, 166
Costocervical artery, 226–228
Costocervical vein, 221–222
Coverts, 296–297
Cranial, defined, xix–xx
Cranial cavity
  in iguana, 262
  in turtle, 254–255
Cranial fossae, 155
Cranial nerves. *See also names of specific nerves*
  in cat, 249–251
  functions of, 250f
  in shark, 70–77
  in sheep, 251t
Cranial skeleton. *See also* Skull
  of cat, 148–156
  of frog, 127–131
  of mudpuppy, 89–91
  of perch, 79–82
  of pigeon, 287–294
  of shark, 28–31
Craniata, 1, 2f, 3–5, 6f, 7
Cranioquadrate passage, 278
Cremasteric pouches, 240–241
Cribriform foramina, 154
Cribriform plate, 154
Cricoid cartilage, 206
Cricothyroid muscle, 206
Crocodylomorpha, 15, 16f
Crop, 297–298
Crurotarsi, 15, 16f
Crus (shank)
  in cat, 176–177
  in frog, 133
Crus of penis, 241–242
Ctenoid scale, 83
Cuboid bones, 174
Cucullaris, 101
Cucullaris muscle, 40–41
Cuneiform bones, 171, 174
Cutaneous artery, 142
Cutaneous vein, 117
Cyclostome, 7, 19
Cystic duct
  in cat, 217–218
  in mudpuppy, 113

D

Deep, defined, xix–xx
Deep cervical artery, 226–228
Deep circumflex iliac artery/vein, 228–230
Deep femoral artery/vein, 189, 230
Deep ophthalmic nerve, 65, 74–75
Deltoid ridge, 170
deltoideus), 298
Deltoideus, 298–300
Deltoideus, pars propatagialis of, 298
Deltoideus major, 300
Deltoideus minor, 300
Dens, 165–166
Dentary bone
  in alligator, 278
  in cat, 155
  in dinosaur, 284
  in frog, 130–131
  in iguana, 265
  in mudpuppy, 91
  in perch, 81
  in pigeon, 289–291
  in snake, 271–272
  in turtle, 258–259
Dentary teeth, 109–110
  in cat, 155
  in snake, 271–272
Denticles (placoid scales), 35
Dentine, 35
Depressor mandibulae, 101–102
Dermal skull, 89
Dermis, 35
Descending colon, 216–217
Descending flange of pterygoid, 261–262

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

Deuterostomata, 2f, 4
Diaphragm
  in cat, 207–208
  vessels anterior to, 220–228
  vessels posterior to, 228–230
Diaphysis (shaft)
  of femur, 172–173
  of fibula, 174
Diapsida, 15, 16f, 17–18
Diastema, 151–153
Diencephalon
  in cat, 245–249
  in shark, 72
Digastric muscle, 202, 205
Digestive system
  of cat, 204–220
  of frog, 140
  of lamprey, 22
  of mudpuppy, 110–113
  of perch, 83
  of pigeon, 303–305
  of shark, 45–50
Digitiform gland, 47
Digitiform gland (rectal gland), 59
Digits
  in cat, 171
  in frog, 132
Dilatator laryngis, 101
Dinosauria, 15, 16f
Dipnoi, 11–13, 12f
Distal, defined, xix–xx
Dogfish shark. *See* Shark
Dorsal, defined, xix–xx
Dorsal aorta
  in frog, 142
  in lamprey, 24
  in mudpuppy, 119–121
  in shark, 51–53
Dorsal border, of scapula, 168
Dorsal fins
  in lamprey, 21
  in perch, 81, 83
  in shark, 28, 31, 38
Dorsal gastric artery, 54–56
Dorsal hyoid constrictor muscles, 40–41
Dorsal iliac crest, 293
Dorsal interarcual muscles, 43
Dorsal oblique muscle, 65
Dorsal rectus muscle, 65
Dorsal superficial constrictor muscles, 40–41
Dorsalis scapulae, 101
Dorsalis trunci, 98
Dorsolateral iliac crest, 293
Dorsolumbar vein, 145
Dorsum (back)
  in cat, 176, 199
  in pigeon, 294–296
Ductuli efferentes, 113, 140
Ductus deferens, 239, 241, 308
Duodenocolic ligament, 217
Duodenum
  in cat, 216–217
  in frog, 140
  in mudpuppy, 110–113
  in perch, 87
  in pigeon, 304–305
  in shark, 46–47
Dura mater, 245

E

Ear
  in cat, 150
  middle, 150, 154, 289
  in pigeon, 289
  in shark, 66–67
Echinodermata, 1, 2f, 6
Ectopterygoid
  in alligator, 273
  in dinosaur, 283–284
  in iguana, 264–265
  in snake, 271
Ectotympanic bone, 154
Efferent branchial artery
  in lamprey, 24
  in mudpuppy, 119–121
  in shark, 51–52
Efferent ductules, of testis
  of frog, 140
  in shark, 62
Efferent renal vein
  in mudpuppy, 117
  in shark, 58
Efferent spiracular artery, 53–54
Elasmobranchii, 9f, 10
Elpistostege, 11–13
Elpistostegid, 11–13, 12f–13f
Embryonic development, 4
Enamel, 35
Endolymph, 66–67
Endolymphatic duct, 67
Endolymphatic foramina, 28
Endolymphatic fossa, 28
Endolymphatic pores, 38
Endotympanic bone, 154
Enteropneustra, 6–7
Epaxial musculature
  of mudpuppy, 97
  of shark, 39
Epibranchial bones, 91–92
Epibranchial musculature, 40–41
Epibranchials, 31
Epicondyles
  of femur, 173
  of humerus, 170
Epidermis, 35
Epididymis
  in cat, 241
  in shark, 59–62
Epigastric arteries, 121–125. *See also* Ventrolateral arteries
Epiglottal cartilage, 206
Epiglottis, 206
Epihyoid bone, 155–156
Epimysium, 177
Epiphyseal foramen, 28
Epiphysis, 70–72
Epiploic foramen, 214–216
Epipterygoid
  in dinosaur, 282–283
  in iguana, 264
  in turtle, 254–255
Episternum, 131–132
Epithalamus
  in cat, 247
  in shark, 72
Epitrochlearis, 181
Epurals, 81–82
Esophagus
  in cat, 206
  in frog, 134–135, 140
  in perch, 87
  in pigeon, 297–298, 303
  in shark, 45
"Esophagus", in lamprey, 22–23
Ethmoid bone, 154
Ethmoid foramen, 153–154
Ethmoid plate, 91
Eugnathostomata, 9f, 10, 13
Eureptilia, 15, 16f
Euryapsida, 17–18
Eustachian tube (auditory tube), 134–135, 154, 206
Eutheria, 147
Evolution of organisms, 1, 8
Excretory system. *See* Urogenital system
Exoccipital bone
  in alligator, 274–275
  in dinosaur, 283
  in iguana, 261
  in snake, 270
  in turtle, 258
Exoccipital bones, 130
  in cat, 150–151
  in mudpuppy, 90–91
Expansor secundariorum, 300
Extensor antebrachii et carpi radialis, 103
Extensor antebrachii et carpi ulnaris, 103
Extensor digitorum communis, 103, 108
Extensor digitorum lateralis (peroneus tertius), 194
Extensor digitorum longus, 194
Extensor fibularis, 108
Extensor tibialis, 108
External acoustic meatus, 294
External anatomy
  of cat, 176–177
  of frog, 133–134
  of lamprey, 20–21
  of mudpuppy, 96
  of perch, 82–84
  of pigeon, 294–297
  of shark, 35–39
External auditory meatus, 150, 154
External carotid artery
  in cat, 224–226
  in frog, 142
  in mudpuppy, 119–121
  in shark, 52–53
External gills, 96
External iliac artery
  in cat, 189, 230
  in pigeon, 308
External iliac vein, 189, 230
External intercostals, 199

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

External jugular vein
in cat, 181, 222
in frog, 142–143
in mudpuppy, 117
External mandibular fenestra
in alligator, 278
in dinosaur, 284
External nares
in cat, 149–150
in frog, 134
External oblique, 98–99, 179
External pharyngeal slits, 20–21, 35
External pterygoid process, 258
External pudendal artery/vein, 189
External vomeronasal fenestra, 271
External yolk sac, 62–63
Eye
in cat, 176
in frog, 134
in lamprey, 20–21
in mudpuppy, 96
in perch, 82
in pigeon, 288, 294
in shark, 35, 65–66
Eye muscles, 65
Eyeball, 65
Eyelids. *See* Palpebrae

F

Facial artery, 226
Facial foramen, 270
Facial nerve (CN VII)
in cat, 204–205, 249
in shark, 74
Facial vein, 204, 226
Falciform ligament
in cat, 214
in frog, 137
in mudpuppy, 110
in shark, 47–49
Fallopian tube (uterine tube), 242
False vocal cords, 206–207
Fascia, 177
Fascia lata, 189
Fat body, 137–139
Feathers, 294
Felis domestica, 147
Female reproductive system
of cat, 242–244
of frog, 137–140
of mudpuppy, 117
of perch, 85–86
of shark, 62–63
Femoral artery
in cat, 189, 230
in frog, 142
in mudpuppy, 121–125
in pigeon, 308
in shark, 56
Femoral nerve, 189
Femoral vein
in cat, 189, 230
in frog, 145
in mudpuppy, 119
in pigeon, 308
in shark, 58
Femur
in cat, 172–173, 176–177
in frog, 132–133
in mudpuppy, 95
in pigeon, 293
Fenestra cochlea (round window), 154
Fenestra exochoanalis, 264
Fenestra ovalis
in iguana, 262–264
in snake, 270
in turtle, 257
Fenestra ovalis (oval window), 89–90
Fenestra postotica, 257
Fenestra vestibuli (oval window), 154
Fenestration, 16–17
Fibrous tunic, 65–66
Fibula
in cat, 174
in frog, 132–133
in mudpuppy, 95
in pigeon, 293
Fibular facet, 174
Fibulare (=calcaneum), 132–133
Fibularis brevis (peroneus brevis), 194
Fibularis longus (peroneus longus), 194
Filiform papillae, 206
Fimbriae, 242
Fin rays
in lamprey, 21
in perch, 81
Fin spine, 31
Fins
in lamprey, 21
in mudpuppy, 96
in perch, 81–83
in shark, 31–34, 38
Fishes, phylogeny of, 8–16, 79
Fleshy attachment of muscle, 177
Flexor antebrachii et carpi radialis, 103
Flexor antebrachii et carpi ulnaris, 103
Flexor digitorum longus, 194
Flexor digitorum superficialis (plantaris), 194
Flexor primordialis communis, 108
Flexor superficialis longus, 103
Flocculonodular lobe, 249
Folia, of metencephalon, 249
Foliate papillae, 206
Follicles, ovarian, 117, 308
Foramen aereum, 284–285
Foramen aereum of articular, 274–275
Foramen magnum
in alligator, 277–278
in cat, 150–151
in dinosaur, 283
in frog, 130
in iguana, 265
in mudpuppy, 90–91
in pigeon, 289
in shark, 28
in snake, 271
in turtle, 258
Foramen of Monro, 72, 76
Foramen ovale
in alligator, 275
in cat, 154
in frog, 130
Foramen rotundum, 154, 262–264
Foramina. *See also names of specific foramina*
of cat, 152t
of sheep, 251t
Forearm. *See* Antebrachium
Forelimb
in cat, 168–171, 179–186, 186t–187t
in frog, 133
in mudpuppy, 93, 96, 101, 103–106
in pigeon, 292–294
Fornix of callosum, 251
Fourth ventricle, 72, 76
Fovea, 170
Frog
cardiovascular system, 140–145
external anatomy, 133–134
mouth, oral cavity, and pharynx, 134–135
pleuroperitoneal cavity, viscera, and urogenital system, 135–140
postcranial skeleton, 131–133
skull, mandible, hyoid apparatus, 127–131
Frontal, defined, xx–xxi
Frontal bones
in alligator, 273
in cat, 150
in dinosaur, 283
in iguana, 260–261
in mudpuppy, 89
in perch, 79–81
in pigeon, 288–289
in snake, 269–270
Frontoparietal bones, 128–130
Fungiform papillae, 206
Furcula, 292

G

Gall bladder
in cat, 214
in frog, 137
in mudpuppy, 113
in perch, 85
in shark, 46
Gastric artery
in cat, 231–233
in mudpuppy, 121–125
in shark, 54–56
Gastric vein
in cat, 231–233
in frog, 145
in shark, 56
Gastrocnemius, 194
Gastroduodenal artery/vein, 232
Gastroepiploic artery/vein, 232–233
Gastrohepatic artery, 54–56
Gastrohepatic ligament, 110
Gastrohepatoduodenal ligament (lesser omentum), 47–49
Gastrosplenic artery, 56
Gastrosplenic ligament
in cat, 214–216
in mudpuppy, 110–113
in shark, 47

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

Gastrosplenic vein
in cat, 233
in mudpuppy, 110–113, 119
Gemellus caudalis (gemellus inferior), 192
Gemellus cranialis (gemellus superior), 193
Geniculate ganglion, 75
Genioglossus, 102
Genioglossus muscle, 202
Geniohyoid muscle, 202
Geniohyoideus, 102
Genital ducts, absent in lamprey, 22
Genu of corpus callosum, 251
Gill filaments, 84
Gill lamellae, 35, 45
Gill rakers
in perch, 84
in shark, 45
Gill rays, 45
Gills
in mudpuppy, 96
in perch, 84
in shark, 35, 45
Gizzard, 303
Glans penis, 241–242
Glenoid fossa
in cat, 168
in frog, 131–132
in mudpuppy, 93
in pigeon, 292
Glenoid surface, 33
Glossopharyngeal foramen, 28
Glossopharyngeal nerve (CN IX)
in cat, 249
in shark, 75
Glottis
in cat, 206
in frog, 134–135
in mudpuppy, 109–110
Gluteobiceps. *See* Gluteofemoralis
Gluteofemoralis (caudofemoralis, coccygeofemoralis, gluteobiceps), 106, 189
Gluteus medius, 189
Gluteus profundus (gluteus minimus), 192–193
Gluteus superficialis (gluteus maximus), 189
Gnathostomata, 7–8, 9f
Gonads. *See* Ovary; Testis
Gracilis, 189
Grades, 1, 3–4
Greater cornua of hyoid apparatus, 155–156
Greater curvature of stomach, 214
Greater omentum. *See also* Mesogaster
in cat, 214–216
in mudpuppy, 110
Greater trochanter, of femur, 172–173
Greater tuberosity, of humerus, 170
Gubernaculum, 241
Gular fold, 96
Gymnophiona, 14
Gyrus, 245

H

Habenula, 247
Habenular commissure, 247, 251
Hagfishes, 19
Hagfishes, phylogeny, 7
Hair, 176
Hallux, 293
Hamulus, 153–154
Hard palate, 150
Head
of cat, 176, 198–202
of femur, 172–173
of fibula, 174
of humerus, 170
of lamprey, 20–21
of mudpuppy, 96, 99–106
of perch, 79, 82
of radius, 170
of shark, 35, 39–40
Head kidney, 85
Heart
in cat, 220
in frog, 140–142
in lamprey, 24
in mudpuppy, 117
in perch, 85, 88
in pigeon, 303
in shark, 50–51
Hemal arches
in cat, 167
in mudpuppy, 93
in shark, 31
Hemal canal, 31
Hemal plate, 31
Hemal processes, 167
Hemal spine, 31, 81
Hemibranch, 45
Hemichordata, 1–3, 2f, 6–7
Hepatic artery
in cat, 214, 231–232
in shark, 54–56
Hepatic ducts
in cat, 217–218
in mudpuppy, 113
Hepatic portal system
in cat, 228
in shark, 56
Hepatic portal vein
in cat, 233
in frog, 145
in lamprey, 24–26
in mudpuppy, 113, 119
in pigeon, 304–305
in shark, 56
Hepatic sinus
in mudpuppy, 117
in shark, 58
Hepatic veins
in cat, 228
in frog, 144–145
in mudpuppy, 117
in shark, 58
Hepatocavopulmonary ligament, 113
Hepatoduodenal ligament
in cat, 214
in mudpuppy, 110–113
in shark, 47–49
Hepatogastric ligament
in cat, 214
in shark, 47–49
Hepatorenal ligament, 217
Herbivores, 147–148
Highest intercostal arteries, 221
Highest intercostal artery, 226–228
Highest intercostal veins, 221
Hilus of kidney, 239
Hind limb
in cat, 172–174, 188–194
in mudpuppy, 95–96, 106–108
in pigeon, 293
Holobranch
in perch, 84
in shark, 45
Holocephali, 9f, 10, 27
Homoplasic traits, 3
Homoplasy, 2
Hook of clasper, 33–34
Hooklets, 296
Horizontal skeletogenous septum
of mudpuppy, 97
of shark, 39
Horny teeth, 20–21
Humeroantebrachialis, 103
Humerotriceps, 300
Humerus
in cat, 170
in frog, 131–132
in mudpuppy, 93–94
in pigeon, 292
Hyoglossus muscle, 202
Hyoid apparatus
in cat, 155–156
in frog, 131
in mudpuppy, 89, 91–92
in pigeon, 288–291
Hyoid arch
in mudpuppy, 109–110
in shark, 28
Hyoid constrictor muscles, 40–41
Hyoidean sinus, 58
Hyomandibular, 31
Hyomandibular bone, 81
Hyomandibular branch of facial nerve, 75
Hyomandibular foramen, 28
Hyomandibular nerve, 40
Hypaxial musculature, 39, 97
Hypobranchial artery, 54
Hypobranchial musculature, 43–44
Hypobranchial nerve, 75
Hypobranchials, 31
Hypogastric artery
in frog, 142
in mudpuppy, 121–125
Hypoglossal canal, 154
Hypoglossal foramina
in alligator, 278
in iguana, 265
in turtle, 258
Hypoglossal nerve (CN XII)
in cat, 224–226, 249
in shark, 74
Hypohyal bone, 91–92
Hypophyseal pouch, 24
Hypophysis
in cat, 245–247
in shark, 76

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

Hypotarsus, 293
Hypothalamus
  in cat, 245–247
  in shark, 72
Hypurals, 81–82

I

Ichthyosauria, 16, 16f
Iguana iguana, 260
Iguana skull and mandible, 260–268
Ileocolic artery/vein, 233
Ileum, 216–217
Iliac arteries, 230
  in cat, 189, 230
  in frog, 142
  in mudpuppy, 121–125
  in pigeon, 308–309
  in shark, 56
Iliac artery, deep circumflex, 228–230
Iliac crest
  in cat, 172
  in frog, 132–133
  in pigeon, 293
Iliac process, 33–34
Iliac veins
  in cat, 189, 230
  deep circumflex, 228–230
  in frog, 145
  in mudpuppy, 119
  in pigeon, 308–309
Iliocostalis muscle, 199
Ilioextensorius, 108
Iliofemoralis, 108
Iliofibularis, 108
Ilioischiadic foramen, 293
Iliopsoas muscle, 189
Iliotibialis, 108
Ilium
  in cat, 172
  in frog, 132–133
  in mudpuppy, 94–95
  in pigeon, 293
Incisive foramen, 275–277
Incisor teeth, 151
Incisura columella auris, 257
Incus, 154
Inferior alveolar foramen, 259
Inferior colliculi, 249
Inferior jugular vein
  in lamprey, 24–26
  in shark, 58
Inferior orbital foramen, 264
Inferior process of prootic, 262–264
Infraorbital canal, 153
Infraorbital foramen, 264
Infraorbital nerve, 65, 74–75
Infraspinatus muscle, 183
Infraspinous fossa, 168
Infratemporal fenestra
  in alligator, 274
  in dinosaur, 280
  in iguana, 261–262
Infundibulum
  of hypothalamus, 76, 245–247
  of uterine tube, 242
Inguinal canal, 241
Innominate bones, 172, 293
Innominate vein, 142–143
Integument
  of frog, 134
  of shark, 35
Interarcual muscles, 42–43
Interbranchial muscle, 42–43, 45
Interbranchial septa, 35, 42–43, 45
Intercalary plates, 31
Intercondyloid fossa, 173
Intercostal arteries, 221, 224
Intercostal muscles, 199
Intercostal veins, 221
Interhyoideus, 102
Interhyoideus muscle, 41–42
Interiliac anastomosis, 308–309
Interior iliac vein, 308–309
Intermandibular foramen, 278
Intermandibularis, 102
Intermandibularis muscle, 41–42
Intermediate cuneiform, 174
Intermediate mass, 247–249
Internal acoustic meatus, 155
Internal carotid artery
  in cat, 224–226
  in frog, 142
  in mudpuppy, 119–121
  in pigeon, 303
  in shark, 52–54
Internal carotid ligament, 224–226
Internal choanae
  in cat, 206
  in mudpuppy, 109–110
Internal iliac artery
  in cat, 230
  in pigeon, 308–309
Internal iliac vein, 230
Internal intercostals, 199
Internal jugular vein
  in cat, 222
  in frog, 142–143
  in mudpuppy, 117
Internal mammary artery, 221–222, 226–228
Internal mammary vein, 221–222
Internal mandibular fenestra, 284–285
Internal oblique
  in cat, 198
  in mudpuppy, 98–99
Internal pharyngeal slits, 45
Internal spermatic artery/vein, 228
Internal yolk sac, 62–63
Internarial septum, 275–277
Interneural arch (intercalary plates), 31
Interoperculum, 79
Interorbital foramen, 254–255
Interorbital septum, 273
Interosseus crest, 170
Interparietal bone, 150
Interpterygoid vacuities, 128
Intersegmental arteries, 56
Intersegmental veins, 58
Interventricluar foramen (foramen of Monro), 72, 76
Interventricular foramen, 251
Interventricular groove, 220
Intervertebral foramen, 164
Intestinal artery, 56
Intestinal vein
  in frog, 145
  in shark, 56
Intestines
  in cat, 214
  in frog, 140
  in lamprey, 22
  in mudpuppy, 110
  in perch, 85
  in pigeon, 303–305
Invagination, 5
Invertibrates, 1
Iris, 65–66
Ischiac cartilage, 94–95
Ischiadic artery, 308
Ischiadic nerve, 190–191
Ischiadic vein, 308
Ischial symphysis, 172
Ischial tuberosity, 172
Ischiocaudalis, 106
Ischiofemoral anastomosis, 308
Ischiofemoralis, 106
Ischioflexorius, 106–108
Ischiopubic fenestra, 293
Ischium
  in cat, 172
  in frog, 132–133
  in mudpuppy, 94–95
  in pigeon, 293
Islets of Langerhans, 218
Isthmus of pancreas, 46–47

J

Jaw, cat, 201–202
Jejunum, 216–217
Jugal (zygomatic bone), 153
Jugal bone, 289
  in alligator, 273
  in dinosaur, 280
  in iguana, 260–261
  in turtle, 254–255
Jugular foramen
  in cat, 154
  in snake, 271
  in turtle, 258
Jugular process, 150–151
Jugular vein
  in cat, 181, 201–202, 222–224
  in frog, 142–143
  in lamprey, 24–26
  in mudpuppy, 117
  in pigeon, 303
  in shark, 58
Jugular vein recess, 262–264

K

Keel (carina), 292
Kidney
  in cat, 217, 239
  in frog, 140, 142
  in lamprey, 22
  in mudpuppy, 113
  in perch, 85, 87–88
  in pigeon, 308
  in shark, 47, 56–62

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

Kinesis
in lizard, 266–267
in pigeon, 291
Kinetic skulls
in iguana, 264
in lizard, 266–267
in pigeon, 291

L

Labia (lips)
in cat, 176, 206
in mudpuppy, 96
Labial cartilage, 30–31
Labial fold, 35
Labial pocket, 35
Lacrimal bone
in alligator, 273
in cat, 153
in dinosaur, 280
in iguana, 260–261
in perch, 79–81
Lacrimal canal, 153, 273
Lacrimal foramen
in iguana, 260–261
in snake, 270
Lacrimal pneumatic recess, 280–282
Lagena, 67
Lamina, vertebral, 164
Lamina quadrigemina, 249, 251
Lamina terminalis, 251
Lamprey
external anatomy, 20–21
introduction, 19
phylogeny, 7–8
pleuroperitoneal cavity and viscera, 21–22
sagittal section, 22–26
skeletal system, 19–20
Large intestine. *See also* Colon
in cat, 216–217
in frog, 140
in mudpuppy, 110
in pigeon, 303
Laryngeal prominence, 134–135
Laryngopharynx, 206
Larynx, 206
Lateral, defined, xix–xx
Lateral abdominal vein, 58
Lateral carotid foramen, 278
Lateral circumflex artery/vein, 189–190
Lateral condyle
of femur, 173
of tibia, 173–174
Lateral cuneiform, 174
Lateral epicondyle, of femur, 173
Lateral epicondyle, of humerus, 170
Lateral eustachian foramina, 277
Lateral head, triceps brachii, 181
Lateral interarcual muscles, 43
Lateral ligaments, 214
Lateral line, 83
Lateral line canal, 38, 64
Lateral line nerves, 74–76
Lateral line system
in lamprey, 21
in shark, 38, 64
Lateral malleolus, 174
Lateral olfactory stria, 245
Lateral palatine process of palatine, 271
Lateral rectus muscle, 65
Lateral semicircular duct, 67
Lateral vein, 117
Lateral ventricles
in cat, 251
in shark, 72, 76
Laterosphenoid
in alligator, 275
in dinosaur, 282–283
Latissimus dorsi
in cat, 179
in mudpuppy, 101
in pigeon, 300
Left brachiocephalic vein, 221–222
Left colic artery/vein, 233
Left common carotid artery, 224
Left gastric artery/vein, 231–233
Left gastroepiploic artery/vein, 233
Left internal mammary artery/vein, 221–222
Left lateral lobe, of liver, 214
Left medial lobe, of liver, 214
Left subclavian artery, 220–221
Lens, 65–66
Lepidosauromorpha, 15–16, 16f
Lepisosteidae, 10, 11f
Lesser cornua of hyoid apparatus, 155–156
Lesser curvature of stomach, 214
Lesser omentum, 214. *See also* Gastrohepatoduodenal ligament
Lesser peritoneal cavity, 214–216
Lesser trochanter, of femur, 172–173
Lesser tuberosity, of humerus, 170
Levator hyomandibulae muscle, 40
Levator palatoquadrati muscle, 40
Levator scapulae, 103–106
Levator scapulae ventralis, 181
Levatores arcuum, 101
Leydig's gland, 59–62
Lienogastric ligament. *See* Gastrosplenic ligament
Lienogastric vein, 56
Lienomesenteric vein, 56
Ligamentum arteriosum, 220
Linea alba, 39
Linea aspera, 172–173
Lingual artery, 226
Lingual cartilage, 19, 23
Lingual frenulum, 206
Lingual nerve, 205
Lingual vein, 117, 226
Lingualis proprius, 202
Linguofacial vein (anterior facial vein), 204, 222–224, 226
Linnean classification system, 1
Lips. *See* Labia
Lissamphibia, 14
Liver
in cat, 214
in frog, 137
in lamprey, 22
in mudpuppy, 110
in perch, 85
in pigeon, 303
in shark, 46
Lizard
iguana skull and mandible, 260–268
kinesis in skulls, 266–267
Long head, triceps brachii, 181
Long tendon of long head (pars propatagialis of deltoideus), 298–300
Longissimus capitis, 199
Longissimus dorsi, 199
Longitudinal cerebral fissure, 245
Longus colli, 198
Loose connective tissue, 177
Lumbar vertebrae
in cat, 164, 167
in pigeon, 291
Lumbodorsal fascia, 179
Lung
in cat, 207–208, 210–212
in frog, 134–135, 140
in mudpuppy, 113
in pigeon, 303
Lymph nodes, 204

M

Magnum, 171
Malar (zygomatic bone), 153–155
Male reproductive system
of cat, 240–242
of frog, 137–140
of mudpuppy, 113
of perch, 86–87
of shark, 59–62
Malleus, 154
Mammalia, 14, 15f, 147
Mammary artery, 221–222, 226–228
Mammary glands, 179, 244
Mammary vein, 221–222
Mammillary body, 245–247, 251
Mammillary processes, 167
Mandible
in alligator, 274, 277–279
in cat, 155
in dinosaur, 284–285
in frog, 130–131
in iguana, 261, 264–266
in mudpuppy, 89, 91
in perch, 82
in pigeon, 288–291
in snake, 270–272
in turtle, 257–259
Mandibular adductor fossa, 278
Mandibular arch, 8
in mudpuppy, 109–110
in shark, 28
Mandibular branch of trigeminal nerve, 74–75
Mandibular cartilage. *See* Meckel's cartilage
Mandibular condyle
in alligator, 274
in dinosaur, 283
in iguana, 261
in snake, 270
in turtle, 257–258
Mandibular duct, 205
Mandibular foramen
in cat, 155
in pigeon, 289–291

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

Mandibular fossa
in cat, 154
in iguana, 265–266
Mandibular gland, 181, 204
Mandibular nerve, 65
Mandibular symphysis
in cat, 155
in iguana, 266
in turtle, 258–259
Manubrium, 168
Manus
in cat, 171, 176–177
in frog, 132–133
Massa intermedia, 247–249
Masseter muscle, 202, 204–205
Masseteric fossa, 155
Mastoid bone, 154
Mastoid process, 154
Maxilla
in alligator, 273
in cat, 151–153
in dinosaur, 280
in frog, 128
in iguana, 260
in perch, 79–82
in pigeon, 289
in snake, 271
in turtle, 253
Maxillae, 289
Maxillary artery, 226
Maxillary branch of trigeminal nerve, 74–75
Maxillary fenestra, 280
Maxillary groove, 134
Maxillary teeth
in frog, 128, 134
in snake, 271
Maxillary vein (posterior facial vein), 204, 222–224, 226
Meckelian canal
in alligator, 278–279
in iguana, 266
Meckelian fossa
in dinosaur, 284–285
in turtle, 258–259
Meckelian groove, 271–272
Meckelian sulcus, 259
Meckel's cartilage
in alligator, 278–279
in frog, 130–131
in iguana, 266
in mudpuppy, 91
in shark, 30–31
in turtle, 259
Medial, defined, xix–xx
Medial condyle
of femur, 173
of tibia, 173–174
Medial cuneiform, 174
Medial epicondyle, of femur, 173
Medial epicondyle, of humerus, 170
Medial head, triceps, 186
Medial head, triceps brachii, 181
Medial malleolus, 174
Medial maxillary process of maxilla, 271
Medial olfactory stria, 245
Medial palatine process of palatine, 271
Medial rectus muscle, 65
Median caudal artery/vein, 308–309
Median eustachian foramen, 277
Median ligament
in cat, 214
in mudpuppy, 110
Median sacral artery/vein, 230
Mediastinal septum, 208
Mediastinum, 207–208
Medulla oblongata
in cat, 249
in shark, 72
Medullary velum, 249, 251
Melanophores, 35
Membranous labyrinth, 66–67
Meninges, 244–245
Mental foramina, 155
Mentomeckelian
in frog, 130–131
in mudpuppy, 91
Mesencephalon
in cat, 249
in shark, 72
Mesenteric arteries
in cat, 228–230, 233
in frog, 142
in mudpuppy, 121–125
in pigeon, 306–309
in shark, 56
Mesenteric lymph nodes, 217
Mesenteric veins
in cat, 233
in mudpuppy, 119
in pigeon, 306–308
Mesentery
in cat, 217
in mudpuppy, 110
in shark, 45–46
Mesethmoid bone, 154, 288–289
Mesocolon, 217
Mesoduodenum, 217
Mesogaster, 214
Mesogaster (greater omentum), 47
Mesometrium, 242
Mesopterygium, 33
Mesorchium
in cat, 241
in frog, 140
in mudpuppy, 113
in shark, 62
Mesorectum
in cat, 217
in mudpuppy, 110
in shark, 47
Mesosalpinx, 242
Mesotubarium
in mudpuppy, 117
in shark, 62
Mesovarium
in cat, 242
in frog, 139–140
in mudpuppy, 117
in shark, 62
Metacarpal bones
in cat, 171
in frog, 132
in mudpuppy, 93–94
in pigeon, 293
Metacarpus, 171
Metacromion process, 168
Metapterygium, 33
Metapterygoid bone, 81
Metatarsal bones
in cat, 174
in frog, 132–133
in mudpuppy, 95
in pigeon, 293
Metatheria, 147
Metencephalon
in cat, 245, 249
in shark, 72
Middle cerebellar peduncle, 251
Middle cerebellar peduncles, 251
Middle colic artery, 233
Middle cranial fossa, 155
Middle ear
in cat, 154
in pigeon, 289
Middle intermandibular foramen, 259
Middle lateral line nerve (MLLN), 75
Middle lobe, lung, 210
Midsagittal, defined, xx–xxi
Monophyletic (natural) groups, 1–2
Monotremata, 14, 15f, 147
Mouth
of cat, 176, 206
of frog, 134–135
of lamprey, 20–21
of mudpuppy, 96, 109–110
of perch, 82, 84–85
of shark, 35, 45
Mudpuppy
cardiovascular system, 117–125
external anatomy, 96
mouth, oral cavity, and pharynx, 96, 109–110
muscular system, 96–109
pleuroperitoneal cavity and viscera, 110–113
skeletal system, 89–96
urogenital system, 113–117
Multifidus muscle, 199
Musculature. *See also names of specific muscles*
of cat, 177–202
of eye, 65
fleshy attachment, 177
of forelimb, in cat, 179–186
of head and trunk, in cat, 198–202
of hind limb, in cat, 188–194
of lamprey, 21, 23
of mudpuppy, 96–109
of pigeon, 297–300
of shark, 39–45
subdivision, 178
Musculocutaneous vein, 136, 142–143
Myelencephalon
in cat, 249
in shark, 70–72
Mylohyoid foramen, 284–285
Mylohyoid muscle, 202

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

Myomeres
in lamprey, 21
in mudpuppy, 97
in shark, 39
Myosepta
in lamprey, 21
in mudpuppy, 97
in shark, 39

N

Nares
in alligator, 273
in dinosaur, 280
in iguana, 260
in turtle, 253
Nares (nostrils)
in cat, 149–150, 176
in frog, 128–130, 134
in lamprey, 21
in mudpuppy, 96
in perch, 82
in pigeon, 294
in shark, 28, 35
Nasal
in alligator, 275–277
in dinosaur, 280
in snake, 270
in turtle, 253
Nasal aperture, 149–150
Nasal bones
in cat, 150
in frog, 128–130
in perch, 79–81
in pigeon, 289
Nasal capsules, 28
Nasopharynx, 206
Natural (monophyletic) groups, 1–2
Navicular bone, 174
Neck
in cat, 176, 249
in mudpuppy, 96
in pigeon, 294
Neck, of femur, 172–173
Neck, of radius, 170
Neck, of rib, 168
Necturus maculosus, 89
Neopterygii, 10, 11f
Nerves. *See names of specific nerves*
Nervous system. *See also* Brain; Cranial nerves; Spinal nerves
of cat, 244–252
of lamprey, 23–24
of shark, 70–77
Neural arch
in cat, 164
in mudpuppy, 93
in shark, 31
Neural canal
in cat, 164
in mudpuppy, 93
in shark, 31
Neural crest, 7
Neural plate, 31
Neural process
in cat, 164
in mudpuppy, 93
Neural spine
in cat, 199
in perch, 81
in shark, 31
Neurogenic placodes, 7
Nictitating membrane
in cat, 176
in frog, 134
Nidamental gland, 62–63
Nonvetibrates, 1
Nose, 64
Nostrils. *See* Nares
Notochord, 5, 20, 23–24, 31

O

Obturator foramen
in cat, 172
in mudpuppy, 94–95
in pigeon, 293
Obturatorius externus, 193–194
Obturatorius internus, 189
Occipital artery, 224–226
Occipital bone
in cat, 150–151
in pigeon, 288–289
Occipital condyle
in alligator, 277
in cat, 150–151
in dinosaur, 283
in frog, 130
in iguana, 265
in mudpuppy, 90–91
in pigeon, 289
in shark, 28
in snake, 271
in turtle, 258
Occipital nerve, 75–76
Occipitovertebral artery, 142
Octaval nerve. *See* Vestibulocochlear nerve
Oculomotor foramina, 28
Oculomotor nerve (CN III)
in cat, 249
in shark, 65, 74
Olecranon, 170
Olecranon fossa, 170
Olecranon process, 293
Olfactory bulbs
in cat, 245
in shark, 72
Olfactory nerve (CN I), 74
Olfactory sac
in lamprey, 24
in shark, 35, 64
Olfactory stria, 245
Olfactory tract
in cat, 245
in shark, 72
Omental bursa, 214
Omentum, greater. *See also* Mesogaster
in cat, 214
in mudpuppy, 110
Omentum, lesser, 214. *See also* Gastrohepatoduodenal ligament
Omoarcual, 102–103
Omosternum, 131–132
Operculum
in frog, 130
in perch, 79
in pigeon, 294
Ophthalmic nerve
deep, 65, 74–75
superficial, 65
Opisthotic bones, 89–90
in alligator, 278
in dinosaur, 283
in iguana, 262–264
in snake, 270
in turtle, 258
Optic canal, 154
Optic chiasma
in cat, 245–247, 251
in shark, 76
Optic foramen, 28
in frog, 130
in iguana, 264
in snake, 269–270
Optic lobes, 72
Optic nerve (CN II)
in cat, 245–247
in shark, 65, 74
Optic pedicle, 28, 65
Optic ventricle, 76
Oral cavity
in cat, 205–212
in frog, 134–135
in lamprey, 23
in mudpuppy, 109–110
in perch, 84–85
in shark, 45
Oral cecum, 23
Oral disk, 20–21
Oral funnel, 19–21
Oral intermandibular foramen, 259
Orbit
in alligator, 273
in cat, 149–150
in dinosaur, 280–282
in frog, 128
in iguana, 260–261
in perch, 79–81
in pigeon, 288
in shark, 28, 65
in snake, 269–270
in turtle, 253
Orbital fissure, 154
Orbital process, 30–31
Orbital sinus, 58
Orbitonasal foramen, 254–255
Orbitosphenoid bone
in cat, 153–154
in iguana, 264
Oropharynx, 206
Os penis, 241–242
Osteichthyes, 9f, 10, 11f
Ostium
in frog, 140
in mudpuppy, 117
in pigeon, 308
Ostium tubae
in cat, 242
in shark, 62

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

Ostracoderms, 7
Otic aperture, 274–275
Otic capsules
  in mudpuppy, 89–91
  in shark, 28
Otic lateral line nerve(OLLN), 74
Otic recess, 274–275
Oval window, 154
Ovarian artery
  in cat, 228
  in mudpuppy, 121–125
  in shark, 54–56
Ovarian duct, 85–86
Ovarian follicles, 117, 308
Ovarian ligament, 242
Ovarian vein
  in cat, 228
  in frog, 144–145
  in mudpuppy, 117
Ovary
  in cat, 242
  in frog, 137–139
  in lamprey, 22
  in mudpuppy, 117
  in perch, 85
  in pigeon, 308
  in shark, 47, 59
Oviduct
  in frog, 137–139
  in mudpuppy, 117
  in pigeon, 308
  in shark, 62
Ovisac, 140

P

Palapterygoid, 89
Palatal fenestra, 275–277
Palatal rugae, 206
Palatal teeth, 84
Palate, 150, 206
Palatine
  in alligator, 275
  in dinosaur, 283–284
  in iguana, 264
  in snake, 270–271
  in turtle, 258
Palatine bones
  in cat, 153
  in frog, 128–130
  in pigeon, 289
Palatine branch of facial nerve, 75
Palatine canal, 153
Palatine fissure, 151
Palatine teeth, 271
Palatine tonsils, 206
Palatoglossal arches, 206
Palatoquadrate cartilages, 30–31
Palpebrae (eyelids)
  in cat, 176
  in frog, 134
Palpebral, 273
Pampiniform plexus, 241
Pancreas
  in cat, 214–218
  in frog, 140
  in mudpuppy, 110–113
  in perch, 87
  in pigeon, 304–305
  in shark, 46–47
Pancreas, head of, 217
Pancreas, tail of, 214–216, 218
Pancreatic duct, 218
Pancreaticoduodenal artery/vein
  in cat, 232–233
  in pigeon, 306
Pancreaticomesenteric artery, 54–56
Pancreaticomesenteric vein, 56
Panderichthys, 11–13
Papillae
  buccal, 20–21
  cloacal, 113
  of esophagus, 46
  of oral cavity, 206
  remigeal, 293
  renal, 239
  urinary, 35–37, 62–63
  urogenital, 21, 35–37, 62
Parachordal plate, 91
Paraoccipital process
  in alligator, 278
  in dinosaur, 283
  in iguana, 261
Parareptilia, 14–15, 15f, 18
Parasagittal, defined, xx–xxi
Parasphenoid bone
  in alligator, 275
  in frog, 130
  in mudpuppy, 91
  in pigeon, 289
  in snake, 271
  in turtle, 258
Parasphenoid process, 264
Parasphenoid rostrum, 283
Parietal bones
  in alligator, 275–277
  in cat, 150
  in dinosaur, 283
  in iguana, 261
  in mudpuppy, 89
  in perch, 79–81
  in pigeon, 288–289
  in snake, 269–270
  in turtle, 254–255
Parietal foramen, 261
Parietal pericardium
  in cat, 212
  in mudpuppy, 117
  in shark, 50
Parietal peritoneum
  in cat, 212–213
  in perch, 85
  in shark, 45–46
Parietal pleura, 208
Parietal tunica vaginalis, 241
Paroccipital process, 289
Parotid duct, 204–205
Parotid gland, 181, 204
Pars propatagialis
  of biceps brachii, 298–300
  of deltoideus, 298–300
Patagial accessory. *See* Pars propatagialis
Patella
  in cat, 173
  in pigeon, 293
Patellar trochlea, 173
Pectineus muscle, 189
Pectoantebrachialis muscle, 181
Pectoral abductor muscle, 39
Pectoral adductor muscle, 39
Pectoral arteries, 302–303
Pectoral fins
  in perch, 83
  in shark, 28, 33, 38
Pectoral girdle
  in frog, 131–132
  in mudpuppy, 93
  in perch, 82
  in pigeon, 292–293
  in shark, 28, 33
Pectoral limb, in mudpuppy, 96. *See also* Forelimb
Pectoral region muscles, 99–106
Pectoral ridge, 170
Pectoral vein, 302–303
Pectoralis
  in mudpuppy, 102–103
  in pigeon, 297–298
Pectoralis major, 181
Pectoralis minor, 181–183
Pectoriscapularis, 101
Pedicle, vertebral, 164
Pelvic canal, 241–242
Pelvic fins
  in perch, 83
  in shark, 28, 33, 38
Pelvic girdle
  in frog, 131–133
  in mudpuppy, 94–95
  in perch, 82
  in pigeon, 293
  in shark, 28, 33–34
Pelvic limb. *See* Hind limb
Pelvic region muscles, 106–108
Pelvic symphysis, 172
Pelvic vein
  in frog, 145
  in mudpuppy, 119
Pelvis
  in cat, 172, 176
  in frog, 132–133
Penis, 177, 240–241
Perca flavens, 79
Perch
  external anatomy, 82–84
  mouth, oral cavity, and pharynx, 84–85
  pleuroperitoneal cavity and viscera, 85–88
  skeleton, 79–82
Pericardial artery, 52–53
Pericardial cartilage, 19–20
Pericardial cavity
  in cat, 212, 220
  in frog, 140–142
  in mudpuppy, 117
  in shark, 45
Pericardial sac, 117
Pericardioperitoneal canal, 50

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

Pericardium
in cat, 212, 220
in frog, 137, 140–142
in mudpuppy, 117
in shark, 50
Perilymphatic foramina, 28
Peritoneal cavity, 214–216
Peritoneum
in cat, 212–213
in perch, 85
in shark, 45–46
Peroneus brevis, 194
Peroneus longus, 194
Peroneus tertius, 194
Pes
in cat, 174, 176–177
in frog, 132–133
in pigeon, 293
Petromyzon marinus, 19
Petromyzontoidea, 6f, 7–8
Petrosal bone, 154
Petrosal ganglion, 75
Phalanges
in cat, 171, 174
in frog, 132–133
in mudpuppy, 93–95
in pigeon, 293
Pharyngeal artery, 224–226
Pharyngeal slits, 4–5
in lamprey, 20–21
in mudpuppy, 96
in shark, 35
Pharyngeal teeth, 84
Pharyngobranchials, 31
Pharyngoesophageal artery, 52–53
Pharynx
in cat, 206
frog, 134–135
in mudpuppy, 109–110
in perch, 82, 84–85
in shark, 35–37, 45
Phrenic nerve, 211–212, 224
Phylogeny
of Choanata, 13f
of Chordata, 6f
classification and, 1–4
defined, 1
of Deuterostomata, 2f
of Reptilia, 16f
of Sarcopterygii, 12f
of Teleostomi, 11f
of Tetrapoda, 15f
of Vertebrata, 9f
of vertebrates, 8–16
Physoclistous condition, 87
Physostomous condition, 87
Pia mater, 245
Pigeon
body cavity, viscera, and vessels, 300–310
external anatomy, 294–297
musculature, 297–300
skeleton, 287–294
Pineal body, 251
Pineal eye complex, 21, 24
Pineal gland, 247
Pinnae, 176
Piriform, 245
Piriformis, 193
Pisiform bone, 171
Piston (tongue), 23
Piston cartilage (lingual cartilage), 19, 23
Placodermi, 9, 9f, 13
Placoid scales (denticles), 35
Plantaris, 194
Plesiomorphic traits, 3
Pleura, 208
Pleurapophyses, 167
Pleurodont condition, 264
Pleuroperitoneal cavity
of frog, 135–140
of lamprey, 21–22
of mudpuppy, 110–113
of perch, 85–88
of shark, 45
Polypteriformes, 10, 11f
Pons, 249, 251
Popliteal notch, 173–174
Popliteus muscle, 194
Portal veins. *See* Hepatic portal vein; Renal portal vein
Postcleithrum, 82
Postcranial skeleton
of cat, 164–174
of frog, 131–133
of mudpuppy, 93–95
of perch, 81–82
of pigeon, 291–293
of shark, 31–34
Posterior (caudal), defined, xix–xx
Posterior auricular artery, 226
Posterior auricular vein, 226
Posterior border, of scapula, 168
Posterior cardinal vein
in lamprey, 24–26
in mudpuppy, 117, 119
in shark, 58
Posterior cerebellar peduncle, 251
Posterior cerebellar peduncles, 251
Posterior chamber, of eye, 66
Posterior commissure, 251
Posterior cornua, 131
Posterior cranial fossa, 155
Posterior crest of quadrate, 261
Posterior dorsal fin
in lamprey, 21
in perch, 81, 83
in shark, 28, 31, 38
Posterior facial vein. *See* Maxillary vein
Posterior intestinal artery, 56
Posterior intestinal vein, 56
Posterior jugular foramen, 258
Posterior lateral line nerve (PLLN), 75
Posterior lienogastric vein, 56
Posterior lobe, lung, 210
Posterior mesenteric artery
in cat, 228–230, 233
in pigeon, 308–309
in shark, 56
Posterior mesenteric vein
in cat, 233
in pigeon, 306–308
Posterior palatine foramen, 258
Posterior pancreaticoduodenal artery/vein, 233
Posterior process of prootic, 262–264
Posterior renal portal vein, 308
Posterior renal vein, 308
Posterior semicircular duct, 67
Posterior splenic artery/vein, 233
Posterior surangular foramen, 284
Posterior trigeminal foramen, 270
Posterior utriculus, 67
Posterior vena cava
in cat, 210, 220, 228
in frog, 140, 144–145
in mudpuppy, 113, 117
in pigeon, 303
Posterior ventrolateral artery, 56
Postfrontal, 260–261
Postorbital
in alligator, 273
in dinosaur, 280–282
in iguana, 260–261
in snake, 269–270
in turtle, 254–255
Postorbital process
in cat, 150
in pigeon, 288–289
in shark, 28
Postotic lateral line nerves, 74
Postpatagium, 298
Posttemporal bone, 82
Posttemporal fenestra
in alligator, 278
in dinosaur, 283
in iguana, 265
in turtle, 258
Posttrematic artery, 45
Posttrematic gill filaments, 84
Postzygapophysis
in cat, 164
in mudpuppy, 93
Prearticular bone
in dinosaur, 284
in snake, 271–272
in turtle, 259
Precerebral cavity, 28
Precerebral fenestra, 28
Prefrontal
in alligator, 273
in dinosaur, 282
in iguana, 260–261
in snake, 270
in turtle, 253
Prehallux, 132–133
Premaxilla
in alligator, 273
in cat, 151
in dinosaur, 280
in frog, 128
in iguana, 260
in mudpuppy, 89
in perch, 79–82
in pigeon, 289
in snake, 270
in turtle, 253

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

Premaxillary teeth
in frog, 128, 134
in mudpuppy, 109–110
in snake, 270
Premolar teeth, 151–153
Preoperculum, 79
Preorbitalis muscle, 65
Preotic foramen, 274–275
Preotic lateral line nerves, 74
Prepollex, 132
Presphenoid bone, 153–154
Pretrematic artery, 45
Pretrematic gill filaments, 84
Prezygapophysis
in cat, 164
in mudpuppy, 93
Primary bronchii, 211–212
Primary gill lamellae, 45
Primary remiges, 296–297
Primary tongue, 45
Procoracohumeralis, 101
Procoracoid bone
in frog, 131–132
in perch, 82
in pigeon, 292
Procoracoid cartilage, 93
Prokinesis, 291
Prokinetic, 270
Pronated position, 170
Prootic bone
in alligator, 275
in dinosaur, 282–283
in frog, 130
in iguana, 262–264
in mudpuppy, 89–90
in snake, 270
in turtle, 258
Prootic crest, 262–264
Propatagium, 298
Propterygium, 33
Prostate gland, 241
Proventriculus, 303
Proximal, defined, xix–xx
Pseudobranch, 35
Pterobranchia, 6–7
Pterygiophore
in perch, 81
in shark, 31
Pterygoid blades, 153
Pterygoid bone
in alligator, 273
in dinosaur, 282
in frog, 130
in iguana, 261–262
in mudpuppy, 89–91
in pigeon, 289
in snake, 270
in turtle, 258
Pterygoid muscle, 155
Pterygoid processes, 153–154, 162
Pterygoid ridge, 134
Pterygoid teeth, 109–110
in iguana, 264–265
in snake, 271
Pubic artery, 308
Pubic cartilage, 94–95
Pubic symphysis, 172
Pubic vein, 308
Pubis
in cat, 172
in frog, 132–133
in pigeon, 293
Puboischiadic bar, 33–34
Puboischiadic plate, 94–95
Puboischiofemoralis externus, 106
Puboischiofemoralis internus, 106–108
Puboischiotibialis, 106
Pubotibialis, 106–108
Pudendal artery/vein, 189
Pulmocutaneous arch, 142
Pulmonary arteries
in cat, 220
in frog, 142
in mudpuppy, 119–121
in pigeon, 303
Pulmonary ligament
in cat, 210
in mudpuppy, 113
Pulmonary trunk
in cat, 220
in pigeon, 303
Pulmonary veins
in cat, 220
in frog, 143–144
in mudpuppy, 117–119
in pigeon, 303
Pulp cavity, 35
Pupil, 65–66
Pygostyle, 291
Pyloric cecum, 87
Pyloric region of stomach, 46–47
Pyloric sphincter
in cat, 214
in mudpuppy, 110
Pylorus, 46–47
Pyramids, 249
Pyriform recess, 264
Pyriformis (piriformis), 193
Python molurus, 268

Q

Quadrate bone
in alligator, 274
in dinosaur, 282
in frog, 130
in iguana, 261
in mudpuppy, 89–90
in perch, 81
in pigeon, 289
in snake, 270
in turtle, 257
Quadrate cartilage, 89–90
Quadrate foramen, 283
Quadrate lobe, of liver, 214
Quadrate process of pterygoid, 261–262
Quadratojugal bone
in alligator, 274
in dinosaur, 282
in frog, 128
in pigeon, 289
in turtle, 257–258
Quadratus femoris, 192–193

R

Radial bones, 81
Radial fossa, 170
Radial notch, 170
Radial pterygiophores, 31
Radiale, 293
Radices, 119–121
Radio-ulna, 132
Radius
in cat, 170–171
in frog, 132
in mudpuppy, 93–94
in pigeon, 293
Ramus of dentary, 155
Rana catesbeiana, 127–128
Raphes, 40–41
Ratfish, 27
Rays, 27
Elasmobranchii, 9f, 10
Rectal artery/vein, 233
Rectal gland (digitiform gland), 47
Rectrices, 296–297
Rectum
in cat, 216–217
in perch, 87
in shark, 47
Rectus abdominis
in cat, 198
in mudpuppy, 99
Rectus cervicis, 101–102
Rectus femoris, 192–193
Rectus muscles of eye, 65
Remigeal papillae, 293
Remiges, 296–297
Renal artery
in cat, 228
in mudpuppy, 121–125
in pigeon, 308
Renal capsule, 239
Renal cortex, 239
Renal medulla, 239
Renal papilla, 239
Renal papillae, 239
Renal pelvis, 239
Renal portal system, 56–58
Renal portal vein
in frog, 144–145
in mudpuppy, 119
in pigeon, 308
in shark, 56–58
Renal pyramid, 239
Renal sinus, 239
Renal veins
in cat, 228
in frog, 144–145
in mudpuppy, 117
in pigeon, 308
in shark, 56–58
Reproductive system. *See* Urogenital system
Reptilia, 4, 14–15, 15f, 253
Respiratory system
of cat, 205–212
of lamprey, 23
of pigeon, 287–288, 300–302
of shark, 45–50
Respiratory tube (“pharynx”), 23

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

Retina, 66
Retroarticular, 81
Retroarticular process
  in alligator, 278
  in dinosaur, 284
  in snake, 272
Retroarticular process of articular, 265
Rhachis, 296
Rhamphotheca
  in pigeon, 294
  in turtle, 253
Rhinal sulcus, 245
Rhinarium, 176
Rhipidistia, 11–13, 12f
Rhomboideus, 183
Rhomboideus capitis, 183
Rhomboideus profundus, 300
Rhomboideus superficialis, 300
Rhynchocephalia, 15–16, 16f
Ribs
  in cat, 168
  in mudpuppy, 93
  in perch, 81
  in pigeon, 291
  in shark, 31
Right brachiocephalic vein, 221–222
Right common carotid artery, 224
Right gastroepiploic artery, 232
Right internal mammary artery/vein, 221–222
Right lateral lobe, of liver, 214
Right medial lobe, of liver, 214
Right ovarian vein, 228
Root, of lung, 210–211
Rostral, defined, xix–xx
Rostral carina, 28
Rostral fenestra, 28
Rostrum
  in alligator, 275
  in cat, 153
  in shark, 28
  in turtle, 253
Round ligament, 214, 242
Round window, 154
Rugae of stomach
  in cat, 214
  in shark, 46

S

Sacculus, 67
Sacral artery, 230
Sacral foramina, 167
Sacral vein, 230
Sacral vertebrae
  in cat, 164, 167
  in frog, 131
  in mudpuppy, 93
  in pigeon, 291
Sacrum, 167
Saggital crest, 283
Sagittal, defined, xx–xxi
Sagittal crest, 150
Sagittal section of brain, 249–251
Salamanders, 89
Salivary glands, 204–205
Saphenous artery, 189–190
Saphenous nerve, 189–190
Saphenous vein, 189–190
Sarcopterygii, 9f, 10–13, 11f–12f
Sartorius, 189
Sauropterygia, 16, 16f
Scalenus, 198
Scales
  in perch, 82
  in pigeon, 294
  in shark, 35
Scapholunar bone, 171
Scapula
  in cat, 168
  in frog, 131–132
  in mudpuppy, 93
  in perch, 82
  in pigeon, 292
Scapular artery, 228
Scapular process, 33
Scapular spine, 168
Scapular vein, 185, 222–224
Scapulotriceps, 300
Sciatic artery, 142
Sciatic vein, 145
Sclera, 65–66
Sclerotic ring, 288–289
Scrotum, 177, 240–241
Secondary bronchii, 211–212
Secondary remiges, 296–297
Sella turcica, 155
Semicircular ducts, 67
Semimembranosus muscle, 188
Seminal vesicle, 62
Semispinalis capitis, 199
Semispinalis cervicis, 199
Semitendinosus, 188
Sensory organs, 63–70
Septomaxilla
  in iguana, 260
  in snake, 270
Septum pellucidum, 251
Septum supraseptale, 264
Serratus dorsalis caudalis, 199
Serratus dorsalis cranialis, 199
Serratus ventralis, 183
Shaft (diaphysis)
  of femur, 172–173
  of fibula, 174
  of humerus, 170
  of rib, 168
Shaft of feather, 296
Shank. *See* Crus
Shark
  brain and cranial nerves, 70–77
  cardiovascular system, 50–59
  digestive and respiratory systems, 45–50
  Elasmobranchii, 9f, 10
  external anatomy, 35–39
  muscular system, 39–45
  sensory organs, 63–70
  skeletal system, 27–35
  urogenital system, 59–63
Sheep
  cranial nerves, 251t
  skull comparison of mammals, 157–176
Shell gland (nidamental gland), 62–63
Sinus venosus
  in frog, 140–142
  in lamprey, 24
  in mudpuppy, 117
  in perch, 88
  in pigeon, 303
  in shark, 50–51
Siphon, 39, 62
Sister groups, 3
Skates, 27
Skeletal system
  of cat, 148–157
  of frog, 127–133
  of lamprey, 19–20
  of mudpuppy, 89–96
  of perch, 79–82
  of pigeon, 287–294
  of shark, 27–35
Skeletogenous septum, horizontal
  of mudpuppy, 97
  of shark, 39
Skin. *See* Integument
Skinning cat, 178–179
Skull
  in alligator, 273–280
  in cat, 148–155
  comparitive, of sheep, beaver, and cat, 157–176
  in frog, 127–131
  in iguana, 260–268
  kinesis, 264, 266–267
  in mudpuppy, 89–91
  in perch, 79–82
  in pigeon, 288–291
  in snake, 268–273
  in turtle, 253–260
Skull kinesis, 291
Small intestine
  in cat, 216–217
  in frog, 131
  in mudpuppy, 110
  in perch, 85
  in pigeon, 303–305
Snout, of shark, 35
Soft fin rays, 81
Soft palate, 206
Soleus muscle, 194
Somatic motor columns, 72
Somatic sensory column, 72
Somitichordata, 3, 5, 6f
Sperm sac, 62
Spermatic artery, 228
Spermatic cord, 179, 241
Spermatic vein
  in cat, 228
  in frog, 144–145
Sphenethmoid bone, 128–130
Sphenodon, 15–18
Sphenoid bone, 153–154
Sphenopalatine foramen, 153
Sphincter colli, 101–102
Spinal cord, in lamprey, 23–24
Spinal nerves, 70–72
Spinalis dorsi, 199
Spine of clasper, 33–34
Spines, 81

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

Spinodeltoid, 181
Spinotrapezius, 179–181
Spiracle, 35, 45
Spiracular artery, 40, 53–54
Spiracular valve, 35
Spiracularis muscle, 40
Spiral valve, 47
Splanchnocranium, 28–31
Spleen
  in cat, 214
  in frog, 140
  in mudpuppy, 110
  in perch, 85
  in pigeon, 306–308
  in shark, 46–47
Splenial bone, 91
  in alligator, 278
  in dinosaur, 284–285
  in iguana, 265–266
  in snake, 271–272
Splenial teeth, 109–110
Splenic artery, 231–232
Splenic vein, 233
Splenium of corpus callosum, 251
Splenius, 183
Squalus acanthias, 38
Squamata, 15–16, 16f
Squamosal bones
  in alligator, 274–275
  in cat, 154
  in dinosaur, 282
  in frog, 130
  in iguana, 261
  in mudpuppy, 89–90
  in pigeon, 288–289
  in turtle, 255–257
Stapedial artery, 52–53
Stapediotemporal foramen, 258
Stapes, 154
Statoacoustic nerve (CN VIII), 74–75
Stegocephali, 11–14, 12f–13f
Sternal notch, 292
Sternal rib, 291
Sternebrae, 168
Sternohyoid muscle, 198, 202
Sternomastoid muscle, 181
Sternothyroid, 202
Sternum
  in cat, 168
  in frog, 131–132
  in pigeon, 291–292
Stomach
  in cat, 214
  in frog, 140
  in mudpuppy, 110
  in perch, 85
  in pigeon, 303
  in shark, 45–47
Styloform process, 154
Styloglossus muscle, 202
Stylohyoid bone, 155–156
Stylohyoid muscle, 202
Styloid process, 170–171
Stylomastoid foramen, 154
Stylus of columella, 90–91
Subarcuales, 102
Subcardinal vein, 119
Subclavian artery
  in cat, 224
  in frog, 142
  in mudpuppy, 121–125
  in pigeon, 303
  in shark, 54
Subclavian vein
  in cat, 222
  in frog, 142–143
  in mudpuppy, 117
  in pigeon, 303
  in shark, 58
Subcoracoscapularis, 103
Subdivision of musculature, 178
Sublingual gland, 205
Suboperculum, 79
Subscapular artery, 228
Subscapular fossa, 168
Subscapular vein
  in cat, 228
  in frog, 142–143
  in shark, 58
Subscapularis, 186
Subtemporal fenestra, 258
Subvertebralis, 99
Sulcus, 245, 249
Superficial, defined, xix–xx
Superficial constrictor muscles, 40–41
Superficial ophthalmic branch of ADLLN, 74–75
Superficial ophthalmic branch of trigeminal nerve, 74–75
Superficial ophthalmic foramina, 28
Superficial ophthalmic nerve, 65
Superficial temporal vein, 226
Superior colliculi, 249
Superior temporal artery, 226
Supinated position, 170
Supra-angular bone, 289–291
Suprachoroidea, 65–66
Supracleithrum, 82
Supracondyloid foramen, of humerus, 170
Supracoracoideus, 102–103
Supracoracoideus muscle, 292–293, 300
Supradentary, 284–285
Supraoccipital bone, 150–151
  in alligator, 274–275, 278
  in dinosaur, 283
  in iguana, 262
  in snake, 270
  in turtle, 254–255
Supraoccipital crest
  in iguana, 265
  in turtle, 254–255
Supraorbital, 269–270
Supraorbital crest, 28
Suprascapula, 131–132
Suprascapular cartilage
  in mudpuppy, 93
  in shark, 33
Supraspinatus muscle, 183
Supraspinous fossa, 168
Supratemporal
  in iguana, 261
  in snake, 270
Supratemporal fenestra
  in alligator, 274
  in dinosaur, 280
  in iguana, 261
Supratemporal lateral line nerve (STLLN), 75
Surangular bone
  in alligator, 278
  in dinosaur, 284
  in iguana, 265
  in snake, 271–272
  in turtle, 258–259
Surangular foramen, 265
Suspensory ovarian ligament, 242
Swim bladder, 85, 87
Sympathetic trunk, 224
Symplesiomorphic traits, 3
Synapomorphic traits, 3
Synapsida, 14, 15f, 17
Synotic tectum, 91
Synsacrum, 291
Syrinx, 303
Systemic arch, 142
Systemic veins, 58

T

Tail
  of cat, 176
  of lamprey, 21
  of mudpuppy, 96–99
  of perch, 82
  of pigeon, 294–296
  postanal, 5
  of shark, 38
Tail fin, 96
Talus (astragalus), 174
Tarsal bones
  in cat, 174
  in mudpuppy, 95
  in pigeon, 293
Tarsometatarsus, 293
Taxon (taxa), 1
Taxonomy, 1–4
Tectum, 249
Teeth
  in alligator, 273
  in cat, 149–153, 155
  in dinosaur, 280
  in frog, 128, 134
  horny, in lamprey, 20–21
  in iguana, 264
  in mudpuppy, 91, 109–110
  in perch, 82, 84
  in shark, 45
Tela choroidea
  in cat, 247, 249, 251
  in shark, 72
Telencephalon
  in cat, 245
  in shark, 72
Teleost fishes, 79
Teleostei, 10, 11f
Teleostomi, 9f, 10, 11f, 13
Temporal artery, 226
Temporal bone, 154
Temporal canal, 275–277

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

Temporal emargination, 255–257
Temporal fenestra, 255–257
Temporal fossa, 149–150
  in alligator, 274
  in turtle, 255–257
Temporal lines, 150
Temporal vein, 226
Temporalis muscle, 202
Tendinous attachment, 177
Tendons, defined, 177
Tensor fasciae latae, 189
Tentorium, 155
Tenuissimus, 189
Teres major, 183
Teres minor, 183
Terminal nerve(CN O), 74
Tertiary bronchii, 211–212
Tertiary remiges, 296–297
Testicular artery
  in mudpuppy, 121–125
  in shark, 54–56
Testicular duct, 86–87
Testicular vein, 117
Testis
  in cat, 240–241
  in frog, 137–139
  in lamprey, 22
  in mudpuppy, 113
  in pigeon, 86–87, 308
  in shark, 47, 59
Testudines, 14–15, 15f
Tetrapoda, 13–14, 13f
Thalamus
  in cat, 247–249
  in shark, 72
Thecodont condition
  in alligator, 273, 277
  in dinosaur, 280
Theria, 14, 15f, 147
Thigh
  in cat, 176–177
  of frog, 133
Third ventricle
  in cat, 245–247
  in shark, 72, 76
Thoracic aorta, 220
Thoracic cavity, 207–208
Thoracic vertebrae
  in cat, 164, 166–167
  in pigeon, 291
Thoraciscapularis, 103–106
Thorax, 176, 207–208
Throat, cat, 201–202
Thyrocervical artery, 228
Thyrohyoid bone, 155–156
Thyrohyoid muscle, 202
Thyroid cartilage, 206
Thyroid gland, 43–44
Tibia
  in cat, 173–174
  in frog, 132–133
  in mudpuppy, 95
Tibial crest, 173–174
Tibial tuberosity, 173–174
Tibiale (astragalus), 132–133
Tibialis anterior (tibialis cranialis), 194
Tibialis posterior (tibialis caudalis), 194
Tibio-fibula, 132–133
Tibiotarsus, 293
Tiktaalik, 11–13
Tongue, 206
  in frog, 134
  in lamprey, 19, 23
  in mudpuppy, 109–110
  in shark, 45
Tonsillar fossae, 206
Tonsillar pits, 206
Trabecular cartilage, 91
Trabecular horn, 91
Trachea, 206, 303
Tracheal cartilage, 207
Transverse, defined, xx–xxi
Transverse canal, 274–275
Transverse colon, 216–217
Transverse facial artery, 226
Transverse facial vein, 226
Transverse foramina, 165
Transverse jugular vein, 201–202, 222–224, 226
Transverse nuchal crest, 283
Transverse process, vertebral
  in cat, 164
  in frog, 131
  in mudpuppy, 93
Transverse scapular artery, 228
Transverse scapular vein, 185, 222–224
Transverse septum
  in lamprey, 24
  in mudpuppy, 117
  in perch, 85
  in shark, 45, 50
Transversi ventrales, 102
Transversus abdominis
  in cat, 198
  in mudpuppy, 98–99
Transversus costarum, 198
Transversus thoracis, 199
Trapezium, 171
Trapezoid body, 249
Trapezoid bone, 171
Triceps, 103
Triceps brachii, 181
Triceps surae, 194
Trigeminal foramen
  in frog, 130
  in turtle, 257–258
Trigeminal nerve (CN V)
  in cat, 249
  in shark, 74
Trigeminal notch, 262–264
Trigeminofacial foramen, 28
Triosseal canal, 292–293
Trochanteric fossa, 172–173
Trochlea, of humerus, 170
Trochlea tali, 174
Trochlear foramen, 28
Trochlear nerve (CN IV)
  in cat, 249
  in shark, 65, 74
Trochlear notch, 170
Truncus arteriosus, 142
Trunk
  in cat, 176, 198–199
  of lamprey, 21
  in mudpuppy, 96–99
  of perch, 79, 82
  in shark, 35–37, 39
Trunk of corpus callosum, 251
Trunk vertebrae
  in mudpuppy, 93
  in perch, 81
Tuber cinereum, 245–247
Tuberal crest, 262–264
Tuberculum, of rib, 166, 168
Tunica vaginalis, 241
Turbinate bones, 154
Turtle skull and mandible, 253–260
Tympanic bulla, 278
Tympanic bullae, 150
Tympanic cavity, 257
Tympanic crest of articular, 265
Tympanic crest of quadrate, 261
Tympanic membrane, 130, 134
Tympanohyoid bone, 155–156
Typhlosole, 22
Tyrannosaurus rex, 280

U

Ulna
  in cat, 170
  in frog, 132
  in mudpuppy, 93–94
  in pigeon, 293
Ulnare, 293
Umbilical artery/vein, 230
Unciform, 171
Uncinate processes, 291
Ureter, 239, 308
Urethra, 239
Urethral orifice, 244
Urinary bladder
  in cat, 214, 239
  in frog, 140
  in mudpuppy, 110
  in perch, 86
Urinary duct, accessory, 62
Urinary papilla, 35–37, 62–63
Urochordata, 1, 2f, 4–6
Urogenital aperture
  in cat, 177, 244
  in perch, 83
Urogenital arteries, 142
Urogenital papilla
  in lamprey, 21
  in shark, 35–37, 62
Urogenital pore, 21
Urogenital sinus
  in cat, 244
  in shark, 62
Urogenital system
  of cat, 239–244
  of frog, 135–140
  of lamprey, 21
  of mudpuppy, 113–117
  of perch, 83
  of pigeon, 309
  of shark, 59–63

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com

Uroneurals, 81–82
Uropygial gland, 294–296
Uropygium, 294–296
Urostyle, 131
Uterine horn, 239, 242
Uterine tube (fallopian tube), 242
Uterus, 62–63
Utriculus, 67

V

Vagina, 242
Vaginal cavity, 241
Vagosympathetic trunk, 224
Vagus foramen, 28
  in alligator, 278
  in iguana, 265
Vagus nerve (CN X)
  in cat, 211–212, 224, 249
  in shark, 75
Vallate papillae, 206
Valvular intestine, 47
Vanes, of feather, 296
Vascular sac, 76
Vascular tunic, 66
Vastus intermedius, 192–193
Vastus lateralis, 192–193
Vastus medialis, 189
Vein, defined, 220
Veins. *See names of specific veins*; Venous system
Velum, 19, 23
Vena cava
  in cat, 210–212, 220, 228
  in frog, 140, 142, 144–145
  in mudpuppy, 113, 117
  in pigeon, 303
Venous system
  of cat, 220–233
  of cat (flow charts), 235f, 237f
  of frog, 142–145
  of lamprey, 24
  of mudpuppy, 117–119
  of perch, 88
  of pigeon, 306–309
  of shark, 56–58
Venter, 294–296
Ventral, defined, xix–xx
Ventral abdominal vein
  in frog, 136–137, 145
  in mudpuppy, 110, 119
Ventral aorta
  in lamprey, 24
  in mudpuppy, 117
  in shark, 50–51
Ventral fissure, 249
Ventral gastric artery, 54–56
Ventral hyoid constrictor muscles, 40–41
Ventral oblique muscle, 65
Ventral rectus muscle, 65
Ventral superficial constrictor muscles, 40–41
Ventricles, of brain
  in cat, 245–251
  in shark, 72, 76
Ventricles, of heart
  in cat, 220
  in frog, 140–142
  in lamprey, 24
  in mudpuppy, 117
  in perch, 88
  in pigeon, 303
  in shark, 50–51
Ventrolateral arteries, 54, 56
Vermis, 249
Vertebrae
  in cat, 164
  in frog, 131
  in mudpuppy, 93
  in perch, 81–82
  in pigeon, 291
  in shark, 31–34
Vertebral arch
  in mudpuppy, 93
  in shark, 31
Vertebral artery
  in cat, 228
  in mudpuppy, 119–121
Vertebral canal. *See* Neural canal
Vertebral column
  in cat, 164–167
  in frog, 131
  in shark, 28
Vertebral rib
  in cat, 168
  in pigeon, 291
Vertebral trunk, 221–222
Vertebral vein, 221–222
Vertebrates
  craniates and, 7
  early evolution of, 8
  overview, 1
  phylogeny and classification, 1–4
  relatives, 4–7
  Vertebrata, 6f, 8–16
Vertebrochondral ribs, 168
Vertebrosternal ribs, 168
Vesicular vein, 110, 119
Vessels. *See* Arterial system; Venous system
Vestibular window (oval window), 154
Vestibule, 206
Vestibulocochlear nerve, 249. *See also* Statoacoustic nerve
Vibrissae (whiskers), 176
Vidian canal
  in iguana, 264
  in snake, 270
Viscera
  of frog, 135–140
  of lamprey, 21–22
  of mudpuppy, 110–113
  of perch, 85–88
  of pigeon, 300–310
  vessels of, in cat, 230–233
Visceral arches, 28
Visceral branch of vagus nerve, 75
Visceral motor column, 72
Visceral pericardium
  in cat, 212
  in mudpuppy, 117
  in shark, 50
Visceral peritoneum
  in cat, 212–213
  in perch, 85
  in shark, 45–46
Visceral pleura, 208
Visceral sensory columns, 72
Visceral tunica vaginalis, 241
Vitreous chamber, of eye, 66
Vitreous humor, 66
Vocal cords, 206–207
Vomer
  in cat, 154
  in dinosaur, 283–284
  in frog, 128
  in iguana, 264
  in mudpuppy, 89
  in snake, 270
  in turtle, 258
Vomerine teeth
  in frog, 128, 134
  in mudpuppy, 109–110
Vomeronasal fenestra, 271
Vulva (urogenital aperture), 177, 244

W

Whiskers. *See* Vibrissae
Wing of ilium, 172
Wolffian duct (archinephric duct)
  in frog, 140
  in lamprey, 22
  in mudpuppy, 113
  in perch, 86–87
  in shark, 62

X

Xiphihumeralis, 181–183
Xiphisternum
  in cat, 168
  in frog, 131–132
Xiphoid cartilage, 168

Y

Yolk sac, 62–63

Z

Zygomatic arch
  in cat, 150
  in pigeon, 288
Zygomatic bone, 153–155

Downloaded From Vet-eBooks.com